CBSE 2027

SOCIAL SCIENCE

Based on Exploring Society : India and Beyond

NODIA

Part - 1 & 2

CLASS 7

Chapter-wise Question Bank

NODIA

GET ALL STUDY MATERIAL IN ONE APP!

- Textbooks
- Previous Year Chapterwise Question Banks
- 30 Sets Sample Papers
- Worksheets

FREE!

DOWNLOAD NOW!

SCAN & DOWNLOAD

GET IT ON Google Play

CBSE Class 7th Social Science Part-1 and 2 Question Bank
Edition May 2026
Published by : NODIA
An Imprint of NODIA EDITIONS LLP

Information contained in this book has been obtained by author, from sources believes to be reliable. However, neither NODIA nor its author guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any information herein and NODIA nor its author shall be responsible for any error, omissions, or damages arising out of use of this information. This book is published with the understanding that NODIA and its author are supplying information but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services.

© NODIA EDITIONS LLP

MRP ₹510.00

This book is available on amazon and flipkart only and not available in market.

NODIA EDITIONS LLP
125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039
Phone :+91 9024037387
email : mail@nodia.in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CONTENTS

PART - 1

Theme A - India and the World : Land and the People

CHAP 1. Geographical Diversity of India 7-30

CHAP 2. Understanding the Weather 31-54

CHAP 3. Climates of India 55-80

Theme B - Tapestry of the Past

CHAP 4. New Beginnings : Cities and States 81-104

CHAP 5. The Rise of Empires 105-129

CHAP 6. The Age of Reorganisation 130-155

CHAP 7. The Gupta Era : An Age of Tireless Creativity 156-180

Theme C - Our Cultural Heritage and Knowledge Traditions

CHAP 8. How the Land Becomes Sacred 181-205

Theme D - Governance and Democracy

CHAP 9. From the Rulers to the Ruled : Types of Governments 206-230

CHAP 10. The Constitution of India—An Introduction 231-256

Theme E - Economic Life Around Us

CHAP 11. From Barter to Money 257-281

CHAP 12. Understanding Markets 282-306

NOIDA

PART - 2

CHAP 1.	The Story of Indian Farming	307-331
CHAP 2.	India and Her Neighbours	332-352
CHAP 3.	Empires and Kingdoms : 6th to 10th Centuries	353-377
CHAP 4.	Turning Tides : 11th and 12th Centuries	378-401
CHAP 5.	India, a Home to Many	402-425
CHAP 6.	The State, the Government, and You	426-451
CHAP 7.	Infrastructure : Engine of India’s Development	452-478
CHAP 8.	Banks and The Magic of Finance	479-503

****

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

NODIA

NODIA APP

From Class 1st to Class 12th

Free PDF For All Study Material

Search Play Store by NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 1

GEOGRAPHICAL DIVERSITY OF INDIA

INDIA

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION

India's geography gives it a distinct national character. It is the seventh-largest country globally and part of the Indian Subcontinent. For discussion, India can be divided into five major regions : the great mountain zone, the plains of the Ganga and the Indus, the desert region, the southern peninsula, and the islands. Natural boundaries like the Himalayas, Thar Desert, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean, and Bay of Bengal separate India from the rest of Asia and shape its climate, culture, and history.

2. THE GREAT MOUNTAIN ZONE : THE HIMALAYAS

This massive mountain range (~2500 km long) acts as a natural barrier in the north. Formed by the collision of the Indian landmass with Eurasia, the Himalayas are still slowly rising. The range includes the high, rugged Himadri (Greater Himalayas); the moderate, biodiverse Himachal (Lower Himalayas) with its hill stations; and the rolling Shivalik Hills (Outer Himalayas) transitioning to the plains. The Himalayas are a crucial water source, feeding major rivers like the Ganga, Indus, and Brahmaputra ("Water Tower of Asia"). They are also culturally and spiritually significant, hosting temples and monasteries, and possess rich biodiversity, including the Great Himalayan National Park.

3. THE COLD DESERT : LADAKH

Located within the Himalayas, Ladakh is a cold desert with harsh conditions and a rugged, moon-like terrain formed by geological folding. It features unique wildlife and high-altitude lakes like Pangong Tso. Ladakh is known for its ancient monasteries and distinct culture adapted to the environment, where yaks are vital.

4. THE NORTHERN PLAINS (GANGETIC PLAINS)

These vast, fertile plains south of the Himalayas are nourished by the Ganga, Indus, and Brahmaputra river systems. The rivers deposit rich minerals, making the land ideal for agriculture and supporting a large population. The flat terrain facilitates extensive transport networks, and rivers have long been used for trade and travel.

5. THE GREAT INDIAN DESERT (THAR DESERT)

Located in western India, the Thar is characterized by sand dunes, arid conditions, and extreme temperatures. It acts as a natural barrier. Local life is adapted to water scarcity, with ingenious conservation methods like 'taankas'.

6. THE ARAVALLI HILLS

Among the world's oldest mountains, the Aravallis lie east of the Thar Desert. They act as a barrier preventing the desert's expansion eastward. Rich in minerals, they also host historic forts.

7. THE PENINSULAR PLATEAU

This large, triangular, ancient plateau covers central and southern India and is surrounded by water on three sides. It's bordered by the taller Western Ghats (Sahyadri Hills), a biodiversity hotspot, and the lower Eastern Ghats. The vast Deccan Plateau lies between them. Major rivers like Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri flow eastwards across the plateau, vital for farming and power, while the Narmada and Tapti flow westwards. The plateau is rich in minerals and forests and home to tribal communities.

8. INDIA'S COASTLINES (~7500 KM LONG)

India has a diverse coastline over 7500 km long.

1. West Coast : Narrower plain with estuaries formed by swift rivers from the Western Ghats. Important ports and economic centers are located here.

2. East Coast : Wider plains with large, fertile river deltas (Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri). Features lagoons like Chilika Lake.

9. INDIAN ISLANDS

India has two major island groups :

1. Lakshadweep : An archipelago of 36 coral islands in the Arabian Sea.
2. Andaman & Nicobar : Over 500 volcanic islands in the Bay of Bengal, strategically important and biodiverse. They host India's only active volcano (Barren Island) and the historic Cellular Jail.

10. DELTAS AND NORTHEASTERN HILLS

1. Ganga-Brahmaputra Delta (West Bengal/ Bangladesh) : This region hosts a unique mangrove ecosystem, home to the Sundarbans, a UNESCO World Heritage Site renowned for the Royal Bengal Tiger..
2. Northeastern Hills (Meghalaya Plateau) : Includes Garo, Khasi, Jaintia hills, known for extreme rainfall, lush forests, waterfalls, and living root bridges. Mawlynnong is known as 'Asia's cleanest village'.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. What, in your opinion, are two important geographical features of India? Why do you think they are important?

Ans :

Two important geographical features of India are the Himalayas and the Peninsular Plateau. The Himalayas are important because they act as a natural barrier protecting India, are the source of major rivers like the Ganga that provide essential water, and influence India's climate. The Peninsular Plateau is important because it is rich in minerals vital for industries, has fertile areas good for farming, is home to forests and diverse wildlife, and its rivers are used for irrigation and hydroelectric power.

2. What do you think India might have looked like if the Himalayas did not exist? Write a short note or sketch a drawing to express your imagination.

Ans :

If the Himalayas did not exist, India might have been very different. Cold winds from Central Asia could blow directly into India, making the northern plains much colder, especially in winter. The great rivers like the Ganga and Indus, which get water from Himalayan snowmelt, might be much smaller or perhaps seasonal, drastically affecting farming and water availability in the plains. The fertile Gangetic plains might not be as vast or fertile. Also, India's climate patterns, including the monsoon, could be significantly different as the Himalayas play a role in influencing them. The landscape in the north would be flat or gently rolling instead of mountainous.

3. India has been called a 'mini-continent'. Based on what you've read, why do you think this is so?

Ans :

India is sometimes called a 'mini-continent' because it has an incredible variety of geographical features packed into one country, much like a continent has. It has towering snow-covered mountains (Himalayas), vast fertile plains (Gangetic Plains), hot dry deserts (Thar) cold deserts (Ladakh), a large ancient plateau (Peninsular Plateau), long coastlines with beaches and cliffs, groups of islands (Lakshadweep, Andaman & Nicobar), and dense forests. This huge diversity in landforms, climate, flora, and fauna within one political boundary makes it resemble a smaller version of a continent.

4. Follow one of India's big rivers from where it starts to where it meets the ocean. What are the different ways in which people might utilise this river along its journey? Discuss in groups in your class.

Ans :

Choose a major river like the Ganga, Yamuna, Godavari, or Brahmaputra. Use maps to trace its path. Think about how people use the river at different stages :

1. Mountains (Source) : Source of fresh water, maybe small hydroelectric power generation, spiritual significance (like Gaumukh for Ganga).
2. Plains : Drinking water, large-scale irrigation for farming, generating electricity (hydroelectric dams), transportation (boats, ferries), industrial use, fishing, religious ceremonies.
3. Near the Ocean (Delta) : Fertile land for farming (delta regions), fishing, ports for trade, sometimes challenges like flooding.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CBSE CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core	Mathematics	Physics	Chemistry
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology	Physical Education	Informatics Practice	Computer Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy	Business Studies	Economics	Entrepreneurship
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies	Applied Maths	Hindi	History
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography	Political Science	Psychology	Sociology
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF(NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core	Mathematics	Physics	Chemistry
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology	Physical Education	Informatic Practice	Computer Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy	Business Studies	Economics	Entrepreneurship
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies	Applied Maths	Hindi	History
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography	Political Science	Psychology	Sociology
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF (NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL	English Comm	Mathematics STD	Mathematics Basic
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science	Social Science	IT (402)	AI (417)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)	हिंदी अ	हिंदी ब	संस्कृत
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान	गणित मानक	गणित आधार
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL	English Comm	Mathematics STD	Mathematics Basic
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

Science	Social Science	IT (402)	AI (417)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

Data Science (419)	हिंदी अ	हिंदी ब	संस्कृत
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान	गणित मानक	गणित आधार
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 8

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 7

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 6

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 5 and 4
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 5th	Mathematics 5th	EVS 5th	हिंदी 5th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 5th	EVS हिन्दी 5th	Olympiad Maths 5th	Olympiad Science 5th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 5th	Olympiad Aptitude 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 4th	Mathematics 4th	EVS 4th	हिंदी 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 4th	EVS हिन्दी 4th	Olympiad Maths 4th	Olympiad Science 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 3 and 2
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 3th	Mathematics 3th	EVS 3th	हिंदी 3th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 3th	EVS हिन्दी 3th	Olympiad Maths 3th	Olympiad Science 3th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 3th	Olympiad Aptitude 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 2th	Mathematics 2th	EVS 2th	हिंदी 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 2th	EVS हिन्दी 2th	Olympiad Maths 2th	Olympiad Science 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 1 and KG
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 1th	Mathematics 1th	EVS 1th	हिंदी 1th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 1th	EVS हिन्दी 1th	Olympiad Maths 1th	Olympiad Science 1th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 1th	Olympiad Aptitude KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English KG	Mathematics KG	EVS KG	हिंदी KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित KG	EVS हिन्दी KG	Olympiad Maths KG	Olympiad Science KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

5. Why is the southern part of India referred to as a peninsular plateau?

Ans :

The southern part of India is referred to as a peninsular plateau for two reasons :

1. It is a peninsula because it is a piece of land surrounded by water on three sides : the Arabian Sea to the west, the Bay of Bengal to the east, and the Indian Ocean to the south.
2. It is a plateau because it is a large area of fairly flat land that is raised significantly higher than the surrounding land, especially the coastal plains. Much of this region is made of old, hard rocks and has a relatively flat top surface, unlike mountains which have peaks.

6. Which UNESCO Heritage Site mentioned in this chapter did you find more interesting? Write a short paragraph to describe what about it is interesting.

Ans :

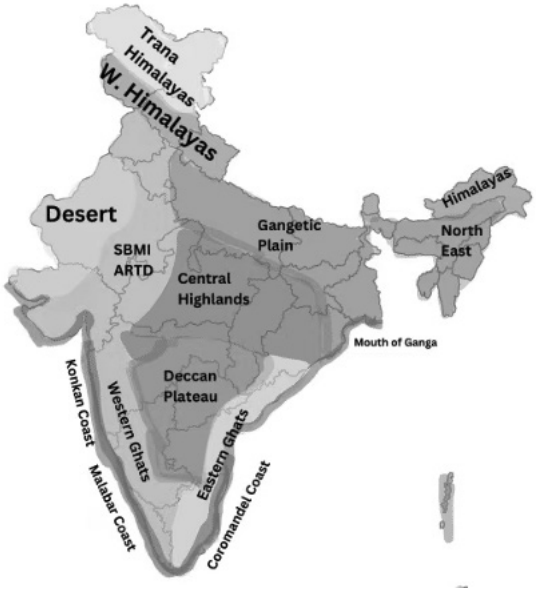
We know that Great Himalayan National Park mentioned as a UNESCO World Heritage site interesting. It's fascinating because it protects a huge diversity of plants (flora) and animals (fauna) in the Himalayas, including rare species like the snow leopard. What's also interesting is that the park's biodiversity is preserved not just by the government but also with the help of the local village communities living inside the park, showing how people and nature can coexist. The chapter also mentions the Western Ghats, Jaisalmer Fort, and the Sundarbans as UNESCO sites.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

7. Look at the two maps of India, physical as well as political, given at the end of this book. Identify the place you are at now. Which physical feature of India would you use to describe its location?

Ans :

Based on the physical map of India, the place I am located at is in the north, I would say that I am near the Himalayas, which forms a natural barrier to the north.



8. Food preservation techniques differ from place to place across India. They are adapted to local conditions. Do a class project. Gather different methods of preserving food. Hint : Drying vegetables when they are in season for use during the off-season.

Ans :

This is a class project. Talk to family members, neighbours, or research online/in books about how food is preserved in different parts of India or even in your own home. Consider the climate :

1. Sunny/Dry Regions (like Rajasthan) : Drying is common – vegetables (like sangri), fruits (mangoes - aam papad), spices are sun-dried. Pickling with oil and salt is also widespread as oil prevents air contact and salt draws out moisture.
2. Humid/Coastal Regions : Salting and drying fish is common. Fermentation might be used. Pickling is also prevalent.
3. Cold Regions (like Himalayas) : Drying meat or vegetables, smoking, storing in cool cellars.
4. General : Making jams/jellies (using sugar as a preservative), pickling (using salt, oil, vinegar), drying, salting, smoking, refrigeration (modern). Collect examples and discuss how the method suits the local climate and available ingredients.

9. Despite having such different regions (mountains, deserts, plains, coasts), India remains one country. How do you think our geography has helped unite people?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

While India's diverse geography creates different lifestyles, it might have also helped unite people in some ways. The Himalayas in the north and the oceans in the south have historically provided some natural boundaries, giving the region a distinct identity. The vast river plains like the Gangetic Plains have supported large populations and the growth of shared cultures and kingdoms over centuries. Rivers also act as natural transport routes connecting different regions. Furthermore, the different regions often depend on each other; for example, the plains depend on rivers from the mountains, and different regions trade goods specific to their areas (minerals from the plateau, crops from the plains, fish from the coasts), fostering connection and interdependence.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. When Rakesh Sharma was asked by the Prime Minister Indira Gandhi, "How does India look from space?", what was his reply?
(A) Vande Mataram - I praise thee, Mother
(B) Jana Gana Mana - Thou art the ruler
(C) Sare jahan se achchha - Better than the whole
(D) Jai Hind - Victory to India always prevails

Ans :

(C) Sare jahan se achchha - Better than the whole
Rakesh Sharma's patriotic response, "Sare jahan se achchha," reflects a deep sense of national pride. This phrase, the title of a famous poem, captures the beauty and love for India as viewed from space.

2. Which of the following is NOT considered one of the five major geographical regions of India for discussion purposes?
(A) The great mountain zone of Himalayas
(B) The plains of Ganga and Indus
(C) The Deccan Plateau and its ranges
(D) The islands and the long coastlines

Ans :

(C) The Deccan Plateau and its ranges
India is broadly divided into five major regions for discussion : the great mountain zone, the plains of the Ganga and Indus, the desert region, the southern peninsula, and the islands. The Deccan Plateau is part of the southern peninsula.

3. What does the term 'hydroelectricity' refer to in the context of waterfalls like Jog Falls?
(A) Electricity generated from solar power sources
(B) Electricity generated from wind power turbines
(C) Electricity generated from water power turbines
(D) Electricity generated from nuclear power plants

Ans :

(C) Electricity generated from water power turbines
'Hydro' means water, and 'hydroelectricity' is the generation of electricity using the force of falling or flowing water to turn turbines. Waterfalls are a natural source for hydroelectric power, converting water's kinetic energy into electrical energy.

4. The varied colours on a physical map of India primarily indicate which of the following?
(A) Different types of soil found
(B) Different climatic zones of the region
(C) Different population densities across areas
(D) Different altitudes or heights of landforms

Ans :

(D) Different altitudes or heights of landforms
On physical maps, colours are conventionally used to represent the altitude of the land. For example, green often indicates lowlands, while browns and whites can signify higher elevations like mountains and plateaus, as shown in the legend.

5. The Himalayan mountain range stretches across how many countries in the continent of Asia?
(A) Three
(B) Four
(C) Five
(D) Six

Ans :

(D) Six
The Himalayas, a vast mountain range, extend across six Asian countries : India, Nepal, Bhutan, China, Pakistan, and Afghanistan. This extensive range impacts the climate and culture of these nations, serving as a significant geographical feature.

6. The Bhagirathi River, a major tributary of the Ganga, originates from _____ in Uttarakhand.
(A) Yamunotri Glacier
(B) Siachen Glacier
(C) Gaumukh Glacier

NODIA

(D) Pindari Glacier

Ans :

(C) Gaumukh Glacier
Gaumukh, located at the edge of the Gangotri Glacier in Uttarakhand, is the source of the Bhagirathi River. This river is one ofthe primary headstreams of the Ganga, a river central to Indian culture and life.

7. The formation of the Himalayan mountains is a result of the collision between which two landmasses?
(A) Gondwana and Laurasia landmasses
(B) India and Eurasia landmasses
(C) Africa and Asia landmasses
(D) Australia and Antarctica landmasses

Ans :

(B) India and Eurasia landmasses
The Himalayas were formed by the geological collision of the Indian landmass with the Eurasian landmass. This monumental impact caused the land between them to crumple and uplift, creating the world's highest mountain range over millions of years.

8. The term 'Himalaya' is a combination of two Sanskrit words, 'hima' and 'alaya'. What do these words mean?
(A) Peak of ice and river source
(B) Snow abode and high place
(C) Ice river and mountain home
(D) Snow land and sacred dwelling

Ans :

(B) Snow abode and high place
'Himalaya' translates from Sanskrit as 'abode of snow'. 'Hima' means snow, and 'alaya' means abode or dwelling. This name aptly describes the perennially snow-covered peaks of this vast mountain range that defines regions.

9. Which of the following correctly describes the difference between the Himadri and Himachal ranges of the Himalayas?
(A) Himadri is lower and has hill stations; Himachal is highest part
(B) Himadri is snow-covered year-round; Himachal allows for human life
(C) Himadri has dense forests; Himachal is mainly rocky and barren
(D) Himadri is known for wildlife; Himachal for its many temples

Ans :

(B) Himadri is snow-covered year-round; Himachal allows for human life
The Himadri (Greater Himalayas) is the highest and most rugged, constantly snow-covered, making life difficult. The Himachal (Lower Himalayas) has a more moderate climate, supporting biodiversity and human settlements, including popular hill stations for people.

10. The traditional 'kath-kuni' or 'dhajji-dewari' style of houses in the western Himalayan region uses a combination of which locally available materials?
(A) Mud and bamboo only
(B) Stone and wood only
(C) Bricks and concrete
(D) Metal and glass too

Ans :

(B) Stone and wood only
'Kath-kuni' or 'dhajji-dewari' architecture, prevalent in the western Himalayas, utilizes locally sourced stone and wood. This construction method is well-suited to the climate, keeping houses warm and providing resilience against mild earthquakes in mountains.

11. Ladakh is referred to as 'moonland' primarily because its terrain resembles that of the moon. What geological process contributed to this unique landscape?
(A) Volcanic eruptions and lava flows shaping
(B) Glacial erosion and deposition action
(C) Wind erosion and desertification
(D) Folding of mountains during landmass collision

Ans :

(D) Folding of mountains during landmass collision
Ladakh's 'moonland' terrain, characterized by folded mountains, was formed when the Indian landmass collided with Eurasia. This geological event caused the land, once part of an ocean floor, to uplift and fold, creating its distinctive rugged appearance.

12. Which of the following animals, very important for the lives of people in the Himalayas, are reared for milk, meat, wool, dung, and transport?
(A) Sheep
(B) Goats
(C) Yaks
(D) Donkeys

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) Yaks
Yaks are integral to Himalayan life, providing essential resources like milk, meat, and wool. They are also used for transportation and their dung serves as fuel, making them indispensable for survival in the high-altitude environment.

13. The Gangetic Plains are highly fertile and ideal for agriculture. What is the primary reason for this fertility?
(A) Frequent volcanic ash deposits enrich soil
(B) Abundant sunshine and consistent temperatures
(C) Rivers enriching the soil with minerals
(D) Traditional farming techniques used for it

Ans :

(C) Rivers enriching the soil with minerals
The fertility of the Gangetic Plains is primarily due to the rich mineral deposits brought by rivers originating from the Himalayas. These rivers, including the Ganga, Indus, and Brahmaputra, and their tributaries, make the land highly productive for agriculture.

14. Which of the following is NOT a primary reason for the development of an elaborate transportation network in the Northern Plains?
(A) Flat nature of the land itself
(B) Presence of many large, dense forests
(C) Need for movement of people
(D) Facilitation of goods over long distances

Ans :

(B) Presence of many large, dense forests
The flat terrain of the Northern Plains has greatly facilitated the development of road and railway networks. While forests exist, the primary driver for extensive transportation is the ease of construction on flat land for moving people and goods.

15. The Thar Desert, a vast arid region, spans across several Indian states. Which of the following states is NOT part of the Thar Desert's expanse?
(A) Rajasthan
(B) Gujarat
(C) Punjab still
(D) Uttarakhand

Ans :

(D) Uttarakhand
The Thar Desert extends across Rajasthan, Gujarat, Punjab, and Haryana. Uttarakhand, being a largely mountainous state in the Himalayas, is not part of this arid desert region known for its unique landscape and harsh climatic conditions.

16. What are 'taanka' or 'kunds' primarily used for in regions like Rajasthan within the Thar Desert?
(A) Storing grains and other food items
(B) Housing livestock during extreme weather
(C) Collecting and storing rainwater
(D) Generating small-scale solar electricity

Ans :

(C) Collecting and storing rainwater
'Taanka' or 'kunds' are traditional rainwater harvesting structures predominantly found in Rajasthan. These ingenious systems are designed to collect and store scarce rainwater, often for drinking purposes, crucial for survival in the arid desert environment.

17. The Aravalli Hills play a vital role in shaping the geography and climate of northwestern India. What is one of its most important functions regarding the Thar Desert?
(A) Acting as a source for major rivers
(B) Providing fertile land for extensive regions
(C) Preventing the Thar Desert's eastward expansion
(D) Creating a rain shadow effect

Ans :

(C) Preventing the Thar Desert's eastward expansion
One of the Aravalli Hills' crucial roles is acting as a natural barrier that helps prevent the eastward expansion of the Thar Desert. This ancient mountain range influences regional climate patterns and protects adjacent areas from desertification over time.

18. India's peninsular plateau is bordered by which two major mountain ranges on its western and eastern sides respectively?
(A) Himalayas and Vindhya Range
(B) Western Ghats and Eastern Ghats
(C) Aravalli Hills and Satpura Range
(D) Karakoram Range and Shivalik Hills

Ans :

(B) Western Ghats and Eastern Ghats

NODIA

The peninsular plateau of India is flanked by the Western Ghats along its western coast and the Eastern Ghats along its eastern coast. These mountain ranges define the plateau's boundaries and influence its rivers and climate significantly.

19. Several rivers like the Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri flow across the Deccan Plateau. In which general direction do these rivers primarily flow?
(A) From east to west, draining into Arabian Sea
(B) From west to east, draining into Bay of Bengal
(C) From north to south, draining into Indian Ocean
(D) From south to north, draining into Gangetic Plain

Ans :

(B) From west to east, draining into Bay of Bengal
Major rivers of the Deccan Plateau, such as the Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri, predominantly flow from west to east. This flow direction is due to the eastward tilt of the peninsular plateau, causing these rivers to empty into the Bay of Bengal.

20. The West Coast of India stretches from Gujarat in the north to which state in the south?
(A) Tamil Nadu
(B) Karnataka
(C) Kerala
(D) Maharashtra

Ans :

(C) Kerala
The West Coast of India extends from Gujarat down to Kerala. This coastal stretch passes through Maharashtra, Goa, and Karnataka, and is characterized by swift rivers originating from the Western Ghats that form estuaries along Arabian Sea.

21. What is a 'delta' in geographical terms, such as those formed by rivers on the East Coast of India?
(A) A deep valley carved by river
(B) A high plateau formed by volcanic
(C) A landform created by river sediment
(D) A large lake formed by glacial

Ans :

(C) A landform created by river sediment
A delta is a triangular or fan-shaped landform created at the mouth of a river where it deposits sediments carried from upstream into a larger body of water like an ocean or lake over a long period.

22. Which of the following pairs correctly matches an Indian island group with its location?
(A) Andaman Islands - Arabian Sea coast
(B) Nicobar Islands - Bay of Bengal
(C) Lakshadweep Islands - Bay of Bengal
(D) Barren Island - Arabian Sea coast

Ans :

(B) Nicobar Islands - Bay of Bengal
The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are situated in the Bay of Bengal, forming a significant archipelago. Lakshadweep Islands are located in the Arabian Sea. Barren Island, an active volcano, is part of the Andaman and Nicobar group.

23. The Sundarbans, a UNESCO World Heritage site, is located in the delta of which major river systems?
(A) Godavari and Krishna river systems
(B) Narmada and Tapti river systems
(C) Ganga and Brahmaputra river systems
(D) Indus and Sutlej river systems

Ans :

(C) Ganga and Brahmaputra river systems
The Sundarbans, the world's largest mangrove forest, is situated in the delta formed by the confluence of the Ganga, Brahmaputra, and Meghna rivers in the Bay of Bengal. This unique ecosystem spans across India and Bangladesh.

24. The Garo, Khasi, and Jaintia hills are part of which plateau in Northeast India?
(A) Deccan Plateau
(B) Chota Nagpur Plateau
(C) Malwa Plateau again
(D) Meghalaya Plateau

Ans :

(D) Meghalaya Plateau
The Garo, Khasi, and Jaintia hills are prominent hill ranges that form part of the Meghalaya Plateau in Northeast India. This region is known for its lush greenery, extremely heavy rainfall, and unique cultural heritage and people.

25. A group of students is planning a trekking trip to a region in the Himalayas known for its moderate climate, rich biodiversity, and popular hill stations like Shimla and Darjeeling. Which Himalayan range are they most likely planning to visit?
(A) The Himadri or Greater Himalayas
(B) The Himachal or Lower Himalayas
(C) The Shivalik or Outer Himalayas
(D) The Trans-Himalayan region

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(B) The Himachal or Lower Himalayas
The Himachal or Lower Himalayas are characterized by a moderate climate, rich biodiversity, and the presence of numerous popular hill stations. This makes it an ideal destination for trekking and experiencing the beauty of the Himalayan region.

26. Which of the following pairings of a geographical feature and its characteristic is INCORRECT?
(A) Himalayas - Abode of Snow
(B) Ladakh - Hot Desert climate
(C) Gangetic Plains - Fertile agricultural land
(D) Thar Desert - Arid sandy region

Ans :

(B) Ladakh - Hot Desert climate
Ladakh is a cold desert, characterized by extremely low temperatures in winter and very little rainfall. The terms "hot desert" typically apply to regions like the Thar Desert, which experiences high daytime temperatures and arid conditions.

27. The Great Himalayan National Park, a UNESCO World Heritage Site known for its diverse flora and fauna, is located in which Indian state?
(A) Uttarakhand
(B) Himachal Pradesh
(C) Sikkim state
(D) Arunachal Pradesh

Ans :

(B) Himachal Pradesh
The Great Himalayan National Park, renowned for its rich biodiversity and status as a UNESCO World Heritage Site, is situated in the state of Himachal Pradesh. It plays a crucial role in conserving Himalayan ecosystems over time.

28. What is an archipelago, such as the Lakshadweep Islands?
(A) A single, large, isolated island mass
(B) A narrow strip of land connecting
(C) A group or chain of islands
(D) A body of water enclosed mostly

Ans :

(C) A group or chain of islands
An archipelago is defined as a group or cluster of islands closely scattered in a body of water. The Lakshadweep Islands in the Arabian Sea are an example of an archipelago, consisting of 36 coral islands.

29. The 'moonland' terrain of Ladakh, with its folded mountains, indicates that the rocks in this area are largely made of what materials, reflecting its oceanic origin?
(A) Granite and basalt primarily
(B) Limestone and marble only
(C) Sand and clay deposits
(D) Coal and iron ores

Ans :

(C) Sand and clay deposits
The folded mountains of Ladakh, resembling 'moonland', were once part of an ocean floor. Consequently, the rocks in this region are predominantly composed of sand and clay, which were sedimentary deposits from that ancient marine environment.

30. Assertion (A) : The Himalayas are often called the 'Water Tower of Asia'.
Reason (R) : The snowmelt from the Himalayan mountains feeds major rivers that provide water for millions.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Himalayas are justifiably called the 'Water Tower of Asia' because their glaciers and snowmelt are the primary sources for major rivers like the Ganga, Indus, and Brahmaputra, sustaining vast populations and ecosystems across the continent.

31. Consider the following statements about India's geographical features :
1. India is the fifth-largest country in the world by land area.
2. The Thar Desert acts as a natural barrier in the eastern part of India.
3. The Himalayas stand as a natural barrier in the northern part of India.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

NODIA

Ans :

(B) 3 only
India is the seventh-largest country. The Thar Desert is in the west. The Himalayas do form a significant natural barrier in the north, influencing climate and providing a boundary with other parts of Asia, making it a crucial feature.

32. The Aravalli Hills are rich in minerals such as marble, granite, zinc, and _____.
(A) Gold
(B) Silver
(C) Copper
(D) Diamond

Ans :

(C) Copper
The Aravalli Hills are endowed with significant mineral resources, including marble, granite, zinc, and copper. These minerals have supported mining and construction activities in the region for many centuries, contributing to its economic history.

33. What is a 'plateau' as a landform?
(A) A low-lying area often filled by water
(B) A very steep and pointed mountain peak
(C) A landform rising with a flat surface
(D) A narrow valley between two high mountains

Ans :

(C) A landform rising with a flat surface
A plateau is an elevated area of land with a relatively flat top and often steep sides. It rises sharply above the surrounding land, forming a distinct and extensive upland region like the Deccan Plateau in India.

34. The Western Ghats are taller and run along the western coast like a wall. What natural phenomena are common on their steep sides during the monsoon season?
(A) Dust storms
(B) Snowfall
(C) Earthquakes
(D) Waterfalls

Ans :

(D) Waterfalls
During the monsoon season, the steep slopes of the Western Ghats become alive with numerous beautiful waterfalls. The heavy rainfall feeds these cascades, making them a prominent feature of this mountain range and a significant tourist attraction.

35. The northern portion of the Western Ghats is also known by what other name?
(A) Nilgiri Hills
(B) Anaimalai Hills
(C) Sahyadri Hills
(D) Cardamom Hills

Ans :

(C) Sahyadri Hills
The Sahyadri Hills is another name for the northern section of the Western Ghats. This part of the range extends through states like Maharashtra and Goa, known for its rich biodiversity and numerous rivers originating there.

36. What is a 'lagoon', such as Pulicat Lake on the East Coast of India?
(A) A river that flows only during rains
(B) A small island made entirely of coral
(C) A body of water separated by barrier
(D) A desert oasis with fresh water source

Ans :

(C) A body of water separated by barrier
A lagoon is a shallow body of water separated from a larger body of water, like an ocean, by barrier islands or reefs. Pulicat Lake is a significant lagoon on India's East Coast, exemplifying this coastal landform.

37. How do the rivers of the West Coast of India primarily differ from those forming deltas on the East Coast?
(A) West Coast rivers are longer and form large deltas over time
(B) West Coast rivers are shorter, flow swiftly, and form estuaries
(C) West Coast rivers are seasonal and dry up in summer mostly
(D) West Coast rivers primarily flow northwards unlike eastern rivers

Ans :

(B) West Coast rivers are shorter, flow swiftly, and form estuaries
Rivers on India's West Coast, originating in the Western Ghats, are generally shorter and flow more swiftly to the Arabian Sea, forming estuaries. In contrast, East Coast rivers are longer and form extensive, fertile deltas.

38. Barren Island, India's only active volcano, is part of which island group?
(A) Lakshadweep Islands in the Arabian
(B) Andaman and Nicobar Islands

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Sagar Island in Bay of Bengal
(D) Majuli Island in Brahmaputra river

Ans :

(B) Andaman and Nicobar Islands
Barren Island, the sole active volcano in India, is located in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands in the Bay of Bengal. Its occasional eruptions make it a significant and unique geological feature of the Indian territory.

39. The living root bridges, showcasing unique craftsmanship, are a distinctive feature of which region in Northeast India, known for its heavy rainfall?
(A) Arunachal Pradesh
(B) Nagaland
(C) Meghalaya
(D) Mizoram today

Ans :

(C) Meghalaya
Meghalaya, particularly in areas like Cherrapunjee, is famous for its living root bridges. These remarkable structures are created by guiding the roots of ficus elastica trees across rivers, a testament to the indigenous Khasi and Jaintia peoples' ingenuity.

40. A geographer is studying a region of India that is a peninsula, surrounded by water on three sides, and is also a very old land formation bordered by the Western and Eastern Ghats. Which geographical feature is the geographer most likely studying in depth?
(A) The Thar Desert region
(B) The Himalayan mountain zone
(C) The Gangetic Plains region
(D) The Peninsular Plateau region

Ans :

(D) The Peninsular Plateau region
The Peninsular Plateau fits this description perfectly. It is a triangular landmass, surrounded by the Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal, and Indian Ocean, making it a peninsula. It's an ancient geological formation bordered by the Ghats.

41. What is the significance of the Indian subcontinent's geographical features in relation to its climate and culture?
(A) They create uniform climate and culture
(B) They have minimal impact on its diversity
(C) They play a crucial role in shaping them
(D) They primarily affect only its political boundaries

Ans :

(C) They play a crucial role in shaping them
India's diverse geographical features, such as the Himalayas, Thar Desert, and coastlines, significantly influence its varied climates, and have played a crucial role in the development of its distinct cultures and historical trajectory across regions.

42. The Great Himalayan National Park Conservation Area is recognized internationally by which organization for its biodiversity?
(A) World Wildlife Fund for Nature (WWF)
(B) United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)
(C) International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN)
(D) United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)

Ans :

(D) United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)
The Great Himalayan National Park in Himachal Pradesh has been declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO. This recognition highlights its importance for conserving a wide diversity of flora and fauna in this Himalayan region.

NODIA

43. What is meant by the term 'tributaries' when discussing river systems like the Ganga and Indus?
(A) Large man-made canals that divert water from
(B) Smaller rivers or streams that flow into
(C) Ancient underground water channels that feed into
(D) Seasonal water bodies that only appear during

Ans :

(B) Smaller rivers or streams that flow into
Tributaries are smaller rivers or streams that contribute their water to a larger river. The Ganga and Indus river systems are fed by numerous such tributaries, which significantly increase their volume and geographical reach over time.

44. How does the climate of the Himachal range differ from that of the Shivalik Hills in the Himalayas?
(A) Himachal is colder and snowier; Shivalik is warmer
(B) Himachal has moderate climate; Shivalik has dense forests

(C) Himachal is arid; Shivalik receives very heavy rainfall
(D) Himachal has many glaciers; Shivalik has rolling hills

Ans :

(B) Himachal has moderate climate; Shivalik has dense forests
The Himachal (Lower Himalayas) enjoys a moderate climate suitable for habitation and biodiversity. The Shivalik Hills (Outer Himalayas), the lowest range, consist of rolling hills and dense forests, serving as a transition zone.

45. The Losar and Hemis Festivals are colourful and ancient festivals primarily celebrated in which region of India?
(A) The Gangetic Plains region
(B) The Thar Desert region
(C) The Andaman and Nicobar Islands
(D) The Ladakh region of Himalayas

Ans :

(D) The Ladakh region of Himalayas
Ladakh is known for its ancient monasteries and vibrant festivals like Losar and the Hemis Festival. These festivals are an integral part of the Ladakhi people's cultural life, reflecting their unique traditions and heritage.

46. The rivers in the Gangetic Plains not only provide water for agriculture but are also a source for generating _____.
(A) Wind energy
(B) Solar power
(C) Geothermal heat
(D) Electricity

Ans :

(D) Electricity
Besides supporting agriculture with fertile soil and water, the rivers in the Gangetic Plains are also utilized for generating electricity, specifically hydroelectricity. This makes the rivers vital for both sustenance and energy production in regions.

47. Why have a large proportion of India's population historically settled in the Gangetic Plains?
(A) The region offers excellent opportunities for mining valuable
(B) The mountainous terrain provides natural defense from invaders
(C) The area is rich in forests, providing timber
(D) The highly fertile land is ideal for agriculture

Ans :

(D) The highly fertile land is ideal for agriculture
The Gangetic Plains have historically supported a large population due to their highly fertile land, enriched by rivers from the Himalayas. This makes the region exceptionally suitable for agriculture, ensuring food security and livelihoods.

48. Which of the following is NOT a characteristic of the Thar Desert?
(A) Vast stretch of golden sand dunes
(B) Very high daytime temperatures with heat
(C) Abundant rainfall throughout the entire year
(D) Lack of easy access to fresh water

Ans :

(C) Abundant rainfall throughout the entire year
The Thar Desert is an arid region characterized by vast sand dunes, extreme daytime temperatures, cold nights, and scarce water resources. Abundant rainfall throughout the year is contrary to the defining features of a desert environment .

49. Jaisalmer, known as the 'Golden City', and its historic fort, a UNESCO World Heritage site, are located in which geographical region of India?
(A) The Himalayan mountain zone
(B) The Gangetic Plains region
(C) The Thar Desert region still
(D) The Peninsular Plateau region

Ans :

(C) The Thar Desert region still
Jaisalmer, famously called the 'Golden City', along with its historically significant fort, is situated in the heart of the Thar Desert in Rajasthan. Its architecture and location reflect adaptation to the desert environment.

50. Which of the following correctly pairs a Himalayan range with its characteristic feature?
(A) Himadri - Popular hill stations like Nainital
(B) Himachal - Highest peaks like Mount Everest
(C) Shivalik Hills - Transition zone to Northern Plains
(D) Outer Himalayas - Snow-covered throughout entire year

Ans :

(C) Shivalik Hills - Transition zone to Northern Plains
The Shivalik Hills, or Outer Himalayas, form the outermost and lowest Himalayan range and serve

NODIA

as a transition zone between the mountains and the Gangetic (Northern) Plains. Himadri has the highest peaks, and Himachal has hill stations.

51. The traditional 'kath-kuni' houses in the Himalayas are designed to resist damage from mild earthquakes. This resilience is primarily due to which factor?
(A) Their circular shape and domed roofs
(B) The use of steel reinforcements inside
(C) The flexible combination of stone, wood
(D) Their construction on elevated platforms

Ans :

(C) The flexible combination of stone, wood
'Kath-kuni' houses utilize a combination of locally available stone and wood in a manner that provides flexibility. This innt structural property helps the houses withstand mild seismic activity common in the Himalayan region over time.

52. A group of environmentalists is studying an Indian desert region characterized by extremely cold winter temperatures (below -30°C), very little rainfall, rugged rocky terrain, and unique wildlife such as snow leopards. Which Indian desert are they studying for data?
(A) The Thar Desert in Rajasthan today
(B) The Rann of Kutch in Gujarat
(C) The Cold Desert of Ladakh
(D) The Spiti Valley in Himachal

Ans :

(C) The Cold Desert of Ladakh
Ladakh is India's cold desert, with winter temperatures dropping below -30°C, minimal rainfall, rugged terrain, and unique fauna like snow leopards. The Thar Desert is hot, and while Spiti is cold, Ladakh is explicitly named.

53. Which of the following pairings of a region and its primary water source is INCORRECT?
(A) Gangetic Plains - Himalayan river meltwater
(B) Thar Desert - Abundant annual monsoon rains
(C) Peninsular Plateau - Monsoon-fed rivers
(D) Ladakh Cold Desert - Glacial meltwater too

Ans :

(B) Thar Desert - Abundant annual monsoon rains
The Thar Desert is an arid region with very scarce rainfall; it does not receive abundant monsoon rains. The Gangetic Plains, Peninsular Plateau, and Ladakh rely on Himalayan rivers, monsoons, and glacial melt respectively for their water.

54. Assertion (A) : The Aravalli Hills are among the oldest mountains in the world today.
Reason (R) : The Aravalli Hills were formed recently due to volcanic activity in this region.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Aravalli Hills are indeed one of the world's oldest mountain ranges, some 2.5 billion years old. However, their formation is due to ancient geological folding processes, not recent volcanic activity in this region.

55. Consider the following statements about India's islands :
1. Lakshadweep islands are primarily volcanic in their origin.
2. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands consist of over 500 islands.
3. Barren Island is the only active volcano in India.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
Lakshadweep islands are made of coral. The Andaman and Nicobar archipelago comprises over 500 islands, and Barren Island, part of this group, is India's only active volcano.

56. What is a 'peninsula' in geographical terms?
(A) A narrow strip of water connecting two
(B) A piece of land surrounded by water
(C) An area of land permanently covered by
(D) A deep inlet of the sea almost

Ans :

(B) A piece of land surrounded by water
A peninsula is a piece of land that is surrounded by water on three sides but remains connected to a mainland on the fourth side. The southern part of India is a classic example of a peninsula.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

57. The dense forests on the Peninsular Plateau are home to various tribal communities, including the Santhal, Gond, Baiga, Bhil, and _____.
(A) Toda
(B) Khasi
(C) Korku
(D) Jarawa

Ans :

(C) Korku
The Peninsular Plateau's forests are inhabited by several tribal communities such as the Santhal, Gond, Baiga, Bhil, and Korku. These communities have distinct cultures and traditional ways of life closely connected to the natural environment.

58. The Sundarbans delta is described as having a unique combination of river, sea, and land. What does this imply about its ecosystem?
(A) It is primarily a freshwater ecosystem
(B) It is exclusively a saltwater marine ecosystem
(C) It is a fragile ecosystem, prone to drought
(D) It supports a mangrove ecosystem

Ans :

(D) It supports a mangrove ecosystem
The unique confluence of river (freshwater), sea (saltwater), and land in the Sundarbans delta creates the ideal conditions for a mangrove ecosystem. Mangroves are salt-tolerant trees that thrive in such brackish water environments.

59. Mawlynnong Village, renowned as the 'cleanest village in Asia', is situated in which Indian state?
(A) Kerala
(B) Sikkim
(C) Meghalaya
(D) Himachal

Ans :

(C) Meghalaya
Mawlynnong Village, acclaimed for its cleanliness and eco-friendly practices, is located in the East Khasi Hills of Meghalaya. It is also known for its living root bridges, showcasing unique local traditions.

60. What is a key difference between the Himadri and the Shivalik ranges of the Himalayas?
(A) Himadri is densely forested; Shivalik is mostly barren area
(B) Himadri has active volcanoes; Shivalik has ancient monasteries
(C) Himadri is the highest range; Shivalik is the lowest
(D) Himadri is known for tea; Shivalik for its apple

NODIA

Ans :

(C) Himadri is the highest range; Shivalik is the lowest
The Himadri (Greater Himalayas) is the highest and most rugged part of the Himalayan range. In contrast, the Shivalik Hills (Outer Himalayas) form the outermost and lowest range, consisting of rolling hills and foothills.

61. Which of the following correctly pairs a geographical feature with its common description or characteristic?
(A) Gaumukh - Popular coastal tourist destination
(B) Pangong Tso - Freshwater lake in plains
(C) Kath-kuni House - Modern urban architectural style
(D) Deccan Plateau - Vast area of flat highlands

Ans :

(D) Deccan Plateau - Vast area of flat highlands
The Deccan Plateau is a large, vast area of relatively flat highlands situated between the Western and Eastern Ghats in peninsular India. Gaumukh is a glacial source, Pangong Tso is a saltwater lake, and Kath-kuni is traditional Himalayan architecture.

62. The formation of the Himalayas due to the Indian landmass colliding with Eurasia is analogous to what common phenomenon?
(A) A river carving a deep canyon
(B) A volcano erupting and forming cone
(C) A carpet wrinkling when it is pushed
(D) An earthquake causing ground to shake

Ans :

(C) A carpet wrinkling when it is pushed
The collision of the Indian and Eurasian landmasses caused the land between them to crumple and rise, much like how a carpet wrinkles when pushed from one end. This process led to the formation of the mighty Himalayas.

63. The Cellular Jail, a significant historical site w many Indian freedom fighters were imprisoned, is located in which island group?
(A) Lakshadweep Islands group
(B) Andaman and Nicobar Islands
(C) Elephanta Caves island
(D) Sagar Island near delta

Ans :

(B) Andaman and Nicobar Islands
The Cellular Jail, a stark reminder of India's freedom struggle and the sacrifices made, is located in the Andaman Islands, part of the Andaman and Nicobar archipelago.

64. A tourist is visiting a region in India characterized by high altitude, very low temperatures, sparse vegetation, unique wildlife like the Tibetan antelope, and ancient monasteries. The terrain is rugged and often described as 'moonland'. Which region is the tourist most likely visiting?
(A) The Western Ghats in South India
(B) The Sundarbans delta in West Bengal
(C) The Ladakh region in the Himalayas
(D) The Rann of Kutch in Gujarat

Ans :

(C) The Ladakh region in the Himalayas
These characteristics – high altitude, extreme cold, sparse vegetation, specific wildlife like Tibetan antelopes, ancient monasteries, and 'moonland' terrain – are all defining features of Ladakh, India's cold desert region in the Himalayas.

65. Which of the following pairings of an Indian geographical region and its primary characteristic is INCORRECT?
(A) Himalayas - Source of major perennial rivers
(B) Gangetic Plains - Dense tropical rainforest cover
(C) Thar Desert - High daytime temperatures, arid
(D) Peninsular Plateau - Rich in diverse minerals

Ans :

(B) Gangetic Plains - Dense tropical rainforest cover
The Gangetic Plains are primarily known for their fertile alluvial soil ideal for agriculture, not dense tropical rainforests. While some forest areas exist, extensive rainforest cover is not its defining characteristic like the other pairs.

66. Assertion (A) : The East Coast of India has several major river deltas that are very fertile.
Reason (R) : Rivers like the Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri deposit rich sediments as they flow into the Bay of Bengal.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The East Coast of India features large, fertile deltas formed by rivers such as the Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri. These rivers carry and deposit vast amounts of nutrient-rich sediment, making the delta regions highly productive for agriculture.

67. Consider the following statements regarding India's geography :
1. The Western Ghats are generally lower and more broken than the Eastern Ghats.
2. The Indian Ocean forms a natural boundary to the south of India .
3. The Sundarbans are located entirely within the territory of India today.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The Western Ghats are taller and more continuous than the Eastern Ghats. The Sundarbans are located in both India and Bangladesh. The Indian Ocean does form India's southern boundary.

68. The traditional water collection systems in Rajasthan, often used for storing rainwater for drinking, are known as taankas or _____.
(A) Johads
(B) Baolis
(C) Kunds
(D) Kuis

Ans :

(C) Kunds
In Rajasthan, traditional rainwater harvesting structures are commonly referred to as 'taankas' or 'kunds'. These systems are ingeniously designed to collect and store precious rainwater in an arid environment for people.

69. What does the term 'flora and fauna' refer to in the context of a region's biodiversity?
(A) The soil types and mineral content
(B) The plant and animal life

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) The climatic patterns and weather
(D) The rivers and water bodies

Ans :

(B) The plant and animal life
'Flora' refers to all the plant life present in a particular region or time, while 'fauna' refers to all of the animal life. Together, they represent the biodiversity of an ecosystem or geographical area studied.

70. The fact that the Himalayas are still growing taller by a tiny bit each year indicates what ongoing geological process?
(A) Continuous volcanic activity along the range
(B) The slow melting of glaciers
(C) India's landmass continuing to push into Asia
(D) Erosion and weathering of the mountain peaks

Ans :

(C) India's landmass continuing to push into Asia
The Himalayas are still rising because the Indian landmass continues its slow northward collision with the Eurasian plate, pushing about five centimeters each year. This ongoing tectonic movement causes the mountains to grow slightly.

71. Which of these is a famous hill station located in the Himachal range of the Himalayas in West Bengal?
(A) Shimla
(B) Mussoorie
(C) Nainital
(D) Darjeeling

Ans :

(D) Darjeeling
Darjeeling, known for its tea plantations and scenic views of Kanchenjunga, is a popular hill station located in the Himachal (Lower Himalayas) range in the state of West Bengal.

72. What is a primary difference between the formation of sand dunes in the Thar Desert and the formation of mountains like the Himalayas?
(A) Sand dunes are fixed; mountains shift
(B) Sand dunes are rock; mountains are sand
(C) Sand dunes are wind; mountains are collision
(D) Sand dunes are volcanic; mountains are erosion

Ans :

(C) Sand dunes are wind; mountains are collision
Sand dunes in the Thar Desert are formed by wind shifting and shaping sand. The Himalayan mountains, on the other hand, were formed by the massive geological collision of tectonic plates over many millions of years.

73. Which pairing of a geographical term and its definition is correct?
(A) Subcontinent - A large, distinct landmass smaller than a continent
(B) Tributary - The main channel of a very large river delta
(C) Plateau - A deep valley with steep sides, carved by water
(D) Monsoon - A type of permanent, year-round dry desert wind

NODIA

Ans :

(A) Subcontinent - A large, distinct landmass smaller than a continent
A subcontinent is a large, distinguishable part of a continent, such as the Indian Subcontinent, which includes India and its neighboring countries. Tributaries feed rivers, plateaus are elevated flatlands, and monsoons are seasonal winds.

74. A team of scientists is studying a coastal area in India characterized by wide plains, major river deltas (like Mahanadi and Godavari), and important lagoons like Chilika Lake. Which coastline of India are they most likely focused on for their work?
(A) The West Coast, from Gujarat to Kerala
(B) The East Coast, from Ganga delta to Kanyakumari
(C) The coastline of the Andaman Islands
(D) The coastline of the Lakshadweep Islands

Ans :

(B) The East Coast, from Ganga delta to Kanyakumari
The East Coast of India is characterized by wide plains, the deltas of major east-flowing rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri, and significant water bodies such as Chilika Lake and Pulicat Lake.

75. Which of the following pairings of a Himalayan river and its commonly known primary source is INCORRECT?
(A) Ganga - Gaumukh (Gangotri Glacier)
(B) Yamuna - Yamunotri Glacier as source
(C) Indus - Mansarovar Lake region near
(D) Brahmaputra - Thar Desert region

Ans :

(D) Brahmaputra - Thar Desert region
The Brahmaputra River originates from the Angsi Glacier in the Tibetan Himalayas, not the Thar Desert. The Ganga originates from Gaumukh, the Yamuna from Yamunotri Glacier, and the Indus from the Tibetan plateau near Mansarovar Lake.

76. Assertion (A) : The Deccan Plateau tilts slightly towards the east side.
Reason (R) : Consequently, most major rivers on the Deccan Plateau flow westwards into the Arabian Sea.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Deccan Plateau indeed tilts slightly towards the east. As a result of this eastward tilt, major rivers like the Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri flow eastwards into the Bay of Bengal, not westwards.

77. Consider the following regarding India's geography:
1. The Himalayas are young fold mountains still rising.
2. The Peninsular Plateau is one of the oldest landmasses.
3. The Northern Plains are formed by volcanic lava deposits.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Himalayas are young fold mountains that are still rising due to tectonic activity. The Peninsular Plateau is an ancient and stable landmass. The Northern Plains are formed by alluvial deposits from Himalayan rivers.

78. The unique ecosystem of the Sundarbans, a UNESCO Heritage site, is particularly famous for being the habitat of the Royal _____ Tiger.
(A) Siberian
(B) Sumatran
(C) Bengal
(D) Caspian

Ans :

(C) Bengal
The Sundarbans are renowned as one of the largest habitats for the Royal Bengal Tiger, a majestic and endangered species. This unique mangrove ecosystem provides a critical refuge for this iconic animal of the world.

79. The presence of coral reefs around the Lakshadweep islands indicates what about the marine environment ?
(A) The water is extremely cold and deep
(B) The water is clear, warm, and shallow
(C) The water has very high sediment content
(D) The water is primarily fresh, not salty

Ans :

(B) The water is clear, warm, and shallow
Coral reefs, like those forming the Lakshadweep islands, thrive in clear, warm, shallow, and sunlit tropical or subtropical waters. These conditions are essential for the growth of coral polyps and the diverse marine life they support.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

80. A historian is studying ancient Indian trade routes that connected the northwest regions with the plains of the Ganga and the Indus, facilitating the movement of goods, culture, and ideas across a vast expanse. This network also linked to the desert regions and the southern peninsula. What general term best describes this interconnected system?
(A) The Silk Road network of trade
(B) The Spice Route maritime ways
(C) India's internal trade networks
(D) The Trans-Himalayan trade route

Ans :

(C) India's internal trade networks
The description points to the extensive internal trade networks that crisscrossed ancient India, connecting diverse geographical regions like the northwest, the Gangetic plains, the desert, and the southern peninsula. These routes were vital for economic and cultural exchange within the subcontinent.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Himadri	A.	Outermost and lowest range
2.	Himachal	B.	Highest and most rugged
3.	Shivalik Hills	C.	Moderate climate, hill stations
4.	Kath-kuni architecture	D.	Earthquake-resistant houses

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The Himadri is the Greater Himalayas, highest and snow-covered. The Himachal or Lower Himalayas have a moderate climate and popular hill stations. The Shivalik Hills are the lowest, outermost Himalayan range. Kath-kuni is a traditional earthquake-resistant construction style using stone and wood in the western Himalayas.

82. Match the following geographical features to their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Ladakh	A.	Fertile land ideal for agriculture
2.	Gangetic Plains	B.	Cold desert, 'moonland' terrain
3.	Thar Desert	C.	Vast arid region with sand dunes
4.	Aravalli Hills	D.	Oldest mountains, natural barrier to desert

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Ladakh is a cold desert with rugged, moon-like terrain. The Gangetic Plains are highly fertile due to river deposits, ideal for agriculture. The Thar Desert is a vast arid region characterized by sand dunes. The Aravalli Hills are among the world's oldest mountains and prevent the Thar Desert's eastward expansion.

83. Match the following plateaus and coasts with their characteristics :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Peninsular Plateau	A.	Wide plains, major river deltas (e.g., Mahanadi, Godavari)
2.	Western Ghats	B.	Triangular old land formation, rich in minerals and forests
3.	Eastern Ghats	C.	Taller, continuous range, many waterfalls during monsoon
4.	East Coast of India	D.	Lower, broken hills along the eastern coast

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

(c) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
The Peninsular Plateau is a triangular, ancient landmass rich in minerals and forests. The Western Ghats are taller and continuous, known for monsoon waterfalls. The Eastern Ghats are lower and form broken hills. The East Coast features wide plains and deltas of major rivers like Mahanadi and Godavari.

84. Match the following islands and regions with their unique features :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Lakshadweep Islands	A.	Only active volcano in India
2.	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	B.	Archipelago of coral islands in the Arabian Sea
3.	Barren Island	C.	Famous for living root bridges and high rainfall
4.	Hills of the Northeast	D.	Over 500 volcanic islands, historical Cellular Jail

NODIA

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(b) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Lakshadweep is an archipelago of 36 coral islands in the Arabian Sea. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands consist of over 500 volcanic islands and house the historic Cellular Jail. Barren Island, in the Andamans, is India's only active volcano. The Northeastern hills, like Garo, Khasi, and Jaintia, are known for high rainfall and living root bridges.

85. Match the following terms related to India's geography :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Gondwana	A.	Landform created by river sediment deposition at its mouth
2.	Delta	B.	Ancient supercontinent India was part of
3.	Peninsula	C.	Group of islands
4.	Archipelago	D.	Land surrounded by water on three sides

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(c) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A
(d) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Ans :

(d) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Gondwana was the ancient supercontinent of which India was once a part. A delta is a landform created by sediment deposition where a river meets a larger water body. A peninsula is a piece of land surrounded by water on three sides. An archipelago refers to a group or chain of islands.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. Which astronaut described India as "Sare jahan se achchha" from space?

Ans :

Rakesh Sharma.

87. What rank does India hold in terms of area in the world?

Ans :

Seventh-largest.

88. Name one neighbouring country included in the Indian Subcontinent besides India.

Ans :

Pakistan/Bangladesh/Nepal/Bhutan/Sri Lanka/ Myanmar (any one).

89. Which mountain range forms a natural barrier in the north of India?

Ans :

The Himalayan Mountain range.

90. What does the Sanskrit word 'hima' mean?

Ans :

Snow.

91. What is the approximate length of the Himalayan range?

Ans :

About 2500 km.

92. Name the highest mountain range within the Himalayas.

Ans :

The Himadri (the Greater Himalayas).

93. Name one hill station located in the Himachal range.

Ans :

Nainital/Darjeeling/Shimla/Mussoorie (any one).

94. Which part of the Himalayas forms the outermost and lowest range?

Ans :

The Shivalik Hills (the Outer Himalayas).

95. From where does the Bhagirathi River, a tributary of the Ganga, originate?

Ans :

Gaumukh.

96. Which glacier is Gaumukh located at the edge of?

Ans :

The Gangotri Glacier.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

97. What does 'tso' mean in Ladakh?

Ans :

Lake.

98. Which region in India is known as 'moonland'?

Ans :

Ladakh.

99. Name one major river system that nourishes the Northern Plains.

Ans :

Ganga/Indus/Brahmaputra (any one).

100. Which desert is also known as the Great Indian Desert?

Ans :

Thar Desert.

101. Name one state where the Thar Desert is located.

Ans :

Rajasthan/Gujarat/Punjab/Haryana (any one).

102. What is the traditional water harvesting structure in Rajasthan called?

Ans :

Taanka or kund.

103. Which hills are among the oldest mountains in the world?

Ans :

The Aravalli Hills.

104. What is a piece of land surrounded by water on three sides called?

Ans :

A peninsula.

105. Which mountain range borders the Peninsular Plateau on the west?

Ans :

The Western Ghats.

106. What is the northern portion of the Western Ghats also known as?

Ans :

The Sahyadri Hills.

107. Name one major east-flowing river originating in the Peninsular Plateau.

Ans :

Godavari/Krishna/Kaveri/Mahanadi (any one).

108. Name one major west-flowing river.

Ans :

Narmada/Tapti (any one).

109. Which island group is located in the Arabian Sea?

Ans :

Lakshadweep.

110. What is the name of the only active volcano in India?

Ans :

Barren Island.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Briefly explain what the Indian Subcontinent refers to.

Ans :

The Indian Subcontinent refers to India and its neighbouring countries like Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan, Sri Lanka, and Myanmar, forming a large, distinct region within the continent of Asia.

112. Why are the Himalayas sometimes called the 'Water Tower of Asia'?

Ans :

The Himalayas are called the 'Water Tower of Asia' because the melting snow feeds major rivers like the Ganga, Indus, and Brahmaputra, providing essential water to millions.

113. How were the Himalayas formed.

Ans :

The Himalayas formed when the Indian landmass, after breaking from Gondwana and moving north, collided with the Eurasian landmass about 50 million years ago, causing the land between them to crumple upwards.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

114. Describe the location and climate of the Himadri range.

Ans :

The Himadri (Greater Himalayas) is the highest, northernmost, and most rugged Himalayan range. It features towering peaks like Mount Everest and remains snow-covered year-round, making life tough.

115. What is the significance of the Shivalik Hills?

Ans :

The Shivalik Hills are the lowest, outermost Himalayan range. They are rich in wildlife and act as a transition zone between the high mountains and the Gangetic Plains.

116. Explain the traditional 'kath-kuni' style of houses found in the Himalayas.

Ans :

Kath-kuni houses use locally available stone and wood. This construction keeps the house warm and helps it resist damage during mild earthquakes common in the Himalayan region.

117. Why is Ladakh called a 'cold desert'?

Ans :

Ladakh is called a cold desert because it experiences extremely low winter temperatures (below -30°C) and receives very little rainfall, despite not being hot like typical deserts.

118. How do rivers make the Gangetic Plains fertile?

Ans :

Rivers originating from the Himalayas, like the Ganga and Brahmaputra, carry and deposit rich minerals and silt onto the plains, enriching the soil and making it highly fertile for agriculture.

119. Why is transportation well-developed in the Northern Plains?

Ans :

The flat terrain of the Northern Plains makes it easy to build extensive road and railway networks, facilitating the movement of people and goods across large distances.

120. How are sand dunes formed in the Thar Desert?

Ans :

Sand dunes are formed when wind consistently blows sand particles, shifting and depositing them into hill-like formations, often with gentle windward slopes and steeper slip faces.

121. Why is water conservation important in the Thar Desert? Give an example.

Ans :

Water conservation is vital due to extreme water scarcity. People traditionally use methods like building taankas (kunds) to collect and store precious rainwater for drinking and other needs.

122. What is the main role of the Aravalli Hills concerning the Thar Desert?

Ans :

The Aravalli Hills act as a crucial natural barrier, helping to prevent the Thar Desert from expanding further eastward into the more fertile regions of northwestern India.

123. What is a plateau? Describe the main plateau of India.

Ans :

A plateau is a raised landform with a relatively flat top surface and often steep sides. India's main plateau is the triangular Peninsular Plateau in the south, an old land formation.

124. Differentiate between the Western Ghats and the Eastern Ghats.

Ans :

The Western Ghats are taller, continuous mountains along the west coast, while the Eastern Ghats are lower, broken hills along the east coast.

125. Why do most major rivers on the Peninsular Plateau flow eastwards?

Ans :

Most major rivers like Godavari and Krishna flow eastwards because the Peninsular Plateau gently tilts towards the east, directing the water flow towards the Bay of Bengal.

126. Name two tribal communities found on the Peninsular Plateau and mention their connection to nature.

Ans :

The Gond and Bhil are two tribal communities found on the plateau. Their distinct languages, traditions, and ways of life are closely connected to the natural environment, especially the forests.

NODIA

127. How do waterfalls contribute to the region they are in?

Ans :

Waterfalls, formed as rivers flow over uneven plateau surfaces, attract tourists, help generate hydroelectric power, and provide water for irrigation, thus benefiting the region economically.

128. Briefly describe India's coastline.

Ans :

India has a long coastline (over 7500 km) featuring diverse features like sandy beaches, rocky cliffs, lush forests, estuaries, deltas, and important ports facilitating trade and economic activity.

129. What is a delta, and which coast of India features major deltas?

Ans :

A delta is a fan-shaped landform created by sediment deposition where a river meets a larger water body. The East Coast of India features major deltas formed by rivers like Mahanadi and Godavari.

130. What are Lakshadweep islands made of?

Ans :

The Lakshadweep islands, located in the Arabian Sea, form an archipelago consisting of 36 islands primarily made of coral.

131. What is the historical significance of the Andaman Island.

Ans :

Historically, the Andaman Islands housed the Cellular Jail, where many Indian freedom fighters were imprisoned under severe conditions during the struggle for independence from British rule.

132. Describe the location and composition of the Sundarbans.

Ans :

The Sundarbans are located in the delta formed by the Ganga, Brahmaputra, and other rivers where they meet the Bay of Bengal. It's a unique mix of river, sea, and land, largely covered by mangrove forests.

133. Name the three hills mentioned in the Meghalaya Plateau and state what they are known for.

Ans :

The Garo, Khasi, and Jaintia hills are part of the Meghalaya Plateau. They are known for lush greenery, extremely heavy rainfall, and numerous breathtaking waterfalls.

134. What are living root bridges, and where are they found?

Ans :

Living root bridges are unique bridges created by weaving and guiding the roots of living trees over many years. They are found in Meghalaya, showcasing tribal craftsmanship.

135. How does geography influence life and economic opportunities.

Ans :

Diverse geography creates varied conditions for soil, plants, animals, and climate. This shapes lifestyles, cultures, and economic activities like farming in plains, mining in plateaus, or tourism in mountains and coasts.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the role of India's major physical boundaries (Himalayas, Seas, Ocean) in shaping its distinct character.

Ans :

The Himalayas in the north and the surrounding seas (Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal) and Indian Ocean create natural separation from the rest of Asia. These boundaries have historically influenced migration, trade routes, climate patterns (like monsoons), and defense, contributing significantly to India's unique cultural and historical development.

137. Explain why the Northern Plains support a large population compared to the Himalayan region.

Ans :

The Northern Plains are vast, flat, and possess highly fertile soil due to river deposits, ideal for extensive agriculture supporting many people. Transportation is easy. Conversely, the Himalayas have rugged terrain, harsh cold climate, limited usable land, and difficult living conditions, supporting fewer settlements.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

138. Compare the formation of the Himalayas with the age and nature of the Aravalli Hills.

Ans :

The Himalayas are relatively young mountains, formed by the ongoing collision of tectonic plates, resulting in high, rugged, still-growing peaks. The Aravallis are extremely old (billions of years), representing remnants of ancient mountains heavily eroded over time, resulting in lower, more rounded hills.

139. Analyse the connection between the Himalayas and the fertility of the Gangetic Plains.

Ans :

The Himalayas are the source of the Ganga and its tributaries. Snowmelt and rainfall feed these rivers, which flow down onto the plains carrying eroded rock material (silt). This constant deposition of nutrient-rich silt over millennia created and maintains the immense fertility of the Gangetic Plains.

140. "The Thar Desert and Ladakh are both deserts, but very different." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

Both are deserts due to low precipitation. However, the Thar is a hot desert with high daytime temperatures, sand dunes, and located in western India. Ladakh is a cold desert in the high Himalayas, experiencing freezing temperatures, rugged rocky terrain ('moonland'), and minimal rainfall, not heat.

141. Explain how the Peninsular Plateau's geology and topography influence its river systems.

Ans :

The Peninsular Plateau is made of ancient, hard rock and generally tilts eastwards. This tilt causes major rivers like Godavari and Krishna to flow east towards the Bay of Bengal. The uneven, rocky surface leads to waterfalls as rivers flow over steps or steep slopes.

142. Analyse the differences between the West Coast and East Coast of India in terms of rivers and landforms.

Ans :

The West Coast has short, swift rivers originating in the nearby Western Ghats, forming estuaries, and the coastal plain is narrow. The East Coast features long rivers (Mahanadi, Godavari) originating far inland, forming large fertile deltas as they deposit sediment, and the coastal plain is wider.

143. Why are the island groups of Lakshadweep and Andaman & Nicobar considered important for India?

Ans :

They extend India's maritime territory, vital for fishing, resource exploration, environmental protection, and naval presence (strategic importance, like outposts). They also possess unique biodiversity (coral reefs, endemic species) and hold historical significance (Andaman's Cellular Jail).

144. Analyse the relationship between heavy rainfall in the Northeast hills and the presence of 'living root bridges'.

Ans :

The extremely heavy rainfall in Northeast hills like Meghalaya causes rivers and streams to swell, making traditional bridges vulnerable. The humid environment allows tree roots (like Ficus elastica) to grow extensively. People learned to guide these strong, living roots across water bodies, creating durable, regenerating bridges suited to the wet conditions.

NODIA

145. How does the physical map of India, with its colour coding for altitude, help in understanding the country's geography?

Ans :

The colours representing different altitudes immediately show the major relief features. Dark browns/whites indicate high Himalayas, greens show low-lying plains, and yellows/oranges depict plateaus. This visual representation helps quickly grasp the distribution of mountains, plains, and plateaus and their relative heights across the country.

146. Explain the significance of the Western Ghats being declared a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

Ans :

This declaration recognizes the Western Ghats' global importance for biodiversity. They host numerous unique species of plants and animals, many found nowhere else (endemic). Being a heritage site promotes conservation efforts,

research, and awareness to protect this ecologically vital and fragile mountain range.

147. "Analyse how different geographical regions in India necessitate different types of housing, using examples."

Ans :

Geography dictates available materials and climate adaptation. In the cold, earthquake-prone Himalayas, 'kath-kuni' uses local wood/stone for warmth and stability. In hot, dry deserts like Thar, thick walls might be used for insulation. Plains might use brick/mud suitable for the climate.

148. Why is India's collision with Eurasia described as an ongoing process? What is its consequence?

Ans :

The Indian plate is still pushing northwards into the Eurasian plate, although very slowly (about 5 cm/year). This ongoing pressure means the process that formed the Himalayas continues. The consequence is that the Himalayan mountains are still rising, albeit by a tiny amount each year.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

149. Explain how the presence of minerals in the Peninsular Plateau and Aravallis contributes to economic activities.

Ans :

These regions are rich in minerals like marble, granite, zinc, copper, and coal. This geological wealth supports significant economic activities like mining and related industries (e.g., construction using granite/marble, metal extraction like zinc), providing resources and employment for centuries.

150. How might the diverse geography of India influence the food habits and clothing of people in different regions?

Ans :

Climate and available resources shape diets and clothing. Coastal areas might consume more fish; plains grow grains like wheat/rice. Cold regions require warm, woollen clothing, while hot areas favour light cotton. Deserts might have diets adapted to scarce water and clothing protecting from sun and heat.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. "A village located near Jaisalmer in the Thar Desert faces severe water shortages for several months each year. Summers are extremely hot, and rainfall is very low. The villagers primarily rely on a distant well, requiring women to walk long distances daily. Planners want to suggest a traditional, sustainable water solution.

(i) Which traditional water conservation method would be most suitable for this village?

(ii) Explain how this method helps conserve water in a desert environment.

(iii) Besides drinking, how else might the villagers need to adapt their water usage.

Ans :

(i) Building 'taankas' or 'kunds' to collect and store rainwater would be the most suitable traditional method mentioned.

(ii) Taankas are underground tanks or covered storage systems that capture scarce rainwater runoff. Storing water underground reduces evaporation in the hot climate, preserving it for drinking and essential use during dry periods.

(iii) They might adapt by using minimal water for tasks like cleaning utensils, perhaps scouring with sand first and using rinse water for other purposes like watering plants.

152. A group of students is planning a trek in the Himalayas. They have options to trek either in the Himadri region near Mount Everest base camp or in the Himachal region near Shimla during late spring. They want a trek with more biodiversity and comfortable weather.

(i) Which Himalayan range should the students choose based on their preferences?

(ii) Justify your choice using information about the climate and life in these two ranges.

(iii) What type of natural vegetation might they expect to see more of in the Himachal range compared to Himadri?

Ans :

(i) They should choose the Himachal region (Lower Himalayas) near Shimla.

(ii) The Himachal range has a more moderate climate compared to the extremely cold, snow-covered Himadri. This allows for richer biodiversity and human habitation, making the trek likely more comfortable and diverse visually.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) They would expect to see more forests (like pine, deodar) and varied plant life in the Himachal range, whereas the Himadri region is mostly rocky, icy, and above the tree line.

153. Farmers in the Gangetic Plains rely heavily on river water for irrigating their crops like rice and wheat. However, the rivers originate far away in the Himalayas. A proposal suggests building more dams upstream in the mountains for hydroelectricity.

(i) How do the Himalayas contribute to the water available for these farmers?

(ii) What positive impact do rivers have on farming in the plains besides providing water?

(iii) Briefly evaluate one potential conflict between building dams upstream and the needs of farmers downstream.

Ans :

(i) The Himalayas act as the source for rivers like the Ganga, fed by melting snow and glaciers, ensuring a continuous water supply essential for irrigation in the plains downstream.

(ii) The rivers bring down and deposit fertile silt and minerals from the mountains, constantly enriching the soil of the plains, making it highly productive for agriculture.

(iii) Building dams upstream could alter the river's natural flow, potentially reducing the amount of water or nutrient-rich silt reaching the plains downstream, negatively impacting the farmers who depend on both for irrigation and soil fertility.

154. A company wants to set up a large mining operation in the Aravalli Hills region in Rajasthan to extract marble and granite. Local communities are concerned about the environmental impact on this ancient mountain range.

(i) "What makes the Aravalli Hills geologically significant?"

(ii) Besides providing minerals, what is another crucial environmental role the Aravallis play?

(iii) Evaluate why large-scale mining could be a concern in this ecologically important region.

Ans :

(i) The Aravallis are significant as they are among the oldest mountain ranges in the world and are rich in various minerals like marble, granite, zinc, and copper.

(ii) The Aravallis act as a vital natural barrier, helping to prevent the eastward expansion of the Thar Desert into more fertile areas.

(iii) Large-scale mining could lead to deforestation, habitat loss for wildlife, soil erosion, and potentially weaken the hills' structure, possibly impacting their role as a desert barrier and water recharge zone, thus causing significant environmental damage.

NODIA

155. Two coastal villages, one on the Konkan Coast (West Coast) near Mumbai and another in the Kaveri Delta region (East Coast), experience different challenges during the monsoon season. The western village faces issues due to swift river flow from the Ghats, while the eastern village deals with potential delta flooding.

(i) Describe the general nature of rivers on the West Coast versus the East Coast.

(ii) Why might swift river flow be a challenge for the western village during monsoon?

(iii) Evaluate why delta regions like the Kaveri delta are prone to flooding but are also agriculturally rich.

Ans :

(i) West Coast rivers are generally short and swift, originating in the nearby Western Ghats and forming estuaries. East Coast rivers are longer, slower, and form large deltas as they deposit sediment.

(ii) Swift rivers, fed by heavy monsoon rains in the Ghats, can cause sudden flash floods, rapid erosion of river banks, and potentially damage infrastructure near the river mouth or estuary.

(iii) Deltas are low-lying flat lands formed by river deposits, making them vulnerable to flooding when rivers swell during monsoons. However, the same deposited silt makes the delta soil extremely fertile, ideal for agriculture like rice cultivation.

www.nodia.in

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

CHAPTER 2

UNDERSTANDING THE WEATHER

SUMMARY

1. WEATHER AND ITS ELEMENTS

Weather describes the state of the Earth's atmosphere at a specific location and time. The atmosphere itself is the layer of gases, commonly called air, that envelops our planet. Human life, along with most plant and animal life, exists within the lowest layer, the troposphere. This layer, extending roughly six to eighteen kilometers above the ground, is where nearly all weather phenomena occur. Its thickness varies, being thinner at the poles and thicker in the tropics due to temperature differences.

Elements of Weather : These are the key components that describe the weather :

1. Temperature : How hot or cold the atmosphere is.
2. Precipitation : Water falling from the sky (rain, snow, sleet, hail).
3. Atmospheric Pressure : The weight of the air pressing down on the Earth's surface.
4. Wind : Movement of air (speed and direction).
5. Humidity : Amount of water vapor in the air.

2. THE NEED FOR MEASURING WEATHER

Subjective descriptions of weather, such as feeling "chilly," can vary greatly between individuals and locations. To communicate accurately about weather conditions and enable comparisons, standardized methods of measurement are essential. Precise weather measurements are also crucial for planning various activities, from daily routines to larger operations.

Historically, humans relied on observing natural cues to forecast weather. Behaviors like birds flying low, ants moving eggs, or the opening and closing of pine cones were interpreted as signals of impending rain or storms. Such traditional knowledge, passed down through generations, is still utilized in many regions today. However, the scientific study of weather, known as meteorology, employs specialized instruments to achieve greater precision in measurement and forecasting.

3. INSTRUMENTS FOR WEATHER MEASUREMENT

Meteorologists use a range of instruments to quantify the different elements of weather accurately.

3.1 Measuring Temperature

Temperature, indicating the degree of heat or cold, is measured using a thermometer. Common scales for temperature are Celsius °C and Fahrenheit °F. Different thermometer types exist; some measure the current ambient temperature, while others record the maximum and minimum temperatures over a period, typically 24 hours. While traditional thermometers often use liquid expansion, digital thermometers are increasingly preferred for their precision and data recording capabilities. Temperature data allows for statistical analysis, such as calculating the daily temperature range (maximum minus minimum) and the mean daily temperature (average of maximum and minimum). The India Meteorological Department (IMD), established in 1875, is a key agency providing weather services in India.

3.2 Measuring Precipitation

Precipitation, including rain and snow, is measured using a rain gauge. This instrument typically consists of a collecting funnel that directs water into a calibrated measuring cylinder. The depth of the collected water, measured in millimeters (mm), indicates the amount of rainfall received over a specific area. For accurate readings, the rain gauge must be placed in an open area, free from obstructions, and on a stable, level surface.

3.3 Measuring Atmospheric Pressure

Atmospheric pressure, the force exerted by the air's weight, is a crucial weather element. Pressure is generally higher at sea level and decreases with altitude as the air becomes thinner. Lower pressure at higher altitudes means less available

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

oxygen, which can affect humans physically, causing breathlessness or fatigue. Significant drops in atmospheric pressure at any altitude can signal impending storms or cyclones, forming low-pressure systems or depressions. Atmospheric pressure is measured using a barometer, typically in units of millibars (mb). Normal sea-level pressure averages around 1013 mb, with readings below 1000 mb often indicating a depression. Monitoring pressure is vital for aviation, mountaineering, and storm forecasting.

3.4 Measuring Wind

Wind is the movement of air, driven by differences in atmospheric pressure, flowing from high-pressure to low-pressure zones. It is characterized by its speed and direction, both important for weather forecasting and various activities like sailing and aviation. Farmers also observe wind direction for rain prediction, and wind speed affects soil moisture. Wind direction is determined using a wind vane (or weather vane), which has a pointer that aligns with the wind. A wind sock, often seen at airports, serves a similar purpose. Wind speed is measured using an anemometer, which typically has rotating cups; the faster the rotation, the higher the wind speed, usually calculated in kilometers per hour (km/h).

3.5 Measuring Humidity

Humidity refers to the amount of water vapor suspended in the air. It is influenced by factors like temperature, pressure, wind, and geographical location. Humidity is measured as relative humidity, expressed as a percentage (%) representing the amount of moisture present relative to the maximum amount the air could hold at that temperature. Air saturated with water vapor has 100% relative humidity. High humidity slows down evaporation, affecting how quickly wet clothes dry or how effectively perspiration cools the body. Humidity is measured using a hygrometer. Monitoring humidity levels is important not only for comfort but also for industrial processes and the preservation of artifacts in museums.

4. WEATHER STATIONS AND DATA COLLECTION

To effectively monitor weather, the various measuring instruments are often consolidated at a weather station. At these stations, readings for temperature, precipitation, pressure, wind, and humidity are taken at regular intervals. This systematic data collection is fundamental for mapping weather patterns and developing forecasts.

Increasingly, Automated Weather Stations (AWS) are deployed. These self-operating systems utilize sensors to measure and record weather data automatically, transmitting timely information without continuous human intervention. AWS are invaluable in diverse fields like agriculture, aviation, and environmental monitoring, and can be installed in remote or inaccessible locations, such as high-altitude glacial lakes, to provide early warnings for potential hazards.

5. THE IMPORTANCE OF WEATHER PREDICTION

NODIA

Meteorologists analyze the vast amounts of data collected over time from weather stations and other sources. Using scientific methods and models, they develop weather predictions or forecasts. Accurate weather forecasting has become increasingly critical, especially as climate change contributes to more frequent and intense extreme weather events like droughts, floods, heat waves, and cyclones.

Weather predictions allow individuals, communities, and governments to prepare for potential hazards. Forecasts enable the mobilization of resources, the issuance of warnings (e.g., advising fishermen against venturing into stormy seas), and the planning of necessary precautions like evacuations, ultimately helping to protect lives and minimize damage. Weather maps and alerts often use standardized icons and color codes to communicate the severity and type of expected weather conditions effectively. Understanding and predicting weather are thus essential components of managing environmental risks and ensuring public safety.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Match the instrument with the weather element it measures.

Instrument used		**Element of the Weather**	
(1)	Hygrometer	(a)	Precipitation
(2)	Anemometer	(b)	Atmospheric pressure
(3)	Barometer	(c)	Wind direction and speed
(4)	Thermometer	(d)	Humidity
(5)	Rain gauge	(e)	Temperature

Ans :

(1) Hygrometer --- (d) Humidity
(2) Anemometer --- (c) Wind direction and speed
(3) Barometer --- (b) Atmospheric pressure
(4) Thermometer --- (e) Temperature
(5) Rain gauge --- (a) Precipitation

2. Jyotsna is deciding what clothes to pack for her school trip to Mumbai in June. She looks at the weather forecast, which predicts 29°C and 84% humidity. What would be your advice to her?

Ans :

Advise Jyotsna to pack light, breathable cotton clothes. 29°C is warm, and 84% humidity is very high, making it feel sticky and causing sweat to evaporate slowly. An umbrella or raincoat is also wise, as June is monsoon season in Mumbai.

3. Imagine that a small group of students is setting up a rain gauge. Here are some options for the site.

1. The school vegetable garden.
2. The terrace of the school building.
3. Open ground with elevated platform.
4. Compound wall of school.
5. Verandah of the school laboratory

Ans :

The best site is 3. Open ground with elevated platform.
Reasons : A rain gauge needs to be in an open area, away from obstructions like buildings or trees that might block rain. An elevated platform helps ensure it's on a flat surface and less likely to be disturbed or affected by ground-level splashes. Sites 1, 2, 4, and 5 might have obstructions or accessibility issues.

4. Below is a chart taken from IMD, Jammu and Kashmir. Looking at the data available, write a short script to report the weather conditions in different parts of Jammu and Kashmir on the date shown. (Hint : Cover the temperature range, maximum and minimum temperatures, humidity, precipitation, etc.)

Daily Weather Paramenters Jammu & Kashmir (Evening) Date 01-02-2024

Station	Max Temperature of date			Min. temperature of date			From 0830 to 1730 hrs (mm/cm)		24 hrs R/F ending 0830 of date (mm/cm)		Relative humidity	
	ACT (°C)	NOR (°C)	DEP (°C)	ACT (°C)	NOR (°C)	DEP (°C)	R/T (mm)	S/N (cm)	R/F	S/N	0830 (%)	1730 (%)
SRINAGAR	5.5	8.9	–2.4	0.2	–0.7	0.9	TR	0.0	13.4	2.4	89	89
QAZIGUND	3.2	8.5	–5.3	–0.4	–2.1	1.7	11.8	10.0	36.2	22.0	97	90
PAHALGAM	1.1	5.6	–4.5	–4.1	–6.1	2.0	6.0	8.0	19.4	23.0	96	96
KUPWARA	5.1	8.5	–3.4	–0.7	–2.3	1.6	0.5	0.0	21.9	10.0	97	94
KUKERNAG	2.6	6.6	–4.0	–1.4	–2.4	1.0	12.0	8.0	35.2	30.0	96	97
GULMARG	–2.6	1.4	–4.0	–7.6	–7.6	0.0	8.2	6.35	35.2	35.0	76	100
MUZAFARABAD	8.5	—	—	5.6	—	—	—	—	25.8	—	93	—

NODIA

Ans :

"Good evening. Here's the weather report for Jammu and Kashmir for February 1st, 2024. Most regions experienced cold conditions, with temperatures significantly below normal in many areas. Srinagar recorded a maximum of 6.5°C and a minimum near freezing at 0.2°C. Qazigund saw highs of 8.5°C but dipped to -5.3°C. Pahalgam was colder at 4.1°C maximum and -6.1°C minimum. Gulmarg remained well below freezing, with a maximum of -2.6°C and minimum of -7.6°C. Precipitation was widespread, with significant rainfall and snowfall recorded over 24 hours in places like Qazigund (36.2mm rain), Pahalgam (19.4mm rain, 8cm snow), and Gulmarg (35.2mm rain, 35cm snow). Humidity levels were very high across the valley, mostly above 90%, indicating damp conditions."

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is weather primarily defined as?
(A) The long-term atmospheric pattern
(B) The Earth's atmospheric state presently
(C) The average seasonal temperature changes
(D) The study of climate variations yearly

Ans :

(B) The Earth's atmospheric state presently
Weather refers to the state of the Earth's atmosphere at a particular time and place. It encompasses daily or hourly conditions like temperature, humidity, and wind, which can change rapidly, unlike long-term climate patterns.

2. Which layer of the Earth's atmosphere is closest to the surface and is where most weather phenomena occur?
(A) Stratosphere
(B) Mesosphere
(C) Troposphere
(D) Thermosphere

Ans :

(C) Troposphere
The troposphere is the lowest layer of Earth's atmosphere, extending from the ground up to about 6 to 18 kilometers. It is where all land-based life exists and nearly all weather events take place.

3. Why might the troposphere be thicker in the tropical zone compared to the poles?
(A) Tropical zones have more land mass
(B) Polar regions experience stronger winds
(C) Warmer air in tropics expands more
(D) Colder air at poles contracts less

Ans :

(C) Warmer air in tropics expands more
The troposphere's thickness varies; it is generally thicker in tropical zones because the warmer air in these regions expands, causing the atmospheric layer to extend to a greater height compared to colder polar regions where air contracts.

4. Which of the following best defines "precipitation" as an element of weather?
(A) The amount of water vapour in air
(B) Any form of water falling from sky
(C) The weight of the air above us
(D) The movement of air, including speed

Ans :

(B) Any form of water falling from sky
Precipitation is any form of water, whether liquid or solid, such as rain, snow, sleet, or hail, that condenses in the atmosphere and falls to the Earth's surface under gravity's influence.

5. What does "sleet" refer to in meteorology?
(A) Small, hard balls of solid ice
(B) Water in its gaseous form
(C) Frozen or partly frozen falling rain
(D) Light, fluffy crystals of frozen water

Ans :

(C) Frozen or partly frozen falling rain
Sleet is a form of precipitation consisting of ice pellets, which are essentially raindrops that freeze, or partially freeze, while falling through a sub-freezing layer of air near the Earth's surface.

6. Why is a commonly agreed way to measure temperature important when people from different climates communicate?
(A) It helps in forecasting global weather changes
(B) It prevents misunderstandings due to personal perception
(C) It is required for international travel documents
(D) It determines the type of clothing sold

Ans :

(B) It prevents misunderstandings due to personal perception
A standardized temperature measurement, like Celsius or Fahrenheit, allows for objective comparison. What feels "cold" in a warm climate might be "pleasant" in a colder one, so a common scale prevents subjective misinterpretations.

7. Observing ants carrying their eggs to higher ground is a traditional sign indicating what upcoming weather?
(A) Approaching heavy rainfall or possible floods
(B) A period of prolonged dry, sunny spell
(C) The onset of very strong winds
(D) A sudden drop in the temperature

Ans :

(A) Approaching heavy rainfall or possible floods
Traditionally, ants moving their eggs to higher locations is interpreted as an instinctive behavior to protect their colony from impending heavy rain or potential flooding, a natural sign of weather change.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

8. What is meteorology?
(A) The study of meteors and celestial bodies
(B) The systematic study of weather, its evolution
(C) The traditional methods of predicting farming
(D) The science of measuring atmospheric pollutants

Ans :

(B) The systematic study of weather, its evolution
Meteorology is the scientific discipline concerned with the systematic study of the Earth's atmosphere, focusing on weather processes and forecasting. It involves observing, understanding, and predicting atmospheric phenomena and changes.

9. Thermometers often use a coloured liquid that _____ when the temperature increases, indicating the reading.
(A) contracts
(B) evaporates
(C) expands
(D) solidifies

Ans :

(C) expands
Many traditional thermometers contain a liquid, often mercury or colored alcohol, in a narrow tube. This liquid expands uniformly when heated and contracts when cooled, allowing temperature to be measured against a calibrated scale.

10. What is the Celsius equivalent of 59 degrees Fahrenheit?
(A) 10 degrees Celsius
(B) 15 degrees Celsius
(C) 20 degrees Celsius
(D) 25 degrees Celsius

Ans :

(B) 15 degrees Celsius
The temperature scales of Celsius and Fahrenheit are interconvertible. A temperature of 15 degrees Celsius 15°C is equivalent to 59 degrees Fahrenheit (59°F), representing a cool temperature.

11. What does "mean daily temperature" refer to?
(A) The highest temperature recorded in a day
(B) The lowest temperature recorded in a day
(C) The average of maximum and minimum
(D) The temperature at midday, noon

Ans :

(C) The average of maximum and minimum
The mean daily temperature is a statistical measure calculated by adding the maximum and minimum temperatures recorded during a 24-hour period and then dividing the sum by two, providing an average value.

12. The India Meteorological Department (IMD) was established in which year?
(A) 1850
(B) 1875
(C) 1901
(D) 1947

Ans :

(B) 1875
The India Meteorological Department (IMD), responsible for meteorological observations, weather forecasting, and seismology, was established in the year 1875. It plays a crucial role in monitoring and predicting weather across the country.

13. The motto of the India Meteorological Department, "adityat jayate vrishti," means "From the sun arises rain." What scientific process does this likely refer to?
(A) Solar flares causing magnetic storms
(B) The sun's heat causing water evaporation
(C) Sunlight directly converting air into water
(D) The sun's gravity attracting rain clouds

Ans :

(B) The sun's heat causing water evaporation
The sun's energy drives the water cycle by causing evaporation from oceans, lakes, and rivers. This water vapor rises, condenses to form clouds, and eventually falls as rain, linking the sun directly to precipitation.

14. If a city records a maximum temperature of 32°C and a minimum temperature of 18°C on a particular day, what is the range of temperature for that day?
(A) 10°C
(B) 14°C
(C) 25°C
(D) 50°C

Ans :

(B) 14°C
The range of temperature is the difference between the maximum and minimum temperatures recorded over a specific period. In this case, 32°C – 18°C = 14°C, which is the temperature range for the day.

NODIA

15. What instrument is commonly used to measure the amount of rainfall?
(A) Barometer
(B) Anemometer
(C) Rain gauge
(D) Hygrometer

Ans :

(C) Rain gauge
A rain gauge is the standard instrument used by meteorologists and weather observers to measure the amount of liquid precipitation, primarily rainfall, over a set period of time in a particular location for observation.

16. When setting up a rain gauge, why should it be placed in an open area, away from objects?
(A) To protect it from direct intense sunlight
(B) To ensure it collects only pure rainwater
(C) To prevent obstructions from blocking rain
(D) To keep it safe from animals nearby

Ans :

(C) To prevent obstructions from blocking rain
A rain gauge must be placed in an open area to accurately measure rainfall. Obstructions like buildings or trees can intercept rain or cause splash-in, leading to inaccurate readings of the true amount.

17. What is atmospheric pressure?
(A) The speed of wind at high altitudes
(B) The amount of moisture held in air
(C) The pressure exerted by air's weight
(D) The force of rain hitting surface

Ans :

(C) The pressure exerted by air's weight
Atmospheric pressure is the force per unit area exerted against a surface by the weight of the air molecules above that surface. It varies with altitude and weather conditions across the globe.

18. Why is atmospheric pressure generally lower at higher altitudes, like on mountains?
(A) Mountains attract less air due to gravity
(B) The air is denser at higher altitudes
(C) There is less air above pushing down
(D) Temperatures are much colder

Ans :

(C) There is less air above pushing down
At higher altitudes, there is a shorter column of air above, meaning less weight of air is pressing down. This results in lower atmospheric pressure compared to sea level or lower elevations over time.

19. What is the approximate normal atmospheric pressure at sea level in millibars (mb)?
(A) 650 mb
(B) 900 mb
(C) 1013 mb
(D) 1200 mb

Ans :

(C) 1013 mb
The standard or normal atmospheric pressure at mean sea level is approximately 1013 millibars (mb). Pressures below 1000 mb often indicate a low-pressure system or depression, potentially leading to stormy weather conditions.

20. What term is used by meteorologists when atmospheric pressure drops dramatically, potentially leading to storms?
(A) An inversion
(B) A heatwave
(C) A depression
(D) An occlusion

Ans :

(C) A depression
A dramatic drop in atmospheric pressure signifies a low-pressure system, often referred to as a depression by meteorologists. These systems can intensify and lead to unsettled weather, including storms or even cyclones in regions.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

21. Why might people sometimes feel breathless or dizzy at high altitudes like Khardung La (over 5600 metres)?
(A) The increased air pressure strains the lungs
(B) The extreme cold affects blood circulation
(C) There is less oxygen due to lower pressure
(D) The bright sunlight causes temporary disorientation

Ans :

(C) There is less oxygen due to lower pressure
At high altitudes, atmospheric pressure is lower, meaning the air is thinner and contains less oxygen per unit volume. This reduced oxygen availability can lead to symptoms like breathlessness, dizziness, or fatigue as the body struggles.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

22. Assertion (A) : Wind is the movement of air from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.
Reason (R) : Differences in atmospheric pressure are primarily caused by uniform heating of the Earth's surface.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Wind is indeed the movement of air from high to low-pressure areas. However, pressure differences arise from uneven heating of the Earth's surface, not uniform heating, which creates temperature and density variations.

23. A _____ has a rotating arm with a pointer and a tail to show wind direction.
(A) barometer
(B) wind vane
(C) hygrometer
(D) thermometer

Ans :

(B) wind vane
A wind vane, also known as a weather vane, is an instrument used to indicate the direction from which the wind is blowing. It typically has a tail that causes it to orient itself with the wind.

24. What is the primary purpose of a "wind sock" often seen at airports?
(A) To measure the exact speed of wind
(B) To indicate wind direction during take-off
(C) To collect air samples for pollution
(D) To generate small amounts of power

Ans :

(B) To indicate wind direction during take-off
A wind sock is a conical textile tube designed to indicate wind direction and relative wind speed. At airports, it provides pilots with a visual cue of wind conditions for safe take-offs and landings.

25. What is the main difference between a wind vane and an anemometer?
(A) Wind vane measures speed; anemometer measures humidity
(B) Wind vane measures direction; anemometer measures speed
(C) Wind vane measures pressure; anemometer measures direction
(D) Wind vane measures rainfall; anemometer measures temperature

Ans :

(B) Wind vane measures direction; anemometer measures speed
A wind vane is used to determine the direction of the wind. An anemometer, on the other hand, is an instrument designed to measure the speed or velocity of the wind, often in kilometers per hour.

NODIA

26. What does "humidity" refer to as an element of weather?
(A) The temperature of the air today
(B) The pressure exerted by the air
(C) The amount of water vapour in air
(D) The speed of the prevailing wind

Ans :

(C) The amount of water vapour in air
Humidity is the concentration of water vapor present in the air. Water vapor, the gaseous state of water, is generally invisible to the human eye and is a key component of the atmosphere.

27. Why do wet clothes typically dry faster on a day with low humidity compared to high humidity, assuming same temperature?
(A) Low humidity increases air pressure aiding it
(B) High humidity makes the air much heavier
(C) Low humidity air can absorb more moisture
(D) High humidity air contains more drying agents

Ans :

(C) Low humidity air can absorb more moisture
When humidity is low, the air has a greater capacity to absorb additional water vapor. This allows water from wet clothes to evaporate more quickly into the drier air than on a high humidity day.

28. A city near the sea, like Kochi, generally experiences higher humidity than an inland desert city like Jaipur. This is primarily because the air near the sea picks up more moisture through evaporation from the large water body.
(A) The sea has higher air pressure usually
(B) The sea releases more pollutants in air
(C) The sea is a large source of moisture
(D) The sea has warmer temperatures

Ans :

(C) The sea is a large source of moisture

Coastal areas like Kochi tend to have higher humidity because of their proximity to the sea, which acts as a vast source of moisture. Evaporation from the sea surface adds water vapor to the air.

29. What instrument is used to measure the humidity of the air?
(A) Anemometer
(B) Barometer
(C) Thermometer
(D) Hygrometer

Ans :

(D) Hygrometer
A hygrometer is an instrument specifically designed to measure the amount of water vapor in the air, which is known as humidity. There are various types of hygrometers based on different operating principles for this.

30. What does "relative humidity" of 100% indicate?
(A) The air contains absolutely no water vapour
(B) The air is completely dry and arid
(C) The air is saturated with water vapour
(D) The air is at its coldest point

Ans :

(C) The air is saturated with water vapour
A relative humidity of 100% means the air is holding the maximum amount of water vapor it can at that particular temperature and pressure; it is saturated. Further cooling or adding more vapor would lead to condensation.

31. Which of the following instrument-weather element pairings is INCORRECT?
(A) Thermometer - Measures air's temperature
(B) Rain gauge - Measures total precipitation
(C) Anemometer - Measures air pressure level
(D) Hygrometer - Measures moisture in air

Ans :

(C) Anemometer - Measures air pressure level
An anemometer measures wind speed, not air pressure. Air pressure is measured by a barometer. Thermometers measure temperature, rain gauges measure precipitation, and hygrometers measure humidity, making the other pairs correct.

32. What is the primary function of an Automated Weather Station (AWS)?
(A) To manually record observations by staff
(B) To provide long-range climate change models
(C) To automatically measure and record weather
(D) To control local weather conditions artificially

Ans :

(C) To automatically measure and record weather
An Automated Weather Station (AWS) is designed to automatically measure and record various weather parameters like temperature, humidity, wind, and precipitation using sensors, without needing human intervention for routine data collection.

33. Why is it particularly important for farmers to be aware of wind data like speed and direction?
(A) Wind affects the visibility for planting crops
(B) Wind influences soil dryness and rain patterns
(C) Strong winds can damage farm equipment
(D) Wind helps in pollinating all crop types

Ans :

(B) Wind influences soil dryness and rain patterns
Wind speed affects how quickly soil dries out, and wind direction can help predict where rain might come from. Both are crucial for farmers in planning irrigation, planting, and other agricultural activities effectively.

34. Meteorologists collect weather data over long periods. What is the primary purpose of this long-term data collection?
(A) To write historical accounts of weather events
(B) To study the impact of weather on monuments
(C) To predict future weather and climate patterns
(D) To determine the best locations for cities

Ans :

(C) To predict future weather and climate patterns
Long-term weather data allows meteorologists to identify patterns, understand climatic trends, and develop more accurate models for forecasting future weather conditions and studying climate change, which is crucial for planning.

35. How do weather predictions, such as those for heavy rain or cyclones, help local governments?
(A) They allow governments to change the weather
(B) They enable governments to collect more taxes
(C) They help governments to mobilize resources fast
(D) They primarily boost the local tourism industry

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(C) They help governments to mobilize resources fast
Accurate weather predictions enable local governments to prepare for potential disasters by mobilizing resources, alerting communities, and planning evacuation or relief efforts, thereby minimizing damage and ensuring public safety from all.

36. What does the term "ambient temperature" refer to?
(A) The temperature inside a controlled laboratory
(B) The temperature of the immediate surroundings
(C) The highest temperature reached in a month
(D) The average temperature of the Earth

Ans :

(B) The temperature of the immediate surroundings
Ambient temperature refers to the temperature of the air or environment in the immediate vicinity of where the measurement is being taken. It is the background temperature of a given, local environment.

37. What is the unit generally used to display atmospheric pressure on a barometer?
(A) Celsius
(B) Millimeter
(C) Millibar
(D) Kilometer

Ans :

(C) Millibar
Barometers, instruments used to measure atmospheric pressure, typically display readings in millibars (mb). This unit is a standard in meteorology for reporting and comparing atmospheric pressure values across different locations and times.

38. How does "weather" differ from "climate"?
(A) Weather is long-term; climate is short-term state
(B) Weather is predictable; climate is unpredictable more
(C) Weather is daily conditions; climate is average
(D) Weather is global; climate is local

Ans :

(C) Weather is daily conditions; climate is average
Weather describes the atmospheric conditions at a specific place and time (e.g., daily rain or sun). Climate refers to the average weather patterns over a long period, typically 30 years or more, for that region.

NODIA

39. Pine cones are known to _____ in humid conditions to protect their seeds.
(A) open
(B) close
(C) shrink
(D) expand

Ans :

(B) close
Pine cones exhibit a natural mechanism where they close their scales in humid or wet conditions. This action helps to protect the seeds within from unfavorable moisture levels until drier conditions prevail for dispersal.

40. A group of mountaineers is planning an expedition to a very high peak. They are advised to acclimatize by making several stops on their ascent. This advice is primarily to help their bodies adjust to what change?
(A) The increasing levels of ultraviolet radiation exposure
(B) The lower atmospheric pressure and oxygen levels
(C) The progressively colder temperatures experienced
(D) The difficulty of navigating the snowy terrain

Ans :

(B) The lower atmospheric pressure and oxygen levels
Acclimatization during high-altitude ascents is crucial for the body to adapt to the lower atmospheric pressure and reduced oxygen availability. Gradual ascent helps prevent altitude sickness by allowing physiological adjustments to occur in the body.

41. What is meant by "water vapour"?
(A) Tiny droplets of liquid water suspended
(B) Water in its solid, icy crystal form
(C) Water in its gaseous, invisible state
(D) A mixture of water and air pollutants

Ans :

(C) Water in its gaseous, invisible state
Water vapour is the term for water when it is in its gaseous state, as opposed to liquid water

or solid ice. It is an important component of the atmosphere and plays a key role in weather.

42. Which of these is NOT listed as one of the five main elements of weather?
(A) Temperature condition
(B) Cloud cover
(C) Wind movements
(D) Humidity level

Ans :

(B) Cloud cover
The five main elements of weather typically discussed are temperature, precipitation, atmospheric pressure, wind (speed and direction), and humidity. While cloud cover is related to weather, it's often considered a characteristic resulting from these primary elements.

43. Why is it important for meteorologists to measure both the speed and direction of wind?
(A) It helps determine the exact temperature only
(B) It indicates the likelihood of earthquakes soon
(C) It influences air travel and sailing significantly
(D) It directly causes changes in air pressure

Ans :

(C) It influences air travel and sailing significantly
Wind speed and direction are crucial for various applications, including aviation and sailing, as they directly impact flight paths and sea navigation. They also help in forecasting weather patterns, such as the movement of storms.

44. Which of the following is NOT a form of precipitation?
(A) Rain
(B) Snow
(C) Dew
(D) Hail

Ans :

(C) Dew
Precipitation involves water falling from the atmosphere to the Earth's surface, like rain, snow, or hail. Dew, however, forms directly on surfaces through condensation of water vapor when the surface cools sufficiently, not by falling.

45. Which of the following pairs correctly matches a traditional weather predictor with the weather it typically indicates?
(A) Birds flying high - Approaching heavy storm
(B) Frogs croaking loudly - Prolonged dry spell
(C) Pine cones opening - High humidity level
(D) Ants moving eggs high - Coming rain

Ans :

(D) Ants moving eggs high - Coming rain
Many traditional weatherlores exist. Ants moving their eggs to higher ground is often seen as an indicator of impending rain. Birds flying low (not high) might suggest storms, and pine cones close in high humidity.

46. The National Disaster Management Authority (NDMA) set up an Automated Weather Station (AWS) in 2023 at a glacial lake in which Indian state?
(A) Uttarakhand
(B) Himachal Pradesh
(C) Sikkim
(D) Arunachal Pradesh

Ans :

(C) Sikkim
In 2023, the NDMA installed an AWS at a high-altitude glacial lake in Sikkim. This station provides crucial early information about weather conditions, which is vital for disaster preparedness in such sensitive regions.

47. If the relative humidity in Jaipur is 30% and in Mumbai it is 75% on the same day with similar temperatures, where would you expect to sweat more and feel "stickier"?
(A) Jaipur, because dry air absorbs sweat quickly
(B) Mumbai, because high humidity slows sweat evaporation
(C) Equally in both, as temperature is similar
(D) Neither, as sweating depends on wind speed

Ans :

(B) Mumbai, because high humidity slows sweat evaporation
High relative humidity, as in Mumbai (75%), means the air is already quite moist. This slows down the evaporation of sweat from the skin, making one feel hotter and "stickier" than in drier air.

48. Assertion (A) : Digital thermometers are increasingly preferred over liquid-in-glass thermometers for weather observation by users.
Reason (R) : Digital thermometers can often record more data and are generally more precise in their readings.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Digital thermometers offer advantages like higher precision and the ability to store data, making them more suitable for detailed meteorological records and analysis compared to traditional liquid-in-glass types which are older.

49. Which of the following weather phenomena and its primary characteristic is an INCORRECT pairing?
(A) Heat Wave - Prolonged period of excessive hotness
(B) Cold Wave - Rapid and significant drop
(C) Ground Frost - Ice formation on ground surface
(D) Dust Storm - Heavy rainfall with strong winds

Ans :

(D) Dust Storm - Heavy rainfall with strong winds
A dust storm is characterized by strong winds carrying large quantities of dust over an extensive area, typically in arid or semi-arid regions. Heavy rainfall is not a defining feature; in fact, they often occur in dry conditions.

50. Consider the following statements about weather elements :
1. Atmospheric pressure increases with altitude .
2. Humidity refers to the weight of the air.
3. Wind speed is measured in kilometers per hour.
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 3 only
Atmospheric pressure decreases with altitude. Humidity is the amount of water vapor in the air, not its weight (which relates to pressure). Wind speed is commonly measured in units like kilometers per hour (km/h).

51. The layer of gases that surrounds planets like Earth is called the _____.
(A) lithosphere
(B) hydrosphere
(C) atmosphere
(D) biosphere

Ans :

(C) atmosphere
The atmosphere is the envelope of gases surrounding a planet or other celestial body. Earth's atmosphere is composed mainly of nitrogen and oxygen and is essential for life and weather processes.

52. Why is it that "what is cold for Krishnan (from Chennai) may be pleasant for Amir (from Kashmir)"?
(A) People from different regions have different clothes
(B) Their bodies are physiologically adapted to climates
(C) They use different types of heating systems
(D) They speak different languages about weather

Ans :

(B) Their bodies are physiologically adapted to climates
People adapt to the typical climate of their region. What someone from a consistently warm place like Chennai perceives as cold might be considered mild or pleasant by someone accustomed to colder conditions like in Kashmir.

53. The opening and closing of pine cones are natural mechanisms driven by what environmental factor?
(A) Changes in ambient light intensity
(B) Fluctuations in atmospheric air pressure
(C) Variations in environmental wind speed
(D) Changes in environmental humidity levels

Ans :

(D) Changes in environmental humidity levels
Pine cones open and close in response to changes in environmental humidity. They tend to close up in damp or humid conditions to protect seeds and open up in dry conditions to release them.

54. What does the term "forecast" mean in the context of weather?
(A) To document past weather events accurately
(B) To predict or find out in advance
(C) To measure current atmospheric conditions
(D) To study the causes of weather change

Ans :

(B) To predict or find out in advance

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

In meteorology, a forecast is a prediction of future weather conditions for a specific location and time period. It is based on analysis of current conditions and meteorological models of all data.

55. How does the process of evaporation cause a cooling effect on a surface?
(A) Evaporation adds heat to the nearby air
(B) Evaporation consumes heat energy from surface
(C) Evaporation releases cold particles into air
(D) Evaporation reduces the air pressure above

Ans :

(B) Evaporation consumes heat energy from surface
Evaporation is a cooling process because the phase change from liquid to gas requires energy (latent heat of vaporization). This energy is absorbed from the surface where evaporation occurs, thus lowering its temperature.

56. In which temperature scale is the freezing point of water 0°C and the boiling point 100°C?
(A) Fahrenheit scale
(B) Celsius scale
(C) Kelvin scale
(D) Rankine scale

Ans :

(B) Celsius scale
The Celsius scale is defined by setting the freezing point of water at 0°C and the boiling point of water at 100°C at standard atmospheric pressure. It is widely used globally for temperature measurement.

57. A museum needs to preserve delicate ancient artifacts. Which weather element would they need to monitor and control carefully to prevent damage?
(A) Wind speed mainly
(B) Atmospheric pressure
(C) Humidity levels
(D) Rainfall amount

Ans :

(C) Humidity levels
Museums must carefully control humidity levels because fluctuations can damage delicate artifacts. High humidity can promote mold growth and corrosion, while low humidity can cause materials like wood or paper to dry out and crack.

58. Which instrument and its primary function is an INCORRECT match?
(A) Barometer - Measures the weight of air
(B) Wind sock - Indicates wind speed accurately
(C) Thermometer - Indicates how hot or cold
(D) Rain gauge - Collects and measures rainfall

Ans :

(B) Wind sock - Indicates wind speed accurately
A wind sock primarily indicates wind direction and gives a general sense of wind speed (fuller sock means stronger wind), but it doesn't provide an accurate, calibrated measurement of speed like an anemometer does.

59. How does a "depression" (low-pressure system) differ from normal atmospheric pressure conditions?
(A) A depression has significantly higher air pressure
(B) A depression has significantly lower air pressure
(C) A depression indicates completely stable weather
(D) A depression forms over very cold

Ans :

(B) A depression has significantly lower air pressure
A depression, or low-pressure system, is an area where the atmospheric pressure is notably lower than that of the surrounding areas. These systems are often associated with cloudy, windy, and rainy weather conditions.

60. The term "statistics" in weather monitoring involves what key activity?
(A) Controlling the weather using advanced technologies
(B) Creating artistic representations of cloud patterns
(C) Gathering and analyzing data to detect patterns
(D) Writing descriptive accounts of daily observations

Ans :

(C) Gathering and analyzing data to detect patterns
In weather monitoring, statistics involves the collection, organization, analysis, interpretation, and presentation of weather data. This helps in detecting patterns, understanding trends, and making predictions about future weather conditions.

NODIA

61. What is "acclimatization" in the context of high altitudes?
(A) Predicting weather changes in mountain regions
(B) The body's process of adjusting to conditions
(C) Building weather-resistant structures in mountains
(D) Wearing specialized clothing for cold temperatures

Ans :

(B) The body's process of adjusting to conditions
Acclimatization refers to the physiological process by which an organism, like the human body, adjusts to changes in its environment, such as the lower oxygen levels and atmospheric pressure found at high altitudes.

62. Why are weather predictions for events like heat waves or cold waves important for public health?
(A) They help people choose fashionable clothing items
(B) They allow for planning of outdoor festivals
(C) They warn vulnerable populations to take care
(D) They determine school holiday schedules

Ans :

(C) They warn vulnerable populations to take care
Predictions for extreme temperature events like heat waves or cold waves are vital for public health. They allow authorities to issue warnings so that vulnerable individuals (e.g., elderly, young children) can take necessary precautions.

63. A pilot is preparing for a flight. Along with temperature and visibility, the pilot checks for data from an anemometer and a wind vane at the airport. What specific weather information are these instruments providing for the pilot's safety?
(A) Air pressure and humidity level changes
(B) Rainfall intensity and cloud ceiling height
(C) Wind speed and wind direction
(D) Likelihood of fog or mist formation

Ans :

(C) Wind speed and wind direction
An anemometer measures wind speed, and a wind vane indicates wind direction. Both are critical for pilots as wind conditions significantly affect aircraft performance, fuel consumption, and safety during takeoff, flight, and landing operations.

64. The India Meteorological Department's motto suggests that _____ arises from the sun.
(A) wind
(B) snow
(C) rain
(D) frost

Ans :

(C) rain
The IMD's motto, "adityat jayate vrishti," translates to "From the sun arises rain." This highlights the fundamental role of solar energy in driving the water cycle, which ultimately leads to rainfall and other precipitation.

65. All of the following are typically measured by a standard Automated Weather Station (AWS) EXCEPT :
(A) Soil moisture content
(B) Atmospheric pressure
(C) Wind speed, direction
(D) Air temperature

Ans :

(A) Soil moisture content
Standard Automated Weather Stations typically measure atmospheric parameters like temperature, pressure, wind, humidity, and precipitation. While some specialized AWS might measure soil moisture, it's not a universal component of all standard stations.

66. Which term correctly matches its description?
(A) Sleet - Light drizzle mixed with air fog
(B) Hail - Water vapour condensing on ground
(C) Water Vapour - Water in its invisible gaseous
(D) Precipitation - The measure of air's density

Ans :

(C) Water Vapour - Water in its invisible gaseous
Water vapour is indeed water in its gaseous, invisible state. Sleet is frozen rain. Hail consists of ice balls. Precipitation is water falling from clouds. Air density is related to pressure and temperature.

67. Assertion (A) : The troposphere is thicker at the equator than at the poles.
Reason (R) : The Earth rotates faster at the equator, causing the atmosphere to bulge outwards due to force.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The troposphere is thicker at the equator mainly due to the expansion of warmer air, not primarily because of centrifugal force from Earth's rotation. While rotation has some effect, thermal expansion is the dominant factor.

68. Which weather instrument is INCORRECTLY paired with the unit of measurement it typically uses or implies?
(A) Thermometer - Degrees Celsius or degrees Fahrenheit
(B) Rain gauge - Millimeters or the inches
(C) Barometer - Kilometers per hour (km/h)
(D) Anemometer - Kilometers per hour (km/h)

Ans :

(C) Barometer - Kilometers per hour (km/h)
A barometer measures atmospheric pressure, typically in millibars (mb) or inches of mercury, not kilometers per hour, which is a unit for speed (used by anemometers for wind speed).

69. Consider these statements about weather :
1. Weather describes the state of the stratosphere.
2. Humidity is the weight of air above.
3. Traditional knowledge sometimes uses animal behavior.

Which of the statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 only
(B) 3 only
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 3 only
Weather primarily occurs in the troposphere. Humidity is the amount of water vapor in the air. Traditional knowledge does indeed often rely on observing animal behavior and plant signs to predict weather changes.

70. Imagine you are designing a system to warn fishermen before a cyclone hits the coast. Your system relies on data about rapidly falling air pressure and increasing wind speeds over the sea. Which two instruments would be most essential for this system?
(A) Thermometer and Hygrometer
(B) Rain gauge and Wind sock
(C) Barometer and Anemometer
(D) Sunshine recorder and Evaporimeter

Ans :

(C) Barometer and Anemometer
Cyclones are characterized by a significant drop in atmospheric pressure (measured by a barometer) and very high wind speeds (measured by an anemometer). These two instruments would provide the critical data needed for an early warning system.

71. Why is it generally true that "from rain comes food"?
(A) Rainwater contains all essential plant nutrients
(B) Rain directly causes seeds to germinate faster
(C) Agriculture heavily depends on adequate rainfall
(D) Rain washes away pests from the crop

Ans :

(C) Agriculture heavily depends on adequate rainfall
Water is essential for plant growth, and in many agricultural systems, rainfall is the primary source of water for crops. Adequate and timely rain is crucial for successful harvests, thus linking rain directly to food production.

72. What type of information does the "legend" on a weather map typically provide?
(A) The names of the meteorologists who made it
(B) The historical weather data for that region
(C) Explanations of the symbols and colors used
(D) The cost of accessing the weather data

Ans :

(C) Explanations of the symbols and colors used
The legend, or key, on a weather map explains the meaning of various symbols, colors, and lines used to represent different weather conditions like temperature contours, pressure systems, precipitation types, and warning areas.

73. What is a "weather station" in meteorological terms?
(A) A television channel dedicated to weather news
(B) A location where weather instruments are gathered
(C) A period of unusually stable weather condition
(D) A computer program that simulates weather data

NODIA

Ans :

(B) A location where weather instruments are gathered
A weather station is a facility, either on land or sea, with instruments and equipment for measuring atmospheric conditions to provide information for weather forecasts and to study the weather and climate of Earth.

74. The systematic study of weather and its evolution, forming the basis for weather forecasting, is known as _____.
(A) geology
(B) oceanography
(C) meteorology
(D) astronomy

Ans :

(C) meteorology
Meteorology is the branch of science concerned with the processes and phenomena of the atmosphere, especially as a means of forecasting the weather. It is a key atmospheric science discipline.

75. How does the information from a thermometer indicating 35°C differ in implication from a hygrometer reading of 80% relative humidity?
(A) Thermometer shows heat; hygrometer shows air dryness
(B) Thermometer shows cold; hygrometer shows air wetness
(C) Thermometer shows air hotness; hygrometer shows moisture
(D) Thermometer shows pressure; hygrometer shows wind speed

Ans :

(C) Thermometer shows air hotness; hygrometer shows moisture
A thermometer measures temperature (35°C) indicating hot air), while a hygrometer measures relative humidity (80% indicating high moisture content in the air). Both are distinct but important elements of weather and climate.

76. A weather warning map shows an icon of a "Dust Storm" over a particular region. What conditions would people in that area likely experience?
(A) Heavy snowfall and freezing temperatures
(B) Strong winds carrying sand and reduced visibility
(C) Continuous light rain and overcast skies
(D) Calm, clear skies with very high humidity

Ans :

(B) Strong winds carrying sand and reduced visibility
A dust storm involves strong, turbulent winds that lift large quantities of sand and dust from bare, dry soil into the atmosphere, leading to significantly reduced visibility and poor air quality in affected regions.

77. Why is the troposphere, the lowest atmospheric layer, crucial for land-based plants and animals, including humans?
(A) It contains the protective ozone layer
(B) It is where they live and breathe air
(C) It is the warmest layer of atmosphere
(D) It blocks all harmful solar radiation

Ans :

(B) It is where they live and breathe air
The troposphere contains the air (oxygen, nitrogen, etc.) that land-based plants and animals need for respiration and survival. It is the atmospheric layer where all terrestrial life exists and interacts with weather phenomena.

78. Which of these phrases best describes the typical range for relative humidity in "dry weather"?
(A) 0% to 10%
(B) 20% to 40%
(C) 50% to 60%
(D) 80% to 100%

Ans :

(B) 20% to 40%
Dry weather conditions are generally associated with a relative humidity range between 20% and 40%. In this range, the air has a relatively low water vapor content and can readily absorb more moisture.

79. What does the term "Range of temperature" signify?
(A) The average temperature over a full year
(B) The temperature at which water will freeze
(C) The highest temperature ever recorded globally
(D) Max temperature minus min temperature period

Ans :

(D) Max temperature minus min temperature period
The range of temperature refers to the difference between the maximum temperature and the

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

minimum temperature recorded during a specific period, typically a day, providing a measure of temperature variability over time.

80. If the weather forecast for a coastal area predicts a "cyclone approaching with a central pressure below 1000 mb," what should residents primarily prepare for?
(A) A period of calm, sunny weather soon
(B) Very strong winds and heavy rainfall
(C) A sudden and extreme drop in temperature
(D) Dense fog reducing visibility to zero

Ans :

(B) Very strong winds and heavy rainfall
A cyclone is an intense low-pressure system (indicated by pressure below 1000 mb) that brings very strong winds, heavy rainfall, and potentially storm surges to coastal areas, requiring significant safety precautions and preparations.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following weather elements with their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Temperature	A.	Movement of air, including its speed and direction
2.	Precipitation	B.	How hot or cold the atmosphere is
3.	Wind	C.	Amount of water vapour in the air
4.	Humidity	D.	Water (rain, snow, sleet, hail) falling from the sky

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Temperature measures atmospheric heat. Precipitation is any form of water from the sky. Wind is air movement with speed/direction. Humidity is the amount of water vapour in the air.

82. Match the following weather instruments with what they measure :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Thermometer	A.	Atmospheric pressure
2.	Rain Gauge	B.	Temperature
3.	Barometer	C.	Humidity
4.	Hygrometer	D.	Amount of rainfall

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
A thermometer measures temperature. A rain gauge measures rainfall. A barometer measures atmospheric pressure. A hygrometer measures the amount of water vapour or humidity in the air.

83. Match the following terms related to atmospheric layers and weather study :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Troposphere	A.	Systematic study of weather and its evolution
2.	Atmosphere	B.	Layer of gases surrounding a planet, like Earth's air
3.	Meteorology	C.	Lowest layer of Earth's atmosphere where weather occurs
4.	Automated Weather Station (AWS)	D.	Self-operating system measuring various weather data automatically

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D
The troposphere is the lowest atmospheric layer where weather happens. The atmosphere is the layer of gases around a planet. Meteorology is the scientific study of weather. An AWS automatically measures weather data.

NODIA

84. Match the following temperature-related concepts :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Celsius Scale	A.	Maximum temperature minus minimum temperature over a period
2.	Fahrenheit Scale	B.	Temperature scale where 15°C equals 59°F
3.	Range of temperature	C.	Another common temperature scale, different from Celsius
4.	Mean daily temperature	D.	(Maximum temperature + Minimum temperature of the day)/2

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(c) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The Celsius scale is a temperature measure; 15°C is 59°F. Fahrenheit is another temperature scale. Range of temperature is the difference between maximum and minimum. Mean daily temperature is the average of daily high and low.

85. Match the following weather phenomena and tools :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Sleet	A.	Instrument indicating wind direction
2.	Wind Vane	B.	Frozen or partly frozen rain
3.	Anemometer	C.	Instrument measuring wind speed
4.	Atmospheric Pressure	D.	Weight of the air, measured by a barometer in millibars (mb)

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Sleet is frozen or partly frozen rain. A wind vane shows wind direction. An anemometer measures wind speed. Atmospheric pressure is air's weight, measured by a barometer.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What is the layer of gases surrounding the Earth called?

Ans :

Atmosphere.

87. In which layer of the atmosphere do most weather phenomena occur?

Ans :

Troposphere.

88. Name one element of weather.

Ans :

Temperature/Precipitation/Atmospheric Pressure/Wind/Humidity (any one).

89. What is precipitation?

Ans :

Any form of water (rain, snow, sleet, hail) falling from the sky.

90. What is the term for water in its gaseous form?

Ans :

Water vapour.

91. What is the systematic study of weather and its evolution called?

Ans :

Meteorology.

92. Name one scale used to measure temperature.

Ans :

Celsius/Fahrenheit (any one).

93. What does 'ambient' temperature mean?

Ans :

Temperature of the immediate surroundings.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

94. What is the motto of the India Meteorological Department (IMD)?

Ans :

adityat jayate vrishti (From the sun arises rain).

95. What instrument is used to measure the amount of rainfall?

Ans :

Rain gauge.

96. In which unit is rainfall typically measured using a rain gauge?

Ans :

Millimetres (mm).

97. What is atmospheric pressure?

Ans :

The pressure exerted by the weight of the air above us.

98. Where is atmospheric pressure generally higher : at sea level or on a mountain top?

Ans :

At sea level.

99. What instrument measures atmospheric pressure?

Ans :

Barometer.

100. What is the common unit used to display atmospheric pressure?

Ans :

Millibar (mb).

101. What is the term for adjusting to a new climate or condition?

Ans :

Acclimatise.

102. What causes wind?

Ans :

Air moving from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.

103. What instrument indicates wind direction using a rotating pointer and tail?

Ans :

Wind vane (or weather vane).

104. What instrument measures wind speed using rotating cups?

Ans :

Anemometer.

105. What does humidity refer to?

Ans :

The amount of water vapour present in the air.

NODIA

106. What is the term for humidity measured as a percentage relative to the maximum water vapour air can hold?

Ans :

Relative humidity.

107. What instrument is used to measure humidity?

Ans :

Hygrometer.

108. What is a place that brings together various weather instruments called?

Ans :

Weather station.

109. What does AWS stand for?

Ans :

Automated Weather Station.

110. What are the strong, hot, dusty winds that blow in north India called?

Ans :

Loo.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Explain briefly why we experience weather only in the troposphere.

Ans :

The troposphere is the lowest layer of the atmosphere where almost all water vapour and atmospheric activity (clouds, storms) occur, and it's where we live.

112. How does the thickness of the troposphere vary between the poles and the tropics?

Ans :

The troposphere is thicker in the warmer tropical zone because warm air expands, and less thick at the colder poles where cold air contracts.

113. Why is it necessary to have standard ways to measure weather elements like temperature?

Ans :

Standard measurements allow people in different places (like Krishnan in Chennai and Amir in Kashmir) to accurately communicate and compare weather conditions, avoiding confusion based on personal feeling.

114. Give two examples of how animals' behaviour can traditionally indicate weather changes.

Ans :

Ants carrying their eggs to higher ground can indicate expected heavy rain. Frogs croaking loudly are often believed to signal the arrival of rain.

115. How do pine cones help indicate humidity levels?

Ans :

Pine cones naturally close their scales in humid conditions to protect seeds and open them in dry conditions to release seeds, acting as natural humidity indicators.

116. What is the difference between a clinical thermometer and a laboratory thermometer?

Ans :

Clinical thermometers are used for measuring body temperature with a specific range, while laboratory thermometers measure a wider range of temperatures found in experiments or the environment.

117. How is the 'range of temperature' for a day calculated?

Ans :

The range of temperature is calculated by subtracting the minimum temperature recorded during a specific period (usually 24 hours) from the maximum temperature recorded during that same period.

118. Explain the principle behind how a rain gauge measures rainfall.

Ans :

A rain gauge uses a funnel to collect rainwater into a calibrated measuring cylinder. The depth of the collected water directly indicates the amount of rainfall received over an area.

119. Why does atmospheric pressure decrease as we go higher up a mountain?

Ans :

As altitude increases, the column of air above gets shorter and thinner, meaning there is less air pressing down, resulting in lower atmospheric pressure.

120. Why might people feel breathless or dizzy at high altitudes?

Ans :

At high altitudes, lower atmospheric pressure means the air is thinner with less oxygen. The body gets less oxygen, making it work harder, causing breathlessness or dizziness.

121. What is a 'depression' in meteorological terms?

Ans :

A depression is a low-pressure system where atmospheric pressure drops significantly below the normal level (e.g., below 1000 mb), often leading to stormy weather or cyclones.

NODIA

122. Why is measuring atmospheric pressure important for weather forecasting?

Ans :

Monitoring changes in atmospheric pressure, especially sudden drops, helps meteorologists predict the formation and movement of storms, depressions, or cyclones, enabling timely warnings.

123. Explain the function of a wind vane (weather vane).

Ans :

A wind vane has a pointer and a tail that rotates freely. The wind pushes the tail, causing the pointer to align with and indicate the direction from which the wind is blowing.

124. How does an anemometer measure wind speed?

Ans :

An anemometer has cups that rotate when the wind blows. A meter counts the rotations over time and calculates the wind speed, typically in kilometres per hour (km/h).

125. Why would humidity likely be higher in Kochi than in Jaipur?

Ans :

Kochi is a coastal city, close to the sea which is a large source of water vapour through evaporation, leading to higher humidity compared to Jaipur, which is inland.

126. How does humidity affect the rate at which water evaporates?

Ans :

When humidity is high (more water vapour already in the air), the rate of evaporation slows down because the air cannot easily absorb more moisture.

127. Explain why wet clothes dry faster in Delhi (52% humidity) than in Kochi (84% humidity), assuming the same temperature.

Ans :

Delhi's air has lower relative humidity (52%), meaning it can absorb more moisture. Therefore, water evaporates faster from wet clothes in Delhi compared to Kochi's more saturated air (84% humidity).

128. Give one reason why measuring humidity is important in industries or museums.

Ans :

Museums monitor humidity to maintain a dry environment, preventing damage to delicate exhibits. Food processing industries control humidity for product quality and preservation.

129. What is the main advantage of an Automated Weather Station (AWS)?

Ans :

An AWS operates automatically using sensors to measure and record weather data continuously without needing human intervention, providing timely and accurate information.

130. How do meteorologists use the data collected from weather instruments?

Ans :

Meteorologists study long-term data collected from various instruments, analyse patterns, and use scientific methods and models to predict future weather conditions.

131. Why have accurate weather predictions become more important recently?

Ans :

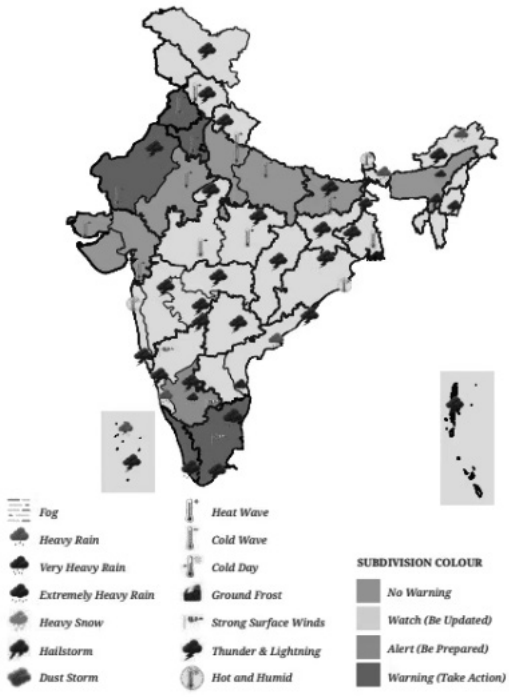
Due to climate change, extreme weather events like droughts, floods, and cyclones are becoming more frequent, making accurate predictions crucial for preparedness and safety.

132. Give an example of how a weather warning helps people stay safe.

Ans :

If a cyclone is predicted, warnings allow authorities to evacuate coastal areas, or fishermen can be warned not to go out to sea, preventing loss of life and property.

133. Look at Fig. What does a 'Yellow' colour warning signify?



Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core	Mathematics	Physics	Chemistry
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology	Physical Education	Informatics Practice	Computer Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy	Business Studies	Economics	Entrepreneurship
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies	Applied Maths	Hindi	History
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography	Political Science	Psychology	Sociology
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF(NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core	Mathematics	Physics	Chemistry
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology	Physical Education	Informatic Practice	Computer Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy	Business Studies	Economics	Entrepreneurship
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies	Applied Maths	Hindi	History
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography	Political Science	Psychology	Sociology
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF (NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL	English Comm	Mathematics STD	Mathematics Basic
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science	Social Science	IT (402)	AI (417)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)	हिंदी अ	हिंदी ब	संस्कृत
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान	गणित मानक	गणित आधार
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL	English Comm	Mathematics STD	Mathematics Basic
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

Science	Social Science	IT (402)	AI (417)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

Data Science (419)	हिंदी अ	हिंदी ब	संस्कृत
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान	गणित मानक	गणित आधार
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM PDF

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 8

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 7

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 6

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English	Mathematics	Science	Social Science
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी	संस्कृत	IT (906)	AI (901)
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)	Coding (910)	विज्ञान	सामाजिक विज्ञान
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित	NEET Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Science	JEE Foundation Maths
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science	Olympiad Maths	Olympiad General Aptitude	
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	For Olympiad Books Visit www.lympiad.com
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 5 and 4
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 5th	Mathematics 5th	EVS 5th	हिंदी 5th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 5th	EVS हिन्दी 5th	Olympiad Maths 5th	Olympiad Science 5th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 5th	Olympiad Aptitude 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 4th	Mathematics 4th	EVS 4th	हिंदी 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 4th	EVS हिन्दी 4th	Olympiad Maths 4th	Olympiad Science 4th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 3 and 2
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 3th	Mathematics 3th	EVS 3th	हिंदी 3th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 3th	EVS हिन्दी 3th	Olympiad Maths 3th	Olympiad Science 3th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 3th	Olympiad Aptitude 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 2th	Mathematics 2th	EVS 2th	हिंदी 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 2th	EVS हिन्दी 2th	Olympiad Maths 2th	Olympiad Science 2th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 1 and KG
Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 1th	Mathematics 1th	EVS 1th	हिंदी 1th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित 1th	EVS हिन्दी 1th	Olympiad Maths 1th	Olympiad Science 1th
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Aptitude 1th	Olympiad Aptitude KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English KG	Mathematics KG	EVS KG	हिंदी KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित KG	EVS हिन्दी KG	Olympiad Maths KG	Olympiad Science KG
BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon	BUY IT ON amazon
DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM	DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

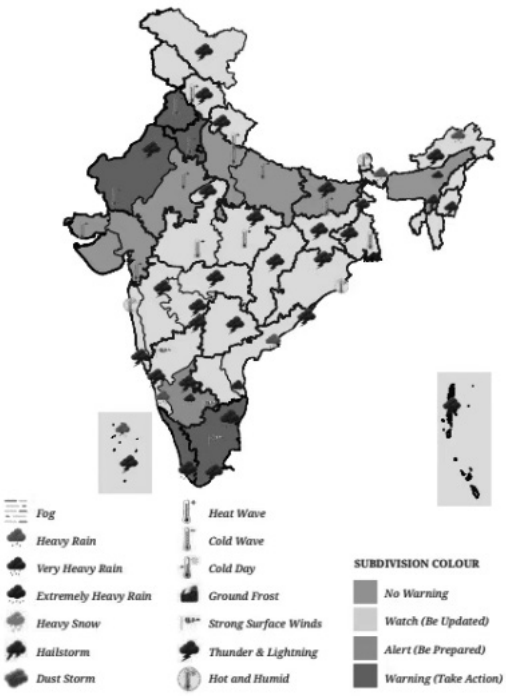
- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

Ans :

A 'Yellow' colour warning on the IMD map signifies 'Watch (Be Updated)', indicating potentially hazardous weather and advising people to stay informed.

134. Look at Fig. Name two weather conditions represented by icons on the map.



Ans :

Heavy Rain/Heat Wave/Thunder & Lightning/ Dust Storm/Fog/Cold Wave (any two from the legend).

135. How is weather different from climate ?

Ans :

Weather describes the atmospheric conditions at a specific time and place, while climate (to be discussed later) refers to the average weather patterns over a long period.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the statement : "Weather is the state of the Earth's atmosphere at a particular time and place." Why are 'time' and 'place' crucial?

Ans :

Weather constantly changes. Temperature, wind, or rain can differ significantly from morning to evening (time) or between a coastal city and an inland town (place) on the same day. Therefore, specifying both time and place is essential for an accurate description of the weather conditions.

137. Explain the relationship between temperature and the state of coconut oil or setting curd.

Ans :

Coconut oil solidifies in cold winter temperatures because its freezing point is relatively high. Curd sets slower in cold weather because the bacteria responsible for fermentation work more slowly at lower temperatures. Both illustrate how temperature affects physical or biological processes.

NODIA

138. Analyse the significance of the IMD's motto, "From the sun arises rain," connecting it to the water cycle.

Ans :

The sun's energy drives the water cycle. It causes water from oceans, lakes, and rivers to evaporate (turn into water vapour). This vapour rises, cools, condenses into clouds, and eventually falls as precipitation (rain). Thus, the sun is the primary energy source initiating the process that leads to rain.

139. Compare the challenges faced by people living at sea level versus those living at very high altitudes like Khardung La, concerning atmospheric pressure.

Ans :

At sea level, atmospheric pressure is high, and oxygen is abundant, making breathing easy. At Khardung La (high altitude), pressure is significantly lower, air is thinner, and oxygen is scarce. This forces the body to work harder, potentially causing breathlessness, fatigue, and requiring acclimatisation for survival.

140. Analyse how understanding wind direction and speed is crucial for different professions like pilots, sailors, and farmers.

Ans :

Pilots and sailors need wind data for navigation, safety, and fuel efficiency, as wind affects aircraft/ ship speed and direction. Farmers use wind

direction to predict rain movement and wind speed to gauge soil drying rates, aiding decisions about planting or irrigation.

141. Explain the process of evaporation and its relationship with humidity and drying clothes.

Ans :

Evaporation is water turning into vapour, causing cooling. High humidity means the air already holds much vapour, slowing evaporation. Low humidity allows faster evaporation. Therefore, clothes dry quicker in low humidity air (which can absorb more moisture) than in high humidity air (which is already nearly saturated).

142. Analyse the importance of Automated Weather Stations (AWS) in remote or harsh environments like glacial lakes in Sikkim.

Ans :

AWS are vital in remote/harsh locations because they operate automatically, eliminating the need for risky human presence. They provide continuous, crucial data (temperature, pressure, precipitation) from inaccessible areas like high-altitude glacial lakes, enabling early warnings for potential hazards like floods caused by lake outbursts.

143. Evaluate the role of weather forecasting in disaster management, using examples like cyclones or heat waves.

Ans :

Forecasting is critical for disaster management. Predicting a cyclone allows timely evacuations of coastal areas and warnings to fishermen. Forecasting heat waves enables authorities to issue health advisories, open cooling centres, and manage resources like power and water, significantly reducing risks to life and property.

144. Why might traditional weather prediction methods (observing nature) still be relevant today, alongside scientific meteorology?

Ans :

Traditional methods, based on generations of local observation, can offer immediate, hyperlocal insights complementing broader scientific forecasts. Animal behaviour or plant changes might signal subtle shifts specific to a micro-environment that large-scale models miss, providing valuable context for local communities, especially farmers or fishermen.

145. Analyse the connection between atmospheric pressure changes and the formation of wind.

Ans :

The atmosphere seeks equilibrium. When heating/cooling creates areas of differing air pressure (weight), air naturally flows from the region of higher pressure towards the region of lower pressure to balance it out. This horizontal movement of air is what we experience as wind.

146. Explain why knowing both wind speed and direction is important for understanding its impact.

Ans :

Wind direction tells us where the air (and potentially weather like rain clouds or pollution) is coming from or going towards. Wind speed tells us the force of the wind, determining its potential impact – from gentle seed dispersal to causing soil erosion or posing dangers for flights/sailing.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

147. Analyse how the development of precise weather instruments has advanced the science of meteorology.

Ans :

Precise instruments allow objective, quantifiable measurement of weather elements (temperature, pressure, humidity, etc.), replacing subjective observation. This provides accurate, standardized data essential for identifying patterns, developing scientific models, testing hypotheses, and making increasingly reliable weather forecasts, thus advancing meteorology significantly.

148. Evaluate the statement : "Understanding weather helps us adapt our daily lives."

Ans :

This is true. We adapt by choosing clothes based on temperature (warm clothes in winter, cool in summer). We plan activities based on forecasts (e.g., packing rain gear if rain is predicted). Understanding humidity helps predict how quickly clothes will dry or how comfortable we might feel outdoors.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CASE BASED QUESTION

149. A farmer in North India wants to spray pesticides on his crops. The weather forecast predicts calm conditions in the morning but strong 'Loo' winds developing in the afternoon, with temperatures reaching 42°C. He needs to decide the best time to spray to ensure effectiveness and safety.

(i) What weather element poses the biggest challenge for spraying in the afternoon?

(ii) Explain why spraying during strong winds is not advisable.

(iii) Based on the forecast, when should the farmer ideally spray the pesticides? Justify your answer.

Ans :

(i) The strong 'Loo' winds pose the biggest challenge.

(ii) Strong winds can cause the pesticide spray to drift away from the target crops, reducing effectiveness and potentially harming nearby areas or people.

(iii) The farmer should spray in the morning when conditions are predicted to be calm. This ensures the spray settles on the crops effectively before the strong afternoon winds start.

150. Mountaineers preparing to climb a high peak in the Himalayas check the weather report. It shows rapidly falling atmospheric pressure (dropped by 15 mb in 12 hours) and increasing wind speeds, although the sky is currently clear.

(i) What weather event might the falling pressure and increasing winds indicate?

(ii) Why should the mountaineers be concerned even if the sky is currently clear?

(iii) What safety precaution should the mountaineers consider based on this forecast?

Ans :

(i) Rapidly falling pressure indicates an approaching low-pressure system or depression, which often brings stormy weather and strong winds.

(ii) Weather conditions, especially in mountains, can change rapidly. Falling pressure is a strong indicator of deteriorating weather, meaning storms could develop quickly despite current clear skies.

(iii) They should consider postponing their ascent or seeking shelter at a lower altitude until the weather system passes and conditions stabilize, as climbing during a storm is extremely dangerous.

151. A museum curator in Chennai notices that some old paintings are showing signs of mould. The museum's internal reading shows a consistent relative humidity of 75% and a temperature of 28°C. An expert suggests controlling the humidity.

(i) Is 75% relative humidity considered high or low.

(ii) What instrument would the museum use to measure this humidity level?

(iii) Explain why controlling humidity is crucial for preserving museum exhibits like paintings.

Ans :

(i) 75% relative humidity falls within the humid range (60%-80%), so it is considered high.

(ii) The museum would use a hygrometer to measure relative humidity.

(iii) High humidity promotes the growth of mould and mildew, which can damage sensitive materials like canvas and paint. Maintaining lower, stable humidity helps prevent such biological deterioration and preserves the artifacts.

152. During the monsoon season, a weather station in Cherrapunji records 150 mm of rainfall in a single day. A nearby station in Shillong records only 20 mm on the same day. Both use standard rain gauges.

(i) What instrument is used to get these readings?

(ii) What does '150 mm of rainfall' mean in practical terms?

(iii) Evaluate what this data suggests about rainfall patterns, even over relatively short distances.

Ans :

(i) A rain gauge is used to measure rainfall.

(ii) It means that if the rain that fell over an area was collected without any runoff or evaporation, it would form a layer of water 150 mm (or 15 cm) deep.

(iii) This suggests that rainfall, especially during monsoon, can be highly variable locally. Geographic factors like hills or wind patterns can cause one place (Cherrapunji) to receive extremely heavy rain while a nearby area (Shillong) receives much less.

NODIA

153. An airplane is scheduled to fly from Jaipur (relatively dry) to Kochi (humid). The pilot checks the weather reports, including temperature, wind speed/direction, and atmospheric pressure for both locations and the route.

(i) Why is atmospheric pressure information important for aviation?

(ii) How might the difference in humidity between Jaipur and Kochi affect the flight or passenger comfort?

(iii) Besides pressure and humidity, why is wind data crucial for the pilot?

Ans :

(i) Atmospheric pressure affects aircraft performance (lift, engine power) and altimeter settings. Pilots need accurate pressure data for safe altitude calculations and flight planning.

(ii) While cabin air is conditioned, high humidity in Kochi might affect ground operations or passenger comfort upon arrival. Very low humidity in Jaipur might affect engine performance slightly differently during takeoff compared to Kochi.

(iii) Wind speed and direction significantly impact flight time, fuel consumption, and takeoff/ landing safety. Headwinds slow the plane, tailwinds speed it up, and crosswinds affect stability during takeoff and land

www.nodia.in

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 3

CLIMATES OF INDIA

SUMMARY

1. WEATHER, SEASONS, AND CLIMATE DISTINCTION

It is important to distinguish between weather and climate. Weather refers to the atmospheric conditions experienced on an hourly or daily basis, such as rain, sunshine, or wind, and it changes frequently. Climate, conversely, represents the long-term pattern of weather observed in a specific area or region over several decades. While weather is fleeting, climate describes the expected atmospheric behaviour based on historical data.

Seasons are cyclical periods within the year, each lasting a few months, driven by the Earth's revolution around the Sun. Common seasons include spring, summer, autumn, and winter. India also distinctly experiences a monsoon or rainy season. Traditionally, India recognizes six seasons or 'ritus' : Vasanta (spring), Grishma (summer), Varsha (rainy), Sharad (autumn), Hemanta (pre-winter), and Shishir (winter). Seasons influence daily weather and are integral to a region's climate pattern. Life, including human activities, agriculture, clothing, and festivals, often follows the rhythm of these seasons. Although climate is generally stable over long periods, recent decades have seen noticeable changes, many linked to human activities.

2. TYPES OF CLIMATES IN INDIA

India exhibits remarkable climatic diversity :

1. Alpine Climate : Found in the northern Himalayan mountains, characterized by cold, snowy winters and cool summers.
2. Temperate Climate : Occurs in lower Himalayan areas and other hilly regions, featuring moderately cold winters and pleasant summers, making them popular 'hill stations'.
3. Subtropical Climate : Dominates the northern plains, with very hot summers and cold winters, suitable for growing wheat.
4. Arid Climate : Prevalent in the western Thar Desert, marked by extremely hot days, cool nights, and scarce rainfall.
5. Tropical Wet Climate : Along the western coast, receiving heavy monsoon rainfall, ideal for rice and spices.
6. Semi-Arid Climate : Found in the central Deccan Plateau, with hot summers, mild winters, and moderate rainfall.
7. Tropical Climate : Experienced in eastern India and the southern peninsula, having mild winters and distinct wet (monsoon) and dry periods.

NODIA

3. FACTORS DETERMINING CLIMATE

Several geographical factors interact to create these diverse climates :

3.1 Latitude

Proximity to the Equator significantly influences temperature. Equatorial regions receive direct solar radiation, leading to higher temperatures, while higher latitudes receive oblique rays spread over a larger area, resulting in cooler conditions. Southern parts of India near the Equator (like Kanniyakumari) are warmer year-round compared to northern regions like Srinagar.

3.2 Altitude

Temperature generally decreases with increasing altitude. This occurs because air density and pressure decrease at higher elevations, and the atmosphere is heated primarily from the Earth's surface below. This explains the cooler temperatures found in India's numerous hill stations compared to adjacent plains.

3.3 Proximity to the Sea

Coastal areas experience more moderate temperatures (cooler summers, milder winters) than inland regions. The sea absorbs and loses heat more slowly than land, acting as a temperature regulator. This results in a smaller

annual temperature range near the coast (e.g., Mumbai) compared to inland areas at similar latitudes (e.g., Nagpur).

3.4 Winds

Winds transport air masses, influencing temperature and humidity. For example, westerly winds blowing over deserts bring hot, dry air and heat waves to northwest India in summer. Winds from the sea carry moisture, leading to precipitation.

3.5 Topography

The physical features of the land also shape climate. The Himalayas act as a barrier, partially protecting India from cold Central Asian winds. Conversely, the flat Thar Desert offers no protection from hot winds. Mountain ranges like the Western Ghats significantly influence rainfall patterns during the monsoon. Local variations in topography can create microclimates, such as in valleys or urban areas ('urban heat islands').

4. THE MONSOONS

The term 'monsoon' originates from the Arabic 'mausim' (season) and refers to seasonal wind patterns over the Indian Ocean and surrounding regions. These winds are driven by the differential heating of land and sea.

4.1 Formation and Mechanism

In summer, the Asian landmass heats up faster than the ocean, creating a low-pressure area over land. Cooler, high-pressure air flows from the ocean towards the land, carrying moisture. This moist air rises, condenses, and causes heavy rainfall – the summer monsoon. In winter, the pattern reverses; the land cools faster, creating high pressure, while the ocean remains relatively warmer (lower pressure). Winds blow from the land to the sea, bringing generally dry conditions.

4.2 Monsoon Patterns in India

The Southwest Monsoon (summer) typically arrives at India's southern tip in early June, progressing northward to cover the subcontinent by mid-July. The Western Ghats influence its distribution, causing heavy rain on western slopes and less rain on the eastern Deccan plateau. The Northeast Monsoon (winter) involves dry winds blowing from land to sea. However, winds passing over the Bay of Bengal pick up moisture and bring rainfall to parts of India's eastern and southern coasts.

5. CLIMATE AND OUR LIVES

Climate profoundly impacts human life, culture, and economy. Many Indian festivals and traditions are linked to seasons and agriculture. The economy, particularly agriculture, is heavily dependent on predictable climate patterns, especially the monsoon. 'Monsoon failure' (poor rainfall) can lead to drought, crop failure, water scarcity, migration, and inflation. Industrial activity can also be affected by weather and water availability.

6. CLIMATES AND DISASTERS

India's diverse climate also makes it susceptible to various climate-related natural disasters.

6.1 Cyclones

Formed over warm ocean waters due to intense low-pressure systems, cyclones bring high winds, heavy rain, and storm surges, particularly affecting coastal areas, especially the east coast. The IMD tracks and issues warnings for these destructive storms.

6.2 Floods

Caused by heavy rainfall, river overflow, dam failures, or glacial lake outbursts (glacial bursts), floods frequently affect states like Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Kerala, and Assam, especially during monsoons. Urban flooding is also a growing concern due to inadequate drainage and impermeable surfaces.

6.3 Landslides

The collapse of soil and rock on slopes, often triggered by heavy rain or earthquakes, commonly occurs in mountainous regions like the Himalayas and Western Ghats. Human activities like deforestation and improper construction exacerbate the risk.

6.4 Forest Fires

Uncontrolled fires spread through vegetation, fueled by dry conditions or human carelessness. They destroy ecosystems, harm wildlife, degrade air quality, and impact local economies.

7. CLIMATE CHANGE

Climate change signifies long-term shifts in global or regional climate patterns, including temperature and precipitation. While natural processes caused past climate changes, recent

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

changes since the 19th century are largely driven by human activities. The primary driver is the increased emission of greenhouse gases (like CO2) from burning fossil fuels, deforestation, and industrial processes. These gases enhance the natural greenhouse effect, trapping extra heat and causing rapid global warming. This warming disrupts established climate patterns, leading to challenges like rising temperatures, altered rainfall, and more frequent extreme weather events, affecting agriculture, industries, and communities. Addressing climate change involves mitigation efforts (reducing emissions, promoting renewable energy, sustainable practices) and building resilience to adapt to its impacts.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Match the climatic factors with their effects :

	Column A		Column B
(1)	Latitude	(a)	Brings wet air to India during summer
(2)	Altitude	(b)	Creates different climates in the north and south
(3)	Proximity to the ocean	(c)	Keeps higher places cooler
(4)	Monsoon winds	(d)	Moderates the temperature

Ans :

(1) Latitude --- (b) Creates different climates in the north and south
(2) Altitude --- (c) Keeps higher places cooler
(3) Proximity to the ocean --- (d) Moderates the temperature
(4) Monsoon winds --- (a) Brings wet air to India during summer

2. Answer the following questions :
(a) What is the difference between weather and climate?
(b) Why do places near the ocean have milder temperatures than places far away from it?
(c) What role do monsoon winds play in affecting India's climate?
(d) Why is Chennai warm or hot throughout the year, while Leh is cold?

Ans :

(a) Weather is the day-to-day atmospheric condition (e.g., rainy, sunny). Climate is the long-term average weather pattern of a region over decades.
(b) The ocean heats up and cools down slower than land. This moderates coastal temperatures, preventing extreme heat in summer and extreme cold in winter compared to inland areas.
(c) Monsoon winds define India's rainy season. The summer (southwest) monsoon brings essential rainfall for agriculture across most of India. The winter (northeast) monsoon brings some rain to the southeast coast.
(d) Chennai is near the Equator (low latitude) and near the sea, leading to consistently warm temperatures and moderate climate. Leh is at a high latitude and high altitude, resulting in cold temperatures year-round.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

3. Look at a map of India given below. Identify the climate for these cities-Leh, Chennai, Delhi, Panaji and Jaipur.
- Is the place near the sea, in the mountains, or in the desert?
- How do these factors affect the climate there?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

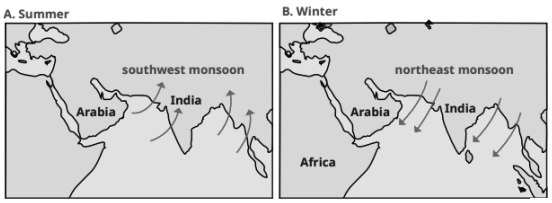
City	Climate Type	Near Sea/ Mountains/ Desert	Effect on Climate
Leh	Cold, Alpine	Mountains (Himalayas)	Very cold winters, cool summers
Chennai	Tropical	Near the Sea (Bay of Bengal)	Hot and humid, mild winters
Delhi	Subtropical	Inland Plains	Very hot summers, cold winters
Panaji	Tropical Wet	Coastal (Arabian Sea)	Heavy rainfall, humid
Jaipur	Arid/Semi-arid	Near Desert (Thar Desert)	Very hot summers, little rain

4. Draw the monsoon cycle in summers and winters on a map of India.

- Label where the winds blow in summer and winter
- Show the direction of winds during the monsoon

Ans :

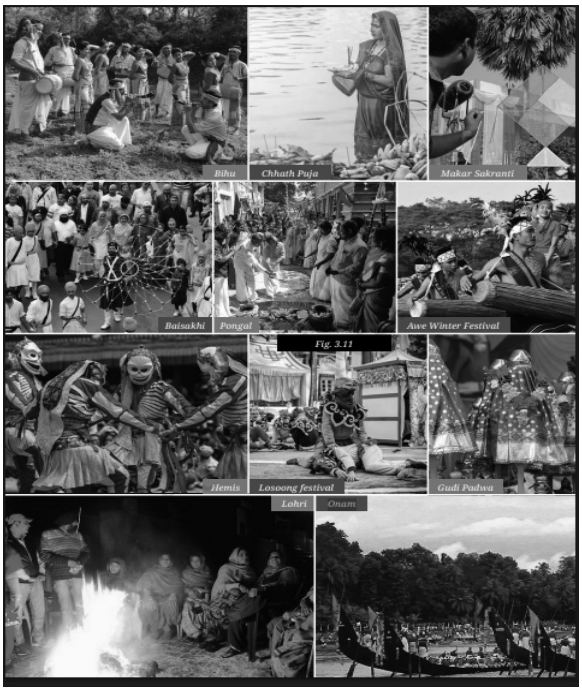
1. Summer (June-September) :
   (i) Winds blow from ocean to land (Southwest Monsoon).
   (ii) Brings rain to India.
   (iii) Arrows from Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal towards India.
2. Winter (October-March) :
   (i) Winds blow from land to ocean (Northeast Monsoon).
   (ii) Dry winds mostly, little rain.



Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. www.momworksheet.com
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

5. Make a colourful poster showing festivals in India linked to farming and weather (e.g., Baisakhi, Onam). Add pictures or drawings of these festivals.

Ans :



6. Imagine you are a farmer in India. Write a short diary entry about how you would prepare for the rainy season.

Ans :

This is a creative writing activity. Example : "May 5th : The air feels heavy; monsoon should be here soon. Finished ploughing the fields last week. Need to check the bunds again to hold water. Seeds are ready – paddy this year. Must ensure the tools are sharp and the bullocks well-fed. Praying for good, timely rains!"

7. Identify a natural disaster (e.g., cyclone, flood, landslide, or forest fire) and write a short essay that includes the causes and impacts. Suggest actions that individuals, communities and the government can take to reduce the impact.

Ans :

This is an essay writing activity. Example (Flood):

1. Causes : Heavy monsoon rain, river overflow, poor drainage.
2. Impacts : Loss of life, damage to homes/ crops/infrastructure, waterborne diseases, economic loss.

3. Actions :
   (i) Individuals : follow warnings, move to safety.
   (ii) Communities : maintain drains, build flood shelters.
   (iii) Government : issue warnings, build embankments, improve drainage, rescue/ relief operations.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is the primary difference between 'weather' and 'climate'?
(A) Weather is yearly; climate is daily changes
(B) Weather is daily; climate is long-term
(C) Weather is global; climate is local
(D) Weather is predictable; climate is unpredictable

Ans :

(B) Weather is daily; climate is long-term
Weather describes the atmospheric conditions experienced every hour or day, such as rain or sunshine, which change frequently. Climate, however, refers to the general pattern of weather in an area over many decades.

2. Traditionally, how many seasons or 'ritus' is the year divided into in many parts of India?
(A) Three seasons
(B) Four seasons
(C) Five seasons
(D) Six seasons

Ans :

(D) Six seasons
In many parts of India, the year is traditionally divided into six seasons or 'ritus' : Vasanta (spring), Grishma (summer), Varsha (rainy season), Sharad (autumn), Hemanta (pre-winter), and Shishir (winter), each with associated festivals.

3. How are seasons primarily caused on Earth?
(A) By the Earth's daily rotation on axis
(B) By the Earth's revolution around the Sun
(C) By changes in the Moon's gravitational pull
(D) By fluctuations in solar flare activity

Ans :

(B) By the Earth's revolution around the Sun
Seasons occur due to the Earth's revolution around the Sun and the tilt of its axis. This causes different parts of the Earth to receive more direct sunlight at different times of the year.

4. What does an 'alpine climate', typically found in the Himalayan mountains, primarily feature?
(A) Hot, humid summers and very mild winters
(B) Cold, snowy winters and very cool summers
(C) Dry, arid conditions throughout the entire year
(D) Moderate rainfall and consistent temperatures

Ans :

(B) Cold, snowy winters and very cool summers
An alpine climate, characteristic of high mountain regions like the Himalayas, is defined by cold, snowy winters and cool summers. The term "alpine" is derived from the Alps mountain range in Europe.

5. In which geographical region of India is a 'subtropical' climate with very hot summers and cold winters predominantly found?
(A) The western coastal strip along Arabian Sea
(B) The northern plains where wheat is grown
(C) The central Deccan Plateau region of India
(D) The Himalayan mountain range in north

Ans :

(B) The northern plains where wheat is grown
The northern plains of India experience a subtropical climate, characterized by very hot summers and distinct, cold winters. This climatic condition is suitable for growing crops like wheat, which is a staple here.

6. How does an 'arid climate' like in the Thar Desert differ from a 'tropical wet climate' on the western coast?
(A) Arid has heavy rain; tropical wet is dry
(B) Arid has cool days; tropical wet has hot
(C) Arid has little rain; tropical wet has much
(D) Arid has mild winter; tropical wet has cold

Ans :

(C) Arid has little rain; tropical wet has much
An arid climate, found in the Thar Desert, features extremely little rainfall and hot days. In contrast, a tropical wet climate, like on the western coast, receives heavy rainfall, especially during monsoon months.

7. Why are places near the Equator generally warmer than places near the poles?
(A) The Equator is closer to the Sun
(B) The Equator receives more direct sun rays

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Polar regions have more cloud cover
(D) Polar regions reflect more sunlight back

Ans :

(B) The Equator receives more direct sun rays
Equatorial regions are warmer because the sun's rays strike the Earth's surface at a more direct, perpendicular angle, concentrating solar energy over a smaller area. Near the poles, rays are oblique, spreading energy thinly.

8. As altitude increases, what generally happens to the atmospheric temperature?
(A) It increases rapidly
(B) It decreases steadily
(C) It remains constant
(D) It fluctuates wildly

Ans :

(B) It decreases steadily
Temperature generally decreases with an increase in altitude. This is because the air becomes less dense at higher altitudes, and the Earth's surface, which absorbs and radiates heat, is further away from there.

9. Udhagamandalam (Ooty) and Coimbatore are at similar latitudes, but Ooty has cooler summers (10-25°C) than Coimbatore (25-38°C). What is the primary reason for this temperature difference?
(A) Ooty is closer to the sea moderators
(B) Coimbatore receives less annual rainfall yearly
(C) Ooty is located at a higher altitude
(D) Coimbatore has more industrial activity

Ans :

(C) Ooty is located at a higher altitude
Ooty's cooler temperatures compared to Coimbatore, despite similar latitudes, are primarily due to its higher altitude. Temperature generally decreases with increasing elevation, making hill stations like Ooty cooler than nearby plains.

10. Why do coastal areas generally experience more moderate temperatures (less extreme summers and winters) compared to inland areas?
(A) Coastal areas have more vegetation
(B) Inland areas receive more direct sunlight
(C) The sea acts as a temperature moderator
(D) Winds are stronger in coastal regions

Ans :

(C) The sea acts as a temperature moderator
The sea absorbs and releases heat more slowly than land. This moderating effect means coastal areas don't get as hot in summer or as cold in winter as inland areas, resulting in a smaller temperature range.

11. Winds blowing from the deserts of Arabia to Afghanistan often bring dry and hot air to states like Punjab and Haryana, causing severe _____ in summer.
(A) floods
(B) snowfalls
(C) heat waves
(D) cyclones

Ans :

(C) heat waves
Winds originating from hot desert regions, like those from Arabia, carry dry and intensely hot air. When these winds reach northwestern India, they can cause severe heat waves during the summer months in that region.

12. What does 'topography' refer to in the context of factors determining climate?
(A) The types of soil found in a region
(B) The physical surface features of an area
(C) The amount of pollution in atmosphere
(D) The density of human population nearby

Ans :

(B) The physical surface features of an area
Topography refers to the arrangement of the natural and artificial physical features of an area. This includes mountains, hills, valleys, plains, and slopes, all of which can significantly influence local and regional climates.

NODIA

13. How do the Himalayas primarily affect India's climate regarding winds from Central Asia?
(A) They channel cold winds into India mostly
(B) They act as a barrier against cold winds
(C) They generate warm winds that blow south
(D) They have no significant impact on winds

Ans :

(B) They act as a barrier against cold winds
The Himalayan mountain range acts as a formidable barrier, protecting the Indian subcontinent to a large extent from the extremely cold, dry winds blowing from the cold deserts of Central Asia during winter.

14. What is a 'microclimate'?
(A) The climate of a very large continent
(B) A climate localized in a small area
(C) The historical climate of an ancient city

(D) A climate predicted by computer models

Ans :

(B) A climate localized in a small area
A microclimate refers to the specific climatic conditions in a very small or restricted area that differ from the climate of the surrounding region. Enclosed valleys or urban areas can develop their own microclimates.

15. The word 'monsoon' comes from the Arabic word 'mausim'. What does 'mausim' mean?
(A) Rain
(B) Wind
(C) Season
(D) Storm

Ans :

(C) Season
The term 'monsoon' originates from the Arabic word 'mausim,' which means 'season.' It refers to the seasonal reversal of wind patterns, which brings distinct wet and dry periods to large regions, notably South Asia.

16. What is the fundamental reason for the seasonal reversal of monsoon winds?
(A) The Earth's rotation speed changing seasonally
(B) The differential heating of land and ocean
(C) The Moon's gravitational pull on atmosphere
(D) Volcanic activity influencing wind patterns

Ans :

(B) The differential heating of land and ocean
Monsoon winds reverse seasonally because land heats up and cools down faster than the ocean. This creates pressure differences, causing winds to flow from high pressure (cooler areas) to low pressure (warmer areas).

17. During the summer monsoon in India, winds are drawn from the cooler, high-pressure ocean towards the hot, low-pressure landmass. What do these ocean winds primarily carry?
(A) Dry desert air
(B) Cold polar air
(C) Volcanic ash
(D) Moisture for rain

Ans :

(D) Moisture for rain
As winds blow from the relatively cooler ocean (high pressure) towards the heated Asian landmass (low pressure) during summer, they pick up significant amounts of moisture. This moisture condenses over land, resulting in heavy monsoon rains.

18. How does the Northeast Monsoon (winter monsoon) generally differ from the Southwest Monsoon (summer monsoon) in terms of conditions it brings to much of Asia?
(A) Northeast brings heavy rain; Southwest is dry
(B) Northeast brings dry; Southwest brings rain
(C) Both bring similar amounts of the rainfall
(D) Northeast brings warm; Southwest brings cold

Ans :

(B) Northeast brings dry; Southwest brings rain
The Southwest Monsoon brings moisture-laden winds from the ocean to the land, causing widespread rain. The Northeast Monsoon involves winds blowing from the cooler landmass towards the ocean, generally bringing dry conditions to much of Asia.

19. Mawsynram, located in Meghalaya, holds what distinction regarding rainfall?
(A) It receives the lowest average annual rainfall
(B) It receives the highest average annual rainfall
(C) It experiences rainfall only in winter month
(D) It has never recorded any snowfall

Ans :

(B) It receives the highest average annual rainfall
Mawsynram in Meghalaya is renowned for receiving the highest average annual rainfall in the world, approximately 11,000 mm (11 meters). This extreme precipitation is due to its unique topographical location and monsoon patterns.

20. Which of the following pairs correctly matches a traditional Indian season (ritu) with its approximate English equivalent?
(A) Vasanta - Rainy Season
(B) Grishma - Winter
(C) Varsha - Summer
(D) Sharad - Autumn

Ans :

(D) Sharad - Autumn
In the traditional Indian calendar, Sharad Ritu corresponds to the autumn season. Vasanta is spring, Grishma is summer, and Varsha is the rainy season, each with unique characteristics and cultural associations in India.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

21. What is a 'cyclone' in meteorological terms?
(A) A prolonged period of very little rainfall
(B) An intense low-pressure system with winds
(C) A sudden, rapid melting of mountain glaciers
(D) A fire spreading uncontrollably through forest

Ans :

(B) An intense low-pressure system with winds
A cyclone is a large-scale air mass that rotates around a strong center of low atmospheric pressure. It is characterized by inward spiraling winds that rotate counterclockwise (in the Northern Hemisphere) and often brings severe weather.

22. What is the 'eye of the cyclone'?
(A) The outermost band of storm clouds
(B) The point where the cyclone makes landfall
(C) The calm, cloudless center of depression
(D) The area with the heaviest rainfall mostly

Ans :

(C) The calm, cloudless center of depression
The 'eye' is the relatively calm, often clear, and warm central area of a strong tropical cyclone. It is surrounded by the eyewall, a ring of towering thunderstorms where the most severe weather occurs.

23. Which organization in India is primarily responsible for tracking cyclones and providing information on their formation and movement?
(A) National Disaster Response Force (NDRF)
(B) Central Water Commission (CWC) of India
(C) India Meteorological Department (IMD)
(D) Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO)

Ans :

(C) India Meteorological Department (IMD)
The India Meteorological Department (IMD) is the principal government agency responsible for meteorological observations, weather forecasting, and seismology, including the crucial task of tracking cyclones and issuing warnings for public safety.

24. What is a 'glacial burst' or Glacial Lake Outburst Flood (GLOF)?
(A) A sudden increase in glacier's movement
(B) The formation of new glaciers in winter
(C) A sudden release of water from lake
(D) The slow melting of a glacier's snout

Ans :

(C) A sudden release of water from lake
A glacial burst, or GLOF, occurs when a dam containing a glacial lake fails, leading to a sudden and often catastrophic release of water. These events can cause devastating floods downstream in regions.

25. Why might urban areas with extensive concrete surfaces experience flooding even with moderate rainfall?
(A) Concrete absorbs too much water quickly
(B) Concrete surfaces prevent water from soaking
(C) Urban areas are built on floodplains
(D) Tall buildings attract more rainfall

Ans :

(B) Concrete surfaces prevent water from soaking
Concrete and asphalt surfaces in urban areas are impermeable, meaning they do not allow rainwater to soak into the ground. This increases surface runoff, which can overwhelm drainage systems and lead to flooding.

26. Which of the following is NOT a primary trigger for landslides?
(A) Heavy rainfall
(B) Earthquakes nearby
(C) Volcanic activity
(D) Prolonged drought

Ans :

(D) Prolonged drought
Landslides are typically triggered by factors that destabilize slopes, such as heavy rainfall saturating the soil, seismic shaking from earthquakes, or volcanic eruptions. Prolonged drought generally makes soil more stable by drying it out.

27. The National Disaster Response Force (NDRF) is specially trained to respond to what types of disasters?
(A) Only earthquakes and tsunamis in world
(B) Primarily financial and economic crises
(C) Natural as well as human-made disasters
(D) Only disasters occurring in urban areas

Ans :

(C) Natural as well as human-made disasters
The NDRF is a specialized force constituted for responding to a threatening disaster situation or disaster, whether natural (like cyclones, floods) or human-made (like industrial accidents), providing rescue and relief operations across India.

NODIA

28. What does "climate change" refer to in a broad sense?
(A) The daily fluctuations in local weather conditions
(B) Significant, long-term changes in the climate
(C) The seasonal variations in temperature or rain
(D) Efforts to predict next week's forecast

Ans :

(B) Significant, long-term changes in the climate
Climate change refers to long-term shifts in temperatures and weather patterns. These shifts may be natural, but since the 1800s, human activities have been the main driver of climate change, primarily due to burning fossil fuels.

29. How does the burning of fossil fuels primarily contribute to global warming and climate change?
(A) It releases large amounts of oxygen
(B) It depletes the Earth's ozone layer
(C) It releases excess greenhouse gases in air
(D) It directly heats the Earth's solid core

Ans :

(C) It releases excess greenhouse gases in air
Burning fossil fuels (coal, oil, and gas) releases large quantities of greenhouse gases, like carbon dioxide (CO_2), into the atmosphere. These gases trap extra heat, enhancing the natural greenhouse effect and causing rapid global warming.

30. The capacity to withstand or recover quickly from difficulties, such as climate-related disasters, is known as _____.
(A) mitigation
(B) adaptation
(C) resilience
(D) sustainability

Ans :

(C) resilience
Resilience refers to the ability of individuals, communities, or systems to withstand, adapt to, and recover quickly from shocks and stresses, such as those caused by climate change and associated natural disasters over time.

31. A coastal community is experiencing rising sea levels and more frequent, intense storms. To cope, they are building sea walls and elevating homes. This process of adjusting to actual or expected climate and its effects is best termed as :
(A) Climate mitigation effort
(B) Climate adaptation strategy
(C) Climate geoengineering project
(D) Climate forecasting model

Ans :

(B) Climate adaptation strategy
Adaptation involves adjusting to the current and future effects of climate change. Building sea walls and elevating homes are strategies to reduce vulnerability and increase resilience to impacts like rising sea levels and stronger storms.

32. Which pairing of a climate type found in India and its general characteristic is INCORRECT?
(A) Alpine Climate (Himalayas) - Cold, snowy winters and cool summers
(B) Arid Climate (Thar Desert) - Extremely hot days, very little rainfall
(C) Tropical Wet Climate (Western Coast) - Dry winters, moderate summer rain
(D) Semi-arid Climate (Deccan Plateau) - Hot summers, moderate monsoon rainfall

Ans :

(C) Tropical Wet Climate (Western Coast) - Dry winters, moderate summer rain
A tropical wet climate, like that on India's western coast, is characterized by heavy rainfall, especially during the monsoon months, and typically does not have dry winters with only moderate summer rain as the primary characteristic.

33. Assertion (A) : Mumbai, being near the sea, has cooler summers and milder winters than Nagpur, which is inland.
Reason (R) : The sea absorbs and releases heat more slowly than land, moderating coastal temperatures.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Coastal areas like Mumbai experience a moderating effect from the sea, which heats and cools slower than land. This results in less extreme temperatures (cooler summers, milder winters) compared to inland cities like Nagpur at similar latitudes.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

34. Consider the following statements about monsoons in India :
1. The Southwest monsoon typically advances from south to north in summer.
2. The Northeast monsoon brings heavy rainfall to the entire Indian subcontinent.
3. The Western Ghats act as a barrier, affecting rainfall distribution.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 3 only
The Southwest monsoon brings summer rains advancing from south to north. The Northeast monsoon primarily brings rain to parts of the east and south coast. The Western Ghats significantly influence rainfall patterns, causing heavy rain on western slopes.

35. What are "fossil fuels"?
(A) Fuels derived from recently living plant matter
(B) Energy sources formed from ancient organic remains
(C) Fuels created through artificial chemical synthesis
(D) Renewable energy sources like solar or wind

Ans :

(B) Energy sources formed from ancient organic remains
Fossil fuels (coal, oil, natural gas) are energy sources formed over millions of years from the fossilized remains of ancient plants and animals buried under layers of sediment and subjected to heat and pressure.

36. Which traditional Indian ritu (season) is associated with pre-winter?
(A) Grishma
(B) Varsha
(C) Hemanta
(D) Shishir

Ans :

(C) Hemanta
Hemanta is one of the six traditional Indian ritus and corresponds to the pre-winter season. This period typically follows autumn (Sharad) and precedes the peak winter season (Shishir) in many parts of India.

37. Why are "urban heat islands" often warmer than their surrounding rural areas?
(A) Rural areas have more sources of pollution
(B) Urban areas have more reflective surfaces
(C) Cities have less vegetation and more heat-absorbing
(D) Rural areas experience stronger wind patterns

Ans :

(C) Cities have less vegetation and more heat-absorbing
Urban heat islands occur because cities typically have fewer trees and green spaces, and more buildings and concrete surfaces that absorb and retain solar radiation. Waste heat from human activities also contributes to higher temperatures.

38. If fishermen on the Konkan coast observe fish that normally stay deep underwater appearing at the surface, what might this traditionally indicate about the weather?
(A) The onset of a prolonged dry spell soon
(B) The arrival of the monsoon season
(C) An impending period of unusually cold
(D) The likelihood of a severe dust storm

Ans :

(B) The arrival of the monsoon season
According to traditional knowledge in some coastal areas like the Konkan coast, certain changes in fish behavior, such as deep-water fish surfacing, are interpreted as signs of the approaching monsoon season and associated weather changes.

39. How does latitude affect the amount of solar radiation received at a location on Earth?
(A) Higher latitudes receive more concentrated solar radiation
(B) Lower latitudes receive less direct solar energy
(C) Higher latitudes have sun rays pass more atmosphere
(D) Latitude has no significant effect on radiation

Ans :

(C) Higher latitudes have sun rays pass more atmosphere
At higher latitudes (near poles), sunlight strikes the Earth at an oblique angle, spreading the energy over a larger area and passing through more atmosphere, which reduces its intensity compared to lower latitudes (near Equator).

NODIA

40. Which of the following correctly pairs a type of climate disaster with its primary characteristic?
(A) Cyclone - Sudden collapse of rock and soil
(B) Flood - Uncontrolled fire spreading through area
(C) Landslide - Overflow of water into dry land
(D) Forest Fire - Uncontrolled burning of vegetation

Ans :

(D) Forest Fire - Uncontrolled burning of vegetation
A forest fire is an uncontrolled fire that spreads rapidly through vegetation like forests or grasslands. Cyclones involve strong winds, floods are water overflow, and landslides are sudden collapses of earth material on slopes.

41. In the context of climate change, _____ refers to adopting steps to slow down global warming and reduce its causes.
(A) resilience
(B) adaptation
(C) mitigation
(D) sustainability

Ans :

(C) mitigation
Mitigation in the context of climate change involves actions aimed at reducing the emission of greenhouse gases or enhancing their removal from the atmosphere, thereby slowing down the rate of global warming and its causes.

42. The phrase "monsoon failure" typically refers to what situation regarding rainfall?
(A) Excessive and continuous rainfall over weeks
(B) Rainfall occurring much earlier than expected
(C) Poor or insufficient rainfall during monsoon
(D) Rainfall that is too acidic for crops

Ans :

(C) Poor or insufficient rainfall during monsoon
"Monsoon failure" describes a situation where the monsoon season brings significantly less rainfall than average or expected. This can lead to drought, agricultural losses, and water scarcity in affected regions of India.

43. What is the significance of the Subhashita "kale varshatu parjanyaha prithivi sasyashalini".
(A) It is a weather forecasting technique used
(B) It is a prayer for timely rains, prosperity
(C) It describes the scientific causes of climate
(D) It is a historical record of past droughts

Ans :

(B) It is a prayer for timely rains, prosperity
This Subhashita is an ancient Sanskrit verse that expresses a wish or prayer for timely rainfall ("kale varshatu parjanyaha") so that the Earth may be lush with vegetation ("prithivi sasyashalini"), signifying prosperity and well-being.

44. All of the following are major factors determining the climate of a region EXCEPT :
(A) The longitude of the place specifically
(B) The altitude of the place
(C) The region's proximity to large seas
(D) The prevailing wind patterns

Ans :

(A) The longitude of the place specifically
While latitude (distance from the Equator) is a major climate determinant, longitude (east-west position) by itself does not directly determine a region's climate. Altitude, proximity to sea, and winds are significant influencing factors.

NODIA

45. A farmer in the Deccan Plateau relies heavily on monsoon rains for cultivating crops. If the India Meteorological Department predicts a 'monsoon failure' with below-average rainfall for the upcoming season, what is a likely challenge this farmer will face?
(A) Waterlogging and damage to crops due to excess
(B) Difficulty in harvesting due to continuous heavy rain
(C) Water scarcity for irrigation, leading to poor yield
(D) An unusually early onset of the winter season

Ans :

(C) Water scarcity for irrigation, leading to poor yield
A 'monsoon failure' implies insufficient rainfall. For a farmer in a region like the Deccan Plateau dependent on monsoons, this would lead to water scarcity for irrigating crops, likely resulting in reduced crop yields and economic hardship.

46. Which of the following statements about India's diverse climates contains an INCORRECT characteristic?
(A) Himalayan mountains : Temperate climate in lower hilly areas
(B) Thar Desert : Arid climate with extremely hot days

(C) Northern Plains : Tropical wet climate with heavy year-round rain
(D) Southern Peninsula : Tropical climate with distinct wet and dry

Ans :

(C) Northern Plains : Tropical wet climate with heavy year-round rain
The Northern Plains generally have a subtropical climate with very hot summers and cold winters, and monsoon rainfall, not a tropical wet climate with heavy year-round rain. The other descriptions are broadly accurate for those regions.

47. Assertion (A) : Human activities since the 19th century have been the main driver of recent climate change.
Reason (R) : The burning of fossil fuels and deforestation have significantly increased greenhouse gases in the atmosphere.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Scientific consensus indicates that human activities, particularly the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation since the industrial revolution, have led to a substantial increase in atmospheric greenhouse gases, which is the primary cause of recent climate change.

48. Consider the following regarding climate and disasters :
1. Cyclones form over land and move towards sea.
2. Landslides are often triggered by heavy rainfall or earthquakes.
3. Forest fires can be caused by human carelessness or dry conditions.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
Cyclones typically form over warm ocean waters. Landslides are indeed often triggered by heavy rain or seismic activity. Forest fires can result from human negligence or natural conditions like drought and high winds creating dry vegetation.

49. What is meant by "topography" of a region influencing its climate?
(A) The level of industrial pollution in that area
(B) The density and distribution of its population
(C) The shape and features of the land surface
(D) The types of crops cultivated in the region

Ans :

(C) The shape and features of the land surface
Topography refers to the physical characteristics of the land surface, such as mountains, valleys, plains, and slopes. These features can significantly influence local and regional climate by affecting wind flow, precipitation patterns, and temperature.

50. According to traditional Indian classification, 'Vasanta' ritu corresponds to which season?
(A) Summer
(B) Spring
(C) Winter
(D) Autumn

Ans :

(B) Spring
In the traditional Indian system of six ritus (seasons), Vasanta Ritu represents the spring season. It is a time of renewal, blossoming flowers, and pleasant weather, celebrated with various festivals across the country.

51. Why does the temperature generally decrease as one moves from the Earth's Equator towards the North or South Poles?
(A) The Earth is flatter at the poles
(B) The sun's rays become less direct
(C) There is more volcanic activity near Equator
(D) The poles are further from the Earth's

Ans :

(B) The sun's rays become less direct
As one moves away from the Equator towards the poles, the curvature of the Earth causes sunlight to strike the surface at an increasingly oblique angle. This spreads the solar energy over a larger area, resulting in less heating.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

52. What is a key difference between the formation of a 'depression' (low-pressure system) leading to a cyclone and a 'heat wave'?
(A) Depression involves high pressure; heat wave involves low
(B) Depression is about wind; heat wave is moisture
(C) Depression is low pressure; heat wave is high
(D) Depression forms over sea; heat wave over land

Ans :

(C) Depression is low pressure; heat wave is high
A depression (cyclone) is an area of significantly low atmospheric pressure. A heat wave is a prolonged period of excessively hot weather, which is often associated with high-pressure systems that trap warm air.

53. Which of these climate-related terms is correctly matched with its primary cause or characteristic?
(A) Urban Heat Island - Increased vegetation in cities
(B) Monsoon Failure - Excessive rainfall in short time
(C) Greenhouse Effect - Trapping of heat by gases
(D) Landslide - Slow movement of river water

Ans :

(C) Greenhouse Effect - Trapping of heat by gases
The greenhouse effect is a natural process where certain gases in the atmosphere (greenhouse gases) trap heat from the sun, warming the Earth. Human activities have enhanced this effect, leading to global warming in places.

54. The period during which India receives the most widespread rainfall, crucial for agriculture, is known as the _____ monsoon.
(A) Northeast
(B) Pre-winter
(C) Southwest
(D) Post-winter

Ans :

(C) Southwest
The Southwest monsoon, occurring typically from June to September, brings the majority of India's annual rainfall. These rains are vital for agriculture, replenishing water resources and supporting the livelihoods of millions across the country.

55. A region in India experiences cold, snowy winters and cool summers, with many peaks covered in snow year-round. This description best fits which type of climate?
(A) Arid desert climate of West
(B) Alpine climate of Himalayas
(C) Tropical wet climate, coast
(D) Subtropical climate of plains

Ans :

(B) Alpine climate of Himalayas
An alpine climate is characterized by cold, snowy winters and cool summers, typical of high mountainous regions. The Himalayas exhibit these conditions, with many of their higher peaks remaining snow-covered throughout the entire year.

56. Which of these is NOT a direct consequence of "monsoon failure" in India?
(A) Widespread flooding in river plains of India
(B) Agricultural crops suffering from lack of water
(C) People having to walk long for water
(D) Potential increase in food prices due to

Ans :

(A) Widespread flooding in river plains of India
Monsoon failure refers to insufficient rainfall, leading to drought conditions, water scarcity for agriculture and drinking, and potentially higher food prices. Widespread flooding is typically a result of excessive monsoon rainfall, not its failure.

57. What is the primary component of clouds that leads to precipitation?
(A) Dust particles only
(B) Atmospheric gases
(C) Water droplets or ice
(D) Electrical charges

Ans :

(C) Water droplets or ice
Clouds are visible masses of water droplets, ice crystals, or a mixture of both, suspended in the atmosphere. When these droplets or crystals grow large enough, they fall to the Earth as precipitation.

NODIA

58. The concept of "sustainable lifestyles" is mentioned as a measure for climate mitigation. What does this primarily imply?
(A) Living in a way that uses resources less
(B) Using more advanced technology for daily life
(C) Moving to urban areas for better options
(D) Increasing consumption to boost the economy

Ans :

(A) Living in a way that uses resources less
Sustainable lifestyles involve patterns of consumption and behavior that minimize environmental impact and resource depletion. This includes reducing waste, conserving energy, and making choices that can be maintained long-term without harming the planet.

59. A relief team is dispatched to an area affected by a "glacial burst." What kind of immediate disaster are they most likely to be dealing with in that affected specific mountainous region?
(A) A sudden and severe snowstorm or blizzard
(B) A major earthquake and its aftershocks
(C) A massive and destructive flash flood
(D) An uncontrolled wildfire spreading very rapidly

Ans :

(C) A massive and destructive flash flood
A glacial burst, or Glacial Lake Outburst Flood (GLOF), involves the sudden release of a large volume of water from a glacial lake. This results in a powerful flash flood downstream, causing significant destruction to life and property.

60. Assertion (A) : The Western Ghats receive heavy rainfall on their western slopes during the Southwest Monsoon.
Reason (R) : The eastern slopes of the Western Ghats lie in a rain shadow area and receive less rainfall.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
The western slopes of the Western Ghats force moisture-laden monsoon winds to rise, cool, and condense, causing heavy rainfall. The eastern slopes are in a rain shadow, receiving less rain as the winds descend and warm, but this explains why the east gets less, not directly why west gets more.

61. Which geographical factor is INCORRECTLY matched with its primary influence on India's climate?
(A) Himalayas - Barrier to cold Central Asian winds
(B) Latitude - Causes southern India to be warmer
(C) Proximity to Sea - Causes extreme temperatures in coastal regions
(D) Monsoon Winds - Bring seasonal rainfall to most parts

Ans :

(C) Proximity to Sea - Causes extreme temperatures in coastal regions
Proximity to the sea has a moderating influence on climate, leading to less extreme temperatures (milder summers and winters) in coastal regions compared to inland areas. The other pairings correctly describe influences.

62. Consider the following statements about climate factors :
1. Higher altitude generally leads to lower temperatures.
2. Land heats up and cools down faster than oceans.
3. Winds blow from low-pressure to high-pressure areas.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Higher altitudes indeed usually mean lower temperatures. Land surfaces do heat and cool more rapidly than large water bodies. However, winds blow from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.

63. The traditional Indian season 'Grishma' is associated with the _____ period of the year.
(A) spring
(B) summer
(C) autumn
(D) winter

Ans :

(B) summer
Grishma is the traditional Indian ritu that corresponds to the summer season. It is characterized by hot weather and is one of the six distinct seasons recognized in many parts of the country.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

64. What is the primary meaning of 'drought' in a climatic context?
(A) A period of unusually heavy and prolonged rain
(B) A sudden, intense snowstorm with strong winds
(C) A prolonged period with deficiency in rainfall
(D) A rapid rise in atmospheric temperatures

Ans :

(C) A prolonged period with deficiency in rainfall
Drought is an extended period when a region notes a deficiency in its water supply, whether surface or underground water. It is primarily caused by consistently below-average precipitation over a significant duration.

65. Why is the preservation of traditional knowledge about predicting monsoons considered important?
(A) It can replace all modern scientific forecasting methods
(B) It is a valuable cultural heritage and may offer insights
(C) It is primarily used for religious ceremonies today
(D) It helps in controlling the timing of monsoon

Ans :

(B) It is a valuable cultural heritage and may offer insights
Traditional knowledge, developed through generations of observation, is a significant cultural heritage. While not replacing scientific methods, it can offer complementary insights and understanding of local environmental cues related to weather patterns.

66. The term 'tropics' in geography refers to the region of Earth surrounding which major line of latitude?
(A) The Arctic Circle in the northern part
(B) The Antarctic Circle in southern part
(C) The Equator in the middle part
(D) The Prime Meridian in western part

Ans :

(C) The Equator in the middle part
The tropics are the region of Earth surrounding the Equator. They are delimited in latitude by the Tropic of Cancer in the Northern Hemisphere and the Tropic of Capricorn in the Southern Hemisphere usually.

NODIA

67. How does a 'landslide' differ from a 'flood' as a natural disaster?
(A) Landslide is water; flood is earth movement
(B) Landslide is earth movement; flood is water
(C) Landslide is wind; flood is fire related
(D) Landslide is cold; flood is heat related

Ans :

(B) Landslide is earth movement; flood is water
A landslide involves the downward movement of rock, debris, or earth down a slope. A flood, on the other hand, is an overflow of a large amount of water beyond its normal limits, especially over dry land.

68. Which of these climate-related terms is correctly defined?
(A) Temperate Climate - Extremely hot summers and very cold winters
(B) Semi-arid Climate - Heavy rainfall throughout the entire year
(C) Alpine Climate - Cold, snowy winters and quite cool summers
(D) Tropical Wet Climate - Very little rainfall, mostly dry

Ans :

(C) Alpine Climate - Cold, snowy winters and quite cool summers
An alpine climate, typical of high mountains, is characterized by cold, snowy winters and cool summers. Temperate climates are moderate, semi-arid have low rainfall, and tropical wet climates have high rainfall throughout the year.

69. A city government is concerned about increasing temperatures within the city compared to its cooler surrounding rural areas. They plan to increase green cover by planting more trees and creating parks. What phenomenon are they trying to mitigate by this?
(A) The monsoon failure effect on region
(B) The urban heat island effect
(C) The coastal erosion problem
(D) The formation of frequent dust storms

Ans :

(B) The urban heat island effect
Increasing green cover helps mitigate the urban heat island effect. Trees provide shade and cool the air through evapotranspiration, reducing the higher temperatures often found in cities compared to their rural surroundings because of it.

70. Which of the following is NOT typically considered a 'greenhouse gas' contributing to global warming?
(A) Carbon Dioxide (CO_2)
(B) Methane (CH_4)
(C) Oxygen (O_2)
(D) Nitrous Oxide (N_2O)

Ans :

(C) Oxygen (O_2)
Greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide trap heat in the atmosphere. Oxygen, while essential for life, is not a significant greenhouse gas and does not directly contribute to this warming effect.

71. The phenomenon where land heats up or cools down faster than the ocean is a key factor in the formation of what seasonal weather pattern in India?
(A) Heat waves in the northern plains
(B) Cold waves in the Himalayan region
(C) Monsoon winds and associated rainfall
(D) Cyclonic storms in the Bay of Bengal

Ans :

(C) Monsoon winds and associated rainfall
The differential heating of land and sea creates pressure gradients that drive the seasonal reversal of winds known as monsoons. This mechanism is fundamental to India's distinct wet and dry seasons and its agriculture.

72. If a region has a "tropical wet climate," what kind of vegetation is it most likely to support naturally?
(A) Sparse desert shrubs and many cacti
(B) Temperate grasslands with few tall trees
(C) Lush rainforests with high biodiversity
(D) Alpine meadows with low-growing plant

Ans :

(C) Lush rainforests with high biodiversity
A tropical wet climate, characterized by high temperatures and abundant rainfall throughout the year, provides ideal conditions for the growth of dense, lush rainforests, which typically exhibit very high levels of plant and animal biodiversity.

73. Assertion (A) : Understanding climate helps in preparing for natural disasters like floods and cyclones for us.
Reason (R) : Climate patterns influence the frequency, intensity, and location of many weather-related natural disasters.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Knowledge of a region's climate, including its susceptibility to extreme weather, is crucial for disaster preparedness. Climate patterns directly affect where and how often events like floods, cyclones, and droughts are likely to occur.

74. Which of the following is an INCORRECT pairing of a climatic zone in India and a city located within it?
(A) Alpine Climate - Leh (Ladakh) city
(B) Arid Climate - Jaisalmer (Rajasthan)
(C) Tropical Wet Climate - Mumbai (Maharashtra)
(D) Subtropical Climate - Chennai (Tamil Nadu)

Ans :

(D) Subtropical Climate - Chennai (Tamil Nadu)
Chennai, located on the southeastern coast, experiences a tropical wet and dry climate, or a tropical monsoon climate, rather than a subtropical climate which is more characteristic of northern plains with greater temperature variations.

75. Consider the following factors that determine climate :
1. Distance from the Equator (latitude).
2. Height above mean sea level (altitude).
3. Number of rivers flowing through region.
Which of the above factors are primary determinants?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Latitude and altitude are primary factors influencing a region's climate. While rivers are important for water supply and can have local effects, their number is not a primary determinant of broad climatic zones like latitude and altitude.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

76. The process where water from oceans and the Earth's surface turns into vapour and enters the atmosphere is called _____.
(A) condensation
(B) precipitation
(C) evaporation
(D) transpiration

Ans :

(C) evaporation
Evaporation is the process by which water changes from a liquid to a gas or vapor. It is the primary pathway that water moves from the liquid state back into the water cycle as atmospheric water vapor.

77. What are "ritus" in the Indian context?
(A) Types of soil found in different areas
(B) Traditional names for major mountain ranges
(C) Traditional classification of seasons in year
(D) Ancient units for measuring land distances

Ans :

(C) Traditional classification of seasons in year
"Ritus" refer to the traditional division of the year into six distinct seasons in many parts of India. Each ritu has its own characteristics, cultural significance, and associated festivals that are often celebrated.

78. Why is the melting of glaciers, potentially accelerated by climate change, a concern for regions that rely on glacial lakes for water?
(A) It reduces the overall water availability
(B) It increases the risk of glacial lake floods
(C) It makes the lake water too salty
(D) It causes the lakes to freeze solid

Ans :

(B) It increases the risk of glacial lake floods
Accelerated glacier melt due to climate change can lead to the rapid filling of glacial lakes. This increases the pressure on the natural dams (moraines) holding these lakes, heightening the risk of catastrophic Glacial Lake Outburst Floods (GLOFs).

79. What does the abbreviation "IMD" stand for in the context of weather in India?
(A) Indian Monsoon Department for all
(B) Institute of Meteorological Data
(C) India Meteorological Department
(D) International Meteorology Division

Ans :

(C) India Meteorological Department
IMD stands for the India Meteorological Department. It is the principal government agency in India responsible for meteorological observations, weather forecasting, and seismology, playing a vital role in disaster management and public information.

80. A community living in a hilly region known for frequent heavy monsoons is experiencing increased incidents of soil and rock suddenly collapsing down slopes, blocking roads and damaging homes. What type of climate-related disaster are they most likely facing due to this?
(A) Cyclonic storms and high coastal surges
(B) Prolonged drought and severe water shortage
(C) Frequent landslides and debris flows
(D) Intense heat waves and widespread forest fires

Ans :

(C) Frequent landslides and debris flows
Heavy monsoon rains in hilly regions saturate the soil, making slopes unstable. This often leads to landslides, where masses of rock, earth, or debris move down a slope, posing significant risks to infrastructure and human life.

NODIA

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following climate types found in India with their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Alpine	A.	Very hot summers, cold winters (Northern Plains)
2.	Subtropical	B.	Cold, snowy winters and cool summers (Himalayas)
3.	Arid	C.	Extremely hot days, cool nights, very little rainfall (Thar)
4.	Tropical Wet	D.	Heavy monsoon rainfall (Western coastal strip)

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D

Alpine climate in the Himalayas has cold, snowy winters. Subtropical climate in northern plains has very hot summers and cold winters. Arid climate in the Thar Desert means extremely hot days and little rain. Tropical wet climate on the western coast gets heavy monsoon rain.

82. Match the factors determining climate with their effects :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Latitude	A.	Moderates temperature, cooler summers, milder winters
2.	Altitude	B.	Places near Equator are warmer, poles are colder
3.	Proximity to the sea	C.	Can move warmer/cooler air, affect humidity/ precipitation
4.	Winds	D.	Temperature decreases as height increases (e.g., hill stations)

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Latitude affects temperature based on distance from the Equator. Altitude causes cooler temperatures at higher elevations. Proximity to the sea moderates coastal temperatures. Winds transport air masses influencing local weather.

83. Match the following terms related to monsoons and climate :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Monsoon	A.	Long-term pattern of weather in a region over decades
2.	Climate	B.	Seasonal winds bringing heavy rains, from Arabic 'mausim' (season)
3.	Microclimate	C.	Climate localised in a small area, differing from surroundings
4.	Southwest Monsoon	D.	Brings summer rains to India, advancing from early June

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(c) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Monsoon refers to seasonal winds, often bringing rain. Climate is the long-term weather pattern. A microclimate is a localized climate. The Southwest Monsoon brings summer rains to India starting in June.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. **www.qbgpt.in**
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

84. Match the following climate-related disasters with their descriptions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Cyclone	A.	Sudden collapse of rock, soil, or debris, often on hillsides
2.	Flood	B.	Intense low-pressure system over sea with high winds and heavy rain
3.	Landslide	C.	Uncontrolled fire spreading rapidly across vegetation
4.	Forest Fire	D.	Water overflowing into normally dry land due to heavy rain/river overflow

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
A cyclone is an intense storm with high winds. A flood is when water overflows onto dry land. A landslide is the sudden collapse of earth material. A forest fire is an uncontrolled blaze in vegetation.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

85. Match the following terms related to climate change :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Climate Change	A.	Capacity to withstand or recover quickly from difficulties
2.	Fossil Fuels	B.	Significant, long-term shifts in temperature and weather patterns
3.	Resilience	C.	Steps to slow global warming and reduce causes of climate change
4.	Mitigation	D.	Energy sources from ancient remains (coal, oil, gas)

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Climate change refers to long-term shifts in weather patterns. Fossil fuels are energy sources like coal and oil. Resilience is the ability to recover from difficulties. Mitigation involves actions to reduce climate change causes.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What is the long-term pattern of weather in an area called?

Ans :

Climate.

87. How many traditional seasons or 'ritus' are mentioned for many parts of India?

Ans :

Six.

88. Name one of the six traditional Indian seasons (ritus).

Ans :

Vasanta/Grishma/Varsha/Sharad/Hemanta/Shishir (any one).

89. What type of climate is found in the high Himalayan mountains?

Ans :

Alpine climate.

90. What climate type features very hot summers and cold winters, typical of the northern plains?

Ans :

Subtropical climate.

91. Which desert in India has an arid climate?

Ans :

Thar Desert.

92. What climate type is found on the western coastal strip, favourable for rice and spices?

Ans :

Tropical wet climate.

93. Name one factor that determines the climate of a place.

Ans :

Latitude/Altitude/Proximity to the sea/Winds/Topography (any one).

94. Does temperature generally increase or decrease as altitude increases?

Ans :

Decrease.

95. What term describes the total physical surface features of an area?

Ans :

Topography.

96. What is a climate localized in a small area that differs from the surrounding region called?

Ans :

Microclimate.

97. What are warmer areas within cities due to buildings and lack of vegetation called?

Ans :

Urban heat islands.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

98. What does the Arabic word 'mausim', the origin of 'monsoon', mean?

Ans :

Season.

99. Which heats up faster : land or ocean?

Ans :

Land.

100. From which direction do the summer monsoon winds primarily blow towards India?

Ans :

Southwest.

101. Which place in Meghalaya receives the highest average annual rainfall in the world?

Ans :

Mawsynram.

102. Name one festival which is associated with seasons or agriculture.

Ans :

Bihu/Chhath Puja/Makar Sakranti/Baisakhi/ Pongal/Losoong/Lohri/Gudi Padwa/Onam/Awe Winter Festival/Hemis (any one).

103. What is the term for poor rainfall during the monsoon season?

Ans :

Monsoon failure.

104. Which agency in India tracks cyclones and provides warnings?

Ans :

India Meteorological Department (IMD).

105. What is the cloudless centre of a cyclone called?

Ans :

The eye of the cyclone.

106. What natural event occurs when water overflows into normally dry land?

Ans :

Flood.

107. What is the sudden collapse of rock, soil, or debris down a slope called?

Ans :

Landslide.

108. Name one type of fuel formed from the ancient remains of plants and animals.

Ans :

Fossil fuel (or Coal/Petroleum oil/Natural gas).

109. What gas is a major contributor to the 'greenhouse effect'?

Ans :

Carbon dioxide (CO_2).

110. What does NDRF stand for?

Ans :

National Disaster Response Force.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Explain the key difference between weather and climate.

Ans :

Weather refers to the atmospheric conditions (like rain, sun, wind) experienced hour-to-hour or day-to-day, while climate is the average weather pattern observed over a long period (decades).

112. How are seasons related to both weather and climate?

Ans :

Weather changes significantly with each season (e.g., hot summer, rainy monsoon). The regular pattern of these seasons occurring year after year defines the climate of a region.

113. Describe the characteristics of an alpine climate found in the Himalayas.

Ans :

An alpine climate features cold, snowy winters and cool summers. It is typical of high mountain regions, similar to the Alps in Europe, hence the name.

114. Why are many 'hill stations' found in areas with a temperate climate?

Ans :

Temperate climates in hilly areas have moderately cold winters and summers that are not too hot, providing relief from the extreme heat of the plains below.

NODIA

115. Briefly explain the arid climate of the Thar Desert.

Ans :

The Thar Desert's arid climate is characterized by extremely hot daytime temperatures, cool nights, and very scarce rainfall, requiring unique water conservation methods.

116. How does latitude affect the temperature of a place?

Ans :

Places near the Equator (low latitudes) receive direct sunlight focused on a small area, making them warmer. Places near the poles (high latitudes) receive slanted rays spread over a larger area, making them colder.

117. Give one reason why temperature decreases with increasing altitude.

Ans :

As altitude increases, air pressure and density decrease, causing the air to cool. Also, being farther from the Earth's heated surface contributes to lower temperatures higher up.

118. How does proximity to the sea moderate the temperature of coastal areas?

Ans :

The sea heats up and cools down slower than land. In summer, cooler sea breezes moderate land temperature; in winter, the warmer sea air prevents extreme cold, resulting in milder temperatures year-round.

119. Explain how winds blowing from the west affect North India's weather in summer and winter.

Ans :

In summer, westerly winds bring hot, dry air from deserts, causing heat waves. In winter, cold winds from across the Himalayas can creep in, causing cold waves in the foothills and plains.

120. How does topography, like the Himalayas, influence India's climate?

Ans :

The Himalayas act as a barrier, partially protecting India from cold Central Asian winds. Mountain ranges also influence rainfall patterns by blocking moisture-laden winds (like the Western Ghats during monsoon).

121. What is a microclimate? Give an example.

Ans :

A microclimate is the distinct climate of a very small, localized area that differs from its surroundings. Examples include enclosed valleys, specific forest areas, or urban heat islands in cities.

122. Briefly explain the basic mechanism that drives monsoon winds.

Ans :

Land heats and cools faster than oceans. In summer, hot land creates low pressure, drawing moist winds from the high-pressure ocean. In winter, cooler land creates high pressure, pushing dry winds towards the lower-pressure ocean.

123. Differentiate between the Southwest (summer) and Northeast (winter) monsoons in India.

Ans :

The Southwest monsoon (June-July) brings moisture-laden winds from the ocean to the land, causing widespread heavy rain. The Northeast monsoon (winter) involves dry winds blowing from land to sea, bringing rain mainly to parts of the east coast after picking up moisture over the Bay of Bengal.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

124. How does traditional knowledge help in predicting monsoons? Give one example.

Ans :

Generations of observation led to local indicators. For example, fishermen on the Konkan coast predict monsoon onset when deep-sea fish surface, or the flowering of the Golden Shower tree signals impending rain in some regions.

125. Explain the term 'monsoon failure' and its immediate impact on people.

Ans :

'Monsoon failure' refers to significantly less rainfall than expected during the monsoon season. This severely affects agriculture, leads to water scarcity (forcing women to walk farther for water), and can cause migration of labourers.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

126. How is a cyclone formed.

Ans :

Cyclones form over warm seas when intense low atmospheric pressure develops. Air from surrounding higher-pressure areas rushes in, bringing moisture, forming rotating clouds that spiral inwards towards the low-pressure centre (eye).

127. What are clouds made of?

Ans :

Clouds are visible masses composed of tiny water droplets, microscopic ice crystals, or a mixture of both, suspended high in the atmosphere.

128. What causes floods in plains like Uttar Pradesh and Bihar during monsoons?

Ans :

Heavy monsoon rainfall generates massive water runoff that rivers cannot carry away quickly, or the rivers themselves swell and overflow their banks, inundating the normally dry plains.

129. Explain what a glacial burst is and why it occurs.

Ans :

A glacial burst happens when a lake formed by melting glaciers, held back by ice or rock debris, breaks through its barrier due to excessive meltwater or heavy rain, causing devastating downstream floods.

130. Why are cities sometimes prone to flooding during heavy rainfall?

Ans :

Urban flooding occurs due to overburdened drainage systems, construction blocking waterways, and large areas of concrete/asphalt surfaces that prevent rainwater from soaking into the ground.

131. What triggers landslides, and which regions in India are prone to them?

Ans :

Landslides (collapse of rock/soil) are triggered by heavy rain, earthquakes, or volcanic activity. Hilly regions like the Himalayas (Himachal, Uttarakhand, Sikkim) and the Western Ghats are prone to them.

132. List two causes of forest fires

Ans :

Forest fires can be caused by dry climatic conditions (droughts), high winds spreading flames rapidly, or human carelessness (like unattended campfires or discarded cigarettes).

NODIA

133. What is the 'greenhouse effect', and why is it naturally important?

Ans :

The greenhouse effect is the natural process where certain gases (CO_2, etc.) in the atmosphere trap some of the sun's heat, warming the Earth enough to support life.

134. How have human activities intensified the greenhouse effect, leading to global warming?

Ans :

Burning fossil fuels, deforestation, and industrial processes have released excessive amounts of greenhouse gases rapidly, trapping extra heat and causing the planet to warm unnaturally fast (global warming).

135. What does climate 'mitigation' involve? Give one example.

Ans :

Climate mitigation involves taking steps to slow down global warming and reduce its causes. Examples include cutting greenhouse gas emissions, planting trees, or switching to renewable energy sources.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the difference between the climate of Srinagar (North India) and Kanniyakumari (South India) using the factor of latitude.

Ans :

Kanniyakumari, near the Equator (low latitude), receives direct solar radiation, resulting in a hot climate year-round. Srinagar, at a higher latitude, receives slanted solar rays spread over a larger area and passing through more atmosphere, leading to less heat and a much cooler climate with distinct seasons.

137. Compare the annual temperature range of Mumbai (coastal) and Nagpur (inland), explaining the reason for the difference using the concept of proximity to the sea.

Ans :

Mumbai, being coastal, has a smaller temperature range (approx. 14°C) because the sea moderates temperatures (cooler summers, milder winters). Nagpur, being inland and far from the sea's influence, experiences extreme temperatures – very hot summers and colder winters – resulting in a much larger range (approx. 34°C).

138. Analyse the role of the Western Ghats during the southwest monsoon. Why does the Deccan plateau east of the Ghats receive less rain?

Ans :

The Western Ghats act as a barrier to the moisture-laden southwest monsoon winds coming from the Arabian Sea. The mountains force the winds to rise, cool, and release heavy rainfall on their western slopes. The Deccan plateau lies in the rain shadow area east of the Ghats, receiving significantly less rainfall as the winds descend and become drier.

139. "The monsoon is a double-edged sword for India's agriculture and economy." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

Monsoons are vital, bringing necessary rain for agriculture, filling rivers, and recharging groundwater, boosting the economy. However, 'monsoon failure' (less rain) causes drought and economic hardship, while excessive rain can cause devastating floods, destroying crops and infrastructure. Thus, its variability presents both benefits and risks.

140. Explain how human activities like deforestation and improper construction can increase the risk or severity of landslides.

Ans :

Deforestation removes tree roots that help bind soil together on slopes, making them unstable. Improper construction on hillsides, especially cutting into slopes or blocking natural water drainage, can further destabilize the land, increasing the likelihood and impact of landslides, particularly during heavy rains.

141. Analyse the environmental and economic consequences of large-scale forest fires.

Ans :

Environmentally, forest fires destroy vast habitats, kill wildlife, release large amounts of CO_2 (contributing to climate change), degrade ecosystems, and worsen air quality. Economically, they destroy valuable timber resources, impact tourism, can damage property, displace communities, and require costly firefighting and restoration efforts.

142. Explain the link between the burning of fossil fuels and global warming. Why is this a major concern?

Ans :

Burning fossil fuels (coal, oil, gas) releases large quantities of greenhouse gases, primarily CO_2, into the atmosphere. These gases trap extra heat, enhancing the natural greenhouse effect and causing the Earth's average temperature to rise rapidly (global warming). This is concerning because it disrupts established climate patterns globally.

143. Analyse how climate change can lead to an increase in the frequency or intensity of climate-related disasters like floods or heat waves.

Ans :

Global warming alters weather patterns. It can lead to more intense rainfall events (increasing flood risk), prolonged dry spells (increasing drought and fire risk), and more frequent and severe heat waves as average temperatures rise. Warmer oceans can also fuel more powerful cyclones.

144. How can understanding climate patterns help communities prepare for natural disasters? Provide an example.

Ans :

Knowing a region's climate patterns (e.g., likelihood of cyclones on the east coast during a specific season, or flood risk during monsoon in certain river basins) allows communities and governments to develop early warning systems, build appropriate infrastructure (like cyclone shelters or flood barriers), and plan evacuation routes, reducing vulnerability.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

145. Evaluate the role of the National Disaster Response Force (NDRF) in managing climate-related disasters in India.

Ans :

The NDRF plays a crucial specialized role. Its trained personnel are deployed during disasters like cyclones, floods, and landslides for immediate rescue and evacuation operations. Their pre-positioning in vulnerable areas based on forecasts allows for rapid response, saving lives and providing critical initial relief, making them vital for disaster management.

146. Compare the causes of flooding in Himalayan regions (glacial bursts) versus urban areas (poor drainage).

Ans :

Himalayan floods can be caused by natural glacial lake outbursts due to rapid melting or excess rain overwhelming natural barriers. Urban flooding is often exacerbated by human factors : inadequate or blocked drainage systems unable to cope with heavy rain, and impermeable concrete surfaces preventing water absorption.

147. Analyse the connection between climate, culture, and festivals in India, using an example like Baisakhi or Pongal.

Ans :

India's climate, particularly the monsoon and seasonal cycles, heavily influences agriculture. Many festivals are timed around harvest seasons, celebrating agricultural bounty. Baisakhi marks the spring harvest in North India, while Pongal celebrates the harvest in Tamil Nadu, reflecting the deep cultural integration of climate-dependent agriculture.

148. Explain how a 'microclimate' like an 'urban heat island' forms and why it differs from the surrounding rural areas.

Ans :

Urban heat islands form because cities replace vegetation with concrete and asphalt, which absorb and retain more solar heat. Waste heat from vehicles, buildings, and industry also contributes. Reduced vegetation limits cooling through evapotranspiration. This trapped heat makes cities significantly warmer than surrounding greener, rural areas.

149. "Climate mitigation efforts often clash with the desire for economic growth." Analyse why this conflict occurs.

Ans :

Many mitigation measures (like reducing fossil fuel use, stricter environmental regulations) can be perceived as increasing costs for industries or slowing down development projects reliant on cheaper, polluting technologies. This creates a conflict between short-term economic gains and the long-term environmental necessity of addressing climate change.

150. Considering India's diverse climates, analyse why a single national policy might be difficult to implement for agriculture or water management.

Ans :

India's vast climatic diversity – from alpine cold to desert heat, heavy monsoon regions to semi-arid zones – means agricultural practices and water availability vary immensely. A policy suitable for the wet tropics (e.g., rice cultivation) would fail in arid Rajasthan. Therefore, region-specific strategies adapting to local climate realities are essential.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. A travel company is planning tours for European tourists visiting India in December-January. They want to offer options covering different climate experiences. They are considering tours to Shimla (Himachal Pradesh), Jaipur (Rajasthan), and Goa (West Coast). Advise them on the likely climate/weather in each location during that period.

(i) Describe the likely climate/weather in Shimla during December-January.

(ii) Describe the likely climate/weather in Jaipur during December-January.

(iii) Describe the likely climate/weather in Goa during December-January.

Ans :

(i) Shimla, a hill station with a temperate/alpine influence, will likely experience cold weather, possibly with freezing temperatures and snowfall, requiring heavy winter clothing.

(ii) Jaipur, in the subtropical/semi-arid zone, will likely have pleasant days but cold nights

NODIA

and mornings. Winters are generally dry. Moderate warm clothing would be needed.

(iii) Goa, on the coast with a tropical influence, will have mild and pleasant weather, neither too hot nor too cold, due to the moderating effect of the sea. Light clothing would suffice.

152. Farmers in the Deccan Plateau (semi-arid climate) rely on monsoon rains for their crops like cotton and pulses. One year, the southwest monsoon is significantly delayed and rainfall is 40% below normal ('monsoon failure'). Describe potential immediate consequences for the farmers and the local economy.

(i) What is the primary impact of monsoon failure on crop cultivation in this region?

(ii) How might this affect the availability and cost of food locally?

(iii) Evaluate one socio-economic consequence for the farming community beyond crop loss.

Ans :

(i) Lack of sufficient rain will lead to poor crop growth or even crop failure, drastically reducing the harvest of essential crops like cotton and pulses.

(ii) Reduced harvest means less local food availability, leading to shortages and higher prices for essential food items like pulses in the local markets.

(iii) Farmers might face severe financial distress due to lost income, potentially leading to debt. Agricultural labourers might lose work opportunities, forcing them to migrate to cities seeking alternative livelihoods.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

153. Following heavy monsoon rains, a village in the Western Ghats region experiences a landslide that blocks the main road and damages some houses on the lower slopes. The area was known for recent deforestation activity on the upper slopes for a new construction project.

(i) Which two factors mentioned likely contributed to this landslide?

(ii) Explain how deforestation might have increased the landslide risk.

(iii) Suggest one preventive measure communities or authorities could take to reduce future landslide risk in such areas.

Ans :

(i) Heavy monsoon rainfall and recent deforestation on the upper slopes are the two contributing factors mentioned.

(ii) Tree roots help hold soil together on slopes. Removing trees through deforestation weakens the soil structure, making the slope unstable and more prone to collapse during heavy rains.

(iii) Implementing strict regulations against deforestation on steep slopes and promoting afforestation (planting trees) can help stabilize the soil. Ensuring construction follows safe engineering practices that respect natural drainage is also crucial.

154. A coastal city on India's east coast receives an IMD alert for an approaching cyclone with very high wind speeds. The alert level is 'Red (Take Action)'. The NDRF team is deployed. Describe the potential dangers and necessary actions.

(i) What are the major dangers associated with a severe cyclone hitting the coast?

(ii) What immediate action should residents in vulnerable low-lying coastal areas take upon receiving a 'Red' alert?

(iii) What is the primary role of the NDRF in this situation?

Ans :

(i) Dangers include extremely high winds damaging structures, heavy rainfall causing floods, storm surges (rising sea levels) inundating coastal areas, loss of life, and disruption of essential services.

(ii) Residents should immediately evacuate to designated cyclone shelters or safer locations inland as instructed by authorities, securing their homes and belongings as much as possible beforehand.

(iii) The NDRF's primary role is to assist in evacuation efforts before the cyclone hits and conduct search and rescue operations immediately after the cyclone passes to save lives.

155. A country heavily relies on coal-fired power plants for electricity, driving economic growth but also releasing large amounts of CO_2. Scientists warn this contributes significantly to global warming and climate change, predicting more frequent droughts affecting the country's agriculture in the long run.

(i) Explain the connection between burning coal and releasing CO_2.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) How does the increased CO_2 contribute to climate change and potentially more droughts?

(iii) Suggest one 'mitigation' strategy the country could adopt to address this issue, considering both environment and economy.

Ans :

(i) Coal is a fossil fuel primarily made of carbon. Burning it combines carbon with oxygen from the air, releasing large amounts of carbon dioxide (CO_2) gas into the atmosphere.

(ii) Increased CO_2 traps more heat (enhanced greenhouse effect), raising global temperatures. This warming disrupts weather patterns, potentially leading to changes in rainfall distribution, including more frequent or severe droughts in some regions.

(iii) The country could invest in transitioning towards renewable energy sources like solar or wind power. This reduces CO_2 emissions (mitigation) while potentially creating new jobs and long-term energy security, balancing environmental concerns with economic aspects.

NODIA

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

CHAPTER 4

NEW BEGINNINGS : CITIES AND STATES

SUMMARY

1. BACKGROUND : THE SECOND URBANISATION

Following the decline of the Indus Valley Civilisation (India's 'First Urbanisation') in the early 2nd millennium BCE, urban life largely disappeared from the Indian subcontinent for about a thousand years. People reverted to rural lifestyles as the characteristics of urban order, such as large structures, specialized occupations, writing systems, sanitation, and administration, vanished. However, beginning in the 1st millennium BCE, a vibrant new phase of urban development, often termed India's 'Second Urbanisation', emerged, particularly in the Ganga plains and neighbouring regions. This resurgence is evidenced by both archaeological findings and references in ancient Indian literature (late Vedic, Buddhist, and Jain).

2. JANAPADAS AND MAHAJANAPADAS

Towards the end of the 2nd millennium BCE, regional cultures in north India reorganized into clans or groups, likely sharing common languages and customs. Each clan settled in a territory known as a janapada ('where the people set foot'), led by a ruler or raja.

2.1 Formation

As trade networks expanded, these janapadas grew and connected. By the 8th or 7th centuries BCE, some merged to form larger political units called mahajanapadas.

2.2 Extent

Ancient texts list sixteen prominent mahajanapadas, stretching from Gandhara (northwest) to Anga (east) and Ashmaka (central India). Key powerful states included Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa, and Avanti.

2.3 Capitals

Most mahajanapadas had large, fortified capital cities, often protected by moats. Many of these ancient capitals, such as Rajagriha (Magadha), Shravasti (Kosala), Kaushambi (Vatsa), and Ujjayini (Avanti), remain significant urban centres today.

3. EARLY DEMOCRATIC TRADITIONS

The janapadas featured assemblies (sabha or samiti), likely comprising clan elders, where important matters were discussed. Rulers were generally expected to consult these assemblies and their ministers, rather than ruling arbitrarily. The mahajanapadas expanded on these systems :

3.1 Monarchies

Many operated as monarchies where the raja held ultimate authority, supported by ministers and assemblies. Succession was often hereditary. Kings collected taxes, maintained law and order, built fortifications, and commanded armies. Magadha, Kosala, and Avanti were prominent monarchies.

3.2 Ganas/Sanghas (Republics)

At least two mahajanapadas, Vajji and Malla, functioned differently. In these 'early republics', the assembly (sabha or samiti) held significant power, making decisions through discussion and voting, including the selection of the raja. This represents one of the earliest forms of democratic governance in the world.

4. INNOVATIONS OF THE ERA

This period witnessed significant changes and innovations :

4.1 Intellectual Ferment

Emergence of new philosophical and religious schools, notably late Vedic traditions, Buddhism, and Jainism, whose teachings spread widely through travelling scholars and pilgrims.

NODIA

4.2 Iron Metallurgy

While known earlier, the widespread use of iron tools and weapons became prominent from the late 2nd millennium BCE onwards. Iron facilitated larger-scale agriculture and produced more effective weapons than bronze, potentially contributing to warfare between mahajanapadas.

4.3 Coinage

The growth of trade necessitated the introduction of currency. India's first coins were typically silver 'punch-marked coins', later followed by coins made of copper, gold, and other metals. Mahajanapadas often issued their own coins, but coins were exchanged across regions.

5. SOCIAL STRUCTURE : THE VARNA-JATI SYSTEM

As society grew more complex, a distinct social structure emerged, often described by the Varna-Jati system.

5.1 Jati

Referred to communities often based on specific occupations or livelihoods (e.g., farmers, metalworkers, traders, artisans), with skills typically passed down generations. Jatis could further subdivide, developing unique customs.

5.2 Varna

A concept from Vedic texts, outlining four broad social categories :

1. Brahmins (priests, scholars).
2. Kshatriyas (warriors, rulers).
3. Vaishyas (traders, farmers, merchants).
4. Shudras (artisans, workers, service providers).

5.3 Complexity and Change

While providing structure and stability, the system became rigid over time, leading to inequalities and discrimination. However, early evidence suggests individuals and communities could sometimes change occupations based on circumstances. The term 'caste' (from Portuguese 'casta') is often used to refer to jati, varna, or the combined system, though its application is debated.

6. DEVELOPMENTS ELSEWHERE IN INDIA

During this era, extensive trade routes like the Uttarapatha (connecting the northwest to eastern India) and the Dakshinapatha (connecting the Ganga plains to the south) facilitated the movement of goods, people, and ideas across the subcontinent. Major cities emerged in various regions, such as the fortified city of Shishupalgarh in Kalinga (modern Odisha).

In southern India, urbanization began around 400 BCE, with the rise of kingdoms like the Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas, known from archaeological evidence and ancient Tamil literature. These regions traded valuable resources like gemstones, gold, and spices within India and overseas. By around 300 BCE, the entire subcontinent was interconnected, though the era of the mahajanapadas was drawing to a close, paving the way for new political developments.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Consider the quotation at the start of the chapter discuss in several groups. Compare your observations and conclusions on what Kautilya recommends for a kingdom. Is it very different today?

Ans :

Kautilya recommends that a kingdom should have fortified capitals and frontiers, be self-sustaining with fertile land, resources like mines and forests, good water supply (not solely rain-dependent), good roads/waterways, and a productive, diverse economy. Many of these principles, such as national security, resource management, infrastructure, and economic stability, are still fundamental concerns for governments today.

2. How were rulers chosen in early Vedic society ?

Ans :

In some mahajanapadas (monarchies), the raja's position was hereditary. In others, like the ganas or sanghas (e.g., Vajji), the raja and key decisions were made by an assembly (sabha or samiti), possibly through discussion and vote, representing an early democratic form.

3. Imagine you are a historian studying ancient India. What types of sources (archaeological, literary, etc.) would you use to learn more about the mahajanapadas? Explain how each source might contribute to your understanding.

Ans :

A historian would use :

(i) Archaeological sources : Excavated city ruins (fortifications, structures), artifacts (pottery,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

tools, coins like punch-marked coins) to understand urban planning, technology, daily life, and trade.

(ii) Literary sources : Late Vedic texts, Buddhist and Jain literature which describe these urban centers, their governance, social structure, and economic activities, providing names of mahajanapadas and rulers.

4. Why was the development of iron metallurgy so important for the growth of urbanism in the 1st millennium BCE? You may use points from the chapter but also from your knowledge or imagination.

Ans :

Iron metallurgy was crucial because :

1. It provided stronger and more efficient tools for agriculture (ploughs), enabling clearing of forests in the Ganga plains and increasing food production to support larger urban populations.
2. It led to better weapons (swords, spears), strengthening armies and facilitating the consolidation of territories into larger states, which are prerequisites for urban centers.
3. Iron tools also aided in crafts and construction necessary for urban infrastructure.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is the 'Second Urbanisation of India' primarily referred to as?
(A) The re-establishment of Harappan cities' old glory
(B) The growth of new cities in medieval
(C) A new phase of urban growth mainly
(D) The development of port cities for trade

Ans :

(C) A new phase of urban growth mainly
The 'Second Urbanisation' denotes a significant new phase of city development that began in the 1st millennium BCE, particularly in the Ganga plains and surrounding regions, following the decline of the earlier Indus Valley Civilization.

2. Which of these was NOT a primary component of the Harappan urban order that disappeared during its disintegration?
(A) Elaborate public and many private structures
(B) A widely used system of iron tools
(C) Different communities with specialized jobs
(D) A well-developed system of sanitation

Ans :

(B) A widely used system of iron tools
The Harappan civilization was known for its bronze metallurgy; widespread use of iron tools became a feature of the later Second Urbanisation. Elaborate structures, specialized occupations, and sanitation systems were hallmarks of Harappan cities.

3. Archaeological excavations and ancient literature are the two main sources for understanding the Second Urbanisation. Which types of ancient literature provide these references?
(A) Only Greek and Roman historical accounts
(B) Exclusively Mesopotamian clay tablet inscriptions
(C) Late Vedic, Buddhist, and Jain texts mainly
(D) Egyptian hieroglyphic scrolls and old carvings

Ans :

(C) Late Vedic, Buddhist, and Jain texts mainly
Ancient Indian texts, including late Vedic literature, as well as Buddhist and Jain scriptures, are rich sources of information, frequently mentioning the new urban centers that emerged during the Second Urbanisation.

4. What does the Sanskrit word 'janapada' literally mean?
(A) The king's royal palace or his court
(B) A fortified city with very strong walls
(C) Where people (jana) have set foot (pada)
(D) A sacred river flowing through the land

Ans :

(C) Where people (jana) have set foot (pada)
'Janapada' is a Sanskrit term where 'jana' means people or clan, and 'pada' means foot. It signifies a territory where a particular clan or group of people had settled down and established their footing.

5. By the 8th or 7th centuries BCE, some early janapadas merged to form larger units known as what?
(A) Gramas (villages)
(B) Nagaras (towns)
(C) Mahajanapadas (great territories)
(D) Samrajyas (empires)

Ans :

(C) Mahajanapadas (great territories)

NODIA

As janapadas grew and trade networks expanded, some merged, forming larger and more powerful political units. These larger entities were known as mahajanapadas, meaning 'great janapadas' or large territories.

6. What was a key difference in the political system of mahajanapadas like Vajji and Malla compared to monarchies like Magadha?
(A) Vajji and Malla were ruled by foreign kings
(B) Vajji and Malla had assemblies with more power
(C) Monarchies like Magadha had no system of raja
(D) Monarchies like Magadha had no advisory council

Ans :

(B) Vajji and Malla had assemblies with more power
Unlike monarchies such as Magadha where the raja held ultimate authority, mahajanapadas like Vajji and Malla, called ganas or sanghas, had assemblies (sabha or samiti) that wielded more power, including selecting the raja and making decisions.

7. The concentration of many mahajanapadas in the Ganga plains was due to several factors. Which of these was a significant reason?
(A) The region's isolation preventing external attacks
(B) The dry climate being ideal for storage
(C) The growth of agriculture in fertile plains
(D) The absence of any major river systems

Ans :

(C) The growth of agriculture in fertile plains
The fertile alluvial soil of the Ganga plains supported robust agricultural growth. This agricultural surplus was a key factor in the rise and sustenance of populous states and urban centers like the mahajanapadas.

8. Most capitals of the mahajanapadas were well-fortified. What defensive feature often ran outside these fortifications?
(A) A dense thorny forest
(B) A high mountain range
(C) A deep, wide moat filled
(D) A series of watchtowers only

Ans :

(C) A deep, wide moat filled
To enhance their defense, the fortified capitals of most mahajanapadas were typically surrounded by a moat. This deep, wide ditch, often filled with water, served as an additional obstacle for attackers.

9. If a mahajanapada was described as a 'gana' or 'sangha', what did this imply about its system of governance?
(A) It was ruled by a single, hereditary king
(B) It functioned more democratically with assembly rule
(C) It was a territory controlled by religious priests
(D) It was primarily a military-controlled state organization

Ans :

(B) It functioned more democratically with assembly rule
Mahajanapadas termed 'ganas' or 'sanghas', like Vajji, were not monarchies. Their governance was more democratic, with assemblies holding significant power in decision-making and even in the selection of the ruler, thus being called early republics.

10. A major technological shift during the Second Urbanisation involved the widespread use of _____ metallurgy.
(A) copper
(B) bronze
(C) iron
(D) gold

Ans :

(C) iron
The Second Urbanisation saw a significant technological advancement with the perfection and widespread adoption of iron metallurgy. Iron tools improved agriculture and iron weapons transformed warfare, contributing to societal changes.

11. What were the earliest Indian coins, typically made of silver and bearing stamped symbols, called?
(A) Gold dinaras
(B) Copper panas
(C) Punch-marked coins
(D) Shell kaudis

Ans :

(C) Punch-marked coins

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

The first coins used in India, emerging due to growing trade, were made of silver. Symbols were stamped or 'punched' onto them, leading to their designation as 'punch-marked coins' by numismatists and historians.

12. The emergence of new schools of thought like Buddhism and Jainism during the age of mahajanapadas indicates what about the society?
(A) A period of intellectual and spiritual exploration
(B) A complete rejection of all older traditions
(C) A society focused solely on warfare needs
(D) A decline in trade and urban activities

Ans :

(A) A period of intellectual and spiritual exploration
The rise of new philosophical and religious schools such as Buddhism and Jainism during this era signifies a time of profound intellectual ferment and spiritual seeking, with diverse ideas about life and ethics being discussed.

13. Which of the following was NOT one of the four varnas in the social system that emerged from Vedic texts?
(A) Brahmins (priests and scholars)
(B) Kshatriyas (warriors and rulers)
(C) Shudras (artisans and workers)
(D) Antyajas (outcastes or untouchables)

Ans :

(D) Antyajas (outcastes or untouchables)
The varna system, originating from Vedic texts, comprised four categories : Brahmins (knowledge, rituals), Kshatriyas (defense, warfare), Vaishyas (trade, agriculture), and Shudras (artisans, service). Those excluded from this system were later termed differently.

14. All of the following were typical functions or characteristics of a raja in a monarchical mahajanapada EXCEPT :
(A) Collecting taxes or revenue from people
(B) Maintaining an army for defense or war
(C) Being directly elected by all adult citizens
(D) Getting fortifications built around the capital

Ans :

(C) Being directly elected by all adult citizens
In monarchical mahajanapadas, the raja's position was usually hereditary. While they collected taxes, maintained armies, and built forts, direct election by all citizens was a feature of some gana-sanghas, not typical monarchies.

15. Which of the following pairs correctly matches a mahajanapada with its approximate geographical location in present-day India?
(A) Gandhara - Eastern India
(B) Magadha - Southern India
(C) Avanti - Central India
(D) Kuru - Western India

Ans :

(C) Avanti - Central India
Avanti was a powerful mahajanapada located in the region of present-day Madhya Pradesh in central India. Gandhara was in the northwest, Magadha in eastern India (Bihar), and Kuru in northern India.

16. Assertion (A) : Iron tools and weapons became widespread during the Second Urbanisation, impacting agriculture and warfare.
Reason (R) : The techniques for extracting and shaping iron were first discovered during the Harappan civilization.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Iron metallurgy became widespread during the Second Urbanisation, improving agriculture and warfare. However, the Harappan civilization was primarily known for copper and bronze; iron techniques were perfected later, from the early 2nd millennium BCE.

17. Which of the following pairings of a term and its description related to ancient Indian society is INCORRECT?
(A) Janapada - Territory settled by a particular clan
(B) Sabha - Assembly for discussing clan matters
(C) Jati - Social group based on religious belief
(D) Varna - One of four broad societal categories

Ans :

(C) Jati - Social group based on religious belief
A jati was primarily a community or group of people with a specific professional occupation, and the skills were often passed down generations, not defined by religious belief. Varna, janapada, and sabha are correctly described.

NODIA

18. Consider the following statements about early Indian states :
1. Most mahajanapada capitals were unfortified and small settlements.
2. Iron metallurgy was less significant than bronze during Second Urbanisation.
3. Some mahajanapadas like Vajji had democratic elements in their governance.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 3 only
Most mahajanapada capitals were large, well-fortified cities. Iron metallurgy was a major technological shift during the Second Urbanisation. However, states like Vajji (a gana or sangha) indeed exhibited democratic features.

19. A trader in ancient India regularly travels along a major route connecting the northwestern regions, through the Ganga plains, all the way to eastern India, exchanging goods like textiles and spices. Which major ancient trade route is this trader most likely using for travel?
(A) The Dakshinapatha route
(B) The Silk Road extension
(C) The Uttarapatha route
(D) The Trans-Himalayan path

Ans :

(C) The Uttarapatha route
The Uttarapatha was a crucial ancient trade route that connected the northwestern parts of the Indian subcontinent with the Ganga plains and extended towards eastern India. It was vital for trade and cultural exchange across these regions.

20. In the varna system, the Vaishyas were primarily supposed to increase society's wealth through occupations like trade, business, or _____.
(A) warfare
(B) rituals
(C) teaching
(D) agriculture

Ans :

(D) agriculture
The Vaishya varna was traditionally associated with economic activities aimed at generating wealth for society. Their primary occupations included trade, business, and also agriculture, playing a key role in production and commerce.

21. What was the primary role of the Kshatriya varna in ancient Indian society?
(A) To preserve and spread sacred knowledge well
(B) To engage in trade and manage commerce
(C) To defend society and land, engage warfare
(D) To perform artisanal work and offer service

Ans :

(C) To defend society and land, engage warfare
The Kshatriya varna was traditionally tasked with the protection of society and its territory. This involved roles in governance, military leadership, and engaging in warfare when necessary to maintain order and security.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

22. Around what time did cities begin to emerge in the southern regions of the Indian subcontinent, marking urbanization ?
(A) Around 2000 BCE
(B) Around 1000 BCE
(C) Around 400 BCE
(D) Around 100 CE

Ans :

(C) Around 400 BCE
While urbanization was prominent in northern India earlier, cities in the southern regions of the subcontinent started emerging from about 400 BCE. This period also saw the rise of southern kingdoms like the Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas.

23. The existence of fortifications and moats around mahajanapada capitals suggests what about the political climate of that era?
(A) A period of complete peace and no conflict
(B) A need for defense against potential attacks
(C) A focus purely on religious and ceremonial
(D) A lack of organized military structures

Ans :

(B) A need for defense against potential attacks
The construction of strong fortifications and defensive moats around major cities indicates that these urban centers faced potential threats. This implies a political environment where warfare or raids between states were possibilities, necessitating robust defenses.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

24. How did the use of iron differ between the First Urbanisation (Harappan) and the Second Urbanisation in India?
(A) Iron was dominant in First; bronze in Second
(B) Iron was absent in First; widespread in Second
(C) Both used iron equally for all tools
(D) Bronze was absent in Second; iron in First

Ans :

(B) Iron was absent in First; widespread in Second
The Harappan Civilization (First Urbanisation) was primarily a bronze-age culture, with copper and bronze being the main metals for tools and artifacts. The Second Urbanisation saw the widespread adoption and mastery of iron technology.

25. Which of the following correctly pairs an ancient Indian region/city with its significant characteristic during the period of mahajanapadas?
(A) Vajji - A powerful hereditary monarchy type
(B) Takshashila - Capital of Magadha mahajanapada
(C) Shishupalgarh - Major urban center in eastern India
(D) Kaushambi - A small, unfortified village settlement

Ans :

(C) Shishupalgarh - Major urban center in eastern India
Shishupalgarh, located near modern Bhubaneswar, was a significant, well-planned urban center and the capital of the Kalinga region during this era. Vajji was a republic, Takshashila was in Gandhara, and Kaushambi was a major capital.

26. The Dakshinapatha trade route started from Kaushambi and crossed the _____ Range of hills to proceed southwards.
(A) Himalayan
(B) Aravalli
(C) Vindhya
(D) Satpura

Ans :

(C) Vindhya
The Dakshinapatha, a major ancient southern trade route, originated from Kaushambi (near Prayagraj) and traversed the Vindhya Range to connect with regions in southern India, facilitating trade and cultural exchange.

27. In the context of ancient Indian governance, what was a 'sabha' or 'samiti'?
(A) A royal treasury for storing collected taxes
(B) An assembly or council for discussing matters
(C) A military outpost on the kingdom's frontier
(D) A school for training young princes, chiefs

Ans :

(B) An assembly or council for discussing matters
A 'sabha' or 'samiti' in a janapada or mahajanapada was an assembly or council where matters concerning the clan or state were discussed. The raja was often expected to consider their advice in governance.

NODIA

28. "Which mahajanapada in central India marked the southern extent of the 16 mahajanapadas, stretching from Gandhara in the northwest to Anga in the east?"
(A) Matsya
(B) Chedi
(C) Ashmaka
(D) Vatsa

Ans :

(C) Ashmaka
The traditional list of sixteen mahajanapadas covered a vast geographical area, stretching from Gandhara in the northwest, Anga in the east, and extending to Ashmaka located in central India, near the Godavari River.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

29. The gradual reorganization of regional cultures into janapadas was often based on clans sharing common language and what other factor?
(A) Identical agricultural practices for sure
(B) Common customs and traditions held
(C) Uniform styles of pottery making
(D) A single, unified religious belief

Ans :

(B) Common customs and traditions held
Janapadas typically formed as clans or groups of people, likely sharing not only a common language but also common customs and traditions, which helped forge a collective identity and territorial association over the time.

30. An archaeologist uncovers an ancient Indian city site. Features include massive rampart walls, a surrounding deep ditch, deliberately narrow gateways, and evidence of a ruling class and diverse occupations like metalsmiths and potters. This city most likely belongs to which period of Indian history?
(A) The early Stone Age hunter-gatherer phase
(B) The Harappan Civilization's First Urbanisation
(C) The period of Mahajanapadas' Second Urbanisation
(D) The early colonial period under British rule

Ans :

(C) The period of Mahajanapadas' Second Urbanisation
These features – large fortified cities with moats, controlled gateways, evidence of a ruling class, and specialized occupations – are characteristic of the urban centers that flourished during the Second Urbanisation, particularly the capitals of the mahajanapadas.

31. Which of the following was NOT a significant impact of the development of iron metallurgy during the Second Urbanisation?
(A) Facilitation of agriculture on a larger scale
(B) Creation of lighter and sharper weapons
(C) The decline of all trade and commerce
(D) Contribution to warfare between states

Ans :

(C) The decline of all trade and commerce
Iron metallurgy significantly boosted agriculture and warfare capabilities. It did not cause a decline in trade; rather, growing urban centers and states likely fostered more complex trade networks during this period of urbanization.

32. Which varna is correctly paired with its traditional societal role?
(A) Brahmin - Primarily engaged in commerce and trade
(B) Kshatriya - Focused on artisanal crafts and labor
(C) Vaishya - Tasked with societal defense and ruling
(D) Shudra - Involved in service and skilled crafts

Ans :

(D) Shudra - Involved in service and skilled crafts
In the varna system, Shudras were generally associated with providing services, labor, and artisanal skills to society. Brahmins were with knowledge/rituals, Kshatriyas with defense/rule, and Vaishyas with trade/agriculture.

33. Assertion (A) : The varna-jati system in ancient India was always rigid, with no possibility of individuals changing occupations.
Reason (R) : Historical evidence suggests that in earlier periods, individuals and communities sometimes changed their professional occupations.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; while the system became more rigid over time, there is evidence that in earlier periods, occupational changes did occur. Reason (R) correctly states this historical flexibility.

34. Which of the following descriptions related to the structure of mahajanapadas is INCORRECT?
(A) Fortified Capitals - Many capitals had strong walls and moats for defense.
(B) Raja - Hereditary ruler in monarchical mahajanapadas.
(C) Sabha/Samiti - Exclusively religious bodies with no political role.
(D) Gana/Sangha - States with more democratic assembly-based governance.

Ans :

(C) Sabha/Samiti - Exclusively religious bodies with no political role.
Sabhas and samitis were assemblies where matters concerning the clan or state were discussed; they played a political and advisory role, not an exclusively religious one. The other descriptions are accurate.

35. Consider the following about the Second Urbanisation :
1. It primarily occurred in the southern tip of India.
2. It saw the first use of punch-marked coins for trade.
3. It was characterized by a decline in iron usage.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 only
The Second Urbanisation was prominent in the Ganga plains and Indus basin. It marked the first use of coins in India. Iron usage became widespread and was a key technological shift, not a decline.

36. The ancient trade route connecting northwestern regions to the Ganga plains and eastern India was known as the _____.
(A) Dakshinapatha
(B) Suvarnapathal
(C) Uttarapatha
(D) Resham Marg

Ans :

(C) Uttarapatha
The Uttarapatha was a major ancient northern trade route that facilitated commerce and cultural interactions by connecting the northwestern parts of the Indian subcontinent with the Gangetic plains and further east.

37. In the context of the social structure, what is a 'jati'?
(A) A political alliance formed between two kingdoms
(B) A community group often tied to specific occupations
(C) A philosophical school of thought or new belief
(D) A type of fortified structure in a city

Ans :

(B) A community group often tied to specific occupations
A 'jati' was a group or community of people, often endogamous, whose members typically shared a traditional professional occupation, with skills passed down through generations, and specific social customs.

38. Which three kingdoms are mentioned as emerging in the southern regions of India around 400 BCE or slightly later?
(A) Magadha, Kosala, and Avanti kingdoms
(B) Gupta, Maurya, and Kushana kingdoms
(C) Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas kingdoms
(D) Shunga, Kanva, and Satavahana group

Ans :

(C) Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas kingdoms
Around 400 BCE and in the subsequent centuries, three prominent kingdoms – the Cholas, the Cheras, and the Pandyas – rose to significance in the southern parts of the Indian subcontinent.

39. The development of a writing system, sanitation, and specialized occupations were components of which phase of Indian urban life?
(A) The early Vedic rural settlements widely
(B) The Mesolithic cave-dwelling communities
(C) The Harappan Civilization's First Urbanisation
(D) The post-Gupta period feudal villages

Ans :

(C) The Harappan Civilization's First Urbanisation
The Indus Valley/Harappan Civilization, known as India's First Urbanisation, was characterized by sophisticated urban planning, including writing systems, sanitation, and a society with diverse specialized occupations.

40. A historian is studying an ancient Indian state where the ruler was selected by an assembly, and major decisions were taken through discussion and voting rather than by a hereditary monarch. This state would most likely be classified as which of these?
(A) A typical monarchical mahajanapada system
(B) A gana or sangha (early republic)
(C) A province within a larger ancient empire
(D) A feudal territory ruled by landowners

Ans :

(B) A gana or sangha (early republic)
States like Vajji and Malla, referred to as ganas or sanghas, had political systems where assemblies held significant power, including the selection of the ruler and decision-making through discussion, fitting the description of an early republic.

41. What is primarily meant by the term 'Second Urbanisation of India'?
(A) The rebuilding of ancient Harappan port cities
(B) The emergence of new urban centers later
(C) The growth of villages into larger towns
(D) The construction of capitals by Mauryan

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(B) The emergence of new urban centers later
The 'Second Urbanisation' refers to a new phase of urban development that began in the Ganga plains and other regions in the 1st millennium BCE, distinct from the earlier Indus Valley Civilization's urbanism.

42. How many mahajanapadas are frequently listed in ancient texts, extending from Gandhara to Anga?
(A) Ten major ones
(B) Twelve main ones
(C) Sixteen common ones
(D) Twenty-four small ones

Ans :

(C) Sixteen common ones
Ancient texts, particularly Buddhist and Jain literature, commonly list sixteen major mahajanapadas that flourished across northern and central India during this period, representing significant political entities of that time.

43. The fortification of mahajanapada capitals with walls and moats suggests an emphasis on what aspect?
(A) Agricultural development primarily
(B) Religious activities
(C) Trade and commerce only
(D) Defense and security

Ans :

(D) Defense and security
The construction of strong defensive structures like walls and moats around the capitals of mahajanapadas indicates a significant concern for defense and security, suggesting a period where protection from external threats was crucial.

44. Which of these was NOT a characteristic of the gana or sangha type of mahajanapadas like Vajji?
(A) Rulers selected by an assembly or group
(B) Decisions made through discussion and vote
(C) A political system akin to a monarchy
(D) Often referred to as early republics

Ans :

(C) A political system akin to a monarchy
Ganas or sanghas, such as Vajji, were distinct from monarchies. They had systems where rulers were often selected by assemblies, and decisions involved discussion and voting, making them early forms of republics rather than typical monarchies.

45. The introduction of _____ coins, made by stamping symbols onto metal, marked an important development in trade during this period.
(A) cast copper
(B) gold leaf
(C) punch-marked silver
(D) baked clay

Ans :

(C) punch-marked silver
The advent of coinage was a significant innovation for facilitating trade. The earliest Indian coins were typically made of silver and had symbols 'punched' onto them, hence they are known as punch-marked coins.

NODIA

46. How did the societal role of Brahmins generally differ from that of Kshatriyas in the varna system?
(A) Brahmins were traders; Kshatriyas were farmers
(B) Brahmins were scholars; Kshatriyas were warriors
(C) Brahmins were artisans; Kshatriyas were priests
(D) Brahmins were rulers; Kshatriyas were servants

Ans :

(B) Brahmins were scholars; Kshatriyas were warriors
In the varna system, Brahmins were traditionally associated with knowledge, teaching, and performing rituals. Kshatriyas, on the other hand, were primarily responsible for warfare, protection of society, and governance.

47. Which of the following correctly pairs an ancient Indian term with its meaning?
(A) Mahajanapada - A small village council
(B) Raja - An elected religious leader only
(C) Jati - A professional occupational based group
(D) Varna - A type of currency

Ans :

(C) Jati - A professional occupational based group
A jati was a social group or community, often hereditary, whose members typically shared a specific professional occupation, such as artisans, farmers, or merchants, along with distinct customs and traditions.

48. If an ancient Indian ruler wanted to control trade routes passing from the Ganga plains towards southern India, which major geographical barrier would their caravans or armies likely need to cross?
(A) The Thar Desert sands
(B) The Himalayan high passes
(C) The Vindhya Range hills
(D) The Rann of Kutch area

Ans :

(C) The Vindhya Range hills
The Vindhya Range historically served as a geographical divider between northern and southern India. Trade routes like the Dakshinapatha, connecting the Ganga plains to the south, had to traverse these hills.

49. Assertion (A) : The Second Urbanisation period in India saw the rise of new cities and complex state systems.
Reason (R) : This development was largely independent of technological advancements like iron metallurgy or organized agriculture.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Second Urbanisation indeed involved the emergence of new cities and complex states. However, this was significantly supported by technological advancements like iron metallurgy (improving tools and weapons) and developments in agriculture.

50. Which mahajanapada is INCORRECTLY matched with its general location or significance?
(A) Magadha - Powerful kingdom in eastern India (Bihar region)
(B) Gandhara - Northwestern region, site of Takshashila university
(C) Vajji - A monarchy ruled by a hereditary king
(D) Ashmaka - Located in central India, near Godavari River

Ans :

(C) Vajji - A monarchy ruled by a hereditary king
Vajji was a prominent gana or sangha (republic), not a typical monarchy ruled by a hereditary king. Its governance involved assemblies with considerable power. The other pairings are generally correct regarding location and features.

51. Consider the following regarding early Indian society :
1. The Harappan civilization was India's 'First Urbanisation'.
2. Janapadas were typically formed by individual families, not clans.
3. The varna system was introduced only after British colonial rule.

Which of the above statements is/are correct in general?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
The Harappan Civilization is indeed termed India's 'First Urbanisation'. Janapadas were formed by clans or groups of people. The varna system has ancient origins in Vedic texts, long before British rule.

52. The two major ancient Indian trade routes mentioned that connected different parts of the subcontinent were the Uttarapatha and the _____.
(A) Suvarnabhumi Patha
(B) Dakshinapatha route
(C) Samudra Patha way
(D) Himavat Patha way

Ans :

(B) Dakshinapatha route
The Uttarapatha (northern route) and the Dakshinapatha (southern route) were two significant ancient trade routes that facilitated the movement of goods, people, and ideas across vast stretches of the Indian subcontinent, linking diverse regions.

53. What was the primary characteristic of a 'moat' used in the fortification of ancient cities?
(A) A high observation tower built on city wall
(B) An underground tunnel for escape or supply
(C) A deep, wide ditch surrounding fortifications
(D) A sacred grove located just outside city

Ans :

(C) A deep, wide ditch surrounding fortifications
A moat was a defensive feature consisting of a deep and wide ditch, often filled with water, that

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

encircled the fortifications of a city or castle. Its purpose was to create an obstacle for attackers.

54. The ancient city of Rajagriha (modern Rajgir) was the capital of which powerful mahajanapada?
(A) Kosala
(B) Vatsa
(C) Avanti
(D) Magadha

Ans :

(D) Magadha
Rajagriha, known today as Rajgir in Bihar, served as the early capital of the influential Magadha mahajanapada, one of the most powerful states that emerged during this period in ancient Indian history.

55. The varna-jati system, while providing social organization, eventually led to what negative societal consequence over time?
(A) Complete equality among all social groups
(B) Increased social mobility for every individual
(C) Inequalities and discrimination towards some groups
(D) The abolition of all professional specializations

Ans :

(C) Inequalities and discrimination towards some groups
Although the varna-jati system provided a framework for social and economic organization, over time it became more rigid and unfortunately led to hierarchical divisions, resulting in inequalities and discrimination against lower jatis and communities excluded from the system.

56. How did the political power structure in a 'gana' or 'sangha' mahajanapada differ from that in a monarchical one?
(A) Ganas had no rulers; monarchies had many
(B) Ganas had elected heads; monarchies hereditary
(C) Ganas were military states; monarchies were not
(D) Ganas had no assemblies; monarchies had one

Ans :

(B) Ganas had elected heads; monarchies hereditary
In ganas or sanghas, the head of state or raja was often selected or elected by an assembly, whereas in monarchical mahajanapadas, the position of the raja was typically hereditary, passed down within a ruling family.

57. Which technology is correctly associated with its major impact during the Second Urbanisation?
(A) Bronze Metallurgy - Led to the first cities.
(B) Iron Metallurgy - Improved agriculture and weapons.
(C) Coinage - Primarily used for religious offerings.
(D) Writing System - Declined during this urban phase.

Ans :

(B) Iron Metallurgy - Improved agriculture and weapons.
The widespread adoption of iron metallurgy was a key technological development during the Second Urbanisation. Iron tools enhanced agricultural productivity, and iron weapons provided a military advantage. Bronze was key to the First Urbanisation. Coinage was for trade.

58. An ancient settlement shows evidence of regularly held assemblies where clan elders discussed important matters and even had a say in the selection of their leader. This settlement most likely belonged to which type of political entity in ancient India?
(A) A province of a large, centralized empire
(B) A janapada or a gana-sangha mahajanapada
(C) A purely nomadic pastoral community group
(D) A small, isolated monastic religious order

Ans :

(B) A janapada or a gana-sangha mahajanapada
Janapadas were characterized by assemblies (sabha or samiti) where clan matters were discussed, and the raja consulted these bodies. Some mahajanapadas, known as gana-sanghas, had even more powerful assemblies involved in selecting rulers.

NODIA

59. Which of these was NOT a primary reason for the disintegration of the Indus/Harappan Civilization (First Urbanisation)?
(A) Abandonment of some of its major cities
(B) Disappearance of its complex urban order
(C) The widespread adoption of iron technology
(D) Reversion to a more rural or village lifestyle

Ans :

(C) The widespread adoption of iron technology
The decline of the Harappan Civilization involved the abandonment of cities and the loss of its urban characteristics. The widespread adoption of iron technology was a feature of the much later Second Urbanisation, not a cause of Harappan decline.

60. The fertile plains of which two major rivers were central to the Second Urbanisation in India?
(A) Narmada and Tapti rivers
(B) Godavari and Krishna rivers
(C) Ganga and Indus rivers
(D) Mahanadi and Brahmaputra

Ans :

(C) Ganga and Indus rivers
The Second Urbanisation predominantly flourished in the fertile plains of the Ganga River and parts of the Indus (Sindhu) basin, along with neighboring regions, providing the agricultural base for growing populations and urban centers.

61. In the context of the varna system, what was the general expectation for the Shudra varna?
(A) To accumulate vast wealth through only trade
(B) To hold the highest positions in governance
(C) To serve as priests and perform rituals
(D) To be artisans, craftspeople, or provide service

Ans :

(D) To be artisans, craftspeople, or provide service
The Shudra varna was generally expected to provide labor, service, and artisanal skills to the other varnas within the societal framework, contributing through various forms of manual work and crafts.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

62. How did 'mahajanapadas' typically differ from 'janapadas' in terms of scale and organization?
(A) Mahajanapadas were smaller and less organized overall
(B) Mahajanapadas were larger, more powerful state units
(C) Janapadas had complex armies; mahajanapadas had none
(D) Janapadas used coins; mahajanapadas used barter

Ans :

(B) Mahajanapadas were larger, more powerful state units
Mahajanapadas were formed by the amalgamation or growth of janapadas, resulting in larger, more complex, and generally more powerful political and territorial entities with more organized state structures.

63. The period of the Second Urbanisation saw the emergence of important religious and philosophical schools of thought, including late Vedic, Buddhist, and _____ traditions.
(A) Greek
(B) Roman
(C) Jain
(D) Persian

Ans :

(C) Jain
Alongside late Vedic thought and the rise of Buddhism, Jainism also emerged as a significant religious and philosophical tradition during this transformative period of the Second Urbanisation in ancient India, contributing to its diverse intellectual landscape.

64. The interconnectedness of the Indian subcontinent by 300-200 BCE through trade routes facilitated the movement of goods and what else?
(A) Only military troops and their supplies
(B) Primarily wild animals for royal entertainment
(C) People, ideas, and cultural teachings too
(D) Exclusively raw materials for weapon production

Ans :

(C) People, ideas, and cultural teachings too
The extensive network of trade routes not only enabled the exchange of goods but also facilitated the movement of people, leading to the spread of ideas, religious teachings, cultural practices, and technological knowledge across different regions.

65. A ruler in ancient India establishes a new city. To ensure its prosperity and sustainability, the ruler focuses on cultivable land, mines, timber, good pastures, reliable water sources (not solely rain-dependent), and good roads. This approach aligns with the principles of statecraft advocated by whom?
(A) The Buddha in his early sermons
(B) Mahavira in his teachings on non-violence
(C) Kautilya in the Arthashastra text
(D) Ashoka in his rock edicts known

Ans :

(C) Kautilya in the Arthashastra text
Kautilya, in the Arthashastra, emphasizes the importance of a well-endowed territory with resources like cultivable land, mines, forests, pastures, reliable water, and good infrastructure (roads, waterways) for a kingdom's prosperity and strength.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

66. Which of these ancient Indian sites is INCORRECTLY paired with its primary association?
(A) Rajagriha - Capital of Magadha mahajanapada
(B) Kaushambi - Capital of Vatsa mahajanapada
(C) Takshashila - Major center of Buddhist learning (Implied as a center of learning, often Buddhist)
(D) Shishupalgarh - A minor Harappan trading outpost

Ans :

(D) Shishupalgarh - A minor Harappan trading outpost
Shishupalgarh was a major fortified urban center in eastern India, the capital of Kalinga, flourishing during the Second Urbanisation, not a Harappan site. The other pairings are appropriate for that period.

67. Assertion (A) : The Second Urbanisation in India was marked by the emergence of fortified cities and the use of coinage.
Reason (R) : These developments were driven by a decline in agricultural production and long-distance trade in India.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Second Urbanisation did see fortified cities and the introduction of coinage. However, these were generally supported by advancements in agriculture (like iron ploughs) and flourishing trade networks, not a decline in them.

68. Consider the following about the social structure in ancient India :
1. The varna system consisted of five main categories.
2. Jatis were often subdivided into smaller sub-jatis.
3. Changing one's professional occupation was completely impossible in early periods.

Which of the above statements is/are correct usually?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The varna system had four main categories. Jatis indeed could have sub-jatis with their own customs. While it became rigid, evidence suggests some occupational flexibility in earlier periods.

69. The period following the disintegration of the Harappan civilization saw a reversion to a more _____ or village-based lifestyle for about a millennium.
(A) urban
(B) nomadic
(C) rural
(D) maritime

Ans :

(C) rural
After the decline of the Indus Valley Civilization's urban centers, there was a significant period where complex urban life was largely absent, and society reverted to a predominantly rural or village-based existence for many centuries.

70. What does 'metallurgy' refer to?
(A) The study of ancient weather patterns
(B) The science and technology of making pottery
(C) The art of inscribing texts on stone
(D) The science and technology of extracting metals

Ans :

(D) The science and technology of extracting metals
Metallurgy is the branch of science and technology concerned with the properties of metals and their production and purification, including the extraction of metals from their ores and shaping them into useful objects or tools.

71. Which of the following was one of the most powerful mahajanapadas located in the region of present-day Bihar?
(A) Avanti
(B) Gandhara
(C) Magadha
(D) Matsya

Ans :

(C) Magadha
Magadha, with its capital at Rajagriha (and later Pataliputra), was one of the most powerful and influential mahajanapadas, situated in the area of modern-day Bihar in eastern India.

NODIA

72. The mention of guilds (shrenis) of traders and craftspeople in ancient texts suggests what about the economic organization of the time?
(A) All economic activity was controlled by king
(B) There was a high degree of organization
(C) Barter was the only method of exchange
(D) Craft production was limited to rural areas

Ans :

(B) There was a high degree of organization
The existence of guilds (shrenis) indicates that traders and craftspeople were organizing themselves into associations. This suggests a relatively sophisticated level of economic organization, cooperation, and regulation within these professional groups.

73. How did the geographical focus of the First Urbanisation (Harappan) differ from that of the Second Urbanisation in India?
(A) First was south; Second was far north
(B) First was Indus basin; Second was Ganga
(C) First was east coast; Second was in west
(D) Both were focused solely on Deccan area

Ans :

(B) First was Indus basin; Second was Ganga
The First Urbanisation, the Harappan Civilization, was centered around the Indus River basin and the Sarasvati River. The Second Urbanisation saw its primary development in the fertile plains of the Ganga River and adjacent regions.

74. Which term is correctly defined in the context of ancient Indian states?
(A) Janapada - A type of fortified granary house
(B) Mahajanapada - A collection of sacred hymns
(C) Raja - The hereditary or selected ruler/chief
(D) Sabha - A specific type of iron made weapon

Ans :

(C) Raja - The hereditary or selected ruler/chief
'Raja' was the term used for the ruler or chief of a janapada or mahajanapada. This position could be hereditary in monarchies or filled through selection/election in some republican states (gana-sanghas).

75. A group of artisans in an ancient Indian city specializes in making high-quality iron swords and agricultural tools. Their products are in demand both locally and in neighboring territories. This scenario best reflects the technological advancements of which period?
(A) The Paleolithic (Old Stone Age) time
(B) The Neolithic (New Stone Age) time
(C) The Chalcolithic (Copper Age) time
(D) The Second Urbanisation (Iron Age)

Ans :

(D) The Second Urbanisation (Iron Age)
The specialization in crafting high-quality iron swords and agricultural tools points to the Iron Age and the period of the Second Urbanisation in India. During this time, iron metallurgy became widespread, significantly impacting various aspects of life.

76. Which of these was NOT a common feature of the capitals of the mahajanapadas?
(A) They were usually small, undefended rural villages
(B) They often had strong fortifications and walls
(C) Many were surrounded by protective moats too
(D) They served as centers of political power

Ans :

(A) They were usually small, undefended rural villages
The capitals of the mahajanapadas were typically large, well-fortified cities that served as centers of political administration and power, not small, undefended villages. They were designed for defense and governance.

77. The city of Ujjayini was the capital of which prominent mahajanapada in central India?
(A) Kashi
(B) Chedi
(C) Vatsa
(D) Avanti

Ans :

(D) Avanti
Ujjayini (modern Ujjain) was an important city and the capital of the Avanti mahajanapada, which was a significant power in central India during the period of the sixteen mahajanapadas.

78. In the context of the varna system, who were the Brahmins?
(A) Those primarily engaged in military activities
(B) Those involved in trade and agricultural sectors
(C) Those engaged in preserving knowledge and rituals
(D) Those who performed manual labor and service

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) Those engaged in preserving knowledge and rituals
The Brahmin varna was traditionally associated with the preservation and dissemination of sacred knowledge, learning, teaching, and the performance of religious rituals and ceremonies within ancient Indian society according to many.

79. What was a key difference in the political decision-making process between a monarchical mahajanapada and a gana-sangha?
(A) Monarchies used voting; gana-sanghas had kings decide
(B) Monarchies had councils; gana-sanghas had none
(C) Monarchies had hereditary rule; gana-sanghas had assemblies
(D) Monarchies were peaceful; gana-sanghas were at war

Ans :

(C) Monarchies had hereditary rule; gana-sanghas had assemblies
Monarchical mahajanapadas typically had hereditary rulers (rajas) who, while advised by councils, held ultimate authority. Gana-sanghas had assemblies (sabha/samiti) that played a more direct role in governance and often in selecting leaders.

80. Imagine archaeologists excavate a site and find numerous silver coins with various symbols punched onto them, but no inscriptions. They also find iron arrowheads and evidence of large-scale agriculture. This site most likely dates to which period of ancient Indian history?
(A) The early Harappan phase of civilization
(B) The period of the Mauryan Empire's peak
(C) The era of the Mahajanapadas/Second Urbanisation
(D) The Gupta period's classical artistic age

Ans :

(C) The era of the Mahajanapadas/Second Urbanisation
The presence of punch-marked silver coins (often without inscriptions initially), iron weaponry, and evidence of large-scale agriculture are all characteristic features of the period of the Mahajanapadas and the Second Urbanisation in ancient India.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following terms with their correct descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Janapada	A.	Bigger territorial units formed by the merging of early states
2.	Mahajanapada	B.	A territory where a clan or people (jana) settled down
3.	Sabha/Samiti	C.	First use of these in India was punch-marked silver pieces
4.	Coins	D.	Assembly or council in a janapada for discussing clan matters

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Janapada means a territory where people settled. Mahajanapadas were larger states formed from janapadas. Sabha/Samiti were janapada councils. Early Indian coins were punch-marked silver.

82. Match the Mahajanapadas with their characteristics or locations :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Magadha	A.	Mahajanapada in central India, near Godavari River
2.	Vajji	B.	Powerful monarchical state in today's Bihar
3.	Ashmaka	C.	One of the most powerful monarchical states in today's Uttar Pradesh
4.	Kosala	D.	Along with Malla, had a more democratic gana/ sangha system

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C

NODIA

(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Magadha was a powerful monarchy in present-day Bihar. Vajji had a democratic system (gana/sangha). Ashmaka was located in central India near the Godavari. Kosala was a powerful monarchy in modern Uttar Pradesh.

83. Match the societal terms with their descriptions in ancient India :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Jati	A.	Warriors, expected to defend society
2.	Varna	B.	Community with a specific professional occupation
3.	Brahmins	C.	Concept from Vedic texts categorizing society into four groups
4.	Kshatriyas	D.	Engaged in preserving knowledge and performing rituals

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Jati refers to a community with a specific occupation. Varna is the four-fold societal categorization from Vedic texts. Brahmins preserved knowledge and performed rituals. Kshatriyas were the warrior class.

84. Match the ancient routes and technological advancements with their descriptions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Second Urbanisation	A.	Ancient trade route connecting northwest to eastern India
2.	Iron Metallurgy	B.	Emerged in the 1st millennium BCE, initially in the Ganga plains
3.	Uttarapatha	C.	Ancient trade route from Kaushambi southwards across Vindhya Range
4.	Dakshinapatha	D.	Key technological shift, leading to better tools and weapons

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Second Urbanisation was a new phase of city development in the 1st millennium BCE. Iron metallurgy was a major technological advance. Uttarapatha connected northwest to eastern India. Dakshinapatha was a key southern trade route.

NODIA

85. Match the urban features and societal roles from the Mahajanapada period :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Fortified Cities	A.	Artisans, craftspeople, workers, or servants
2.	Moat	B.	Common defence for capitals, often with narrow gateways
3.	Vaishyas	C.	Deep, wide ditch filled with water surrounding a fortification
4.	Shudras	D.	Engaged in trade, business, or agriculture to increase wealth

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(c) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Mahajanapada capitals were often fortified cities. A moat was a water-filled ditch for defence. Vaishyas were the varna involved in trade and wealth generation. Shudras comprised artisans and laborers.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What term is used for the urbanisation that began in the Ganga plains in the 1st millennium BCE?

Ans :

Second Urbanisation of India.

87. Name one type of ancient literature that provides information about the Second Urbanisation.

Ans :

Late Vedic/Buddhist/Jain literature (any one).

88. What does the Sanskrit word 'janapada' literally mean?

Ans :

Where the people (jana) have set foot (pada)/settled down.

89. Who was the leader or ruler of a janapada?

Ans :

Raja.

90. What were the larger states formed by the merger of janapadas called?

Ans :

Mahajanapadas.

91. How many mahajanapadas are frequently mentioned in ancient texts?

Ans :

Sixteen.

92. Name one of the four most powerful mahajanapadas mentioned.

Ans :

Magadha/Kosala/Vatsa/Avanti (any one).

93. What defensive feature, often filled with water, surrounded the fortifications of mahajanapada capitals?

Ans :

Moat.

94. What was the assembly or council in a janapada called?

Ans :

Sabha or samiti.

95. In monarchical mahajanapadas, how was the position of the raja usually decided?

Ans :

It was hereditary (passed from father to son).

96. Name one mahajanapada that functioned as a gana or sangha (republic).

Ans :

Vajji (or Vrijji)/Malla (any one).

97. How was the raja selected in a gana or sangha?

Ans :

By the members of the assembly (sabha/samiti).

98. Which metal's metallurgy became widespread during the Second Urbanisation?

Ans :

Iron.

99. What innovation related to trade first appeared in India during this period?

Ans :

Coins.

100. What were the earliest Indian coins, often made of silver, called?

Ans :

Punch-marked coins.

101. What term refers to a group or community with a specific professional occupation, often passed down generations?

Ans :

Jati.

102. How many varnas were there according to the Vedic concept?

Ans :

Four.

103. Which varna was associated with preserving knowledge and performing rituals?

Ans :

Brahmins.

104. Which varna was expected to defend society and engage in warfare?

Ans :

Kshatriyas.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

105. Which varna was associated with trade, business, and agriculture?

Ans :

Vaishyas.

106. Which varna included artisans, craftspeople, workers, or servants?

Ans :

Shudras.

107. What was the name of the major trade route connecting Northwest India to the Ganga plains?

Ans :

Uttarapatha.

108. What was the name of the major trade route connecting the Ganga plains to the South?

Ans :

Dakshinapatha.

109. Name one of the three kingdoms that emerged in South India around 400 BCE.

Ans :

Cholas/Cheras/Pandyas (any one).

110. Which ancient city, now part of Bhubaneswar, was the capital of the Kalinga region?

Ans :

Shishupalgarh (Sisupalgarh).

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. What were the key features of urban life that disappeared after the First Urbanisation (Harappan)?

Ans :

Elaborate structures, busy markets, specialized occupations, a writing system, sanitation systems, administration, and a state structure with a ruling class disappeared, leading to a rural lifestyle.

112. How do archaeologists and ancient literature help us understand the Second Urbanisation?

Ans :

Archaeology uncovers physical evidence of ancient cities (fortifications, structures, artifacts). Ancient literature (Vedic, Buddhist, Jain) contains descriptions and references to these new urban centres, their rulers, and life within them.

113. Explain the process by which janapadas likely formed.

Ans :

People likely formed clans sharing common language and customs. These clans settled in specific territories (janapadas), each led by a ruler (raja) and guided by an assembly (sabha/samiti).

114. Why were the Ganga plains a favourable region for the rise of mahajanapadas?

Ans :

The fertile plains supported agricultural growth, nearby hills provided iron ore essential for tools and weapons, and expanding trade networks connected different settlements, facilitating growth and state formation.

NODIA

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

115. Describe the typical fortifications of a mahajanapada capital city.

Ans :

Capitals were usually well-fortified with rampart walls, often surrounded by a deep, water-filled moat for extra defense. Gateways were sometimes kept narrow for better control over entry and exit.

116. What was the role of the sabha or samiti in the governance of a janapada?

Ans :

The sabha/samiti was an assembly, likely of clan elders, where matters concerning the clan were discussed. The raja was expected to consult this assembly before making important decisions.

117. How did governance in monarchical mahajanapadas like Magadha differ from that in ganas/sanghas like Vajji?

Ans :

In monarchies, the raja held ultimate authority (often hereditary), collected taxes, and maintained an army. In ganas/sanghas, the assembly held more power, making decisions collectively and even selecting the ruler.

118. Why are ganas/sanghas sometimes called 'early republics'?

Ans :

They are called early republics because major decisions, including the selection of the ruler, were made by an assembly through discussion and voting, resembling democratic processes rather than hereditary monarchy.

119. How did the widespread use of iron tools impact agriculture during this period?

Ans :

Iron tools, being stronger and more efficient than earlier materials, likely facilitated clearing forests and cultivating the fertile but sometimes heavy soil of the Ganga plains more effectively, enabling larger-scale agriculture.

120. Explain the significance of iron in warfare during the time of mahajanapadas.

Ans :

Iron weapons (swords, spears, arrows) were sharper and possibly lighter or stronger than bronze ones. This technological advantage likely played a role in conflicts and military campaigns between neighbouring mahajanapadas.

121. Why did the introduction of coins become necessary during this period?

Ans :

As trade networks expanded between janapadas and mahajanapadas, a standardized medium of exchange was needed to facilitate transactions more easily than barter, leading to the first use of coins.

122. Describe the characteristics of the earliest Indian coins.

Ans :

The first Indian coins were 'punch-marked coins', usually made of silver. Symbols representing the issuing authority or region were stamped or 'punched' onto the metal pieces.

123. Explain the concept of 'jati' in the context of ancient Indian society.

Ans :

Jati referred to a community or group primarily defined by a specific professional occupation (like potters, weavers, farmers). These skills were typically passed down within the group generationally.

124. Outline the roles associated with the four varnas (Brahmin, Kshatriya, Vaishya, Shudra).

Ans :

Brahmins dealt with knowledge/rituals; Kshatriyas with defense/governance; Vaishyas with wealth creation (trade, agriculture); Shudras with service, crafts, and labour.

125. Was the varna-jati system always rigid? Explain.

Ans :

No, In earlier periods, the system was more flexible, with historical evidence showing individuals or communities sometimes changing occupations due to circumstances like drought or migration.

126. What potential negative consequence of the varna-jati system is mentioned?

Ans :

Over time, the system became rigid and led to social inequalities and discrimination against lower jatis or communities excluded from the main varna structure.

127. What was the significance of the Uttarapatha and Dakshinapatha routes?

Ans :

These were major ancient routes facilitating trade, travel, pilgrimage, and military movements. Uttarapatha connected the northwest to the east, while Dakshinapatha linked the north to the south, promoting interconnectedness.

128. Describe the city plan of Shishupalgarh.

Ans :

Shishupalgarh, capital of Kalinga, followed a strict square ground plan. It had imposing fortifications, broad streets, and controlled gateways, indicating sophisticated urban planning.

129. What resources made the southern kingdoms (Cholas, Cheras, Pandyas) important trade centres?

Ans :

The southern regions were rich in resources like precious and semi-precious stones, gold, and spices, which were highly valued in trade both within India and overseas.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

130. Compare the primary metal used in the First Urbanisation (Harappan) with the key metal of the Second Urbanisation.

Ans :

The First Urbanisation primarily utilized copper and bronze metallurgy. The Second Urbanisation saw the widespread adoption and mastery of iron metallurgy.

131. How did the political landscape change by around 300 BCE ?

Ans :

By around 300 BCE, the era of the independent mahajanapadas was ending, paving the way for new political developments, likely larger empires that consolidated these regions.

132. What evidence suggests warfare occurred between mahajanapadas?

Ans :

The development of better iron weapons and notes evidence of military campaigns between neighbouring mahajanapadas, alongside alliances, suggesting conflict was a factor.

133. How were skills typically passed on within a jati?

Ans :

Skills defining a jati, such as metallurgy, pottery, weaving, or farming techniques, were generally transmitted from one generation to the next within the community or family.

134. What does the existence of fortified cities suggest about the mahajanapada period?

Ans :

Fortified cities suggest concerns about security and defense. They imply the existence of organized states capable of mobilizing resources for large constructions and indicate potential threats from rivals or invaders.

135. Besides governance and social structure, what other major developments occurred during the age of mahajanapadas?

Ans :

This era saw the emergence of new philosophical/ religious schools (Buddhism, Jainism), advancements in iron technology, the introduction of coinage, and the expansion of trade networks across the subcontinent.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse Kautilya's description of an ideal kingdom (quoted at the start). What aspects focus on security, economy, and resources?

Ans :

Kautilya emphasizes security through fortifications (capital, frontiers). Economically, he stresses productivity, diverse commodities, good roads/ waterways for trade. Resource-wise, he highlights the need for sustainable land (agriculture, pastures), mines, forests (timber, elephants), and reliable water sources not solely dependent on rain, ensuring self-sufficiency and resilience.

NODIA

137. Compare and contrast the political systems of monarchical mahajanapadas (like Magadha) and republican ganas/sanghas (like Vajji).

Ans :

Monarchies had hereditary rulers (rajas) with ultimate authority, supported by ministers/ assemblies, focused on tax collection and military power. Ganas/sanghas vested more power in the assembly, which made key decisions, including selecting the ruler, functioning more democratically or oligarchically rather than through single, hereditary rule.

138. Compare and contrast the administrative structures and decision-making processes of monarchical states like Magadha and republican states like the Vajji confederacy in ancient India.

Ans :

Monarchies like Magadha had centralized rule with a hereditary king holding supreme power, aided by ministers. Decisions were mostly top-down. In contrast, republican states like Vajji were governed by assemblies of elders who made decisions collectively, with leadership chosen rather than inherited.

139. Analyse the potential reasons why the Second Urbanisation flourished specifically in the Ganga plains.

Ans :

The fertile alluvial soil supported surplus agriculture, feeding larger populations. Abundant iron ore nearby enabled advanced tools and weapons. The Ganga river system facilitated trade and communication. The rise of new religious and

philosophical ideas also stimulated intellectual and social activity conducive to urban growth.

140. "The introduction of iron metallurgy was a key catalyst for the Second Urbanisation." Evaluate this statement.

Ans :

Iron tools likely boosted agricultural productivity (clearing land, better ploughs), supporting larger populations needed for cities. Iron weapons enhanced military capabilities, aiding state formation and consolidation by powerful mahajanapadas. Therefore, iron metallurgy was crucial, enabling the resource base and political stability required for urbanisation.

141. Analyse the function of the varna-jati system in organizing ancient Indian society. What were its strengths and weaknesses?

Ans :

It structured society by defining roles and occupations (varna) and organizing communities based on livelihood skills (jati), providing social order and facilitating economic specialization. Its strength was stability and skill transmission. Its weakness was increasing rigidity over time, leading to hereditary hierarchy, inequality, and discrimination.

142. Explain how the development of trade routes like Uttarapatha and Dakshinapatha contributed to the interconnectedness of the Indian subcontinent.

Ans :

These major arteries linked diverse regions from the northwest to the east (Uttarapatha) and north to south (Dakshinapatha). They facilitated the movement not just of goods (trade) but also people (travelers, pilgrims, armies) and ideas (religious teachings, cultural practices), weaving the subcontinent into a more integrated network.

143. Compare the timeline and geographical focus of the First Urbanisation (Harappan) and the Second Urbanisation.

Ans :

The First Urbanisation peaked earlier (c. 2600-1900 BCE) primarily in the Indus-Sarasvati river basins (northwest). The Second Urbanisation began much later (c. 7th-6th centuries BCE onwards) mainly in the Ganga plains, eventually spreading across large parts of North, Central, East, and later South India.

144. How might the rise of new religious and philosophical schools (Buddhism, Jainism) have influenced society during the Second Urbanisation?

Ans :

These schools often challenged existing social norms and religious practices (like aspects of the Vedic tradition or the rigidity of varna). Their emphasis on ethics, non-violence, and alternative paths to liberation likely attracted diverse followers, potentially fostering social change and contributing to the period's intellectual vibrancy.

145. Analyse the statement : "Most of the ancient capitals of the mahajanapadas continue to be living cities today." What does this imply?

Ans :

This implies remarkable continuity of settlement and strategic importance. Locations chosen 2500 years ago often remained favourable for trade, administration, or resources over millennia. It highlights the deep historical roots of many modern Indian cities and the enduring nature of certain geographical advantages.

146. Discuss the role of trade in the prosperity of the mahajanapadas and the later southern kingdoms.

Ans :

Trade was vital. For mahajanapadas, expanding trade networks facilitated growth and interaction. Coinage emerged to support this. Southern kingdoms profited immensely from trading valuable local resources (gems, gold, spices) both within India via routes like Dakshinapatha and overseas, contributing significantly to their wealth and influence.

147. What does the reference to Kautilya's Arthashastra at the beginning suggest about the concerns of statecraft during this era?

Ans :

It suggests sophisticated thinking about state management. Concerns included security (fortification), economic prosperity (resources, trade, infrastructure), self-sufficiency (water, food), population welfare (sustaining people during calamities), and maintaining order – reflecting a well-developed understanding of practical governance principles.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

148. Why was the ability for individuals or communities to change occupations (as mentioned regarding the early varna-jati system) important for societal resilience?

Ans :

Flexibility allowed society to adapt to changing circumstances. If a drought ruined farming, communities could shift to crafts or trade in cities. If Brahmins were needed for trade or military roles, they could adapt. This adaptability helped society cope with calamities and evolving needs, enhancing overall resilience.

149. Analyse the potential relationship between increased agricultural production (enabled by iron tools) and state formation (mahajanapadas).

Ans :

Surplus agriculture, enabled by iron tools, could support larger, denser populations and non-farming specialists (soldiers, administrators, craftspeople). This surplus could be taxed by rulers (rajas) to fund armies, build fortifications, and manage larger territories, directly contributing to the formation and consolidation of states (mahajanapadas).

150. Considering the evidence, evaluate whether the Second Urbanisation represented a complete break from the past or incorporated earlier traditions.

Ans :

It wasn't a complete break. While distinct from the Harappan civilisation, it built upon earlier foundations. Concepts like sabha/samiti originated in Vedic times. Iron technology developed gradually over preceding centuries. The Second Urbanisation represented a new phase integrating technological advancements, evolving social structures, and new ideas onto existing cultural layers.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. Archaeologists excavate a site in the Ganga plains dating to the 6th century BCE. They find remnants of mud-brick houses, iron sickles and ploughshares, pottery shards, and numerous silver punch-marked coins featuring symbols like hills and trees. They find no evidence of large fortifications or monumental buildings.

(i) Based on the findings, would this site more likely represent a large mahajanapada capital or a smaller settlement within a janapada/mahajanapada?
(ii) What do the iron tools suggest about the economy of this settlement?
(iii) What does the presence of numerous punch-marked coins indicate?

Ans :

(i) It likely represents a smaller settlement or prosperous village, possibly within a janapada/mahajanapada, rather than a major fortified capital, due to the lack of large fortifications or monumental structures.
(ii) The iron sickles and ploughshares strongly suggest an economy based significantly on agriculture, using advanced tools for cultivation in the fertile plains.
(iii) The coins indicate active participation in trade and a monetized economy. It suggests the settlement was connected to wider trade networks where goods were exchanged using currency, moving beyond simple barter.

152. A traveller's account from the 5th century BCE describes visiting Vaishali, the capital of the Vajji confederacy. The account mentions large assembly halls where representatives from different clans met frequently to discuss state matters, elect leaders for specific tasks, and vote on important decisions by using marked wooden sticks.

(i) What type of political system does this account describe for Vajji?
(ii) How does this system differ from the governance likely found in Magadha at the same time?
(iii) What aspect of this account points towards early democratic practices?

Ans :

(i) This describes a republican or oligarchic system, specifically a gana or sangha, where decisions were made collectively by an assembly rather than by a single hereditary monarch.
(ii) Magadha was likely a monarchy where the raja held supreme power, inherited the throne, and made decisions with ministers, unlike Vajji's system of collective decision-making and elected leadership within the assembly.
(iii) The practice of representatives meeting, discussing state matters, electing leaders,

NODIA

and voting on decisions using marked sticks are clear indicators of early democratic or republican processes of governance.

153. A community of potters (a specific jati) living in a janapada faces hardship after their clay source is depleted. The local raja needs more soldiers for his army due to conflict with a neighbour. Some young men from the potter community consider joining the army.

(i) According to the traditional varna system, which varna was primarily associated with warfare?

(ii) Based on historical discussions of social flexibility, could these men from a potter jati (likely considered Shudra or Vaishya depending on context) potentially join the army?

(iii) Evaluate the potential social implications if they successfully become soldiers.

Ans :

(i) The Kshatriya varna was traditionally associated with warfare and defending society.

(ii) Yes, In earlier periods, the system had flexibility, and individuals or groups could change occupations due to circumstances, implying they might have been able to join the army.

(iii) Successfully becoming soldiers might offer them better economic prospects and potentially elevate their social standing, challenging the rigidity of associating jati solely with a specific, inherited occupation, reflecting the system's earlier adaptability.

154. Traders based in Ujjayini (capital of Avanti) want to transport goods like textiles and iron tools to ports on the western coast and also establish connections with kingdoms in the south known for spices and gems.

(i) Which major trade route would likely be used to connect Ujjayini to the southern kingdoms?

(ii) What kinds of goods might these traders hope to acquire from the south?

(iii) Evaluate the importance of such trade for the economy of Avanti.

Ans :

(i) They would likely utilize parts of the Dakshinapatha route, which connected the northern plains (via cities like Kaushambi, possibly linking to Ujjayini) southwards across the Vindhyas.

(ii) They would hope to acquire valuable resources mentioned as available in the south, such as spices, precious stones (gems), and possibly gold.

(iii) This trade would be very important. Exporting local goods (textiles, tools) and importing valuable southern resources would boost Avanti's economy, increase wealth, and strengthen its position as a major hub connecting different regions.

155. A modern historian finds an ancient text describing a mahajanapada ruler performing elaborate Vedic sacrifices to enhance his power but also donating generously to Buddhist monasteries that were popular among merchants and craftspeople in his capital city.

(i) What does the performance of Vedic sacrifices suggest about the ruler's influences?

(ii) What does donating to Buddhist monasteries suggest about the ruler's political strategy?

(iii) Evaluate what this scenario reveals about the religious and social landscape of the mahajanapada period.

Ans :

(i) It suggests the ruler adhered to or utilized traditions associated with the Brahminical/ Vedic school of thought, likely seeking legitimacy and divine favour through established rituals.

(ii) It suggests a pragmatic political strategy to gain support or maintain goodwill among influential segments of the urban population (merchants, artisans) who followed Buddhism, acknowledging its growing importance.

(iii) It reveals a complex landscape where different religious traditions (Vedic, Buddhist) coexisted and held influence. Rulers might engage with multiple traditions simultaneously for ritual legitimacy and political support across different social groups, indicating religious plurality and strategic patronage.

www.nodia.in

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 5

THE RISE OF EMPIRES

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION

An empire is distinct from a kingdom; it represents a larger political entity where a powerful ruler or ruling group exerts control over multiple smaller kingdoms or territories, often acquired through conquest. These subordinate territories typically paid tribute (money, goods, resources) to the central emperor. Emperors held titles like samraj ('lord of all'), adhiraja ('overlord'), or rajadhiraja ('king of kings').

2. KEY FEATURES OF AN EMPIRE

Empires required complex systems to function effectively :

1. Central Authority : An emperor exerting control over tributary territories and kings.
2. Military Power : Maintaining a strong army to control tributaries, expand the empire, and defend against external threats.
3. Administration : Establishing an organized administration with officials to manage territories, collect taxes, and maintain law and order.
4. Economic Control : Regulating trade, issuing currency, standardizing weights and measures, and controlling access to resources like mines and forests.
5. Infrastructure : Developing communication networks (roads, navigation) for administration, trade, and public welfare.
6. Cultural Patronage : Often encouraging arts, literature, religion, and learning centers.

Emperors sought to expand their territories for various reasons, including ambition, gaining access to resources for economic and military strength, and accumulating wealth.

3. ROLE OF TRADE AND GUILDS

Maintaining an empire, especially its large army, required significant economic resources. Therefore, controlling production and trade routes was crucial. Ancient India had extensive trade networks, like the Uttarapatha (northwest to east) and Dakshinapatha (north to south), connecting different regions and facilitating trade in goods like textiles, spices, agricultural produce, gems, and handicrafts. Trade extended beyond India's borders by land and sea.

Traders often organized themselves into powerful associations called guilds (shrenis). These guilds, which included traders, craftsmen, and others, fostered collaboration, shared resources and information, and even had the authority to create their own internal rules, often respected by rulers. Guilds played a vital role in India's economic life for centuries.

4. THE RISE OF MAGADHA AND THE NANDA EMPIRE

Between the 6th and 4th centuries BCE, the mahajanapada of Magadha (in modern Bihar) rose to prominence. Its strategic location in the fertile Ganga plains, abundant natural resources (timber, elephants, iron ore), and control over trade routes contributed to its power. The increased use of iron tools enhanced agriculture and military strength. Early rulers like Ajatashatru established Magadha's dominance.

Around the 5th century BCE, Mahapadma Nanda founded the Nanda dynasty, further expanding the empire across parts of eastern and northern India. The Nandas maintained a large army and issued coinage, indicating economic strength. However, the last Nanda ruler, Dhana Nanda, became unpopular due to oppressive rule, paving the way for the Mauryan conquest. The renowned grammarian Panini lived during the Nanda period.

5. ALEXANDER THE GREAT'S CAMPAIGN

While Magadha expanded in the east, the northwest saw the arrival of Alexander the Great of Macedon. After conquering the Persian Empire, Alexander campaigned in northwest India (327-325 BCE), defeating rulers like Porus of the Pauravas. Despite victories, his weary

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

troops refused to advance further east towards the Ganga, forcing a difficult retreat. Alexander's invasion had limited long-term political impact on India but facilitated Indo-Greek cultural interactions. His interaction with Indian sages, termed 'Gymnosophists' by the Greeks, became a legendary encounter between Greek and Indian philosophy. After Alexander's death in 323 BCE, his vast empire fragmented.

6. THE MAURYA EMPIRE

Shortly after Alexander's departure, around 321 BCE, Chandragupta Maurya established the Maurya Empire, overthrowing the Nandas. Guided by his mentor Kautilya (also known as Chanakya or Vishnugupta), Chandragupta consolidated power, expanded the empire significantly, defeated Alexander's successors (satraps) in the northwest, and established Pataliputra as his capital. The Mauryan empire eventually stretched across most of the Indian subcontinent. Chandragupta maintained diplomatic ties with the Greeks, hosting the envoy Megasthenes, whose book Indika provided valuable accounts of India.

7. KAUTILYA AND THE ARTHASHASTRA

Kautilya, traditionally considered Chandragupta's chief advisor, authored the Arthashastra, a seminal treatise on statecraft, governance, and economics. It outlines key principles, including the saptanga ('seven limbs') essential for a kingdom : the king (swami), ministers (amatya), territory/people (janapada), fortified cities (durga), treasury (kosha), army (danda), and allies (mitra). Kautilya emphasized law and order, administrative efficiency, economic prosperity, and the king's duty towards the welfare of his subjects, stating, "In the happiness of his subjects lies the king's happiness".

8. ASHOKA THE GREAT

Chandragupta's grandson, Ashoka (reigned c. 268-232 BCE), further expanded the empire. A pivotal event was the brutal war against Kalinga (modern Odisha). Witnessing the immense suffering caused by the conflict, Ashoka renounced violence and embraced Buddhist principles of peace and non-violence (ahimsa).

8.1 Propagation of Dharma

Ashoka actively promoted dharma (moral law, righteous conduct, duty). He inscribed his messages on numerous rock edicts and pillars across the empire, using Prakrit language and Brahmi script for wider reach. He referred to himself as 'Devanampiya Piyadasi' ('Beloved of the Gods, He who regards others with kindness').

NODIA

8.2 Welfare Measures

His edicts claim he established medical facilities for humans and animals, built rest houses, dug wells, planted trees along roads, and promoted religious tolerance among different sects.

8.3 Administration

Ashoka maintained a strong administration, appointing officers (Mahamattas) to oversee justice and public welfare, emphasizing fairness and discouraging arbitrary punishment. He sent emissaries to spread Buddhist teachings abroad.

9. MAURYAN SOCIETY, LIFE, AND LEGACY

Megasthenes' accounts and archaeological evidence depict Mauryan society. Agriculture was the backbone, with farmers enjoying protection even during wartime. Cities like Pataliputra were well-planned administrative and commercial hubs with impressive structures. A well-organized taxation system and trade contributed to prosperity. Artisans thrived in cities. The state took measures like establishing granaries for famine relief. Mauryan art and architecture flourished, exemplified by highly polished stone pillars (like the Sarnath capital, now India's national emblem) and the construction of stupas (like the Great Stupa at Sanchi).

10. THE DECLINE OF EMPIRES

The Maurya Empire declined within half a century after Ashoka's death (around 185 BCE), fragmenting into smaller kingdoms. Empires, despite potential benefits like unity and prosperity, are inherently fragile. Causes for decline often include resentment over heavy tributes, weak succession leading to rebellions in peripheral regions, the difficulty of managing vast territories, and economic crises triggered by natural calamities.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

NCERT EXERCISE

1. What are the features of an empire, and how is it different from a kingdom? Explain.

Ans :

An empire controls multiple kingdoms/territories under one supreme ruler (emperor), unlike a kingdom which is usually a single political unit. Features include a large army, centralized administration, tax collection across territories, control over vast resources, infrastructure development (roads), and often cultural patronage.

2. What are some important factors for the transition from kingdoms to empires?

Ans :

Factors include military strength (advanced weapons like iron, elephants), control over resources (fertile land, minerals, forests), economic power (surplus agriculture, thriving trade, taxation), strategic location (e.g., Magadha's access to rivers and resources), and capable leadership/strategy.

3. Alexander is considered an important king in the history of the world-why do you think that is so?

Ans :

Alexander is important because he conquered the vast Persian Empire, creating one of history's largest empires stretching across three continents. His conquests spread Greek culture (Hellenism) widely, and his campaign into India initiated significant Indo-Greek cultural interactions.

4. In early Indian history, the Mauryas are considered important. State your reasons.

Ans :

The Mauryas created India's first great empire, unifying much of the subcontinent. They established a strong administrative system (based on Kautilya's ideas), promoted trade, developed infrastructure, and left a lasting legacy in art, architecture (Sanchi, Sarnath), and governance principles (Ashoka's dharma).

5. What were some of Kautilya's key ideas? Which ones of these can you observe even today in the world around us?

Ans :

Kautilya's key ideas included the saptanga (seven elements of a state), emphasis on law/order, economic management, welfare of subjects ("In the happiness of his subjects lies the king's happiness"), and strategic diplomacy/alliances. Many concepts like structured administration, taxation, foreign policy, and focus on citizen welfare are still relevant in modern governance.

6. What were the unusual things about Ashoka and his empire? What of that has continued to influence India and why? Write your opinion in about 250 words.

Ans :

Ashoka was one of the most remarkable rulers in Indian and world history. What made him unusual was not just the vastness of his empire, but the transformation in his approach to rule after the Kalinga War. Unlike most conquerors, Ashoka felt remorse for the violence and suffering caused by war. This emotional and moral turning point led him to adopt Buddhism and promote dhamma—a set of ethical and moral principles focused on compassion, tolerance, and non-violence.

What sets Ashoka apart is that he used his power to spread values rather than fear. He didn't just keep these values private; he communicated them through edicts carved on rocks and pillars across his empire, reaching both the elite and common people. He encouraged religious tolerance, respect for elders, kindness to animals, and support for public welfare projects like roads, hospitals, and rest houses.

The most lasting influence of Ashoka's rule on India is his emphasis on moral governance and religious tolerance. These ideas laid the foundation for India's identity as a diverse yet united country. Even today, symbols from Ashoka's reign—the Lion Capital and the Ashoka Chakra—are national emblems of India, representing strength, peace, and justice.

In my opinion, Ashoka's legacy matters because it shows how a powerful ruler can lead not through force, but through empathy and ethics. His example continues to inspire ideals of good governance and peaceful coexistence in modern India.

7. Thus speaks the Beloved of the Gods, the king Piyadasi : My officers of Dhamma are busy in many matters of public benefit, they are busy among members of all sects, both ascetics and householders. I have appointed some to concern themselves with the Buddhist Order, with

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

brahmans and Ajivika..., with the Jains..., and with various sects. There are many categories of officers with a variety of duties, but my officers of Dhamma are busy with the affairs of these and other sects.
After reading the above edict of Ashoka, do you think he was tolerant towards other religious beliefs and schools of thought?
Share your opinion in the classroom.

Ans :

Yes, the edict strongly suggests Ashoka was tolerant. He explicitly states his officials (officers of Dhamma) were instructed to engage with and look after the affairs of all sects, specifically mentioning Buddhists, Brahmans, Ajivikas, Jains, and "various sects." This shows a policy of active engagement and care for different religious groups, not just tolerance but support.

8. The Brahmi script was a writing system that was widely used in ancient India. Try to learn more about this script, taking help from your teacher wherever required. Create a small project and include what you have learnt about Brahmi.

Ans :

Brahmi was one of the earliest writing systems used in India.

1. Ashoka's edicts were written in Brahmi script.
2. Brahmi is the "mother script" of many Indian languages like Devanagari, Tamil, Bengali.
3. Brahmi letters were simple and easy to carve on rocks and pillars.
4. It helped in recording laws, messages, and trade information.

9. Suppose you had to travel from Kaushambi to Kaveripattanam in the 3rd century BCE. How would you undertake this journey, and how long would you expect it to take, with reasonable halts on the way?

Ans :

The journey from Kaushambi (near Allahabad) to Kaveripattanam (Tamil Nadu coast) follows the Dakshinapatha trade route. Travel would likely be by foot or bullock cart, possibly joining a merchant caravan for safety. Given the distance (roughly 1500-2000 km) and slow travel modes, with halts, the journey could take several months, perhaps 2-4 months or more.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What does the Latin word 'imperium', from which 'empire' is derived, mean?
(A) Royal decree or the official law
(B) Supreme power or the sovereign rule
(C) Ancient wisdom or forgotten knowledge
(D) Vast territory or a large landmass

Ans :

(B) Supreme power or the sovereign rule
The term 'empire' originates from the Latin word 'imperium,' which signifies supreme power or authority. This reflects the overarching control an emperor or ruling group exerts over diverse territories and peoples.

2. In ancient Sanskrit texts, what did titles like 'samraj' or 'rajadhiraja' signify for a ruler?
(A) A ruler elected by the common people
(B) A king who primarily focused on religion
(C) A supreme ruler or a king of kings
(D) A local chieftain of a small tribe

Ans :

(C) A supreme ruler or a king of kings
Titles such as 'samraj' (lord of all) and 'rajadhiraja' (king of kings) were used in ancient Sanskrit texts to denote an emperor. These titles emphasized their supreme authority over other rulers and vast territories.

3. What was a 'tributary' kingdom in the context of an ancient empire?
(A) A kingdom that provided soldiers to emperor
(B) A kingdom that submitted and paid tribute
(C) A kingdom that was an equal ally
(D) A kingdom that managed emperor's treasury

Ans :

(B) A kingdom that submitted and paid tribute
A tributary kingdom was a smaller state that had submitted to an emperor's authority. It was obligated to pay tribute—money, goods, or resources—to the emperor as a sign of loyalty and submission.

4. Which of the following was a key feature of an empire's administration?
(A) Allowing tributary states complete autonomy
(B) Maintaining officials to manage territories, taxes
(C) Relying solely on voluntary contributions
(D) Having no system of laws or currency

NODIA

Ans :

(B) Maintaining officials to manage territories, taxes
Empires typically designed and maintained an administration with officials responsible for managing territories, collecting taxes, and maintaining law and order across their vast domains to ensure smooth governance.

5. What was a primary reason for ancient kings to expand their kingdoms into empires?
(A) To reduce their administrative responsibilities
(B) To gain access to resources, build strength
(C) To promote independent rule of all regions
(D) To decrease the need for a military

Ans :

(B) To gain access to resources, build strength
Kings often sought to expand their kingdoms into empires to gain control over larger territories and their resources. This helped build economic and military strength, enhancing their power and influence.

6. Why was establishing and controlling trade routes important for maintaining an ancient empire?
(A) It limited contact with foreign cultures mostly
(B) It increased tax collections and trade volume
(C) It reduced the need for agricultural output
(D) It ensured isolation from neighboring kingdoms

Ans :

(B) It increased tax collections and trade volume
Controlling trade routes was vital for empires as it facilitated the growth of commerce, leading to increased variety and quantity of goods traded. This, in turn, boosted income for producers and tax revenue for the ruler.

7. What were 'shrenis' in ancient India?
(A) Military units stationed at empire borders
(B) Schools for training royal officials only
(C) Guilds or associations of traders, craftsmen
(D) Sacred texts dictating moral conduct

Ans :

(C) Guilds or associations of traders, craftsmen
'Shrenis' were powerful guilds or associations formed by traders, craftsmen, moneylenders, or agriculturists in ancient India. These organizations played a significant role in the economic and social life of the time.

8. The rise of which mahajanapada set the stage for India's first empire?
(A) Kashi
(B) Kosala
(C) Gandhara
(D) Magadha

Ans :

(D) Magadha
Magadha, located in the resource-rich Ganga plains, rose in importance among the sixteen mahajanapadas. Its growth and strategic advantages paved the way for the formation of India's first major empire.

9. What was a significant advantage of Magadha's geographical location?
(A) Its isolation in high mountain ranges
(B) Its arid climate ideal for grain storage
(C) Access to fertile land and mineral resources
(D) Its lack of navigable rivers for transport

Ans :

(C) Access to fertile land and mineral resources
Magadha's location in the fertile Ganga plains provided abundant agricultural produce. Nearby hilly regions offered iron ore and other minerals, while rivers like the Ganga and Son facilitated trade and transportation.

10. The Nanda dynasty was founded by _____, who unified many smaller kingdoms.
(A) Dhana Nanda
(B) Ajatashatru
(C) Mahapadma Nanda
(D) Chandragupta Maurya

Ans :

(C) Mahapadma Nanda
Mahapadma Nanda is credited with founding the Nanda dynasty around the 5th century BCE. He was a powerful ruler who successfully unified numerous smaller kingdoms, expanding his empire across parts of eastern and northern India.

11. The famed Sanskrit grammarian Panini, known for composing the Ashtadhyayi, lived during the time of which dynasty?
(A) The Maurya dynasty
(B) The Gupta dynasty
(C) The Nanda dynasty
(D) The Shunga dynasty

Ans :

(C) The Nanda dynasty

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Panini, the celebrated Sanskrit grammarian who authored the Ashtadhyayi, lived around the 5th century BCE, which coincides with the rule of the Nanda dynasty in Magadha.

12. What was the primary motivation for Alexander the Great's campaign towards India?
(A) To establish peaceful trade relations only
(B) To seek philosophical wisdom from sages
(C) To conquer territories and reach "end of world"
(D) To find a new homeland for his people

Ans :

(C) To conquer territories and reach "end of world"
Alexander the Great was driven by an ambition to conquer vast territories and expand his empire. His campaign towards India was part of his larger goal to reach what he believed was the "end of the world."

13. What were 'satraps' in the context of the Persian and Greek empires?
(A) Elite soldiers in the emperor's personal guard
(B) Governors of provinces managing territories
(C) Religious priests who advised the great ruler
(D) Merchants responsible for long-distance trades

Ans :

(B) Governors of provinces managing territories
Satraps were governors appointed to rule over provinces (satrapies) within the vast Persian and later Greek empires. They were responsible for administering these territories on behalf of the emperor.

14. Who was the Indian king who famously fought against Alexander the Great in Punjab?
(A) Chandragupta Maurya
(B) King Porus
(C) Dhana Nanda
(D) Ajatashatru

Ans :

(B) King Porus
King Porus, ruler of the Paurava kingdom in Punjab, is renowned for his valiant resistance against Alexander the Great's invading forces during the Battle of the Hydaspes River.

15. How did Alexander's retreat from India differ from his initial advance into the region?
(A) The retreat was faster and faced no resistance
(B) The retreat was by sea; advance was by land
(C) The retreat faced hardships and heavy losses
(D) The retreat involved forming many new alliances

Ans :

(C) The retreat faced hardships and heavy losses
While Alexander's advance into India involved battles, his army's retreat through the coastal route and harsh desert regions of Iran led to significant losses due to thirst, hunger, and disease.

16. Which figure is correctly paired with their significant work or association?
(A) Kautilya - Composed the epic Indika book
(B) Megasthenes - Authored the Arthashastra guide
(C) Panini - Wrote the Ashtadhyayi grammar
(D) Ashoka - Founded the Nanda dynasty

Ans :

(C) Panini - Wrote the Ashtadhyayi grammar
Panini was the ancient Indian grammarian who composed the Ashtadhyayi, a foundational text on Sanskrit grammar. Kautilya wrote Arthashastra, Megasthenes wrote Indika, and Ashoka was a Mauryan emperor.

17. The story of Alexander's encounter with the 'Gymnosophists' highlights what aspect of interaction between cultures?
(A) The complete rejection of foreign ideas
(B) A meeting of different philosophical traditions
(C) The superiority of military power over wisdom
(D) The establishment of permanent trade treaties

Ans :

(B) A meeting of different philosophical traditions
Alexander's dialogue with the Gymnosophists (Indian sages) is viewed by historians as a significant encounter between Greek and Indian philosophical thought, demonstrating an exchange of ideas and mutual intellectual curiosity.

18. Who founded the Maurya Empire around 321 BCE?
(A) Ashoka the Great
(B) Bindusara Maurya
(C) Chandragupta Maurya
(D) Mahapadma Nanda

Ans :

(C) Chandragupta Maurya

NODIA

Chandragupta Maurya established the Maurya Empire around 321 BCE by overthrowing the Nanda dynasty. He laid the foundation for one of the largest empires in Indian history.

19. A ruler follows a policy of promoting the welfare of people in the countryside, building embankments, and beautifying villages, believing that power comes from a prosperous populace. This approach aligns with the political philosophy of whom?
(A) Alexander the Great
(B) Panini the grammarian
(C) Kautilya in Arthashastra
(D) King Porus of Paurava

Ans :

(C) Kautilya in Arthashastra
Kautilya's Arthashastra emphasizes that a king's power stems from the welfare of the people, particularly in the countryside, which is the source of economic activity. Promoting public works and benefits is advocated.

20. According to Kautilya's Saptanga theory, what does 'kosha' refer to as one of the seven parts of a kingdom?
(A) The king or the sovereign ruler
(B) The territory and its population
(C) The treasury or wealth of kingdom
(D) The army and forces of defense

Ans :

(C) The treasury or wealth of kingdom
In Kautilya's Saptanga (seven limbs) concept of a kingdom, 'kosha' represents the treasury or the accumulated wealth of the state. A strong treasury was considered essential for a kingdom's stability and functioning.

21. Megasthenes, the Greek historian and diplomat, wrote about his travels in India in which book?
(A) Arthashastra
(B) Ashtadhyayi
(C) Indika
(D) Mahabharata

Ans :

(C) Indika
Megasthenes, who served as a Greek ambassador in Chandragupta Maurya's court, documented his observations and experiences in India in his work titled 'Indika'. Although largely lost, excerpts provide valuable insights.

22. Ashoka's decision to give up violence after the Kalinga war and adopt the path of peace reflects the influence of which teachings?
(A) The teachings of Kautilya on statecraft
(B) The military strategies of Alexander
(C) The philosophical ideas of Gymnosophists
(D) The teachings of the Buddha mostly

Ans :

(D) The teachings of the Buddha mostly
The immense death and destruction witnessed in the Kalinga war led Ashoka to embrace the path of peace and non-violence, principles central to the teachings of the Buddha. He subsequently promoted Buddhist ideals.

23. What is an 'edict' in the context of Ashoka's reign?
(A) A type of currency used for all trade
(B) A military strategy for conquering lands
(C) An official declaration or royal command
(D) A form of poetry praising the king

Ans :

(C) An official declaration or royal command
An edict is an official order or proclamation issued by a person in authority. Ashoka used edicts, often inscribed on rocks and pillars, to communicate his policies, religious messages, and moral teachings to his subjects.

24. In his edicts, Ashoka often referred to himself as 'Devanampiya Piyadasi'. What does 'Devanampiya' mean?
(A) Conqueror of the world
(B) Beloved of the Gods
(C) Wisest of all rulers
(D) Protector of dharma

Ans :

(B) Beloved of the Gods
The title 'Devanampiya', frequently used by Ashoka in his edicts, translates to 'Beloved of the Gods'. 'Piyadasi' means 'one who regards others with kindness'. These titles projected an image of a benevolent ruler.

25. How did Ashoka's approach to expanding his empire change after the Kalinga war?
(A) He focused more on naval conquests mostly
(B) He relied solely on diplomatic alliances
(C) He largely abandoned military conquest for peace
(D) He intensified military campaigns

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) He largely abandoned military conquest for peace
The Kalinga war was a turning point for Ashoka. Witnessing the devastation, he renounced aggressive warfare and embraced a policy of peace, non-violence (ahimsa), and conquest by dharma (righteousness) instead of by force.

26. Which of the following is an INCORRECT statement about Ashoka's reign?
(A) He sent emissaries to spread Buddhist messages
(B) Most of his edicts were in Sanskrit script
(C) He promoted welfare by building rest houses
(D) He encouraged tolerance among different sects

Ans :

(B) Most of his edicts were in Sanskrit script
Most of Ashoka's edicts were inscribed in Prakrit, the common people's language, using the Brahmi script (and sometimes Kharosthi or Greek/ Aramaic). Sanskrit was more of a scholarly language at that time.

27. Assertion (A) : The Maurya Empire collapsed soon after Alexander the Great left India.
Reason (R) : Ashoka's successors were unable to hold the vast empire together effectively.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
The Maurya Empire was founded by Chandragupta Maurya after Alexander left India, around 321 BCE. However, the empire did decline and disintegrate about half a century after Ashoka's death because his successors were weak.

28. Consider the following statements about the Mauryan period :
Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 3 only
Pataliputra was indeed a major urban center. Agriculture was a very important source of revenue for the Mauryan empire. The Sohagaura inscription provides evidence of state efforts for food security.

29. The highly polished stone pillars with animal capitals, like the one at Sarnath, are characteristic of _ _ _ _ _ art.
(A) Nanda
(B) Gupta
(C) Mauryan
(D) Kushana

Ans :

(C) Mauryan
The Mauryan period is renowned for its distinctive art, particularly the highly polished monolithic stone pillars often topped with animal capitals, such as the famous Lion Capital of Ashoka at Sarnath.

NODIA

30. What does the term 'dharma' (or 'dhamma' in Prakrit) encompass, as promoted by Ashoka?
(A) Only ritualistic worship of many deities
(B) A specific set of laws for crime
(C) Moral law, ethical duties, righteous conduct
(D) The king's absolute power over subjects

Ans :

(C) Moral law, ethical duties, righteous conduct
Dharma, as promoted by Ashoka, was a broad concept encompassing moral law, ethical duties towards family and society, righteous conduct, respect for all life, and living in harmony with cosmic order.

31. The Sohagaura copper plate inscription, mentioning the establishment of granaries, highlights what aspect of Mauryan administration?
(A) Its focus on foreign military conquests
(B) Its efforts towards food security and crisis
(C) Its promotion of a single state religion
(D) Its system of electing local village heads

Ans :

(B) Its efforts towards food security and crisis
The Sohagaura copper plate, which records the establishment of granaries to store grain as a precaution against famines, indicates that the Mauryan state was concerned with ensuring food security and supporting its people during crises.

32. Which Indian national symbol was adopted from the Mauryan Sarnath pillar capital?
(A) The national flag's tricolor design
(B) The national emblem with four lions
(C) The national anthem "Jana Gana Mana"
(D) The national animal, the Bengal tiger

Ans :

(B) The national emblem with four lions
India's national emblem, featuring four lions standing back to back, is an adaptation of the Lion Capital that originally topped Ashoka's pillar at Sarnath. The dharmachakra from the capital is also on the flag.

33. How did Kautilya's concept of 'mitra' (allies) in the Saptanga theory contribute to a kingdom's strength?
(A) Allies provided internal security against rebels
(B) Allies offered economic aid during peacetime
(C) Allies provided external support and reduced enmity
(D) Allies managed the kingdom's judicial system

Ans :

(C) Allies provided external support and reduced enmity
In Kautilya's Saptanga, 'mitra' or allies were considered crucial for a kingdom's security and stability. Friendly neighboring states could provide support in times of war and reduce external threats through peaceful relations.

34. Which Mauryan contribution is correctly paired with its description?
(A) Rock-cut caves - Primarily used as royal residences
(B) Punch-marked coins - Made exclusively of gold metal
(C) Ashokan Edicts - Inscribed in classical Sanskrit mostly
(D) Stupas - Hemispherical structures housing sacred relics

Ans :

(D) Stupas - Hemispherical structures housing sacred relics
Stupas, like the Great Stupa at Sanchi, were large hemispherical dome-like structures often built to enshrine sacred relics, particularly associated with Buddhism. Ashoka is credited with building many.

35. An emperor, after a brutal war that caused immense suffering, inscribes messages on pillars across his realm, advocating for peace, tolerance, and the welfare of all beings, including animals. This emperor's actions are most reminiscent of whom?
(A) Chandragupta Maurya after defeating Nandas
(B) Alexander the Great after conquering Persia
(C) Ashoka after the Kalinga war conflict
(D) Mahapadma Nanda after unifying kingdoms

Ans :

(C) Ashoka after the Kalinga war conflict
Ashoka's transformation after the bloody Kalinga war led him to renounce violence and promote dharma (righteousness, peace, tolerance) through his edicts inscribed on pillars and rocks throughout his empire.

36. What does 'posterity' mean, as in an emperor's desire to be remembered by posterity?
(A) His contemporary rival rulers only
(B) The gods he worshipped in life
(C) The generations that will come after
(D) The scholars who recorded his deeds

Ans :

(C) The generations that will come after
Posterity refers to all future generations of people. When rulers aimed to be remembered by posterity, they sought to leave a lasting legacy that would be recognized by those who lived after them.

37. What was the name of Chandragupta Maurya's grandson who became a renowned Mauryan emperor?
(A) Bindusara
(B) Ashoka
(C) Dasaratha
(D) Samprati

NODIA

Ans :

(B) Ashoka
Ashoka, one of the most famous rulers of the Maurya dynasty, was the grandson of its founder, Chandragupta Maurya, and the son of Bindusara.

38. The Mauryan administration's use of Prakrit language and Brahmi script for most edicts suggests an attempt to do what?
(A) Communicate only with educated elite class
(B) Ensure messages were understood by common people
(C) Keep administrative orders secret from them
(D) Follow the traditions of earlier Greek rulers

Ans :

(B) Ensure messages were understood by common people
By using Prakrit, a language widely understood by the common populace, and the Brahmi script, the Mauryan administration, particularly under Ashoka, aimed to make its messages and edicts accessible to a broader section of society.

39. Kautilya's Arthashastra details laws to deal with _____ and specifies punishments for activities against public wellbeing.
(A) foreign invasion
(B) religious dissent
(C) corruption
(D) climate change

Ans :

(C) corruption
Kautilya's Arthashastra is a comprehensive treatise on statecraft that includes detailed discussions on administration, law, and order. It addresses issues like corruption among officials and prescribes measures and punishments to ensure good governance.

40. How did the nature of guilds (shrenis) encourage collaboration rather than just competition among their members?
(A) Guilds fixed prices to eliminate all market
(B) Members shared resources and market information
(C) Guilds were primarily social clubs for leisure
(D) Membership was restricted to only one family

Ans :

(B) Members shared resources and market information
Guilds brought together people in the same trade or craft who realized that sharing resources, information about markets, supply, demand, and workforce was mutually beneficial, fostering collaboration alongside healthy competition.

41. Which element of Kautilya's Saptanga (seven limbs of a kingdom) is INCORRECTLY described?
(A) Swami - The sovereign king or the ruler
(B) Janapada - The fortified towns and cities
(C) Durga - The territory and population
(D) Danda - The army and forces of law

Ans :

(C) Durga - The territory and population
In Kautilya's Saptanga, 'Durga' refers to the fortified towns and cities, essential for defense. 'Janapada' refers to the territory and its population. Swami is the king, and Danda is the army/force.

42. A king ensures that roads are built, rest houses for travelers are established, and medical facilities are available for both people and animals throughout his vast empire. This ruler's actions reflect the welfare policies similar to those of which Mauryan emperor?
(A) Chandragupta Maurya in his early reign
(B) Bindusara during his expansionist phase
(C) Ashoka after his embrace of Dhamma
(D) The last Mauryan ruler, Brihadratha

Ans :

(C) Ashoka after his embrace of Dhamma
Ashoka, in his edicts, claimed to have implemented various welfare measures, including providing medical care for people and animals, establishing rest houses, wells, and planting trees along roads for the benefit of his subjects.

43. Assertion (A) : The Maurya Empire was one of the largest empires in ancient Indian history, covering almost the entire subcontinent.
Reason (R) : This vast expansion was achieved solely through peaceful diplomatic negotiations and matrimonial alliances with neighboring kingdoms.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Maurya Empire was indeed vast. While diplomacy and alliances played a role, its expansion also involved significant military conquests, such as Chandragupta's defeat of the Nandas and Greek satraps, and Ashoka's Kalinga war.

44. Consider the following about ancient empires :
1. Empires often involved a central authority ruling over tributary territories.
2. Maintaining a large army was generally inexpensive for an empire.
3. Guilds (shrenis) were primarily military organizations within the empire.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
Empires typically had a central ruler over tributary states. Maintaining armies was a costly affair for empires. Guilds were associations of traders, craftsmen, etc., not military units.

45. After Alexander the Great's death, his vast empire was divided among his generals and _____, who created their own kingdoms.
(A) philosophers
(B) merchants
(C) satraps
(D) priests

Ans :

(C) satraps
Following Alexander's death, his enormous empire did not remain intact. It was soon fragmented and divided among his leading generals and the provincial governors known as satraps, who established their own independent Hellenistic kingdoms.

46. What was a 'drawbridge' used for in the fortification of ancient cities like Pataliputra?
(A) A bridge for ceremonial processions only
(B) A movable bridge that could be lifted
(C) A permanent stone bridge for all trade
(D) A bridge exclusively for the royal family

Ans :

(B) A movable bridge that could be lifted
A drawbridge, often spanning a moat, was a type of movable bridge that could be raised or lowered. Lifting the drawbridge restricted access to the city, enhancing its defense against potential attacks.

47. The ancient university of Takshashila (Taxila), where Kautilya is said to have taught, was located in which region of the Indian subcontinent?
(A) Southern Deccan plateau
(B) Eastern Ganga plains
(C) Northwestern region
(D) Central Malwa plateau

Ans :

(C) Northwestern region
Takshashila, a renowned ancient center of learning, was situated in the northwestern part of the Indian subcontinent, in the region of Gandhara (now in modern-day Pakistan). Kautilya is traditionally associated with this university.

48. The existence of trade guilds (shrenis) with their own rules, which kings were expected not to interfere with, indicates what about ancient Indian society?
(A) A complete lack of royal authority
(B) The presence of self-organizing capabilities
(C) A society dominated by foreign traders
(D) The absence of any internal regulations

Ans :

(B) The presence of self-organizing capabilities
The autonomy granted to guilds to create their own rules suggests that ancient Indian society had significant self-organizing capabilities. Kings often recognized and respected these internal regulatory mechanisms of professional groups.

49. How did the Nanda dynasty's rule end, paving the way for the Maurya empire?
(A) They peacefully abdicated power to Chandragupta
(B) Their last ruler, Dhana Nanda, became unpopular
(C) They were defeated by Alexander the Great
(D) A natural disaster destroyed their capital

Ans :

(B) Their last ruler, Dhana Nanda, became unpopular
The last Nanda emperor, Dhana Nanda, reportedly became very unpopular due to his oppressive rule and exploitation of the people. This discontent created an environment conducive to his overthrow by Chandragupta Maurya.

50. Which item is correctly paired with its significance during the Mauryan period?
(A) Iron Pillar of Delhi - Built by Chandragupta Maurya
(B) Sarnath Lion Capital - Ashoka's personal royal seal
(C) Rock-cut caves (Barabar) - Primarily used as granaries
(D) Sohagaura Copper Plate - Record of famine relief measures

Ans :

(D) Sohagaura Copper Plate - Record of famine relief measures

NODIA

The Sohagaura copper plate inscription is one of India's earliest administrative records, mentioning the establishment of granaries for famine relief, likely during Chandragupta Maurya's reign. The Iron Pillar is later (Gupta).

51. An ancient text describes a ruler who, despite being powerful, is advised to prioritize his subjects' happiness and welfare above his own pleasure, and to rule according to dharma. This philosophy of governance is most closely associated with the ideals found in writings like :
(A) Panini's Ashtadhyayi on the great grammar
(B) Megasthenes' Indika detailing social structure
(C) Kautilya's Arthashastra on all statecraft
(D) Alexander's military campaign great records

Ans :

(C) Kautilya's Arthashastra on all statecraft
Kautilya's Arthashastra emphasizes that a king's happiness lies in the happiness of his subjects, and his welfare in their welfare. This aligns with the principle of ruling according to dharma and prioritizing people's interests.

52. Which of these was NOT a typical feature of an ancient Indian empire ?
(A) Maintenance of a strong standing army
(B) Collection of taxes from various sources
(C) Direct democratic election of the emperor
(D) Encouragement of art, literature, learning

Ans :

(C) Direct democratic election of the emperor
While empires had complex administrations, armies, taxation, and often patronized arts, the emperor's position was typically hereditary or gained through conquest, not through direct democratic election by the entire populace of the empire.

53. What was the 'Kalinga War' particularly significant for in Ashoka's life and reign?
(A) It marked the beginning of his military career
(B) It led to his conversion to Jainism mainly
(C) It caused him to renounce violence, embrace peace
(D) It resulted in the complete collapse of empire

Ans :

(C) It caused him to renounce violence, embrace peace
The Kalinga War was a brutal conflict that deeply affected Ashoka. The immense loss of life and suffering caused him to renounce warfare and adopt the path of peace, non-violence, and Dhamma.

54. What does the term 'Anda' refer to in the context of a Buddhist Stupa's architecture?
(A) The ceremonial gateway to the sacred area
(B) The central hemispherical dome housing relics
(C) The railing enclosing the circumambulation path
(D) The decorative umbrella at the very top

Ans :

(B) The central hemispherical dome housing relics
The 'Anda' is the large, solid, hemispherical dome that forms the main body of a Buddhist Stupa. It represents the cosmos and often enshrines sacred relics of the Buddha or important Buddhist figures.

55. How did the Mauryan approach to governance under Chandragupta, guided by Kautilya, differ from Ashoka's later approach after Kalinga?
(A) Chandragupta focused on welfare; Ashoka on war
(B) Chandragupta used force; Ashoka used peace
(C) Both primarily relied on religious teachings
(D) Chandragupta expanded west; Ashoka expanded east

Ans :

(B) Chandragupta used force; Ashoka used peace
Chandragupta Maurya, advised by Kautilya, built and consolidated the empire often through military means and strategic statecraft. Ashoka, after the Kalinga war, largely shifted towards a policy of peace, non-violence, and governance by Dhamma.

56. The Mauryan national emblem, adopted by modern India, features four _____ standing back to back.
(A) elephants
(B) horses
(C) lions
(D) bulls

Ans :

(C) lions
The national emblem of India is an adaptation of the Lion Capital of Ashoka, which originally adorned a pillar at Sarnath. It depicts four lions standing back to back, symbolizing power, courage, confidence, and pride.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

57. The decline of empires like the Mauryan often occurred due to factors such as weak successors and what other common issue?
(A) Over-reliance on peaceful diplomatic solutions
(B) The tendency of far-off territories to break
(C) Lack of interest in art and cultural events
(D) Excessive decentralization of all military power

Ans :

(B) The tendency of far-off territories to break
Maintaining control over vast empires was challenging. Weak successors often struggled to hold the empire together, and distant provinces or tributary kingdoms would seize opportunities to assert their independence and break away.

58. A group of merchants in ancient India forms an association to set quality standards for their goods, resolve disputes among members, and negotiate with local rulers for better trade terms. This association is an example of a/an :
(A) Royal administrative department
(B) Religious monastic order
(C) Shreni or trade guild
(D) Military defense alliance group

Ans :

(C) Shreni or trade guild
Shrenis or guilds were associations of traders, artisans, and other professionals in ancient India. They often had their own rules, managed quality control, resolved internal disputes, and interacted collectively with authorities.

59. Which Mauryan era location is INCORRECTLY matched with its primary significance?
(A) Pataliputra - Bustling capital city and commercial hub
(B) Kalinga - Site of Ashoka's conversion to Jainism
(C) Sarnath - Location of a famous Ashokan pillar
(D) Barabar Hills - Site of rock-cut caves for monks

Ans :

(B) Kalinga - Site of Ashoka's conversion to Jainism
The Kalinga war was pivotal in Ashoka's life, leading him to embrace peace and Buddhist principles, not Jainism. Pataliputra was the capital, Sarnath had a key pillar, and Barabar hills had rock-cut caves.

60. Assertion (A) : Ashoka's edicts were primarily intended for the educated elite and written in complex Sanskrit.
Reason (R) : The use of Prakrit and Brahmi script aimed to make the messages accessible to the common people.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; Ashoka's edicts were mostly in Prakrit, the language of the common people, using scripts like Brahmi. Reason (R) correctly states that this choice was to ensure wider understanding.

61. Consider the following statements about Alexander the Great's Indian campaign :
1. He successfully conquered the entire Indian subcontinent fully.
2. His army faced fierce resistance from local Indian tribes.
3. He established a permanent Greek capital city in Magadha.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
Alexander did not conquer the entire subcontinent; his campaign was largely limited to the northwest, and his soldiers refused to go further east. His army did face strong resistance. He did not establish a permanent capital in Magadha.

62. The motto "Satyameva Jayate" (Truth Alone Triumphs), inscribed below India's national emblem, is taken from the _____ Upanishad.
(A) Katha
(B) Isha
(C) Mundaka
(D) Kena

Ans :

(C) Mundaka
The powerful motto "Satyameva Jayate," which is part of India's national emblem, is sourced from

NODIA

the Mundaka Upanishad, an ancient Sanskrit Vedic text.

63. In Kautilya's Saptanga, what does 'Amatya' represent?
(A) The common citizens of the entire kingdom
(B) The group of councillors and high officials
(C) The network of spies and covert agents
(D) The system of roads and communication

Ans :

(B) The group of councillors and high officials
'Amatya' in Kautilya's Saptanga theory refers to the council of ministers, councillors, and other high-ranking officials who assisted the king in the administration and governance of the kingdom effectively.

64. Which of these was a significant traded item from India to distant countries during the Mauryan period and before?
(A) Iron ore
(B) Spices
(C) Woolen carpets
(D) Olive oil

Ans :

(B) Spices
India was renowned for its spices, which were highly valued and traded extensively with distant regions, including the Mediterranean world, forming an important part of its external trade during ancient times.

65. The depiction of a king playing a veena on a coin, like Samudragupta of the Gupta dynasty, would primarily suggest what about the ruler?
(A) His exclusive focus on military conquests
(B) His patronage and appreciation of arts, culture
(C) His lack of interest in state administration
(D) His renunciation of power for spiritual life

Ans :

(B) His patronage and appreciation of arts, culture
Portraying a ruler engaged in artistic pursuits like playing a musical instrument (veena) on coinage often symbolized the king's cultured nature and his patronage of arts and learning, beyond just his military prowess.

66. How did the Mauryan empire's policy towards different religious sects, especially under Ashoka, generally evolve?
(A) From active persecution to forced conversions
(B) From indifference to strict state atheism
(C) Towards tolerance and respect for various faiths
(D) By establishing Buddhism as the only religion

Ans :

(C) Towards tolerance and respect for various faiths
Particularly under Ashoka, the Mauryan policy evolved towards promoting tolerance and respect among different religious sects and schools of thought, as evidenced in his edicts urging people to honor other faiths.

67. Which of the following ancient sites is correctly associated with a major Mauryan architectural or inscriptional feature?
(A) Mohenjo-daro - Ashokan rock edicts located
(B) Harappa - Polished Mauryan stone pillars
(C) Sanchi - Great Stupa with Mauryan contributions
(D) Lothal - Rock-cut Chaitya halls made

Ans :

(C) Sanchi - Great Stupa with Mauryan contributions
The Great Stupa at Sanchi, though expanded later, had its origins during the Mauryan period, with Ashoka credited for its initial construction and promotion of Buddhist architectural activities.

68. A local ruler in a province of a large empire decides to stop paying tribute to the central emperor and declares independence. This action is most likely to occur when which condition prevails within the empire at that specific time?
(A) The emperor is exceptionally strong and vigilant
(B) The central administration is perceived as weak
(C) The empire is experiencing economic boom
(D) The province is geographically very close by

Ans :

(B) The central administration is perceived as weak
Local rulers or chieftains in distant provinces are more likely to assert independence when the central authority of an empire is perceived to be weak, or if the emperor is unable to effectively project power across all territories.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

69. Which of these was NOT a primary component of Kautilya's Saptanga (seven limbs) theory of a kingdom?
(A) Swami (the king)
(B) Kosha (the treasury)
(C) Praja (the common individual citizen's rights)
(D) Mitra (the allies)

Ans :

(C) Praja (the common individual citizen's rights)
Kautilya's Saptanga includes Swami (king), Amatya (officials), Janapada (territory/people), Durga (forts), Kosha (treasury), Danda (army/force), and Mitra (allies). While general welfare (yogakshema) was a concern, 'Praja' as individual citizen rights isn't a distinct limb.

70. The rock-cut caves in the Barabar Hills, Bihar, were created during the Mauryan period, likely for which group of people?
(A) Royal family members for their summer retreat
(B) Soldiers of the Mauryan army for shelter
(C) Ascetics or monks for dwelling and meditation
(D) Foreign traders for storing their many goods

Ans :

(C) Ascetics or monks for dwelling and meditation
The rock-cut caves in the Barabar Hills, dating to the Mauryan period (some associated with Ashoka), are believed to have been excavated for the use of ascetics, possibly from the Ajivika sect or other monastic orders.

71. What is 'pradakshina' in the context of worshipping at a Stupa?
(A) Offering flowers and incense to the deity
(B) Reciting sacred scriptures loudly in group
(C) The act of walking around structure
(D) Meditating silently in front of image

Ans :

(C) The act of walking around structure
Pradakshina is the ritual practice of circumambulation, or walking around a sacred object, shrine, or Stupa in a clockwise direction as a mark of reverence and worship in Hindu and Buddhist traditions.

72. How did the Mauryan empire's control over its vast territory generally function regarding local rulers?
(A) All local rulers were completely replaced by Mauryans
(B) Local rulers often governed areas, paying tribute
(C) Local rulers had no contact with Mauryan emperor
(D) The empire was divided into fully independent state

Ans :

(B) Local rulers often governed areas, paying tribute
While the Mauryan empire exerted central authority, it often allowed existing regional kings or chiefs to continue governing their areas, provided they accepted Mauryan overlordship and paid tribute to the emperor regularly.

73. Ashoka's pillar at Sarnath, whose capital is India's national emblem, was erected to mark the place where the Buddha gave his first _____.
(A) birth
(B) teaching
(C) enlightenment
(D) nirvana

Ans :

(B) teaching
The Ashokan pillar at Sarnath was erected at the Deer Park where Siddhartha Gautama, after attaining enlightenment and becoming the Buddha, delivered his first sermon or teaching, setting in motion the 'Wheel of Dharma'.

74. The elaborate system of Mauryan administration, as suggested by texts like Arthashastra and accounts of Megasthenes, implies what about the nature of the state?
(A) A very loosely organized tribal confederacy
(B) A highly centralized and bureaucratic state
(C) A system with minimal governmental control
(D) A state governed purely by religious laws

Ans :

(B) A highly centralized and bureaucratic state
The detailed administrative machinery described in sources like the Arthashastra and Megasthenes' Indika points towards the Mauryan state being a highly organized, centralized, and bureaucratic empire with various departments and officials managing its affairs.

75. An archaeologist discovers an ancient Indian site with highly polished stone fragments, remnants of a pillar with animal carvings at the top, and pottery typical of the 3rd century BCE. This site most likely belongs to the period of which empire?
(A) The Gupta Empire
(B) The Kushana Empire

NODIA

(C) The Maurya Empire
(D) The Nanda Empire

Ans :

(C) The Maurya Empire
Highly polished stone, pillar fragments with animal capitals (like the Lion Capital), and artifacts dating to the 3rd century BCE are hallmark characteristics of Mauryan art and architecture, particularly associated with the reign of Emperor Ashoka.

76. Which of the following reasons for the decline of an empire is INCORRECTLY stated as a common factor?
(A) Weak successors unable to manage vast territories
(B) Revolts by powerful regional governors or chieftains
(C) Economic crises caused by natural calamities
(D) Excessive peace leading to military complacency

Ans :

(D) Excessive peace leading to military complacency
While internal weaknesses like weak rulers, regional revolts, and economic crises are common causes for imperial decline, "excessive peace" itself is not typically cited as a direct primary cause, though prolonged lack of external threats might weaken military preparedness.

77. Assertion (A) : Trade guilds (shrenis) in ancient India often functioned with a degree of autonomy, creating their own rules.
Reason (R) : Kings actively interfered in the internal affairs of all guilds to ensure strict state control over commerce.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Ancient Indian trade guilds (shrenis) indeed often possessed considerable autonomy, framing their own regulations. Enlightened rulers generally refrained from interfering with them, especially if trade flourished under their self-regulation.

78. Consider the following regarding Kautilya's Arthashastra :
1. It primarily discusses religious philosophy and meditation techniques.
2. It lists seven essential components (Saptanga) of a kingdom.
3. It emphasizes the king's welfare over that of his subjects.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this work?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The Arthashastra is a treatise on statecraft, economics, and military strategy, not primarily religious philosophy. It does outline the Saptanga theory. It actually emphasizes that the king's welfare lies in the welfare of his subjects.

79. Megasthenes, the Greek ambassador to Chandragupta Maurya's court, mentioned that Indian farmers were often _____ from the ravages of war, allowing agriculture to continue.
(A) recruited
(B) protected
(C) displaced
(D) taxed

Ans :

(B) protected
According to Megasthenes' accounts, even if warfare was occurring nearby, agricultural activities were often undisturbed, and farmers were generally protected from its direct impact, ensuring continued food production for all.

80. What does the term 'Emissary' mean, such as those Ashoka sent to spread Buddhist teachings?
(A) A scholar who translates ancient sacred texts
(B) A soldier responsible for guarding royal palace
(C) Someone sent on a special, often diplomatic
(D) A craftsman skilled in stone pillar carving

Ans :

(C) Someone sent on a special, often diplomatic
An emissary is a person sent on a special mission, often of a diplomatic or representative nature, to another country or region. Ashoka dispatched such emissaries to spread the teachings of Buddha far and wide.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following terms related to empires with their definitions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Empire	A.	Ruler/state paying tribute to an emperor
2.	Tributary	B.	Collection of kingdoms under a powerful ruler
3.	Samraj	C.	Governors of provinces in Persian/Greek empires
4.	Satraps	D.	Sanskrit term for 'supreme ruler' or 'lord of all'

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
An empire is a collection of smaller kingdoms under one powerful ruler. A tributary is a ruler or state paying tribute to an emperor. Samraj means 'supreme ruler'. Satraps were provincial governors.

82. Match the following dynasties/rulers with their significant contributions or characteristics :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Magadha	A.	Greek king who campaigned in India, defeated Porus
2.	Mahapadma Nanda	B.	Rose to prominence, setting the stage for India's first empire
3.	Alexander	C.	Founded Maurya Empire with Kautilya's help
4.	Chandragupta Maurya	D.	Unified smaller kingdoms, issued coins, maintained a large army

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Magadha became a dominant power, leading to India's first empire. Mahapadma Nanda unified kingdoms and introduced coinage. Alexander, a Greek king, invaded India. Chandragupta Maurya founded the Maurya Empire.

83. Match the following figures/texts with their associated concepts or achievements :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Kautilya	A.	Greek historian who wrote 'Indika' about India
2.	Panini	B.	Author of 'Arthashastra', mentor to Chandragupta Maurya
3.	Ashoka	C.	Famed Sanskrit grammarian, composed 'Ashtadhyayi'
4.	Megasthenes	D.	Maurya king who adopted peace after Kalinga war, issued edicts

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Kautilya wrote 'Arthashastra' and advised Chandragupta. Panini was a Sanskrit grammarian who wrote 'Ashtadhyayi'. Ashoka, a Maurya king, embraced peace and issued edicts. Megasthenes wrote 'Indika'.

84. Match the following terms with their significance in the Mauryan period :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Guilds (Shrenis)	A.	Ashoka's title meaning 'Beloved of the Gods'
2.	Arthashastra	B.	Powerful associations of traders, craftsmen, etc.
3.	Devanampiya Piyadasi	C.	Kautilya's treatise on governance, economics, and statecraft
4.	Sarnath Pillar Capital	D.	Mauryan polished stone art, India's national emblem

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Guilds were associations of traders and craftsmen. Arthashastra is Kautilya's work on statecraft. Devanampiya Piyadasi was Ashoka's title. The Sarnath Pillar Capital is Mauryan art and India's emblem.

85. Match the concepts from Kautilya's Arthashastra with their components :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Swami (King)	A.	Fortified towns and cities
2.	Janapada (Territory)	B.	The first and most important of the seven limbs of a kingdom
3.	Durga (Fort)	C.	Allies or friendly states
4.	Mitra (Allies)	D.	The land and the people inhabiting it

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(c) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Swami (king) is the foremost element. Janapada refers to the territory and its population. Durga signifies fortified cities. Mitra means allies, crucial for a kingdom's security and strength.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What is a collection of smaller kingdoms ruled by a powerful central ruler called?

Ans :

An empire.

87. What term describes a ruler or state that submits and pays money or goods to an emperor?

Ans :

Tributary (or vassal).

88. Name one Sanskrit term used for 'emperor'.

Ans :

Samraj/Adhiraja/Rajadhiraja (any one).

89. What was the capital city visited by Bhavisha and Dhruv in the story?

Ans :

Pataliputra.

90. Name one key feature or function of an empire.

Ans :

Maintains army/Maintains administration/ Makes laws/regulates trade/Controls resources/ Encourages culture/Maintains communication networks (any one).

91. What is the term for the generations that come after us?

Ans :

Posterity.

92. What were associations of traders, craftsmen, or moneylenders called in ancient India?

Ans :

Guilds (or shrenis).

93. Which mahajanapada rose in importance to form the basis of India's first empires?

Ans :

Magadha.

94. Name one powerful early king of Magadha mentioned before the Nandas.

Ans :

Ajatashatru.

95. Who were two famous religious figures contemporary to King Ajatashatru?

Ans :

Siddhartha Gautama (the Buddha) and Vardhamana Mahavira.

96. Which dynasty was founded by Mahapadma Nanda in Magadha?

Ans :

Nanda dynasty.

NODIA

97. Who was the famous Sanskrit grammarian who lived during the time of the Nandas?

Ans :

Panini.

98. What is the name of Panini's famous work on Sanskrit grammar?

Ans :

Ashtadhyayi.

99. Which Greek king campaigned against the Persian Empire and later invaded Northwest India?

Ans :

Alexander (the Great).

100. Which Indian king opposed Alexander in Punjab?

Ans :

Porus.

101. What were the governors of provinces in Persian and Greek empires called?

Ans :

Satraps.

102. What name did the Greeks give to the group of wise Indian sages Alexander encountered?

Ans :

Gymnosophists ('naked philosophers').

103. Which dynasty replaced the Nandas and founded a vast empire?

Ans :

Maurya dynasty.

104. Who founded the Maurya Empire?

Ans :

Chandragupta Maurya.

105. Who was Chandragupta Maurya's famous mentor and advisor?

Ans :

Kautilya (also known as Chanakya or Vishnugupta).

106. What is the title of Kautilya's famous work on governance and economics?

Ans :

Arthashastra.

107. Which Greek historian and diplomat visited Chandragupta Maurya's court?

Ans :

Megasthenes.

108. What is the name of Megasthenes' book about India (now lost except for excerpts)?

Ans :

Indika.

109. What name meaning 'Beloved of the Gods' did Ashoka use for himself in his edicts?

Ans :

Devanampiya.

110. What script was used for most of Ashoka's edicts?

Ans :

Brahmi script.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. How is an empire different from a smaller kingdom?

Ans :

An empire is larger, comprising multiple smaller kingdoms or territories that pay tribute to a central emperor, whereas a kingdom is typically a single, smaller political unit ruled by a king.

112. What does 'paying tribute' mean in the context of an empire?

Ans :

Paying tribute meant that lesser kings or states acknowledged the emperor's overlordship by regularly giving valuable goods like money, gold, grain, or elephants as a sign of submission and loyalty.

113. List three essential functions an emperor had to manage to maintain an empire.

Ans :

An emperor needed to maintain an army for control/defense, run an administration (collect taxes, maintain order), and control resources (mines, agriculture) to keep the empire functioning.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

114. Why was controlling trade routes important for an emperor?

Ans :

Controlling trade routes ensured the flow of goods, generated tax revenue from trade, allowed access to diverse resources, and facilitated communication and administration across the vast empire.

115. What were guilds (shrenis), and who were their members?

Ans :

Guilds were powerful associations or organizations formed by people in the same profession. Members could be traders, craftsmen, moneylenders, or agriculturists who joined forces for mutual benefit.

116. What advantage did joining a guild offer to traders or craftsmen?

Ans :

Guilds allowed members to collaborate instead of competing, share resources and market information, set internal rules, and collectively represent their interests, often gaining significant autonomy.

117. List two geographical advantages that helped Magadha rise to power.

Ans :

Magadha was located in the fertile Ganga plains supporting agriculture. Nearby hilly regions provided crucial resources like iron ore (for tools/ weapons) and forests (for timber/elephants). Rivers facilitated transport.

118. How did the use of iron strengthen Magadha's military and economy?

Ans :

Iron weapons (swords, spears) made the army stronger. Iron tools like ploughs increased agricultural production, boosting the economy and allowing support for a larger army and administration.

119. Briefly describe Alexander the Great's campaign in Northwest India.

Ans :

Alexander invaded Northwest India (327-325 BCE), defeated King Porus, faced fierce resistance from local tribes, and massacred populations. His tired soldiers refused to go further east, forcing a difficult retreat.

120. What does the story of Alexander and the Gymnosophists illustrate?

Ans :

It illustrates an encounter between Greek military power and Indian philosophical wisdom. The sages' calm, intelligent responses impressed Alexander, highlighting a meeting between distinct Greek and Indian intellectual traditions.

121. Who was Kautilya, and what was his role in the rise of the Maurya Empire?

Ans :

Kautilya (or Chanakya) was a teacher and strategist, believed to be from Takshashila. He mentored Chandragupta Maurya, providing political and economic guidance that helped overthrow the Nandas and establish the vast Maurya Empire.

122. What is the main subject of Kautilya's Arthashastra?

Ans :

The Arthashastra is a detailed treatise on statecraft, covering aspects like politics, governance, economics, law, defense, administration, foreign policy, and the welfare of the people within a kingdom.

NODIA
Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. www.neetjee.in
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

123. Briefly explain Kautilya's 'saptanga' concept.

Ans :

Saptanga refers to the seven essential 'limbs' or constituents of a kingdom according to Kautilya : the king (swami), ministers (amatya), territory/ population (janapada), forts (durga), treasury (kosha), army/justice (danda), and allies (mitra).

124. What was Kautilya's core philosophy regarding a king's duty towards his subjects?

Ans :

Kautilya believed a king's happiness and welfare lie in the happiness and welfare of his subjects. The king should prioritize actions that benefit the people.

125. Who was Megasthenes, and why is his work 'Indika' significant?

Ans :

Megasthenes was a Greek historian and diplomat who visited Chandragupta Maurya's court. His book 'Indika', though mostly lost, provides valuable (though second-hand) early foreign observations about Mauryan India's society and administration.

126. What major event is said to have changed Ashoka's life and policies?

Ans :

The brutal Kalinga War, which caused immense death and destruction, reportedly led Ashoka to renounce violence and embrace Buddhist principles of peace and non-violence (ahimsa).

127. What were Ashoka's edicts, and what was their purpose?

Ans :

Ashoka's edicts were official declarations and messages engraved on rocks and pillars across his empire. Their purpose was to communicate his policies, particularly his concept of Dhamma, directly to his subjects.

128. What language and script were commonly used in Ashoka's edicts?

Ans :

Most edicts were inscribed in Prakrit, a common spoken language of the time, using the Brahmi script (the ancestor of most modern Indian scripts).

129. Explain the meaning of 'Dhamma' (Dharma) as promoted by Ashoka.

Ans :

Dhamma encompassed moral law, ethical duties, righteous conduct, tolerance, non-violence, respect for elders and different beliefs, and living truthfully in harmony with the cosmic order.

130. Give two examples of Ashoka's welfare measures mentioned in his edicts.

Ans :

Ashoka claimed to provide medical care for humans and animals, establish rest houses and wells along roads, plant fruit and shade trees, and promote tolerance among different religious sects.

131. Describe the city of Pataliputra during the Mauryan period.

Ans :

Pataliputra was a bustling capital with palaces, public buildings, planned streets, and likely wooden houses up to two storeys. It was a centre of governance, trade, and crafts.

132. What does the Sohagaura copper plate inscription tell us about Mauryan administration?

Ans :

It records the establishment of a granary to store grain against famine, showing the state's administrative efforts towards food security and disaster preparedness during Chandragupta Maurya's reign.

133. Briefly describe the clothing commonly worn during the Mauryan period, according to later accounts.

Ans :

People commonly wore cotton dresses : a lower garment reaching below the knee and an upper garment draped over the shoulders. Some also wore designed leather shoes.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

134. What do the Mauryan polished pillars and the Sarnath capital signify?

Ans :

The highly polished pillars demonstrate advanced stone-working skills and imperial power. The Sarnath capital, with its four lions and dharmachakra, symbolizes both royal authority and Ashoka's commitment to Buddhist principles (Dhamma).

135. List two reasons why empires, like the Mauryan, eventually decline.

Ans :

Empires decline due to factors like resentment in tributary states over demands, weak successors unable to control vast territories, regions breaking away for independence, or economic crises caused by calamities like droughts.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the motivations behind rulers wanting to expand kingdoms into empires, considering factors like ambition, resources, and wealth.

Ans :

Rulers sought fame and lasting legacy ('rule the world'). Expanding control gave access to more resources (minerals, forests, manpower) and agricultural land, boosting economic strength. Controlling trade routes and taxing more subjects increased wealth. Military power gained through expansion further fueled ambition and secured resources.

137. Explain how the institution of guilds (shrenis) contributed to economic stability and social self-organisation in ancient India.

Ans :

Guilds fostered collaboration over competition, allowing efficient resource/information sharing, boosting trade and craft production. Their ability to self-regulate ('lay down rules') reduced state interference and promoted stability within professions. This demonstrates society's capacity for self-organisation, contributing to overall economic resilience.

138. Analyse the strategic importance of Magadha's location and resources in its rise to become the centre of the first major Indian empires.

Ans :

Its location in fertile Ganga plains ensured agricultural surplus. Proximity to iron ore deposits fueled stronger tools/weapons. Forests provided timber and elephants (crucial for army). Major rivers (Ganga, Son) facilitated transport and trade. These combined advantages provided the economic and military base for imperial expansion.

139. Compare the reigns of Mahapadma Nanda and Chandragupta Maurya in terms of empire building and governance.

Ans :

Mahapadma Nanda expanded Magadha, unified territories, introduced coinage, and maintained a large army, laying imperial groundwork but becoming unpopular. Chandragupta, guided by Kautilya, built upon this, vastly expanding the empire, defeating Greeks, establishing sophisticated administration (Arthashastra's principles), and using diplomacy (Megasthenes) alongside military might.

140. Evaluate the impact of Alexander's invasion on India. Was its primary significance political or cultural?

Ans :

The direct political impact was limited and short-lived, mainly affecting the northwest temporarily. However, it opened direct contact between India and the Hellenistic world, fostering cultural exchange (Greek accounts of India, Indian philosophical influence on Greeks, later Indo-Greek art/kingdoms). Thus, its long-term cultural significance arguably outweighed its immediate political impact.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

141. "Kautilya's Arthashastra provides a pragmatic, rather than purely idealistic, guide to statecraft." Analyse this statement using examples of his principles.

Ans :

The statement holds true. While Kautilya emphasizes the king's duty towards subjects' welfare, the Arthashastra focuses heavily on practical aspects : maintaining power (army, spies, diplomacy, warfare), efficient administration (taxes, justice), resource control (mines, trade), and complex strategies (alliances, punishment for corruption) needed to run and protect a state effectively.

142. Analyse the concept of 'saptanga' (seven limbs). Why did Kautilya consider all seven elements essential for a strong kingdom?

Ans :

Kautilya saw the kingdom as an organism needing all parts to function. The king (head), ministers (eyes/ears), territory/people (legs), forts (arms), treasury (mouth/storage), army/justice (mind/force), and allies (external support) were interdependent. Weakness in any 'limb' (e.g., empty treasury, weak army, disloyal allies) would endanger the entire state's stability and prosperity.

NODIA

143. Analyse Ashoka's decision to renounce violence after the Kalinga war. What were the political and ethical dimensions of this choice?

Ans :

Ethically, Ashoka was reportedly moved by the immense suffering caused by war, embracing Buddhist non-violence. Politically, renouncing conquest after establishing a vast empire might have been pragmatic; focusing on internal consolidation, welfare, and diplomacy (spreading Dhamma) could ensure stability more effectively than constant, costly warfare on the fringes.

144. Evaluate the effectiveness of Ashoka's rock and pillar edicts as a means of communication and governance in a vast, diverse empire.

Ans :

Edicts were effective for broadcasting the emperor's policies and ideology (Dhamma) widely. Using Prakrit language and Brahmi script made them accessible. Placing them in public spaces ensured visibility. They served as permanent records of Ashoka's vision, aiming to unify the diverse empire under a common ethical framework and project his image as benevolent.

145. "Ashoka's promotion of Dhamma was both a moral conviction and a political tool." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

His embrace of non-violence and compassion seems a genuine moral shift post-Kalinga. However, promoting Dhamma – emphasizing tolerance, social responsibility, welfare – also served political ends. It provided a unifying ideology for a diverse empire, fostered social harmony, enhanced his image as a righteous ruler, and justified his authority through morality rather than just force.

146. Analyse the significance of the Mauryan period for Indian art and architecture, citing examples like the Sarnath capital and Sanchi Stupa.

Ans :

The Mauryan period marked a significant phase, possibly the first large-scale use of stone. It produced iconic works like the highly polished Ashokan pillars with their capitals (Sarnath lion capital being the prime example, showing technical skill and symbolism). Monumental structures like the Great Stupa at Sanchi (originally brick, later enlarged) indicate organized patronage and architectural development.

147. Based on Megasthenes' account and archaeological evidence (Sohagaura plate), analyse the state of agriculture and administration's role in food security during the Mauryan era.

Ans :

Agriculture was highly important, likely efficient (two crops/year), ensuring ample food and rare famines. The administration actively supported this : farmers were protected during wars, and measures like building state granaries (Sohagaura evidence) were taken to ensure food security and manage potential crises, highlighting organized state intervention.

148. Discuss the factors that contribute to the fragility and eventual decline of large empires, using the Mauryan empire as a potential case study.

Ans :

Factors include : Difficulty controlling vast, diverse territories far from the capital; potential for regional governors/kings to seek independence, especially under weaker successors (as happened after Ashoka); economic strain from maintaining large armies/administration or calamities; and internal dissent or resentment over heavy taxation/tribute demands.

149. How did the Mauryan empire facilitate economic integration across the Indian subcontinent?

Ans :

By establishing political unity over a vast area, the Mauryas likely secured trade routes (like Uttarapatha, Dakshinapatha), possibly standardized weights/measures and coinage, maintained law and order conducive to commerce, and controlled resources systematically. This large, relatively stable zone fostered increased trade and economic interaction between diverse regions.

150. Evaluate Kautilya's principle : "In the happiness of his subjects lies the king's happiness." Is this purely idealistic, or does it have practical implications for a ruler?

Ans :

While sounding idealistic, it has strong practical implications. Happy, prosperous subjects are less likely to rebel, more productive economically

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(generating more taxes), and more willing to support the king (e.g., serve in the army). Ensuring subjects' welfare, therefore, directly contributes to the king's own security, wealth, and power stability.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. A regional governor (satrap) appointed by Alexander in Northwest India faces challenges after Alexander's death. Local Indian chiefs are becoming restless, trade along the Uttarapatha is disrupted by instability, and news arrives of a powerful new empire rising in Magadha under Chandragupta Maurya.

(i) Why might the local Indian chiefs become restless after Alexander's death?

(ii) Why would trade disruption be a major concern for the governor?

(iii) Evaluate the governor's options considering the rise of the Mauryas.

Ans :

(i) With the supreme leader gone, the central authority weakened, encouraging local chiefs to reassert their independence from foreign Greek rule.

(ii) Trade generated revenue (taxes) and provided essential goods. Disruption would weaken the region's economy and the governor's resources needed to maintain control and his administration.

(iii) Options include : trying to suppress local chiefs militarily (risky with weakened authority), attempting diplomacy with chiefs, seeking alliances with other Greek satraps, or potentially negotiating/submitting to the rising Mauryan power to retain some local authority.

152. A group of merchants forms a guild (shreni) in Pataliputra during the Mauryan period. They trade in textiles sourced from Varanasi and spices from South India via the Dakshinapatha. They face issues with inconsistent weights and measures in different towns and occasional banditry on the routes.

(i) How could the guild collectively address the issue of inconsistent weights and measures?

(ii) What advantage does being in a guild offer when dealing with banditry?

(iii) Would the Mauryan ruler likely interfere with the internal rules set by a guild? Why or why not?

Ans :

(i) The guild could establish its own internal standards for trade among members or lobby the Mauryan administration to enforce uniform weights and measures across the empire to facilitate fair trade.

(ii) Guild members could pool resources to hire guards for their caravans, share information about unsafe routes, or collectively appeal to the Mauryan administration for better security along major trade routes.

(iii) Likely not. Guilds were generally allowed to make their own rules, and a wise ruler, following principles like those of Kautilya, would avoid interference as long as the guild operated effectively and supported trade, which benefited the empire.

153. Imagine you are an official sent by Emperor Ashoka to inspect the implementation of Dhamma policies in a province. You find that while rest houses have been built along roads, local officials are still sometimes harsh towards people of minority sects, and cruelty to animals persists in some villages.

(i) Referencing Ashoka's edict, what principle is being violated by the harsh treatment of minority sects?

(ii) What specific instruction regarding officials' conduct seems relevant here?

(iii) What action might you, as Ashoka's inspecting officer, take based on his instructions?

Ans :

(i) The principle of impartiality and gaining the affection of all people ("All men are my children") is being violated, along with Ashoka's broader promotion of tolerance among sects.

(ii) Ashoka instructed officials not to be severe or harsh, to practice impartiality, and specifically ordered city magistrates not to imprison or torture without good reason.

(iii) Following Ashoka's instructions, you would investigate these matters, report the violations (harshness, cruelty), instruct the local officials to adhere strictly to the principles of impartiality and non-violence (towards humans and animals), and remind them of the periodic inspections.

NODIA

154. An archaeologist discovers ruins identified as a Mauryan-era administrative outpost near a major river crossing on the Dakshinapatha route. Finds include storage jars, official seals stamped with Mauryan symbols, barracks-like structures, and fragments of Kautilya's Arthashastra copied onto palm leaves.

(i) What do the official seals and storage jars suggest about the function of this outpost?

(ii) What does the presence of barracks-like structures imply?

(iii) Evaluate the significance of finding fragments of the Arthashastra at this location.

Ans :

(i) The seals suggest official administrative presence (possibly for collecting taxes or monitoring trade). The storage jars might indicate the collection and storage of grain or goods as revenue or for local distribution.

(ii) Barracks imply the stationing of soldiers or guards, suggesting the outpost also had a military or security function, perhaps protecting the trade route or enforcing imperial authority.

(iii) Finding the Arthashastra suggests its principles were actively studied and possibly implemented by administrators even in provincial outposts. It underscores the text's practical importance in Mauryan governance and administrative training across the empire.

155. After Ashoka's death, a regional kingdom in the Deccan that was previously tributary to the Mauryas stops sending tribute to Pataliputra. Ashoka's successor sends envoys demanding the tribute, but the regional king refuses, citing the high cost and the weakening of central Mauryan authority.

(i) Why might empires become fragile after a powerful ruler's death?

(ii) What economic reason might the regional king cite for refusing tribute?

(iii) Evaluate the potential consequences for both the regional kingdom and the Mauryan empire from this act of defiance.

Ans :

(i) Successors might be perceived as weaker, tempting regional rulers/chieftains to assert independence and challenge the central authority, especially if controlling vast territories becomes difficult.

(ii) The king might argue that demands for tribute became too burdensome, especially if facing local economic hardship (e.g., drought) or if the cost strained the kingdom's resources excessively.

(iii) For the regional kingdom, it's a risky bid for independence that could lead to Mauryan military intervention or success if the centre is weak. For the Mauryan empire, it signals weakening control, loss of revenue/resources, and could encourage other regions to rebel, accelerating imperial decline.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

NODIA

CHAPTER 6

THE AGE OF REORGANISATION

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION

Following the decline of the Maurya Empire around 185 BCE, the Indian subcontinent entered a phase sometimes referred to as the 'Age of Reorganisation'. This era saw the fragmentation of the previous empire and the rise of numerous competing kingdoms, alongside invasions from groups originating outside the subcontinent. Despite political flux, this period witnessed significant developments in art, architecture, literature, and cultural exchange.

2. SURGE OF THE SHUNGAS

Pushyamitra Shunga, who assassinated the last Maurya emperor, founded the Shunga dynasty which ruled over parts of north and central India. To assert his authority, he performed the traditional ashvamedha yajna (horse sacrifice ritual). While his empire was smaller than the Mauryan one, he defended it against invaders and maintained relations with the Indo-Greeks after some initial conflict. This period saw a revival of Vedic rituals, though other philosophical schools continued to thrive. Sanskrit literature flourished, with Patanjali compiling the Yoga Sutras during this time. The Shungas also patronised art and architecture; notable contributions include additions like carved railings and reliefs to the Bharhut Stupa, showcasing early Buddhist art.

3. THE SATAVAHANAS

Ruling large parts of the Deccan from the 2nd century BCE, the Satavahana dynasty (sometimes called 'Andhras') rose to prominence south of the Shungas. Their empire primarily covered areas of modern Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, and Maharashtra, with capitals like Amaravati and Pratishthana (Paithan). Trade and commerce were vital, evidenced by Satavahana coins found widely and coins depicting ships, suggesting significant maritime trade. They had trade networks reaching the Roman Empire, exchanging goods like spices, textiles, and luxury items. Agriculture thrived in the fertile Krishna-Godavari region. The Satavahanas patronised literature and culture. They followed Vedic traditions but also supported Jain and Buddhist institutions, often granting land to monks and scholars. Notably, some rulers used matronymics (names derived from their mothers), like Gautamiputra Satakarni. Inscriptions, like those at Naneghat, detail royal rituals and donations, and provide early evidence for Indian numerals. The empire eventually fragmented around the 3rd century CE.

4. COMING OF THE CHEDIS

After the Mauryan decline, Kalinga (modern Odisha) re-emerged as a significant power under the Chedi dynasty. King Kharavela was a prominent ruler, known as a follower of Jainism (sometimes called bhikshu-raja or monk-king), though respectful of all faiths. His achievements, including military campaigns and public welfare works, are detailed in the Hathigumpha inscription near Bhubaneswar. He patronised the development of the Udayagiri-Khandagiri caves, examples of rock-cut architecture likely used by Jain monks. Kharavela emphasized his role as a protector of all sects, reflecting a key aspect of the Indian ethos.

5. KINGDOMS AND LIFE IN THE SOUTH

During this period (roughly 2nd/3rd century BCE to 3rd century CE), three major kingdoms – the Cheras, Cholas, and Pandyas – dominated South India, often competing for control but also fostering trade and culture. These kingdoms remained independent even during the peak of Mauryan power. This era is known as the Sangam Age, named after the assemblies (sangam) of poets whose collective works constitute the oldest literature in South India. Sangam poetry often explores themes of love, heroism, and societal values.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

5.1 The Cholas

Ruling parts of Tamil Nadu, the Cholas were a powerful dynasty. King Karikala is noted for defeating the Cheras and Pandyas and constructing the Kallanai (Grand Anicut), a significant irrigation work on the Kaveri river that boosted agriculture in the delta. The Tamil epic Silappadikaram, telling the story of Kannagi and Kovalan, is set partly in the Chola capital.

5.2 The Cheras

Known also as Keralaputras, they ruled western Tamil Nadu and Kerala from their capital Vanji (Karur). They played a key role in the region's culture, supporting Sangam poets, and economy, with extensive trade links to the Roman Empire and West Asia, exporting spices, timber, ivory, and pearls. They issued their own coinage.

5.3 The Pandyas

Ruling southern Tamil Nadu from Madurai since several centuries BCE, the Pandyas were mentioned by Megasthenes as a prosperous kingdom with strong administration and trade (especially in pearls) with powers like Greece and Rome. They were also a notable naval power and contributed significantly to regional art and architecture.

6. INVASIONS OF THE INDO-GREEKS

Following Alexander the Great's retreat, the Greek satraps he left behind established independent kingdoms in the northwest, becoming known as the Indo-Greeks. After the Mauryan decline, they expanded into northwestern regions of the subcontinent. This led to a significant cultural interaction, blending Greek and Indian elements in governance, art (like the Gandhara school), language, and coinage. Indo-Greek coins often depicted rulers alongside Greek or Indian deities. The Heliodorus pillar near Vidisha, erected by an Indo-Greek ambassador showing devotion to Vasudeva, is a testament to this cultural synthesis. Their rule eventually ended due to invasions by the Shakas.

7. THE EMERGENCE OF THE KUSHANAS

The Kushanas, originating from Central Asia, established a vast empire by the 2nd century CE, extending from Central Asia into large parts of northern India. Kanishka was their most renowned ruler. Their empire controlled crucial sections of the Silk Route, fostering extensive trade connecting India with Asia and the West. Kushana rule was a period of significant cultural intermixing. They patronised art, leading to the flourishing of the Gandhara and Mathura schools. Kushana art reflects a blend of styles and the co-existence of various religious traditions, with sculptures and coins depicting Buddhist figures alongside Hindu deities like Shiva, and rulers adopting titles like Devaputra ('Son of God').

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Why was the post-Maurya era also known as the era of reorganisation?

Ans :

It was called the 'era of reorganisation' because the unified Maurya Empire broke apart, leading to the emergence of many new, competing kingdoms. Existing regions were reorganized under new rulers, and foreign invaders also established kingdoms, reshaping the political map of the subcontinent.

2. Write a note on the Sangam literature in 150 words.

Ans :

Sangam literature is the earliest known body of Tamil literature, composed between 300 BCE and 300 CE. It flourished under the patronage of the Chera, Chola, and Pandya kingdoms in South India. The term "Sangam" refers to assemblies or academies of poets and scholars held in Madurai, where these works were compiled. Sangam literature is primarily secular and includes poems, ethical texts, and heroic tales written in classical Tamil. The major works are grouped into two categories : Akam (love and personal life) and Puram (war, politics, and public life). Notable texts include the Ettuthokai (Eight Anthologies) and Pattuppattu (Ten Idylls). These poems offer rich insights into the social structure, economy, warfare, and cultural life of early Tamil society. Sangam literature is also significant for its lyrical beauty, realism, and detailed portrayal of nature and human emotions, making it a valuable source for understanding ancient South Indian history and culture.

NODIA

3. Which rulers mentioned in this chapter included their mother's name in their title, and why did they do so?

Ans :

The Satavahana rulers, like Gautamiputra Satakarni (son of Gautami Balashri), often included their mother's name. While the succession was patrilineal, using the mother's name likely signified the high status and influence of queens and women in the royal family during that period.

4. Write a note of 250 words about one kingdom from this chapter that you find interesting. Explain why you chose it. After presenting your note in class, find out what kingdoms have been the most selected by your classmates.

Ans :

One of the most fascinating kingdoms from this chapter is the Maurya Empire, which I chose because of its remarkable scale, administrative brilliance, and the legacy of Emperor Ashoka. Founded by Chandragupta Maurya around 321 BCE with the guidance of Chanakya (Kautilya), the Maurya Empire was the first empire to unify most of the Indian subcontinent under a single rule.

What makes the Maurya Empire particularly interesting is its well-organized administrative system. It had a centralized government with provincial divisions, a vast bureaucracy, and a structured taxation system. The empire also maintained a strong standing army and had an efficient spy network, as described in Kautilya's Arthashastra.

However, it was under Ashoka the Great (ruled c. 268–232 BCE) that the empire reached its peak. After witnessing the bloodshed of the Kalinga War, Ashoka embraced Buddhism and focused on dhamma (moral rule), promoting non-violence, tolerance, and welfare. He spread these ideals through inscriptions and pillars across the empire. His efforts to govern through ethical principles and promote harmony set him apart as one of history's earliest proponents of state-led moral governance.

I chose the Maurya Empire because of its unique blend of military strength, administrative innovation, and philosophical depth. It shows how leadership can evolve from conquest to compassion, making it not just a political but also a moral turning point in Indian history.

5. Imagine you have the chance to create your own kingdom. What royal emblem would you choose, and why?

What title would you take as the ruler? Write a note about your kingdom, including its values, rules and regulations, and some unique features.

Ans :

This is a creative activity. Example : Emblem : A Banyan Tree, symbolizing growth, shelter, and interconnectedness. Title : Lokapala (Protector of the People). Values : Justice, Knowledge, Sustainability, Tolerance. Rules : Fair taxation, accessible education, protection of natural resources, freedom of thought. Unique Features : Mandatory environmental service, council including artisans and farmers, focus on water harvesting.

6. You have read about the architectural developments of the post-Maurya era. Take an outline of the Indian subcontinent and mark the approximate locations of some of the ancient structures mentioned in this chapter.

Ans :

1. Key Ancient Structures from the Post-Maurya Era :
   (i) Bharhut Stupa : Located in Madhya Pradesh, known for its beautifully carved railings and Buddhist relief sculptures.
   (ii) Naneghat Caves : Situated near Pune, Maharashtra, used for toll collection and trade rest stops.
   (iii) Udayagiri and Khandagiri Caves : Located in Bhubaneswar, Odisha, famous for their rock-cut architecture and inscriptions.
   (iv) Sanchi Stupa : Found in Madhya Pradesh, originally built by Ashoka and later expanded during the Shunga dynasty.
   (v) Karla Caves : Located near Lonavala, Maharashtra, known for their Buddhist rock-cut architecture and grand entrance pillars.
2. Locations on the Indian Map :
   (i) Bharhut Stupa and Sanchi Stupa are located in central India (Madhya Pradesh).
   (ii) Naneghat Caves and Karla Caves are located in western India (Maharashtra).
   (iii) Udayagiri and Khandagiri Caves are located in eastern India (Odisha).

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What does the term 'Age of Reorganisation' primarily refer to in the context of post-Maurya Indian history?
(A) A period of complete political stability
(B) The re-establishment of the Mauryan empire
(C) Existing regions reorganised into new kingdoms
(D) The decline of all trade and urban life

Ans :

(C) Existing regions reorganised into new kingdoms
The 'Age of Reorganisation' describes the period after the Mauryan empire's decline, where existing regions were restructured into new, often competing, kingdoms, and new political powers emerged across the Indian subcontinent over time.

2. Who is generally accepted as having assassinated the last Maurya emperor around 185 BCE, leading to the empire's breakup?
(A) King Kanishka
(B) Gautamiputra Satakarni
(C) Pushyamitra Shunga
(D) King Kharavela

Ans :

(C) Pushyamitra Shunga
Historical accounts suggest that Pushyamitra Shunga, the commander-in-chief of the last Maurya emperor, assassinated him around 185 BCE. This event marked the end of the Mauryan dynasty and the beginning of the Shunga dynasty.

3. Why did the northwest region of the Indian subcontinent become weak and exposed to invasions after the Mauryan empire's decline?
(A) Due to severe and prolonged natural disasters
(B) The breakup of a strong central Mauryan
(C) Local rulers invited foreign powers to help
(D) Trade routes in the region were closed

Ans :

(B) The breakup of a strong central Mauryan
The disintegration of the powerful Mauryan empire, which had maintained control over the vast northwest, led to a power vacuum. This made the region vulnerable to invasions from groups outside the subcontinent.

4. What is a 'matrimonial alliance' in the context of ancient kingdoms?
(A) A trade agreement established through royal envoys
(B) A military pact formed after a major war
(C) An alliance arranged through a strategic marriage
(D) A religious bond between two priestly classes

Ans :

(C) An alliance arranged through a strategic marriage
A matrimonial alliance refers to a political or strategic partnership between two royal families or kingdoms that is solidified through a marriage, often involving a king offering his daughter to a neighboring royal family.

5. Pushyamitra Shunga, founder of the Shunga dynasty, performed which Vedic ritual to establish himself as a powerful ruler?
(A) Rajasuya yajna
(B) Ashvamedha yajna
(C) Vajapeya yajna
(D) Agnihotra yajna

Ans :

(B) Ashvamedha yajna
Pushyamitra Shunga conducted the ashvamedha yajna, an elaborate Vedic horse sacrifice ritual. This ceremony was traditionally performed by powerful kings to assert their sovereignty and imperial ambitions over neighboring territories.

NODIA

6. The Shunga period witnessed a revival of Vedic rituals and practices. What does this suggest about the cultural trends of that time?
(A) A complete rejection of all other beliefs
(B) The exclusive patronage of Buddhist institutions
(C) A renewed emphasis on older traditions
(D) The widespread adoption of foreign customs

Ans :

(C) A renewed emphasis on older traditions
The revival of Vedic rituals during the Shunga period indicates a renewed focus and patronage of older indigenous religious and cultural traditions, although other schools of thought, like Buddhism, also continued to exist.

7. The Yoga Sutras, a foundational text of Yoga philosophy, were compiled by _____ during the Shunga period.
(A) Kalidasa
(B) Patanjali
(C) Aryabhata
(D) Varahamihira

Ans :

(B) Patanjali
Patanjali is credited with compiling the Yoga Sutras, an important classical text that systematically outlines the philosophy and practice of Yoga. This compilation is believed to have occurred during the Shunga period.

8. The Bharhut Stupa, known for its beautifully carved railings depicting stories from Buddha's life, was significantly enhanced during which dynasty's rule?
(A) The Maurya dynasty
(B) The Gupta dynasty
(C) The Shunga dynasty
(D) The Satavahana dynasty

Ans :

(C) The Shunga dynasty
While the original Bharhut Stupa might have been built earlier, possibly during Ashoka's time, the Shungas are known for adding elaborately carved railings and reliefs, which are prime examples of early Buddhist narrative art.

9. How did the Satavahana empire's geographical extent generally compare to the earlier Maurya Empire?
(A) The Satavahana empire was significantly larger
(B) The Satavahana empire was primarily in north
(C) The Satavahana empire was smaller, focused south
(D) Both empires covered exactly the same areas

Ans :

(C) The Satavahana empire was smaller, focused south
The Maurya Empire was vast, covering almost the entire subcontinent. The Satavahana empire, while powerful, was geographically smaller and primarily concentrated in the Deccan region and parts of central and southern India.

10. Which of the following correctly pairs a Satavahana ruler with a significant characteristic or achievement?
(A) Pushyamitra Shunga - Founded Satavahana dynasty
(B) Gautamiputra Satakarni - Named after his mother
(C) King Kharavela - Issued coins depicting ships
(D) Kanishka - Built the Naneghat Caves for trade

Ans :

(B) Gautamiputra Satakarni - Named after his mother
In the Satavahana tradition, some rulers, like Gautamiputra Satakarni, were named after their mothers, as evidenced by inscriptions. This highlights the respected position of queens like Gautami Balashri.

11. The depiction of ships on Satavahana coins suggests what about their kingdom's economy?
(A) A heavy reliance on fishing for sustenance
(B) The importance of maritime trade activities
(C) A focus on building a powerful naval
(D) The worship of sea deities was dominant

Ans :

(B) The importance of maritime trade activities
The representation of seafaring ships on Satavahana coins is strong evidence that maritime trade played a significant role in their economy. These coins suggest advanced shipbuilding and active trade networks, possibly reaching overseas.

12. The Naneghat Caves, located near a major trade route, were used by the Satavahanas for what primary purpose besides resting places?
(A) Royal residences for the Satavahana kings
(B) Collection of tolls and taxes from trade
(C) Major centers for Buddhist philosophical study

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(D) Fortified military outposts guarding the region

Ans :

(B) Collection of tolls and taxes from trade
The Naneghat Caves, strategically situated on a major trade route, served as important centers for the collection of tolls and taxes from traders passing through. They also functioned as rest stops for these merchants.

13. An inscription records a Satavahana queen donating land, cows, and silver coins to priests and monks. What does this act primarily indicate about the rulers?
(A) Their primary focus was on military expansion
(B) Their opposition to all religious institutions
(C) Their patronage of religious and scholarly groups
(D) Their efforts to abolish the existing varna

Ans :

(C) Their patronage of religious and scholarly groups
Such donations of land and valuables to priests, monks, and scholars demonstrate the Satavahana rulers' patronage of various religious and learned communities, supporting their activities and institutions.

14. Assertion (A) : Some Satavahana kings were named after their mothers, like Gautamiputra Satakarni.
Reason (R) : This tradition signified that women held no significant influence or power in the Satavahana kingdom.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
It is true that some Satavahana rulers were named after their mothers. However, this, along with evidence like Queen Gautami Balashri's inscriptions and donations, suggests that prominent women could wield considerable influence, making Reason (R) false.

15. Which ancient site is INCORRECTLY paired with the dynasty primarily associated with its development or patronage ?
(A) Bharhut Stupa - Shunga Dynasty enhancements made
(B) Karla Caves - Satavahana Dynasty contributions
(C) Udayagiri-Khandagiri Caves - Chedi Dynasty (Kharavela)
(D) Naneghat Caves - Kushana Dynasty constructions

Ans :

(D) Naneghat Caves - Kushana Dynasty constructions
The Naneghat Caves are strongly associated with the Satavahanas, who used them for toll collection and as rest stops. The Kushanas were primarily a northern dynasty with different centers of activity.

16. Consider the following statements about the Satavahanas :
1. They were also known as 'Andhras' and ruled large parts of the Deccan.
2. Their trade networks extended as far as the Roman Empire.
3. They exclusively patronized Vedic rituals and opposed Buddhism and Jainism.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Satavahanas, also called Andhras, ruled much of the Deccan and had extensive trade, including with Rome. While they followed Vedic traditions, they also patronized Buddhist and Jain institutions.

17. What does the term 'rock-cut architecture' refer to, as seen in the Udayagiri-Khandagiri caves?
(A) Building structures using loosely piled rocks
(B) Carving structures directly out of solid rock
(C) Decorating cave walls with painted murals
(D) Using rocks to create mosaic patterns on floors

Ans :

(B) Carving structures directly out of solid rock
Rock-cut architecture involves creating structures, such as temples or monasteries, by carving them directly out of natural solid rock formations, rather than constructing them from separate blocks of stone or other materials.

NODIA

18. The Hathigumpha inscription, recording King Kharavela's accomplishments, is written in which ancient script?
(A) Kharosthi script
(B) Brahmi script
(C) Greek script
(D) Tamil-Brahmi script

Ans :

(B) Brahmi script
The Hathigumpha inscription, a significant historical record detailing the reign of King Kharavela of Kalinga, is inscribed in the Brahmi script, one of ancient India's most important writing systems for all.

19. King Kharavela's claim in the Hathigumpha inscription that he was a 'respector of every sect and repairer of every temple' highlights what important Indian ethos?
(A) The ruler's sole focus on military conquest
(B) The state's promotion of a single religion
(C) A tradition of religious tolerance and patronage
(D) The complete separation of state and religion

Ans :

(C) A tradition of religious tolerance and patronage
Kharavela's assertion reflects a long-standing Indian ethos where rulers often extended their respect and support to various religious sects and schools of thought, even if they personally adhered to a specific faith.

20. A group of historians is studying an ancient South Indian literary corpus known for its poetic expressions of personal emotions like love, and societal values like heroism. This literature, the oldest in the region, defined an entire era. Which literary tradition are they likely studying for this work?
(A) Vedic Samhitas
(B) Buddhist Tripitakas
(C) Sangam literature
(D) Puranic literature

Ans :

(C) Sangam literature
Sangam literature, the oldest body of Tamil literature, is renowned for its anthologies of poems that beautifully articulate themes of love (akam) and heroism/public life (puram), defining the Sangam Age in South Indian history.

21. The epic Silappadikaram, telling the story of Kannagi and Kovalan, takes the reader through the ancient kingdoms of the Cholas, Pandyas, and the _____.
(A) Satavahanas
(B) Kushanas
(C) Cheras
(D) Guptas

Ans :

(C) Cheras
The narrative of Silappadikaram unfolds across the three major ancient Tamil kingdoms : the Chola kingdom (Puhar), the Pandya kingdom (Madurai), and finally the Chera kingdom, where Kannagi is deified.

22. The Kallanai, or Grand Anicut, an ancient water diversion system on the Kaveri River, is attributed to which Chola king?
(A) Rajendra Chola I
(B) Rajaraja Chola I
(C) Karikala Chola
(D) Vijayalaya Chola

Ans :

(C) Karikala Chola
The construction of the Kallanai (Grand Anicut), one of the world's oldest water-diversion structures still in use, is traditionally attributed to the early Chola king Karikala, around the 2nd century CE.

23. The term 'Keralaputra' (sons of Kerala) was often used to refer to which ancient South Indian dynasty?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Pandyas
(C) The Cheras
(D) The Pallavas

Ans :

(C) The Cheras
The Cheras, who ruled over parts of present-day Kerala and western Tamil Nadu, were also known by the epithet 'Keralaputra', signifying their strong association with the Kerala region in ancient times.

24. How did the primary trade focus of the Cheras differ from that of the Pandyas, although both traded extensively?
(A) Cheras traded spices; Pandyas traded mainly grains
(B) Cheras traded pearls; Pandyas focused on timber

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Cheras focused on ivory; Pandyas on textiles
(D) Cheras exported spices/timber; Pandyas pearls

Ans :

(D) Cheras exported spices/timber; Pandyas pearls
While both kingdoms were active in trade, the Cheras were particularly known for exporting spices, timber, and ivory. The Pandyas were renowned for their pearl fisheries and trade in pearls, a highly prized commodity.

25. Which invader group is correctly paired with its general period of influence or origin ?
(A) Indo-Greeks - Emerged after the Kushana decline
(B) Shakas (Indo-Scythians) - Ruled before Indo-Greeks
(C) Kushanas - Originally from Central Asian regions
(D) Satavahanas - Invaders from outside subcontinent

Ans :

(C) Kushanas - Originally from Central Asian regions
The Kushanas were a nomadic people originally from Central Asia who established a vast empire that included parts of northwestern India. The Indo-Greeks preceded the Shakas, and Satavahanas were an indigenous dynasty.

26. The Heliodorus pillar near Vidisha, erected by an Indo-Greek ambassador praising Vasudeva, exemplifies what process?
(A) Complete rejection of Indian culture by Greeks
(B) Military conquest of central India by them
(C) Cultural interaction and assimilation in India
(D) Establishment of Greek as official language

Ans :

(C) Cultural interaction and assimilation in India
The Heliodorus pillar is a significant example of cultural synthesis. An Indo-Greek ambassador adopting Indian religious devotion (to Vasudeva) and erecting a pillar with an Indian philosophical message demonstrates the blending of cultures.

27. The Shaka Samvat, adopted as the Indian National Calendar, is how many years behind the Gregorian calendar for most of the year?
(A) 57 years behind
(B) 78 years behind
(C) 100 years behind
(D) 125 years behind

Ans :

(B) 78 years behind
The Shaka Samvat (Shaka Era) calendar begins 78 years after the start of the Gregorian calendar (Common Era). Therefore, to convert a Shaka year to a Gregorian year, one generally adds 78.

28. The 'Gandhara School of Art', which flourished under rulers like the Kushanas, is known for its fusion of which two major artistic styles?
(A) Indian and Chinese styles
(B) Indian and Persian styles
(C) Indian and Greek styles
(D) Indian and Egyptian styles

Ans :

(C) Indian and Greek styles
The Gandhara School of Art is celebrated for its distinctive style that blended Indian themes, particularly Buddhist iconography, with Greco-Roman artistic techniques and aesthetic elements, resulting in unique sculptural forms.

29. What was a primary difference in the material used by the Gandhara School of Art compared to the Mathura School of Art?
(A) Gandhara used red sandstone; Mathura used grey
(B) Gandhara used grey-black schist; Mathura used red
(C) Both primarily used marble for all pieces
(D) Gandhara used bronze; Mathura primarily used wood

Ans :

(B) Gandhara used grey-black schist; Mathura used red
Sculptures from the Gandhara School were predominantly crafted from grey-black schist stone. In contrast, the Mathura School of Art primarily utilized distinctive red sandstone for its creations, a key visual differentiator.

30. King Kanishka of the Kushana dynasty is associated with which important trade route that connected India with other parts of Asia and the West?
(A) The Grand Trunk Road route
(B) The Dakshinapatha main route
(C) The Maritime Spice Route path
(D) Sections of the Silk Route

Ans :

(D) Sections of the Silk Route

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

The Kushana Empire under Kanishka controlled significant portions of the Silk Route. This vital network of trade routes facilitated commerce and cultural exchange between China, Central Asia, India, Persia, and the Roman Empire.

31. An archaeologist discovers a sculpture of Buddha with realistic anatomical features, flowing robes, and a serene expression, crafted from grey-black stone. This sculpture most likely belongs to which ancient Indian school of art identified by name?
(A) The Mathura School of Art style
(B) The Amaravati School of Art type
(C) The Sarnath School of Art look
(D) The Gandhara School of Art form

Ans :

(D) The Gandhara School of Art form
These characteristics – realistic anatomy, flowing drapery reminiscent of classical Greek sculpture, serene depiction of Buddha, and the use of grey-black schist stone – are hallmarks of the Gandhara School of Art.

32. Which ancient dynasty is INCORRECTLY paired with a region it primarily ruled or influenced?
(A) Shungas - Parts of North and Central India
(B) Satavahanas - Deccan region of South India
(C) Cheras - Eastern coast of India (Kalinga)
(D) Kushanas - Northwestern India and Central Asia

Ans :

(C) Cheras - Eastern coast of India (Kalinga)
The Cheras were a major dynasty in South India, primarily ruling over parts of modern-day Kerala and western Tamil Nadu. The Kalinga region on the eastern coast was associated with dynasties like the Chedis.

33. Assertion (A) : The period following the Mauryan decline saw the assimilation of foreign invaders into Indian society.
Reason (R) : Invading groups like the Indo-Greeks and Kushanas often adopted Indian religions, artistic styles, and cultural practices.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The post-Maurya era witnessed several invasions, but many invading groups, such as the Indo-Greeks and Kushanas, underwent a process of Indianization. They adopted local religions, patronized Indian art forms, and contributed to a cultural synthesis.

34. Consider the following about South Indian kingdoms of this era :
1. The Sangam literature was primarily written in Sanskrit.
2. King Karikala Chola is known for constructing the Grand Anicut.
3. The Pandyas were noted for their extensive pearl trade.

Which of the above statements is/are correct about it?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
Sangam literature is the oldest Tamil literature, not primarily Sanskrit. King Karikala Chola is indeed associated with the Grand Anicut. The Pandyas were famous for their pearl fisheries and trade.

NODIA

35. The Mathura School of Art, known for its distinct Indian style, primarily used _____ sandstone for its sculptures.
(A) grey
(B) black
(C) red
(D) white

Ans :

(C) red
A distinguishing characteristic of the Mathura School of Art is its predominant use of spotted red sandstone, sourced locally. This material gives Mathura sculptures their distinctive appearance compared to other contemporary art schools.

36. The term 'ashvamedha yajna' refers to what kind of ancient Vedic ritual?
(A) A fire offering made daily by priests
(B) A royal consecration ceremony for a new
(C) A complex horse sacrifice by a king
(D) A communal feast held after a good one

Ans :

(C) A complex horse sacrifice by a king
The 'ashvamedha yajna' was an elaborate and significant Vedic ritual involving the sacrifice of a horse. It was performed by powerful kings to assert their sovereignty, expand their territory, and demonstrate their imperial status.

37. Which of the "crowned kings" of the Sangam Age ruled with their capital at Madurai and were known for their pearl fisheries?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Cheras
(C) The Pandyas
(D) The Satavahanas

Ans :

(C) The Pandyas
The Pandyas, one of the three "crowned kings" (Muvendar) of the Sangam Age, had their capital at Madurai. They were renowned for their rich pearl fisheries and extensive trade in pearls with other regions.

38. The blending of Indian and Greco-Roman artistic elements in the Gandhara school primarily occurred due to what historical process?
(A) Direct maritime trade between India and Egypt
(B) The influence of Persian artistic traditions
(C) Cultural interactions following Greek presence
(D) The migration of Chinese artists to India

Ans :

(C) Cultural interactions following Greek presence
The Gandhara art style emerged from the cultural interaction that followed Alexander's campaigns and the subsequent rule of Indo-Greek kings in northwestern India. This led to a fusion of Indian themes with Hellenistic artistic conventions.

39. A historian finds coins from the 1st century CE in India. One side depicts an emperor in Central Asian attire, and the other side shows the image of Buddha with a Greek inscription. This coin most likely belongs to which dynasty that ruled parts of India?
(A) The Mauryan Dynasty
(B) The Shunga Dynasty
(C) The Satavahana Dynasty
(D) The Kushana Dynasty

Ans :

(D) The Kushana Dynasty
Kushana coins, particularly those of King Kanishka, often depicted the ruler in Central Asian attire. They also featured a diverse range of deities, including Buddha (sometimes with Greek inscriptions) and Hindu gods, reflecting cultural syncretism.

40. How did the subject matter of the Mathura School of Art generally differ from the primary focus of the Gandhara School, despite both depicting Buddhist themes?
(A) Mathura focused on Greek gods; Gandhara on Buddha
(B) Mathura depicted more indigenous Indian deities
(C) Gandhara showed daily life; Mathura only royalty
(D) Both schools exclusively depicted abstract patterns

Ans :

(B) Mathura depicted more indigenous Indian deities
While both schools produced numerous Buddha images, the Mathura school also created a wider range of sculptures depicting indigenous Indian deities like Kubera, Lakshmi, Shiva, yakshas, and yakshinis, reflecting a broader local pantheon.

41. Which of these dynasties is INCORRECTLY described regarding its geographical influence or origin?
(A) Indo-Greeks - Successors to Alexander's rule in Northwest India.
(B) Shakas - Invaders who ruled before the Satavahanas rose.
(C) Cheras - Powerful kingdom in the southern tip of India.
(D) Shungas - Emerged from within the subcontinent after Mauryas.

Ans :

(B) Shakas - Invaders who ruled before the Satavahanas rose.
The Shakas (Indo-Scythians) rose to power after the Indo-Greeks and were contemporaries with or followed by the early Satavahanas in different regions, rather than ruling before the Satavahanas' rise as a major power.

42. Assertion (A) : The Kushana rulers controlled significant parts of the Silk Route.
Reason (R) : This control over trade routes contributed significantly to the economic prosperity of the Kushana empire.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Kushana empire's strategic control over crucial sections of the Silk Route allowed them to benefit immensely from the lucrative trade passing between China, Central Asia, India, and the Roman world, fostering their economic strength.

43. Consider the following about art and architecture of this period :
1. The Bharhut Stupa showcases early examples of Buddhist narrative art.
2. The Mathura school of art primarily used grey-black schist stone.
3. The Gandhara art style shows strong indigenous Indian artistic traditions only.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
The Bharhut Stupa's railings have excellent examples of early Buddhist narrative art. The Mathura school used red sandstone, while Gandhara art used grey-black schist and showed significant Greco-Roman influence alongside Indian themes.

44. The famous Tamil epic Silappadikaram narrates the tragic story of Kannagi and her husband _____.
(A) Karikalan
(B) Senguttuvan
(C) Kovalan
(D) Nedunjeliyan

Ans :

(C) Kovalan
Silappadikaram, one of the great Tamil epics, revolves around the story of Kannagi and her merchant husband, Kovalan, detailing their lives, Kovalan's affair, his unjust execution, and Kannagi's ultimate quest for justice.

45. What was a 'yaksha' in ancient Indian art and belief systems?
(A) A powerful emperor who ruled over many lands
(B) A specific type of Buddhist monastic code
(C) A minor deity or nature spirit often shown
(D) An architectural style for temple construction

Ans :

(C) A minor deity or nature spirit often shown
Yakshas (male) and Yakshis (female) were minor deities or nature spirits, often associated with wealth, fertility, and the protection of natural sites like trees and water bodies. They are frequently depicted in ancient Indian sculpture.

46. Which dynasty succeeded the Mauryas in Magadha and parts of northern India, founded by Pushyamitra?
(A) The Gupta Dynasty
(B) The Shunga Dynasty
(C) The Kanva Dynasty
(D) The Kushana Dynasty

Ans :

(B) The Shunga Dynasty
Following the assassination of the last Mauryan emperor, his commander-in-chief, Pushyamitra Shunga, established the Shunga dynasty, which ruled over Magadha and significant portions of northern and central India for over a century.

47. The patronage of multiple schools of thought (like Vedic, Buddhist, Jain) by rulers like the Satavahanas and Kharavela indicates what about their governance?
(A) A policy of religious persecution and forced
(B) An attempt to merge all faiths into one
(C) A general approach of tolerance and inclusivity
(D) A complete lack of interest in religious

Ans :

(C) A general approach of tolerance and inclusivity
When rulers supported and patronized various religious traditions simultaneously, it generally pointed towards a policy of religious tolerance and inclusivity, allowing different faiths and philosophical schools to flourish within their kingdoms.

48. How did the artistic style of the Mathura school differ from the Gandhara school in its depiction of figures?
(A) Mathura figures were leaner; Gandhara figures fuller

NODIA

(B) Mathura figures were more Indian; Gandhara more Greek
(C) Mathura used metal; Gandhara used only clay
(D) Mathura showed no emotion; Gandhara showed it

Ans :

(B) Mathura figures were more Indian; Gandhara more Greek
The Mathura school developed a distinct, indigenous Indian style, often depicting fuller figures with smooth modeling. The Gandhara school, while depicting Indian subjects, was heavily influenced by Greco-Roman aesthetics, resulting in more Hellenistic-looking figures.

49. Which of these historical figures is correctly matched with their primary region of influence or rule?
(A) Kanishka - Southern India (Chola kingdom)
(B) Karikala - Northwestern India (Gandhara region)
(C) Kharavela - Kalinga (Eastern India, Odisha)
(D) Pushyamitra Shunga - Deccan Plateau (Satavahana)

Ans :

(C) Kharavela - Kalinga (Eastern India, Odisha)
King Kharavela was a powerful ruler of the Chedi dynasty in Kalinga, which corresponds to modern-day Odisha in eastern India. Kanishka ruled the Kushan empire in the north, Karikala was a Chola king, and Pushyamitra Shunga ruled in northern/central India.

50. A trader from Rome arrives in a South Indian port during the 1st century CE, seeking to buy pearls, spices, and fine textiles. Which ancient Tamil kingdoms would this trader most likely be interacting with for these goods at that time?
(A) The Mauryas and the Guptas mainly
(B) The Shungas and the Kanvas only
(C) The Cholas, Cheras, or Pandyas
(D) The Kushanas and the Shakas

Ans :

(C) The Cholas, Cheras, or Pandyas
The Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas were the prominent Tamil kingdoms in South India during this period. They had flourishing maritime trade with the Roman Empire, exporting goods like pearls, spices, and textiles.

51. Which of the following was NOT a major characteristic of the "Age of Reorganisation" in post-Mauryan India?
(A) The emergence of many new smaller kingdoms
(B) A period of complete political unity under one
(C) Invasions from groups outside the subcontinent
(D) Significant developments in art and literature

Ans :

(B) A period of complete political unity under one
The "Age of Reorganisation" was marked by the fragmentation of the Mauryan empire and the rise of multiple competing kingdoms and foreign invasions. It was a period of political flux, not complete unity under a single empire.

52. The Heliodorus pillar inscription, an important archaeological find, is located near which present-day city in Madhya Pradesh?
(A) Sanchi
(B) Vidisha
(C) Ujjain
(D) Bharhut

Ans :

(B) Vidisha
The Heliodorus pillar, famous for its inscription by an Indo-Greek ambassador dedicated to Vasudeva, stands near the ancient city of Vidisha (Besnagar) in Madhya Pradesh, providing crucial evidence of Indo-Greek cultural interaction.

53. What does "Sangam" refer to in the context of ancient South Indian literature and history?
(A) A type of fortified royal palace
(B) An assembly or academy of poets, scholars
(C) A specific style of temple architecture
(D) A dynasty of kings who ruled in south

Ans :

(B) An assembly or academy of poets, scholars
"Sangam" in this context refers to ancient assemblies or academies of Tamil poets and scholars, traditionally believed to have flourished in Madurai under the patronage of the Pandya kings, producing a rich body of literature.

54. How did the Indo-Greeks initially establish their presence in northwestern India after Alexander's campaign?
(A) They were invited by local rulers to form
(B) They migrated peacefully as traders and

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) Satraps left by Alexander established domains
(D) They were remnants of the earlier Mauryan

Ans :

(C) Satraps left by Alexander established domains
After Alexander the Great retreated from India, the Greek governors (satraps) he left behind in the conquered northwestern territories gradually established their own independent or semi-independent kingdoms, which came to be known as Indo-Greek kingdoms.

55. The Hathigumpha inscription at Udayagiri caves details the year-by-year accomplishments of King _____ of Kalinga.
(A) Ashoka
(B) Kanishka
(C) Kharavela
(D) Karikala

Ans :

(C) Kharavela
The Hathigumpha (Elephant Cave) inscription is a detailed prasasti (eulogy) that chronicles the military victories, public works, and religious patronage of King Kharavela, a powerful ruler of the Chedi dynasty of Kalinga.

56. The discovery of Roman coins in South Indian archaeological sites primarily indicates what about the region during that period?
(A) Roman military conquest of South India
(B) Extensive maritime trade relations with Rome
(C) Migration of Roman artisans to South India
(D) Adoption of Roman currency as official one

Ans :

(B) Extensive maritime trade relations with Rome
The presence of Roman coins in South India is strong evidence of active and substantial maritime trade between the Tamil kingdoms (Cholas, Cheras, Pandyas) and the Roman Empire, with Indian goods being exchanged for Roman currency.

57. An art historian examines a sculpture depicting a Bodhisattva. The figure has a blend of Indian features and distinct Greco-Roman elements in its hairstyle, robe drapery, and realistic portrayal. The material is grey-black schist. This artwork most likely originated from the :
(A) Mauryan workshops at Pataliputra city
(B) Satavahana cave sites in Deccan
(C) Gandhara school of art region
(D) Chola bronze casting studios

Ans :

(C) Gandhara school of art region
The combination of Buddhist themes with Greco-Roman artistic influences (realistic anatomy, drapery) and the use of grey-black schist stone are defining characteristics of the Gandhara school of art, which flourished in northwestern India.

58. Which ancient Indian dynasty is INCORRECTLY paired with its significant contribution or characteristic?
(A) Shungas - Patronage of Bharhut Stupa art
(B) Satavahanas - Extensive use of Brahmi numerals
(C) Chedis (Kharavela) - Strict adherence to Buddhism
(D) Kushanas - Fusion of Indian and Greek art styles

Ans :

(C) Chedis (Kharavela) - Strict adherence to Buddhism
King Kharavela of the Chedi dynasty was a devout follower of Jainism, not Buddhism, although his Hathigumpha inscription states he respected all sects. The other pairings correctly reflect contributions or characteristics.

59. Assertion (A) : The Mathura school of art developed a distinct Indian style, using red sandstone.
Reason (R) : The Mathura art style was completely isolated and showed no influence from other contemporary Indian artistic traditions.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Mathura school is known for its indigenous Indian style and use of red sandstone. However, like any art form, it would have interacted with and been influenced by other contemporary artistic trends within India, rather than being completely isolated.

NODIA

60. Consider the following about foreign groups in post-Mauryan India :
1. The Indo-Greeks issued coins often depicting their rulers.
2. The Shakas (Indo-Scythians) were the first to invade India after Mauryas.
3. The Kushanas controlled parts of the Silk Route, enhancing trade.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for that?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 3 only
Indo-Greek coins are a primary source for their history and often show rulers. The Kushanas did control parts of the Silk Route. The Indo-Greeks were among the first significant foreign groups to establish kingdoms after Mauryan decline, followed by Shakas.

61. The term "Silk Route" refers to a network of ancient trade routes that primarily connected China with the _____ world.
(A) Australian
(B) South American
(C) Mediterranean
(D) Antarctic

Ans :

(C) Mediterranean
The Silk Route was an extensive network of trade routes that connected East Asia, particularly China, with the Mediterranean world, passing through Central Asia, Persia, and India, facilitating the exchange of goods like silk, spices, and ideas.

62. What is meant by a "headless statue," such as the famous one of King Kanishka?
(A) A statue that was intentionally made without head
(B) A statue whose head has been broken off
(C) A symbolic representation of a ruler's power
(D) A statue buried underground up to its neck

Ans :

(B) A statue whose head has been broken off
A "headless statue" refers to a sculpture from which the head is missing, usually due to damage or breakage over time. The famous statue of Kanishka found at Mathura is an example, with only the body remaining.

63. The Sangam literary works are primarily associated with which ancient language of South India?
(A) Sanskrit
(B) Prakrit
(C) Pali language
(D) Tamil language

Ans :

(D) Tamil language
Sangam literature represents the earliest corpus of extant literature in the Tamil language. These classical works, comprising poems and epics, are foundational to Tamil literary tradition and South Indian history.

64. The cultural confluence during the "Age of Reorganisation," involving both indigenous dynasties and foreign invaders, led to what significant outcome in art and culture?
(A) The complete disappearance of all Indian traditions
(B) The creation of new styles with blended influences
(C) The strict separation of foreign and local art
(D) A decline in all forms of artistic creation

Ans :

(B) The creation of new styles with blended influences
This period of interaction between indigenous Indian cultures and foreign groups like the Indo-Greeks and Kushanas resulted in a rich cultural confluence. This led to the development of new artistic styles (like Gandhara art) that blended diverse influences.

65. How did the Shunga dynasty's religious patronage primarily differ from that of the later Kushana king Kanishka, though both supported multiple faiths?
(A) Shungas favored Buddhism; Kanishka favored Vedic only
(B) Shungas revived Vedic; Kanishka patronized Buddhism
(C) Shungas supported Jainism; Kanishka Christianity
(D) Both exclusively patronized newly formed sects

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(B) Shungas revived Vedic; Kanishka patronized Buddhism
The Shungas are noted for a revival of Vedic rituals and patronage of Sanskrit. While Kushana rulers like Kanishka were also tolerant and depicted various deities, Kanishka is particularly renowned for his strong patronage of Mahayana Buddhism.

66. Which ancient South Indian kingdom is correctly paired with its traditional royal emblem often seen on its coins or artifacts?
(A) Cholas - Bow and Arrow insignia
(B) Cheras - Tiger or Lion mark
(C) Pandyas - Fish symbol used
(D) Satavahanas - Elephant

Ans :

(C) Pandyas - Fish symbol used
The Pandyas of ancient South India typically used the fish (often a pair of fish) as their royal emblem, which is frequently found on their coins and inscriptions. Cheras had the bow and arrow, Cholas the tiger.

67. A team of archaeologists excavates an ancient port city in South India and finds Roman pottery, amphorae, and coins alongside local artifacts dating to the early centuries CE. This discovery strongly suggests that the city was involved in :
(A) Isolating itself from all external influences
(B) Primarily overland trade with Northern India
(C) Active maritime trade with Roman Empire
(D) Conflicts with invading Roman naval forces

Ans :

(C) Active maritime trade with Roman Empire
The presence of Roman artifacts like pottery and coins in a South Indian port city from this period is compelling evidence of significant maritime trade relations between South India and the Roman Empire.

68. Which of these was NOT a prominent dynasty ruling parts of India during the "Age of Reorganisation" (approx. 2nd century BCE - 3rd century CE)?
(A) The Satavahanas
(B) The Kushanas
(C) The Mauryas
(D) The Indo-Greeks

Ans :

(C) The Mauryas
The "Age of Reorganisation" specifically refers to the period after the decline of the Maurya Empire. The Satavahanas, Kushanas, and Indo-Greeks were among the prominent dynasties that rose to power during this subsequent era.

69. The Grand Anicut (Kallanai Dam) on the Kaveri River is one of the oldest water-regulation structures in the world still in use. Its construction is attributed to which ancient dynasty?
(A) The Pandya Dynasty
(B) The Chera Dynasty
(C) The Chola Dynasty
(D) The Pallava Dynasty

Ans :

(C) The Chola Dynasty
The construction of the Grand Anicut, an engineering marvel of ancient India, is traditionally attributed to the early Chola king Karikala, dating back to around the 2nd century CE, showcasing advanced irrigation techniques.

70. What does the term 'assimilation' mean in the context of cultural interaction between different groups?
(A) The complete rejection of one culture by other
(B) The process by which one group absorbs another
(C) The peaceful coexistence without any real mixing
(D) The deliberate destruction of cultural heritage

Ans :

(B) The process by which one group absorbs another
Cultural assimilation refers to the process whereby a minority group or culture comes to resemble a dominant group or assume the values, behaviors, and beliefs of another group, often involving a blending of traditions.

71. How did the geographical focus of the Shunga empire differ from that of the Chera kingdom?
(A) Shungas were north/central; Cheras were in south
(B) Shungas were far south; Cheras were northwest
(C) Both were primarily located in eastern India
(D) Shungas were west coast; Cheras east coast

Ans :

(A) Shungas were north/central; Cheras were in south

NODIA

The Shunga empire primarily controlled parts of northern and central India after the Mauryas. The Chera kingdom, on the other hand, was a prominent power in the southern part of the subcontinent, mainly in present-day Kerala and parts of Tamil Nadu.

72. The period of the Shungas saw the flourishing of Sanskrit literature, including the compilation of the Yoga Sutras by _____.
(A) Kalidasa
(B) Ashvaghosha
(C) Patanjali
(D) Bhasa

Ans :

(C) Patanjali
Patanjali, the great sage and grammarian, is credited with compiling the Yoga Sutras, a foundational text of Yoga philosophy, during the Shunga period, which also witnessed a broader resurgence in Sanskrit literature.

73. The presence of multiple dynasties ruling different parts of the Indian subcontinent simultaneously during the "Age of Reorganisation" indicates what about the overall political landscape?
(A) A unified empire under a single supreme
(B) A fragmented political scene with regional
(C) The absence of any organized state system
(D) Complete domination by foreign invading powers

Ans :

(B) A fragmented political scene with regional
The simultaneous existence of several dynasties like the Shungas, Satavahanas, Kushanas, and southern kingdoms points to a politically fragmented subcontinent where various regional powers coexisted, competed, and sometimes formed alliances.

74. A museum displays a gold coin from ancient India. One side shows a king in foreign attire, and the other shows a Hindu deity like Shiva with his bull Nandi. Such a coin is characteristic of rulers who :
(A) Strictly prohibited the practice of local religion
(B) Adopted or showed respect for Indian deities
(C) Used coinage only for international trade deals
(D) Were isolated from all Indian cultural ways

Ans :

(B) Adopted or showed respect for Indian deities
Invading rulers or foreign dynasties, like the Kushanas, often depicted Indian deities on their coinage alongside their own portraits or symbols. This indicated a degree of cultural assimilation and respect for local religious beliefs.

75. Which of these ancient Indian literary works is INCORRECTLY paired with its general theme or content?
(A) Sangam Poetry - Love, heroism, and social values
(B) Silappadikaram - Tragic story focusing on justice
(C) Yoga Sutras - Techniques of state administration
(D) Ashtadhyayi - Rules of Sanskrit grammar work

Ans :

(C) Yoga Sutras - Techniques of state administration
Patanjali's Yoga Sutras are a classical text on the philosophy and practice of Yoga, focusing on meditation, ethics, and spiritual discipline, not state administration. The other pairings are generally correct for those.

76. Assertion (A) : The Mathura School of Art primarily used grey-black schist stone for its sculptures and showed strong Greco-Roman influence.
Reason (R) : The Gandhara School of Art, in contrast, used red sandstone and developed a more distinct indigenous Indian artistic style.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) Both A and R are false

Ans :

(D) Both A and R are false
Both statements are incorrect. The Mathura school used red sandstone and had a distinct Indian style. The Gandhara school used grey-black schist and showed Greco-Roman influence. The descriptions are swapped here.

77. Consider the following about ancient South Indian kingdoms :
1. The Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas were known as the "Muvendar."
2. Sangam literature is considered the oldest available literature in Tamil.

NODIA

3. The Cheras exclusively traded with Central Asian empires over land.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas are indeed referred to as the "Muvendar" (Three Crowned Kings). Sangam literature is the earliest extant Tamil literature. The Cheras were known for maritime trade, especially with Rome.

78. The Indo-Greek ambassador Heliodorus erected a famous pillar near Vidisha, dedicating it to the deity _____, whom he praised as 'god of gods'.
(A) Shiva
(B) Buddha
(C) Vasudeva
(D) Indra

Ans :

(C) Vasudeva
The Heliodorus pillar inscription explicitly states that it was erected by Heliodorus, an ambassador of an Indo-Greek king, in honor of Vasudeva (a form of Vishnu/Krishna), whom he revered as the "god of gods" (devadeva).

79. What does "Shaka Samvat" refer to?
(A) A style of Shaka period temple architecture
(B) A calendar era initiated during Shaka rule
(C) A specific type of coin issued by Shakas
(D) A philosophical text written by Shaka one

Ans :

(B) A calendar era initiated during Shaka rule
The Shaka Samvat (Shaka Era) is a historical calendar era that is believed to have been initiated during the rule of the Shakas (Indo-Scythians) in India. It is still used as the Indian National Calendar.

80. The flourishing of Sanskrit literature, including the final compilation of epics like the Mahabharata and Ramayana, during this "Age of Reorganisation" suggests what about the cultural environment?
(A) A complete decline in all forms of learning
(B) A period of significant literary and cultural activity
(C) The exclusive use of Prakrit languages
(D) A suppression of all epic storytelling forms

Ans :

(B) A period of significant literary and cultural activity
The compilation and flourishing of major Sanskrit literary works, including the great epics, indicates a vibrant cultural and intellectual environment during this period, with continued development and refinement of classical Indian traditions for all.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following dynasties with their key characteristics or rulers :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Shungas	A.	Ruled Deccan; coins depicted ships, indicating maritime trade
2.	Satavahanas	B.	Founded by Pushyamitra; revived Vedic rituals; Bharhut Stupa art
3.	Chedis (Kalinga)	C.	Powerful ruler Kanishka; Gandhara and Mathura schools of art
4.	Kushanas	D.	King Kharavela; Hathigumpha inscription; Udayagiri-Khandagiri caves

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Shungas, founded by Pushyamitra, revived Vedic rituals and are known for Bharhut Stupa art. Satavahanas ruled the Deccan, and their ship-depicting coins suggest maritime trade. Chedis of Kalinga, under Kharavela, are famed for the Hathigumpha inscription. Kushanas, with King Kanishka, fostered Gandhara and Mathura art.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

82. Match the following terms or figures with their associated Sangam Age kingdoms :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Cholas	A.	Ruled western Tamil Nadu/Kerala; extensive Roman trade
2.	Cheras	B.	King Karikala; Kallanai (Grand Anicut) for irrigation
3.	Pandyas	C.	Famous epic 'Silappadikaram' ('The Tale of the Anklet') is set here
4.	Silappadikaram	D.	Ruled from Madurai; known for pearls and naval power

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Cholas, under Karikala, built the Kallanai. Cheras engaged in extensive Roman trade from the western coast. Pandyas, ruling from Madurai, were known for pearls. Silappadikaram is an epic set across Chola, Pandya, and Chera kingdoms.

83. Match the invading groups with their characteristics during the Age of Reorganisation :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Indo-Greeks	A.	Ruled from 2nd century BCE to 5th century CE; Shaka Samvat calendar
2.	Shakas	B.	Successors to Alexander's satraps; blend of Greek and Indian culture
3.	Kushanas	C.	King Kanishka; controlled parts of Silk Route; Gandhara/ Mathura art
4.	Heliodorus Pillar	D.	Example of Indo-Greek cultural interaction, praises Vasudeva

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Indo-Greeks were successors to Alexander's governors, blending cultures. Shakas ruled after Indo-Greeks, associated with the Shaka Samvat. Kushanas, under Kanishka, controlled the Silk Route. The Heliodorus Pillar exemplifies Indo-Greek cultural synthesis.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

NODIA

84. Match the artistic styles or sites with their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Bharhut Stupa	A.	Blend of Greco-Roman and Indian features; grey-black schist stone
2.	Gandhara Art	B.	Shunga period art; railings depict Jataka tales
3.	Mathura Art	C.	Satavahana period rock-cut caves for Buddhist monks near Lonavala
4.	Karla Caves	D.	Distinct Indian style; red sandstone; depictions of various deities

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Bharhut Stupa features Shunga art with Jataka tales. Gandhara art shows Greco-Roman influence. Mathura art is a distinct Indian style using red sandstone. Karla Caves are Satavahana-era rock-cut Buddhist caves.

85. Match the following terms related to ancient Indian society and rituals :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Ashvamedha Yajna	A.	Oldest literature of South India, assembly of poets
2.	Matrimonial Alliance	B.	Vedic ritual by rulers to declare supremacy, involving a horse
3.	Sangam Literature	C.	System where rulers took mother's name (e.g., Gautamiputra Satakarni)
4.	Matronymics (Satavahana)	D.	Alliance arranged through marriage between royal families

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Ashvamedha Yajna was a Vedic horse sacrifice ritual. Matrimonial alliances were political marriages. Sangam literature is ancient Tamil poetry. Satavahanas sometimes used matronymics, naming sons after mothers.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. Who is generally accepted as the last Maurya emperor's assassin and founder of the Shunga dynasty?

Ans :

Pushyamitra Shunga.

87. Around what year BCE did the Maurya empire break up?

Ans :

Around 185 BCE.

88. What term do some scholars use for the post-Maurya period characterized by new competing kingdoms?

Ans :

Age of reorganisation.

89. What is an alliance arranged through marriage between royal families called?

Ans :

Matrimonial alliance.

90. Which Vedic ritual, involving a horse, did Pushyamitra Shunga perform to assert power?

Ans :

Ashvamedha yajna.

91. Which ancient text on Yoga was compiled by Patanjali during the Shunga period?

Ans :

Yoga Sutras.

92. Name the stupa in Madhya Pradesh known for its railings and reliefs added by the Shungas.

Ans :

Bharhut Stupa.

93. Which powerful dynasty, sometimes called 'Andhras', ruled large parts of the Deccan after the Mauryas?

Ans :

Satavahanas.

94. Name one famous capital city of the Satavahanas.

Ans :

Amravati/Pratishthana (Paithan) (any one).

95. What objects often depicted ships, suggesting significant Satavahana maritime trade?

Ans :

Coins.

96. Name the Satavahana king mentioned who was named after his mother, Gautami Balashri.

Ans :

Gautamiputra Satakarni.

97. In which caves near Pune were inscriptions found detailing a Satavahana queen's rituals and donations?

Ans :

Naneghat Caves.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

98. Which dynasty rose to prominence in Kalinga after the Mauryas?

Ans :

Chedi dynasty.

99. Name the main Chedi ruler known from the Hathigumpha inscription.

Ans :

Kharavela.

100. Near which modern city are the Udayagiri-Khandagiri caves located?

Ans :

Bhubaneswar.

101. What collective name is given to the oldest Tamil literature from this era?

Ans :

Sangam literature.

102. What does the word 'sangam' (derived from sangha) mean in this context?

Ans :

Association or assembly (of poets).

103. Name the three 'crowned kings' or major kingdoms of the Sangam Age in the South.

Ans :

Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas.

104. Which Chola king is credited with building the Kallanai (Grand Anicut)?

Ans :

Karikala.

105. What other name were the Cheras known by?

Ans :

Keralaputra ('sons of Kerala').

106. What group established kingdoms in Northwest India after Alexander's satraps?

Ans :

Indo-Greeks.

107. Which group, also called Indo-Scythians, invaded after the Indo-Greeks?

Ans :

Shakas.

108. Which calendar system, adopted as India's National Calendar, originated during the Shaka period?

Ans :

Shaka Samvat.

109. Which dynasty, originally from Central Asia, established a large empire including North India around the 2nd century CE?

Ans :

Kushanas.

NODIA

110. Name the most powerful Kushana ruler, known from a famous headless statue.

Ans :

Kanishka.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Why is the period following the Maurya empire sometimes called the 'Age of Reorganisation'?

Ans :

After the large, centralized Maurya empire collapsed, the subcontinent saw existing regions reorganised into numerous smaller, competing kingdoms, alongside invasions, leading to a new political map.

112. Describe the purpose and process of the ashvamedha yajna ritual.

Ans :

It was a Vedic ritual for rulers to declare supremacy. A special horse wandered freely; territories it crossed unchallenged became part of the king's empire, while challenging it led to battle.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

113. What evidence shows Shunga patronage of art, despite the revival of Vedic practices?

Ans :

The Shungas added beautifully carved railings and reliefs depicting Buddhist themes (like Jataka tales) to the existing Bharhut Stupa, showcasing their contribution to Buddhist art.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the reasons why the period after the Mauryan decline (c. 185 BCE - 300 CE) is termed the 'Age of Reorganisation'.

Ans :

The term reflects profound changes. The unified Maurya empire fragmented, leading to political reorganisation with new regional kingdoms (Shungas, Satavahanas, Chedis, Southern kingdoms) emerging and competing. Simultaneously, foreign invasions (Indo-Greeks, Shakas, Kushanas) led to further political shifts and significant cultural reorganisation through assimilation and interaction.

137. Compare the political strategies used by rulers like Pushyamitra Shunga and Kharavela to assert their authority.

Ans :

Pushyamitra Shunga used the traditional Vedic ritual, the ashvamedha yajna, signifying military dominance and royal power legitimised through ancient rites. Kharavela, while also highlighting military victories in his inscription, emphasized his adherence to Jain principles and his role as a benevolent ruler respecting all sects, asserting authority through both might and righteousness/ tolerance.

138. "The Satavahana period demonstrates a balance between indigenous traditions and external connections." Analyse this statement using evidence related to trade and culture.

Ans :

Satavahanas promoted indigenous culture (Vedic rituals, Prakrit language, local art styles) and unique social customs (matronymics). Simultaneously, they engaged extensively in external trade, reaching the Roman Empire, indicated by coins depicting ships and Roman goods found in their territory. This shows a blend of internal development and outward-looking engagement.

139. Evaluate the significance of the Sangam Age for the history and culture of South India.

Ans :

The Sangam Age was foundational for South Indian culture. Its literature (oldest Tamil works) provides invaluable insights into the society, values, and politics of the Chola, Chera, and Pandya kingdoms. It established Tamil as a major literary language and documented a distinct cultural identity, influencing regional heritage profoundly.

140. Analyse the process of cultural assimilation as seen during the periods of Indo-Greek and Kushana rule in Northwest India.

Ans :

Invading groups (Indo-Greeks, Kushanas) brought their own traditions but were significantly influenced by local Indian culture. This resulted in syncretism : rulers adopted Indian religions (Vaishnavism, Buddhism, Shaivism) depicted on coins; art styles fused Greco-Roman and Indian elements (Gandhara); even foreign ambassadors adopted local faiths (Heliodorus). Invaders gradually integrated into the Indian cultural fabric.

141. Explain the development and characteristics of the Gandhara and Mathura schools of art. What do they reveal about the cultural dynamics of the time?

Ans :

Gandhara art (NW) blended Indian themes with Greco-Roman styles (realism, drapery), using grey schist. Mathura art (North India) used red sandstone, developing a more indigenous Indian aesthetic (fuller figures, local deities). Their coexistence and distinct styles reveal intense cultural interaction alongside strong local artistic traditions during the Kushana period.

142. How did control over sections of the Silk Route benefit the Kushana Empire economically and culturally?

Ans :

Economically, controlling Silk Route segments allowed Kushanas to tax the lucrative trade between East (China) and West (Rome), generating significant revenue. Culturally, it placed them at a crossroads, facilitating the exchange of goods, ideas, religions (like Buddhism spreading to Central Asia/China), and artistic styles, enriching their diverse empire.

143. "Despite political fragmentation, the 'Age of Reorganisation' was a period of significant cultural and literary flourishing." Analyse this claim with examples.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

125. What titles did Kushana king Kanishka use, as seen on his statue's inscription?

Ans :

The inscription reads 'maharaja rajadhiraja devaputra kanishka', meaning 'The great king, king of kings, son of God, Kanishka', indicating lofty claims to power and divine connection.

126. How do Kanishka's coins reflect religious tolerance or patronage?

Ans :

His coins depicted not only the emperor but also deities from different traditions, notably Buddha (with Greek script label) and the Hindu god Shiva with Nandi, suggesting patronage or acknowledgement of multiple faiths.

127. What was the Silk Route, and why was controlling parts of it important for the Kushanas?

Ans :

The Silk Route was a network of ancient trade routes connecting China with the West (Mediterranean) via Central Asia. Controlling sections allowed the Kushanas to tax lucrative trade, boosting their economy and influence.

128. Briefly describe the key difference between the Gandhara and Mathura schools of art.

Ans :

The Gandhara school (NW India), using grey schist, showed strong Greco-Roman influence (realistic anatomy, flowing robes). The Mathura school (Uttar Pradesh), using red sandstone, reflected a more distinct Indian style (fuller figures, Indian deities).

129. What types of deities were commonly depicted by the Mathura school of art?

Ans :

The Mathura school depicted a wide range of Indian deities, including figures like Kubera (wealth god), Lakshmi, Shiva, Buddha, as well as yakshas and yakshinis (nature spirits).

130. How did art during the Kushana period lay groundwork for later temple architecture?

Ans :

This era saw increased development of religious art, including representations of deities that looked more human. This focus on depicting gods and creating dedicated religious imagery paved the way for later, more elaborate temple structures.

131. What major Sanskrit epics were likely composed during this 'Age of Reorganisation'?

Ans :

This period saw the flourishing of Sanskrit literature, notably including the composition (or compilation into near-final form) of the great epics, the Mahabharata and the Ramayana.

132. Explain the 'rejuvenescence'.

Ans :

The period saw political fragmentation (Maurya decline) but also reorganization into new kingdoms, assimilation of invaders, flourishing trade, and vibrant cultural creation (art, literature), showing India's ability to readjust and regenerate through transformations.

133. What does the inscription made by the goldsmith Kanhadasa on the Pitalkhora yaksha sculpture suggest?

Ans :

It suggests that artisans during the Satavahana period might have been skilled in multiple crafts, as a goldsmith also crafted a stone sculpture, indicating versatility in professions.

134. What evidence suggests the Satavahana queen who performed Vedic rituals held significant power?

Ans :

The Naneghat inscriptions detail her performance of major Vedic rituals (like ashvamedha, usually done by kings) and extensive donations, indicating she wielded considerable religious and political authority as a widow queen.

135. Why was maintaining control over border areas important for kingdoms during this period?

Ans :

Border areas were constantly contested. Controlling them was crucial for defending the kingdom from attacks by neighbouring rivals or foreign invaders, ensuring the core territory remained secure.

NODIA

surgeries and use herbal remedies for treatment. Our calendar is accurate, and scholars have even explained the concept of zero in mathematics!
Life is not without its challenges, but there is a sense of pride and stability across the empire. Culture, knowledge, and prosperity surround us, and I feel lucky to be part of this golden age.
With warm regards,
Vishnugupta
Pataliputra, Gupta Empire

2. Which Gupta ruler was also known as the 'Vikramaditya'?

Ans :

Chandragupta II was also known as 'Vikramaditya'.

3. "Periods of peace support the development of various aspects of sociocultural life, literature, and the development of science and technology.' Examine this statement in the light of the Gupta empire.

Ans :

The Gupta Empire largely experienced prolonged peace and stability, which allowed for exceptional advancements. Sanskrit literature flourished with writers like Kalidasa. Science and mathematics saw significant contributions from Aryabhata and Varahamihira. Art, architecture (Ajanta, Sarnath), and metallurgy (Iron Pillar) also thrived, supporting the statement.

4. Recreate a scene from a Gupta ruler's court. Write a short script, assign roles like the king, ministers, and scholars, and enact a role play to bring the Gupta era to life!

Ans :

This is a role-play script activity.
Scene : Court of Chandragupta II.
Characters : King Vikramaditya, Minister, Scholar Aryabhata, Poet Kalidasa.
Vikramaditya : "Esteemed members, report on the empire's progress."
Minister : "My King, trade prospers, and the new roads ease commerce. The treasury is robust."
Aryabhata : "Maharajadhiraja, my calculations confirm the Earth rotates, explaining day and night."
Kalidasa : "Your Majesty, my new work, Meghadutam, describing the land's beauty, is complete."
Vikramaditya : "Excellent! Such knowledge and artistry bring glory to our empire."

5. Match the two columns :

	Column A		Column B
(1)	Kanchipuram	(a)	Known for vibrant cave paintings that depict the Jataka tales.
(2)	Ujjayini	(b)	Famous for rock-cut caves featuring intricate carvings of Hindu deities, especially Vishnu.
(3)	Udayagiri	(c)	Capital of the Guptas.
(4)	Ajanta	(d)	Known as 'a city of a thousand temples'.
(5)	Pataliputra	(e)	A prominent centre of learning in ancient India.

Ans :

(1) Kanchipuram --- (d) Known as 'a city of a thousand temples'
(2) Ujjayini --- (e) A prominent centre of learning in ancient India
(3) Udayagiri --- (b) Famous for rock-cut caves featuring intricate carvings of Hindu deities, especially Vishnu
(4) Ajanta --- (a) Known for vibrant cave paintings that depict the Jataka tales
(5) Pataliputra --- (c) Capital of the Guptas

6. Who were the Pallavas and where did they rule?

Ans :

The Pallavas were a powerful dynasty that emerged in the south, possibly after the Satavahanas declined. They ruled parts of present-day Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Telangana, and Andhra Pradesh, with their capital at Kanchipuram.

7. Organise an exploration trip with your teachers to a nearby historical site, museum, or heritage building. After the trip, write a detailed report describing your experience. Include key observations about the site's historical significance, the architecture, artefacts, and any interesting facts you learned during the visit. Reflect on how the trip enhanced your understanding of history

Ans :

Our class went on a trip to the State Museum with our teachers to learn more about the Gupta

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

The claim is valid. While politically fragmented, this era saw major cultural developments : the rise of Sanskrit literature (Patanjali's Yoga Sutras, epics like Mahabharata/Ramayana), the flourishing of Tamil Sangam literature, unique regional art styles (Shunga, Satavahana), and the fusion styles of Gandhara and Mathura art under Kushana patronage.

144. Analyse the importance of inscriptions (like Hathigumpha, Naneghat, Ashokan edicts revisited) and coins as historical sources for this period.

Ans :

Inscriptions provide direct accounts of rulers' achievements, policies, religious beliefs, and administrative actions (Kharavela, Satavahana queen, Ashoka). Coins reveal rulers' names, titles, timelines, economic conditions (metal used), trade links (find spots), religious affiliations (deities depicted), and artistic styles, offering crucial data where literary sources are scarce.

145. Based on the examples of Satavahana queens and the mention of women fighters against Alexander, evaluate the possible role and status of women during this period.

Ans :

Evidence suggests varied roles. Satavahana queens (Gautami Balashri, Naneghat queen) wielded considerable influence, performing rituals and issuing inscriptions. The mention of women fighting implies participation beyond domestic spheres in some contexts. However, this limited evidence doesn't allow generalizations but hints at potentially significant, though diverse, roles for women.

146. Compare the factors contributing to the decline of the Maurya Empire and the Satavahana Empire. Are there common themes?

Ans :

Both empires faced issues inherent in managing large territories. Weak central control after powerful rulers (Ashoka's successors, later Satavahanas) allowed regional powers to assert independence. Economic factors (strain of administration/campaigns, potentially economic decline for Satavahanas) also played a role. Thus, weakened central authority and economic pressures seem common themes.

147. How does the story of Kannagi in Silappadikaram reflect societal values concerning justice and a ruler's dharma?

Ans :

The story emphasizes the ideal of swift, accurate justice as a ruler's primary duty (dharma). The Pandya king's death from shock upon realizing his unjust execution of Kovalan underscores the immense moral weight of a king's judgement. Kannagi's transformation and destructive power symbolize the severe consequences when justice fails.

148. Analyse the title 'Devaputra' (Son of God) used by Kushana king Kanishka. What might be the purpose of such a title?

Ans :

This title, likely borrowed from Chinese or other imperial traditions, aimed to elevate the king's status above ordinary mortals. It suggests a claim to divine mandate or connection, legitimizing his rule, enhancing his authority over diverse subjects, and placing him on par with great emperors of other cultures.

149. Discuss the interplay between warfare and diplomacy (like matrimonial alliances) as methods used by kingdoms to gain power during this period.

Ans :

Kingdoms used both. Warfare (Pushyamitra vs neighbours, Karikala vs Cheras/Pandyas) aimed at direct conquest and asserting supremacy. Diplomacy, especially matrimonial alliances, was used to build peaceful relationships, secure borders, gain allies against common enemies, and consolidate power without the cost and risk of war. Both were tools in the constant competition.

150. "The 'Age of Reorganisation' set the stage for future empires by fostering regional powers and cultural identities." Evaluate this statement.

Ans :

This period saw the rise of strong regional kingdoms (Satavahanas, Kushanas, Southern kingdoms) with distinct cultural identities (art, literature, trade specializations). While politically fragmented compared to the Mauryas, these developments created powerful regional bases and rich cultural traditions that would influence and be incorporated into subsequent larger empires like the Guptas.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 7

THE GUPTA ERA : AN AGE OF TIRELESS CREATIVITY

SUMMARY

1. A NEW POWER EMERGES

Following the decline of the Kushana Empire by the 3rd century CE, the Gupta dynasty emerged, likely originating near present-day Uttar Pradesh. They established a powerful empire with Pataliputra (modern Patna) as their capital, marking a period renowned for advancements in art, architecture, literature, and science.

1.1 Chandragupta I

He expanded the early empire through strategic alliances, like his marriage to the Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi, and issued significant coinage, laying a strong foundation.

1.2 Samudragupta

The prayaga prashasti inscription by his court poet Harisena details his ambition to unify the earth ('dharani-bandha') through extensive military campaigns. He defeated many rulers, accepting tribute from some and reinstating others, while also supporting arts and trade. His coins depict him playing the veena, and he performed the ashvamedha yajna. The Gupta empire under him expanded significantly across North India.

1.3 Chandragupta II (Vikramaditya)

Identified as the 'Chandra' of the Delhi Iron Pillar inscription, he was a renowned Gupta ruler and a devotee of Vishnu. The rust-resistant Iron Pillar highlights the era's metallurgical skill and celebrates his achievements. His reign is considered a peak period for cultural and scientific flourishing.

2. A TRAVELLER'S ACCOUNT OF INDIAN SOCIETY IN THE GUPTA AGE

The Chinese Buddhist pilgrim Faxian, visiting in the early 5th century CE, provides insights into Gupta society.

1. He described the populace in the Gangetic plains as numerous, happy, and prosperous, requiring little state registration.
2. Royal land farmers paid a portion of grain as tax.
3. Cities were well-maintained, and wealthy Vaishya families established charitable houses offering medicine and care for the poor and sick.
4. However, Faxian also noted the presence of outcastes ('chandalas') who faced harsh treatment and lived outside city limits, indicating social stratification. His account, while valuable, offers one perspective.

3. GLIMPSES OF THE GUPTA EMPIRE

3.1 Governance and administration :

1. Gupta rulers adopted grand titles like maharajadhiraja and chakravartin to assert supreme authority over previous rulers.
2. They used military might, diplomacy, and strategic matrimonial alliances (like Prabhavati Gupta's marriage to a Vakataka prince) to expand and consolidate power. Prabhavati Gupta acted as regent ruler for her sons and maintained strong ties, known also for constructing temples.
3. The empire was administered through a decentralized system, dividing territories into provinces and issuing land grants (recorded on copper plates) to local rulers, priests, and chieftains, ensuring tax collection and efficient governance.

3.2 Thriving trade :

1. Land tax was the main revenue source, supplemented by taxes on trade, crafts, mines, etc., funding administration, the military, infrastructure, and patronage.
2. India engaged in vibrant internal and external trade, exporting textiles, spices, and gemstones to the Mediterranean, Southeast

NODIA

goods (pepper, pearls), storage of goods (warehouses), and state revenue collection (taxes on trade).

(ii) It suggests a prosperous and outward-looking economy heavily reliant on international trade, particularly sea trade with powers like Rome, leveraging valuable local resources.

(iii) While poetry primarily focuses on emotions and cultural values, descriptive passages about settings like port cities can provide valuable incidental details about economic life, trade goods, and infrastructure, complementing archaeological evidence, though poetic license must be considered.

155. King Kanishka issues a gold coin. One side shows the king in ceremonial attire holding a spear. The other side depicts the Buddha standing, with the word 'BODDO' inscribed in Greek letters.

(i) What does the depiction of the king holding a spear signify?

(ii) What does the depiction of Buddha indicate about Kanishka or his empire?

(iii) Evaluate the significance of using Greek script for the word 'Buddha' on this coin found in India/Central Asia.

Ans :

(i) It signifies the king's royal authority and military power, presenting him as a ruler and warrior.

(ii) It indicates Kanishka's patronage, respect, or personal adherence to Buddhism, and reflects the religion's significant presence and importance within the Kushana empire.

(iii) Using Greek script highlights the strong Hellenistic cultural influence still present in the regions ruled by the Kushanas (inherited from Indo-Greeks) and suggests the coin was intended for circulation in areas where Greek script was understood, reflecting the empire's cultural mix.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

114. How do Satavahana coins indicate the importance of trade, particularly maritime trade?

Ans :

Satavahana coins found across wide regions suggest extensive trade. Many coins specifically depict seafaring ships with masts and sails, indicating that maritime trade was a significant part of their economy.

115. Explain the Satavahana tradition of naming rulers like Gautamiputra Satakarni.

Ans :

Some Satavahana kings followed a matronymic system, taking their mother's name first (e.g., 'Gautamiputra' means 'son of Gautami'). This possibly signifies the high status or influence of queens or mothers in their society.

116. What does the Hathigumpha inscription tell us about King Kharavela's rule?

Ans :

It records his accomplishments year-by-year, including military victories and public welfare works. It also highlights his devotion to Jainism while claiming tolerance and respect for all sects and sages.

117. What is Sangam literature, and why is it important for historians?

Ans :

Sangam literature is a collection of ancient Tamil poems from assemblies (Sangams) of poets. It's the oldest South Indian literature, providing valuable insights into the society, culture, values (love, heroism), and kingdoms (Chola, Chera, Pandya) of that era.

118. Briefly narrate the story of Kannagi from the epic Silappadikaram.

Ans :

Kannagi's husband Kovalan wrongly executed in Madurai. She proved his innocence with her matching anklet, causing the shocked Pandya king to die. Kannagi's curse destroyed Madurai by fire before she was deified.

119. What was the significance of the Kallanai (Grand Anicut) built by Karikala Chola?

Ans :

The Kallanai was an ancient, complex water diversion structure on the Kaveri river. It irrigated large parts of the delta, enabling extensive rice cultivation and making the region highly productive agriculturally.

120. What goods did the Chera kingdom primarily export, and with whom did they trade?

Ans :

The Cheras exported valuable goods like spices (pepper), timber, ivory, and pearls. They had extensive trade connections, particularly with the distant Roman Empire and West Asia.

121. How did the Indo-Greek kingdoms emerge in Northwest India?

Ans :

After Alexander the Great retreated, the Greek governors (satraps) he left behind gradually established their own independent kingdoms in the northwestern regions of the subcontinent, becoming known as the Indo-Greeks.

122. Give an example of cultural blending during the Indo-Greek period.

Ans :

The Heliodorus pillar near Vidisha, erected by an Indo-Greek ambassador, praises the Indian deity Vasudeva. Indo-Greek coins sometimes depicted Indian deities alongside Greek ones, showing cultural interaction and adoption of local beliefs.

123. What is the Shaka Samvat, and how does it relate to the Gregorian calendar?

Ans :

The Shaka Samvat is a calendar era developed during the rule of the Shakas (Indo-Scythians). It is India's National Calendar and runs 78 years behind the internationally used Gregorian calendar (mostly).

124. Describe the extent of the Kushana empire at its peak.

Ans :

The Kushana empire was vast, stretching from parts of Central Asia through present-day Afghanistan and Pakistan into large parts of northern India, controlling important trade routes like the Silk Route.

NODIA

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

Asia, and China via networks like the Indian Ocean trade route. Archaeological evidence from places like Socotra Island shows the presence of Indian traders alongside others from Egypt, Arabia, Rome, and Greece, highlighting rich cultural exchanges.

4. NEW IDEAS AND WONDERS : THE CLASSICAL AGE

The peace and stability under Gupta rule fostered significant intellectual and cultural achievements, leading historians to term it India's 'classical age'. Knowledge was consolidated, and Sanskrit literature flourished. Gupta rulers, though primarily Vaishnavas, patronized various traditions, including Buddhist institutions like Nalanda university. Chandragupta II, in particular, supported numerous scholars and artists.

4.1 Aryabhata

A mathematician and astronomer (c. 500 CE) near Pataliputra, whose Aryabhatiya proposed the Earth's axial rotation, explained eclipses, calculated the year's length accurately, and developed important mathematical techniques.

4.2 Varahamihira

A contemporary scholar in Ujjayini, known for his encyclopedic Brihat Samhita covering astronomy, astrology, architecture, weather, and farming.

4.3 Kalidasa

A celebrated Sanskrit poet and playwright, famous for works like Meghadutam, known for its lyrical beauty and detailed descriptions of landscapes.

4.4 Ayurveda

The traditional Indian system of medicine was codified during this time, with foundational texts like Charaka Samhita and Sushruta Samhita finalized, detailing diagnostics, treatments, surgery, diet, and holistic healing.

5. THE QUEST FOR BEAUTY

The Gupta era saw a flourishing of arts and crafts, producing iconic works. Key artistic centers emerged :

1. Sarnath : Known for exquisite Buddha sculptures.
2. Ajanta Caves : Featuring awe-inspiring rock-cut architecture and detailed paintings (supported by Guptas and Vakatakas).
3. Udayagiri Caves : Showcasing detailed carvings, especially of Hindu deities.
4. Gupta art set high aesthetic standards, influencing subsequent art forms. Terracotta sculptures and temple architecture (e.g., Deogarh) also thrived.

6. THE DECLINE OF THE GUPTAS

By the 6th century CE, the empire faced decline due to :

1. External Invasions : Repeated attacks by the Hunas weakened control over north India.
2. Internal Conflicts : The rise of powerful regional rulers fragmented the empire.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Imagine you receive a letter from someone living in the Gupta Empire. The letter starts like this : "Greetings from Pataliputra! Life here is vibrant and full of excitement. Just yesterday, I witnessed..." Complete the letter with a short paragraph (250-300 words) describing life in the Gupta Empire.

Ans :

Greetings from Pataliputra! Life here is vibrant and full of excitement. Just yesterday, I witnessed a grand performance at the local theatre, where musicians, dancers, and poets came together to celebrate the spring festival. The streets were filled with colors, laughter, and the smell of incense and sweet dishes. It is truly a wonderful time to live in the Gupta Empire.

Our empire is flourishing under the wise and just rule of our emperor, who supports learning, art, and science. The city of Pataliputra is bustling with scholars and traders from distant lands. In the great universities like Nalanda, students study astronomy, mathematics, medicine, and even logic. My cousin is learning Sanskrit literature and often recites verses from Kalidasa, our greatest poet and playwright.

Trade is thriving too! Merchants bring silk from China, spices from the south, and even gold and horses from Central Asia. Artisans in the city craft beautiful sculptures and intricate jewelry, while temples and monasteries are being built with fine architecture and carvings. Religion is respected and diverse—though many follow Hinduism and Buddhism, we live peacefully with varied beliefs.

Medicine is also advancing—doctors perform

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. Archaeologists excavate a site identified as a Satavahana trading post on the west coast. They find Roman pottery shards, Satavahana coins depicting ships, local pottery, and remnants of warehouses. Nearby, inscriptions mention donations made by a local traders' guild (shreni) to a Buddhist monastery.

(i) What does the discovery of Roman pottery indicate about this site?

(ii) How do the ship coins and warehouse remnants support the idea of a trading post?

(iii) Evaluate the role of the traders' guild and their relationship with Buddhism, based on the inscription.

Ans :

(i) It indicates direct or indirect trade connections with the Roman Empire, confirming the Satavahanas' participation in long-distance maritime trade, likely importing Roman goods.

(ii) Ship coins signify the importance of sea trade to the Satavahanas. Warehouses suggest the storage of goods received via ships or awaiting export, characteristic of a trading centre.

(iii) The guild's donation suggests economic prosperity and organized activity among traders. Their support for a Buddhist monastery indicates patronage of religion, possibly for social merit or because Buddhism was popular among mercantile communities, highlighting links between trade, wealth, and religious patronage.

152. A Kushana governor in Mathura needs to commission sculptures for a new temple complex intended to appeal to both local Indian worshippers and officials familiar with Greco-Roman aesthetics from the western parts of the empire.

(i) Which local school of art, known for using red sandstone, would be primarily involved?

(ii) To incorporate Greco-Roman aesthetics, elements from which other art school might be subtly blended in?

(iii) Evaluate the governor's likely aim in commissioning art that blends styles.

Ans :

(i) The Mathura school of art, known for using local red sandstone and depicting Indian deities, would be primarily involved.

(ii) Elements might be borrowed or adapted from the Gandhara school of art, which was known for its fusion of Indian themes with Greco-Roman stylistic features.

(iii) The aim is likely political and cultural integration. By blending styles, the governor acknowledges both local traditions and the broader cultural influences within the diverse Kushana empire, fostering goodwill and reflecting the era's syncretism.

153. A ruler in the post-Maurya period wants to declare his supremacy over neighbouring territories without engaging in costly wars immediately. He decides to perform a significant Vedic ritual.

(i) Which Vedic ritual would be suitable for this purpose?

(ii) Explain how performing this ritual asserts the ruler's power symbolically.

(iii) What risk did the ruler take by performing this ritual?

Ans :

(i) The ashvamedha yajna (horse sacrifice) would be suitable for declaring supremacy over neighbours.

(ii) The unchallenged journey of the sacrificial horse through neighbouring territories symbolically represents those rulers' acceptance of the sponsoring king's overlordship. Successfully completing the ritual proclaims his paramount status.

(iii) The main risk was that a neighbouring ruler might challenge the horse's passage, forcing the sponsoring king into a battle to prove his claimed supremacy, potentially leading to the war he initially sought to avoid.

154. A historian studying the Sangam Age finds poems describing the bustling port city of Puhar (Kaveripattinam), mentioning Roman ships docking, warehouses full of pepper and pearls awaiting export, and local Chola officials collecting taxes from merchants.

(i) What specific economic activities are highlighted in these poems?

(ii) What does this description suggest about the Chola kingdom's economy during this period?

(iii) Evaluate the reliability of using poetry like Sangam literature as a source for economic history.

Ans :

(i) The poems highlight international maritime trade (Roman ships), export of local

NODIA

Era. We saw many old things like statues, coins, tools, and paintings from that time. There were statues of gods and kings made during the Gupta period. The guide told us that the Guptas were great lovers of art, science, and learning. We also saw coins with pictures and writings that showed how rich and advanced the empire was. The museum helped us understand what we read in our book — that the Gupta period was a golden age. People like Kalidasa and Aryabhata lived during this time. I really enjoyed the trip. It made history more interesting and helped me imagine how people lived in the past.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The period of the Gupta Empire, known for significant developments in art, literature, and science, is often referred to by what term by some historians?
(A) The Golden Age of India
(B) The Classical Age of India
(C) The Vedic Age of India
(D) The Mauryan Age of India

Ans :

(B) The Classical Age of India
The Gupta period is frequently called the 'classical age' of India by some historians due to remarkable achievements in fields like art, architecture, literature, science, and mathematics, setting high standards and leaving a lasting legacy.

2. The famous Iron Pillar of Delhi, known for its rust-resistant properties, was erected during the reign of which Gupta ruler?
(A) Samudragupta I
(B) Chandragupta I
(C) Kumaragupta I
(D) Chandragupta II

Ans :

(D) Chandragupta II
The Iron Pillar, currently located in Mehrauli, Delhi, is attributed to the reign of Chandragupta II (Vikramaditya). It stands as a testament to the advanced metallurgical skills prevalent during the Gupta Empire.

3. What does the remarkable rust resistance of the Iron Pillar of Delhi, after over 1,600 years, primarily indicate about ancient Indian technology?
(A) The use of imported rust-proof metals only
(B) Advanced knowledge of metallurgy and processing
(C) A climate that naturally prevents rusting
(D) Regular application of preservative coatings

Ans :

(B) Advanced knowledge of metallurgy and processing
The Iron Pillar's minimal corrosion over centuries showcases ancient India's sophisticated understanding of metallurgy, including the creation of iron alloys with unique properties that form a protective passive layer against rust.

4. What does the title 'maharajadhiraja', adopted by Gupta rulers, literally mean?
(A) Lord of the entire known universe
(B) Great king of all other kings
(C) The chosen one of the gods
(D) Commander of the strongest army

Ans :

(B) Great king of all other kings
The title 'maharajadhiraja' translates to "great king of kings." Gupta emperors adopted such grand titles to signify their supreme authority and imperial status over other subordinate rulers and territories within their domain.

5. Chandragupta I, an early Gupta ruler, is remembered for his strategic alliances. He married Kumaradevi, a princess from which influential clan?
(A) The Vakataka clan
(B) The Lichchhavi clan
(C) The Pallava clan
(D) The Naga clan

Ans :

(B) The Lichchhavi clan
Chandragupta I strengthened his political position through a matrimonial alliance with the powerful Lichchhavi clan by marrying Princess Kumaradevi. This alliance was crucial for the early expansion and consolidation of Gupta power.

6. How did the Gupta ruler Samudragupta's approach to defeated kings in the south differ from his approach to rulers in Aryavarta (northern India)?
(A) He annexed southern kingdoms; reinstated northern ones
(B) He reinstated southern kings; annexed northern ones

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

43. The Prayaga Prashasti describes Samudragupta as a skilled musician, particularly a player of which instrument, as also depicted on some of his coins?
(A) Flute (Bansuri)
(B) Drum (Mridangam)
(C) Veena (Lute)
(D) Cymbals (Manjira)

Ans :

(C) Veena (Lute)
Some of Samudragupta's gold coins depict him playing the veena, a traditional Indian stringed instrument. This, along with descriptions in the Prayaga Prashasti, highlights his accomplishments beyond warfare, including his proficiency in music.

44. A scholar in ancient Pataliputra around 500 CE writes a treatise correctly explaining that lunar eclipses occur when the Earth comes between the Sun and the Moon, casting a shadow. This scholar is most likely :
(A) Kalidasa
(B) Aryabhata
(C) Varahamihira
(D) Harisena

Ans :

(B) Aryabhata
Aryabhata, in his work Aryabhatiya, provided scientifically accurate explanations for both solar and lunar eclipses, correctly identifying that a lunar eclipse happens when the Earth's shadow falls on the Moon.

45. Which Gupta-era figure or text is INCORRECTLY matched with its primary domain?
(A) Aryabhata - Mathematics and Celestial Mechanics
(B) Varahamihira - Poetry and Dramatic Arts
(C) Kalidasa - Sanskrit Literature and Poetry
(D) Sushruta Samhita - Ayurvedic Surgery details

Ans :

(B) Varahamihira - Poetry and Dramatic Arts
Varahamihira was a renowned astronomer, mathematician, and astrologer, known for works like the Brihat Samhita. While learned, his primary domain was not poetry and dramatic arts, which was more Kalidasa's forte.

46. Assertion (A) : The Gupta period witnessed significant advancements in Indian mathematics, including the concept of zero and the decimal system.
Reason (R) : These mathematical innovations had limited impact and were not transmitted to other parts of the world.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Gupta period was indeed a time of major mathematical advancements in India, including the development of the concept of zero and the decimal place value system. These innovations were profoundly impactful and were later transmitted to other cultures.

47. Consider the following about intellectual achievements during the Gupta era :
1. Kalidasa composed famous Sanskrit plays and poems.
2. Aryabhata accurately calculated the value of pi (π).
3. The Charaka Samhita primarily dealt with astronomical calculations.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for that?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Kalidasa is renowned for his Sanskrit literary works. Aryabhata made significant mathematical contributions, including an accurate approximation of pi. The Charaka Samhita is a foundational text of Ayurveda (medicine), not astronomy.

48. The Gupta rulers were generally devout followers of the Hindu deity _____, whose mount Garuda often appears in their iconography.
(A) Shiva
(B) Brahma
(C) Vishnu
(D) Ganesha

Ans :

(C) Vishnu
Many Gupta emperors were ardent devotees of Vishnu (Vaishnavas). This is reflected in their

NODIA

13. Prabhavati Gupta, daughter of Chandragupta II, was married into which neighboring royal family, strengthening Gupta alliances?
(A) The Pallava kingdom to their south
(B) The Vakataka kingdom to their south
(C) The Shaka kingdom to their west
(D) The Kamarupa kingdom to their east

Ans :

(B) The Vakataka kingdom to their south
Prabhavati Gupta, an influential Gupta princess, was married to a prince of the Vakataka kingdom, which was located to the south of the Gupta empire. This matrimonial alliance was strategically important for both dynasties.

14. Which of the following correctly pairs a Gupta era personality with their primary field of contribution?
(A) Harisena - Mathematics and basic astronomy
(B) Aryabhata - Poetry and dramatic literature
(C) Kalidasa - Statecraft and political theory
(D) Varahamihira - Astronomy, astrology, science

Ans :

(D) Varahamihira - Astronomy, astrology, science
Varahamihira was a distinguished polymath of the Gupta period, known for his encyclopedic work 'Brihat Samhita,' which covered diverse subjects including astronomy, astrology, meteorology, and other scientific topics.

15. Assertion (A) : The Gupta period is often called a 'classical age' due to significant achievements in art, science, and literature.
Reason (R) : This cultural efflorescence was primarily due to continuous external invasions stimulating creativity.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Gupta period is indeed considered a classical age because of its remarkable cultural and intellectual achievements. However, this flourishing was largely facilitated by a long period of relative peace and internal stability, not continuous external invasions.

16. Which of the following Gupta era contributions is INCORRECTLY matched with its description?
(A) Iron Pillar (Delhi) - Testament to advanced ancient metallurgy
(B) Aryabhatiya (by Aryabhata) - Treatise on dramatic theory only
(C) Prayaga Prashasti - Eulogy of Samudragupta's achievements
(D) Nalanda University - Renowned center of Buddhist learning

Ans :

(B) Aryabhatiya (by Aryabhata) - Treatise on dramatic theory only
Aryabhata's 'Aryabhatiya' is a seminal work on mathematics and astronomy, proposing concepts like Earth's rotation and providing calculations for eclipses. It is not primarily a treatise on dramatic theory.

17. Consider these statements about the Gupta Empire :
1. Its capital was primarily located at Ujjayini.
2. It maintained extensive trade networks with Southeast Asia.
3. The rulers exclusively patronized Vaishnavism, suppressing other faiths.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The Gupta capital was at Pataliputra. They did have extensive trade with Southeast Asia and beyond. While many Gupta rulers were Vaishnavas, they generally practiced religious tolerance and patronized other faiths like Buddhism.

18. Aryabhata, a prominent mathematician and astronomer of the Gupta period, proposed that the Earth _____ on its axis, explaining day and night.
(A) orbits
(B) spins
(C) tilts
(D) expands

Ans :

(B) spins
Aryabhata made significant contributions, including the revolutionary idea for his time that

NODIA

55. Which of these was NOT a prominent contemporary power ruling a significant part of the Indian subcontinent during the main period of the Gupta Empire?
(A) The Vakatakas in the central Deccan area
(B) The Pallavas in the southern regions
(C) The Delhi Sultanate in northern India
(D) The Kamarupa kingdom in the northeast

Ans :

(C) The Delhi Sultanate in northern India
The Delhi Sultanate emerged much later in Indian history (from the 13th century CE onwards). During the Gupta era (c. 3rd-6th century CE), the Vakatakas, Pallavas, and Kamarupa kingdom were significant contemporary powers.

56. What was the primary material used for the famous rust-resistant pillar attributed to Chandragupta II?
(A) Bronze alloy
(B) Stainless steel
(C) Iron material
(D) Copper metal

Ans :

(C) Iron material
The Iron Pillar of Delhi is, as its name suggests, made primarily of iron. Its exceptional resistance to rust is due to the unique composition of the iron and the formation of a protective passive film on its surface.

57. The term 'dharani-bandha', associated with Samudragupta, implied an ambition for what?
(A) Religious purification of the entire land
(B) Economic prosperity for all his citizens
(C) Unification of the Earth under his rule
(D) The construction of massive defensive forts

Ans :

(C) Unification of the Earth under his rule
'Dharani-bandha' literally means 'binding the earth' or 'unifying the earth'. This term, used for Samudragupta, signified his grand imperial ambition to bring vast territories under his single, unified sovereignty and power.

58. How did Faxian's observations about the treatment of 'chandalas' contrast with his general depiction of Gupta society as prosperous and kind?
(A) Chandalas were treated with exceptional honor
(B) Chandalas were fully integrated into cities
(C) Chandalas faced harsh segregation and lived out
(D) Chandalas held powerful positions in state

Ans :

(C) Chandalas faced harsh segregation and lived out
While Faxian generally described Gupta society as prosperous and its inhabitants as practicing kindness, he also noted the harsh social exclusion and segregation faced by the chandalas (outcastes), who were forced to live outside city limits.

59. The Gupta period saw the compilation and refinement of major Ayurvedic texts like the Charaka Samhita and the _____ Samhita.
(A) Patanjali
(B) Sushruta
(C) Varahamihira
(D) Harisena

Ans :

(B) Sushruta
Alongside the Charaka Samhita, the Sushruta Samhita is another foundational text of Ayurveda that was compiled and given its final form during the Gupta era. It is particularly renowned for its detailed descriptions of surgical procedures.

60. The Pallava rulers' construction of magnificent temples and rock-cut caves primarily indicates their patronage of which aspects of culture?
(A) Military technology and weapon development work
(B) Agricultural techniques and irrigation projects
(C) Art, architecture, and religious expression
(D) Long-distance maritime trade and commerce

Ans :

(C) Art, architecture, and religious expression
The Pallavas were great patrons of art and architecture, most famously expressed through their construction of elaborate temples (both structural and rock-cut) dedicated primarily to Hindu deities like Shiva, showcasing advanced artistic and engineering skills.

61. An inscription describes a princess who, after her husband's early death, rules a kingdom as regent for her young sons and maintains strong diplomatic ties with her powerful father's empire. This historical situation is exemplified by :
(A) Queen Kumaradevi of the Lichchhavi clan
(B) Prabhavati Gupta of the Vakataka kingdom

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

India, flourishing with numerous temples and learning institutions (ghatikas).

25. What were 'ghatikas' in the context of ancient South Indian kingdoms like the Pallavas?
(A) Fortified military garrisons on the borders
(B) Royal treasuries for storing valuable jewels
(C) Centers of learning and higher education
(D) Special courts for resolving trade disputes

Ans :

(C) Centers of learning and higher education
'Ghatikas' were prominent centers of advanced learning and education, particularly flourishing under dynasties like the Pallavas in South India. These institutions played a crucial role in fostering intellectual and scholarly pursuits in various subjects.

26. How did the Gupta empire's system of administration often manage provincial areas regarding local rulers?
(A) By replacing all local rulers with officials
(B) By granting land to local rulers, chiefs
(C) By establishing direct democratic rule
(D) By abolishing all provincial administrations

Ans :

(B) By granting land to local rulers, chiefs
The Gupta administration often divided the empire into provinces and granted land (and authority) to local rulers, priests, or chieftains. These grants, recorded on copper plates, allowed for decentralized governance while ensuring loyalty and revenue.

27. Which ancient Indian scholar is correctly paired with their significant literary or scientific work?
(A) Faxian - Composed the Prayaga Prashasti text
(B) Kalidasa - Authored the Aryabhatiya book
(C) Aryabhata - Wrote the epic Meghadutam tale
(D) Charaka - Associated with Charaka Samhita text

Ans :

(D) Charaka - Associated with Charaka Samhita text
The Charaka Samhita is a foundational text of Ayurveda, and Charaka is traditionally credited as one of its principal compilers/authors. Faxian wrote a travelogue, Kalidasa wrote Meghadutam, and Aryabhata authored Aryabhatiya.

28. Assertion (A) : The Gupta rulers, while often Vaishnavas, generally patronized other religious traditions like Buddhism and Jainism.
Reason (R) : This policy of religious tolerance contributed to the cultural and intellectual vibrancy of the Gupta period.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Gupta emperors, despite personal Vaishnava faith, largely adopted a policy of religious tolerance, supporting Buddhist institutions like Nalanda and allowing various faiths to flourish. This inclusivity fostered a rich cultural and intellectual environment.

29. Which Gupta era achievement is INCORRECTLY linked to its field?
(A) Aryabhata's work - Mathematics and early Astronomy
(B) Kalidasa's Meghadutam - Classical Sanskrit poetry
(C) Iron Pillar of Delhi - Advanced architectural design
(D) Charaka Samhita - Codification of Ayurvedic medicine

Ans :

(C) Iron Pillar of Delhi - Advanced architectural design
While the Iron Pillar is an architectural marvel in terms of its construction and placement, its most celebrated achievement lies in the field of metallurgy, specifically its rust-resistant properties, rather than primarily its architectural design.

30. Consider the following about society during the Gupta period :
1. Faxian noted that the common people were generally prosperous and happy.
2. The primary source of state revenue was tax on foreign trade.
3. The practice of untouchability towards groups like chandalas was absent.

Which of the above statements is/are generally correct based on sources?

NODIA

the Earth rotates or spins on its own axis. This rotation is what causes the daily cycle of day and night.

19. What does 'Ayurveda', which was codified during the Gupta period, refer to?
(A) A system of ancient Indian temple architecture
(B) A traditional Indian system of medicine mainly
(C) A school of classical Indian dance forms
(D) A collection of ancient Indian epic poems

Ans :

(B) A traditional Indian system of medicine mainly
Ayurveda is a comprehensive traditional system of medicine with historical roots in the Indian subcontinent. Key Ayurvedic texts like the Charaka Samhita and Sushruta Samhita were compiled and given final shape during the Gupta era.

20. The famous Ajanta Caves, known for their exquisite murals and rock-cut architecture, received patronage from the Guptas and which other contemporary dynasty?
(A) The Cholas of the south
(B) The Shakas of the west
(C) The Vakatakas of Deccan
(D) The Kushanas of north

Ans :

(C) The Vakatakas of Deccan
The magnificent Ajanta Caves, a UNESCO World Heritage site, were developed over centuries. Significant phases of their creation, including many murals and sculptures, occurred with the patronage of the Gupta emperors and the contemporary Vakataka dynasty.

21. The depiction of Samudragupta as a veena player on his coins primarily suggests what about his personality or reign?
(A) His sole interest was in musical performance
(B) His kingdom's economy was based on music
(C) His appreciation and patronage of the arts
(D) His military weakness and focus on leisure

Ans :

(C) His appreciation and patronage of the arts
Portraying a powerful emperor like Samudragupta playing the veena (a musical instrument) on coins was a way to showcase his cultured nature and his support for the arts, beyond just his military conquests and administrative capabilities.

22. A historian is studying an ancient Indian text that discusses formulas for planetary motions, a near-accurate length of the year, and a correct explanation for eclipses. This text is most likely the work of which Gupta era scholar known to us?
(A) Kalidasa, the poet and the great dramatist
(B) Varahamihira, the astronomer and astrologer
(C) Harisena, the court poet of Samudragupta
(D) Aryabhata, the great mathematician-astronomer

Ans :

(D) Aryabhata, the great mathematician-astronomer
These scientific contributions – formulas for planetary motion, accurate calculation of the year's length, and the correct explanation of solar and lunar eclipses – are hallmark achievements of Aryabhata, as detailed in his work, the Aryabhatiya.

23. Which of the following was NOT a significant factor contributing to the decline of the Gupta Empire?
(A) External invasions by groups like the Hunas
(B) The rise of powerful regional independent rulers
(C) A complete lack of trade with any region
(D) Internal conflicts among Gupta successors

Ans :

(C) A complete lack of trade with any region
The decline of the Gupta Empire was due to factors like Huna invasions, the assertion of independence by regional rulers, and possibly internal succession struggles. While trade might have been affected, a complete cessation was not the primary cause.

24. Kanchipuram, known as the 'city of a thousand temples' and a major center of learning, was the capital of which South Indian dynasty contemporary to the later Guptas?
(A) The Chola dynasty
(B) The Pandya dynasty
(C) The Chera dynasty
(D) The Pallava dynasty

Ans :

(D) The Pallava dynasty
Kanchipuram served as the illustrious capital of the Pallava dynasty. It became a significant political, religious (especially Shaivite and Vaishnavite), and educational center in South

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(D) Pataliputra - Known for its shipbuilding industry

Ans :

(B) Nalanda - Renowned international Buddhist university
Nalanda Mahavihara was an acclaimed ancient center of higher learning in India, attracting scholars and students from various parts of Asia. It was particularly renowned as a major hub for Buddhist studies and philosophy.

37. A visitor to ancient India observes magnificent temples with intricate carvings of Hindu deities, advanced astronomical observatories, and scholars actively engaged in mathematical research and composing Sanskrit poetry. These observations are most characteristic of which flourishing historical period in India?
(A) The early Vedic period of sacrifices
(B) The Mauryan period under Ashoka
(C) The Gupta ("Classical") period
(D) The Sultanate period in Delhi

Ans :

(C) The Gupta ("Classical") period
These features – flourishing temple architecture, advancements in astronomy and mathematics, and a vibrant Sanskrit literary tradition – are all hallmarks of the Gupta period, often referred to as India's "classical age" or "golden age".

38. Which of these was NOT a major center for artistic production or learning specifically highlighted during the Gupta and contemporary periods?
(A) Sarnath (Gupta Buddha sculptures)
(B) Ajanta (Cave paintings, sculptures)
(C) Mohenjo-daro (Harappan seals, pottery)
(D) Kanchipuram (Pallava temples, learning)

Ans :

(C) Mohenjo-daro (Harappan seals, pottery)
Mohenjo-daro was a major city of the much earlier Indus Valley (Harappan) Civilization (c. 2500-1900 BCE). Sarnath, Ajanta, and Kanchipuram were significant centers during the Gupta era and contemporary periods for art and learning.

39. The Gupta Empire flourished primarily between which centuries?
(A) 1st to 3rd century CE
(B) 3rd to 6th century CE
(C) 6th to 9th century CE
(D) 9th to 12th century CE

Ans :

(B) 3rd to 6th century CE
The Gupta Empire rose to prominence around the early 4th century CE (with early rulers in the 3rd century CE) and flourished as a major power in India until its decline in the mid-6th century CE.

40. What does the term 'codified' mean, as in 'Ayurveda got codified during the Gupta period'?
(A) Translated into many different foreign languages
(B) Kept secret and known only to few
(C) Arranged or written in an organized way
(D) Discovered for the very first time

Ans :

(C) Arranged or written in an organized way
To 'codify' something, like a system of knowledge or laws, means to arrange it systematically, often by writing it down in an organized and comprehensive manner. Foundational Ayurvedic texts were given their final, organized form during this time.

41. How did the political situation in India generally change after the decline of the Kushana Empire leading to the rise of the Guptas?
(A) From unified rule to further fragmentation
(B) From regional powers to a new consolidation
(C) From foreign domination to complete isolation
(D) From peaceful states to constant widespread war

Ans :

(B) From regional powers to a new consolidation
After the weakening of the Kushana Empire, which controlled northern India, new regional powers emerged. The Guptas rose from among these, initiating a fresh period of political consolidation and empire-building.

42. The Gupta ruler Chandragupta II was also famously known by the title _____.
(A) Samrat Ashoka
(B) Devanampiya
(C) Vikramaditya
(D) Kaviraja

Ans :

(C) Vikramaditya
Chandragupta II, one of the most illustrious Gupta emperors, adopted the prestigious title 'Vikramaditya,' meaning "Sun of Prowess." This title is associated with legendary tales of wisdom, justice, and patronage of arts.

NODIA

(C) He exiled all defeated kings from south
(D) He formed equal alliances with all regions

Ans :

(B) He reinstated southern kings; annexed northern ones
Samudragupta's Prayaga Prashasti indicates that he uprooted rulers in Aryavarta (northern India), incorporating their territories directly. However, he often reinstated defeated southern kings, allowing them to rule as tributaries.

7. The Prayaga Prashasti, an inscription praising Samudragupta's achievements, was authored by whom?
(A) Kalidasa, the great poet and dramatist
(B) Aryabhata, the renowned mathematician
(C) Harisena, his court poet and minister
(D) Faxian, the Chinese Buddhist pilgrim

Ans :

(C) Harisena, his court poet and minister
The Prayaga Prashasti (Allahabad Pillar Inscription) is a eulogy detailing the conquests and qualities of Samudragupta. It was composed by Harisena, who was a prominent poet and a high-ranking minister in Samudragupta's court.

8. Samudragupta's ambition, according to the Prayaga Prashasti, was to achieve 'dharani-bandha', which means to _____ the Earth.
(A) explore
(B) worship
(C) unify
(D) measure

Ans :

(C) unify
The term 'dharani-bandha' mentioned in the Prayaga Prashasti describes Samudragupta's ambition to unify the Earth, signifying his imperial aspiration to bring vast territories under his single, overarching rule and control.

9. The Chinese Buddhist pilgrim Faxian visited India during the reign of which Gupta emperor?
(A) Chandragupta I
(B) Samudragupta
(C) Chandragupta II
(D) Kumaragupta I

Ans :

(C) Chandragupta II
Faxian (Fa-Hien) journeyed to India in the early 5th century CE with the aim of acquiring Buddhist scriptures and visiting sacred sites. His visit occurred during the prosperous reign of Emperor Chandragupta II Vikramaditya.

10. Faxian's travelogue mentions that heads of Vaishya families established houses for charity and medicines where the poor and sick were cared for. This observation highlights what aspect of Gupta society?
(A) The government's complete control over welfare
(B) The prevalence of widespread poverty and neglect
(C) The role of community philanthropy, charity
(D) The absence of any medical facilities

Ans :

(C) The role of community philanthropy, charity
Faxian's account of Vaishya families providing charitable services, including medical care for the needy, points to a societal value of philanthropy and community responsibility for welfare, alongside any state provisions during that time.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

11. What was a 'prashasti' in ancient India, like the one for Samudragupta at Prayaga?
(A) A type of tax collected from farmers
(B) A royal decree establishing new city
(C) A eulogy or inscription praising a ruler
(D) A manual for military strategy or war

Ans :

(C) A eulogy or inscription praising a ruler
A 'prashasti' is a type of inscription, often found on pillars or temple walls, composed in praise of a king or ruler. These texts typically eulogize the ruler's achievements, virtues, and conquests.

12. The Gupta rulers' use of grand titles like 'chakravartin' primarily aimed to achieve what?
(A) To simplify their administrative duties
(B) To emphasize their supreme authority, power
(C) To indicate their foreign origins to people
(D) To reduce the amount of tax collected

Ans :

(B) To emphasize their supreme authority, power
Titles such as 'maharajadhiraja' (great king of kings) and 'chakravartin' (universal emperor) were adopted by Gupta rulers to project an image of supreme power, vast dominion, and superiority over other contemporary rulers.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

inscriptions, coinage (e.g., Lakshmi, Vishnu's consort, appearing), and the frequent depiction of Garuda, Vishnu's divine eagle mount.

49. What does the term 'outcastes' (like the chandalas mentioned by Faxian) signify in a social context?
(A) People who willingly choose to live alone
(B) Foreign merchants residing outside city walls
(C) Individuals belonging to the highest royal
(D) People rejected from a social group

Ans :

(D) People rejected from a social group
'Outcastes' refer to individuals or groups who are rejected, excluded, or considered outside the pale of the established social hierarchy or varna system. Faxian's account indicates the chandalas faced such exclusion.

50. The Pallava dynasty, which rose to prominence in South India, had its capital at which city?
(A) Madurai
(B) Pataliputra
(C) Kanchipuram
(D) Ujjayini

Ans :

(C) Kanchipuram
Kanchipuram was the celebrated capital of the Pallava dynasty. It developed into a major political, cultural, and religious center, renowned for its magnificent temples and as a hub of learning in South India.

51. The establishment of 'ghatikas' by dynasties like the Pallavas indicates their commitment to what aspect of society?
(A) Expanding their military strength and power
(B) Promoting trade and commercial activities
(C) Fostering education and intellectual growth
(D) Enforcing strict religious uniformity on all

Ans :

(C) Fostering education and intellectual growth
Ghatikas were centers of higher learning and education. The establishment and support of such institutions by rulers like the Pallavas demonstrate their commitment to fostering intellectual pursuits, scholarship, and the advancement of knowledge.

52. How did Samudragupta's policy towards the Kamarupa kingdom generally mirror his policy towards the Pallavas?
(A) He directly annexed both kingdoms into empire
(B) He formed matrimonial alliances with both rulers
(C) He defeated them but allowed them rule
(D) He ignored both, focusing on western India

Ans :

(C) He defeated them but allowed them rule
According to the Prayaga Prashasti, Samudragupta defeated rulers in both the Pallava kingdom (south) and the Kamarupa kingdom (northeast). However, instead of directly annexing these distant territories, he often allowed their rulers to continue governing as tributaries, acknowledging his overlordship.

53. Which Gupta period text is correctly matched with its primary subject matter?
(A) Meghadutam - A treatise on advanced mathematics
(B) Brihat Samhita - A collection of epic war stories
(C) Aryabhatiya - A Sanskrit play about royal love
(D) Sushruta Samhita - A text on surgical techniques

Ans :

(D) Sushruta Samhita - A text on surgical techniques
The Sushruta Samhita is an ancient Sanskrit text on medicine and surgery, considered one of the foundational works of Ayurveda. It provides detailed descriptions of various surgical procedures, instruments, and medical knowledge.

54. A government today invests heavily in universities, scientific research, and supports artists and writers. This approach to fostering intellectual and cultural growth is reminiscent of the patronage seen during which ancient Indian empire's "classical age" of India?
(A) The Nanda Empire under Mahapadma Nanda
(B) The Mauryan Empire under Chandragupta
(C) The Gupta Empire under Chandragupta II
(D) The Shunga Empire under Pushyamitra ruler

Ans :

(C) The Gupta Empire under Chandragupta II
The Gupta period, especially under rulers like Chandragupta II, is renowned for its extensive patronage of learning, arts, literature, and sciences. This resulted in a flourishing of intellectual and cultural activities, making it a "classical age".

NODIA

(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
Faxian did observe general prosperity and happiness among people. However, land tax was a primary revenue source, not solely foreign trade tax. Unfortunately, Faxian also noted the harsh treatment and segregation of chandalas (outcastes).

31. The Kamarupa kingdom, ruled by the Varman dynasty during the Gupta period, was located in the valley of the _____ River.
(A) Ganga
(B) Godavari
(C) Brahmaputra
(D) Indus

Ans :

(C) Brahmaputra
The Kamarupa kingdom, an important power in northeastern India contemporary with the Guptas, was situated in the fertile valley of the Brahmaputra River, corresponding broadly to modern-day Assam and surrounding regions.

32. What is a "regent ruler" in the context of a kingdom?
(A) A king who has conquered many new lands
(B) A ruler who governs temporarily for monarch
(C) A religious leader who advises the true king
(D) A foreign ambassador residing in the capital

Ans :

(B) A ruler who governs temporarily for monarch
A regent is a person appointed to administer a state because the monarch is a minor, is absent, or is incapacitated. Prabhavati Gupta, for instance, acted as regent ruler of the Vakataka kingdom.

33. Varahamihira's encyclopedic work, the Brihat Samhita, covered a wide range of subjects including astronomy, astrology, and what other practical field?
(A) Musical theory only
(B) Ship construction
(C) Weather forecasting
(D) Dramatic performance

Ans :

(C) Weather forecasting
Varahamihira's Brihat Samhita was a comprehensive work that touched upon diverse topics. Besides astronomy and astrology, it included sections on meteorology and weather forecasting, architecture, and even agriculture, reflecting his wide knowledge.

34. The fact that Gupta land grants were often inscribed on copper plates suggests an emphasis on what administrative practice?
(A) Keeping transactions secret from the public
(B) Using the most inexpensive recording means
(C) Ensuring accurate and permanent record-keeping
(D) Making documents easily alterable if needed

Ans :

(C) Ensuring accurate and permanent record-keeping
Inscribing land grants on durable materials like copper plates was a method to create accurate, official, and lasting records of these important administrative and economic transactions, ensuring their legitimacy and preventing disputes over them.

35. How did the Pallavas' primary religious patronage generally differ from that of many early Gupta emperors?
(A) Pallavas favored Buddhism; Guptas favored Jainism
(B) Pallavas were mostly Shaivites; Guptas Vaishnavites
(C) Pallavas were atheistic; Guptas were polytheistic
(D) Both exclusively patronized local folk deities

Ans :

(B) Pallavas were mostly Shaivites; Guptas Vaishnavites
While both dynasties were generally tolerant, many early Gupta emperors were notably devotees of Vishnu (Vaishnavites). The Pallava rulers, particularly in their later phases, were predominantly patrons of Shiva (Shaivites), as reflected in their temple architecture.

36. Which Gupta era center of learning is correctly matched with its primary association?
(A) Sarnath - Famous for its medical university mainly
(B) Nalanda - Renowned international Buddhist university
(C) Ujjayini - Exclusively a center for military skill

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Queen Didda of Kashmir in later history
(D) Empress Razia Sultana of Delhi area

Ans :

(B) Prabhavati Gupta of the Vakataka kingdom
Prabhavati Gupta, daughter of Gupta emperor Chandragupta II, was married to a Vakataka prince. After his untimely death, she effectively ruled the Vakataka kingdom as regent for her minor sons, maintaining the crucial alliance with the Guptas.

62. Which region is INCORRECTLY paired with the major dynasty that held significant influence during or contemporary to the Gupta period?
(A) Northern & Central India - Gupta Empire
(B) Deccan Plateau - Vakataka Kingdom
(C) Southern India (Tamil Nadu) - Kushana Dynasty
(D) Northeastern India (Assam) - Kamarupa Kingdom

Ans :

(C) Southern India (Tamil Nadu) - Kushana Dynasty
The Kushana dynasty primarily ruled over northwestern India and parts of Central Asia. Southern India, including Tamil Nadu, was the domain of dynasties like the Pallavas, Cholas, Pandyas, etc., during this period.

63. Assertion (A) : The Gupta period is known for a decline in Sanskrit literature and a shift towards regional Prakrits.
Reason (R) : Kalidasa, one of India's greatest Sanskrit poets and dramatists, flourished during the Gupta era.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; the Gupta period is renowned for a great efflorescence of classical Sanskrit literature. Reason (R) is true, as Kalidasa, a master of Sanskrit, indeed lived and wrote during this prosperous era.

64. Consider the following about the Gupta Empire's external relations :
1. They had active trade with the Roman Empire via sea routes.
2. They faced invasions from the Huna tribes from Central Asia.
3. They successfully conquered and annexed the entire Pallava kingdom.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Guptas engaged in trade with regions including the Mediterranean world (which included Roman territories). They did face significant invasions from the Hunas, which contributed to their decline. While Samudragupta campaigned in the south and defeated Pallava rulers, he did not fully annex the entire Pallava kingdom permanently.

65. The famous Buddhist monastic university of _____, a major center of learning, received significant patronage during the Gupta period.
(A) Takshashila
(B) Vikramashila
(C) Nalanda
(D) Valabhi

Ans :

(C) Nalanda
Nalanda Mahavihara, located in present-day Bihar, was an internationally acclaimed center of Buddhist learning and scholarship. It flourished significantly under the patronage of Gupta emperors and later rulers, attracting students from across Asia.

66. What does the term 'Prakrit' refer to in the context of ancient Indian languages?
(A) A highly stylized form of classical Sanskrit only
(B) A group of common vernacular or spoken ones
(C) A secret script used only by royal spies
(D) The language used exclusively for foreign trade

Ans :

(B) A group of common vernacular or spoken ones
Prakrits were a group of Middle Indo-Aryan languages that were spoken by the common people in various parts of ancient India. They were distinct from the more formal and classical Sanskrit, though related to it.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(C) Chandragupta II - Devanampiya Piyadasi
'Devanampiya Piyadasi' (Beloved of the Gods, He who regards others with kindness) was a title famously used by the Mauryan emperor Ashoka. Gupta emperors like Chandragupta I and II used titles like Maharajadhiraja and Vikramaditya.

80. Assertion (A) : Aryabhata correctly explained that the Earth spins on its axis.
Reason (R) : This explanation was widely accepted by all contemporary scholars in India and immediately replaced older cosmological views.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Aryabhata did indeed correctly propose that the Earth rotates on its axis. However, such revolutionary scientific ideas often take time to gain widespread acceptance and may not immediately replace all pre-existing traditional beliefs or cosmological models.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following Gupta rulers with their significant achievements or associations :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Chandragupta I	A.	Known as 'Vikramaditya'; iron pillar in Delhi praises him
2.	Samudragupta	B.	Early Gupta king; known for coins and strategic alliances
3.	Chandragupta II	C.	Daughter of Chandragupta II; regent ruler of Vakataka kingdom
4.	Prabhavati Gupta	D.	'Warrior king'; prayaga prashasti by Harisena details his conquests

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(d) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Chandragupta I laid the empire's foundation with alliances and coins. Samudragupta's conquests are praised in the prayaga prashasti. Chandragupta II (Vikramaditya) is associated with the Delhi iron pillar. Prabhavati Gupta was a Vakataka regent.

82. Match the following scholars/literary figures of the Gupta era with their notable works or contributions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Aryabhata	A.	Author of 'Meghadutam'; renowned for Sanskrit poetry
2.	Varahamihira	B.	Authored 'Aryabhatiya'; proposed Earth spins on its axis
3.	Kalidasa	C.	Compiled and refined medical texts like Charaka and Sushruta Samhita
4.	Ayurveda	D.	Mathematician, astronomer; wrote 'Brihat Samhita'

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Aryabhata authored 'Aryabhatiya' and made astronomical discoveries. Varahamihira wrote the encyclopedic 'Brihat Samhita'. Kalidasa is famed for Sanskrit plays and poetry like 'Meghadutam'. Ayurveda was codified during this period.

NODIA

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. www.momworksheet.com
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

73. Pragjyotisha, an ancient name mentioned in epics like the Ramayana and Mahabharata, refers to the Brahmaputra valley region of which present-day Indian state?
(A) Bihar state
(B) Odisha state
(C) Assam state
(D) Gujarat state

Ans :

(C) Assam state
Pragjyotisha is an ancient name historically associated with the Brahmaputra valley region, which largely corresponds to the modern Indian state of Assam. The Kamarupa kingdom ruled this area.

74. What is the 'Prayaga Prashasti'?
(A) A famous Gupta era Sanskrit drama script
(B) An ancient medical text on herbal cures
(C) An inscription on a pillar at Prayagraj
(D) A manual for constructing large temples

Ans :

(C) An inscription on a pillar at Prayagraj
The Prayaga Prashasti, also known as the Allahabad Pillar Inscription, is a eulogistic inscription engraved on a pillar (originally an Ashokan pillar) located at Prayagraj (Allahabad). It details Samudragupta's achievements.

75. How did the source of revenue for the Gupta Empire from land tax differ from taxes on trade and crafts?
(A) Land tax was voluntary; trade tax compulsory
(B) Land tax was primary; trade tax secondary
(C) Land tax was paid in gold; trade in silver
(D) Land tax was for army; trade for temples

Ans :

(B) Land tax was primary; trade tax secondary
Land tax was the principal source of revenue for the Gupta Empire, reflecting the agrarian nature of the economy. While taxes on trade, crafts, mines, and fines also contributed, revenue from land was foundational.

76. The Chinese traveler Faxian undertook his long journey to India primarily to visit sacred _____ sites and collect manuscripts.
(A) Hindu
(B) Jain
(C) Buddhist
(D) Zoroastrian

Ans :

(C) Buddhist
Faxian was a devout Buddhist monk. His primary motivation for undertaking the arduous journey to India was to visit sacred Buddhist pilgrimage sites, study with renowned Buddhist scholars, and obtain authentic Buddhist scriptures.

77. The Gupta rulers' strategy of using matrimonial alliances, like Chandragupta I's marriage to Kumaradevi or Chandragupta II's daughter's marriage to a Vakataka prince, primarily served what political purpose?
(A) To promote cultural exchange between different regions
(B) To consolidate power and strengthen political ties
(C) To find suitable spouses from wealthy families
(D) To encourage migration of skilled artisans

Ans :

(B) To consolidate power and strengthen political ties
Matrimonial alliances were a common diplomatic tool in ancient India. Such marriages between royal families helped to consolidate power, forge strategic partnerships, secure borders, and enhance the political stability and influence of the dynasties involved.

78. A visitor to an ancient Indian site sees intricately carved rock temples dedicated to Shiva, a 'city of a thousand temples', and centers of learning called ghatikas. This visitor is most likely in a region influenced by which South Indian dynasty?
(A) The Satavahana dynasty of old
(B) The Chola dynasty of old
(C) The Pallava dynasty of old
(D) The Chera dynasty of old

Ans :

(C) The Pallava dynasty of old
These features – magnificent rock-cut and structural temples (often dedicated to Shiva), the description of Kanchipuram as a "city of a thousand temples," and the presence of ghatikas (educational centers) – are strongly characteristic of the Pallava dynasty's rule in South India.

79. Which of the following titles is INCORRECTLY associated with a Gupta emperor?
(A) Chandragupta I - Maharajadhiraja title
(B) Samudragupta - Dharani-bandha or king
(C) Chandragupta II - Devanampiya Piyadasi
(D) Chandragupta II - Vikramaditya title

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

139. Analyse the significance of the Gupta administrative system involving land grants to local rulers/chieftains.

Ans :

This decentralized approach allowed efficient governance over a vast empire. It ensured tax collection and local administration without direct central control everywhere, fostering loyalty (or potential future independence) among local elites. Copper plate records provided administrative permanence and legal validity to these grants.

140. How did thriving trade networks, both internal and external, contribute to the prosperity and cultural vibrancy of the Gupta 'classical age'?

Ans :

Trade generated wealth through taxes and commerce, funding the state, supporting artisans, and enabling patronage of arts and sciences. External trade brought in resources and facilitated cultural exchange (ideas, technologies, artistic influences) with regions like Rome, SE Asia, and China, contributing to the era's dynamism and cosmopolitanism.

141. Analyse the relationship between political stability under the Guptas and the flourishing of science, literature, and art.

Ans :

Relative peace and political stability created a secure environment. Economic prosperity allowed rulers and elites to patronize scholars (Aryabhata, Varahamihira), writers (Kalidasa), and artists (Ajanta, Sarnath). This support, combined with intellectual ferment and consolidation of past knowledge, enabled significant creative and scientific advancements.

142. Compare the scientific contributions of Aryabhata and Varahamihira. What different approaches or areas did they focus on?

Ans :

Aryabhata focused on foundational mathematical principles and theoretical astronomy, making precise calculations (year length, eclipses) and proposing revolutionary ideas (Earth's rotation). Varahamihira had a more encyclopedic approach, compiling knowledge across diverse applied sciences – astronomy, astrology, architecture, weather, agriculture – blending observation with traditional wisdom.

143. "Gupta rulers, while patrons of Vaishnavism, practiced religious tolerance." Evaluate this statement.

Ans :

Evidence supports this. Gupta rulers were Vaishnavas (Vishnu devotees, seen on coins/ inscriptions). However, they patronized Buddhist institutions like Nalanda University and monks. Figures like Samudragupta were praised for supporting learning generally. This suggests a policy of tolerance and support for various prevailing religious and philosophical traditions.

144. Analyse the key characteristics of Gupta-era art and architecture, using examples like the Sarnath Buddha or Ajanta caves.

Ans :

Gupta art emphasized harmony, elegance, and idealized forms, moving towards classical refinement. Sarnath Buddhas show serenity and perfect balance. Ajanta caves showcase mastery in both sculpture and vibrant mural painting (narrative scenes, detailed figures). Early structural temples (like Deogarh) also began appearing, showing architectural innovation.

145. How did the political situation in North India (Gupta decline, Huna invasions) differ from that in the South (Pallava rise) around the 6th century CE?

Ans :

In the North, the large Gupta empire was weakening and fragmenting due to invasions (Hunas) and internal factors. In contrast, the South saw the consolidation and rise of a major regional power, the Pallavas, who were building their own influence, possibly benefiting from the decline of earlier powers like the Satavahanas.

NODIA

146. Analyse the role of Kanchipuram under the Pallavas. Why was it called the 'city of a thousand temples'?

Ans :

Kanchipuram served as the Pallava capital and became a major political, religious, and educational centre. The moniker 'city of a thousand temples' reflects the extensive temple-building patronage by Pallava rulers (mostly Shiva devotees), making it a crucial hub for South Indian art, architecture, and learning (housing ghatikas).

83. Match the following Gupta period sites or dynasties with their significance :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Iron Pillar	A.	Capital of Pallavas; 'city of a thousand temples'; learning centre
2.	Nalanda	B.	In Mehrauli, Delhi; testament to advanced metallurgy; rust-resistant
3.	Kanchipuram	C.	Ruled in parts of modern Assam; mentioned in prayaga prashasti
4.	Kamarupa Kingdom	D.	Renowned university patronised by Gupta rulers

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
The Iron Pillar in Delhi showcases Gupta metallurgy. Nalanda was a famous Buddhist university. Kanchipuram was the Pallava capital and a learning hub. The Kamarupa kingdom ruled in the northeast.

84. Match the administrative or cultural aspects of the Gupta Empire :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Faxian	A.	Titles like 'maharajadhiraja' reflecting supreme authority
2.	Prayaga Prashasti	B.	Chinese traveller who documented Gupta society and governance
3.	Land Grants	C.	Inscription by Harisena praising Samudragupta's achievements
4.	Royal Titles	D.	System of granting land to local rulers, priests, recorded on copper plates

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Faxian was a Chinese pilgrim who described Gupta India. Prayaga Prashasti is an inscription detailing Samudragupta's reign. Land grants were a key administrative feature. Gupta rulers adopted grand royal titles.

85. Match the following art and architectural contributions of the Gupta and contemporary periods :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Ajanta Caves	A.	Temple in Ramtek, possibly built by Prabhavati Gupta's daughter
2.	Deogarh Temple	B.	Known for exquisite Gupta-era sculptures of the Buddha
3.	Kevala Narasimha Temple	C.	Famous for rock-cut caves and detailed carvings of Hindu deities
4.	Sarnath	D.	Renowned for vibrant murals and rock-cut chaityas and viharas

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B
Ajanta Caves are famous for murals and rock-cut architecture. Deogarh Temple is an example of Gupta temple architecture with deity carvings. Kevala Narasimha temple is linked to Prabhavati Gupta. Sarnath was a key centre for Gupta Buddha sculptures

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. Which famous, non-rusting pillar stands in Mehrauli, Delhi, dating back over 1,600 years?

Ans :

The Iron Pillar of Delhi.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

87. Which Gupta ruler is associated with the erection of the Iron Pillar?

Ans :

Chandragupta II.

88. What dynasty emerged as a major power after the decline of the Kushanas in the 3rd century CE?

Ans :

The Gupta dynasty.

89. What title, also used by Chandragupta II, means 'Sun of Valour' or is associated with a legendary king?

Ans :

Vikramaditya.

90. Who was Chandragupta II's grandfather, known for early Gupta expansion and strategic alliances?

Ans :

Chandragupta I.

91. Who was Chandragupta II's father, praised for his military victories in the Prayaga Prashasti?

Ans :

Samudragupta.

92. Who composed the Prayaga Prashasti praising Samudragupta?

Ans :

Harisena (his court poet).

93. What title meaning 'unifier of the Earth' did Samudragupta aspire to?

Ans :

Dharani-bandha.

94. Which musical instrument is Samudragupta shown playing on some of his coins?

Ans :

Veena.

95. Which Gupta ruler's daughter, married into the Vakataka kingdom, became a regent ruler?

Ans :

Prabhavati Gupta (daughter of Chandragupta II).

96. What was the primary source of revenue for the Gupta empire?

Ans :

Land tax.

97. Name one region outside India that the Guptas traded with.

Ans :

Mediterranean world/Southeast Asia/China (any one).

98. Which island in the Arabian Sea served as a significant stop for Indian Ocean trade?

Ans :

Socotra Island.

99. Which famous Buddhist university was patronised by the Gupta rulers?

Ans :

Nalanda university.

100. What term is sometimes used to describe the Gupta period due to its significant achievements in various fields?

Ans :

Classical age.

NODIA

101. Name the famous Gupta-era mathematician and astronomer who authored the Aryabhatiya.

Ans :

Aryabhata.

102. What astronomical phenomenon did Aryabhata correctly explain?

Ans :

Solar and lunar eclipses (also Earth's rotation causing day/night).

103. Name the Gupta-era scholar known for the encyclopedic work Brihat Samhita, covering astronomy, weather, architecture etc.

Ans :

Varahamihira.

104. Which city was a famous centre of learning associated with Varahamihira?

Ans :

Ujjayini.

105. Name the celebrated Sanskrit poet of the Gupta era, author of Meghadutam.

Ans :

Kalidasa.

106. What traditional Indian system of medicine was codified during the Gupta period?

Ans :

Ayurveda.

107. Name one of the major Ayurvedic texts compiled or finalized during the Gupta era.

Ans :

Charaka Samhita/Sushruta Samhita (any one).

108. Which tribe from Central Asia attacked the Gupta Empire, contributing to its decline?

Ans :

Huna tribe (Huns).

109. Which powerful dynasty emerged in South India during this period, with Kanchipuram as their capital?

Ans :

Pallavas.

110. What were the centres of learning established during the Satavahana and Pallava periods called?

Ans :

Ghatikas.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Why is the Iron Pillar of Delhi considered a testament to ancient Indian metallurgy?

Ans :

Despite being over 1,600 years old and exposed to the elements, the pillar shows minimal rust, indicating advanced iron-making techniques that created a protective surface layer.

112. How did Chandragupta I strengthen the foundation of the Gupta Empire?

Ans :

Chandragupta I used strategic matrimonial alliances (like marrying a Lichchhavi princess) and possibly military campaigns to consolidate power and expand the early Gupta territory, setting the stage for his successors.

113. According to the Prayaga Prashasti, what methods did Samudragupta use to expand his empire?

Ans :

He fought many wars, defeating kings and annexing kingdoms. He also reinstated some defeated kings who paid tribute, while others submitted voluntarily due to his power.

114. How do Gupta coins provide information about rulers like Samudragupta?

Ans :

Coins depict rulers (showing attire/appearance), commemorate events (like ashvamedha yajna), showcase skills (Samudragupta playing veena), indicate religious beliefs (Lakshmi on reverse), and assert titles, offering historical clues.

115. Briefly describe Faxian's journey to India and its purpose.

Ans :

Faxian, a Chinese Buddhist monk, travelled to India in the early 5th century CE. His difficult pilgrimage aimed to visit sacred Buddhist sites, learn from Indian scholars, and collect Buddhist manuscripts.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

116. According to Faxian's account, what was society like in the Gupta Empire's cities?

Ans :

Faxian described people as numerous, happy, and prosperous. Cities had wealthy inhabitants, merchants (including foreigners), well-ordered lanes, and charitable institutions providing care for the needy.

117. What negative aspect of society did Faxian also observe?

Ans :

Faxian noted the harsh treatment of the 'chandalas', who were considered outcastes, forced to live outside city limits, indicating social stratification and discrimination existed alongside prosperity.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

67. The Udayagiri caves in Madhya Pradesh, known for their rock-cut sculptures, feature prominent depictions of which Hindu deity and his avatars?
(A) Brahma, the creator god
(B) Shiva, the destroyer god
(C) Vishnu, the preserver god
(D) Indra, the king of gods

Ans :

(C) Vishnu, the preserver god
The Udayagiri caves, dating to the Gupta period, contain significant rock-cut sculptures, including iconic representations of the Hindu deity Vishnu and his various avatars, such as Varaha (the boar).

68. The tradition of illustrating the original handwritten Constitution of India with scenes from Indian history, from Mohenjo-daro to the freedom movement, by artists like Nandalal Bose, signifies what?
(A) An attempt to make the document purely artistic
(B) The Constitution's deep roots in India's heritage
(C) A preference for images over written text
(D) The influence of foreign artistic styles only

Ans :

(B) The Constitution's deep roots in India's heritage
Illustrating the Constitution with scenes spanning India's long history visually underscores the idea that this foundational legal document is not an isolated creation but is deeply connected to and rooted in the nation's rich civilizational heritage.

69. How did the Gupta administration's strategy for ruling distant southern kingdoms like the Pallavas often differ from their rule in core northern territories?
(A) South was ruled directly; north via local chiefs
(B) South paid tribute; north was fully annexed
(C) South used Greek; north used Prakrit language
(D) South had no army; north had large one

Ans :

(B) South paid tribute; north was fully annexed
While core territories in northern India were often directly administered or annexed by the Guptas, distant southern kingdoms like the Pallavas were typically defeated but allowed to continue ruling as tributaries, acknowledging Gupta overlordship.

70. Which artistic site is correctly paired with its prominent feature from the Gupta or contemporary period?
(A) Ajanta Caves - Primarily known for large monolithic temples
(B) Deogarh Temple - Famous for early Islamic calligraphy
(C) Sarnath - Site of the earliest known iron pillar
(D) Udayagiri Caves - Rock-cut sculptures of Hindu deities

Ans :

(D) Udayagiri Caves - Rock-cut sculptures of Hindu deities
The Udayagiri Caves in Madhya Pradesh are renowned for their significant Gupta-era rock-cut sculptures, particularly those depicting Hindu deities like Vishnu and his avatars. Ajanta is famed for murals, Deogarh for early Hindu temple architecture.

71. If a Gupta emperor issues a gold coin depicting himself standing with a queen on one side, and the goddess Lakshmi seated on a lion on the reverse, what is this likely intended to convey?
(A) The empire's impending financial crisis or war
(B) The ruler's devotion to Buddhism primarily
(C) Royal power, legitimacy, and divine favor
(D) A recent military defeat by a foreign power

Ans :

(C) Royal power, legitimacy, and divine favor
Such coinage typically aimed to project royal power (king and queen), legitimacy (often through dynastic depictions or alliances like Chandragupta I and Kumaradevi), and divine favor or prosperity (represented by goddess Lakshmi).

72. Which of these fields did NOT see major advancements or flourishing specifically attributed to the Gupta period?
(A) Sanskrit literature and great poetry
(B) Mathematics, including zero and decimals
(C) Large-scale shipbuilding for global explore
(D) Metallurgy, as seen in the Iron Pillar

Ans :

(C) Large-scale shipbuilding for global explore
The Gupta period is celebrated for advancements in literature (Kalidasa), mathematics (Aryabhata), and metallurgy. While India had maritime trade, large-scale shipbuilding for global exploration in the modern sense wasn't a defining characteristic of this era's primary achievements.

NODIA

129. What were the main causes of the Gupta Empire's decline?

Ans :

Decline was caused by repeated invasions from external groups like the Hunas weakening the empire, combined with the rise of powerful regional rulers challenging central authority, leading to internal conflicts and fragmentation.

130. Who were the Pallavas, and where was their capital?

Ans :

The Pallavas were a powerful dynasty ruling parts of South India after the Satavahanas. Their capital was Kanchipuram in present-day Tamil Nadu, known as a major learning centre.

131. What were the Pallavas known for in terms of cultural contributions?

Ans :

They were great patrons of art and architecture, credited with magnificent Dravidian-style temples and rock-cut caves, particularly dedicated to Shiva. They also fostered learning through centres like ghatikas.

132. Which dynasty ruled the Kamarupa kingdom in the Northeast during this time?

Ans :

The Varman dynasty ruled the Kamarupa kingdom, covering areas of modern Assam and neighbouring regions.

133. How did Samudragupta deal with defeated rulers in the South (Pallavas) and Northeast (Kamarupa)?

Ans :

He adopted a policy of reinstating defeated rulers. He let them keep their thrones provided they accepted his overlordship and paid tribute, maintaining relations without direct annexation.

134. Why is the Gupta legacy considered important for India today?

Ans :

The Gupta era made foundational contributions in science, math (decimal system implicit in Aryabhata's work), medicine (Ayurveda), literature (Kalidasa, Puranas), and art/architecture that deeply influenced subsequent Indian culture and traditions.

135. What evidence suggests the presence of Indian traders on Socotra Island?

Ans :

Archaeological finds on Socotra include Indian pottery, inscriptions in the Brahmi script, and architectural designs like a Buddhist stupa, indicating a sustained presence of Indian traders over centuries.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the strategies used by Gupta rulers like Chandragupta I and Samudragupta to build and consolidate their empire.

Ans :

Chandragupta I used strategic matrimonial alliances (e.g., with Lichchhavis) and possibly initial military gains to establish a base. Samudragupta employed extensive military campaigns ('dharani-bandha' ambition), defeating numerous kings but also using diplomacy by reinstating tributary rulers, creating a vast but manageable empire praised in the Prayaga Prashasti.

NODIA

137. "The Prayaga Prashasti is a biased source, yet historically valuable." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

It's biased because it was composed by a court poet (Harisena) specifically to praise Samudragupta, likely exaggerating his virtues and victories. However, it's valuable as it provides contemporary details on his campaigns, the names of defeated kings/regions, Gupta administration ideals, and the king's cultural patronage (like music).

138. Evaluate Faxian's account as a source for understanding Gupta society. What are its strengths and limitations?

Ans :

Strength : Provides a unique contemporary, external perspective on prosperity, administration, charity, and urban life in the Gangetic plains. Limitation : Reflects a visitor's perspective, possibly focusing on favourable aspects or specific regions/classes, and might miss nuances or negative aspects (like the brief mention of outcastes suggests). It requires corroboration.

118. Explain the significance of titles like 'maharajadhiraja' adopted by Gupta rulers.

Ans :

These grand titles ('great king of kings') signified supreme authority and imperial status, claiming superiority over rulers with simpler titles like 'rajan', reflecting the Guptas' vast power and ambition.

119. How did the Gupta system of administration balance central control and local autonomy?

Ans :

The empire was divided into provinces. While the emperor held supreme authority, land grants were given to local rulers/chieftains who managed their regions and collected taxes, recorded on copper plates.

120. Describe the scope of India's trade during the Gupta era.

Ans :

Trade was extensive, both internally and externally. India traded textiles, spices, ivory, and gems with the Mediterranean world (via routes possibly including Socotra), Southeast Asia, and China.

121. How did the Gupta rulers demonstrate religious tolerance despite being Vaishnavas?

Ans :

Although devotees of Vishnu, they patronised other traditions. They supported Buddhist institutions like Nalanda University and various monasteries (viharas), fostering an inclusive religious environment.

122. Why is the Gupta period often called India's 'classical age'?

Ans :

Due to relative peace and stability, the period saw exceptional flourishing in Sanskrit literature (Kalidasa), science/mathematics (Aryabhata, Varahamihira), art/architecture (Ajanta, Gupta temples), and philosophy, setting high standards and consolidating past knowledge.

123. Summarize Aryabhata's key contributions to astronomy.

Ans :

Aryabhata proposed Earth spins on its axis (explaining day/night), calculated the year's length accurately, correctly explained solar/lunar eclipses, and provided formulas for planetary motions.

124. What range of subjects did Varahamihira cover in his Brihat Samhita?

Ans :

His encyclopedic work covered diverse subjects including astronomy, astrology, mathematics, geography, weather forecasting, architecture, water divination, agriculture, and gemology, reflecting wide-ranging scholarship.

125. Briefly explain the story of Kalidasa's Meghadutam ('The Cloud Messenger').

Ans :

A banished yaksha asks a passing cloud to carry a message of love and longing to his beloved wife far away, allowing Kalidasa to poetically describe landscapes across North India.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

126. What is the focus of Ayurveda, as codified in texts like Charaka Samhita?

Ans :

Ayurveda focuses on holistic healing, emphasizing the connection between mind, body, and nature. The texts cover disease diagnosis, treatments, medicines, diet, and even surgical techniques.

127. Name two important centres known for Gupta-era art.

Ans :

Sarnath (Uttar Pradesh), known for refined Buddha sculptures, and the Ajanta caves (Maharashtra), famous for their murals and sculptures, are key centres. Udayagiri (MP) is also noted.

128. Describe the typical aesthetic qualities of Gupta art.

Ans :

Gupta art is known for its balance, harmony, refined elegance, idealized human forms (especially Buddha images from Sarnath showing serenity), and detailed craftsmanship, setting high aesthetic standards.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

147. How did the achievements of the Gupta 'classical age' build upon foundations laid in earlier periods (like Mauryan or Kushana)?

Ans :

The Guptas didn't start from scratch. Mauryan administration provided models. Kushana patronage of art (Gandhara/Mathura) and trade routes provided continuity. Scientific/mathematical ideas evolved over centuries. The Gupta era excelled in consolidating this knowledge (Ayurveda, Puranas) and achieving new heights in refinement and synthesis (classical Sanskrit, Gupta art).

148. Evaluate the claim that Kalidasa's Meghadutam offers insights into the geography and environment of ancient India.

Ans :

While primarily a lyrical poem about love and separation, its structure involves the cloud travelling across North India. Kalidasa uses this journey to provide detailed, evocative descriptions of landscapes, rivers, cities, flora, fauna, and weather phenomena along the route, offering valuable poetic insights into the perceived geography of the time.

149. Analyse the different types of sources used by historians to reconstruct the Gupta period (inscriptions, coins, literature, foreign accounts). What does each uniquely contribute?

Ans :

Inscriptions (Prayaga Prashasti, Iron Pillar) give official perspectives on rulers' achievements/ ideology. Coins reveal rulers, titles, economy, religion, art styles. Literature (Kalidasa, Puranas) provides cultural, social, religious insights. Foreign accounts (Faxian) offer external observations on society/governance. Together, they create a richer, cross-verified picture.

150. Considering the factors leading to the Gupta decline, analyse why large, centralized empires in ancient India often proved difficult to sustain long-term.

Ans :

Sustaining large empires faced inherent challenges: communication/control over vast distances was difficult; diverse regions/local rulers often resisted central authority, especially under weaker emperors; constant military expenditure strained the economy; external invasions targeted wealthy empires; and succession struggles could destabilize the centre, leading inevitably to fragmentation.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. An inscription on a copper plate records a land grant made by a Gupta official in a province. The grant gives tax-free land to a Brahmin scholar for maintaining a small temple and performing rituals. The inscription specifies the boundaries of the land and lists witnesses to the grant.

(i) What aspect of Gupta administration does this copper plate illustrate?

(ii) Why was it important to record such grants carefully on durable materials like copper plates?

(iii) Evaluate what this grant suggests about the relationship between the Gupta state and religious figures/institutions.

Ans :

(i) It illustrates the Gupta administrative practice of granting land (often tax-free) to local individuals like priests or scholars, likely to ensure local support, administration, and religious functions.

(ii) Recording grants on copper plates provided a permanent, official, and legally valid record of ownership and tax exemption, preventing future disputes and ensuring clarity in administration across generations.

(iii) It suggests a relationship of patronage and mutual support. The state granted resources (land) to support religious figures and institutions, likely expecting loyalty, social stability, and performance of religious duties in return.

152. A merchant based in Ujjayini during the Gupta period wants to trade high-quality Indian textiles for fine glassware from the Roman world. He plans to transport his goods overland towards a western port and by sea.

(i) Which major geographical challenge would the merchant face travelling overland from Ujjayini to a western port (like Bharuch)?

(ii) What evidence suggests that trade between India and the Roman world existed during this era?

(iii) Evaluate the risks and potential rewards involved in such long-distance trade for the merchant.

NODIA

idea of Nature as sacred space (punyakshetra). This perception encourages the protection of Nature.

5.1 Rivers and sangams

Rivers like Ganga, Yamuna, Godavari, and Kaveri have been worshipped since Vedic times and are considered lifelines. Confluences (sangams) are particularly sacred, hosting events like the massive Kumbh Mela (held at Prayagraj, Haridwar, Nashik, Ujjain), originating from the myth of the amrita manthana.

5.2 Mountains and Forests

Mountains often symbolize gateways to the divine due to their height, making hilltop shrines common. The arduous journey to these sites tests physical and mental strength.

5.3 Trees, Forests and Sacred Groves

Specific trees, notably the peepul (Ficus religiosa), are sacred across multiple religions. India's epics describe sacred forests and mountains, with local traditions often linking these narratives to their regions. Sacred groves (dev van, kavu, devarai, etc.) are patches of forest protected by communities as abodes of deities, conserving biodiversity and water resources. These groves foster a harmonious relationship between the deity, the ecosystem, and humans.

6. PILGRIMAGE AND TRADE

Pilgrimage and trade routes frequently overlapped. Pilgrims required goods provided by merchants, and traders might combine their commercial journeys with visits to sacred sites. Major ancient trade routes like Uttarapatha and Dakshinapatha connected regions involved in the trade of precious stones, metals, spices, and textiles.

7. SACRED GEOGRAPHY BEYOND INDIA

The concept isn't unique to India. Ancient Greece had sacred landmarks, Native Americans viewed Nature as sacred, and the Maoris of New Zealand regard Mount Taranaki as a sacred ancestor, recently granted legal rights akin to a person.

8. RESTORING AND CONSERVING THE SACRED

Harmonious relationship between people and sacred geography is under strain today due to pollution and degradation of sacred sites like rivers and mountains. Protecting these places is presented as a vital contemporary issue and a constitutional duty. A worldview embedding sacred geography is seen as crucial for sustainability, inspiring action when sacred environments are threatened.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Read the following statement by a well-known environmental thinker, David Suzuki :
"The way we see the world shapes the way we treat it. If a mountain is a deity, not a pile of ore; if a river is one of the veins of the land, not potential irrigation water; if a forest is a sacred grove, not timber; if other species are biological kin, not resources; or if the planet is our mother, not an opportunity—then we will treat each other with greater respect. Thus is the challenge, to look at the world from a different perspective."
Discuss in small groups. What do you think this statement means? What implication does it have for our actions with respect to the air, water, land, trees and mountains around us?

Ans :

The statement means our perception dictates our actions. If we see nature as sacred or kin, we'll treat it respectfully. If we see it merely as a resource to be exploited, we will damage it. This implies we should adopt a perspective of reverence and interconnectedness with nature to ensure sustainable and respectful use of natural elements.

2. List the sacred sites in your region. Enquire into why they are considered sacred. Are there stories connected with these sacred places? Write a short essay of 150 words. (Hint : You could speak to elders in your family and community, discuss with your teacher, read books and articles, etc., to gather relevant information.)

Ans :

In my region, several sacred sites hold deep spiritual and cultural significance. One of the most revered is the Kalka Mandir, dedicated to Goddess Kali, believed to protect the town and its people. Devotees say the temple was built after the goddess appeared in a villager's dream, guiding him to a hidden idol. Another sacred place is the Hanuman Gadhi, where Lord Hanuman is worshipped. It is said that prayers offered here remove obstacles and bring strength and courage.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 8

HOW THE LAND BECOMES SACRED

NODIA

SUMMARY

1. SACREDNESS

Sacredness involves finding deep religious or spiritual significance in something, making it worthy of respect and reverence. This 'something' can be a specific location like a shrine, a journey such as a pilgrimage, the route it follows, or even the land itself. It connects religion, spirituality, geography, tradition, and, in India, potentially more. Virtually every religion and belief system in India identifies certain places as sacred. Examples include places of worship for religions originating outside India, like Islam, Christianity, Judaism, and Zoroastrianism, which are visited not only by their followers but often by people of other faiths too. Religions originating in India naturally have numerous sacred sites.

2. PILGRIMAGES

India has a long-standing tradition of pilgrimage (tirthayatra) to sacred sites (tirthas). This ancient practice is considered both an outer and inner journey, involving specific codes of conduct. For millennia, Indians have traversed the subcontinent, often without modern transport, leading to the entire geography being imbued with sacredness. Jawaharlal Nehru noted this tradition fostered a sense of shared country and culture. Examples include :

1. Buddhism : Sites linked to the Buddha's life or relics, like Sanchi and Bodh Gaya.
2. Sikhism : Takhts (seats of authority) like Akal Takht and Takht Sri Patna Sahib, associated with Gurus. Sikhs aspire to visit these at least once. Guru Nanak and others also undertook pilgrimages to various sites.
3. Jainism : Tirthas associated with Tirthankaras' lives or liberation, including natural features like Mount Abu and Girnar.
4. Hinduism : Numerous sites across the country, from the Himalayas (Badrinath, Kedarnath) to the south (Kanyakumari, Rameswaram). Challenging pilgrimages, like the trek to Sabarimala or the Pandharpur wari in Maharashtra, often symbolize the difficulties of the inner spiritual path.

3. MORE SACRED SITES

Beyond specific shrines, Hindu, folk, and tribal traditions often regard elements of Nature—mountains, rivers, forests, trees, animals, stones—as sacred. This stems from perceiving a divine presence in all of Nature, ultimately viewing the Earth itself as Bhudevi (Mother Earth). Examples include :

1. Niyam Dongar hill, sacred to the Dongria Khond tribe in Jharkhand.
2. Sacred peaks associated with gods for the Toda community in the Nilgiris.
3. Protection of sacred mountains, caves, lakes, etc., identified by the Sikkim government.

4. BECOMING AWARE OF SACRED GEOGRAPHY

Networks of interconnected sacred sites span India, creating a "sacred geography" where the land itself is revered. Key examples include :

1. Char Dham : Four major sites situated in the four cardinal directions of India.
2. Jyotirlingas : Twelve highly auspicious shrines dedicated to Shiva.
3. Shakti Pithas : 51 sites across the subcontinent marking where parts of the Goddess Sati's body fell, symbolizing the entire land as the divine mother's body. Travelling these networks exposed pilgrims to diverse languages, customs, and foods while highlighting cultural commonalities, fostering integration. People travelled not just for religion but also for trade, learning, and philosophical debate, often converging on similar routes and enriching each other's experiences.

5. SACRED ECOLOGY

Many tirthas are situated in natural settings like riverbanks, forests, or mountains, reinforcing the

Ans :

(i) He would likely face challenges crossing hilly terrain or plateaus (like parts of the Malwa plateau or Vindhya/Satpura ranges depending on the exact route) and possibly arid zones towards Gujarat.

(ii) India trading with the Mediterranean world and finds on islands like Socotra indicating exchange with regions including Rome, suggesting established sea routes were used.

(iii) Risks included dangerous travel (bandits, shipwreck, harsh terrain), high costs, and uncertain markets. Rewards included potentially high profits from exchanging valuable Indian textiles for luxury foreign goods like Roman glass, enhancing wealth and status.

153. Imagine you are living in Pataliputra during the reign of Chandragupta II. You hear that the emperor patronizes poets like Kalidasa, scholars like Aryabhata, and also supports Buddhist monasteries like Nalanda.

(i) What specific fields of achievement are represented by Kalidasa and Aryabhata?

(ii) What does the emperor's support for both Hindu court poets and Buddhist monasteries indicate about his policy?

(iii) Evaluate why this period might be called a 'classical age' based on this scenario.

Ans :

(i) Kalidasa represents achievements in Sanskrit literature and poetry, while Aryabhata represents advancements in mathematics and astronomy.

(ii) It indicates a policy of broad cultural patronage and likely religious tolerance, supporting excellence across different intellectual, artistic, and religious traditions within the empire.

(iii) The simultaneous flourishing and patronage of high literature (Kalidasa), advanced science/math (Aryabhata), and major religious/educational institutions (Nalanda) points to a period of exceptional, multi-faceted cultural and intellectual achievement, justifying the term 'classical age'.

154. A Pallava king in Kanchipuram decides to build a large stone temple dedicated to Shiva. He commissions sculptors and architects and grants land for the temple's upkeep. He also supports the local ghatika (learning centre) where scholars study various texts.

(i) What does the king's patronage of temple building indicate about his priorities?

(ii) How does supporting a ghatika contribute to the kingdom's prestige?

(iii) Compare this king's actions with those of the Gupta rulers.

Ans :

(i) It indicates his devotion to Shiva and the importance of religion in his kingdom. It also serves to display his power, piety, and support for art and architecture.

(ii) Supporting a learning centre like a ghatika fosters intellectual growth, attracts scholars, enhances the kingdom's reputation as a centre of learning and culture, and potentially trains administrators.

(iii) Similar to Gupta rulers (who built temples and supported Nalanda), the Pallava king engages in religious patronage (temples) and supports learning (ghatika). This shows a common pattern of rulers across different regions using cultural and religious patronage to enhance their rule and legacy.

155. In the late 5th century CE, Gupta officials in the northwest report increasing raids by Huna tribes from Central Asia. The imperial army struggles to contain them effectively, and local tributary rulers seem hesitant to fully support the Gupta forces.

(i) What major threat to the Gupta empire do the Huna raids represent?

(ii) Why might local tributary rulers be hesitant to fully support the imperial army?

(iii) Evaluate how these combined factors (external invasion and internal wavering) could lead to the empire's decline.

Ans :

(i) They represent a serious external military threat that weakens the empire's borders, drains resources through constant defense efforts, and disrupts stability in the affected regions.

(ii) They might perceive the central Gupta authority as weakening, see an opportunity to assert more independence, or be unwilling to bear the cost and risk of fighting powerful invaders for a potentially declining empire.

(iii) The combination is highly destabilizing. External attacks deplete military and economic resources, while lack of full internal support further weakens the empire's ability to respond effectively, creating a cycle of decline and loss of control over territories.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

A third sacred site is the River Ghats, especially during festivals like Chhath Puja, when people gather to thank the Sun God. Elders tell stories of ancient sages meditating by the river, which adds to its sanctity.
These sites are not just places of worship, but also hubs of community bonding and cultural traditions. The stories and rituals associated with them continue to inspire faith and unity across generations.

3. Why do you think natural elements like rivers, mountains and forests are considered sacred for the people? How do they contribute to our lives?

Ans :

Natural elements are considered sacred because they are often seen as manifestations of the divine, sources of life, and settings for spiritual events. They contribute by providing essential resources (water, food, air), sustaining ecosystems, offering spaces for spiritual solace, and inspiring cultural traditions.

4. Why do people visit a tirtha or other sacred sites?

Ans :

People visit tirthas or sacred sites for spiritual merit, purification, to fulfill vows, to connect with the divine or revered figures, to participate in religious ceremonies, and for inner peace or personal transformation.

5. How did the ancient pilgrimage routes help in fostering trade during those times? Do you think the sacred sites help in developing the economy of the region?

Ans :

Ancient pilgrimage routes often overlapped with trade routes. Pilgrims created demand for goods and services, which traders supplied, thus fostering economic activity. Yes, sacred sites often boost regional economies through tourism, sale of religious items, accommodation, and food services.

6. How do sacred places influence the culture and traditions of the people living near them?

Ans :

Sacred places become centers for festivals, rituals, art forms (music, dance), and unique local customs. They shape the community's identity, social life, moral values, and annual calendars, often becoming hubs for transmitting traditions and knowledge.

NODIA

From the various sacred sites of India, select two of your choice and create a project explaining their significance.

Ans :

Choices 1 : Bodh Gaya (Bihar) : Significance : Where Siddhartha Gautama attained enlightenment and became the Buddha. It's a primary Buddhist pilgrimage site, with the Mahabodhi Temple (a UNESCO World Heritage Site) and the Bodhi Tree.
Choices 1 : Rameswaram (Tamil Nadu) : Significance : One of the Char Dham; important Hindu pilgrimage site. It's associated with Lord Rama's journey to Lanka. The Ramanathaswamy Temple is famous for its long corridors.

8. What is the two-fold significance of a tirthayatra or a pilgrimage?

Ans :

1. A tirthayatra has a spiritual significance, involving an inner journey for purification and connection with the divine.
2. It also has a socio-cultural significance, fostering national integration by connecting diverse people and regions, and promoting cultural exchange.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is 'sacredness' primarily defined as in the context of places or journeys?
(A) Having historical importance or great antiquity
(B) Possessing deep religious or spiritual value
(C) Being economically prosperous and very wealthy
(D) Being scientifically significant or unique

Ans :

(B) Possessing deep religious or spiritual value
Sacredness, in this context, refers to something holding deep religious or spiritual significance, making it worthy of respect, reverence, and often considered holy or divine. This can apply to locations, journeys, or natural features.

particular sacred site, though part of the larger sacred geography of India.

29. Which type of sacred site is correctly matched with its primary religious association in India?
(A) Mahabodhi Stupa - Primarily a Jain pilgrimage site
(B) Akal Takht - A key Hindu philosophical school
(C) Niyam Dongar - Sacred hill for Dongria Kondh
(D) Velankanni Church - An important Islamic Dargah

Ans :

(C) Niyam Dongar - Sacred hill for Dongria Kondh
Niyam Dongar is a hill in Odisha considered sacred by the Dongria Kondh tribe, who believe their deity Niyam Raja resides there. Mahabodhi is Buddhist, Akal Takht is Sikh, and Velankanni is a Christian church.

30. Assertion (A) : Sacred groves are traditionally protected by local communities due to their religious significance.
Reason (R) : These protected groves often become important reservoirs of local biodiversity and aid in water conservation.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Sacred groves are indeed protected due to religious beliefs. This protection, often prohibiting felling trees or hunting, inadvertently leads to the conservation of biodiversity and can help maintain local water sources within these areas.

31. Which traditional name for a sacred grove is INCORRECTLY paired with its regional language/location?
(A) Kavu - Malayalam language
(B) Devarai - Marathi language
(C) Khlaw Kyntang - Hindi (Himachal Pradesh)
(D) Oran - Rajasthan state

Ans :

(C) Khlaw Kyntang - Hindi (Himachal Pradesh)
'Khlaw Kyntang' is the Khasi term for sacred groves in Meghalaya. While Himachal Pradesh has sacred groves (often called 'Dev Van'), this specific term is from Meghalaya. The other pairings are correct.

32. Consider the following regarding sacred sites in India :
1. The Kumbh Mela is held annually at Prayagraj.
2. The Peepul tree is sacred only to Buddhists.
3. Jain tirthas are often places where Tirthankaras attained liberation.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for that?
(A) 3 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 3 only
Kumbh Mela at Prayagraj is held every six/twelve years. The Peepul tree is sacred to multiple faiths (Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism, Sikhism). Jain tirthas are indeed often associated with significant events in the lives of Tirthankaras, including liberation.

33. A group of pilgrims travels thousands of kilometers, from the southern tip of India to the high Himalayas and to the eastern and western coasts, visiting specific ancient shrines. This journey, covering the diverse geography of India, is most likely which of these?
(A) A local village festival procession
(B) A Char Dham Yatra of great significance
(C) A trading expedition for rare goods
(D) A scientific survey of flora and fauna

Ans :

(B) A Char Dham Yatra of great significance
The Char Dham Yatra involves pilgrimages to four specific holy sites located in the four cardinal directions of India (Badrinath in the north, Rameswaram in the south, Puri in the east, and Dwarka in the west), encompassing a vast geographical and cultural journey.

34. The ancient Sanskrit invocation "gange cha yamune chaiva godavari sarasvati..." calls upon major _____ to manifest in the water.
(A) mountains
(B) deities

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

9. A tribal community believes that a particular mountain is the abode of their supreme deity who provides for their sustenance, and they prohibit cutting trees there. This belief system is an example of what?
(A) Regarding elements of Nature as quite sacred
(B) A purely economic use of forest resources
(C) A scientific approach to resource management
(D) A modern environmental conservation strategy

Ans :

(A) Regarding elements of Nature as quite sacred
This describes a belief system where natural elements, like mountains and forests, are considered sacred and often personified as deities. Such reverence for nature is common in many indigenous and folk traditions.

10. The concept of the whole of planet Earth being considered sacred is embodied in the term Bhudevi, or _____ Earth.
(A) Sister
(B) Mother
(C) Father
(D) Brother

Ans :

(B) Mother
In many Indian traditions, the Earth is revered as Bhudevi, or Mother Earth. This personification signifies a deep respect for the planet as a nurturing, life-sustaining entity, considering the land itself sacred.

11. How does the Hindu concept of Char Dham Yatra relate to the geography of India?
(A) The sites are clustered in North India
(B) The sites are mainly on the west coast
(C) The sites are located in four corners
(D) The sites follow a single river valley

Ans :

(C) The sites are located in four corners
The Char Dham (four abodes) pilgrimage in Hinduism involves visiting four sacred sites deliberately located in the northern (Badrinath), southern (Rameswaram), eastern (Puri), and western (Dwarka) corners of India, symbolizing a sacred circumambulation of the land.

12. Which of the following correctly pairs a sacred network with its associated deity or tradition?
(A) 12 Jyotirlingas - Associated with Goddess Shakti
(B) 51 Shakti Pithas - Associated with Lord Vishnu
(C) Char Dham - Primary sites for Buddhist path
(D) Takhts - Seats of authority in Sikhism

Ans :

(D) Takhts - Seats of authority in Sikhism
Takhts are historically significant seats of spiritual and temporal authority within Sikhism. Jyotirlingas are associated with Shiva, Shakti Pithas with Goddess Shakti (Sati), and Char Dham are key Hindu pilgrimage sites.

13. The story of the 51 Shakti Pithas, where parts of Sati's body fell across the subcontinent, symbolically implies what?
(A) The divine mother's anger at all humanity
(B) The fragmentation of religious authority
(C) The entire land becoming the divine body
(D) The need for building temples everywhere

Ans :

(C) The entire land becoming the divine body
The legend of the Shakti Pithas, where parts of the Divine Mother Sati's body are said to have fallen across the Indian subcontinent, symbolically sanctifies the entire land, transforming it into the body of the goddess.

14. The Nadistuti Sukta of the Rigveda is a hymn in praise of what natural features?
(A) Sacred mountains
(B) Dense forests
(C) Major rivers
(D) Vast oceans

Ans :

(C) Major rivers
The Nadistuti Sukta from the Rigveda is a hymn dedicated to the praise of rivers (nadi). It invokes and venerates several major rivers of ancient northwestern India, highlighting their importance in Vedic culture.

15. What is a 'sangam' in the context of Indian rivers and sacred sites?
(A) The source of a major river high up
(B) A confluence or meeting point of rivers
(C) A man-made canal diverting river water
(D) A seasonal river that dries up mostly

Ans :

(B) A confluence or meeting point of rivers
A 'sangam' refers to the confluence, or the meeting point, of two or more rivers. Such confluences are

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

2. The Dargah Sharif, a revered shrine visited by people of many faiths, is located in which Indian city?
(A) Hyderabad
(B) Ajmer
(C) Lucknow
(D) Delhi

Ans :

(B) Ajmer
The Dargah Sharif, the tomb of Sufi saint Moinuddin Chishti, is a major pilgrimage site located in Ajmer, Rajasthan. It attracts devotees from various religious backgrounds, reflecting India's syncretic culture.

3. Why are places like Bodh Gaya, where Buddha attained enlightenment, considered sacred in Buddhism?
(A) They are centers of political power
(B) They are associated with key life events
(C) They have the oldest architectural designs
(D) They offer the best views of nature

Ans :

(B) They are associated with key life events
In Buddhism, places become sacred primarily due to their association with significant events in the life of the Buddha or other important Buddhist figures. Bodh Gaya is sacred as the site of Buddha's enlightenment.

4. What is a 'relic' in a religious or spiritual context?
(A) An ancient manuscript containing sacred texts
(B) A part of a saint's body or belonging
(C) A traditional song sung during worship
(D) A symbolic painting depicting divine scenes

Ans :

(B) A part of a saint's body or belonging
A relic is often a part of the physical remains of a saint or a venerated person, or an object with which they had contact, preserved for purposes of veneration as a tangible memorial.

5. The Akal Takht, a primary seat of Sikh spiritual authority, is part of which famous Gurdwara complex?
(A) Takht Sri Patna Sahib, Patna city
(B) Gurdwara Bangla Sahib, New Delhi
(C) Golden Temple complex, Amritsar
(D) Takht Sri Keshgarh Sahib, Anandpur

Ans :

(C) Golden Temple complex, Amritsar
The Akal Takht, meaning "Throne of the Timeless One," is one of the five takhts (seats of power) of Sikhism. It is located within the Harmandir Sahib (Golden Temple) complex in Amritsar, Punjab.

6. What does the term 'Tirthayatra' refer to in Indian traditions?
(A) A journey undertaken for trade or commerce
(B) A military expedition to conquer new lands
(C) A pilgrimage to a sacred place or site
(D) A royal tour of the kingdom's provinces

Ans :

(C) A pilgrimage to a sacred place or site
'Tirthayatra' is a Sanskrit term that translates to pilgrimage. It refers to a journey undertaken by devotees to sacred sites (tirthas) for spiritual merit, purification, or to fulfill religious vows.

NODIA

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

7. What does the ancient and continuous tradition of pilgrimage across the Indian subcontinent signify about its geography?
(A) The geography was seen as mostly hostile
(B) The entire geography came to be sacred
(C) Only specific temple towns were important
(D) Travel was restricted to very few routes

Ans :

(B) The entire geography came to be sacred
The longstanding tradition of Indians undertaking pilgrimages, crisscrossing the vast subcontinent for millennia, has led to the perception of the entire land itself as sacred, with countless sites revered across diverse traditions.

8. In Jainism, what are 'Tirthankaras'?
(A) Kings who patronized Jain monastic orders
(B) Scholars who wrote commentaries on texts
(C) Supreme spiritual preachers of dharma
(D) Artisans who built famous Jain temples

Ans :

(C) Supreme spiritual preachers of dharma
In Jainism, Tirthankaras are revered as the supreme preachers of dharma, enlightened beings who have conquered samsara (the cycle of death and rebirth) and have shown the path to liberation for others to follow.

22. The tradition of Pandharpur wari, an annual pilgrimage undertaken by lakhs of devotees on foot, is primarily associated with which Indian state?
(A) Tamil Nadu state
(B) Maharashtra state
(C) Uttar Pradesh state
(D) Gujarat state

Ans :

(B) Maharashtra state
The Pandharpur wari is a centuries-old annual pilgrimage (yatra) in Maharashtra, where devotees, known as Varkaris, walk for many days in large groups to the Vithoba temple in Pandharpur.

23. The overlap of pilgrimage routes and trade routes in ancient India had what significant consequence?
(A) It led to frequent conflicts between groups
(B) It restricted travel to only one purpose
(C) It facilitated cultural exchange and new ideas
(D) It caused the decline of all sacred sites

Ans :

(C) It facilitated cultural exchange and new ideas
When pilgrimage routes and trade routes converged, it brought diverse groups of people—pilgrims and merchants—into contact. This interaction fostered the exchange of goods, experiences, stories, and ideas, enriching cultures across regions.

24. Which of the following is NOT a primary reason why mountains are often considered sacred in many cultures?
(A) Their height symbolizes a gateway from earth
(B) They are easily accessible for all people
(C) They are often associated with deities, legends
(D) The journey to them can be spiritual

Ans :

(B) They are easily accessible for all people
Mountains are often revered for their imposing height, association with deities, and the symbolic spiritual journey their ascent represents. However, their difficult accessibility is often part of their mystique, not a reason for sacredness.

25. A modern law grants a mountain the rights and responsibilities of a human being, acknowledging an indigenous community's worldview that the mountain is their ancestor. This action primarily reflects what principle?
(A) Exploiting natural resources for economic gain
(B) Recognizing and respecting sacred geography
(C) Prioritizing urban development over nature
(D) Establishing scientific research facilities

Ans :

(B) Recognizing and respecting sacred geography
Granting legal personhood to a natural feature like a mountain, based on indigenous beliefs that it is sacred or an ancestor, is a profound way of recognizing and legally protecting sacred geography and associated cultural worldviews.

26. Which of the following is one of the Char Dham pilgrimage sites located in the eastern part of India?
(A) Badrinath
(B) Dwarka
(C) Puri
(D) Rameswaram

Ans :

(C) Puri
Puri, in Odisha, home to the Jagannath Temple, is the Char Dham site representing the eastern point of this all-India pilgrimage circuit. Badrinath is in the north, Dwarka in the west, and Rameswaram in the south.

27. What does the term 'Tirtha' literally signify in Sanskrit, before its symbolic spiritual meaning?
(A) A high mountain peak
(B) A dense and dark forest
(C) A place to cross a river
(D) A royal meeting hall

Ans :

(C) A place to cross a river
Literally, a 'tirtha' is a ford, a shallow place in a river or other body of water where one can cross. Symbolically, it became a sacred place where one could 'cross over' from worldly life to a higher spiritual state.

28. How does the reverence for Bhudevi (Mother Earth) differ from the sacredness attributed to a specific tirtha like Haridwar?
(A) Bhudevi is local; Haridwar is universal idea
(B) Bhudevi is universal; Haridwar is specific
(C) Bhudevi is man-made; Haridwar is natural
(D) Bhudevi is temporary; Haridwar is permanent

Ans :

(B) Bhudevi is universal; Haridwar is specific
Bhudevi represents the sacredness of the entire planet Earth as a divine mother, a universal concept. A specific tirtha like Haridwar is a

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

often considered particularly sacred in India, like the Triveni Sangam at Prayagraj for all.

16. Assertion (A) : The Kumbh Mela is held at four specific locations in India : Haridwar, Prayagraj, Nashik, and Ujjain.
Reason (R) : These are the places where, according to legend, drops of amrita (nectar of immortality) fell during the amrita manthana.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Kumbh Mela is indeed celebrated at Haridwar, Prayagraj, Nashik, and Ujjain. The traditional belief is that these sites were sanctified when drops of amrita, the nectar of immortality, fell there during its churning (amrita manthana).

17. Which of the following is an INCORRECT association regarding sacred trees or groves?
(A) Peepul (Bodhi) Tree - Sacred in Buddhism, Hinduism, Jainism
(B) Sacred Groves - Protected forest patches with deities
(C) Niyam Dongar Hill - Sacred to the Toda tribe
(D) Shola Forests - Considered sacred by Todas of Nilgiris

Ans :

(C) Niyam Dongar Hill - Sacred to the Toda tribe
Niyam Dongar hill is sacred to the Dongria Khond tribe of Odisha, who believe it to be the abode of Niyam Raja. The Toda tribe, associated with the Nilgiris, has its own distinct sacred sites.

18. Consider the following statements about sacred geography :
1. The Char Dham sites are all located in the Himalayan region.
2. The Peepul tree (Ficus religiosa) is considered sacred in multiple Indian religions.
3. Sacred groves often contribute to biodiversity conservation in the region.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
The Char Dham sites are in India's four corners. The Peepul tree is indeed sacred across several faiths. Sacred groves, by being protected, often harbor rich biodiversity and aid conservation efforts.

19. A community in Meghalaya protects a specific forest patch, believing it to be the abode of a local deity named Ryngkew or Basa, and prohibits activities like hunting or tree felling within it. This forest patch is an example of a :
(A) National Park established by government
(B) Commercial timber plantation only
(C) Sacred grove preserved by tradition
(D) Designated archaeological heritage site

Ans :

(C) Sacred grove preserved by tradition
This description perfectly fits the concept of a sacred grove. These are segments of forests protected by local communities due to their religious beliefs, often dedicated to a deity, thereby conserving biodiversity.

20. The ancient Indian trade route connecting the northwestern and eastern parts of the subcontinent was known as the _____.
(A) Dakshinapatha
(B) Suvarnapathal
(C) Uttarapatha
(D) Resham Marg

Ans :

(C) Uttarapatha
The Uttarapatha was a major ancient northern trade route. It played a crucial role in facilitating commerce and cultural exchange by connecting the northwestern regions of the Indian subcontinent with the Gangetic plains and further east.

21. What is 'Punyakshetra' in the context of sacred geography?
(A) A historical battlefield of great renown
(B) A royal palace of an ancient dynasty
(C) A sacred space or a holy territory
(D) A center for astronomical calculations

Ans :

(C) A sacred space or a holy territory
'Punyakshetra' translates to a holy field, sacred ground, or meritorious space. It denotes a geographical area that is considered particularly sacred or spiritually potent due to its associations with deities, saints, or significant events.

NODIA

(C) rivers
(D) winds

Ans :

(C) rivers
This well-known Sanskrit shloka is an invocation of India's major sacred rivers, including Ganga, Yamuna, Godavari, Sarasvati, Narmada, Sindhu, and Kaveri, asking for their holy presence in the water being consecrated for rituals.

35. What does the term 'amrita manthana' refer to in Hindu mythology related to the Kumbh Mela?
(A) The churning of the cosmic ocean for nectar
(B) A sacred fire ritual performed by sages
(C) The coronation ceremony of a divine king
(D) A celestial battle between gods and sages

Ans :

(A) The churning of the cosmic ocean for nectar
'Amrita manthana' refers to the mythological episode of the churning of the cosmic ocean by the devas (gods) and asuras (demons) to obtain amrita, the nectar of immortality. Drops of this nectar are said to have fallen where Kumbh Melas are held.

36. The botanical name 'Ficus religiosa' refers to which tree that is held sacred in multiple Indian faiths?
(A) Banyan tree
(B) Neem tree
(C) Peepul tree
(D) Mango tree

Ans :

(C) Peepul tree
'Ficus religiosa' is the botanical name for the Peepul tree (also known as Bodhi tree or Ashvattha). This tree is considered sacred in Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism, and Sikhism, associated with enlightenment and divinity.

37. The tradition of protecting 'sacred groves' primarily contributes to what important environmental benefit?
(A) Increasing agricultural land area
(B) Promoting large-scale industrial growth
(C) Conserving local biodiversity and ecosystems
(D) Facilitating urban expansion and new roads

Ans :

(C) Conserving local biodiversity and ecosystems
By prohibiting activities like tree felling and hunting within their boundaries due to religious beliefs, sacred groves act as refugia for local flora and fauna, thereby playing a crucial role in the conservation of biodiversity.

38. How does the concept of 'sacred geography' in India primarily view the land itself?
(A) As a resource purely for economic exploitation
(B) As an obstacle to human progress often
(C) As inherently divine and worthy of respect
(D) As a neutral space with no special meaning

Ans :

(C) As inherently divine and worthy of respect
The concept of sacred geography in India, developed through millennia of pilgrimages and reverence for natural features, perceives the land itself not merely as a physical entity but as imbued with divinity and deserving of profound respect.

39. Which of the following pilgrimage sites is correctly associated with its primary religious tradition in India?
(A) Sabarimala - Primarily a Buddhist center
(B) Girnar - A major Islamic Dargah location
(C) Rameswaram - One of the Hindu Char Dham
(D) Amritsar Golden Temple - A key Jain Tirtha

Ans :

(C) Rameswaram - One of the Hindu Char Dham
Rameswaram in Tamil Nadu is one of the four sacred abodes (Char Dham) in Hinduism. Sabarimala is Hindu (Ayyappa), Girnar is significant for Jains and Hindus, and the Golden Temple is the holiest Sikh Gurdwara.

40. A historian studying ancient Indian texts finds numerous references to merchants and pilgrims traveling along the same routes, often interacting and exchanging goods and ideas. This indicates that in ancient India :
(A) Pilgrimage and trade were strictly separate activities
(B) Pilgrimage routes often served as important trade conduits
(C) Traders were prohibited from visiting any sacred places
(D) Pilgrims only traveled in complete isolation from others

Ans :

(B) Pilgrimage routes often served as important trade conduits
The convergence of pilgrimage and trade routes was common in ancient India. Pilgrims required goods and services, which traders provided,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

and the movement of people along these routes facilitated both spiritual journeys and economic exchange, fostering cultural interaction.

41. Which of the following natural features is LEAST LIKELY to be considered a 'tirtha' or sacred site in its own right within Indian traditions?
(A) A major river confluence (sangam)
(B) A high, snow-capped mountain peak
(C) An ordinary agricultural farming field
(D) A dense, ancient forest grove

Ans :

(C) An ordinary agricultural farming field
While the Earth itself (Bhudevi) is sacred, and specific fields might have local sanctity, an ordinary agricultural field is less likely to be a widely recognized tirtha compared to prominent natural features like river confluences, sacred mountains, or ancient forest groves.

42. Which specific tree is often cited as a direct descendant of the original tree under which the Buddha attained enlightenment at Bodh Gaya?
(A) The Sal tree
(B) The Banyan tree
(C) The Bodhi tree
(D) The Ashoka tree

Ans :

(C) The Bodhi tree
The tree at the Mahabodhi Temple in Bodh Gaya is revered as a descendant of the original Bodhi tree (a Peepul tree, Ficus religiosa) under which Siddhartha Gautama is said to have attained enlightenment and became the Buddha.

43. What does the term 'intangible heritage', as used by UNESCO for the Kumbh Mela, primarily refer to?
(A) Physical monuments and archaeological new sites
(B) Traditions, living expressions, and practices
(C) Collections of ancient artifacts in museums
(D) Natural landscapes with unique geology only

Ans :

(B) Traditions, living expressions, and practices
Intangible cultural heritage, as defined by UNESCO, includes traditions or living expressions inherited from ancestors and passed on to descendants, such as oral traditions, performing arts, social practices, rituals, and festive events like the Kumbh Mela.

44. How does the purpose of a 'pilgrimage' generally differ from that of a 'tourist visit' to a location?
(A) Pilgrimage is for leisure; tourism is spiritual
(B) Pilgrimage is spiritual; tourism is leisure
(C) Both have identical motivations and results
(D) Pilgrimage is shorter; tourism is longer stay

Ans :

(B) Pilgrimage is spiritual; tourism is leisure
A pilgrimage is primarily undertaken for religious or spiritual reasons, often involving devotion, penance, or seeking blessings. A tourist visit is generally for leisure, recreation, sightseeing, or experiencing different cultures without necessarily a deep spiritual motive.

45. The perception of the natural landscape itself as sacred space or _____ has helped in protecting and preserving Nature in India.
(A) karmabhumi
(B) punyakshetra
(C) yagyashala
(D) gurukul

Ans :

(B) punyakshetra
Punyakshetra, meaning sacred space or holy land, is a concept where the natural landscape itself is imbued with spiritual significance. This perception has traditionally encouraged the protection and preservation of such natural environments.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF
NODIA

46. The involvement of communities in protecting sacred groves, believing deities reside there, reflects what kind of relationship with nature?
(A) A purely exploitative and commercial one
(B) A relationship of detachment and indifference
(C) One of reverence, interdependence, respect
(D) A relationship based on scientific study

Ans :

(C) One of reverence, interdependence, respect
Protecting sacred groves due to the belief that they are abodes of deities signifies a relationship with nature rooted in reverence, a sense of interdependence where nature provides and humans protect, and deep respect for the environment.

47. A scholar studies ancient texts that describe trade routes like Uttarapatha and Dakshinapatha, noting the goods exchanged (gems, spices, textiles) and the interaction between merchants and pilgrims. This study primarily highlights the :
(A) Military strategies of ancient Indian empires
(B) Agricultural practices in different regions
(C) Socio-economic and cultural interconnectedness
(D) Development of astronomical knowledge

Ans :

(C) Socio-economic and cultural interconnectedness
The study of ancient trade routes and the interactions along them reveals the socio-economic connections (trade in goods) and cultural exchanges (interaction of people, ideas) that linked diverse parts of the Indian subcontinent.

48. Which of the following Indian pilgrimage sites is INCORRECTLY matched with its primary religious significance or tradition?
(A) Rameswaram - One of the 12 Jyotirlingas of Shiva
(B) Bodh Gaya - Site of Buddha's first sermon given
(C) Mount Abu - Important Jain tirtha with temples
(D) Haridwar - Site of Kumbh Mela on Ganga

Ans :

(B) Bodh Gaya - Site of Buddha's first sermon given
Bodh Gaya is sacred as the place where Buddha attained enlightenment. His first sermon was delivered at Sarnath. Rameswaram is a Jyotirlinga and Char Dham site, Mount Abu is a Jain tirtha, and Haridwar hosts the Kumbh Mela.

49. Assertion (A) : The concept of sacred geography is unique to India and not found in any other cultures worldwide.
Reason (R) : Ancient Greece, Native American traditions, and Maori culture also have examples of sacred landmarks and reverence for nature.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; the reverence for sacred geography and natural elements is found in many cultures globally. Reason (R) correctly points out examples like ancient Greece, Native American, and Maori traditions.

50. Consider the following statements about sacred sites and practices :
1. The Nadistuti Sukta in the Rigveda praises sacred mountains.
2. The Pandharpur wari is an annual pilgrimage to a Shiva temple.
3. The Toda tribe of the Nilgiris regards many mountain peaks as sacred.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this?
(A) 3 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 3 only
The Nadistuti Sukta praises rivers. The Pandharpur wari is to the Vithoba (Vishnu) temple. The Toda tribe indeed considers many Nilgiri peaks sacred to them.

51. The journey to many hilltop or mountain shrines in India, traditionally involving an arduous trek, often symbolizes the difficulties of the _____ path.
(A) political
(B) economic
(C) inner
(D) social

Ans :

(C) inner
The challenging physical journey to reach remote hilltop or mountain shrines is often seen metaphorically, symbolizing the arduous nature of the inner spiritual path towards self-realization or communion with the divine.

52. What is a 'Tirthankara' in the Jain tradition?
(A) A wealthy patron who builds Jain temples
(B) A king who converts to Jainism religion
(C) A liberated soul who guides others on path
(D) A scholar who writes Jain sacred texts

Ans :

(C) A liberated soul who guides others on path
In Jainism, a Tirthankara is a 'ford-maker', an enlightened human being who has conquered the

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

65. Which Indian religious tradition is INCORRECTLY paired with a key sacred concept or site mentioned?
(A) Buddhism - Stupas (relic mounds or monuments)
(B) Sikhism - Tirthankaras (supreme spiritual guides)
(C) Jainism - Tirthas (sacred places of pilgrimage)
(D) Hinduism - Jyotirlingas (shrines of Lord Shiva)

Ans :

(B) Sikhism - Tirthankaras (supreme spiritual guides)
Tirthankaras are the supreme spiritual preceptors in Jainism, not Sikhism. Sikhism reveres its ten Gurus and the Guru Granth Sahib. Stupas are Buddhist, Tirthas are Jain/Hindu, and Jyotirlingas are Hindu.

66. Assertion (A) : Many tirthas in India are located on the banks of rivers or in mountainous regions.
Reason (R) : Natural landscapes themselves are often perceived as sacred spaces (punyakshetra) in Indian traditions.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The location of many tirthas at sites of natural beauty or significance (rivers, mountains) is often because these natural features themselves are considered sacred or as manifestations of the divine in many Indian spiritual traditions.

67. Consider the following statements regarding sacred sites and ecology :
1. The Nadistuti Sukta is a Rigvedic hymn praising sacred groves.
2. Sacred groves are found only in the Himalayan region of India.
3. The concept of Bhudevi regards the entire Earth as sacred.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for that?
(A) 3 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 3 only
The Nadistuti Sukta praises rivers. Sacred groves are found in various parts of India, not just the Himalayas. The concept of Bhudevi indeed personifies the Earth as sacred Mother.

68. The legend of amrita manthana, involving the churning of the cosmic ocean for the nectar of immortality, is associated with the origin of the _____ Mela.
(A) Pushkar
(B) Sonepur
(C) Kumbh
(D) Gangasagar

Ans :

(C) Kumbh
The mythological story of amrita manthana, where devas and asuras churned the ocean for amrita, is central to the origin legend of the Kumbh Mela. Drops of this nectar are said to have fallen on the four sites where the Mela is held.

NODIA

69. What is the primary significance of 'Shakti Pithas' in Hindu tradition?
(A) They are sites where great sages performed yajnas
(B) They are places where Lord Vishnu's avatars came
(C) They are spots where parts of Goddess Sati fell
(D) They are ancient centers of astronomical learning

Ans :

(C) They are spots where parts of Goddess Sati fell
Shakti Pithas are highly revered shrines in Shaktism (a denomination of Hinduism focusing on the Divine Feminine). They are believed to be places where body parts of Goddess Sati, the consort of Lord Shiva, fell to Earth.

70. The Maori people of New Zealand regard which mountain as their ancestor and therefore sacred?
(A) Mount Fuji
(B) Mount Everest
(C) Taranaki Maunga
(D) Mount Olympus

Ans :

(C) Taranaki Maunga

the primary purpose of a Tirthayatra is spiritual or religious, not purely commercial. It involves devotion and an inner transformation.

59. The pilgrimage to Sabarimala temple in Kerala is dedicated to which deity?
(A) Lord Shiva
(B) Lord Vishnu
(C) Lord Ayyappa
(D) Goddess Parvati

Ans :

(C) Lord Ayyappa
The Sabarimala temple in Kerala is a major pilgrimage destination dedicated to Lord Ayyappa, a syncretic deity revered by millions who undertake an arduous trek to the hilltop shrine, especially during the annual festival season.

60. What is the symbolic meaning of the Peepul tree being called the 'Bodhi tree' in Buddhism?
(A) It represents the tree under which Buddha was born
(B) It is the tree under which Buddha passed away
(C) It signifies the tree of worldly desires found
(D) It is the tree under which Buddha got enlightened

Ans :

(D) It is the tree under which Buddha got enlightened
In Buddhism, the Peepul tree (Ficus religiosa) under which Siddhartha Gautama meditated and attained enlightenment (Bodhi) is known as the Bodhi tree. It is a central symbol of wisdom and liberation.

61. How does the concept of a 'takht' in Sikhism differ from a general 'Gurdwara'?
(A) Takhts are smaller; Gurdwaras are larger in size
(B) Takhts are seats of authority; Gurdwaras are places
(C) Takhts are for meditation; Gurdwaras for feasts
(D) Takhts are temporary; Gurdwaras are all permanent

Ans :

(B) Takhts are seats of authority; Gurdwaras are places
While all Gurdwaras are places of worship for Sikhs, a Takht is a primary seat of religious and temporal authority in Sikhism. There are five revered Takhts that hold special historical and spiritual significance for all.

NODIA

62. The tradition of the _____ wari in Maharashtra involves an annual pilgrimage on foot to the Vithoba temple in Pandharpur.
(A) Sabarimala
(B) Char Dham
(C) Pandharpur
(D) Amarnath

Ans :

(C) Pandharpur
The Pandharpur wari is a significant annual pilgrimage in Maharashtra where lakhs of devotees, called Varkaris, walk for days to reach the temple of Lord Vithoba (a form of Vishnu/ Krishna) in Pandharpur.

63. The preservation of 'Shola forests' by the Toda community in the Nilgiris is an example of what?
(A) Large-scale commercial afforestation program
(B) Traditional ecological wisdom and sacred view
(C) A government initiative for timber resource
(D) A modern scientific experiment in forestry

Ans :

(B) Traditional ecological wisdom and sacred view
The Todas' reverence for Shola forests and other natural elements reflects their traditional ecological wisdom and a worldview where nature is considered sacred. This often leads to the conservation of these unique ecosystems.

64. A group of people from a village near Lucknow travels to Rameswaram in the south for pilgrimage, plans to go to Haridwar in the north, carrying their own food supplies for a three-month journey. This exemplifies :
(A) A modern luxury tourist travel package
(B) The ancient Indian tradition of extensive Tirthayatra
(C) A forced migration due to local conflicts
(D) A government-sponsored cultural exchange tour

Ans :

(B) The ancient Indian tradition of extensive Tirthayatra
This scenario, with its long-distance travel across diverse regions for pilgrimage over an extended period, often with self-sufficiency, is characteristic of the deep-rooted Indian tradition of Tirthayatra that connects people with sacred sites across the land.

76. The ancient trade route Dakshinapatha primarily connected Kaushambi (near Prayagraj) with which region of India?
(A) The northwestern Himalayan mountain kingdoms
(B) The eastern coastal areas near Kalinga
(C) The southern parts of the subcontinent
(D) The desert regions of western Rajasthan

Ans :

(C) The southern parts of the subcontinent
The Dakshinapatha, or southern route, was a major ancient trade artery that connected northern centers like Kaushambi with the resource-rich regions of southern India, facilitating commerce and cultural exchange across the Vindhya mountains.

77. What does the term 'pilgrimage' essentially imply?
(A) A journey for purely recreational sightseeing
(B) A mandatory annual visit to one's hometown
(C) A journey to a place of spiritual value
(D) A scientific expedition to explore new land

Ans :

(C) A journey to a place of spiritual value
A pilgrimage is a journey, often to a distant or unfamiliar place, undertaken for religious or spiritual reasons. The destination is typically a shrine or other location of importance to the pilgrim's beliefs and faith.

78. How does the scale of the Kumbh Mela, with millions of participants, compare to a typical local temple festival?
(A) Kumbh Mela is smaller and more intimate event
(B) Kumbh Mela is vastly larger, congregational
(C) Both are of roughly similar size and scale
(D) Local festivals attract more international visitor

Ans :

(B) Kumbh Mela is vastly larger, congregational
The Kumbh Mela is one of the largest religious gatherings in the world, attracting tens of millions of pilgrims over several weeks. This scale is vastly larger than a typical local temple festival, which usually involves a smaller, more localized community.

79. The concept of the 51 Shakti Pithas is based on the legend where parts of the divine mother _____'s body fell across the subcontinent.
(A) Lakshmi
(B) Sarasvati
(C) Sati
(D) Parvati

Ans :

(C) Sati
According to the Puranic legend, the 51 Shakti Pithas are sacred sites where various parts of the dismembered body of Goddess Sati, an incarnation of Shakti and the consort of Lord Shiva, fell to Earth.

80. The view that a harmonious relationship with a sacred geography sustained Indian civilization highlights the importance of what for societal well-being?
(A) Constant military expansion and resource control
(B) Shared values and respect for the environment
(C) Strict adherence to a single religious dogma
(D) Rapid urbanization and industrial development

Ans :

(B) Shared values and respect for the environment
The idea that a harmonious relationship with a sacredly perceived geography sustained Indian civilization emphasizes the role of shared cultural values, respect for nature, and sustainable practices in maintaining long-term societal and ecological well-being.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following terms related to sacred places and journeys with their definitions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Sacredness	A.	Journey to a holy place of spiritual significance
2.	Pilgrimage	B.	Quality of being holy, divine, or worthy of deep respect
3.	Tirtha	C.	Place regarded as holy due to divine association or relic
4.	Shrine	D.	Sacred ford or crossing place, symbolically a spiritual transition

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

The indigenous Maori people of New Zealand hold Taranaki Maunga (Mount Taranaki) as sacred, viewing it as an ancestor. This reverence has led to legal recognition of the mountain's personhood, reflecting their deep spiritual connection to the land.

71. The tradition of some communities claiming that heroes of epics like the Ramayana and Mahabharata passed through their locality serves what cultural purpose?
(A) To prove the historical accuracy of all events
(B) To allow diverse communities to connect with epics
(C) To restrict the epic stories to one region
(D) To discourage any new interpretations of it

Ans :

(B) To allow diverse communities to connect with epics
By associating local sites with events or figures from pan-Indian epics, diverse communities across India could forge a personal connection with these narratives, making the epics their own and integrating them into local traditions.

72. How does a 'relic stupa' like the one at Sanchi primarily differ from a commemorative stupa?
(A) Relic stupas are smaller and less decorated
(B) Relic stupas contain physical remains of Buddha
(C) Commemorative stupas are only found outside India
(D) Commemorative stupas are built from different kind

Ans :

(B) Relic stupas contain physical remains of Buddha
A relic stupa (sariraka stupa) is built to enshrine the bodily relics (like bones or ashes) of the Buddha or an Arhat. A commemorative stupa (paribhogika or uddeshika) marks a significant place or event but doesn't necessarily contain physical relics.

73. Which of the following terms is correctly paired with its associated religious tradition or concept in India?
(A) Amrita Manthana - Central ritual in Sikh worship
(B) Tirthankara - A revered teacher in Buddhist path
(C) Jyotirlinga - A sacred Shiva shrine in Hinduism
(D) Takht - A place of Jain monastic learning

Ans :

(C) Jyotirlinga - A sacred Shiva shrine in Hinduism
A Jyotirlinga is one of twelve special shrines in Hinduism dedicated to Lord Shiva, where he is worshipped in the form of a 'Linga of light', representing his infinite and formless nature.

74. A community in the Western Ghats strictly prohibits hunting and tree-felling in a particular patch of forest, believing it to be the sacred dwelling of their local forest deity. This practice contributes to the survival of rare plants and animals in that patch. This is an example of :
(A) A government reforestation project primarily
(B) Biodiversity conservation through sacred grove
(C) A commercial venture for eco-tourism only
(D) An agricultural experiment in new methods

Ans :

(B) Biodiversity conservation through sacred grove
This describes the functioning of a sacred grove, where religious beliefs lead to the protection of a forest area. This traditional conservation practice helps in preserving local biodiversity by restricting harmful human activities within the sacred area.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

75. Which of these actions is NOT aligned with the principle of 'restoring and conserving the sacred' in the context of natural sites?
(A) Cleaning polluted sacred rivers and water bodies
(B) Allowing unregulated industrial discharge near site
(C) Protecting sacred groves from deforestation
(D) Promoting sustainable pilgrimage practices

Ans :

(B) Allowing unregulated industrial discharge near site
Allowing unregulated industrial discharge would lead to the pollution and degradation of sacred natural sites, which is contrary to the principle of restoring and conserving their sanctity and ecological health for future.

NODIA

85. Match the following cultural practices or events with their significance :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Kumbh Mela	A.	Ancient trade route connecting northwest to eastern India
2.	Pandharpur Wari	B.	Held at four sites where drops of amrita fell; a mass pilgrimage
3.	Uttarapatha	C.	Annual pilgrimage on foot to Vithoba temple in Maharashtra
4.	Sacred Ecology	D.	Perception of natural landscape as sacred, aiding conservation

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(c) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Kumbh Mela is a massive Hindu pilgrimage. Pandharpur Wari is an annual walking pilgrimage in Maharashtra. Uttarapatha was an ancient northern trade route. Sacred ecology links spirituality with nature conservation.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What does 'sacredness' mean?

Ans :

Finding deep religious or spiritual significance in something, making it holy or worthy of reverence.

87. What is a journey to a sacred place called?

Ans :

Pilgrimage (or Tirthayatra).

88. What is a place regarded as holy due to association with the divine or a spiritual figure called?

Ans :

Shrine.

89. Name one sacred site mentioned that is important in Buddhism.

Ans :

Sanchi Stupa/Mahabodhi Stupa at Bodh Gaya (any one).

90. What are the seats or centres of spiritual authority in Sikhism called?

Ans :

Takhts.

91. Name one of the Sikh Takhts.

Ans :

Takht Sri Patna Sahib/Akal Takht/Takht Sri Keshgarh Sahib (any one).

92. What does the Sanskrit word 'tirtha' literally mean?

Ans :

A crossing place (like for a river).

93. In Jainism, who are the supreme preachers of dharma associated with tirthas?

Ans :

Tirthankaras.

94. Name one sacred Jain site.

Ans :

Mount Abu/Girnar/Shatrunjaya hill (any one).

95. Which deity is worshipped at the Sabarimala temple in Kerala?

Ans :

Ayyappa.

96. What is the name for the annual pilgrimage to the Vithoba temple in Pandharpur, Maharashtra?

Ans :

Pandharpur wari.

97. In Hinduism, what is Mother Earth often called?

Ans :

Bhudevi.

98. Which tribal community considers Niyam Dongar hill sacred?

Ans :

Dongria Khond tribe.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Sacredness implies holiness and deep respect. A pilgrimage is a journey to a sacred site. A Tirtha is a sacred crossing point, often a spiritual journey. A shrine is a holy place.

82. Match the following types of sacred sites in India with examples :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Char Dham	A.	Takht Sri Patna Sahib, Akal Takht
2.	Jyotirlingas	B.	Four pilgrimage sites at India's corners (Badrinath, Puri, Rameswaram, Dwarka)
3.	Shakti Pithas	C.	Sites where parts of Goddess Sati's body fell, spread across India
4.	Sikh Takhts	D.	Twelve sacred shrines dedicated to Shiva across India

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A
Char Dham are four key Hindu pilgrimage sites. Jyotirlingas are twelve shrines of Shiva. Shakti Pithas are sites sacred to the Divine Mother. Sikh Takhts are seats of spiritual authority.

83. Match the following concepts related to sacred nature with their descriptions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Bhudevi	A.	Protected natural forests seen as abodes of deities
2.	Sacred Groves	B.	Confluence of rivers, considered holy (e.g., Prayagraj)
3.	Peepul Tree	C.	Mother Earth, considered sacred in Hinduism
4.	Sangam (Rivers)	D.	Botanically Ficus religiosa, sacred in multiple Indian traditions

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
Bhudevi refers to Mother Earth as sacred. Sacred Groves are protected forest areas. The Peepul tree (Ficus religiosa) is revered in many faiths. Sangam is the sacred confluence of rivers.

84. Match the religious figures or concepts with their associated sacred places or traditions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Buddha	A.	Places where Tirthankaras attained liberation (e.g., Mount Abu, Girnar)
2.	Tirthankaras	B.	Sites like Sanchi and Bodh Gaya are important pilgrimage centres
3.	Guru Nanak	C.	Hilltop shrine in Kerala, attracting millions of devotees
4.	Sabarimala	D.	Undertook pilgrimages to Haridwar, Prayag, Varanasi, and Puri

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Sites related to Buddha's life, like Bodh Gaya, are sacred. Tirthankaras are associated with Jain pilgrimage sites like Mount Abu. Guru Nanak undertook extensive pilgrimages. Sabarimala is a major pilgrimage site in Kerala.

NODIA

cycle of death and rebirth and teaches the path to liberation (moksha) for the benefit of all sentient beings.

53. The Kumbh Mela, a major Hindu pilgrimage and festival, is held at four locations. Which of these is NOT one of them?
(A) Prayagraj
(B) Varanasi
(C) Haridwar
(D) Ujjain

Ans :

(B) Varanasi
The four traditional sites for the Kumbh Mela are Haridwar (on the Ganga), Prayagraj (at the Sangam), Nashik (on the Godavari), and Ujjain (on the Shipra). Varanasi, while a very sacred city, is not one of the four Kumbh Mela sites.

54. How does the practice of pilgrimage contribute to the cultural integration of a diverse country like India?
(A) By encouraging people to stay within regions
(B) By promoting a single language across land
(C) By facilitating interaction between people from places
(D) By restricting access to sacred sites

Ans :

(C) By facilitating interaction between people from places
Pilgrimages involve people traveling from different regions, speaking various languages, and having diverse customs. This movement and interaction at sacred sites foster a sense of shared cultural heritage and understanding, promoting integration.

55. How does the sacredness attributed to a 'Jyotirlinga' differ from that of a 'Shakti Pitha' in Hinduism?
(A) Jyotirlingas are Vishnu; Shakti Pithas are Shiva
(B) Jyotirlingas are Shiva; Shakti Pithas are Shakti
(C) Both are exclusively dedicated to river goddesses
(D) Jyotirlingas are Buddhist; Shakti Pithas Jain

Ans :

(B) Jyotirlingas are Shiva; Shakti Pithas are Shakti
Jyotirlingas are specific shrines where Lord Shiva is worshipped in the form of a 'Linga of light'. Shakti Pithas are sites where parts of the Goddess Sati (an incarnation of Shakti, the divine feminine) are believed to have fallen.

56. Which of the following descriptions correctly matches the sacred place or concept?
(A) Amrita Manthana - A specific type of meditation
(B) Tirtha - Symbolically, a crossing to higher life
(C) Bhudevi - The primary deity of Sikhism
(D) Sangam - The highest peak in a mountain

Ans :

(B) Tirtha - Symbolically, a crossing to higher life
A tirtha, literally a ford, symbolically represents a sacred place or means by which one can 'cross over' from the mundane world to a higher spiritual state or consciousness. Amrita Manthana is the churning for nectar.

57. A community protects a local forest, believing that their ancestral spirits and guardian deities reside within it, ensuring the community's well-being. This practice leads to the preservation of unique plants and animals in that forest. This is a classic example of a :
(A) Government-designated wildlife national sanctuary
(B) Sacred grove maintained by local belief
(C) Commercial forestry project for timber needs
(D) Scientific research station for ecological data

Ans :

(B) Sacred grove maintained by local belief
This scenario describes a sacred grove, where a community protects a forest area based on religious or spiritual beliefs, associating it with deities or ancestral spirits. This traditional practice often results in biodiversity conservation.

58. Which of the following is NOT typically a characteristic or purpose of a pilgrimage (Tirthayatra)?
(A) Undertaking a physical journey to a sacred site
(B) Seeking spiritual merit or divine blessings
(C) Engaging in purely commercial or trade activities
(D) An inner journey involving a code of conduct

Ans :

(C) Engaging in purely commercial or trade activities
While trade routes and pilgrimage routes often overlapped and merchants could be pilgrims,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

99. What is the name for the network of four major Hindu pilgrimage sites located in the four corners of India?

Ans :

Char Dham.

100. How many Jyotirlingas (sacred Shiva shrines) are mentioned as part of a pilgrimage network?

Ans :

Twelve.

101. According to legend, where did the 51 Shakti Pithas originate from?

Ans :

Places where parts of the divine mother Sati's body fell.

102. What is the term for a sacred space in Hinduism, often associated with natural landscapes?

Ans :

Punyakshetra.

103. Which hymn in the Rigveda praises rivers?

Ans :

Nadistuti sukta.

104. Name one of the four locations where the Kumbh Mela is held.

Ans :

Haridwar/Prayagraj/Nashik/Ujjain (any one).

105. According to legend, what divine nectar were the devas and asuras churning the ocean for?

Ans :

Amrita (nectar of immortality).

106. Which deity, in the form of Mohini, snatched the pitcher (kumbha) of amrita?

Ans :

Vishnu.

107. Which species of tree (Ficus religiosa) is considered sacred in Hinduism, Buddhism, Sikhism, and Jainism?

Ans :

Peepul (or Pipal/Bo tree/Bodhi tree/Ashvattha).

NODIA

108. What are patches of forest protected by local communities due to religious beliefs called?

Ans :

Sacred groves.

109. Give the local name for sacred groves in any one Indian language.

Ans :

Kavu (Malayalam)/Kovilkadu (Tamil)/ Devare kadu (Kannada)/Devarai (Marathi)/Khlaw kyntang (Khasi)/ Dev van (Hindi/Himachal)/Sarna (Jharkhand)/ Devgudi (Chhattisgarh)/Oran (Rajasthan) (any one).

110. Which indigenous people of New Zealand regard the Taranaki Maunga mountain as sacred?

Ans :

The Maoris.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. How can a journey or a route become 'sacred'?

Ans :

A journey, like a pilgrimage (tirthayatra), becomes sacred as it is undertaken for religious/spiritual purposes, often involving specific rituals, conduct, and visiting holy sites along a designated route.

112. Why are places like the Dargah Sharif of Ajmer considered sacred across different faiths?

Ans :

Such places often hold deep spiritual significance associated with revered saints or figures whose message transcends specific religions, attracting devotion and visits from people of multiple faiths seeking blessings or solace.

113. Explain why Bodh Gaya is an important pilgrimage site for Buddhists.

Ans :

Bodh Gaya is revered as the place where Siddhartha Gautama attained enlightenment under the Bodhi tree, becoming the Buddha. This pivotal event makes it a primary pilgrimage destination.

114. What is the significance of the Takhts in Sikhism?

Ans :

Takhts are historical centres of spiritual and temporal authority in Sikhism, often associated with important events in the lives of the Sikh Gurus, making them highly significant pilgrimage sites.

115. What is the symbolic meaning of a 'tirtha'?

Ans :

Symbolically, a tirtha represents a spiritual crossing point – a place where pilgrims can transition from ordinary worldly concerns to a higher state of spiritual awareness or purity.

116. How does the tradition of pilgrimage contribute to the idea of India as one cultural unit, according to Jawaharlal Nehru?

Ans :

Pilgrimages involve people travelling across vast distances (north to south, east to west), fostering interaction between diverse regions and reinforcing a shared sense of culture and belonging to one country.

117. Why are places associated with Tirthankaras considered sacred in Jainism?

Ans :

Tirthankaras are the supreme spiritual guides in Jainism. Places where they attained liberation or where significant life events occurred are considered holy, embodying their teachings and spiritual power.

118. Explain the concept of Bhudevi or Mother Earth in Hinduism.

Ans :

This concept views the entire planet Earth as sacred, personified as a goddess (Bhudevi). It reflects a deep reverence for nature and the belief in a divine presence permeating the natural world.

119. Why do the Dongria Khond tribe consider Niyam Dongar hill sacred?

Ans :

They believe the hill is the abode of their supreme deity, Niyam Raja, who provides their sustenance. Therefore, protecting the hill and its resources is essential for their survival and considered a sacred duty.

120. How does the network of Char Dham sites represent India's sacred geography?

Ans :

The four Char Dham sites are deliberately located in the far north, south, east, and west corners of India. Pilgrimages connecting these points symbolically encompass and sanctify the entire geographical expanse of the country.

121. Explain the symbolism behind the story of the 51 Shakti Pithas.

Ans :

The story, where parts of the divine mother Sati's body fall across the subcontinent, symbolically transforms the entire landmass of India into the sacred body of the goddess, making the geography itself divine.

122. How did pilgrimages facilitate cultural integration in India?

Ans :

As pilgrims travelled across diverse regions, they encountered different languages, customs, and foods but also found commonalities in beliefs and practices, fostering understanding, sharing ideas, and strengthening cultural bonds across India.

123. What is a 'punyakshetra'?

Ans :

A punyakshetra is a sacred space or region, often encompassing natural landscapes like riverbanks, forests, or mountains, perceived as holy and conducive to spiritual merit or practice.

124. Explain the significance of rivers in Indian traditions, referencing the Nadistuti sukta.

Ans :

Rivers are revered as lifelines and often worshipped as goddesses (devis). The ancient Nadistuti sukta hymn from the Rigveda praises major rivers, showing this reverence dates back millennia. Rituals often invoke their sacred presence.

125. What is the legend behind the Kumbh Mela locations?

Ans :

Legend says devas and asuras churned the ocean for amrita (nectar of immortality). During a struggle for the pitcher (kumbha), drops fell at Haridwar, Prayagraj, Nashik, and Ujjain, making these sites sacred for the Mela.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

126. Why are mountains often considered sacred sites globally and in India?

Ans :

Mountains, due to their height and majesty, are often seen as connecting earth and sky, abodes of deities, or gateways to the divine. The difficult journey to mountain shrines symbolizes spiritual effort.

127. Why is the peepul tree (Ficus religiosa) considered sacred across multiple Indian religions?

Ans :

Its significance stems from associations with key events (Buddha's enlightenment under it), its resilience (stays green), importance in ecosystems (shelter/food for animals), and perhaps ancient reverence seen even in Harappan seals.

128. How do sacred groves contribute to biodiversity conservation?

Ans :

By designating forest patches as sacred abodes of deities, communities traditionally prohibit harmful activities like hunting or logging. This protection allows diverse species of plants (flora) and animals (fauna) to thrive undisturbed.

129. Explain how pilgrimage routes and trade routes often overlapped in ancient India.

Ans :

Pilgrims needed supplies (food, lodging, items for rituals), which traders provided. Major pilgrimage sites often became market centres. Thus, traders followed pilgrimage routes, and pilgrims used established trade routes, leading to overlap.

130. Give an example of sacred geography existing outside India.

Ans :

Ancient Greece had sacred mountains and groves. Native Americans viewed nature as sacred. The Maoris of New Zealand consider Mount Taranaki their sacred ancestor.

131. "How do modern development pressures conflict with traditional views of sacred geography?"

Ans :

Modern development often leads to pollution and resource exploitation, conflicting with traditional beliefs that regard rivers, mountains, and groves as sacred and worthy of protection.

132. How does the concept of sacred geography relate to modern environmental concerns?

Ans :

Viewing natural landscapes and elements as sacred fosters respect and encourages conservation. This traditional worldview aligns with modern needs for sustainability and protecting ecosystems from overexploitation and degradation.

133. Why is it important for pilgrims to follow a specific code of conduct during a tirthayatra?

Ans :

A pilgrimage is seen as an inner spiritual journey, not just a physical one. Following a code of conduct (like discipline, simple living, specific rituals) helps purify the mind and enhances the spiritual significance of the journey.

134. How did the crisscrossing pilgrimage networks contribute to a shared Indian identity?

Ans :

These networks connected people from different regions through shared sacred sites and narratives (like Shakti Pithas). This constant movement and interaction fostered a sense of belonging to a larger cultural and geographical entity defined by these sacred connections.

135. What is our duty towards our sacred heritage?

Ans :

It is our duty to protect this national heritage, both natural and cultural, as also reminded by the Constitution.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. "Analyze the multiple dimensions of 'sacredness', extending beyond just religious shrines."

Ans :

Sacredness extends beyond shrines to include natural elements (rivers, mountains, trees, groves), specific locations visited by revered figures, difficult journeys (pilgrimages) symbolizing inner effort, entire pilgrimage routes connecting sites, and ultimately, the very geography or land of India itself, imbued with divine presence or history.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(ii) The mining project views the hill purely as a resource (ore) to be exploited for economic gain, directly conflicting with the community's view of the hill as a sacred, living entity that must be respected and protected.

(iii) Their argument is strong. Mining would desecrate their most sacred site, disrupting their religious practices and cultural identity tied to the hill. Environmentally, it would destroy the ecosystem they depend on, violating their right to a healthy environment and traditional livelihood.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

152. The organizers of the Kumbh Mela at Prayagraj face challenges managing the massive influx of millions of pilgrims. Issues include sanitation, ensuring safety during ritual bathing at the sangam (confluence), preventing pollution of the sacred Ganga and Yamuna rivers, and providing temporary accommodation.

(i) Why is Prayagraj considered a highly sacred site, especially during Kumbh Mela?

(ii) Identify one major challenge related to 'sacred ecology' faced by the organizers.

(iii) Suggest one measure the organizers could implement to balance accommodating pilgrims with protecting the sanctity and environment of the rivers.

Ans :

(i) It's located at the sacred confluence (sangam) of the Ganga, Yamuna, and mythical Sarasvati rivers, and is one of the four sites where drops of amrita supposedly fell, making ritual bathing there highly auspicious.

(ii) Preventing pollution of the sacred rivers (Ganga and Yamuna) due to the massive gathering (waste disposal, bathing) is a major challenge related to sacred ecology.

(iii) Implementing robust waste management systems (sufficient toilets, solid waste collection/treatment) and strictly enforcing rules against dumping waste into the rivers, alongside promoting awareness campaigns among pilgrims about environmental responsibility, could help balance the needs.

NODIA

153. A group plans a tirthayatra covering several Jyotirlinga shrines located in different states across India, travelling mainly by train and bus over three weeks. They want the journey to be spiritually meaningful, not just sightseeing.

(i) What distinguishes this journey as a pilgrimage rather than just tourism?

(ii) What aspects of cultural integration might the group experience during their journey across different states?

(iii) Suggest one practice the group could adopt to enhance the 'inner journey' aspect of their pilgrimage.

Ans :

(i) The intention is primarily religious/spiritual – visiting sacred Shiva shrines (Jyotirlingas) for worship and spiritual growth, likely involving specific rituals or conduct, rather than purely leisure or sightseeing.

(ii) They would encounter diverse languages, regional customs, clothing styles, and food habits, while also observing common Hindu rituals and beliefs associated with Shiva worship at each shrine, experiencing both diversity and unity.

(iii) They could dedicate specific time daily for chanting, meditation, reading scriptures related to the shrines, or reflecting on the spiritual significance of each place, maintaining a mindful and respectful attitude throughout the journey, rather than focusing only on logistics.

154. In a village in Rajasthan, an ancient 'oran' (sacred grove) traditionally protected by the community is facing threats. Parts are being cleared for expanding agriculture, and a nearby industry is dumping waste, polluting a small water body within the grove that locals consider sacred.

(i) What ecological roles do sacred groves like orans often play?

(ii) How does the clearing for agriculture and industrial pollution violate the traditional sanctity of the oran?

(iii) Evaluate potential consequences if the degradation of the oran continues unchecked.

Ans :

(i) They act as biodiversity hotspots, sheltering diverse flora and fauna. They often contain water bodies, aiding water conservation, and maintain local ecological balance due to protection from exploitation.

145. Compare the Indian concept of sacred geography with the examples given from Maori or Native American traditions. What similarities exist?

Ans :

Similarities include a deep connection to and reverence for nature. Like Indian traditions viewing rivers/mountains as divine or ancestors, Maoris view Mount Taranaki as an ancestor, and Native Americans often hold landforms and specific natural areas as sacred, reflecting a shared worldview where nature is imbued with spiritual significance.

146. Evaluate the effectiveness of declaring natural sites (like mountains or rivers) legally as 'persons' (as in the Maori case) as a conservation strategy.

Ans :

Granting legal personhood gives natural entities rights that can be defended in court against exploitation or damage. It formally acknowledges indigenous worldviews and provides a powerful legal tool for environmental protection, potentially more effective than conventional regulations alone by shifting the perspective from resource to rights-bearing entity.

147. Analyse how epics like the Ramayana and Mahabharata contribute to the sacred geography of India.

Ans :

These epics narrate journeys and events across the subcontinent. Many local traditions claim connections to these narratives, identifying specific locations (caves, rivers, forests) where epic heroes passed through or events occurred. Shrines marking these spots integrate local landscapes into the pan-Indian epic tradition, further sanctifying the geography.

148. Discuss the potential conflict between the spiritual significance of a pilgrimage (inner journey, discipline) and the modern realities of mass tourism at sacred sites.

Ans :

The spiritual goal emphasizes inner transformation through effort and discipline. Mass tourism often focuses on convenience, commerce, and quick visits, potentially leading to overcrowding, environmental degradation, commercialization, and dilution of the site's contemplative atmosphere, creating a conflict with the original pilgrimage ethos.

149. "Respecting sacred geography is essential for maintaining cultural identity." Analyse this statement in the Indian context.

Ans :

India's cultural identity is deeply interwoven with its sacred geography. Pilgrimage networks, sacred rivers/mountains, and local traditions tied to the land shape rituals, festivals, and community life. Degrading these sacred landscapes threatens not just the environment but also the cultural practices, beliefs, and sense of belonging rooted in them.

150. Analyse David Suzuki's quote (Question 1, p.183). How does it connect the perception of nature (as deity vs. resource) to environmental action?

Ans :

Suzuki argues our perception dictates our treatment. Viewing a mountain merely as ore invites exploitation ('resource'). Seeing it as a deity or kin ('sacred') invokes respect, care, and restraint. Shifting our perspective from utility/opportunity to reverence/relationship is key to fostering environmentally responsible actions and respectful coexistence with nature.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. A tribal community in Jharkhand, the Dongria Khond, protests against a proposed mining project on Niyam Dongar hill. They argue the hill is the sacred abode of their supreme deity, Niyam Raja, and mining would destroy their god's home and their source of sustenance, violating their fundamental religious and cultural rights.

(i) "What concept does the Dongria Khond's reverence for Niyam Dongar illustrate?"

(ii) How does the proposed mining project conflict with the community's worldview?

(iii) Evaluate the community's argument that mining violates their rights, considering both cultural and environmental aspects.

Ans :

(i) This illustrates the concept of sacred geography, specifically viewing a natural feature (a mountain) as sacred, the abode of a deity, and integral to the community's spiritual and physical well-being.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 9

FROM THE RULERS TO THE RULED : TYPES OF GOVERNMENTS

SUMMARY

1. GOVERMENT AND ITS FUNCTIONS

A government plays a crucial role in society by maintaining law and order, ensuring peace and security, managing foreign relations and national defense, delivering essential services (like education and healthcare), managing the economy, and working for the welfare of the people. The core functions of government are categorized as :

1. Legislative : Creating rules and laws.
2. Executive : Implementing rules and administering the country.
3. Judicial : Ensuring rules are followed and interpreting laws.

2. WHAT MAKES GOVERNMENTS DIFFERENT?

Governments differ based on several key aspects :

1. Source of Authority : Who or what grants the government legitimacy (e.g., the people in a democracy, religious authority in a theocracy).
2. Formation : How the government is established (e.g., elections in a democracy, heredity in a monarchy).
3. Structure : The different parts of government and their roles (e.g., separation of legislative, executive, judicial powers, existence of a constitution).
4. Goals : The values and objectives the government aims to achieve (e.g., equality for all, prosperity for specific groups).

3. DEMOCRATIC GOVERNMENTS AROUND THE WORLD

Democracy, meaning 'rule of the people', is the most popular form of government today. Its source of authority is the people.

4. FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF DEMOCRACY :

1. Equality : Equal treatment and access for all citizens before the law.
2. Freedom : Citizens' right to make choices and express opinions.
3. Representative Participation : Right to choose representatives through elections.
4. Universal Adult Franchise : Right of all adult citizens (above a certain age) to vote. India granted this in 1950.
5. Fundamental Rights : Protection of rights like equality, freedom of speech, etc..
6. Independent Judiciary : Ensures rights are protected and laws are followed by all, including the government.

5. FORMS OF DEMOCRATIC GOVERNMENT :

1. Direct Democracy : Citizens directly participate in all decision-making. Difficult to implement in large countries, but elements exist in places like Switzerland.
2. Representative Democracy : People elect representatives to govern on their behalf. The government is accountable to the people, and regular elections allow people to express choices.
   (i) Parliamentary Democracy : The executive (Prime Minister and Council of Ministers) is part of the legislature (Parliament) and accountable to it. Example : India.
   (ii) Presidential Democracy : The executive (President) is elected separately by the people and works independently of the legislature. Example : USA.

NODIA

6. STRUCTURES

Democracies often feature a legislature (law-making body, e.g., Parliament in India, Congress in USA) typically with two houses (Upper and Lower, e.g., Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha in India), an executive (implements laws), and an independent judiciary. Separation of powers ensures these branches work independently.

7. A PEEK INTO HISTORY

Early forms of republics existed in ancient India, such as the Lichchhavi clan in the Vajji mahajanapada, which practiced collective decision-making and elected leaders based on

(ii) Traditionally, such activities were prohibited as the grove was seen as a deity's abode. Clearing land and polluting the sacred water source directly disrespects this sanctity and breaks community rules.

(iii) Consequences include loss of biodiversity, depletion/pollution of local water sources, soil erosion, and disruption of the local ecosystem. Culturally, it means the loss of a sacred heritage site and erosion of traditional conservation practices and community values.

155. A historian examining ancient trade routes finds evidence that the Dakshinapatha route passed near several important Buddhist and Jain sites, in addition to Hindu tirthas. Records also show merchants often sponsored the construction or upkeep of religious establishments along these routes.

(i) What does the proximity of trade routes to diverse religious sites suggest?

(ii) Why might merchants have sponsored religious establishments along trade routes?

(iii) Evaluate how this interaction between trade and diverse religions might have fostered tolerance and cultural exchange.

Ans :

(i) It suggests that travellers on these routes included not just merchants but also pilgrims of various faiths (Buddhist, Jain, Hindu), and that religious centres often developed along vital communication and economic arteries.

(ii) Sponsorship could be for religious merit, social prestige, ensuring safe travels (divine protection), or providing facilities (rest houses, monasteries) for themselves and other travellers, which indirectly supported trade infrastructure.

(iii) Constant interaction between merchants and pilgrims of different faiths at shared sites or along common routes likely fostered mutual understanding and tolerance. Patronage of diverse institutions by wealthy merchants further supported religious plurality and the exchange of ideas along these networks.

www.nodia.in

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

5. These are some practices in a few different countries. Can you match the practice with the type of government?

S. No	Practice in the country	Type of Government
I.	All citizens are treated equally before law	Dictatorship
II.	The government refers to the religious leader for each and every decision it takes.	Monarchy
III.	After the queen's death, her son became the new king.	Democracy
IV.	The ruler is not bound to follow any Constitution. He makes all the decisions as per his choice.	Theocracy

Ans :

I. All citizens are treated equally before law --- Democracy
II. The government refers to the religious leader for each and every decision it takes. --- Theocracy
III. After the queen's death, her son became the new king. --- Monarchy
IV. The ruler is not bound to follow any Constitution. He makes all the decisions as per his choice. --- Dictatorship

6. Below is a list of countries. Find out the types of government these countries have :

S. No	Country	Type of Government
1	Bhutan	
2	Nepal	
3	Bangladesh	
4	South Africa	

Ans :

1. Bhutan : Constitutional Monarchy
2. Nepal : Federal Democratic Republic
3. Bangladesh : Parliamentary Republic
4. South Africa : Constitutional Parliamentary Republic
5. Brazil : Federal Presidential Republic

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

7. What are possible hurdles in a democracy in achieving its values and ideals? How can they be overcome?

Ans :

Hurdles include corruption, wealth disparity, excessive influence by elites (oligarchic tendencies), erosion of judicial independence, and manipulation of information. Overcoming them requires citizen vigilance, active participation, demanding accountability, strengthening independent institutions, promoting education, and ensuring press freedom.

8. Democracy is different from monarchy and dictatorship. Explain.

Ans :

In a democracy, power originates from the people who elect their rulers, and rights are protected. In a monarchy, power is held by a hereditary king or queen. In a dictatorship, one person or a small group holds absolute, often unchecked, power, usually suppressing rights.

NODIA

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is the primary role of a government in a country, according to Kautilya's Arthashastra?
(A) To expand its territory through constant war
(B) To ensure the protection, order, and welfare
(C) To accumulate maximum wealth for its ruler
(D) To promote a single state religious belief

Ans :

(B) To ensure the protection, order, and welfare
Kautilya's Arthashastra outlines a ruler's duties as threefold : raksha (protection from external aggression), palana (maintenance of internal law and order), and yogakshema (safeguarding the people's welfare).

2. Which of these is NOT listed as a primary function of a modern government?
(A) Maintaining law and order within society
(B) Managing relationships with other countries
(C) Controlling citizens' personal daily choices
(D) Delivering essential goods and services

Ans :

(C) Controlling citizens' personal daily choices

merit. The Uttaramerur inscriptions from the Chola period (10th century CE, Tamil Nadu) detail sophisticated village sabha elections, including qualifications and grounds for dismissal like corruption. Ancient Rome and Greece also had republics, though voting rights were often limited.

8. OTHER FORMS OF GOVERNMENT

1. Monarchy : Rule by a monarch (king or queen), usually hereditary.
   (i) Historically, Indian kingship often involved councils and adherence to rajadharma (ruling according to dharma for people's welfare), though power could be absolute. Texts like the Mahabharata emphasize a king's moral responsibilities. Kalhana's Rajatarangini provides examples of kings respecting subjects' rights.
   (ii) Absolute Monarchy : Monarch holds supreme, unrestricted power. Example : Saudi Arabia.
   (iii) Constitutional Monarchy : Monarch is Head of State with nominal power; real power lies with an elected parliament and prime minister. Example : United Kingdom.
2. Theocracy : Government based on religious rules and leaders. Example : Iran combines theocratic elements (Supreme Leader chosen by clerics) with democratic ones (elected president/parliament). Vatican City is another example.
3. Dictatorship : One person or a small group holds absolute, unchecked power. Examples include Adolf Hitler in Germany and Idi Amin in Uganda, known for extreme oppression and violence. North Korea is presented as a modern example with severe restrictions on personal freedom.
4. Oligarchy : Rule by a small, powerful group, often wealthy families or influential individuals. Can sometimes emerge even within democracies if influence becomes overly concentrated.

9. WHY DEMOCRACY MATTERS

Democracy is often considered superior because it ideally upholds principles like universal adult franchise, equality, freedom of speech, separation of powers, and focuses on the well-being of all citizens. People choose their government, which remains accountable and can be changed through elections. However, democracies face challenges like corruption, inequality, and manipulation of institutions, requiring citizen vigilance.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Write names of the various types of government.

Ans :

The types of government are : Democracy (Direct and Representative - Parliamentary and Presidential), Monarchy (Absolute and Constitutional), Theocracy, Dictatorship, and Oligarchy.

2. Which type of Government does India have? And why is that called that type?

Ans :

India has a Parliamentary Democracy. It's called this because the executive branch (Prime Minister and Council of Ministers) is drawn from and accountable to the legislature (Parliament), specifically the Lok Sabha.

3. You read that an independent judiciary is present in all types of democracies. State any three reasons why you think it is important for the judiciary to be independent.

Ans :

An independent judiciary is important because :
1. It protects citizens' fundamental rights from infringement by the government or others.
2. It ensures laws are applied fairly and equally to everyone, including the government itself.
3. It can resolve disputes impartially, maintaining rule of law and public trust.

4. Do you think democratic government is better than other forms of government? Why?

Ans :

Yes, democratic government seems better because it is based on the will of the people, protects fundamental rights like equality and freedom, holds rulers accountable through elections, and aims for the welfare of all citizens, unlike dictatorships or absolute monarchies where power is unchecked and rights may be suppressed.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

137. "Pilgrimage networks like the Char Dham or Jyotirlingas deliberately map onto the geography of India." Analyse the potential purpose and impact of this spatial arrangement.

Ans :

Locating major pilgrimage sites at the extremities (Char Dham) or across diverse regions (Jyotirlingas) likely served to integrate the vast subcontinent culturally and spiritually. It encouraged travel across regions, fostering interaction, shared identity, and reinforcing the idea of the entire landmass as a unified sacred space.

138. Compare and contrast how sacred sites are identified and revered in Buddhism/Jainism versus Hinduism/Folk traditions.

Ans :

Buddhism/Jainism often identify sites based on association with key figures (Buddha, Tirthankaras) – places they lived, taught, attained enlightenment/liberation, or where relics are kept. Hinduism and folk traditions also have such sites but additionally emphasize the inherent sacredness of natural features (rivers, mountains, groves) personified as deities (Bhudevi).

139. Analyse the ecological significance of traditions that view elements of nature (rivers, forests, mountains, specific species) as sacred.

Ans :

Viewing nature as sacred inherently promotes conservation. Worshipping rivers discourages pollution; protecting sacred groves preserves biodiversity hotspots; seeing mountains as deities limits destructive exploitation. This worldview fosters respect and a sense of responsibility towards the environment, embodying principles of ecological balance and sustainability.

140. Evaluate the role of pilgrimage as a factor in the cultural integration of the diverse Indian subcontinent over millennia.

Ans :

Pilgrimage was a powerful integrating force. Constant movement of people across linguistic and regional boundaries for shared religious purposes facilitated the exchange of ideas, customs, art forms, and languages. It created shared narratives and a collective consciousness tied to common sacred sites, weaving diverse cultures into a recognizable pan-Indian fabric.

141. Analyse the relationship between sacred sites and economic activity, considering both historical overlap with trade routes and modern tourism.

Ans :

Historically, pilgrimage routes overlapped with trade routes, creating hubs where pilgrims and merchants interacted, boosting local economies. Today, major sacred sites are huge centres of religious tourism, supporting industries like transport, accommodation, food, and souvenir sales, significantly impacting regional economies, though sometimes leading to environmental pressures.

142. "The concept of sacred groves represents a traditional model of community-based conservation." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

Sacred groves are forests protected by local communities through shared religious belief (abode of deities), not state laws initially. Communities enforce rules against exploitation (logging, hunting). This demonstrates a decentralized, culturally embedded approach to conservation, preserving biodiversity and resources based on collective respect and tradition.

NODIA

143. How does the story of the Shakti Pithas symbolically represent the sacredness of the Indian landmass?

Ans :

By narrating that parts of the Divine Mother's body fell across the entire subcontinent, the legend transforms the physical geography of India into the literal body of the goddess. Each pitha marks a sacred point, collectively sanctifying the whole land and creating a powerful image of India as inherently divine.

144. Analyse the statement : "Modern development poses a threat to India's traditional sacred geography."

Ans :

Modern development often prioritizes resource extraction (mining sacred hills), infrastructure (damming sacred rivers), or urban expansion (encroaching on sacred groves) over traditional reverence. Pollution from industry and tourism also degrades sacred sites. This utilitarian view clashes with the perspective of inherent sacredness, leading to ecological damage and cultural loss.

Governments are responsible for law and order, international relations, and essential services. While they regulate certain aspects of life for public good, controlling all personal daily choices is not a primary function, especially in democracies.

3. What does the term 'democracy' fundamentally mean?
(A) Rule by a single, all-powerful leader chosen
(B) Rule by the wealthiest citizens in society
(C) Rule by the people, directly or through chosen
(D) Rule by religious laws and spiritual leaders

Ans :

(C) Rule by the people, directly or through chosen
Democracy, derived from Greek words, essentially means 'rule of the people'. This implies that the ultimate source of power and authority in a democratic system rests with the citizens of the country.

4. What is the 'legislative' function of a government?
(A) The implementation of existing rules, laws
(B) The creation of rules and new laws
(C) Ensuring that all rules are followed
(D) The adjudication of disputes between people

Ans :

(B) The creation of rules and new laws
The legislative function of government involves the process of making and enacting laws. This body, often called a parliament or congress, debates and passes legislation that serves as the framework for the country.

5. According to Abraham Lincoln, democracy is a 'government of the people, by the people, and for whom'?
(A) For the wealthy
(B) For the leaders
(C) For the people
(D) For the majority

Ans :

(C) For the people
Abraham Lincoln famously described democracy as a "government of the people, by the people, for the people". This emphasizes that a democratic government should serve the interests and welfare of all its citizens.

6. What is the most fundamental difference between various types of government regarding their authority?
(A) The color of their national flag
(B) Who or what gives the government power
(C) The geographical size of the whole country
(D) The primary language spoken by officials

Ans :

(B) Who or what gives the government power
A key differentiator between government types is the source of their authority and power. For instance, in a democracy, power comes from the people; in a theocracy, it's derived from religious beliefs.

7. What is a 'constitution' in the context of a country's governance?
(A) A list of all historical rulers, kings
(B) A book of fundamental rules and laws
(C) A collection of national folk songs
(D) An annual budget report for economy

Ans :

(B) A book of fundamental rules and laws
A constitution is a foundational document that outlines the basic principles, laws, and structures of a country's government. It defines how the government works and the rights of citizens.

8. Which of these is a fundamental principle of democracy ensuring every adult citizen's right to vote?
(A) Separation of powers
(B) Judicial independence
(C) Universal adult franchise
(D) Freedom of the press

Ans :

(C) Universal adult franchise
Universal adult franchise is a cornerstone of democracy, granting every adult citizen (above a certain age, regardless of gender, race, or wealth) the right to vote in elections and choose their representatives.

9. How does 'direct democracy' differ from 'representative democracy'?
(A) Direct has elected leaders; representative has none
(B) Direct has citizens rule; representative has them choose
(C) Direct is for big; representative for small
(D) Direct has no laws; representative has many

Ans :

(B) Direct has citizens rule; representative has them choose

NODIA

48. Assertion (A) : The Uttaramerur inscriptions indicate that ancient Indian villages had systems for electing local administrative members.
Reason (R) : These inscriptions show that such local bodies had no real power and were fully controlled by the king.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Uttaramerur inscriptions do provide evidence of elections for local village sabhas (assemblies) in the Chola period. However, these local bodies had defined responsibilities and could even dismiss members for corruption, suggesting a degree of autonomy, not complete royal control.

49. Consider the following about democratic principles:
1. Universal adult franchise means only property owners can vote.
2. Separation of powers prevents any one government branch from becoming too strong.
3. Fundamental rights are optional guidelines for the government to follow.

Which of the above statements is/are correct in that context?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
Universal adult franchise means all adults (above a certain age) can vote. Separation of powers is indeed about checks and balances. Fundamental rights are generally enforceable protections for citizens, not optional guidelines.

50. In a _____ democracy, the executive branch works independently of the legislature, and the president is often elected directly by the people.
(A) direct
(B) parliamentary
(C) presidential
(D) constitutional

Ans :

(C) presidential
In a presidential democracy, there is a clear separation between the executive (headed by the president) and the legislature. The president is usually elected independently by the people and does not depend on the legislature's confidence to hold office.

51. What is a 'representative' in the context of democratic governance?
(A) A citizen who directly makes all laws
(B) A person chosen to act on behalf
(C) An unelected official with absolute power
(D) A monarch who inherits their position

Ans :

(B) A person chosen to act on behalf
A representative is an individual selected or elected by a group of people (constituents) to act, speak, or make decisions on their behalf, typically within a legislative body or other governing institution.

52. In which century did women in Switzerland gain the right to vote in federal elections?
(A) 18th century
(B) 19th century
(C) 20th century
(D) 21st century

Ans :

(C) 20th century
Switzerland, despite its democratic traditions, granted women the right to vote in federal elections relatively late, in 1971, which falls within the 20th century.

53. The existence of different forms of democratic governments (e.g., parliamentary vs. presidential) around the world primarily illustrates what?
(A) That democracy is a flawed and failing system
(B) That countries adapt democratic principles to suit
(C) That only one specific model of democracy
(D) That democracy is only suitable for small

Ans :

(B) That countries adapt democratic principles to suit
The variations in democratic structures, such as parliamentary and presidential systems, show that while core democratic principles are shared, countries often adapt these principles and design their governmental frameworks to fit their unique historical, cultural, and societal contexts.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Separation of Powers refers to the division of governmental responsibilities into distinct branches—typically legislative, executive, and judicial—to limit any one branch from exercising the core functions of another, ensuring checks and balances.

17. The Uttaramerur inscriptions from the Chola period provide details about the election of members to what local administrative body?
(A) The royal council of state ministers
(B) The city's merchant guild leadership
(C) The village sabha or the assembly
(D) The temple's committee of priests

Ans :

(C) The village sabha or the assembly
The 10th-century Uttaramerur inscriptions in Tamil Nadu offer remarkable details about the functioning of local self-government during the Chola period, including the process for electing members to the village assembly (sabha).

18. Which of these was NOT a feature of the election process described in the Uttaramerur inscriptions?
(A) Use of sealed ballot boxes for voting
(B) Clearly defined qualifications for members
(C) Voting rights for all adult men, women
(D) Conditions for dismissal, including corruption

Ans :

(C) Voting rights for all adult men, women
The Uttaramerur inscriptions detail aspects like ballot boxes, member qualifications, and dismissal for corruption. However, voting rights in such ancient systems were often limited and not universally extended to all adults as in modern democracies.

19. Which type of government is correctly matched with its defining characteristic?
(A) Direct Democracy - Ruled by a hereditary new monarch
(B) Theocracy - Power held by a small elite group
(C) Absolute Monarchy - Monarch has complete control
(D) Oligarchy - All citizens participate in decisions

Ans :

(C) Absolute Monarchy - Monarch has complete control
An absolute monarchy is a form of government where the monarch (king or queen) holds supreme, autocratic authority, and their power is not restricted by a constitution or laws.

20. What is a 'monarchy'?
(A) A government ruled by elected representatives
(B) A system where religious leaders hold power
(C) A government ruled by a king or queen
(D) A state controlled by military generals

Ans :

(C) A government ruled by a king or queen
A monarchy is a form of government in which a single person, called a monarch (typically a king or queen), is the head of state. The position is usually hereditary.

21. Which country is provided as an example of an absolute monarchy where the king holds all power?
(A) United Kingdom
(B) Saudi Arabia
(C) Switzerland
(D) Iran today

Ans :

(B) Saudi Arabia
Saudi Arabia is cited as an example of an absolute monarchy, where the king possesses ultimate governing authority, and governance is often based on Islamic law.

NODIA

22. How does a 'constitutional monarchy' like the United Kingdom differ from an 'absolute monarchy'?
(A) Constitutional has no monarch; absolute has one
(B) Constitutional monarch has real; absolute nominal
(C) Constitutional monarch has nominal; absolute real
(D) Both have monarchs with identical powers

Ans :

(C) Constitutional monarch has nominal; absolute real
In an absolute monarchy, the monarch wields complete power. In a constitutional monarchy like the UK, the monarch is the head of state but has largely ceremonial or nominal powers, with actual governing power resting with an elected parliament and prime minister.

23. What is a 'theocracy'?
(A) A government where power is held by wealthy
(B) A country ruled by religious laws, leaders
(C) A system where military controls the state
(D) A government based on direct citizen votes

In a direct democracy, all citizens participate directly in decision-making. In a representative democracy, citizens elect representatives who make decisions on their behalf.

10. Which country is given as an example of a place where some forms of direct democracy are followed?
(A) India in Asia
(B) United States
(C) Switzerland
(D) United Kingdom

Ans :

(C) Switzerland
Switzerland is often cited as an example of a country that incorporates elements of direct democracy into its political system, allowing citizens to vote directly on specific policies and laws through referendums.

11. What does 'accountability' mean in a representative democracy?
(A) The government can act without any public
(B) The government is answerable to the people
(C) Representatives hold their positions for life
(D) Elections are held very infrequently

Ans :

(B) The government is answerable to the people
Accountability in a representative democracy means that the elected government and its officials are responsible and answerable to the citizens who elected them for their actions and decisions.

12. In India, general elections to the Lok Sabha are typically held at what regular interval?
(A) Every three years
(B) Every four years
(C) Every five years
(D) Every six years

Ans :

(C) Every five years
India follows a system where general elections to the Lok Sabha (the Lower House of Parliament) are held every five years. This ensures regular opportunities for citizens to choose their representatives.

13. In a parliamentary democracy like India, if the Council of Ministers loses the confidence of the Lok Sabha, what is the typical consequence?
(A) The ministers continue working with more power
(B) The President takes over all executive power
(C) The ministers must resign from their posts
(D) The Lok Sabha is dissolved permanently

Ans :

(C) The ministers must resign from their posts
In a parliamentary system, the executive (Council of Ministers) is accountable to the legislature (Lok Sabha). If they lose the confidence of the Lok Sabha, they are typically required to resign, leading to a new government formation.

14. What is the 'executive' branch of government primarily responsible for?
(A) Making and passing all new national laws
(B) Interpreting laws and adjudicating disputes
(C) Implementing laws and administering country
(D) Amending the national constitution document

Ans :

(C) Implementing laws and administering country
The executive branch of government is responsible for implementing and enforcing the laws made by the legislature, as well as managing the day-to-day administration of the country.

15. In most democratic countries, the legislature, responsible for making laws, is known by different names; in India, it is called the _____.
(A) Congress
(B) Diet body
(C) Parliament
(D) Duma body

Ans :

(C) Parliament
The legislature in India, which is the supreme law-making body, is known as the Parliament. It consists of two houses : the Lok Sabha (House of the People) and the Rajya Sabha (Council of States).

16. What does the principle of 'Separation of Powers' in a democracy entail?
(A) Dividing the country into smaller separate states
(B) Keeping the military separate from civilian rule
(C) Independent functioning of legislative, executive, judiciary
(D) Allowing citizens to hold multiple government jobs

Ans :

(C) Independent functioning of legislative, executive, judiciary

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(B) Rule by a small, powerful group of elites
Oligarchy, from Greek words meaning 'few' and 'to rule', is a form of government where power rests with a small number of people, often wealthy families or influential individuals.

30. In ancient Greece, some city-states were ruled by aristocratic families. This form of governance would be classified as what?
(A) A direct democracy
(B) A theocracy
(C) An oligarchy
(D) A constitutional rule

Ans :

(C) An oligarchy
Rule by a small group of aristocratic (noble and wealthy) families, as seen in some ancient Greek city-states, is a classic example of an oligarchy, where power is concentrated in the hands of a privileged few.

31. Why is democracy generally considered a better form of government than others like dictatorship or absolute monarchy?
(A) It ensures faster decision-making processes
(B) It better protects people's choices, rights
(C) It leads to more economic equality
(D) It guarantees absence of any corruption

Ans :

(B) It better protects people's choices, rights
Democracy is often preferred because it ideally allows people to lead their lives with freedom, make their own choices, express themselves, and hold their government accountable for protecting their rights.

32. A country's government is structured such that the head of state is a monarch who inherited the position, but real governing power lies with an elected parliament and a prime minister who is accountable to it. This country has which form of government system?
(A) An absolute monarchy with all power
(B) A presidential democracy alone
(C) A constitutional monarchy
(D) A direct democracy system

Ans :

(C) A constitutional monarchy
This describes a constitutional monarchy, where the monarch's role is largely ceremonial, and actual political power is exercised by an elected legislature and an executive (Prime Minister and cabinet) accountable to it.

33. The early Indian mahajanapada of Vajji, particularly the Lichchhavi clan, practiced collective decision-making and is often cited as an example of an early _____.
(A) empire
(B) republic
(C) dictatorship
(D) theocracy

Ans :

(B) republic
The Vajji confederacy, especially the Lichchhavis, had a system where leaders were chosen, and decisions were made collectively by an assembly, rather than by a hereditary monarch. This has led scholars to describe them as early republics.

34. What does the term 'sovereign' mean in the context of a country's government?
(A) The government is directly elected by people
(B) The country's power is independent of external
(C) The monarch has only ceremonial duties
(D) The military has ultimate control over state

Ans :

(B) The country's power is independent of external
'Sovereign' indicates that a country's government has supreme and independent authority within its own territory, free from external control or influence in its decision-making processes.

35. The Romani people, who faced persecution under Hitler, are believed by scholars to have originated from which country based on linguistic and cultural characteristics?
(A) Germany
(B) Uganda
(C) India
(D) Iran

Ans :

(C) India
Linguistic and cultural studies suggest that the Romani people, often historically referred to as Gypsies, originated in India before migrating to various parts of the world, including Europe.

NODIA

36. The fact that even in ancient Indian monarchies, kings were often expected to rule according to 'rajadharma' (king's duty/righteousness) implies what?
(A) Kings had absolute, unquestionable divine right
(B) There were ethical and moral expectations them
(C) Welfare of people was not a concern
(D) Kings were primarily religious figures

Ans :

(B) There were ethical and moral expectations them
The concept of 'rajadharma' suggested that even kings were bound by certain duties and ethical principles, including ensuring the welfare of their subjects and ruling justly, rather than having completely arbitrary power.

37. How does the selection of leaders in a presidential democracy typically differ from that in a parliamentary democracy regarding the head of the executive?
(A) Presidential elects legislature; parliamentary elects president
(B) Presidential elects president; parliamentary elects legislature
(C) Both directly elect their prime ministers
(D) Neither involves any form of public vote

Ans :

(B) Presidential elects president; parliamentary elects legislature
In a presidential democracy, the people typically elect the president (head of executive) separately from the legislature. In a parliamentary democracy, people elect the legislature, and the executive (Prime Minister and ministers) is drawn from and accountable to the legislature.

38. Which function of government is correctly paired with its description?
(A) Legislative - Implementing and enforcing the laws
(B) Executive - Making and passing new policies
(C) Judiciary - Interpreting laws and settling any
(D) Administrative - Directly electing all the rulers

Ans :

(C) Judiciary - Interpreting laws and settling any
The judiciary is the branch of government responsible for interpreting laws, ensuring they are applied fairly, and adjudicating legal disputes, including determining if laws have been broken and what punishments are appropriate.

39. A country's constitution ensures that all adult citizens can vote, fundamental rights like freedom of speech are protected, and the courts can operate without government interference. These features are most characteristic of which type of government, ideally?
(A) An absolute monarchy system
(B) A military dictatorship rule
(C) A democratic government form
(D) An oligarchic power structure

Ans :

(C) A democratic government form
Universal adult franchise, protection of fundamental rights, and an independent judiciary are core principles and characteristics of a democratic system of government, designed to ensure citizen participation and protect liberties.

40. Which of these is NOT a fundamental principle typically associated with a functioning democracy?
(A) Equality before the law for all citizens
(B) Freedom of expression and making choices
(C) Hereditary succession for all government posts
(D) Representative participation through free election

Ans :

(C) Hereditary succession for all government posts
Democracies emphasize equality, freedom, and representative participation through elections. Hereditary succession for government positions is characteristic of monarchies, not democracies where leaders are chosen by the people or their representatives.

41. In the school example, which method of forming the Student Committee was identified as the most democratic?
(A) The Head Teacher choosing all the students
(B) All students becoming part of committee
(C) Students choosing representatives through a vote
(D) Only senior students forming the committee

Ans :

(C) Students choosing representatives through a vote
The method where students choose their representatives through voting, who form the

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

committee, was highlighted as the democratic approach. This ensures representation and student participation in the selection process.

42. What does the 'judicial function' of government primarily involve?
(A) Creating new laws for the entire country
(B) Implementing the policies decided by leaders
(C) Ensuring rules are followed, settling disputes
(D) Managing the nation's international affairs

Ans :

(C) Ensuring rules are followed, settling disputes
The judicial function of government is concerned with interpreting laws, ensuring they are upheld, resolving legal disputes, and administering justice when laws are broken.

43. How does the source of authority in a democracy like India differ from that in a theocracy?
(A) Democracy from people; theocracy from religious
(B) Democracy from military; theocracy from wealth
(C) Democracy from monarch; theocracy from people
(D) Democracy from religion; theocracy from foreign

Ans :

(A) Democracy from people; theocracy from religious
In a democracy such as India, the ultimate source of governmental authority is the people. In a theocracy, authority is derived from religious beliefs and institutions, with governance based on religious law.

44. The story of King Chandrapida and the cobbler from Kalhana's Rajatarangini illustrates the king's commitment to _____, even towards a lowly subject.
(A) military expansion
(B) personal wealth
(C) dharma (justice)
(D) artistic pursuits

Ans :

(C) dharma (justice)
The narrative highlights King Chandrapida's adherence to dharma (righteousness and justice) by respecting the cobbler's rights and feelings regarding his hut, even when it inconvenienced the king's plans, showing fairness.

45. Why is an independent judiciary considered a crucial component of a healthy democracy?
(A) It helps the executive implement laws faster
(B) It ensures fundamental rights are protected
(C) It allows legislature to pass any laws
(D) It makes government decisions less transparent

Ans :

(B) It ensures fundamental rights are protected
An independent judiciary is vital in a democracy because it acts as a guardian of the constitution and citizens' fundamental rights. It ensures that both the government and individuals act within the bounds of the law.

46. A country's laws are all based on sacred religious texts, and the head of state is also the supreme religious leader, whose authority is considered divinely ordained. This system of government is best described as a/an :
(A) Oligarchy based on business interests only
(B) Direct democracy with citizen assemblies
(C) Constitutional monarchy with limited power
(D) Theocracy ruled by religious principles

Ans :

(D) Theocracy ruled by religious principles
This scenario describes a theocracy, where governance is based on religious laws and principles, and religious leaders often hold ultimate political authority, believed to be divinely sanctioned.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. www.momworksheet.com
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS
NODIA

47. Which form of government is INCORRECTLY paired with a country?
(A) Absolute Monarchy - Saudi Arabia
(B) Constitutional Monarchy - United Kingdom
(C) Theocracy - Switzerland (elements of direct democracy)
(D) Dictatorship - North Korea (implied by Shane's story)

Ans :

(C) Theocracy - Switzerland (elements of direct democracy)
Switzerland is cited as an example of a country with elements of direct democracy, not a theocracy. Iran, Afghanistan, and Vatican City are mentioned as examples of theocracies.

(C) Lichchhavis were ruled by religious priests
(D) Lichchhavis had no organized system of any rule

Ans :

(B) Lichchhavis practiced collective decision-making, elected
The Lichchhavi clan, part of the Vajji confederacy, operated with a system of collective decision-making where leaders were chosen based on merit, and an assembly played a key role, contrasting with typical hereditary monarchies.

61. In India, the three organs of government—Legislature, Executive, and Judiciary—are expected to work independently due to the principle of _____ of Power.
(A) Concentration
(B) Devolution
(C) Separation
(D) Unification

Ans :

(C) Separation
The principle of Separation of Powers advocates for the distinct and independent functioning of the legislative (law-making), executive (law-implementing), and judicial (law-interpreting) branches of government to prevent any single branch from becoming overly powerful.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

62. The story of Shane in North Korea, who faces strict rules about haircuts, clothing, and internet access, and lives under constant government surveillance, illustrates life under what type of regime?
(A) A constitutional monarchy known for freedom
(B) A direct democracy with citizen control
(C) A totalitarian dictatorship with no limits
(D) A federal republic with regional choice

Ans :

(C) A totalitarian dictatorship with no limits
Shane's experiences—compulsory service, restricted personal freedoms (haircut, clothes, internet), government surveillance, and lack of dissent—are characteristic of life under a totalitarian dictatorship that exerts extensive control over citizens' lives.

63. A country holds regular, free, and fair elections where all adult citizens have the right to vote for their leaders. The elected government is accountable to the people, and fundamental rights are protected by an independent judiciary. This country operates under which system of government?
(A) An absolute monarchy structure
(B) A representative democracy
(C) A military junta or group
(D) A single-party theocracy state

Ans :

(B) A representative democracy
These features – regular free elections, universal adult suffrage, accountable government, protection of fundamental rights, and an independent judiciary – are the hallmarks of a representative democracy.

64. Which example of a country is INCORRECTLY matched with the typical form of government it represents?
(A) India - Parliamentary Democracy
(B) USA - Presidential Democracy
(C) Saudi Arabia - Constitutional Monarchy
(D) Iran - Theocracy (with democratic elements)

Ans :

(C) Saudi Arabia - Constitutional Monarchy
Saudi Arabia is cited as an example of an absolute monarchy, where the king holds complete power. The United Kingdom is given as an example of a constitutional monarchy.

65. Assertion (A) : Even well-established democracies can face challenges such as corruption and wealth disparity.
Reason (R) : These challenges arise because democracy, by its nature, is designed to benefit only a small elite group.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
It is true that democracies can face issues like corruption and wealth disparity. However, democracy is ideally designed for the well-being of all citizens, not just an elite group; these

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

54. What is a key difference between the Lower House (e.g., Lok Sabha in India) and the Upper House (e.g., Rajya Sabha) in many bicameral legislatures?
(A) Lower House is nominated; Upper House directly elected
(B) Lower House is more powerful; Upper House less
(C) Lower House has longer terms; Upper House shorter
(D) Lower House deals with foreign; Upper House domestic

Ans :

(B) Lower House is more powerful; Upper House less
In many bicameral (two-house) legislatures, the Lower House, which is typically directly elected by the people, often holds more power, particularly in financial matters and government formation, compared to the Upper House.

55. Which form of government is described as having a ruler whose power is inherited and who is not limited by a constitution?
(A) Constitutional Monarchy with its king
(B) Direct Democracy for the nation
(C) Absolute Monarchy with its king
(D) Parliamentary Republic

Ans :

(C) Absolute Monarchy with its king
An absolute monarchy is characterized by a ruler (monarch) who inherits their position and exercises supreme, unrestricted power, not bound by a constitution or other legal limitations.

56. A political commentator observes that in a particular democracy, a very small group of extremely wealthy business leaders seems to exert undue influence over government policies and decisions, benefiting their own interests disproportionately. This situation shows signs of the democracy potentially tending towards what?
(A) A theocracy with divine laws
(B) An oligarchy of the elites
(C) A direct democracy in place
(D) An absolute monarchy

Ans :

(B) An oligarchy of the elites
When a small, powerful, and often wealthy elite group wields excessive influence over government, potentially to the detriment of broader public interest, it signals a drift towards oligarchy, even within a formally democratic system.

57. Which of these is NOT a reason why democracy is generally valued over other forms of government?
(A) It allows people to choose their government
(B) It holds the government accountable to citizen
(C) It guarantees absence of all social issues
(D) It aims for well-being of all its people

Ans :

(C) It guarantees absence of all social issues
While democracy strives to address societal problems and protect rights, it does not guarantee the complete absence of all social issues or challenges. It provides a framework for addressing them.

58. What is the term for the official, often violent, persecution and extermination of Jews by Nazi Germany under Adolf Hitler?
(A) The Great Purge of old
(B) The Reign of Terror
(C) The Holocaust
(D) The Cultural Revolution

Ans :

(C) The Holocaust
The Holocaust was the systematic, state-sponsored persecution and genocide of six million Jews by the Nazi regime and its collaborators during World War II.

59. What does the term 'adjudicating' mean in a legal or governmental context?
(A) The process of creating and passing laws
(B) The act of enforcing laws on population
(C) Judging a case or dispute officially
(D) The system of collecting taxes from all

Ans :

(C) Judging a case or dispute officially
Adjudicating refers to the formal process of making an official decision or judgment on a disputed matter, typically by a court or a judge, after hearing evidence and arguments from all sides involved.

60. How did the Lichchhavi clan's governance within the Vajji mahajanapada differ from a typical monarchy of that era?
(A) Lichchhavis had a single, all-powerful hereditary king
(B) Lichchhavis practiced collective decision-making, elected

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(B) A country ruled by religious laws, leaders
A theocracy is a form of government in which a deity is recognized as the supreme civil ruler, or in which government policy is guided by officials regarded as divinely inspired, or by religious law.

24. Which country is mentioned as having a unique political system combining elements of theocratic and democratic governance, with a Supreme Leader?
(A) Vatican City
(B) Afghanistan
(C) Iran today
(D) Saudi Arabia

Ans :

(C) Iran today
Iran's political system is described as a unique combination of theocratic elements (with a Supreme Leader holding ultimate authority based on Islamic principles) and democratic features (like an elected president and parliament).

25. A country is ruled by one person who seized power by force, is not bound by any constitution, and suppresses all opposition. This form of government is best described as a/an :
(A) Direct democracy
(B) Constitutional monarchy
(C) Dictatorship
(D) Parliamentary republic

Ans :

(C) Dictatorship
This description matches a dictatorship, where a single leader or a small group holds absolute power, often obtained and maintained by force, without constitutional limitations, and typically suppressing dissent and opposition.

26. Assertion (A) : In India's parliamentary democracy, the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers are part of the legislature.
Reason (R) : The executive in a parliamentary system is accountable to the legislature and requires its confidence.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
In India's parliamentary system, the executive (Prime Minister and ministers) are indeed members of the Parliament (legislature). This structure ensures their accountability to the legislature, as they must maintain its confidence to remain in power.

27. Which historical figure is INCORRECTLY matched with the country they were a dictator of?
(A) Adolf Hitler - Germany
(B) Idi Amin - Uganda
(C) King Charles III - United Kingdom
(D) Kim Jong-un (implied by North Korea example) - North Korea

Ans :

(C) King Charles III - United Kingdom
Adolf Hitler was the dictator of Germany, and Idi Amin of Uganda. The example of Shane implies Kim Jong-un's dictatorship in North Korea. King Charles III is the constitutional monarch of the United Kingdom, not a dictator.

NODIA

28. Consider the following about different government systems :
1. In a direct democracy, citizens elect representatives to make laws.
2. An absolute monarch's power is typically limited by a constitution.
3. A dictatorship often involves suppression of fundamental rights for all.

Which of the above statements is/are correct about this?
(A) 3 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 3 only
In direct democracy, citizens make laws directly, not through representatives. An absolute monarch's power is not constitutionally limited. Dictatorships often suppress rights.

29. What does 'oligarchy' mean?
(A) Rule by a single, divinely chosen individual
(B) Rule by a small, powerful group of elites
(C) Rule by all citizens through direct voting
(D) Rule by randomly selected lottery winners

challenges represent deviations from or failures to achieve democratic ideals.

66. Consider the following regarding governance :
1. The executive branch is primarily responsible for making laws.
2. In a presidential democracy, the president is part of the legislature.
3. The judiciary ensures that laws are followed by citizens and government.

Which of the above statements is/are correct generally?
(A) 3 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 3 only
The legislature makes laws; the executive implements them. In a presidential system, the president (executive) is separate from the legislature. The judiciary indeed interprets laws and ensures they are followed.

67. The Shanti Parva of the Mahabharata contains Bhishma's teachings to Yudhisthira on good governance, justice, and the moral responsibilities of a _____.
(A) priest
(B) merchant
(C) raja (king)
(D) soldier

Ans :

(C) raja (king)
In the Shanti Parva of the Mahabharata, the wise elder Bhishma imparts extensive teachings to Yudhisthira on the principles of rajadharma, which encompasses good governance, justice, and the ethical duties of a raja (king).

68. What does "Universal Adult Franchise" guarantee in a democracy?
(A) Free education for all adult citizens
(B) The right of every adult citizen to vote
(C) Employment opportunities for every adult
(D) Freedom of speech for all adults only

Ans :

(B) The right of every adult citizen to vote
Universal Adult Franchise is a democratic principle that grants the right to vote to all adult citizens of a country, typically without discrimination based on race, sex, belief, or social status (though age restrictions apply).

69. Which ancient Indian text, composed by Kautilya, discusses statecraft, economic policy, and military strategy in detail?
(A) Manusmriti
(B) Ramayana
(C) Arthashastra
(D) Yoga Sutras

Ans :

(C) Arthashastra
The Arthashastra, attributed to Kautilya (Chanakya), is an ancient Indian treatise on statecraft, political science, economic policy, and military strategy, offering comprehensive guidance on governance and administration.

70. The existence of an 'Upper House' and a 'Lower House' in the legislature of many democracies signifies what kind of legislative structure?
(A) A unicameral (single-house) system
(B) A bicameral (two-house) system mainly
(C) A multi-cameral (many-house) system
(D) A non-cameral (no-house) system

Ans :

(B) A bicameral (two-house) system mainly
A legislature composed of two separate assemblies, chambers, or houses (typically an Upper House and a Lower House) is known as a bicameral system. This structure is common in many democratic countries, including India and the USA.

71. How does the power of the monarch in an absolute monarchy like Saudi Arabia compare to that of the monarch in a constitutional monarchy like the UK?
(A) Both have equally unlimited governing powers
(B) Saudi monarch has real; UK monarch nominal
(C) UK monarch has absolute; Saudi monarch limited
(D) Neither has any significant political power

Ans :

(B) Saudi monarch has real; UK monarch nominal
In an absolute monarchy like Saudi Arabia, the monarch holds virtually all governing power. In a constitutional monarchy like the UK, the monarch's powers are largely ceremonial and symbolic, with real political authority vested in elected officials.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

104. What principle ensures that the Legislature, Executive, and Judiciary work independently?

Ans :

Separation of Power.

105. Name one ancient Indian mahajanapada that functioned as an early republic (gana/sangha).

Ans :

Vajji (or Vrijji)/Malla (any one).

106. Which Chola-era inscriptions give details about village sabha elections?

Ans :

Uttaramerur inscriptions.

107. What type of government is ruled by a king or queen, usually inheriting the position?

Ans :

Monarchy.

108. What type of government is ruled based on religious laws and by religious leaders?

Ans :

Theocracy.

109. What type of government involves one person or a small group holding absolute, unlimited power?

Ans :

Dictatorship.

110. What type of government involves rule by a small, powerful, often wealthy group?

Ans :

Oligarchy.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. List three key roles or functions performed by modern governments.

Ans :

Governments maintain law and order, provide essential services like education and healthcare, manage the economy, ensure national defense, and manage relations with other countries.

112. Using the school committee example, explain why representative democracy is often preferred over direct participation in large groups.

Ans :

Just as having every student on a committee makes decision-making difficult, direct participation by all citizens in large countries is impractical. Electing representatives allows for efficient governance while still reflecting the people's will.

113. Explain the three main functions of government : legislative, executive, and judicial.

Ans :

The legislative function involves making laws. The executive function involves implementing those laws and running the administration. The judicial function involves interpreting laws and ensuring they are followed, resolving disputes.

114. What are four key aspects that differentiate various forms of government?

Ans :

Differences arise from : who holds ultimate authority, how the government is formed, the structure/parts of government and their roles, and the government's goals/values (e.g., welfare for all vs few).

115. What does 'equality' mean as a fundamental principle of democracy?

Ans :

Equality in democracy means every person has the right to equal treatment, equal access to facilities (education, health), and is considered equal before the law, regardless of background.

NODIA

116. Explain the importance of 'universal adult franchise' in a representative democracy.

Ans :

Universal adult franchise ensures that all adult citizens, regardless of gender, race, class, etc., have the equal right to vote and choose their representatives, forming the basis of popular sovereignty.

117. Why is an independent judiciary considered essential for democracy?

Ans :

An independent judiciary protects citizens' fundamental rights from violation by the state

a confederacy of clans known for its republican or oligarchic form of governance, distinct from contemporary monarchies.

79. The idea that "the government is accountable to the people who have elected them" is a core principle of which system?
(A) Absolute Monarchy only
(B) Representative Democracy
(C) Military Dictatorship
(D) Hereditary Oligarchy rule

Ans :

(B) Representative Democracy
Accountability to the electorate is a fundamental tenet of representative democracy, where elected officials are responsible for their actions and decisions to the citizens who vested them with power through elections.

80. A citizen in a country feels their fundamental right to equality has been violated by a new government policy. In a functioning democracy with an independent judiciary, what recourse does this citizen ideally have to seek justice?
(A) They must accept the policy without question.
(B) They can appeal directly to a foreign nation.
(C) They can approach the courts for a review.
(D) They should organize a protest to stop it.

Ans :

(C) They can approach the courts for a review.
In a democracy with an independent judiciary, citizens whose fundamental rights are violated can seek redress by approaching the courts. The judiciary has the power to review government actions and policies to ensure they align with the constitution and protect citizens' rights.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following types of government with their core characteristics :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Democracy	A.	Ruled by a king or queen, often hereditary
2.	Monarchy	B.	Rule by the people, often through elected representatives
3.	Theocracy	C.	Rule by a small, powerful group, often wealthy or influential
4.	Oligarchy	D.	Ruled by religious laws and religious leaders

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Democracy is rule by the people. Monarchy is rule by a king/queen. Theocracy is rule by religious principles and leaders. Oligarchy is rule by a small, powerful elite.

82. Match the following functions of government with their descriptions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Legislative	A.	Ensuring rules are followed and disputes settled
2.	Executive	B.	Creation of rules and laws
3.	Judicial	C.	Protecting the state from external aggression
4.	Raksha	D.	Implementation of rules and administration

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
The legislative function creates laws. The executive implements laws and administrates. The judicial function ensures laws are followed. Raksha, from Kautilya, means protection from external aggression.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

145. Considering Shane's story in North Korea, analyse how the lack of democratic principles impacts citizens' daily lives and awareness.

Ans :

Lack of democracy severely curtails personal freedom (restricted choices in appearance, movement, information access via internet). Compulsory service and constant surveillance create an environment of fear and conformity. Restricted information prevents awareness of alternatives or external perspectives, reinforcing state control over citizens' lives and thoughts.

146. Analyse the potential long-term consequences for a society ruled by a dictator like Hitler or Idi Amin.

Ans :

Dictatorships often lead to severe human rights abuses (mass killings, persecution of minorities like Jews/Roma under Hitler, expulsion/killing of ethnic groups under Amin), suppression of freedoms, economic mismanagement or exploitation, international isolation, and devastating wars (WWII under Hitler), leaving deep, lasting scars on society.

147. Why is the 'separation of powers' considered a vital mechanism for preventing tyranny or abuse of power in a democracy?

Ans :

By dividing governmental functions (legislative, executive, judicial) among independent branches, separation of powers creates checks and balances. No single branch can accumulate absolute authority. Each branch can limit the power of the others, preventing tyranny and safeguarding citizens' liberties from potential government overreach.

148. Using Table given below, analyse why democracy is often associated with promoting the "Wellbeing and Prosperity of all citizens" more than other forms of government shown.

Characteristics	Democracy	Dictatorship	Absolute Monarchy	Oligarchy
Universal Adult Franchise	Yes	No	No	No
Equality amongst citizens				
Freedom of speech				
Separation of powers				
Wellbeing and Prosperity of all citizens				

Ans :

Democracies ideally ensure equality, allowing all citizens opportunities. Freedom of speech allows needs to be voiced. Accountability via elections pressures governments to address citizens' welfare. Other forms often prioritize the rulers (monarchy, dictatorship) or a small group (oligarchy), lacking mechanisms to ensure the well-being of the entire populace.

149. Evaluate the challenges faced in transitioning from a non-democratic system (like monarchy or colonial rule) to a stable democracy, considering India's experience.

Ans :

Challenges include establishing democratic institutions (parliament, judiciary), ensuring fair elections (universal franchise), overcoming deep social inequalities (caste, poverty), educating citizens about rights/responsibilities, preventing corruption, and fostering national unity amidst diversity. India successfully established institutions but continues to grapple with many of these socio-economic challenges.

NODIA

150. "Vigilant citizens are the ultimate safeguard of democracy." Analyse the meaning and importance of this statement, considering the hurdles.

Ans :

This means democracy's health depends on citizens actively participating, staying informed, questioning authority, and defending rights. Hurdles like corruption, misinformation, or elite capture can undermine democracy. Vigilant citizens who hold power accountable, demand transparency, and participate thoughtfully are crucial to counteracting these threats and preserving democratic ideals.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. In the ancient Vajji confederacy, a proposal is made in the sabha to increase taxes on farmers to fund a war against a neighbouring monarchy. Representatives from agricultural clans argue against it, stating it will cause hardship, while representatives from warrior clans strongly support it for defense.

(i) What feature of Vajji's governance allowed this debate to happen openly in the sabha?

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. According to Kautilya, what are the three-fold duties of a ruler in internal administration?

Ans :

Raksha (protection), Palana (law and order), and Yogakshema (welfare).

87. Name one essential function of any government.

Ans :

Maintain law and order/Ensure peace/security/ Manage foreign relations/National defence/ Deliver essential services/Manage economy/Work for people's welfare (any one).

88. What form of government does India have?

Ans :

Democratic government (specifically, Parliamentary Democracy).

89. What does 'democracy' literally mean?

Ans :

Rule of the people.

90. In a democracy, who is the ultimate source of power and authority?

Ans :

The people of the country.

91. What is the function of government concerned with making rules or laws called?

Ans :

Legislative function.

92. What is the function of government concerned with implementing rules and administration called?

Ans :

Executive function.

93. What is the function of government concerned with ensuring rules are followed and interpreted called?

Ans :

Judicial function.

94. Who famously described democracy as 'government of the people, by the people, for the people'?

Ans :

Abraham Lincoln.

95. What is the book containing the fundamental rules of a country often called?

Ans :

Constitution.

96. What principle ensures that every person has the right to be treated equally in a democracy?

Ans :

Equality.

97. What principle grants every adult citizen the right to vote in elections?

Ans :

Universal adult franchise.

98. Which organ of government ensures that citizens' fundamental rights are protected?

Ans :

Independent judiciary.

99. In which country mentioned did women get the right to vote only in 1971?

Ans :

Switzerland.

100. What type of democracy involves all citizens participating directly in decision-making?

Ans :

Direct democracy.

101. What is the most common form of democracy where people elect representatives?

Ans :

Representative democracy.

102. What does 'accountability' mean in a democracy?

Ans :

The government is answerable to the people who elected them.

103. In India, the Parliament (Legislature) consists of the Lok Sabha and which other house?

Ans :

Rajya Sabha (Upper House).

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

72. Which description correctly defines 'Fundamental Rights' in a democracy?
(A) Optional duties citizens may choose to perform
(B) Basic protected rights for all citizens
(C) Privileges granted only to government workers
(D) Guidelines for international diplomatic policy

Ans :

(B) Basic protected rights for all citizens
Fundamental Rights are a set of basic human rights guaranteed to all citizens in a democracy, protected by the constitution, such as the right to equality, freedom, and against exploitation.

73. A government body is responsible for ensuring that new laws passed by the parliament align with the country's constitution and for settling legal arguments about these laws. This body is performing which essential function of government?
(A) The legislative (law-making) function
(B) The executive (law-implementing) part
(C) The judicial (law-interpreting) function
(D) The administrative (day-to-day) one

Ans :

(C) The judicial (law-interpreting) function
Interpreting laws, ensuring their constitutionality, and resolving legal disputes are the primary responsibilities of the judicial branch of government. This function is crucial for upholding the rule of law.

74. Which of these is NOT a characteristic of a dictatorship?
(A) Absolute power held by one person or group
(B) Limitations imposed by a strong constitution
(C) Suppression of opposition and dissent
(D) Absence of free and fair electoral choice

Ans :

(B) Limitations imposed by a strong constitution
Dictatorships are defined by the ruler(s) possessing absolute power without limitations from a constitution or law. They often involve suppression of opposition and the absence of genuine democratic processes.

75. The term 'rajadharma' in ancient India referred to the duties and righteous conduct expected of whom?
(A) Common citizens
(B) Religious priests
(C) Kings or rulers
(D) Foreign merchants

Ans :

(C) Kings or rulers
'Rajadharma' pertains to the set of duties, responsibilities, and ethical principles that a king or ruler was expected to follow in ancient Indian political thought, emphasizing just governance and the welfare of subjects.

NODIA

76. What is a 'caricature' as shown in the figures of Adolf Hitler and Idi Amin?
(A) A realistic, photographic portrait of person
(B) A formal statue erected in their honor
(C) A drawing exaggerating features for humor
(D) An official document signed by the leader

Ans :

(C) A drawing exaggerating features for humor
A caricature is a rendered image showing the features of its subject in a simplified or exaggerated way, often for satirical or humorous effect, as seen with the depictions of Hitler and Idi Amin.

77. What is the primary difference in how the head of the executive (e.g., President or Prime Minister) usually attains power in a democracy versus an absolute monarchy?
(A) Democracy via election; monarchy via inheritance
(B) Democracy via inheritance; monarchy via an election
(C) Both are appointed by religious leadership
(D) Both seize power through military action

Ans :

(A) Democracy via election; monarchy via inheritance
In most democracies, the head of the executive is chosen through some form of election by the people or their representatives. In absolute monarchies, the monarch typically inherits their position through familial succession.

78. The ancient Lichchhavi clan, known for its republican traditions, was part of the larger _____ mahajanapada.
(A) Magadha
(B) Kosala
(C) Vajji (Vriji)
(D) Avanti

Ans :

(C) Vajji (Vriji)
The Lichchhavis were a prominent clan within the Vajji (or Vriji) mahajanapada, which was

or other individuals, ensures laws are applied fairly, and acts as a check on the executive and legislative branches.

118. What is the main limitation of direct democracy, especially in large countries?

Ans :

Direct democracy, where all citizens vote on all issues, becomes very difficult and impractical to manage in large populations, making timely decision-making and effective implementation nearly impossible.

119. How are governments held accountable to the people in a representative democracy?

Ans :

Governments are held accountable primarily through regular elections, where people can choose to re-elect representatives or vote them out if they are unsatisfied with their performance or policies.

120. Explain the key difference between parliamentary and presidential forms of democracy regarding the executive.

Ans :

In parliamentary democracy (like India), the executive (Prime Minister/ministers) is part of and accountable to the legislature. In presidential democracy (like USA), the executive (President) is elected separately and works independently of the legislature.

121. What does 'separation of powers' mean in the context of government organs?

Ans :

Separation of powers means the legislative (law-making), executive (law-implementing), and judicial (law-interpreting) branches of government operate independently, preventing any one branch from becoming too powerful.

122. How did the ancient Lichchhavi clan (part of Vajji) demonstrate republican principles?

Ans :

The Lichchhavis practiced collective decision-making in assemblies, chose leaders based on merit (not just birth), potentially used elections, and focused on people's welfare, reflecting early republican ideals.

123. What do the Uttaramerur inscriptions reveal about local governance in the Chola period?

Ans :

They reveal a sophisticated system of village self-governance (sabha) with detailed procedures for electing members (using ballots), defining qualifications and duties, and even rules for removing corrupt members.

124. What limitations existed in ancient Greek republics regarding citizen participation?

Ans :

While pioneering republican ideas, participation was often limited. In some areas, only free men could vote, excluding women, workers, and slaves. In others, only a small, privileged group held decision-making power.

125. Explain the concept of 'rajadharma' as applied to ancient Indian kings.

Ans :

Rajadharma meant that a king's rule was bound by dharma (righteous duty/law). He was expected to rule justly, ensure the welfare of all subjects, and seek wise counsel, rather than exercising absolute, arbitrary power.

126. What is the difference between an absolute monarchy and a constitutional monarchy? Give examples.

Ans :

In an absolute monarchy (e.g., Saudi Arabia), the monarch holds supreme, often unlimited power. In a constitutional monarchy (e.g., UK), the monarch is a head of state with limited/ceremonial powers defined by a constitution, while real power lies with an elected parliament/government.

NODIA

127. Describe the main characteristic of a theocracy.

Ans :

A theocracy is a form of government where rule is based on religious law, and religious leaders hold significant political authority, often claiming divine guidance. Iran is given as a key example.

128. What defines a dictatorship?

Ans :

A dictatorship is characterized by absolute power held by a single person or a small group,

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

unrestricted by a constitution or laws, often suppressing opposition and citizens' rights.

129. Briefly describe the conditions in North Korea based on Shane's story.

Ans :

Conditions include compulsory military service, strict government control over personal appearance (hair, clothes), restricted access to outside information (internet), close surveillance, and lack of personal freedom or choice.

130. Explain what an oligarchy is.

Ans :

An oligarchy is a form of government where power rests with a small, elite group, often distinguished by wealth, family ties, or military control, who make decisions for the whole society.

131. According to the comparison table, which form(s) of government typically lack universal adult franchise?

Characteristics	Democracy	Dictatorship	Absolute Monarchy	Oligarchy
Universal Adult Franchise	Yes	No	No	No
Equality amongst citizens				
Freedom of speech				
Separation of powers				
Wellbeing and Prosperity of all citizens				

Ans :

Dictatorship, absolute monarchy, and oligarchy typically lack universal adult franchise, as power is not derived from the broad population's vote.

132. Why is democracy considered preferable by many compared to other forms like dictatorship or monarchy?

Ans :

Democracy is preferred because it upholds principles like equality, freedom, and citizen participation (voting). Governments are accountable to the people, rights are protected, and power isn't concentrated arbitrarily.

133. List two potential problems or challenges that even democratic governments can face.

Ans :

Democracies can face challenges like corruption, wealth disparity influencing politics, manipulation of information, erosion of judicial independence, or excessive control by powerful groups.

134. How can citizens help keep democracy strong?

Ans :

Citizens can stay informed, participate actively (voting, discussions), hold elected officials accountable, protect fundamental rights, respect diverse opinions, and remain vigilant against threats like corruption or misinformation.

135. What does it mean for a country to be 'sovereign'?

Ans :

A sovereign country possesses supreme and independent power or authority over its own territory, free from external control or influence in its governance.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the three functions of government (legislative, executive, judicial) using the example of the school committee analogy.

Ans :

Making rules for school activities (timetables, sports) is the legislative function. Implementing these rules and managing tasks (serving meals, organizing assembly) is the executive function. Ensuring students follow rules and perhaps resolving disputes related to them represents the judicial function, all carried out by the student committee.

137. Compare and contrast direct democracy and representative democracy. Why is representative democracy more common in large, modern nations?

Ans :

Direct democracy involves all citizens voting on all laws/decisions. Representative democracy involves citizens electing officials to make decisions on their behalf. Direct democracy is impractical for large populations due to logistical challenges in participation and decision-making, making representative systems more feasible for modern nation-states.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

138. Analyse the relationship between the executive and legislature in a parliamentary democracy (like India) versus a presidential democracy (like USA).

Ans :

In parliamentary systems, the executive (PM, ministers) emerges from and is accountable to the legislature (must maintain its confidence). In presidential systems, the executive (President) is elected separately and functions independently of the legislature, leading to a stricter separation of powers between the two branches.

139. Evaluate the significance of the Uttaramerur inscriptions in understanding democratic traditions in ancient India. What are their limitations?

Ans :

These inscriptions are highly significant, providing concrete evidence of sophisticated local self-governance with democratic elements like elections (ballots), specific qualifications, and accountability (removal for corruption) in Chola times. Limitations include it being a local example; we don't know how widespread or long-lasting this specific system was.

140. "The concept of Rajadharma in ancient India acted as a check on monarchical power." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

Rajadharma prescribed that a king's actions must align with righteousness and prioritize subjects' welfare. While not a formal constitution, this principle created a moral and ethical framework limiting arbitrary rule. Kings ignoring dharma risked losing legitimacy and support, acting as an ideological check on absolute power.

141. Compare the source of authority and limitations on power in an absolute monarchy versus a dictatorship.

Ans :

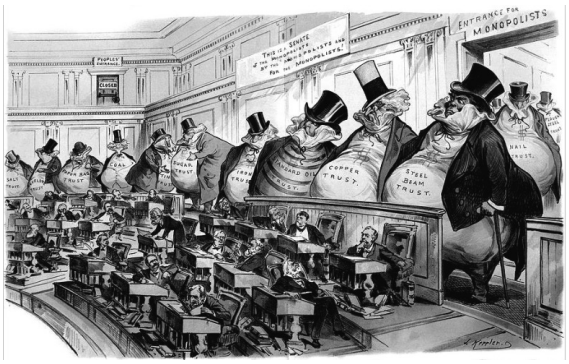
In absolute monarchy, authority often derives from tradition (heredity) and sometimes divine right, with theoretical limits imposed by religious law or custom (like Rajadharma). In dictatorship, authority usually stems from force (military coup, revolution), with power being absolute and practically unlimited by law or constitution, often maintained through repression.

142. Analyse the key features that distinguish a theocracy from other forms of government like democracy or monarchy.

Ans :

Theocracy's defining feature is its basis in religious law and the prominent role of religious leaders in governance, often holding ultimate authority (like Iran's Supreme Leader). Unlike democracy (people's sovereignty) or monarchy (hereditary rule), ultimate authority stems from religious doctrine and interpretation by clerical figures.

143. "Even democracies can exhibit oligarchic tendencies." Analyse how this might happen, referring to the cartoon (Fig.) or modern examples.



NODIA

Ans :

Oligarchic tendencies emerge when wealth or influence becomes concentrated, allowing a small elite (rich industrialists, powerful lobbyists, entrenched politicians – symbolized by the large figures dominating the Senate in the cartoon) to exert disproportionate control over policy-making, overriding the broader public interest despite democratic structures being formally in place.

144. Evaluate the importance of fundamental rights (like freedom of speech, equality) in ensuring a functional democracy.

Ans :

Fundamental rights are crucial. Freedom of speech allows open debate and criticism of government. Equality ensures all citizens can participate and are treated fairly by law. Protecting these rights prevents suppression of dissent, ensures broad participation, and holds the government accountable, making democracy meaningful and functional.

83. Match the forms of democracy with their specific features :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Direct Democracy	A.	Executive (President) works independently of the legislature
2.	Representative Democracy	B.	All citizens directly participate in all decisions and functions
3.	Parliamentary Democracy	C.	People elect representatives who govern on their behalf
4.	Presidential Democracy	D.	Executive members (e.g., Prime Minister) are part of the legislature

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Direct democracy involves all citizens in decision-making. Representative democracy has elected officials. In parliamentary democracy, the executive is part of the legislature. In presidential democracy, the executive is separate.

84. Match the following historical examples or concepts of governance in India :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Vajji Mahajanapada	A.	Chola period inscriptions detailing village sabha elections
2.	Uttaramerur Inscriptions	B.	Early republic with collective decision-making and elected leaders
3.	Rajadharma	C.	King's duty to rule according to dharma and ensure people's welfare
4.	Kautilya's Yogakshema	D.	Safeguarding the welfare of the people, a ruler's duty

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Vajji was an early republic. Uttaramerur inscriptions describe Chola village elections. Rajadharma refers to a king's righteous rule. Yogakshema, from Kautilya, is about safeguarding people's welfare.

85. Match the following terms related to democratic principles :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Universal Adult Franchise	A.	Government is answerable to the people who elected them
2.	Accountability	B.	Every adult citizen's right to vote in elections
3.	Separation of Powers	C.	Basic entitlements like equality and freedom of speech
4.	Fundamental Rights	D.	Independent functioning of Legislature, Executive, and Judiciary

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Universal adult franchise is the right of all adults to vote. Accountability means the government is answerable to citizens. Separation of powers divides governmental functions. Fundamental rights are basic citizen entitlements.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) How would a decision likely be reached in this scenario?

(iii) Compare how this decision-making process differs from how a similar decision might be made in a typical monarchy of that era.

Ans :

(i) Vajji's republican system (gana/sangha) featured collective decision-making in assemblies (sabha) where representatives from different groups could voice concerns and debate important issues like taxation and war.

(ii) A decision would likely be reached through further discussion among the representatives in the sabha, possibly followed by a vote to determine the majority opinion on whether to increase taxes.

(iii) In a typical monarchy, the king would likely make the final decision, perhaps after consulting ministers or elders, but without necessarily requiring a formal debate or vote among representatives of different groups as in the Vajji sabha.

152. A modern constitutional monarchy faces a crisis. The elected Prime Minister proposes a law restricting press freedom, citing national security. The monarch privately expresses concern but has no constitutional power to veto the law. Civil society groups protest, and the independent judiciary reviews the law's constitutionality.

(i) What defines this country as a 'constitutional' monarchy?

(ii) Which fundamental democratic principle is potentially threatened by the proposed law?

(iii) Evaluate the role of the independent judiciary and civil society in this scenario as safeguards for democracy.

Ans :

(i) The monarch's powers are limited by the constitution; real legislative and executive power lies with the elected parliament and the government accountable to it, not the hereditary monarch.

(ii) The fundamental right to freedom of speech and expression, specifically the freedom of the press, is threatened.

(iii) The independent judiciary acts as a crucial check by reviewing the law's constitutionality against fundamental rights. Civil society protests raise public awareness and pressure the government, demonstrating citizens' role in defending democratic principles even when formal power structures are challenged.

NODIA

153. Following a military coup, a country is ruled by a General who suspends the constitution, dissolves parliament, bans political opposition, and controls all media. He claims this is necessary to restore order and economic prosperity, promising elections later but setting no date.

(i) What type of government does this scenario describe?

(ii) Identify three democratic principles or institutions that have been violated or removed.

(iii) Evaluate the General's claim that suspending democracy is necessary for order and prosperity.

Ans :

(i) This describes a military dictatorship, where power is seized and held by force by a military leader or group, overriding democratic institutions.

(ii) Violations include : representative participation (parliament dissolved), rule of law (constitution suspended), freedom of speech/assembly (opposition banned, media controlled), and likely accountability (no elections planned).

(iii) This claim is often used by dictators but is highly questionable. While dictatorships might impose superficial order through force, they typically suppress rights, lack accountability, foster corruption, and often lead to long-term instability and economic problems rather than sustainable prosperity for all.

154. In a large representative democracy, investigative journalists reveal that several major laws concerning environmental regulations were heavily influenced by lobbying from large corporations, who also made significant donations to the campaigns of key legislators. Citizen groups feel these laws favour corporate profits over public health and environmental protection.

(i) Which form of government, other than democracy, does this situation potentially resemble ?

(ii) Which democratic principle is undermined if laws are unduly influenced by corporate donations and lobbying?

(iii) Suggest one mechanism within a democracy that citizens could use to challenge this situation and promote greater fairness.

4.1 Fundamental Rights

Guarantees essential rights to citizens, such as the Right to Equality, Right to Freedom, Right against Exploitation, and Right to Education. These are enforceable in court.

4.2 Fundamental Duties

Outlines the duties of citizens, like abiding by the Constitution, defending the country, preserving heritage, protecting the environment, and striving for excellence. Added in 1976.

4.3 Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP)

Guidelines reflecting the social and economic vision for India, aiming for goals like a good standard of living, social justice, uniform civil code, and environmental protection. They are guiding principles for governance but not directly enforceable in court.

4.4 Preamble

Outlines the Constitution's core values and philosophy. It declares India as a SOVEREIGN, SOCIALIST, SECULAR, DEMOCRATIC, REPUBLIC securing Justice, Liberty, Equality, and promoting Fraternity. ('Socialist' and 'Secular' were added in 1976).

5. THE CONSTITUTION IS A LIVING DOCUMENT

The Constitution makers anticipated the need for changes over time. Provisions exist for amendments, which require rigorous debate in Parliament (and sometimes state assemblies). Amendments can address new needs (like adding Fundamental Duties or integrating the Panchayati Raj system) or reflect societal changes and popular movements, ensuring the Constitution remains relevant. The original text was handwritten by calligrapher Prem Behari Narain Raizada and illustrated by Nandalal Bose and his team with scenes from Indian history.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. "The Constituent Assembly had representatives from diverse backgrounds in India." Why do you think it was important to have a diverse set of representatives from all over India?

Ans :

A diverse Constituent Assembly was important to ensure that the Constitution reflected the needs, aspirations, and perspectives of India's vast and varied population, including different regions, social groups, and professions, making it truly representative.

2. Read the statements below carefully and identify which key features/values in the Constitution of India are reflected in each statement.

(a) Sheena, Rajat, and Harsh casting their first vote : Democracy/Universal Adult Franchise.

(b) Radha, Imon, and Harpreet studying in the same class/school : Equality/Right to Education.

(c) Parents ensuring children's education : Fundamental Duty (f) /Right to Education (Article 21-A).

(d) People of all backgrounds using the village well : Equality/Justice (Social).

Ans :

(a) This reflects the Right to Vote, where all citizens, regardless of their background, have the right to elect their representatives.

(b) This reflects Equality because all students, regardless of their caste, religion, or gender, have the right to equal education.

(c) This reflects the Right to Education, which is guaranteed by the Constitution to ensure every child's access to education.

(d) This reflects the Right to Equality and Non-discrimination, ensuring that all citizens are treated equally, regardless of caste, religion, or gender.

3. It is said that 'All citizens in India are equal before the law'. Do you think this is a fact? If yes, why? If not, why not? Formulate your arguments.

Ans :

Legally, the Constitution guarantees equality before the law (Article 14). In principle, everyone is subject to the same laws. However, in practice, factors like socio-economic status, lack of awareness, or biases can sometimes affect access to justice and equal treatment, meaning its full realization as a 'fact' is still an ongoing effort.

4. You have learnt that 'India is the only country that provided universal adult franchise to its citizens from the beginning.' Can you explain why India did it?

Ans :

India likely adopted universal adult franchise from the start because the freedom struggle was fought on principles of equality and mass

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 10

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA—AN INTRODUCTION

SUMMARY

1. CONSTITUTION

A constitution is essentially a fundamental 'rulebook' for a nation. It lays down basic principles and laws that define :

1. The structure and functions of the government's organs (legislature, executive, judiciary).
2. Checks and balances between these organs to ensure fairness and accountability.
3. The rights and duties of citizens.
4. The long-term goals and aspirations of the nation.

Like rules in a game prevent chaos and ensure fairness, a constitution provides a framework for governance, defining how laws are made and implemented, how leaders are chosen, and the relationship between the state and its citizens. It embodies the core values and ideals the nation commits to, such as equality and justice. The Indian Constitution is the world's largest written constitution.

2. WRITING THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

As India approached independence, the need arose to plan its governance structure. Key questions about the type of government, guiding principles, voting rights, and dispute resolution needed answers for a large, diverse nation.

1. Constituent Assembly : Formed in 1946, this body drafted the Constitution. Initially comprising 389 members (later 299 post-Partition), it represented India's diverse regions and groups, including 15 women. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was its Chairman.
2. Drafting Committee : Chaired by Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, this committee prepared the initial text.
3. Timeline : The Assembly worked for nearly three years (from December 9, 1946, to November 26, 1949). The Constitution was adopted on November 26, 1949, and came into effect on January 26, 1950 (celebrated as Republic Day).

3. WHAT SHAPED AND INFLUENCED THE INDIAN CONSTITUTION?

The Constitution drew inspiration from multiple sources :

3.1 Indian Freedom Movement

Ideals like equality, justice, freedom, fraternity, and preserving cultural heritage were central to the struggle and were enshrined in the Constitution. Experiences during the movement helped structure aspects like universal suffrage, separation of powers, and fundamental rights.

3.2 India's Civilisational Heritage and History

Principles embedded in Indian culture, such as accepting diverse viewpoints, the sanctity of nature, pursuit of knowledge, respect for women, vasudhaiva kutumbakam (the world is one family), and sarve bhavantu sukhinah (well-being for all), found reflection in the Constitution. The emphasis on duties and the role of people in governance, seen in concepts like rajadharma, also influenced features like Fundamental Duties.

3.3 Learnings from Across the World

Following the Indian tradition of accepting noble thoughts from all sides, the makers studied constitutions of democratic countries like France, the USA, UK, Ireland, and Australia. Ideals like 'liberty, equality, fraternity' came from France; Directive Principles were inspired by Ireland; and the concept of an independent judiciary drew from the American Constitution.

4. KEY FEATURES OF THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

The Constitution comprehensively defines the roles and accountability of the legislature, executive, and judiciary. It establishes the electoral system for universal adult franchise. Core features include :

NODIA

The concept of an independent judiciary, a key feature of the Indian Constitution ensuring separation of powers, was influenced by the constitutional framework of the United States of America.

15. Assertion (A) : The Indian Constitution incorporates the ideal of 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam' ("the world is one family").
Reason (R) : This ideal was adopted exclusively from modern Western political philosophy after independence from British.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Indian Constitution does reflect deep-rooted civilizational values like 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam'. However, this ideal is an ancient Indian philosophical concept, not an exclusive adoption from modern Western thought.

16. Which of these constitutional features is INCORRECTLY described in terms of its general function?
(A) Legislature - Makes the laws for the country
(B) Executive - Ensures laws are properly obeyed
(C) Judiciary - Elects the Prime Minister of India
(D) Panchayati Raj - Local self-government at village

Ans :

(C) Judiciary - Elects the Prime Minister of India
The Judiciary interprets laws and ensures justice, it does not elect the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister is typically the leader of the majority party or coalition in the Lok Sabha (legislature).

17. Consider the following about the Indian Constitution :
1. It is the world's shortest written constitution.
2. It originally had 22 Parts and 8 Schedules.
3. Amendments to the Constitution do not require debate in Parliament.

Which of the above statements is/are correct in it?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The Indian Constitution is the world's largest (longest) written constitution. It originally had 22 Parts and 8 Schedules. Amendments are rigorously debated before acceptance.

18. The illustrations in the original handwritten Constitution of India, depicting scenes from Indian history, were created by a team led by _____.
(A) Prem Behari Narain Raizada
(B) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar artist
(C) Nandalal Bose and his team
(D) Dr. Sachidananda Sinha art

Ans :

(C) Nandalal Bose and his team
The artistic embellishment of the original Constitution, featuring illustrations from India's history and cultural heritage, was carried out by renowned artist Nandalal Bose and his team from Santiniketan.

19. What does 'Fraternity' in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution primarily assure?
(A) Economic equality among all the citizens
(B) The dignity of the individual and unity
(C) Political rights for only specific groups
(D) Freedom to express any thought publicly

Ans :

(B) The dignity of the individual and unity
'Fraternity' in the Preamble emphasizes the spirit of common brotherhood among all citizens of India. It aims to assure the dignity of every individual and promote the unity and integrity of the nation.

20. The concept of 'Directive Principles of State Policy' in the Indian Constitution was inspired by the constitution of which country?
(A) United States
(B) United Kingdom
(C) France
(D) Ireland

Ans :

(D) Ireland
The idea of incorporating Directive Principles of State Policy, which are guidelines for the state to achieve social and economic justice, was inspired by the Constitution of Ireland.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

participation. Leaders believed all adults deserved a say in governing the newly independent nation, regardless of gender, caste, religion, or wealth.

5. How did the freedom struggle inspire the making of the Constitution of India? How did India's civilisational heritage inspire some of the key features in the Constitution of India? Explain.

Ans :

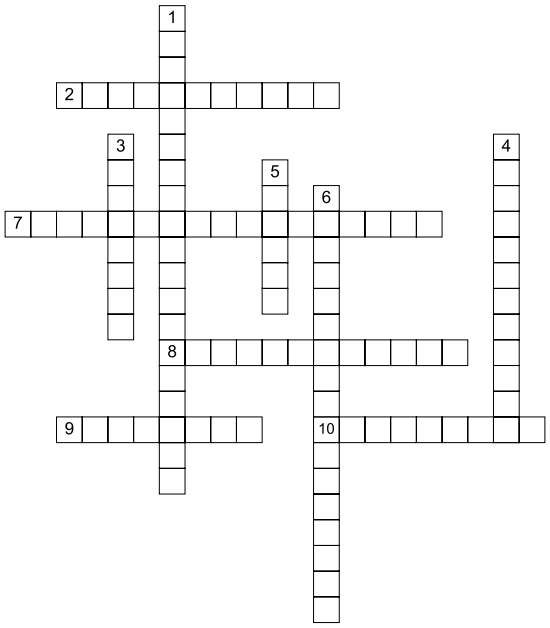
The freedom struggle inspired ideals like equality, liberty, justice, and fraternity, which became core constitutional values. India's heritage inspired principles like tolerance, respect for knowledge, vasudhaiva kutumbakam, and the emphasis on duties (dharma), influencing provisions like Fundamental Duties and secularism.

6. Do you think we, as a society, have achieved all the ideals of the Constitution? If not, what can we each do as citizens to move our country closer to these ideals?

Ans :

No, society has not fully achieved all ideals like complete equality or elimination of socio-economic disparities. As citizens, we can uphold constitutional values in daily life, respect diversity, perform our Fundamental Duties, challenge discrimination, participate actively in democracy, and hold the government accountable.

7. Read the clues carefully to solve the crossword on the next page to uncover important concepts from the Indian Constitution.



Across :

2. The branch of government that makes laws.
7. The part of the Constitution that outlines the duties of citizens.
8. The highest court in India that protects the Constitution.
9. A system where the head of state is elected, not hereditary.
10. The process by which the Constitution can be changed over time.

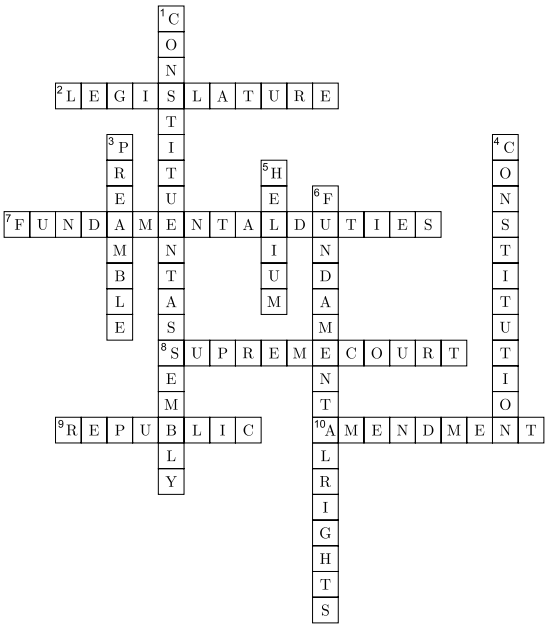
Down :

1. The group of people who wrote the Indian Constitution.
3. The statement at the beginning of the Constitution that tells us the values it upholds.
4. The document that lays out the rules and laws of a country :
5. The gas used to preserve the original Constitution safely.
6. Basic rights given to every citizen, like freedom and equality.

Ans :

Across
2. Legislature
7. Fundamental Duties
8. Supreme Court
9. Republic
10. Amendment

Down
1. Constituent Assembly
3. Preamble
4. Constitution
5. Helium
6. Fundamental Rights



Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

NODIA

1. What is a 'Constitution' in the context of a nation?
(A) A historical account of all its past rulers
(B) A document laying down basic principles, laws
(C) A collection of all national songs, poems
(D) An annual report on the nation's economy

Ans :

(B) A document laying down basic principles, laws
A Constitution is a fundamental document that outlines a nation's basic principles, laws, and the framework for its government. It defines how the country will be governed and the rights of its citizens.

2. On which date did the Indian Constitution come into effect, celebrated annually as Republic Day?
(A) 15 August 1947
(B) 26 November 1949
(C) 26 January 1950
(D) 2 October 1869

Ans :

(C) 26 January 1950
The Constitution of India was adopted by the Constituent Assembly on 26 November 1949, and it came into effect on 26 January 1950. This date is celebrated as Republic Day in India.

3. Why is the original manuscript of the Indian Constitution preserved in a helium-filled glass case in Parliament?
(A) To make it easily accessible for daily
(B) To protect it from damage, ensure longevity
(C) To display it prominently during sessions
(D) To allow easy modifications to its text

Ans :

(B) To protect it from damage, ensure longevity
Helium is an inert gas that does not react with paper or ink. Storing the original Constitution in a helium-filled case helps protect this invaluable document from deterioration and ensures its preservation for future generations.

4. What does a Constitution primarily lay out regarding a nation's government?
(A) Only the list of national holidays yearly
(B) The detailed biographies of all leaders
(C) The framework of government organs, roles
(D) The specific designs for currency notes

Ans :

(C) The framework of government organs, roles
A Constitution establishes the structure of the government, defining its different organs (like legislature, executive, judiciary), their respective roles, responsibilities, and the relationships between them, ensuring a systematic approach to governance.

5. Who was the Chairman of the Constituent Assembly that drafted the Indian Constitution?
(A) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
(B) Jawaharlal Nehru
(C) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
(D) Dr. Rajendra Prasad

Ans :

(D) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
Dr. Rajendra Prasad, who later became the first President of India, served as the Chairman of the Constituent Assembly, the body responsible for drafting the Indian Constitution.

6. How does a Fundamental Right differ from a Directive Principle of State Policy (DPSP) in the Indian Constitution?
(A) Rights are for government; DPSP for citizens
(B) Rights are optional; DPSP are mandatory
(C) Rights are enforceable; DPSP are guidelines
(D) Rights are temporary; DPSP are permanent

Ans :

(C) Rights are enforceable; DPSP are guidelines
Fundamental Rights are legally enforceable promises to citizens, meaning one can approach a court if they are violated. Directive Principles are guidelines or goals for the government to strive for, but not directly enforceable in court.

7. The Indian Constitution being a 'living document' implies what characteristic?
(A) It is handwritten and cannot be printed
(B) It can be amended or changed over time
(C) It applies only to living citizens today
(D) It is stored in a special biological case

Ans :

(B) It can be amended or changed over time
Referring to the Constitution as a 'living document' means it is not static but can be amended and adapted to meet the changing needs, aspirations, and circumstances of society over time through a defined process.

8. The Preamble to the Indian Constitution begins with the powerful words : "WE, THE _____ OF INDIA...".
(A) LEADERS
(B) PEOPLE
(C) STATES
(D) GOVERNMENT

Ans :

(B) PEOPLE
The Preamble to the Indian Constitution starts with the profound declaration, "WE, THE PEOPLE OF INDIA...", signifying that the ultimate sovereignty and authority for enacting the Constitution rests with the citizens of India.

9. The ideals of 'Liberty, Equality, Fraternity' in the Indian Constitution were inspired by the constitution and revolution of which country?
(A) United States
(B) United Kingdom
(C) France in Europe
(D) Ireland in Europe

Ans :

(C) France in Europe
The powerful ideals of 'Liberty, Equality, Fraternity', which are enshrined in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution, were significantly inspired by the values of the French Revolution of 1789 and France's constitutional traditions.

10. If the government makes a law that discriminates against citizens based on their religion, which fundamental value from the Preamble is violated?
(A) SOVEREIGN value
(B) SOCIALIST value
(C) SECULAR value
(D) REPUBLIC value

Ans :

(C) SECULAR value
The value of 'SECULAR' in the Preamble means that citizens have complete freedom to follow any religion, and the government treats all religious beliefs with equal respect, prohibiting discrimination on religious grounds.

11. What does the term 'SOVEREIGN' in the Preamble signify about India?
(A) India is ruled by a hereditary monarch
(B) India has supreme right to make decisions
(C) India's economy is controlled by state
(D) India's laws are based on one religion

Ans :

(B) India has supreme right to make decisions
'SOVEREIGN' in the Preamble asserts that India is an independent nation with the supreme authority to make its own decisions on internal and external matters, free from any external power's dictation or control.

12. The Constituent Assembly having members from diverse regions, professions, and social groups was important for what primary reason?
(A) To make the drafting process much longer
(B) To ensure the Constitution reflected varied views
(C) To limit participation to only elite few
(D) To follow the British system of class

Ans :

(B) To ensure the Constitution reflected varied views
A diverse Constituent Assembly was crucial to ensure that the Constitution would reflect the aspirations, needs, and perspectives of India's varied population, making it a truly representative document for all.

13. Who chaired the Drafting Committee of the Indian Constituent Assembly?
(A) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
(B) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
(C) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
(D) Jawaharlal Nehru

Ans :

(C) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, an eminent jurist, social reformer, and the first Law and Justice Minister of independent India, served as the Chairman of the Drafting Committee, which was responsible for preparing the initial text of the Constitution.

14. Which constitutional concept is correctly paired with its inspiration source?
(A) Fundamental Rights - Inspired by Irish Constitution
(B) Directive Principles - Inspired by French Constitution
(C) Independent Judiciary - Inspired by US Constitution
(D) Parliamentary System - Inspired by US Constitution

Ans :

(C) Independent Judiciary - Inspired by US Constitution

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Article 14 of the Indian Constitution guarantees the Fundamental Right to equality before the law and equal protection of the laws to all persons within the territory of India.

28. Assertion (A) : The Indian Constitution includes Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP).
Reason (R) : DPSPs are strict, legally binding rules that the government must implement immediately, failing which citizens can sue.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
The Indian Constitution does contain Directive Principles of State Policy. However, DPSPs are non-justiciable guidelines and aspirations for the state, not strictly enforceable rules that citizens can sue the government over for immediate implementation.

29. Which of these is an INCORRECT example of a Fundamental Duty listed in the Constitution?
(A) To abide by Constitution and respect its ideals
(B) To defend country and render national service
(C) To demand higher wages from employers
(D) To value and preserve rich heritage of culture

Ans :

(C) To demand higher wages from employers
While fair wages are a matter of economic justice (covered under DPSPs or labor laws), demanding higher wages is not listed as a Fundamental Duty of citizens in the Constitution. The other options are listed duties.

30. Consider the following regarding the making of the Indian Constitution :
1. The Constituent Assembly took almost five years to complete its work.
2. The experience of India's freedom struggle heavily influenced its ideals.
3. Ideas were borrowed only from the British constitutional system.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
The Constituent Assembly took almost three years (Dec 1946 - Nov 1949). The freedom struggle was a major influence. Ideas were drawn from various constitutions (France, USA, Ireland, UK etc.).

31. The Constituent Assembly was formed in the year _____ to begin the task of drafting the Indian Constitution.
(A) 1942
(B) 1945
(C) 1946
(D) 1947

Ans :

(C) 1946
The Constituent Assembly of India was formed in December 1946 to undertake the monumental task of drafting a constitution for the soon-to-be independent nation.

32. What does 'Secular' in the Preamble mean for India as a state?
(A) The state promotes one official state religion
(B) Citizens are not allowed to practice faith
(C) The state treats all religions with respect
(D) Religious leaders control government policy

Ans :

(C) The state treats all religions with respect
'Secular' in the Indian context means that the state does not have an official religion and treats all religious beliefs and practices with equal respect. Citizens have the freedom to follow any religion.

33. Part IV-A of the Constitution, dealing with Fundamental Duties, was added through an amendment in which year?
(A) 1950
(B) 1962
(C) 1976
(D) 1992

Ans :

(C) 1976
Part IV-A, which outlines the Fundamental Duties of citizens, was not part of the original Constitution. It was added later through the 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act in 1976.

NODIA

21. Why is it stated that the Constitution has been "drawn up and enacted by the people through their representatives"?
(A) Every citizen personally signed the final document
(B) The Constituent Assembly members were chosen to act
(C) The British Parliament drafted it for India
(D) It was based on a public referendum

Ans :

(B) The Constituent Assembly members were chosen to act
This phrase signifies popular sovereignty. The members of the Constituent Assembly, though indirectly elected in the context of the time, were chosen to represent the diverse population of India in the task of framing the Constitution.

22. A law is passed that prohibits people from certain communities from accessing public wells and temples. This law directly violates which fundamental value enshrined in the Preamble and Fundamental Rights of the Indian Constitution?
(A) The value of Sovereign status
(B) The value of Fraternity among
(C) The value of Justice, Equality
(D) The value of Liberty alone

Ans :

(C) The value of Justice, Equality
Such a discriminatory law would violate the principles of Justice (social, economic, political) and Equality (of status and opportunity) guaranteed by the Preamble and further elaborated in the Fundamental Rights, which prohibit discrimination.

23. Which of these is NOT explicitly stated as a guiding value in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution?
(A) Liberty of thought, expression, faith
(B) Economic prosperity for all citizens
(C) Equality of status and of opportunity
(D) Justice, social, economic and political

Ans :

(B) Economic prosperity for all citizens
While the Constitution aims for economic justice and welfare (through DPSPs for instance), "economic prosperity for all citizens" is not explicitly listed as a core guiding value within the Preamble itself in the same way as Justice, Liberty, Equality, and Fraternity are.

24. Which calligrapher beautifully handwrote the original text of the Indian Constitution?
(A) Nandalal Bose
(B) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
(C) Prem Behari Narain Raizada
(D) Dr. Rajendra Prasad

Ans :

(C) Prem Behari Narain Raizada
The original English version of the Constitution of India was meticulously handwritten in a flowing italic style by the skilled calligrapher Prem Behari Narain Raizada (Saxena).

25. What is meant by the term 'REPUBLIC' as used in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution?
(A) The country is ruled by a foreign one
(B) The head of the state is hereditary
(C) The head of the state is an elected
(D) All citizens have the right to work

Ans :

(C) The head of the state is an elected
'REPUBLIC' in the Preamble signifies that the head of the Indian state (the President) is an elected person, not a hereditary monarch. This means power is derived from the people, not birthright.

26. How does the enforceability of Fundamental Duties differ from that of Fundamental Rights in India?
(A) Duties are legally enforceable; Rights are not
(B) Rights are legally enforceable; Duties are not
(C) Both are equally enforceable in all courts
(D) Neither can be enforced by any means

Ans :

(B) Rights are legally enforceable; Duties are not
Fundamental Rights are justiciable, meaning citizens can approach courts if these rights are violated. Fundamental Duties, while important civic obligations, are generally not directly enforceable by courts in the same manner. (Implied by the explanation of DPSPs vs Rights)

27. Which article of the Constitution is correctly paired with its Fundamental Right?
(A) Article 14 - Right to education access
(B) Article 21 - Right against exploitation
(C) Article 21-A - Protection of life liberty
(D) Article 14 - Equality before the law

Ans :

(D) Article 14 - Equality before the law

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(i) This situation potentially resembles an oligarchy, where a small group of wealthy and influential actors (corporations, lobbyists) exerts excessive control over governmental decisions.

(ii) The principle of equality (where all citizens' voices should matter, not just wealthy interests) and potentially representative participation (if legislators prioritize donors over constituents) are undermined. Accountability is also weakened.

(iii) Citizens could engage in advocacy and public awareness campaigns to expose the undue influence, support campaign finance reform laws to limit corporate donations, vote for representatives committed to reducing corporate influence, or challenge unfair laws through the independent judiciary.

155. In the Vajji confederacy, a proposal is introduced in the sabha to divert water from a river primarily used by artisans and traders to expand irrigation for warrior settlements preparing for military training. Representatives of artisan and trader clans protest, saying it will harm their industries and trade, while the warrior clans argue that security is essential for the prosperity of all.

(i) What feature of Vajji's governance allowed this conflict between different interest groups to be discussed in the sabha?

(ii) How would the sabha likely resolve this issue, according to how decisions were made in ganas/sanghas?

(iii) Contrast how such a conflict over resource use might be handled in a monarchy instead of a gana/sangha.

Ans :

(i) Vajji's republican structure (gana/sangha) enabled representatives from various social and occupational groups to participate in open discussions within the sabha, where diverse voices could be heard and debated equally.

(ii) The sabha would likely hear arguments from both sides and seek a resolution through dialogue, compromise, or majority decision-making, possibly choosing a solution that balanced both needs.

(iii) In a monarchy, the king or ruling elite would likely make a unilateral decision, possibly favoring the warriors if they were seen as central to the kingdom's power, without requiring open discussion or consent from affected groups.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

NODIA

34. The illustrations in the Constitution depicting scenes like an ancient gurukula or the Ramayana primarily aim to :
(A) Provide artistic relief from the legal text
(B) Connect the Constitution with India's heritage
(C) Suggest that these are the only values
(D) Offer a timeline of Indian art forms

Ans :

(B) Connect the Constitution with India's heritage
The artistic illustrations in the Constitution, depicting scenes from India's vast history and cultural traditions, serve to visually link the modern legal framework with the nation's deep and diverse civilizational heritage.

35. A citizen successfully challenges a rule in court that prevented them from flying the national flag at home, with the Supreme Court affirming it as part of the Fundamental Right to Freedom of Expression. This incident demonstrates that the Constitution :
(A) Is rigid and cannot be interpreted by court
(B) Can be interpreted and applied to new issue
(C) Only protects the rights of government official
(D) Is relevant only for historical academic study

Ans :

(B) Can be interpreted and applied to new issue
This case shows that the Constitution is a dynamic document whose principles, like the Fundamental Right to Freedom of Expression, can be interpreted by the judiciary to address new situations and affirm citizens' rights.

36. Which of these is NOT listed as one of the three main organs of government whose framework is laid out by the Constitution?
(A) Legislature organ
(B) Executive organ
(C) Monarchy organ
(D) Judiciary organ

Ans :

(C) Monarchy organ
The Constitution typically lays out the framework for the legislature (law-making), executive (law-implementing), and judiciary (law-interpreting) organs of government. Monarchy is a form of government, not an organ within this structure.

37. The 73rd Constitutional Amendment Act of 1992 integrated which system of local self-government into the Constitution?
(A) The Municipal Corporation city system
(B) The State Legislative Council system
(C) The Panchayati Raj village system
(D) The Inter-State Council system

Ans :

(C) The Panchayati Raj village system
The 73rd Constitutional Amendment Act, passed in 1992, was a landmark reform that gave constitutional status and framework to the Panchayati Raj institutions, strengthening local self-government in rural India.

38. What are 'Directive Principles of State Policy' (DPSP) fundamentally?
(A) Legally enforceable rights of all citizens
(B) Strict rules for punishing government wrongdoers
(C) Goals and guidelines for government to achieve
(D) A list of countries India has treaties with

Ans :

(C) Goals and guidelines for government to achieve
Directive Principles of State Policy are guidelines and aspirations enshrined in the Constitution for the state to aim for in its governance, focusing on achieving social and economic justice and welfare for all citizens.

39. "How did the number of Parts and Schedules in the Indian Constitution change from its original adoption in 1950 to a later stage?"
(A) It decreased in both Parts and Schedules
(B) It increased from 22 Parts, 8 Schedules
(C) It remained exactly the same over years
(D) Parts increased, but Schedules were reduced

Ans :

(B) It increased from 22 Parts, 8 Schedules
When the Constitution came into effect, it had 22 Parts and 8 Schedules. Later, this increased to 25 Parts and 12 Schedules, reflecting additions and modifications over time.

40. Which value from the Preamble is correctly matched with its core meaning?
(A) SOCIALIST - Citizens have complete freedom of religion
(B) DEMOCRATIC - The head of state is a hereditary monarch

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Constitution is indeed the supreme law of India. All governmental organs derive their authority from it and are bound to operate according to its provisions, making it the ultimate source of legal and political legitimacy. (Implied)

76. Consider the following aspects of the Indian Constitution :
1. It provides for a parliamentary form of government for India.
2. The Preamble can never be amended under any circumstance.
3. Fundamental Rights are absolute and have no restrictions at all.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for India?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
India has a parliamentary form of government. The Preamble has been amended (e.g., in 1976). Fundamental Rights, while crucial, are subject to reasonable restrictions in the interest of public order, morality, etc.

77. The concept of 'separation of powers' ensures that the legislature makes laws, the executive implements them, and the _____ interprets them.
(A) citizenry
(B) military
(C) judiciary
(D) media

Ans :

(C) judiciary
The principle of separation of powers divides governmental functions among three branches : the legislature (makes laws), the executive (implements laws), and the judiciary (interprets laws and administers justice), ensuring a balance of power.

78. What is the primary role of the 'Executive' branch in a parliamentary democracy like India?
(A) To make and pass all the national laws
(B) To interpret the Constitution and hear cases
(C) To implement laws and run administration
(D) To directly elect members of the judiciary

Ans :

(C) To implement laws and run administration
In a parliamentary democracy, the executive branch, headed by the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers, is responsible for implementing the laws passed by the legislature and managing the day-to-day administration of the country.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

79. The Constituent Assembly of India completed its work of drafting the Constitution on which date?
(A) 15th August 1947
(B) 26th January 1950
(C) 26th November 1949
(D) 9th December 1946

Ans :

(C) 26th November 1949
The Constituent Assembly finalized and adopted the Constitution of India on 26th November 1949. This day is now celebrated as Constitution Day (Samvidhan Divas) in India.

NODIA

80. The quotation by Dr. Rajendra Prasad emphasizing "willingness to respect the viewpoint of others, capacity for compromise and accommodation" highlights essential qualities for what?
(A) Successful working of democratic institutions
(B) Achieving rapid economic growth at all cost
(C) Maintaining a strong centralized military rule
(D) Suppressing all forms of political dissent

Ans :

(A) Successful working of democratic institutions
Dr. Rajendra Prasad's words underscore that for democratic institutions to function effectively, those involved must possess qualities like mutual respect for differing views, and a willingness to compromise and accommodate, which are vital for consensus-building.

46. What does the 'Right to Equality' (Article 14) in the Indian Constitution primarily guarantee?
(A) Equal distribution of wealth among all citizens
(B) Equality before law and equal protection of laws
(C) The right to form any political party
(D) Equal representation in Parliament for all states

Ans :

(B) Equality before law and equal protection of laws
Article 14, the Right to Equality, fundamentally ensures that all persons are equal before the law and are entitled to equal protection of the laws within the territory of India, without discrimination.

47. Which Fundamental Duty involves valuing and preserving the rich heritage of our composite culture?
(A) Duty (a) to abide by the Constitution
(B) Duty (c) to value and preserve
(C) Duty (d) to protect natural environment
(D) Duty (e) to strive towards excellence

Ans :

(B) Duty (c) to value and preserve
Fundamental Duty (c) specifically enjoins citizens "to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture," highlighting the importance of safeguarding India's diverse cultural traditions and historical legacy.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. www.neetjee.in
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

48. The process of amending the Constitution, requiring rigorous debate and sometimes consent from states, signifies that :
(A) The Constitution is very easy to change
(B) Changes are made to reflect enduring value
(C) Only the President can propose amendments
(D) Amendments are primarily for minor corrections

Ans :

(B) Changes are made to reflect enduring value
The deliberate and often complex process for amending the Constitution ensures that changes are made thoughtfully, reflecting evolving societal needs and enduring values, rather than impulsive or frequent alterations.

49. A state government implements a policy ensuring that all children between the ages of six and fourteen receive free and compulsory education. This action aligns with which specific constitutional provision?
(A) Article 44 : Uniform Civil Code for all
(B) Article 48-A : Environment and Wildlife Protection
(C) Article 21-A : Right to education for all
(D) Article 49 : Protection of ancient monuments

Ans :

(C) Article 21-A : Right to education for all
Article 21-A of the Constitution makes education a Fundamental Right, mandating the state to provide free and compulsory education to all children in the age group of six to fourteen years.

50. Which of these was NOT an influence on the making of the Indian Constitution?
(A) The ideals of the Indian freedom struggle
(B) The civilisational heritage and history of India
(C) The desire to create an absolute monarchy
(D) Learnings from constitutions of other nations

Ans :

(C) The desire to create an absolute monarchy
The Indian Constitution was shaped by the democratic ideals of the freedom movement, India's rich heritage, and learnings from other democratic constitutions. The aim was to establish a democratic republic, not an absolute monarchy.

51. How many members did the Constituent Assembly initially have before the Partition of India?
(A) 299 members
(B) 389 members
(C) 15 members
(D) 543 members

Ans :

(B) 389 members
The Constituent Assembly, when first formed in 1946 before the Partition of India, initially comprised 389 members representing various provinces and princely states of undivided India.

NODIA

52. What is the primary purpose of the 'Preamble' to a Constitution?
(A) To list all the amendments made so far
(B) To detail the salaries of government workers
(C) To state the guiding values and philosophy
(D) To provide a glossary of legal terms used

84. Match the influences on the Indian Constitution with the adopted ideas :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Indian Freedom Movement	A.	Concept of an independent judiciary
2.	India's Civilisational Heritage	B.	Ideals of equality, justice, freedom, fraternity
3.	French Constitution (Revolution)	C.	Principles like 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam', Fundamental Duties
4.	American Constitution	D.	Ideals of 'liberty, equality, fraternity'

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
The Freedom Movement contributed ideals like equality and justice. Civilisational heritage influenced concepts like Fundamental Duties. The French Revolution inspired 'liberty, equality, fraternity'. The US Constitution influenced the independent judiciary concept.

85. Match the constitutional values with their brief explanations :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Justice	A.	All are equal before law; equal opportunities for all
2.	Liberty	B.	No discrimination; reduction of social inequalities; welfare for all
3.	Equality	C.	All should behave as members of one family; no citizen is inferior
4.	Fraternity	D.	No unreasonable restrictions on thought, expression, and action

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Justice implies no discrimination and welfare for all. Liberty means freedom of thought and expression. Equality signifies equal status and opportunity before the law. Fraternity promotes a sense of brotherhood

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What document lays down the basic principles and laws of a nation?

Ans :

Constitution.

87. In what type of special case is the original Constitution of India preserved?

Ans :

A helium-filled glass case.

88. Which day marks the coming into effect of the Indian Constitution, celebrated as Republic Day?

Ans :

26 January (1950).

89. Name one of the three organs of government whose framework is laid out by the Constitution.

Ans :

Legislature/Executive/Judiciary (any one).

90. What body was formed in 1946 to develop and write the Indian Constitution?

Ans :

Constituent Assembly.

91. Who was the Chairman of the Constituent Assembly?

Ans :

Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

92. Who was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution?

Ans :

Dr. B.R. Ambedkar.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; the Indian Constitution is a living document that has been amended multiple times. Reason (R) is true, as the Constitution itself includes provisions for its amendment.

59. Consider these influences on the Indian Constitution :
1. Principles from the French Revolution like liberty and equality.
2. The structure of an independent judiciary from the US Constitution.
3. The concept of hereditary monarchy from British tradition.

Which of the above influences are correctly mentioned?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Indian Constitution drew inspiration for liberty and equality from the French Revolution and the concept of an independent judiciary from the US Constitution. It established a republic, not a hereditary monarchy.

60. The phrase "checks and balances" in a constitutional framework refers to the mechanisms that prevent any one organ of government from becoming too _____.
(A) efficient
(B) popular
(C) powerful
(D) transparent

Ans :

(C) powerful
The principle of "checks and balances" involves distributing powers among different branches of government (legislative, executive, judiciary) so that each can check the actions of the others, thereby preventing any single branch from accumulating excessive power.

61. In the Preamble, what does 'Equality of status and of opportunity' primarily aim to ensure?
(A) That all citizens will have identical incomes
(B) That all citizens are treated equally by law
(C) That only certain groups get government jobs
(D) That citizens cannot change their social rank

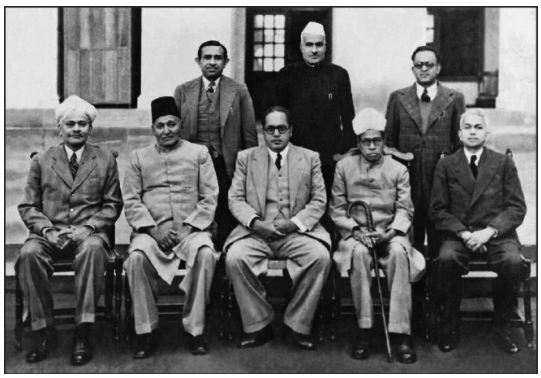
Ans :

(B) That all citizens are treated equally by law
'Equality of status and of opportunity' aims to ensure that all citizens are equal before the law, that social inequalities are ended, and that the government provides equal opportunities for all, regardless of background.

62. The Indian Constitution was prepared by a Drafting Committee that consisted of how many members (including the chairman)?
(A) Five members
(B) Seven members (Chairman + 6 others implied by image and common knowledge)
(C) Nine members
(D) Eleven members

Ans :

(B) Seven members (Chairman + 6 others implied by image and common knowledge)
The Drafting Committee of the Constituent Assembly, chaired by Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, was responsible for preparing the draft Constitution. It typically consisted of seven members including the chairman. (The image Fig shows several members with Dr. Ambedkar.)



NODIA

63. The Indian Constitution's commitment to preserving India's cultural heritage and promoting 'sarve bhavantu sukhinah' (well-being of all) reflects its connection to what?
(A) Modern international human rights treaties only
(B) The country's deep-rooted civilisational values
(C) The economic policies of colonial Britain
(D) The political systems of ancient Greece

(C) JUSTICE - Citizens cannot be discriminated against
(D) LIBERTY - Wealth is shared equally by all

Ans :

(C) JUSTICE - Citizens cannot be discriminated against
'JUSTICE' in the Preamble aims to ensure that citizens are not discriminated against on grounds like caste, religion, or gender, and that social inequalities are reduced, and the government works for all's welfare.

41. A group of citizens organizes a peaceful protest against a government policy they believe is unjust. Their ability to do so without unreasonable restrictions reflects which value from the Preamble of the Indian Constitution?
(A) The value of SOVEREIGN power
(B) The value of SOCIALIST ideals
(C) The value of FRATERNITY
(D) The value of LIBERTY right

Ans :

(D) The value of LIBERTY right
'LIBERTY' in the Preamble ensures that are no unreasonable restrictions on citizens in what they think, how they wish to express their thoughts (including peaceful protest), and how they follow up their thoughts in action.

42. Assertion (A) : The Indian Constitution provides for a three-tier system of government.
Reason (R) : This system includes the central government, state governments, and local self-governments like Panchayati Raj.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Indian Constitution indeed establishes a three-tier system of governance. This structure comprises the central (Union) government, the state governments, and local self-government institutions (like Panchayats and Municipalities).

43. Which illustration theme from the original Constitution is INCORRECTLY matched with the Part it represents?
(A) Scene from ancient gurukula - Part II : Citizenship
(B) Scene from Ramayana - Part III : Fundamental Rights
(C) Scene from Mahabharata (Gita) - Part XI : Relations between Union/States
(D) Image of Nataraja - Part XII : Finance, Property, Contracts

Ans :

(C) Scene from Mahabharata (Gita) - Part XI : Relations between Union/States
The image from the Mahabharata depicting Krishna propounding the Gita to Arjuna is associated with Part IV : Directive Principles of State Policy, not Part XI. The other pairings are consistent with the provided images.

44. Consider the following about the values in the Indian Constitution :
1. The ideal of 'sarve bhavantu sukhinah' (well-being of all) is reflected.
2. The Constitution strictly follows only British parliamentary traditions.
3. Fundamental Duties were part of the original 1950 Constitution.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
The ideal of 'sarve bhavantu sukhinah' aligns with the Constitution's welfare goals. India drew from various constitutions, not just British. Fundamental Duties were added later, in 1976.

45. The Preamble of the Indian Constitution was amended in 1976 to include the terms 'SOCIALIST' and '_____'.
(A) FEDERAL
(B) UNITARY
(C) SECULAR
(D) MONARCHICAL

Ans :

(C) SECULAR
The 42nd Constitutional Amendment in 1976 added the words 'SOCIALIST' and 'SECULAR' to the Preamble, further clarifying the nature and objectives of the Indian state as envisioned.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(B) Aiming to reduce socio-economic inequalities
The term 'Socialist' in the Preamble, in the Indian context, primarily implies a commitment to social and economic justice, aiming to reduce inequalities in income, status, and opportunity, and ensuring welfare for all.

70. How did the vision of the Constitution makers regarding Fundamental Rights differ from their vision for Directive Principles in terms of immediate realization?
(A) Both were intended for immediate full effect
(B) Rights were immediate; DPSPs gradual goals
(C) DPSPs were immediate; Rights were gradual one
(D) Neither was expected to be realized soon

Ans :

(B) Rights were immediate; DPSPs gradual goals
The framers intended Fundamental Rights to be immediately enforceable and guaranteed. Directive Principles were envisioned as longer-term goals that the state would strive to achieve as the country progressed and resources allowed.

71. The freedom struggle's ideals, such as equality, justice, and _____, were significant influences on the Indian Constitution.
(A) monarchy
(B) hierarchy
(C) fraternity
(D) autocracy

Ans :

(C) fraternity
The Indian freedom movement championed ideals like equality, justice, liberty, and fraternity (a spirit of common brotherhood). These values were deeply embedded in the Constitution to shape the new republic.

72. The inclusion of Fundamental Duties in the Constitution, though added later, emphasizes what aspect of citizenship?
(A) The absolute right to disobey all state laws
(B) The civic responsibilities and obligations too
(C) The entitlement to unconditional state support
(D) The power to overthrow the government

Ans :

(B) The civic responsibilities and obligations too
Fundamental Duties highlight that citizenship involves not only rights but also certain responsibilities and obligations towards the nation, such as respecting the Constitution, promoting harmony, and protecting public property for all.

73. A citizen is prevented from peacefully assembling and expressing views against a government policy. Which Fundamental Right, also reflecting a Preamble value, is potentially being infringed in this situation by these actions?
(A) Right to Constitutional Remedies itself
(B) Right to Equality before the law
(C) Right to Freedom of Speech and Expression
(D) Cultural and Educational Rights only

Ans :

(C) Right to Freedom of Speech and Expression
The right to peacefully assemble and the right to freedom of speech and expression are guaranteed Fundamental Rights. Preventing such activities without valid legal restrictions would infringe upon these liberties. (Implied by Liberty in Preamble)

74. Which Constitutional article is INCORRECTLY linked to its subject matter?
(A) Article 14 - Equality before law (Fundamental Right)
(B) Article 21-A - Right to education (Fundamental Right)
(C) Article 38 - Social, Political, Economic Justice (Fundamental Duty)
(D) Article 48-A - Environment and Wildlife Protection (DPSP)

Ans :

(C) Article 38 - Social, Political, Economic Justice (Fundamental Duty)
Article 38, which pertains to securing a social order for the promotion of the welfare of the people (including social, economic, and political justice), is a Directive Principle of State Policy, not a Fundamental Duty.

75. Assertion (A) : The Indian Constitution is considered the supreme law of the land.
Reason (R) : All three organs of the government—legislature, executive, and judiciary—derive their powers from and must function within the framework of the Constitution.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.

NODIA

Ans :

(B) The country's deep-rooted civilisational values
The emphasis on preserving cultural heritage and the ideal of 'sarve bhavantu sukhinah' (may all be happy/prosperous) demonstrates that the Constitution draws upon India's profound and enduring civilisational and philosophical traditions.

64. How does a 'Fundamental Right' like the 'Right to Freedom' (Article 21) differ in its immediate applicability from a 'Directive Principle' like 'Article 41 : Welfare Government'?
(A) Right to Freedom is a goal; Welfare is enforceable
(B) Right to Freedom is enforceable; Welfare is goal
(C) Both are merely advisory with no real power
(D) Both are equally and immediately justiciable

Ans :

(B) Right to Freedom is enforceable; Welfare is goal
A Fundamental Right like the 'Right to Freedom' (which includes protection of life and personal liberty) is directly enforceable in courts. A Directive Principle like 'Welfare Government' is a goal or guideline for the state to strive towards.

65. Which constitutional ideal is correctly paired with its primary implication for governance?
(A) SOVEREIGN - Government must follow directives from other nations.
(B) DEMOCRATIC - Rulers are hereditary and not accountable to people.
(C) SECULAR - The state gives preferential treatment to one religion.
(D) REPUBLIC - The head of the state is an elected individual.

Ans :

(D) REPUBLIC - The head of the state is an elected individual.
'REPUBLIC' implies that the highest office of the state, the head of state (e.g., the President in India), is held by an elected person, not by someone who inherits the position, ensuring popular sovereignty.

66. A government enacts a policy that provides for "equal pay for equal work for both men and women." This policy aligns most closely with which type of constitutional provision?
(A) A Fundamental Duty of every citizen
(B) A Fundamental Right enforceable by any court
(C) A Directive Principle of State Policy goal
(D) A provision related to emergency powers

Ans :

(C) A Directive Principle of State Policy goal
Ensuring "equal pay for equal work for both men and women" is explicitly mentioned as one of the Directive Principles of State Policy (Article 39(d)), guiding the state towards achieving economic justice and equality.

67. Which of these was NOT a direct responsibility of the Constituent Assembly of India?
(A) Drafting the Constitution for independent India
(B) Conducting the first general elections in free
(C) Debating various provisions and principles
(D) Adopting the final version of the Constitution

Ans :

(B) Conducting the first general elections in free
The Constituent Assembly's primary mandate was to draft and adopt the Constitution. The conduct of the first general elections after the Constitution came into effect was the responsibility of the Election Commission of India.

68. The image depicting a scene from the Ramayana (Rama's conquest of Lanka) is used to illustrate which Part of the original Indian Constitution?
(A) Part II : Citizenship for all
(B) Part III : Fundamental Rights
(C) Part IV : Directive Principles
(D) Part V : The Union Executive

Ans :

(B) Part III : Fundamental Rights
The illustration showing Rama's conquest of Lanka and recovery of Sita is associated with Part III of the Constitution, which deals with Fundamental Rights. This imagery often symbolizes the victory of righteousness and restoration of rights.

69. What does 'Socialist' in the Preamble (added by the 42nd Amendment) generally imply for the Indian state?
(A) Complete state ownership of all private property
(B) Aiming to reduce socio-economic inequalities
(C) Promoting a system of hereditary social class
(D) Adherence to international socialist treaties

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following terms related to the Indian Constitution with their correct descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Constitution	A.	The introductory statement setting out the guiding purpose and principles
2.	Constituent Assembly	B.	A document that lays down basic principles and laws of a nation
3.	Preamble	C.	Body formed in 1946 to draft the Indian Constitution
4.	Dr. B.R. Ambedkar	D.	Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constituent Assembly

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
A constitution is a nation's rulebook. The Constituent Assembly drafted India's Constitution. The Preamble is its introductory statement. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar chaired the Drafting Committee.

82. Match the key features/ideals of the Indian Constitution (often found in the Preamble) with their meanings :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Sovereign	A.	Citizens have complete freedom to follow any religion; no official religion
2.	Socialist	B.	People have supreme right to make decisions; no external power dictates
3.	Secular	C.	Head of the state is an elected person, not hereditary
4.	Republic	D.	Wealth should be shared; reduce socio-economic inequalities

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Sovereign means supreme power to make decisions. Socialist aims for equitable wealth distribution. Secular means freedom of religion and no state religion. Republic means an elected head of state.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. www.neetjee.in
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

NODIA

83. Match the following constitutional concepts with their significance :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Fundamental Rights	A.	Guidelines for the government to achieve social and economic vision
2.	Fundamental Duties	B.	Basic rights guaranteed to citizens, like equality and freedom
3.	Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP)	C.	Changes made to the Constitution over time
4.	Amendments	D.	Responsibilities and duties of citizens towards the country

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Fundamental Rights are guaranteed basic entitlements. Fundamental Duties are citizens' responsibilities. DPSP are guidelines for governance towards social-economic goals. Amendments are changes or additions to the Constitution.

Ans :

(C) To state the guiding values and philosophy
The Preamble serves as an introduction to the Constitution, outlining its guiding principles, objectives, ideals, and the core philosophy upon which the entire constitutional framework is based for all.

53. How does the 'executive' organ of government differ from the 'legislature'?
(A) Executive interprets laws; legislature makes them
(B) Executive makes laws; legislature implements them
(C) Executive implements laws; legislature makes them
(D) Both have the identical function of making

Ans :

(C) Executive implements laws; legislature makes them
The legislature is primarily responsible for making laws. The executive organ of government is responsible for implementing and enforcing those laws and administering the day-to-day affairs of the state.

54. The Indian tradition of "a no bhadrah kratavo yantu vishwatah" means "Let noble thoughts come to me from _____".
(A) within only
(B) the past only
(C) every side
(D) the future

Ans :

(C) every side
This Sanskrit saying, "a no bhadrah kratavo yantu vishwatah," translates to "Let noble thoughts come to me from every side." It reflects an open-mindedness to accepting wisdom and good ideas from all sources.

55. The requirement for governments to invite public feedback on proposed laws or amendments, as shown in the example from the Ministry's website, promotes which democratic principle?
(A) Secrecy in all government decision-making
(B) Participatory governance and transparency
(C) Concentration of power in a single few
(D) Swift and unquestioned policy implementation

Ans :

(B) Participatory governance and transparency
Inviting public comments on draft laws or amendments is a practice that promotes participatory governance by allowing citizens to contribute to the policy-making process. It also enhances transparency in governmental functioning.

56. A country's constitution ensures that the government cannot arbitrarily imprison citizens without due process and that everyone is treated equally regardless of their social background. These provisions primarily reflect the constitutional value of :
(A) Economic efficiency above anything else
(B) National security above all else
(C) Justice and protection of individual liberty
(D) The state's absolute authority

Ans :

(C) Justice and protection of individual liberty
Ensuring due process before imprisonment and guaranteeing equal treatment regardless of social background are fundamental to the constitutional values of justice (preventing arbitrary action) and the protection of individual liberty and equality.

57. Which illustration from the original Constitution is INCORRECTLY associated with the Part it is depicted in?
(A) Scene of Rama's conquest of Lanka - Part III : Fundamental Rights
(B) Scene from an ancient gurukula - Part II : Citizenship
(C) Akbar and Mughal architecture - Part XIII : Trade, Commerce
(D) Nataraja - Part IV : Directive Principles of State Policy

Ans :

(D) Nataraja - Part IV : Directive Principles of State Policy
The image of Nataraja (Shiva as Lord of Dance) is depicted in Part XII, which deals with Finance, Property, Contracts, and Suits. Part IV (Directive Principles) features Krishna and Arjuna (Gita).

58. Assertion (A) : The Indian Constitution is considered a static document, unchanged since its adoption in 1950.
Reason (R) : The Constitution provides for a process of amendment to adapt to evolving societal needs and values.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

93. On which date was the work of the Constituent Assembly completed?

Ans :

26 November 1949.

94. Name one value from the Indian freedom struggle enshrined in the Constitution.

Ans :

Equality/Justice/Freedom/Fraternity (any one).

95. What ancient Indian concept means "the world is one family"?

Ans :

Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam.

96. From which country's constitution were the ideals of 'liberty, equality, fraternity' adopted?

Ans :

France.

97. Which feature of the Indian Constitution was inspired by the Irish Constitution?

Ans :

Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP).

98. Which country's constitution helped shape the concept of an independent judiciary in India?

Ans :

American Constitution (USA).

99. Who hand-wrote the original text of the Indian Constitution?

Ans :

Prem Behari Narain Raizada.

100. Which famous artist, along with his team, illustrated the pages of the original Constitution?

Ans :

Nandalal Bose.

101. What are the rights guaranteed to all citizens by the Constitution called?

Ans :

Fundamental Rights.

102. What are the responsibilities listed for citizens in the Constitution called?

Ans :

Fundamental Duties.

103. What are the guidelines for the government, representing the vision for India, called?

Ans :

Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP).

104. Were Fundamental Duties part of the original Constitution adopted in 1950?

Ans :

No (added later in 1976).

105. What is a change or addition made to the Constitution called?

Ans :

Amendment.

106. Which Constitutional Amendment Act integrated the Panchayati Raj System?

Ans :

73rd Constitutional Amendment Act (1992).

107. What is the introductory statement to the Constitution that outlines its core values called?

Ans :

Preamble.

108. What term in the Preamble means that India has the supreme right to make its own decisions without external dictation?

Ans :

Sovereign.

109. What term in the Preamble signifies that citizens have complete freedom to follow any religion and the government treats all religions equally?

Ans :

Secular.

110. What term in the Preamble means the head of state (President) is an elected person, not hereditary?

Ans :

Republic.

111. Which two words were added to the Preamble by the 42nd Amendment in 1976?

Ans :

'Socialist' and 'Secular'.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

4. BARTER IN MODERN TIMES

While largely replaced, barter still exists. The Junbeel Mela in Assam is an annual fair where tribal communities exchange produce and handmade goods through barter. Exchanging old clothes for new utensils is another common contemporary example. Book exchanges among friends also operate on a barter principle.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. How does the barter system take place and what kinds of commodities were used for exchange under the system?

Ans :

The barter system involves directly exchanging goods or services for other goods or services without using money. Commodities like cowrie shells, salt, tea, cattle, seeds, and sometimes even large stones or metal tools were historically used for exchange in different parts of the world.

2. What were the limitations of the barter system?

Ans :

Limitations included the difficulty of finding a 'double coincidence of wants', the lack of a common standard measure of value for different goods, problems dividing certain goods (divisibility), inconvenience of carrying bulky items (portability), and difficulty storing perishable goods (durability).

3. What were the salient features of ancient Indian coins?

Ans :

Ancient Indian coins, called karshapanas or panas, were often made from precious metals like gold, silver, copper, or their alloys. They were issued by rulers and had symbols (rupas) punched on them, including nature motifs, rulers, or deities.

4. How has money as a medium of exchange transformed over time?

Ans :

Money evolved from barter using commodities to metallic coinage (like gold, silver, copper), to paper money (currency notes) introduced later for convenience, and finally to modern intangible digital money (cards, net banking, UPI).

5. What steps might have been taken in ancient times so that Indian coins could become the medium of exchange across countries?

Ans :

Coins issued by powerful rulers gained acceptance across various kingdoms beyond their own borders. This facilitated trade across wider geographies, as evidenced by findings like Roman coins in South India, suggesting robust maritime trade links existed.

6. Read the following lines from the Arthashastra.
"An annual salary of 60 panas could be substituted by an adhaka of grain per day, enough for four meals..." (One adhaka is equal to about 3 kg) What does this indicate about the value of one pana?
The fine for failing to help a neighbour was 100 panas. Compare this with the annual salary. What conclusion can you draw about the human values being encouraged through this?

Ans :

This indicates that one pana had significant purchasing power, roughly equivalent to the value of enough grain (about 3 kg) to provide four meals per day for two months (since 60 panas equalled about 60 adhakas of grain).
The fine (100 panas) was substantially higher than the example annual salary (60 panas). This suggests that helping neighbours was highly valued, and failing to do so incurred a severe penalty, encouraging community support and cooperation.

7. Write and enact a skit to show how people may have persuaded each other to use cowrie shells (or other such items) as the medium of exchange.

Ans :

Skit : The Cowrie Shell Exchange
Characters :
1. Merchant 1 : A trader from the village.
2. Merchant 2 : A trader from another village.
3. Customer : A person who needs goods.

Scene 1 : Merchant 1 is setting up their stall with cloth and jewelry. Merchant 2 approaches with some wheat to trade.
Merchant 2 : Excitedly "I've got the finest wheat for exchange today! But how are we going to manage the exchange? I don't need jewelry, and I don't have any cloth either."
Merchant 1 : Thinking for a moment "I have just the solution. Have you heard of cowrie shells?"

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

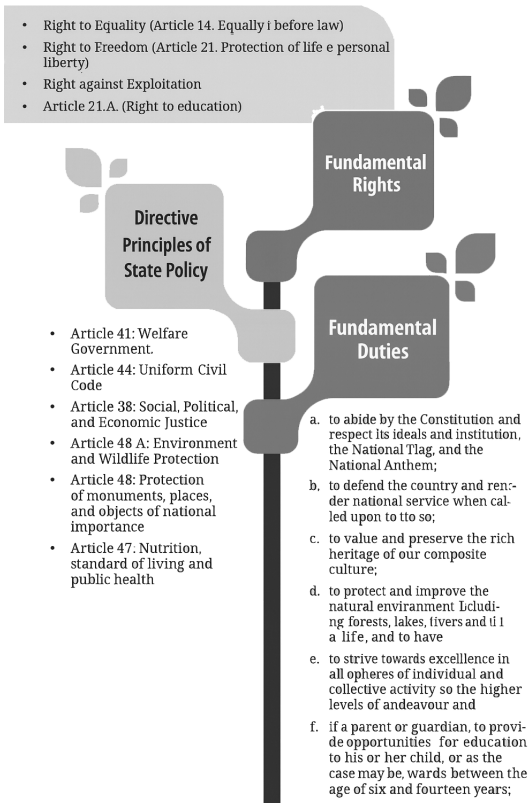
- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

Ans :

Examples include : Abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals; Defend the country; Preserve rich heritage; Protect the environment; Strive for excellence; Provide educational opportunities for children. (Any two)

121. List two Directive Principles mentioned in the infographic (Fig.)



Ans :

Examples include : Welfare Government; Uniform Civil Code; Social, Political, and Economic Justice; Environment and Wildlife Protection; Protection of monuments; Nutrition, standard of living, and public health. (Any two)

122. Why is the Indian Constitution called a 'living document'?

Ans :

It's called a living document because it's not static; it can be amended or changed over time through a defined process to adapt to the evolving needs and aspirations of society.

123. How can amendments to the Constitution be made?

Ans :

Amendments require rigorous debate and usually special majorities in Parliament. Some amendments also need ratification by state legislative assemblies, ensuring careful consideration before changes are made. Public opinion is also sometimes sought.

124. Explain the significance of the Preamble to the Constitution.

Ans :

The Preamble serves as an introduction, outlining the source of the Constitution's authority (We, the People), the nature of the Indian state (Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic, Republic), and its core objectives (Justice, Liberty, Equality, Fraternity).

125. What does the term 'Sovereign' in the Preamble signify?

Ans :

Sovereign signifies that India is an independent nation with the supreme authority to govern itself, making its own decisions on internal and external matters without interference from any external power.

126. Explain the meaning of 'Secular' as used in the Preamble.

Ans :

Secular means that citizens are free to follow any religion (or none), the state has no official religion, and the government must treat all religious beliefs and practices with equal respect.

127. What does 'Democratic' imply in the context of the Preamble?

Ans :

Democratic implies a form of government where people have equal political rights, elect their rulers through universal franchise, and hold the government accountable according to established rules.

128. Explain the ideal of 'Justice' (social, economic, political) mentioned in the Preamble.

Ans :

Justice means citizens should not face discrimination (social); inequalities should be reduced, and welfare promoted (economic); and

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

all citizens should have equal political rights and access (political).

129. What does 'Liberty' in the Preamble guarantee to citizens?

Ans :

Liberty guarantees freedom from unreasonable restrictions on thought, expression, belief, faith, and worship, allowing citizens to develop their own views and follow them in action responsibly.

130. Explain the ideal of 'Equality' mentioned in the Preamble.

Ans :

Equality means all citizens are equal before the law, social inequalities must be ended, and the government should ensure equal status and opportunities for everyone.

131. What does 'Fraternity' in the Preamble promote among citizens?

Ans :

Fraternity promotes a sense of common brotherhood, urging all citizens to treat each other with respect, assure the dignity of every individual, and uphold the unity and integrity of the nation.

132. How did the experience of the freedom struggle help answer practical questions about structuring India's government?

Ans :

The struggle highlighted the need for clear structures like universal adult franchise (to ensure participation denied under colonial rule), separation of powers (to prevent tyranny), and guaranteed fundamental rights (to protect citizens from state overreach).

133. What does the inclusion of illustrations from India's history and culture within the original Constitution signify?

Ans :

It signifies a conscious effort to root the modern constitutional framework within India's deep civilizational heritage, showing continuity and drawing inspiration from its diverse past, from Vedic times to the freedom movement.

134. According to Dr. Rajendra Prasad's quote, what qualities are needed for the successful working of democratic institutions?

Ans :

He emphasized the need for willingness to respect others' viewpoints, and the capacity for compromise and accommodation among those working within democratic institutions.

NODIA

135. How does the Constitution aim to balance the powers of the Central and State governments?

Ans :

The Constitution establishes a federal structure (implied by the three-tier system mentioned) where powers and responsibilities are divided between the Central and State governments, aiming for balance.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the necessity of a constitution for a large, diverse country like India, using the Kabaddi game analogy.

Ans :

Like Kabaddi needs agreed-upon rules for fair play, a diverse country needs a constitution to provide a common framework everyone accepts. It prevents chaos by defining government powers, citizen rights, and dispute resolution mechanisms, ensuring governance is based on principles rather than arbitrary decisions, crucial for unity in diversity.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

137. Evaluate the composition of the Constituent Assembly. Why was representation from diverse regions, professions, and social groups important?

Ans :

Diverse representation was crucial for legitimacy and effectiveness. It ensured that the concerns, perspectives, and aspirations of various sections of Indian society were considered while framing the Constitution, making the final document more inclusive, acceptable, and reflective of the nation's complexity, thus strengthening its foundation.

138. Analyse the process of drafting the Indian Constitution. What factors contributed to it being a lengthy and detailed document?

Ans :

The process involved extensive debates over nearly three years in the Constituent Assembly, considering India's vast diversity, complex social issues (like caste), post-Partition challenges, federal structure needs, incorporating lessons from the freedom struggle and other constitutions. This thorough, inclusive approach addressing myriad details naturally resulted in a lengthy document.

139. "The Indian Constitution is a blend of indigenous heritage and global learning." Analyse this statement with specific examples.

Ans :

This is accurate. It incorporates indigenous concepts like Rajadharma (reflected in DPSP), tolerance (Secularism), duty (Fundamental Duties), and unity (Preamble). Simultaneously, it adopted global ideas like parliamentary democracy (UK), fundamental rights (USA influence), liberty/equality/fraternity (France), and directive principles (Ireland), adapting them to India's context.

140. Compare and contrast the nature and enforceability of Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles of State Policy. Why did the framers include both?

Ans :

Fundamental Rights are specific, justiciable guarantees against state action (enforceable in court). DPSPs are non-justiciable, broad socio-economic goals guiding state policy. Framers included both to provide immediate, enforceable rights while also setting long-term aspirational goals for the state to strive towards as resources and conditions permitted, creating a balanced vision.

141. Analyse the significance of the Preamble as the 'soul' or 'key' to the Constitution of India.

Ans :

The Preamble encapsulates the fundamental philosophy and guiding values upon which the entire Constitution is based. It declares the source of authority ('We, the People'), the nature of the state (Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic, Republic), and the objectives (Justice, Liberty, Equality, Fraternity), serving as an interpretive key to the Constitution's spirit.

142. Evaluate the importance of the Constitution being a 'living document' capable of amendment. How does this ensure its relevance over time?

Ans :

The ability to amend allows the Constitution to adapt to changing societal needs, values, and circumstances, preventing it from becoming outdated. This flexibility ensures its continued relevance and legitimacy across generations, allowing for necessary reforms (like Panchayati Raj) while preserving core principles through a rigorous amendment process.

143. Analyse the relationship between Fundamental Rights and Fundamental Duties. Why were Duties added later?

Ans :

Rights guarantee freedoms and protections to citizens from the state. Duties outline responsibilities of citizens towards the nation and society. Duties were added later (1976) likely to emphasize that rights are accompanied by responsibilities, fostering national consciousness and encouraging active participation in nation-building and upholding constitutional values.

144. Considering the values in the Preamble (Justice, Liberty, Equality, Fraternity), analyse how they collectively aim to build a just and cohesive society in India.

Ans :

Justice aims for fairness (social, economic, political). Liberty ensures individual freedoms. Equality guarantees non-discrimination and equal opportunities. Fraternity fosters brotherhood and national unity. Together, these values provide a blueprint for an inclusive society that respects individual dignity while promoting collective well-being and national integration.

145. How does the Constitution provide a framework for balancing individual freedoms with the needs of society and the state?

Ans :

It guarantees Fundamental Rights (individual freedoms) but also allows for reasonable restrictions on these rights in the interest of public order, morality, security, etc. It also outlines Fundamental Duties (societal needs) and empowers the state through its organs while setting limits via checks, balances, and judicial review.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

146. "What are the key functions and features of a Constitution?"

Ans :

Key functions and features :

1. Defining the structure of government – It lays out the framework for the three main organs of the government : the legislature, the executive, and the judiciary, along with their roles and responsibilities.
2. Protecting citizens' rights and duties – It guarantees fundamental rights to citizens and outlines their duties.

147. Evaluate the challenges in implementing the constitutional ideal of 'Equality' (Article 14) in a society with historical inequalities like the caste system.

Ans :

While the Constitution guarantees legal equality, deep-rooted historical inequalities (like caste discrimination, mentioned via Faxian's account of outcastes) pose significant challenges. Overcoming centuries of prejudice and socio-economic disparity requires ongoing state action (reservations, welfare schemes), social reform movements, and changes in societal attitudes beyond just legal provisions.

148. Analyse the process described for challenging the rule about flying the national flag. How does this exemplify the Constitution as a living document and the role of the judiciary?

Ans :

A citizen challenging the rule based on their Fundamental Right (Freedom of Expression) shows individuals using constitutional means. The Supreme Court interpreting the Constitution to uphold this right demonstrates the judiciary's role in adapting constitutional principles to new contexts, making the Constitution 'live' and responsive to citizen's assertion of rights.

149. How does the federal structure (three-tier system) implied in the Constitution attempt to address the needs of governing a vast and diverse country like India?

Ans :

By dividing powers between Central, State, and Local governments, the federal structure allows for national unity and policy alongside attention to regional diversity and local needs. State and local governments can address specific regional issues more effectively, promoting administrative efficiency and accommodating diverse aspirations within a unified framework.

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

150. Considering Dr. Rajendra Prasad's concluding remarks, analyse why qualities like respect for others' viewpoints, compromise, and accommodation are vital for democratic functioning.

Ans :

Democracy involves diverse groups with potentially conflicting interests and opinions. Respect for dissent, willingness to negotiate (compromise), and finding middle ground (accommodation) are essential to reach decisions acceptable to a majority, maintain social harmony, prevent gridlock, and ensure the democratic process works through dialogue rather than imposition.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. During a school sports day planning meeting, students from junior grades feel their preferences for games are ignored by senior students who dominate the discussion. A teacher reminds them of the principles discussed while forming the Student Committee earlier, emphasizing fair representation and hearing all voices.

(i) Which democratic principle, analogous to the Constitution, is being ignored by the senior students?

(ii) How does the teacher's reminder relate to the function of a constitution or rulebook?

(iii) Suggest a process the students could adopt, inspired by democratic procedures, to ensure fairness in selecting games.

Ans :

(i) The principle of equality (treating junior students' views equally) and representative participation (ensuring all groups' voices are heard) is being ignored.

(ii) The teacher is reminding them of the agreed-upon rules/principles (like a constitution) for fair decision-making, which should guide

NODIA

their actions and ensure fairness, just like a constitution guides a country.

(iii) They could ensure each grade has representatives on the planning committee, allow each representative to present their grade's preferences, hold discussions respecting all views, and perhaps decide through a vote or consensus accommodating diverse interests fairly.

152. A state government passes a law that prohibits people from practicing a particular peaceful religious ritual in public spaces, claiming it might offend others. A citizen belonging to that religion challenges the law in court, arguing it violates their constitutional rights.

(i) Which value from the Preamble is directly relevant to the citizen's freedom to practice their religion?

(ii) Which fundamental right is the citizen likely invoking?

(iii) Evaluate the role of the independent judiciary in resolving this conflict between state law and individual rights.

Ans :

(i) Secularism (freedom to follow any religion, equal respect for all beliefs) and Liberty (of belief, faith, and worship) are directly relevant.

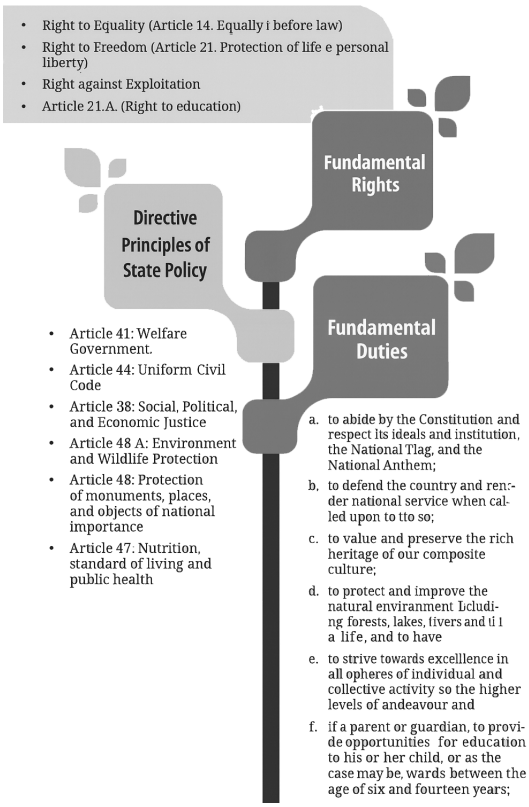
(ii) The citizen is likely invoking the Fundamental Right to Freedom of Religion (which includes the right to practice) and possibly the Right to Freedom of Expression.

(iii) The independent judiciary's role is crucial. It must examine the state law against the Constitution's guarantees of religious freedom and equality, balancing individual rights with reasonable restrictions (like public order), ultimately deciding if the law is constitutionally valid.

153. A group of villagers protests peacefully against a factory dumping untreated waste into their local river, which pollutes their drinking water and harms fish. They cite their Fundamental Rights and also a Directive Principle related to the environment.

(i) Which Fundamental Right might be relevant to their situation concerning polluted water?

(ii) Which Directive Principle (from Fig.) are they likely referencing?



(iii) Evaluate how invoking both Rights and Principles strengthens their case, even though Principles are non-justiciable.

Ans :

(i) The Fundamental Right to Life (Article 21), which courts have interpreted to include the right to a clean and healthy environment, is relevant.

(ii) They are likely referencing Article 48-A : Environment and Wildlife Protection, which directs the state to protect and improve the environment.

(iii) Invoking the Fundamental Right provides a legal basis for court action. Citing the Directive Principle strengthens their moral argument, showing the factory's actions contradict the state's mandated goals for environmental protection, pressuring the government and judiciary to act in line with constitutional vision.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. www.momworksheet.com
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

112. Why does a country need a constitution?

Ans :

A constitution provides a framework for governance, defines powers and limits of government organs, outlines citizens' rights and duties, and states the nation's core values and aspirations, ensuring order and guiding principles.

113. Explain the 'rulebook' analogy used for the Constitution.

Ans :

Just like a game needs rules agreed upon by all players for fairness, a country needs a constitution as a 'rulebook' that lays down fundamental laws and principles everyone agrees to follow for orderly governance.

114. How was the Constituent Assembly formed?

Ans :

It was formed in 1946 with members elected indirectly by the members of the existing Provincial Legislative Assemblies, ensuring representation from various regions and groups across India.

115. What was the role of the Drafting Committee chaired by Dr. B.R. Ambedkar?

Ans :

The Drafting Committee was responsible for preparing the initial text or draft of the Constitution based on discussions, reports, and principles decided by the Constituent Assembly as a whole.

116. How did India's freedom struggle influence the values embedded in the Constitution?

Ans :

The struggle against colonial rule emphasized ideals like freedom, equality, justice, and self-governance. Leaders carried these ideals into the Constituent Assembly, making them core principles of the new nation's Constitution.

117. Give one example of how India's civilisational heritage influenced the Constitution.

Ans :

Principles like tolerance (accepting different views), Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam (world is one family), or emphasis on duties (as in Rajadharma) are rooted in India's heritage and reflected in constitutional values like secularism, fraternity, and Fundamental Duties.

118. Explain the concept of 'checks and balances' among the organs of government as outlined in the Constitution.

Ans :

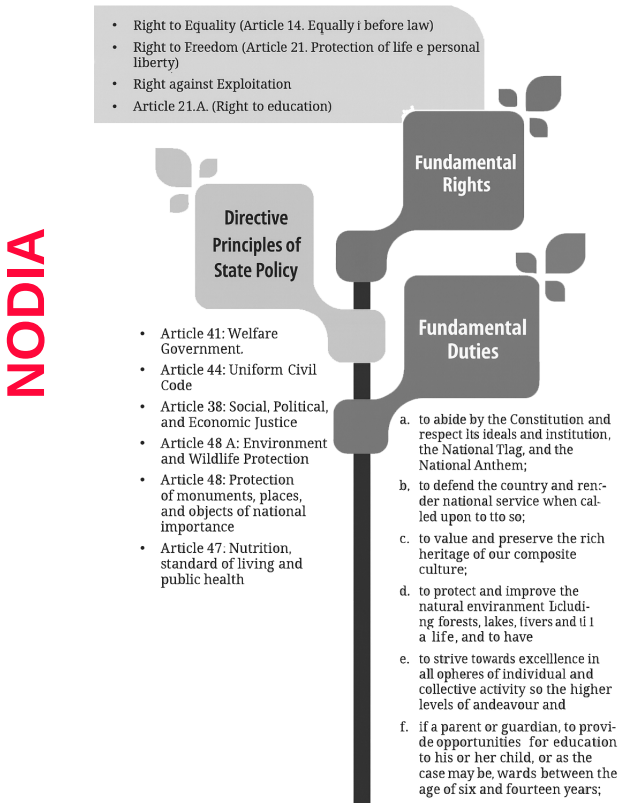
The Constitution ensures no single organ (legislature, executive, judiciary) becomes too powerful by giving each some oversight over the others, ensuring fairness, responsibility, and accountability in governance.

119. What is the difference between Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles of State Policy (DPSP)?

Ans :

Fundamental Rights are legally enforceable guarantees to citizens (e.g., equality, freedom) that can be claimed in court. DPSPs are non-enforceable guidelines directing the state to work towards broader socio-economic goals (e.g., welfare, justice).

120. List two Fundamental Duties mentioned in the infographic (Fig.).



CHAPTER 11

FROM BARTER TO MONEY

SUMMARY

1. THE BARTER SYSTEM

Before money, people exchanged goods and services directly for other goods and services, a method known as the barter system. Examples include exchanging an extra eraser for a needed pencil or using commodities like cowrie shells, salt, cattle, or seeds as mediums of exchange. Historically, various unique items like giant Rai stones on Yap Island, Tevau feather coils in the Solomon Islands, and Aztec copper Tajadero in Central America also functioned similarly.

1.1 Limitations of Barter

The barter system faced significant challenges, making complex transactions difficult :

1. Double Coincidence of Wants : Finding someone who wants exactly what you have to offer and simultaneously has exactly what you need is difficult.
2. Lack of a Common Standard Measure of Value : Comparing the worth of different goods (e.g., how many sweaters equal one ox?) is hard without a common unit, leading to potentially unfair exchanges.
3. Problem of Divisibility : Goods like a live ox cannot be easily divided to exchange for smaller items like a sweater.
4. Problem of Portability : Carrying bulky goods like an ox or many bags of wheat for exchange is inconvenient.
5. Problem of Durability : Many goods used in barter, like grain, cannot be stored for long periods without spoiling.

2. FUNCTIONS OF MONEY

Money evolved as a solution to the problems of barter. It serves several key functions :

1. Medium of Exchange : Money is a universally accepted tool for buying and selling goods and services, eliminating the need for double coincidence of wants.
2. Store of Value : Unlike perishable goods, money can be saved and used for future purchases.
3. Common Denomination (Unit of Account) : Money provides a standard measure to value and compare different goods and services based on their prices.
4. Standard of Deferred Payment : Money allows for payments to be made at a later date (e.g., buying on credit).

3. THE JOURNEY OF MONEY

Money has evolved through various forms over time :

1. Commodity Money : Early forms included shells, salt, tea, cattle, etc..
2. Coinage : Metallic money, often made from precious metals like gold, silver, copper, or alloys, was introduced early on. Rulers typically controlled minting and issued coins with specific symbols (rupas), motifs (nature, rulers, deities), or names (karshapanas or panas). The word pana has linguistic links to modern terms for money in South Indian languages. Coinage facilitated trade across regions, as seen by the discovery of Roman coins in South India. Today, coins are typically alloys, issued in various denominations, sometimes commemorating special events. The Indian Rupee symbol (₹) was adopted in 2010.
3. Paper Money : Introduced to overcome the inconvenience of carrying large numbers of coins, paper currency originated in China and came to India in the late 18th century. Today, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) is the sole authority for issuing currency notes in India, which incorporate security features and motifs representing cultural heritage.
4. Digital Money : Modern technology enables intangible, electronic forms of money. Methods like debit/credit cards, net banking, UPI, and QR codes allow direct bank-to-bank transfers without physical cash.

NODIA

154. The Central Government proposes a major amendment to the Constitution concerning the relationship between the Centre and States. According to the procedure, after being passed by Parliament, the amendment also needs approval from at least half of the State Legislative Assemblies.

(i) What does this requirement for state approval indicate about India's governmental structure?

(ii) Why is such a rigorous process necessary for amending key aspects of the Constitution?

(iii) Evaluate how this process reflects the idea of the Constitution being a 'living document'.

Ans :

(i) It indicates that India has a federal structure, where powers are divided between the Centre and States, and significant changes affecting this balance require consent from both levels of government.

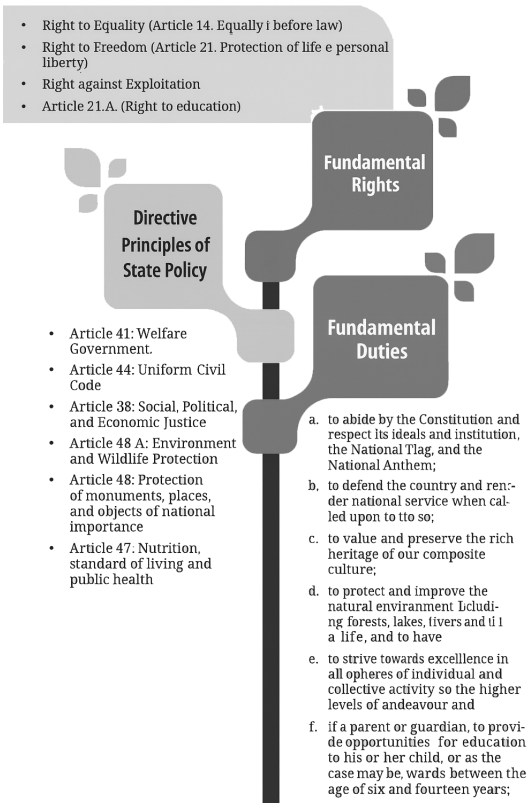
(ii) A rigorous process ensures that fundamental changes are made only after thorough deliberation and broad consensus, protecting the Constitution's core principles and the federal balance from hasty or unilateral alterations by the central government alone.

(iii) It shows the Constitution can be changed ('living') but only through a carefully defined, deliberative process involving multiple stakeholders (Parliament and States), ensuring amendments reflect widespread agreement and necessity, maintaining stability while allowing adaptation.

155. Inspired by the Preamble's ideal of Fraternity, a school initiates a program where students from different social, economic, and religious backgrounds collaborate on community service projects, aiming to foster mutual understanding and respect.

(i) What specific aspect of Fraternity does this program aim to achieve?

(ii) How does this program connect to the Fundamental Duty related to composite culture (from Fig.)?



(iii) Evaluate the potential effectiveness of such programs in promoting constitutional values among young citizens.

Ans :

(i) It aims to achieve a sense of common brotherhood and mutual respect among students from diverse backgrounds, promoting unity and assuring the dignity of each individual.

(ii) By bringing diverse students together, it helps them value and preserve the rich heritage of India's composite culture through direct interaction and shared positive experiences.

(iii) Such programs can be highly effective. Practical collaboration breaks down stereotypes, builds empathy, and instills values like fraternity, equality, and respect for diversity more powerfully than textbook learning alone, helping nurture responsible and constitutionally-minded citizens.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Merchant 2 : Curious "Cowrie shells? What are they?"
Merchant 1 : Showing a bag of shells "These shells are being used as money in many parts of the land. They are small, easy to carry, and most importantly, they are valuable. I can give you this amount of shells in exchange for your wheat, and you can then use these shells to buy what you need."
Merchant 2 : Nods "That sounds interesting! But how can I be sure they're of the same value as my wheat?"
Merchant 1 : Smiling "Well, here's the beauty. Cowrie shells are being accepted widely, from the north to the south. And we all know the value of wheat. You can always exchange these shells for goods in any market—whether in the next village or in the city."
Merchant 2 : Excited "I see! This will make trade so much easier! I can also use these shells in future trades."
Merchant 1 : Confidently "Exactly. Now, let's agree on the amount of wheat and shells to exchange
Scene 2 : Customer enters the stall, looking at the goods and trying to decide which to buy.
Customer : "I would like to buy that fine cloth, but I don't have any wheat or jewelry to trade. Do you accept cowrie shells?"
Merchant 1 : Proudly "Yes, we do! Cowrie shells are now the currency of exchange. You can use them to buy anything here."
Customer : Smiling and showing a handful of shells "Here are the shells. Thank you for making trade so much simpler!"
End of skit.

8. The RBI is the only legal source that prints and distributes paper currency in India. To prevent illegal printing of notes and their misuse, the RBI has introduced many security features. Find out what some of these measures are and discuss them in class.

Ans :

The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) ensures that paper currency in India is secure and not subject to counterfeiting. To prevent illegal printing of notes and their misuse, the RBI has implemented several security features on currency notes. Some of the key security measures are :

1. Watermark : Every genuine currency note in India has a watermark, which is visible when the note is held against light. This feature helps to easily distinguish between genuine and fake currency.
2. Security Thread : A visible security thread is embedded in the currency note. On newer notes, this thread has changing colors and is visible from both sides, making it harder to replicate.
3. Micro-Text : Small letters or numbers are printed on the currency note, visible only under a magnifying glass. This is a security feature to ensure the authenticity of the note.
4. Intaglio Printing : The images and features on the note are printed using intaglio printing, where certain parts of the note, like the Ashoka Pillar, are raised. This makes it difficult to counterfeit.
5. Holographic Features : Higher denomination notes (like ₹500 and ₹2000) have a security thread with holographic features that change color when the note is tilted.
6. UV Ink : Certain parts of the note, such as the security thread, are printed using ultraviolet (UV) ink. This part of the note is visible only under UV light.
7. Latent Image : A latent image of the denomination is printed on the currency note. When held at a specific angle, the denomination number appears, which is hard to replicate.

These security features are regularly updated to stay ahead of counterfeiters. Additionally, the RBI works with various agencies to monitor and track the movement of currency notes to prevent illegal activities.

9. Interview a few of your family members and local shopkeepers, and ask them their preferences in making and receiving payments-do they prefer cash or UPI? Why?

Ans :

After interviewing family members and local shopkeepers, I found that both cash and UPI (Unified Payments Interface) have their advantages, and people have different preferences depending on the situation. Here's what I found :

1. Family Members : Many of my family members prefer cash for smaller daily purchases or in situations where they do not have internet access. They feel more comfortable using cash because it's tangible, and they can physically manage their spending. However, younger family members, especially those working in cities, prefer UPI because it's fast,

NODIA

convenient, and doesn't require carrying cash. UPI payments can be made using a mobile phone, which is accessible and quick, and they like the added benefit of not having to handle change or worry about losing physical money.

2. Local Shopkeepers : Some shopkeepers prefer cash as it gives them immediate access to funds, which they can use to pay for supplies or make change for other customers. It also allows them to avoid transaction fees, which are often associated with digital payments. Other shopkeepers, especially those in urban areas, are increasingly adopting UPI for payments. They prefer UPI because it reduces the need to handle large amounts of physical money, making transactions quicker and safer. Moreover, UPI payments are easy to track and manage digitally.
3. Reasons for Preference :
   (i) Cash : Some people prefer cash because it's familiar and tangible. It is also accepted everywhere, and there is no need for internet connectivity. Cash is especially preferred in rural areas where internet access may be unreliable.
   (ii) UPI : UPI is preferred for its convenience and speed. Transactions are instant and can be done anytime, even without going to the bank. People also appreciate the security and ease of using UPI, especially for larger amounts or online purchases.

   Overall, both payment methods have their pros and cons, and the choice between cash and UPI largely depends on convenience, availability, and personal comfort. The increasing digital literacy in India is making UPI a more popular choice, especially for younger generations.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is the 'barter system' of exchange?
(A) Using precious metals as a standard value
(B) Exchanging goods and services without money
(C) A government system for collecting taxes
(D) A method of digital fund transfers

Ans :

(B) Exchanging goods and services without money
The barter system is an old method of exchange where people directly trade goods or services for other goods or services without using a common medium like money, relying on mutual needs.

2. Which of these was NOT commonly used as a commodity for exchange in early barter systems?
(A) Cowrie shells or special kinds of salt
(B) Cattle like cows, goats, or sheep
(C) Seeds, tea, tobacco, or pieces of cloth
(D) Digital QR codes on mobile phones

Ans :

(D) Digital QR codes on mobile phones
Early barter systems utilized various tangible commodities like shells, salt, cattle, and cloth for exchange. Digital QR codes are a very recent development associated with modern electronic money transfers, not ancient barter.

3. What is the primary problem associated with the 'double coincidence of wants' in a barter system?
(A) Finding someone who wants your exact item
(B) The goods exchanged are often not durable
(C) It is difficult to transport large goods
(D) There is no way to store value

Ans :

(A) Finding someone who wants your exact item
The 'double coincidence of wants' is a major challenge in barter. It means both parties in an exchange must have exactly what the other desires and be willing to trade their items.

4. What does 'money' primarily function as in an economy?
(A) A decorative item used in religious events
(B) A common tool accepted for making payments
(C) A method for storing agricultural products
(D) A system for recording historical events

Ans :

(B) A common tool accepted for making payments
Money serves as a common medium of exchange that is universally accepted within an economy for making or receiving payments in return for goods and services, simplifying transactions significantly.

5. On Yap Island in Micronesia, what unique items were used as a form of money?
(A) Small, intricately carved wooden figures
(B) Brightly colored bird feathers in coils
(C) Giant discs of rock called Rai stones
(D) Bundles of dried tobacco leaves

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) Giant discs of rock called Rai stones
The people of Yap Island traditionally used large, circular stone discs, known as Rai stones, as a form of currency. These stones varied in size and value and were important in their economy.

6. How does using money solve the problem of 'divisibility' faced in a barter system when exchanging something like an ox for smaller items?
(A) Money can be easily divided into smaller units
(B) An ox can be trained to carry money
(C) Money is heavier and thus more valuable
(D) An ox can be sold for other animals

Ans :

(A) Money can be easily divided into smaller units
Unlike an indivisible item like a live ox, money can be divided into smaller denominations (e.g., coins, smaller notes). This allows for fair exchange for goods of varying, smaller values without issue.

7. What does the 'problem of durability' in a barter system refer to, for example, when using wheat for exchange?
(A) Wheat is too heavy to carry around often
(B) Wheat cannot be easily divided into parts
(C) Wheat may rot or get eaten by pests
(D) Everyone may not want wheat for trade

Ans :

(C) Wheat may rot or get eaten by pests
Durability refers to an item's ability to last over time. In barter, using perishable goods like wheat poses a problem because they can spoil, rot, or be consumed by pests if stored for long periods.

8. The Junbeel Mela in Assam is an example of a traditional fair where the _____ system is still practiced.
(A) coinage
(B) barter
(C) digital
(D) paper

Ans :

(B) barter
The Junbeel Mela, an annual socio-cultural fair in Assam, is notable for continuing the tradition of the barter system. People from different communities exchange their local produce and handmade goods directly without using money.

9. The Tevau, used as money on the Solomon Islands, was made from what material?
(A) Polished seashells from the local beaches
(B) Carved whale teeth from the ocean
(C) Woven coconut fibers from palm trees
(D) Red feathers from certain native birds

Ans :

(D) Red feathers from certain native birds
Tevau, a traditional form of currency from the Santa Cruz Islands (part of the Solomon Islands), consisted of long coils made from the tiny red feathers of the scarlet honeyeater bird.

10. A farmer needs shoes, a sweater, and medicines but only has an ox to trade. If money exists, how does it simplify this situation compared to barter?
(A) The farmer can directly buy items by value
(B) The farmer must find someone wanting an ox
(C) The farmer has to exchange ox for grain
(D) The farmer must carry the heavy ox everywhere

Ans :

(A) The farmer can directly buy items by value
With money, the farmer can sell the ox for a sum of money. Then, this money, being a common measure of value and medium of exchange, can be used to buy shoes, a sweater, and medicines separately.

11. What does 'portability' mean in the context of items used for exchange?
(A) The item's ability to last for long time
(B) The ease with which an item can be carried
(C) The item's capacity to be split into portions
(D) The item's acceptance by everyone in trade

Ans :

(B) The ease with which an item can be carried
Portability refers to how easily an object or material can be carried or moved from one place to another. For a medium of exchange, high portability is desirable for convenient transactions over distances.

12. Why is a 'common standard measure of value' important for an efficient exchange system?
(A) It ensures all goods have the exact same price
(B) It helps determine the worth of different goods
(C) It makes it easier to transport all items
(D) It guarantees that all goods are durable

NODIA

Ans :

(B) It helps determine the worth of different goods
A common standard measure of value, like money, allows the worth of diverse goods and services to be expressed and compared in common units (e.g., rupees, dollars), facilitating fair and understandable exchanges.

13. The Aztec copper Tajadero, a form of money, was shaped like what common tool?
(A) A small hammer or mallet type
(B) A miniature spear or an arrowhead
(C) A type of chopping knife
(D) A farming hoe or a ploughshare

Ans :

(C) A type of chopping knife
The Aztec Tajadero was a form of commodity money made of copper, shaped somewhat like a hoe or a chopping knife. It was used in parts of Central Mexico and Central America.

14. Which of these functions of money is correctly paired with its description?
(A) Medium of Exchange - Storing purchasing power over time
(B) Store of Value - Comparing worth of different goods
(C) Unit of Account - Facilitating buying and selling things
(D) Standard of Deferred Payment - Making payments later on

Ans :

(D) Standard of Deferred Payment - Making payments later on
Money serving as a standard of deferred payment means it can be used to settle debts or make payments that are due at a future date, providing a reliable measure for future obligations.

15. Assertion (A) : Money is said to act as a 'store of value'.
Reason (R) : Unlike perishable goods, money can generally be kept for a longer time and used for purchases later.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Money functions as a store of value because it retains its purchasing power over time (assuming stable prices). This allows people to save it and use it for transactions in the future, unlike perishable bartered goods.

16. Which of these items is INCORRECTLY identified as an early form of commodity money?
(A) Cowrie shells found on the sea coast
(B) Salt blocks from various salt mines
(C) Debit cards linked to a bank account
(D) Cattle like cows, sheep, or goats

Ans :

(C) Debit cards linked to a bank account
Cowrie shells, salt, and cattle were indeed used as forms of commodity money in various early societies. Debit cards are a modern form of payment linked to bank accounts, representing digital money, not commodity money.

17. Consider these statements about the barter system :
1. It requires a double coincidence of wants for exchange.
2. It allows for easy division of all goods.
3. It provides a common standard measure of value.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
The barter system heavily relies on a double coincidence of wants. It often faces problems with the divisibility of goods and lacks a common standard measure of value, making exchanges complex and inefficient.

18. In a classroom, students decide to swap books they have already read. One student gives a jungle adventure book to a friend in exchange for a mystery story. This activity is a small-scale example of which system of exchange discussed?
(A) A monetary transaction using paper currency bills
(B) The ancient barter system of direct exchange
(C) A digital payment using QR code system
(D) A credit-based transaction for future items

Ans :

(B) The ancient barter system of direct exchange

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

This book swap, where one book is directly exchanged for another without the use of money, perfectly illustrates the principle of the barter system, fulfilling the needs of both students involved in the trade.

19. The process of producing coins in a manufacturing facility is known as _____.
(A) printing
(B) minting
(C) casting
(D) engraving

Ans :

(B) minting
Minting is the industrial process of manufacturing coins. A facility where coins are produced for a nation's currency is called a mint. This process typically involves stamping metal blanks with designs.

20. What is an 'alloy' in the context of coinage?
(A) A single pure precious metal like gold
(B) A metal made by combining two or more
(C) A non-metallic substance used to make tokens
(D) The paper on which currency notes printed

Ans :

(B) A metal made by combining two or more
An alloy is a metal created by mixing two or more metallic elements, or a metal with other elements. Alloys are often used for coins to improve durability, reduce cost, or achieve specific appearances.

21. In ancient India, coins made from precious metals like gold, silver, and copper were often called karshapanas or what other name?
(A) Mudras
(B) Rupas
(C) Panas
(D) Tankas

Ans :

(C) Panas
Ancient Indian coins, particularly those made of copper or silver, were known by terms like karshapanas or panas. These were among the earliest forms of metallic currency used for transactions in the region.

22. The symbols punched on ancient Indian coins, called 'rupas', often included nature motifs, royal figures, or what other common theme?
(A) Mathematical equations
(B) Abstract geometric designs
(C) Foreign language scripts
(D) Religious deities

Ans :

(D) Religious deities
Ancient Indian coins frequently bore symbols or motifs representing various aspects of life and belief. These included nature elements (animals, trees), figures of kings or queens, and depictions of deities from prevalent religious traditions.

23. What does the 'obverse' side of a coin typically refer to?
(A) The edge or rim of the entire coin
(B) The side bearing the head or principal design
(C) The reverse side with secondary information
(D) The year the coin was officially minted

Ans :

(B) The side bearing the head or principal design
The obverse of a coin is commonly known as the "heads" side. It is the side that usually features the principal design, often a portrait of a ruler or a significant national symbol.

24. The Chalukya dynasty's coins often featured a Varaha (boar avatar of Vishnu) image on one side and what on the other?
(A) A war elephant with a rider on it
(B) A seated Buddha in meditation pose
(C) A decorated three-tiered royal parasol
(D) A ship with sails indicating maritime

Ans :

(C) A decorated three-tiered royal parasol
Coins of the Chalukya dynasty frequently depicted the Varaha (boar) incarnation of Vishnu on the obverse. The reverse side often featured a decorated three-tiered parasol (umbrella), a symbol of royalty and sovereignty.

25. The discovery of Roman gold coins during excavations in Pudukkottai, Tamil Nadu, primarily suggests what about ancient South India?
(A) Roman military occupation of the entire region
(B) Extensive trade relations with the Roman world
(C) Local adoption of Roman religious practices
(D) Migration of Roman settlers to South India

Ans :

(B) Extensive trade relations with the Roman world

NODIA

that barter practices can persist even in modern monetized economies.

51. A shopkeeper agrees to sell a customer a bicycle today, but allows the customer to pay the full amount in three monthly installments over the next three months. In this scenario, money is primarily functioning as a :
(A) Medium of immediate direct exchange only
(B) Store of easily transportable value
(C) Unit of precise accounting for trade
(D) Standard of deferred payment over time

Ans :

(D) Standard of deferred payment over time
When a payment for a good or service is agreed to be made at a future date or in installments, money is serving as a standard of deferred payment. It allows for transactions where payment is not immediate.

52. Which of these is an INCORRECT statement regarding ancient Indian coinage?
(A) Karshapanas or Panas were names for coins.
(B) Coins were often made of gold, silver, copper.
(C) All ancient coins had detailed text inscriptions.
(D) Rulers controlled the minting and issue of coins.

Ans :

(C) All ancient coins had detailed text inscriptions.
While later coins often had inscriptions, the earliest Indian coins (punch-marked coins) primarily featured symbols (rupas) punched onto them, and detailed textual inscriptions were not a universal feature of all ancient coinage from the start.

53. Assertion (A) : The evolution of money from barter to digital forms has generally made transactions easier and more efficient.
Reason (R) : Each new form of money typically addressed some limitations of the previous system, such as portability or divisibility.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The historical progression from barter to commodity money, then to coins, paper money, and now digital money, reflects a continuous effort to make exchanges more convenient and efficient by overcoming limitations like the double coincidence of wants, portability, and divisibility.

54. Consider the functions of money :
1. It serves as a medium of exchange.
2. It cannot be used to store value for future.
3. It acts as a common unit of account.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for money?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 3 only
Money functions as a medium of exchange (facilitating transactions) and a unit of account (measuring value). It also serves as a store of value, allowing purchasing power to be held over time. Statement 2 is incorrect.

55. The common problem in barter where one person has an item the other wants, but the second person does not have what the first wants, is the lack of _____.
(A) durability of item
(B) double coincidence
(C) easy portability
(D) simple divisibility

Ans :

(B) double coincidence
For a barter exchange to occur smoothly, there must be a double coincidence of wants, meaning each party must desire what the other party is offering. The absence of this is a primary limitation.

56. What does 'currency' mean in the context of a country's economy?
(A) The total value of all goods produced
(B) The system of money used in particular
(C) The rate of inflation or price rise
(D) The government's budget for public service

Ans :

(B) The system of money used in particular
Currency refers to the system of money in general use in a particular country, including its coins and

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(B) Digital money exists only in electronic form
Unlike coins and paper notes which are physical, tangible forms of money, digital money exists only in electronic form. It represents value stored and transacted through computer systems and networks, without physical presence.

33. What does "QR Code" stand for in the context of digital payments?
(A) Quality Rated Code system
(B) Quick Response Code system
(C) Quantity Record Code one
(D) Quota Reserved Code type

Ans :

(B) Quick Response Code system
QR Code stands for "Quick Response Code." It is a type of two-dimensional barcode consisting of black and white squares that can be read by devices like smartphones to quickly access information, often for initiating digital payments.

34. Krishnappa, a fruit seller, uses a QR code for payments. When customers scan it, money goes directly into his bank account. This transaction uses what form of money predominantly described in current times?
(A) Barter system using various fresh fruits
(B) Commodity money like cowrie shells
(C) Metallic coinage made of silver alloys
(D) Digital money via electronic bank transfer

Ans :

(D) Digital money via electronic bank transfer
Krishnappa's use of a QR code facilitates digital payments. Customers scan the code, and funds are electronically transferred from their bank accounts to his, representing a transaction using digital money.

35. Assertion (A) : The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) is the sole authority controlling the issue of currency in India today.
Reason (R) : This centralized control helps maintain the stability and integrity of the national currency system effectively.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The RBI indeed has the exclusive right to issue currency notes in India. This centralized authority is crucial for regulating the money supply, maintaining currency stability, and preventing unauthorized printing, thus ensuring public confidence.

36. Which form of money is INCORRECTLY matched with its typical characteristic or era of primary use?
(A) Barter System - Direct exchange of goods, services
(B) Cowrie Shells - Early form of commodity money
(C) Paper Currency - Introduced in India in 5th century BCE
(D) Digital Money - Electronic form, used with cards/UPI

Ans :

(C) Paper Currency - Introduced in India in 5th century BCE
Paper currency was introduced in India much later, in the late 18th century CE, not in the 5th century BCE. Barter, cowrie shells, and digital money descriptions are generally accurate for their contexts.

37. Consider the evolution of money :
1. Coins were among the earliest forms of metallic money.
2. Paper money was developed because coins were too light.
3. Digital money requires physical presence for all transactions.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for that?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
Coins were indeed an early form of metallic money. Paper money was developed because carrying many coins was difficult (heavy and bulky), not because coins were too light. Digital money transactions are often remote/electronic.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

38. The Junbeel Mela, where barter is still practiced, begins with the Agni Puja, which is the worship of _____.
(A) water
(B) earth
(C) fire
(D) wind

Ans :

(C) fire
The Junbeel Mela, a traditional fair in Assam known for its barter system, commences with the Agni Puja. This ritual involves the worship of fire (Agni) and includes prayers for universal well-being and harmony.

39. What is a 'transaction' in an economic context?
(A) A discussion about the value of goods
(B) A piece of business, like buying or selling
(C) The process of manufacturing new products
(D) A government regulation on market prices

Ans :

(B) A piece of business, like buying or selling
A transaction refers to an instance of doing business, particularly an act of buying or selling something. It involves an exchange of goods, services, or assets between two or more parties.

40. Which of these is a modern method of monetary transaction that directly transfers money from one bank account to another electronically?
(A) Rai stones of Yap
(B) Cowrie shells used
(C) UPI (Unified Payments)
(D) Tevau feather coils

Ans :

(C) UPI (Unified Payments)
UPI (Unified Payments Interface) is a modern digital payment system that facilitates instant electronic fund transfers directly between bank accounts using mobile devices, without needing physical cash or cards for transfer.

41. Why was the development of money a significant improvement over the barter system for facilitating trade over long distances?
(A) Money was always made from locally available material
(B) Money eliminated the need for any transportation
(C) Money is more portable and universally accepted value
(D) Barter goods were always of superior quality

Ans :

(C) Money is more portable and universally accepted value
Money, especially in forms like coins and later paper, is more portable than bulky barter goods. Its acceptance as a common measure of value also eliminated the need for a double coincidence of wants, simplifying long-distance trade.

NODIA

42. What is a key difference between commodity money (like salt or cattle) and fiat money (like modern paper currency)?
(A) Commodity has value; fiat has no value
(B) Commodity has no use; fiat has many
(C) Commodity has intrinsic; fiat by government
(D) Commodity is new; fiat is very old

Ans :

(C) Commodity has intrinsic; fiat by government
Commodity money has intrinsic value (value in itself, e.g., salt can be consumed). Fiat money (like modern paper notes) has little to no intrinsic value; its value is derived from government decree and public trust.

43. Which function of money is best illustrated when a shopkeeper prices a book at ₹100?
(A) Medium of Exchange in shops
(B) Store of Value for later
(C) Unit of Account (Measure Value)
(D) Standard of Deferred Payment

Ans :

(C) Unit of Account (Measure Value)
When a book is priced at ₹100, money is acting as a unit of account. It provides a common denominator to express and compare the value of different goods and services in monetary terms.

44. A society uses beautifully crafted seashells as its primary means for buying and selling all goods. If a major storm destroys the coastal areas where these shells are found, making them very scarce, what is a likely economic consequence for that particular society?
(A) The value of the seashells will decrease sharply
(B) The value of the seashells will likely increase
(C) People will immediately switch to using metal coin
(D) The government will print more paper currency

Ans :

(B) The value of the seashells will likely increase

If the supply of the commodity used as money (seashells) becomes very scarce, its value as a medium of exchange will likely increase significantly due to the principles of supply and demand, making goods priced in seashells seem cheaper.

45. Which of these is NOT a problem typically associated with the barter system of exchange?
(A) Lack of a double coincidence of all wants
(B) Difficulty in dividing certain goods fairly
(C) The universal acceptability of one item
(D) Absence of a common measure of the value

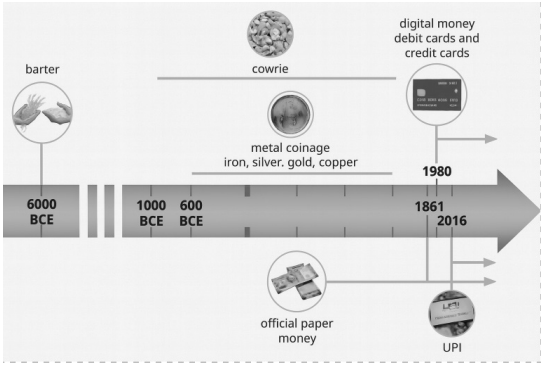
Ans :

(C) The universal acceptability of one item
The barter system's main problems include the need for a double coincidence of wants, indivisibility of goods, and lack of a common value measure. The issue is precisely the lack of a universally acceptable item, not its presence.

46. Metal coinage (iron, silver, gold, copper) in India broadly began around which period?
(A) 6000 BCE with cowrie shells
(B) 1000 BCE to 600 BCE or so
(C) 1861 CE with official paper
(D) 2016 CE with UPI system

Ans :

(B) 1000 BCE to 600 BCE or so
The timeline (Fig.) indicates that metallic coinage, using materials like iron, silver, gold, and copper, started to appear in India around the period of 1000 BCE to 600 BCE, marking a significant shift from earlier barter systems.



47. What are 'commodities' in an economic sense?
(A) Services provided by government to citizen
(B) Products or goods that can be traded
(C) Abstract ideas or philosophical concepts
(D) Unprocessed natural resources in ground

Ans :

(B) Products or goods that can be traded
Commodities are basic goods or raw materials that are interchangeable with other goods of the same type and are traded in markets. Examples include agricultural products, metals, and energy resources which are bought.

48. How did the introduction of official paper money by the Reserve Bank of India change the currency system compared to when individual rulers issued their own coins?
(A) It made currency less stable and reliable
(B) It standardized and centralized currency issue
(C) It eliminated the use of all metal coins
(D) It allowed private banks to print notes

Ans :

(B) It standardized and centralized currency issue
The RBI's role in issuing currency standardized the nation's money, creating a unified and centrally controlled system. This contrasts with earlier periods where various rulers issued their own coinage, leading to regional variations.

49. The two horizontal stripes on the Indian Rupee symbol (₹) represent the national flag and also the "_____" sign.
(A) plus
(B) minus
(C) multiply
(D) equal to

Ans :

(D) equal to
The design of the Indian Rupee symbol (₹) incorporates two parallel horizontal stripes at the top. These stripes are symbolic, representing both the Indian national flag and the mathematical "equal to" sign, suggesting balance.

50. The practice of exchanging old clothes for new utensils, still seen today, is a remnant of which economic system?
(A) A purely monetary economy with its cash
(B) The ancient barter system of direct trade
(C) A centrally planned socialist economic mode
(D) A globalized free market capitalist form

Ans :

(B) The ancient barter system of direct trade
Exchanging old clothes directly for new utensils, without the use of money as an intermediary, is a clear example of the barter system. This shows

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Finding Roman coins in ancient South Indian sites is strong archaeological evidence of significant maritime trade between the region (ruled by Cholas, Pandyas, etc.) and the Roman Empire, where Indian goods were exchanged for Roman currency.

26. How did the control over minting and issuing coins in ancient times typically differ from the system in modern India?
(A) Ancient rulers controlled; modern RBI controls it
(B) Ancient individuals minted; modern rulers mint
(C) Ancient had no control; modern has strict
(D) Both systems allow anyone to issue coins

Ans :

(A) Ancient rulers controlled; modern RBI controls it
In ancient times, the minting and issuance of coins were typically under the direct control of rulers or kingdoms. In modern India, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) is the central authority that controls the issue of currency.

27. Which historical Indian currency unit is correctly paired with its value relative to a rupee?
(A) 1 anna = 1/4 of a rupee coin
(B) 1 paisa = 1/10 of a rupee coin
(C) 1 anna = 1/16 of a rupee coin
(D) 1 quarter anna = 1/2 of a rupee

Ans :

(C) 1 anna = 1/16 of a rupee coin
In the pre-decimal Indian currency system, one anna was equivalent to 1/16 of a rupee. This denomination was commonly used for smaller transactions before India adopted the decimal system for its currency.

28. The modern Indian Rupee symbol (₹) is a mix of the Devanagari "Ra" and the Roman "___" with two horizontal stripes.
(A) P letter
(B) S letter
(C) R letter
(D) I letter

Ans :

(C) R letter
The Indian Rupee symbol (₹), adopted in 2010, cleverly combines the Devanagari letter "₹" (Ra) with the Latin capital letter "R" (without its vertical stem). The two horizontal stripes represent the Indian national flag and the "equal to" sign.

29. Why was paper money introduced as an alternative to carrying large numbers of coins?
(A) Paper was considered more valuable than metal
(B) Coins were too easily lost or misplaced
(C) Carrying and storing many coins was difficult
(D) Paper money could not be counterfeited

Ans :

(C) Carrying and storing many coins was difficult
As trade and transactions grew, using large quantities of metallic coins became cumbersome due to their weight and volume. Paper money was introduced as a more portable and convenient alternative for higher denominations.

NODIA

30. In which country was paper money or currency first used, before its introduction in India in the late 18th century?
(A) Ancient Rome
(B) Ancient Egypt
(C) Ancient Greece
(D) Ancient China

Ans :

(D) Ancient China
Historical evidence indicates that paper money was first developed and used in China during the Tang Dynasty (7th century CE), long before it was adopted in other parts of the world, including India.

31. What are 'denominations' in the context of currency?
(A) The different languages printed on the notes
(B) The security features embedded in currency
(C) The units in which coins, notes classified
(D) The historical figures depicted on money

Ans :

(C) The units in which coins, notes classified
Denominations refer to the specific values or units in which a country's currency (coins and paper notes) is classified, such as ₹1, ₹5, ₹10, ₹100, etc., in the Indian Rupee system.

32. How does 'digital money' primarily differ from tangible forms like coins and paper notes?
(A) Digital money is made of precious metal
(B) Digital money exists only in electronic form
(C) Only digital money can be used online
(D) Only digital money is issued by banks

paper notes, which are accepted as a medium of exchange for goods and services.

57. The special security features on modern currency notes primarily help to prevent what illegal activity?
(A) Tax evasion by the wealthy individuals
(B) Overspending by all the consumers
(C) Counterfeiting or illegal printing of notes
(D) Hoarding of cash by some people

Ans :

(C) Counterfeiting or illegal printing of notes
Central banks like the RBI incorporate various security features (watermarks, security threads, special inks) into currency notes to make them difficult to counterfeit and to help the public and authorities distinguish genuine notes from fakes.

58. The existence of the Junbeel Mela, where barter still takes place, alongside modern monetary systems in India, illustrates what?
(A) The complete failure of money as medium
(B) The persistence of traditional economic forms
(C) A government plan to phase out money
(D) The superiority of barter in all exchange

Ans :

(B) The persistence of traditional economic forms
The continuation of barter practices like those at the Junbeel Mela, even in an economy where money is prevalent, demonstrates the resilience and cultural significance of some traditional economic forms and social customs.

59. What is a key advantage of using coins made from alloys rather than pure precious metals like gold or silver for everyday transactions?
(A) Alloys are much rarer and more valuable
(B) Alloys are generally more durable, resistant
(C) Pure metals are easier to mint quickly
(D) Pure metals cannot have designs on them

Ans :

(B) Alloys are generally more durable, resistant
Alloys (mixtures of metals) are often used for coins because they can be made more durable and resistant to wear and tear compared to softer pure precious metals. This increases the lifespan of the coins in circulation.

60. Which term related to money is correctly defined?
(A) Minting - The act of exchanging goods directly.
(B) Denomination - The historical value of ancient coin.
(C) Currency - The common system of money in use.
(D) Alloy - A type of paper used for notes.

Ans :

(C) Currency - The common system of money in use.
Currency is the system of money (coins and paper notes) that is in common use in a particular country as a medium of exchange. Minting is coin production, denomination is value unit, and alloy is a metal mixture.

61. A government decides to issue new coins to commemorate a significant national anniversary. These coins, though legal tender, are also sought after by collectors. This action of creating special coins falls under the government's control of :
(A) The barter system regulation
(B) The minting and issue of currency
(C) Digital payment interface standards
(D) International trade tariff agreements

Ans :

(B) The minting and issue of currency
The issuance of new coins, including commemorative ones, is a function of the government or its designated central authority (like the RBI in India) which controls the minting and circulation of the nation's currency.

62. Which of these is NOT a primary function of money?
(A) Serving as a medium of general exchange
(B) Acting as a store of value for future
(C) Being a source of intrinsic nutritional value
(D) Providing a unit of account or measure

Ans :

(C) Being a source of intrinsic nutritional value
Money's key functions are as a medium of exchange, a store of value, and a unit of account. While some early commodity monies might have had other uses (e.g., salt), modern money itself does not provide intrinsic nutritional value.

63. According to the timeline, around what year was UPI (Unified Payments Interface) introduced in India, marking a shift towards digital payments?
(A) 1861 CE
(B) 1980 CE
(C) 2016 CE
(D) 6000 BCE

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Karshapanas were ancient Indian coins. Paper money in India is issued by RBI. Digital money is electronic, used via UPI/cards. The Rupee symbol (₹) was adopted in 2010.

85. Match the following terms related to coinage and currency :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Minting	A.	The side of a coin bearing the head or principal design
2.	Alloy	B.	The process of producing coins
3.	Obverse	C.	System of money used in a particular country (e.g., Indian Rupee)
4.	Currency	D.	A metal made by combining two or more metallic elements for strength

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Minting is the process of making coins. An alloy is a mixture of metals used for coins. The obverse is the "head" side of a coin. Currency is the monetary system of a country.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What is the system of exchanging goods and services directly without using money called?

Ans :

Barter system.

87. Name one commodity mentioned that was used like money in early exchange systems.

Ans :

Cowrie shells/salt/tea/tobacco/cloth/cattle/seeds (any one).

88. What are the giant discs of rock used as money on Yap Island called?

Ans :

Rai stones.

89. What is the term for the situation where two people each have something the other wants, enabling direct exchange?

Ans :

Double coincidence of wants.

90. What problem arises in barter when goods cannot be easily divided into smaller units for exchange?

Ans :

Problem of divisibility.

91. What problem refers to the difficulty of carrying bulky goods around for exchange?

Ans :

Problem of portability.

92. What problem occurs when goods exchanged cannot be stored for long periods without spoiling?

Ans :

Problem of durability.

93. What invention emerged to overcome the limitations of the barter system?

Ans :

Money.

94. What is the primary function of money that allows it to be used for buying and selling?

Ans :

Medium of exchange.

95. Which function allows money to be saved and used for purchases later?

Ans :

Store of value.

NODIA

(D) Portability - Lack of universal acceptance by everyone.

Ans :

(D) Portability - Lack of universal acceptance by everyone.
Portability refers to the ease of carrying an item used for exchange. Lack of universal acceptance relates more to whether an item is recognized as a valid medium of exchange by the community, not its physical transportability.

70. Assertion (A) : Paper currency was introduced in India in the late 18th century.
Reason (R) : This was primarily because ancient Indian kingdoms had exhausted all their metal reserves for coinage.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Paper currency was indeed introduced in India in the late 18th century. However, this was more due to the convenience, portability for higher values, and evolving banking systems, rather than a complete exhaustion of metal reserves.

71. Consider these statements about money and its forms :
1. Rai stones of Yap were a form of metallic coin.
2. Tevau was made from red bird feathers for trade.
3. The Indian Rupee symbol (₹) was designed in 1947.

Which of the above statements is/are correct ?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
Rai stones were giant rock discs, not metallic coins. Tevau was indeed made from red feathers. The Indian Rupee symbol (₹) was adopted much later, in 2010.

72. The side of a coin that usually bears the head or principal design is called the _____.
(A) reverse
(B) obverse
(C) edge side
(D) milled side

Ans :

(B) obverse
The obverse is the main side of a coin, often referred to as the "heads" side. It typically carries the principal design, such as a portrait or a key national emblem.

73. What does 'fiat money' refer to?
(A) Money that has intrinsic value from material
(B) Currency declared legal by government decree
(C) A type of commodity used in early barter
(D) Digital currency based on complex algorithm

Ans :

(B) Currency declared legal by government decree
Fiat money is a government-issued currency that is not backed by a physical commodity, such as gold or silver, but by the government's declaration ("fiat") that it is legal tender and public trust.

74. The motifs depicting India's cultural heritage on modern Indian currency notes are typically found on which side of the note?
(A) The obverse (front) side with Mahatma
(B) The reverse (back) side of the note
(C) Along the narrow edges of the paper
(D) Embedded within the security thread line

Ans :

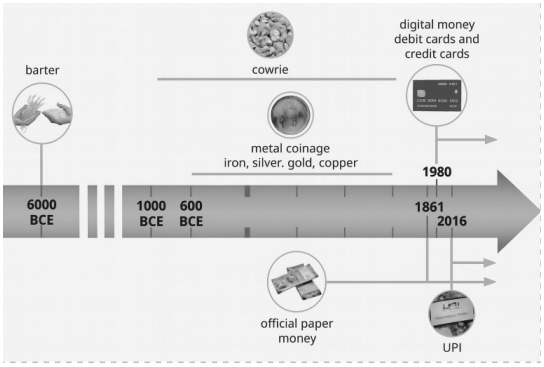
(B) The reverse (back) side of the note
Modern Indian currency notes feature various motifs on their reverse (back) side that showcase India's rich cultural heritage, diverse wildlife, and significant national monuments, varying by denomination of the note.

75. The story of the farmer needing to exchange an ox for multiple small items like shoes, a sweater, and medicines, highlights which primary limitation of barter?
(A) The problem of finding durable goods only
(B) The difficulty of divisibility and common value
(C) The lack of portability of agricultural items
(D) The absence of any desire for exchange

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) 2016 CE
The timeline provided (Fig.) indicates the introduction of UPI in India around 2016 CE. This marked a significant advancement in facilitating easy and instant digital fund transfers using mobile platforms.



64. What is 'digital money'?
(A) Money that is printed on special paper
(B) Coins made from a unique digital alloy
(C) Money that exists only in electronic form
(D) Ancient currency displayed in digital museum

Ans :

(C) Money that exists only in electronic form
Digital money, also known as electronic money or e-money, refers to money that is stored and exchanged only in electronic form, without a physical counterpart like coins or paper notes. Transactions occur via computer networks.

65. How does the problem of 'portability' in barter (e.g., carrying an ox) compare to using modern paper currency for large transactions?
(A) Both are equally difficult to carry around
(B) An ox is more portable than paper notes
(C) Paper currency is significantly more portable
(D) Neither has any issue with its portability

Ans :

(C) Paper currency is significantly more portable
Carrying a large, live animal like an ox for exchange is extremely cumbersome and lacks portability. Modern paper currency, even for large values, is far more lightweight, compact, and easier to transport.

66. The ancient Indian coins often had symbols called _____ punched on them, sometimes representing animals, trees, or hills.
(A) scripts
(B) rupas
(C) edicts
(D) seals

Ans :

(B) rupas
The early punch-marked coins of India were characterized by various symbols, known as 'rupas', that were stamped onto the metal. These symbols could include motifs from nature, religious icons, or royal insignia.

67. The quote by John Maynard Keynes, "The importance of money flows from it being a link between the present and the future," primarily highlights which function of money?
(A) Medium of exchange in all current deals
(B) Unit of account for pricing current goods
(C) Store of value for future transactions
(D) Standard of divisibility for many products

Ans :

(C) Store of value for future transactions
By stating money links the present and future, Keynes emphasizes its role as a store of value. Money allows individuals to save their current earnings (purchasing power) and use it for consumption or investment at a later time.

68. A community uses specially woven, durable cloth pieces of standard sizes as their primary medium for all exchanges, from food to tools. This cloth is an example of what type of early money system being used?
(A) Metallic coinage system
(B) Digital currency system
(C) Commodity money system
(D) Fiat paper money system

Ans :

(C) Commodity money system
When a specific, useful item with intrinsic value (like cloth, salt, or cattle) becomes widely accepted as a medium of exchange, it functions as commodity money. The woven cloth pieces here serve this purpose.

69. Which problem of the barter system is INCORRECTLY matched with its description?
(A) Double Coincidence of Wants - Difficulty finding a mutual trade partner.
(B) Divisibility - Inability to split large goods for small trades.
(C) Durability - Goods spoiling or degrading over short time.

NODIA

3.	Commodities (in barter)	C.	A common tool accepted for payments in exchange for goods/ services
4.	Double Coincidence of Wants	D.	Situation where two people each have something the other wants for exchange

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(b) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(c) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Barter system is direct exchange without money. Money is an accepted medium of exchange. Commodities like shells or cattle were used in barter. Double coincidence of wants is when two parties have what the other desires.

82. Match the problems associated with the barter system with their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Lack of Common Measure of Value	A.	Difficulty in carrying bulky goods for exchange
2.	Problem of Divisibility	B.	Difficulty in comparing the worth of different goods directly
3.	Problem of Portability	C.	Goods like grains cannot be stored for long periods without spoilage
4.	Problem of Durability	D.	Inability to break down large items for smaller exchanges

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Lack of common measure makes it hard to value goods. Divisibility is an issue when items can't be split. Portability concerns ease of carrying goods. Durability relates to how long goods can be stored.

83. Match the basic functions of money with their explanations :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Medium of Exchange	A.	Allows value to be held over time for future purchases
2.	Store of Value	B.	Accepted method of payment for goods and services
3.	Common Denomination (Unit of Account)	C.	Enables comparison of the value of different goods and services
4.	Standard of Deferred Payment	D.	Allows for making payments at a future date for goods received

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Money as a medium of exchange facilitates transactions. As a store of value, it holds purchasing power. As a common denomination, it measures value. As a standard of deferred payment, it facilitates credit.

84. Match the forms of money with their descriptions or examples from Indian history/present :

NODIA

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Karshapanas/ Panas	A.	Modern paper currency issued by the Reserve Bank of India (RBI)
2.	Paper Money (India)	B.	Early Indian coins, often punch-marked, made of silver/copper alloys
3.	Digital Money	C.	₹ symbol adopted in 2010, designed by Udaya Kumar
4.	Rupee Symbol (₹)	D.	Electronic form of money; UPI, debit/ credit cards, QR codes

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the transition from barter to money. Why was money a necessary invention for economic development?

Ans :

Barter faced critical limitations : requiring double coincidence of wants, lacking a common value measure, indivisibility, and portability/durability issues. These restricted trade volume and complexity. Money emerged as a solution, acting as a universally accepted medium, measure, store, and standard, overcoming barter's hurdles and enabling more complex economic activities and growth.

137. Compare and contrast commodity money (like shells or salt) and metallic coinage as forms of early money. What were the advantages of coinage?

Ans :

Both served as mediums of exchange. Commodity money's value often derived from utility or rarity but could lack uniformity, divisibility, portability, or durability. Metallic coinage offered better durability, portability (in manageable amounts), potential for standardization (by rulers), divisibility (different denominations), and often had intrinsic value (precious metals), making it more efficient for wider trade.

138. "Money acts as a link between the present and the future." Analyse this quote by J.M. Keynes using the functions of money.

Ans :

Money links present and future primarily through its functions as a 'store of value' (allowing present earnings to be saved for future spending) and as a 'standard of deferred payment' (allowing agreements like loans made today to be settled with money in the future), connecting economic decisions across time.

139. Analyse how the features of ancient Indian coins (metals used, symbols, rulers' marks) can serve as valuable sources for historians.

Ans :

Metals indicate technological level and economic status. Symbols (religious, natural, royal) reveal cultural beliefs, ruling dynasties, and regional identities. Rulers' marks/names establish chronologies and political authority. Find spots of coins (like Roman coins in India) reveal trade networks and economic interaction patterns between regions.

140. Evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of paper currency compared to metallic coins.

Ans :

Advantages of paper : More portable/lighter for large values, easier to produce varied denominations. Disadvantages : Less durable than metal, lacks intrinsic value (value based on trust/government backing), potentially easier to counterfeit without security features. Coins are better for small transactions and durability.

141. Analyse the role of a central authority like the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) in managing a modern currency system.

Ans :

The RBI's role is crucial for stability and trust. It controls the sole right to issue currency, regulates its supply to manage inflation/economy, ensures uniformity and quality of notes/coins, implements security features to prevent counterfeiting, and maintains public confidence in the currency's value.

142. Compare the characteristics and convenience of using cash (coins/paper) versus digital payment methods (UPI, QR codes, cards) in today's economy.

Ans :

Cash offers tangibility, universal acceptance (even without technology), and anonymity. Digital methods offer convenience (no need to carry cash), speed, easy record-keeping, suitability for online/remote payments, but require technology (phones, internet, bank accounts) and raise privacy/security concerns for some.

143. "The evolution of money reflects broader technological and societal development." Analyse this statement.

Ans :

Early barter suited simple societies. Coinage required metallurgy and state authority. Paper money needed printing technology and robust banking/government backing. Digital money relies heavily on computers, internet infrastructure,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

96. Which function of money provides a common way to measure the value of different goods and services?

Ans :

Unit of account (or common standard measure of value).

97. Which function of money allows payments to be made at a future date (like for loans)?

Ans :

Standard of deferred payment.

98. What were among the earliest forms of metallic money, often issued by rulers?

Ans :

Coins.

99. What is the process of producing coins called?

Ans :

Minting.

100. What is a metal made by combining two or more metallic elements called, often used for coins?

Ans :

Alloy.

101. What were ancient Indian coins often called?

Ans :

Karshapanas or panas.

102. What does the Tamil/Telugu/Malayalam word 'panam' or Kannada word 'hana' mean?

Ans :

Money.

103. What is the side of a coin bearing the main design or head called?

Ans :

Obverse.

104. Which country first used paper money?

Ans :

China.

105. What term refers to the system of money (coins and notes) used in a particular country?

Ans :

Currency.

106. What authority controls the issue of currency in India today?

Ans :

Reserve Bank of India (RBI).

107. What is money in electronic form called?

Ans :

Digital money.

108. What does QR code stand for?

Ans :

Quick-Response code.

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

NODIA

109. Name one modern method (besides cash) used for transactions.

Ans :

Debit cards/credit cards/net banking/UPI (Unified Payments Interface)/QR code payments (any one).

110. Which annual fair in Assam still practices barter exchange?

Ans :

Junbeel Mela.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. Explain the concept of the barter system with a simple example.

Ans :

Barter is exchanging goods/services directly without money. For example, if you have an extra eraser and need a pencil, and your friend has an extra pencil but needs an eraser, you swap items directly.

112. What is meant by the 'double coincidence of wants'? Why is it a problem in barter?

Ans :

It means finding someone who not only wants what you have but also has exactly what you want. This is difficult and limits trade opportunities in a barter system.

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

Ans :

(B) The difficulty of divisibility and common value
Exchanging a large, indivisible item like an ox for multiple smaller items of varying worth is problematic in barter due to the difficulty of dividing the ox and the lack of a common standard to measure and equate their values.

76. How does the information contained in a modern QR code for payment differ from the symbols on ancient punch-marked coins?
(A) QR codes show rulers; coins show bank data
(B) QR codes are bank data; coins show rulers
(C) Both contain identical types of data
(D) QR codes are artistic; coins are functional

Ans :

(B) QR codes are bank data; coins show rulers
Ancient punch-marked coins had symbols representing rulers, deities, or nature. Modern QR codes for payment contain digital information linking to the receiver's bank account details for electronic fund transfers by many.

77. Which historical form of money is correctly paired with its geographical origin or primary area of use?
(A) Rai Stones - Ancient Indus Valley region
(B) Tevau Feathers - Solomon Islands culture
(C) Tajadero Copper - Early Chinese dynasties
(D) Cowrie Shells - Exclusively in Himalayan regions

Ans :

(B) Tevau Feathers - Solomon Islands culture
Tevau, coils made of red bird feathers, were a traditional form of currency used in the Santa Cruz Islands, part of the Solomon Islands in the Pacific. Rai stones were from Yap, Tajadero from Mesoamerica.

78. A community faces a situation where they have surplus grain but need iron tools. The toolmakers have surplus tools but need cloth. The weavers have surplus cloth but need grain. Money would solve this by acting as a :
(A) Store of perishable agricultural surplus goods
(B) Medium of exchange, breaking barter chain
(C) Symbol of the community's artistic skill
(D) Way to divide tools into smaller parts

Ans :

(B) Medium of exchange, breaking barter chain
Money acts as a common medium of exchange. The grain seller can sell grain for money, then use that money to buy cloth. The weaver can sell cloth for money, then buy tools. This breaks the complex chain of direct barter.

79. Which of these is NOT a characteristic that makes an item suitable as 'good' money?
(A) Durability (lasting over a long time)
(B) Portability (easy to carry for users)
(C) Perishability (spoiling or degrading fast)
(D) Divisibility (splittable into smaller units)

Ans :

(C) Perishability (spoiling or degrading fast)
For an item to function effectively as money, it should ideally be durable, portable, divisible, and generally acceptable. Perishability (spoiling quickly) is a disadvantage, as it cannot reliably store value for users.

80. Who designed the modern Indian Rupee symbol (₹) that was adopted by the Government of India in 2010?
(A) A committee from Reserve Bank of India
(B) Udaya Kumar from IIT Bombay (Mumbai)
(C) A famous international graphic designer
(D) The Prime Minister of India at time

Ans :

(B) Udaya Kumar from IIT Bombay (Mumbai)
The distinctive symbol for the Indian Rupee (₹) was designed by Udaya Kumar Dharmalingam, who was a post-graduate student at the Industrial Design Centre, IIT Bombay. His design was selected through a public competition.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following terms related to exchange systems with their definitions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Barter System	A.	Products or goods that can be traded, bought, or sold
2.	Money	B.	Exchanging goods/ services directly without using money

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

125. What are two key differences between paper money and digital money?

Ans :

Paper money is tangible (physical notes), while digital money is intangible (electronic records). Transactions with paper money involve physical exchange, while digital money involves electronic transfers between accounts.

126. How does a QR code facilitate digital payment?

Ans :

A QR code contains encoded information about the receiver's bank account. Scanning it with a smartphone app allows the payer to quickly initiate a direct digital money transfer to that account.

127. Describe the barter system practiced at the Junbeel Mela.

Ans :

Tribal communities from hills (Tiwa, Karbi, Khasi, Jaintia) exchange their forest/handmade products (roots, herbs, artifacts) with people from the plains, who offer items like rice cakes and other foods, without using money.

128. Give an example of barter still practiced in everyday life today.

Ans :

Exchanging old clothes for new utensils with vendors who visit homes is a common example of barter persisting alongside the monetary system. Book exchanges among friends is another.

129. What does the word 'karshapana' or 'pana' refer to in ancient India?

Ans :

These words referred to ancient Indian coins, which were early forms of metallic money used for transactions, often made of silver or copper alloys.

130. Why are alloys often used for making coins instead of pure metals?

Ans :

Alloys (mixtures of metals) are often harder and more durable than pure metals like pure silver or copper, making the coins last longer in circulation and resist wear and tear better.

131. What is the significance of the Indian Rupee symbol (₹)?

Ans :

Adopted in 2010, the symbol blends the Devanagari 'Ra' and Roman 'R'. The parallel lines represent the national flag and the 'equals' sign, giving the currency a unique visual identity.

132. List the four main problems associated with the barter system discussed.

Ans :

The main problems are : double coincidence of wants, lack of a common measure of value, indivisibility of certain goods, and issues with portability and durability.

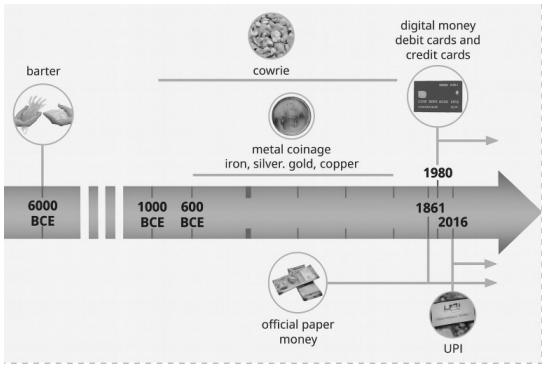
133. List the four main functions of money discussed.

Ans :

The main functions are : medium of exchange, store of value, unit of account (measure of value), and standard of deferred payment.

134. Briefly trace the evolution of money forms according to the timeline.

Ans :



Money evolved from barter using commodities, to cowrie shells, then metal coinage (various metals), followed by official paper money, and finally to modern digital forms (cards, UPI).

135. How does using money make the farmer's situation (exchanging an ox for multiple items) easier?

Ans :

The farmer can sell the ox for money (a common value). He can easily use parts of that money to buy shoes, a sweater, and medicines separately, without needing double coincidence or worrying about divisibility/portability/durability.

NODIA

113. Explain the 'lack of a common standard measure of value' problem in barter.

Ans :

In barter, it's hard to agree on how much of one good is worth another (e.g., how many shoes equal one ox?). Without a common standard, determining fair exchange ratios is difficult.

114. Why is divisibility a challenge in barter? Use the ox example.

Ans :

Many goods, like a live ox, cannot be easily divided into smaller parts to exchange for items of lesser value (like a sweater), making small transactions difficult or impossible.

115. How does money solve the problem of 'store of value' better than perishable goods like wheat?

Ans :

Money (coins, notes) is generally durable and doesn't spoil easily. Unlike wheat that rots, money can be saved over long periods and retains its value for future use.

116. Describe how money functions as a 'medium of exchange'.

Ans :

Money acts as an intermediary accepted by everyone. Instead of direct barter, you sell what you have for money, then use that money to buy what you need from someone else.

117. Explain money's function as a 'unit of account'.

Ans :

Money provides a common benchmark (like rupees or dollars) to express the price or value of all goods and services, making it easy to compare their worth.

118. How does money serve as a 'standard of deferred payment'?

Ans :

Money allows debts and future payments to be specified and settled easily. Contracts can state payment amounts in money terms, facilitating loans and credit transactions over time.

119. What role did rulers play in the early history of coinage?

Ans :

Rulers typically controlled the minting and issuing of coins within their kingdoms. The coins often bore symbols or images representing the ruler or kingdom, acting as official currency.

120. How did coinage facilitate trade across different regions or kingdoms?

Ans :

Coins, especially those from powerful rulers or made of precious metals, became accepted across wider areas, providing a common medium of exchange that simplified trade between different kingdoms.

121. What kind of motifs or symbols were commonly found on ancient Indian coins?

Ans :

Coins featured various symbols, including nature motifs (animals, trees, hills), images of rulers (kings/queens), or deities from different religious traditions.

122. What can the discovery of Roman coins in South India tell historians?

Ans :

Finding Roman coins indicates significant trade relations existed between South India (like the Chola/Pandya regions) and the Roman Empire, likely involving Indian exports like spices or pearls paid for with Roman currency.

123. Why was paper money introduced? What problem of coinage did it primarily solve?

Ans :

Paper money was introduced mainly to solve the problem of portability and storage associated with large quantities of heavy metal coins needed for bigger transactions. Paper is lighter and easier to handle.

124. What is the role of the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) regarding currency today?

Ans :

The RBI is India's central banking authority and has the sole legal right to issue and control the supply of paper currency (rupee notes) in the country.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

mobile technology, and sophisticated security systems, mirroring overall technological progress and societal complexity.

144. Analyse the persistence of barter systems like the Junbeel Mela or clothes-for-utensils exchange in a predominantly monetary economy. What functions might they serve?

Ans :

These persist perhaps due to cultural tradition (Junbeel Mela maintaining tribal relations), specific economic niches (recycling old clothes), lack of access to cash in some communities, or social aspects (book swaps fostering community). They fulfill specific needs or maintain cultural practices outside the formal monetary system.

145. Evaluate the statement : "The four functions of money (medium of exchange, unit of account, store of value, standard of deferred payment) are interconnected."

Ans :

The functions are highly interconnected. To be a good medium of exchange, money must also be accepted as a unit of account (to know the price) and hold its value reasonably well (store of value). Its ability to store value and be a unit of account makes it suitable as a standard for future (deferred) payments.

146. Consider the farmer's barter problems (Fig.). Analyse how each specific problem (double coincidence, measure of value, divisibility, portability, durability) would be solved by using money.

Ans :

Money solves : 1) Double coincidence : Sell ox for money, buy items separately. 2) Measure of value : Ox and items have prices in money. 3) Divisibility: Money comes in various denominations. 4) Portability : Money is easier to carry than an ox. 5) Durability : Money doesn't spoil like wheat, can be stored.

147. Analyse the information provided by the Arthashastra quote regarding the value of a pana and societal values (Question 6, p.244).

Ans :

If 60 panas/year equals approx. 3kg grain/day, one pana seems quite valuable relative to basic subsistence. A 100 pana fine for failing to help a neighbour, being more than an annual subsistence wage, suggests society placed an extremely high value on mutual help and community responsibility, heavily penalizing its absence.

NODIA

148. How might the introduction of standardized coinage have impacted the power and administration of ancient rulers?

Ans :

Standardized coinage enhanced rulers' power. It allowed easier and more efficient tax collection, facilitated payment to soldiers and officials strengthening administration and army loyalty, projected royal authority through symbols/ images, and helped regulate/promote trade, boosting the kingdom's economy and the ruler's resources.

149. Analyse the security features mentioned or implied for paper currency (Question 8, p.245) and digital payments. Why are they necessary?

Ans :

Security features (watermarks, threads, special inks for paper; encryption, passwords, OTPs for digital) are necessary to prevent counterfeiting (paper) and unauthorized access or fraud (digital). They maintain trust in the currency/payment system, which is essential for its acceptance and smooth functioning in the economy.

150. Considering the trend towards digital money, evaluate potential future challenges or benefits related to financial inclusion and privacy.

Ans :

Benefits : Potential for greater financial inclusion for those with mobile access, convenience, transparency. Challenges : Digital divide excluding those without technology/literacy, potential for

increased surveillance and loss of financial privacy, cybersecurity risks (hacking, data breaches), and reliance on complex technological infrastructure.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. Two villagers in ancient India want to trade. Farmer A has surplus rice but needs pottery. Potter B has extra pots but needs cloth. Weaver C has spare cloth but needs rice. Explain how the introduction of money (e.g., karshapanas) would simplify their exchange process compared to barter.

(i) What specific problem of barter do these three villagers face?

(ii) Describe the series of barter exchanges needed without money.

(iii) Explain how using karshapanas would make the exchange efficient.

Ans :

(i) They face the lack of a 'double coincidence of wants'. No two villagers directly want what the other offers (A wants B's pots, B wants C's cloth, C wants A's rice).

(ii) Farmer A might have to trade rice with Weaver C for cloth (even if A doesn't need cloth), then trade that cloth with Potter B for the needed pots. Multiple steps are required.

(iii) Farmer A sells rice for karshapanas, then uses the money to buy pots from B. Potter B uses the money received to buy cloth from C. Weaver C uses money received to buy rice from A. Each transaction is direct and efficient.

152. A historian finds a hoard of ancient coins. Some are square silver punch-marked coins with simple symbols. Others are round gold coins from the Gupta era depicting King Samudragupta playing a veena. What can the historian infer about the societies that produced these different coins?

(i) What might the simple symbols on punch-marked coins represent?

(ii) What does the depiction of Samudragupta playing the veena on a gold coin suggest about Gupta rule and values?

(iii) Compare the level of economic and political development likely reflected by these two types of coins.

Ans :

(i) The simple symbols might represent local authorities (mahajanapadas), guilds, specific rulers, or religious/natural motifs common in that early period, indicating a less centralized or perhaps earlier minting system.

(ii) It suggests Gupta rulers valued and patronized arts and culture (music). Using gold indicates economic prosperity. The detailed portraiture reflects advanced minting technology and a desire to project the ruler's multifaceted persona (warrior and artist).

(iii) The punch-marked coins suggest an earlier stage with possibly less centralized control and simpler technology. The Gupta gold coins reflect a more developed, prosperous empire with advanced metallurgy, sophisticated artistry, strong central authority projecting the ruler's image, and likely wider trade networks necessitating high-value currency.

153. Imagine you live in a society that only uses large, heavy stone discs (like Rai stones) as money for significant transactions (buying land, major compensations). You need to buy daily groceries like vegetables and milk. Evaluate the difficulties you would face.

(i) Which problem related to the functions of money is most obvious here for daily purchases?

(ii) Would these stone discs function well as a 'medium of exchange' for small, everyday items? Why or why not?

(iii) What characteristic makes these stones suitable perhaps only as a 'store of value' or for specific large transactions within that society?

Ans :

(i) The problem of divisibility is most obvious – you cannot break off a small piece of a giant stone disc to pay for vegetables. Portability is also a major issue.

(ii) No, they would function very poorly as a medium of exchange for small items due to their lack of divisibility and extreme lack of portability.

(iii) Their durability (they last a long time) and possibly their recognized cultural value within that specific Yapese society made them suitable as a store of wealth and for settling major, infrequent social obligations or large transactions, despite failing as daily currency.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

154. Krishnappa, the fruit seller using a QR code for payments, finds it very convenient as he doesn't need to handle change. However, an elderly customer who always pays with cash feels uncomfortable using the digital method and worries about security.

(i) Identify one advantage of digital payment (QR code) for Krishnappa.

(ii) Identify one concern the elderly customer might have about digital payments.

(iii) Evaluate how this scenario illustrates the ongoing evolution of money and potential challenges in adoption.

Ans :

(i) Convenience is a key advantage – no need to handle physical cash, calculate or carry exact change, and payments go directly to his bank account.

(ii) Concerns could include lack of familiarity with the technology, worries about security (data breach, fraud), lack of trust in digital systems, or simply preferring the tangibility of cash.

(iii) It shows the shift towards digital money for efficiency and convenience, driven by technology. However, it also highlights challenges like the digital divide (comfort/access varies by age/tech literacy) and persistent concerns about security and trust that can slow universal adoption of new forms of money.

155. A government decides to introduce a new high-denomination paper currency note. The RBI is tasked with designing it, incorporating advanced security features to prevent counterfeiting, and choosing motifs that reflect national heritage.

(i) Why is it the RBI's responsibility, and not private banks', to issue currency?

(ii) Suggest one possible security feature the RBI might incorporate into the new note.

(iii) Evaluate the purpose of including national heritage motifs on currency notes.

Ans :

(i) The RBI, as the central authority, ensures uniformity, maintains control over money supply (crucial for economic management), and guarantees the currency's legal tender status and public trust, which private entities couldn't ensure.

(ii) Possible features include watermarks, security threads, micro-printing, latent images, optically variable ink (colour-shifting), intaglio printing (raised feel), or see-through registration devices.

(iii) Including heritage motifs (like monuments, cultural scenes) serves to reinforce national identity and pride, educate citizens about their history and culture, and make the currency visually representative of the nation, beyond its purely economic function.

www.nodia.in

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

3. In the example of buying and selling of guavas, imagine that the seller is getting a good price, and is able to make a profit... What is the farmer likely to do in this kind of a situation? Do you think he will start thinking about the demand for guavas in the next season? What is likely to be his response?

Ans :

If the farmer sees high demand and good prices for guavas (signaled through the seller), they are likely to try and grow more guavas in the next season to increase their own earnings. Yes, they will likely anticipate continued demand based on the current market signals.

4. Match the following types of markets with their characteristics :

	Markets	**Criteria**
1	Physical market	Goods and services flow outside the nation's boundaries
2	Online market	Deals in bulk quantities
3	Domestic market	Serves the final consumers with goods and services
4	International market	Requires physical presence of buyers and seller
5	Wholesale market	Buyers and sellers meet virtually and can transact at any time
6	Retail market	Lies within the boundaries of a nation

Ans :

1. Physical market --- Requires physical presence of buyers and seller
2. Online market --- Buyers and sellers meet virtually and can transact at any time
3. Domestic market --- Lies within the boundaries of a nation
4. International market --- Goods and services flow outside the nation's boundaries
5. Wholesale market --- Deals in bulk quantities
6. Retail market --- Serves the final consumers with goods and services

5. Prices are generally determined by the interaction between demand from buyers and supply by sellers. Can you think of products where prices are high despite lesser number of buyers demanding the product? What could be the reasons for that?

Ans :

Yes, examples include luxury goods (designer handbags, high-end cars), rare collectibles (art, antiques), or highly specialized equipment. Reasons include high production costs, scarcity/rarity, brand value/status symbol, or very specific niche demand where buyers are willing to pay a premium.

6. Look at the real life situation that a retail seller of vegetables encountered...
A family came to shop for vegetables. The price of beans that the seller on the cart was offering was ₹30/kg. The lady started to bargain with the seller to bring the price down to ₹25/kg. The seller protested and refused to sell at that price saying he would make a loss at that price. The lady walks away. The family goes to a super bazaar nearby. They buy vegetables in the super bazaar where they pay ₹40/kg for the beans that is neatly packed in a plastic bag.
What are the reasons that the family does this? Are there factors that affect buying and selling which are not directly connected to price?

Ans :

The family might prefer the super bazaar for perceived quality, better hygiene, convenience (multiple items in one place), fixed prices (no bargaining needed), or better packaging, even if the price is higher. Yes, factors beyond price include convenience, quality perception, shopping environment, brand trust, and packaging.

7. There are some districts in India that are famous for growing tomatoes. However, during some seasons, the situation is not good for farmers. With a large quantity of harvest, there are reports of farmers throwing away their produce and all their hard work going to waste. Why do you think farmers do this? What role can wholesalers play in such situations?
What are the possible ways of ensuring that the tomatoes
are not wasted, and the farmers are also not at a loss?

Ans :

Farmers might discard produce if the market price falls below their harvesting/transport costs due to oversupply (too many tomatoes available). Wholesalers could help by finding buyers in other regions or investing in storage (like cold storage). Solutions include better storage facilities (cold

NODIA

for energy-efficient refrigerators leads to their production). Beyond economics, markets foster social interactions and relationships, sometimes spanning generations (e.g., trusted family tailors or grocers). "Mother's Market" (Ima Keithal) in Imphal, Manipur, run entirely by women, is a prime example of a market providing income and acting as a cultural melting pot. Many markets also uphold non-economic traditions, like sellers giving small amounts of turmeric and kumkum as a mark of auspiciousness in South India.

5. GOVERNMENT'S ROLE IN THE MARKET

While markets primarily function through supply and demand, government intervention is crucial in certain situations :

5.1 Controlling Prices

The government may set maximum prices for essential goods (like lifesaving drugs) or minimum support prices for agricultural products (like wheat, paddy) to protect buyers and ensure farmers don't incur losses. It also sets minimum wages.

5.2 Ensuring Quality and Safety Standards

The government mandates and monitors quality and safety standards for products (e.g., approval processes and testing for medicines) and services to protect consumer welfare.

5.3 Mitigating External Effects

Governments regulate market activities that might have negative externalities, such as pollution from factories producing certain goods (e.g., single-use plastics). They also monitor weights and measures of packaged products. This protective role has historical precedents, as seen in Kautilya's Arthashastra.

5.4 Providing Public Goods

Some goods and services (e.g., public parks, roads, policing) are not typically provided by the private sector for profit, so the government steps in to supply them.

6. HOW CAN CONSUMERS ASSESS THE QUALITY OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES?

Consumers need to assess product quality. This can be done through :

1. Certification Marks : Government agencies provide certifications that indicate adherence to minimum quality standards.
2. FSSAI (Food Safety & Standards Authority of India) : For food products.
3. ISI (Indian Standards Institution) Mark (from BIS - Bureau of Indian Standards) : For electrical appliances, construction materials, etc., ensuring quality and safety.
4. AGMARK : For agricultural products.
5. BEE STAR Rating (Bureau of Energy Efficiency) : On electronics, indicating energy efficiency (more stars mean less energy use).
6. Reputation and Word of Mouth : Suggestions from friends and relatives influence buying decisions.
7. Online Reviews : Feedback from other consumers helps in decision-making for online purchases.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. What are the main features of a market? Recall a recent visit to a market to purchase a product. What are the different features of a market that you observed during this visit?

Ans :

Main features : Buyers, sellers, goods/services for exchange, and an agreed-upon price. (Observation from visit depends on personal experience). Example : "At the vegetable market, I (buyer) saw vendors (sellers) with produce (goods). I asked the price of tomatoes, bargained slightly, agreed on a price, and bought 1 kg."

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. www.momworksheet.com
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

2. Remember the epigraph from a famous economist at the beginning of the chapter? Discuss its relevance in the context of the chapter you have read.

Ans :

The epigraph by Adam Smith states that prosperity comes from markets where people exchange goods/services they can't create themselves. This is relevant as the chapter explains how markets (physical/online, wholesale/retail) facilitate this exchange, fulfilling needs/wants and driving economic activity.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 12

UNDERSTANDING MARKETS

SUMMARY

1. MARKET

A market is a place (physical or online) where buyers and sellers interact to exchange goods and services. It's a mechanism through which goods produced from primary, secondary, and tertiary economic activities reach consumers, fulfilling their needs and wants. Markets also serve as connectors of people, traditions, and ideas. Historically, vibrant markets like the Hampi Bazaar in the Vijayanagara Empire showcased a wide variety of traded goods, from grains and animals to precious stones and textiles, as described by travelers like Domingos Paes and Fernao Nuniz.

2. COMPONENTS OF A MARKET

1. Buyers and Sellers : Essential participants in any market transaction.
2. Price : The amount at which a buyer is willing to buy and a seller is willing to sell. Prices are often determined through negotiation and bargaining. In markets with many buyers and sellers, the interaction of supply (quantity offered by sellers) and demand (quantity required by buyers) helps determine a "just right" price.

3. VARIOUS FORMS OF MARKET

3.1 Physical and Online Markets

1. Physical markets involve face-to-face interactions and include weekly markets (haats), local shops, street vendors, and large shopping malls.
2. Online markets allow transactions without physical meeting, using shopping apps or websites for a vast range of goods (books, clothes, electronics, groceries) and services (online classes), often with doorstep delivery.

3.2 Domestic and International Markets

1. Domestic markets operate within a country's geographical boundaries.
2. International markets involve trade across national borders, with exports (selling to other countries) and imports (buying from other countries). India, for example, exports software and imports crude petroleum and vegetable oils.

3.3 Wholesale and Retail Markets

This describes the chain of how goods reach consumers.

1. Wholesalers buy goods in large quantities directly from producers/manufacturers (e.g., grains from farms) and store them in warehouses (godowns), sometimes with specialized facilities like cold storage for perishables. They supply these to retailers from central markets (mandis).
2. Retailers (local shops, stores) buy from wholesalers and sell goods in smaller quantities to final consumers for consumption, not resale. They also provide services like salons or movie theaters.
3. Distributors can bridge the gap between wholesalers and retailers, especially over large distances.
4. In online markets, manufacturers often send bulk products to an aggregator's (the online platform's) warehouse, from which items are packed and delivered to online buyers. The Surat textile market serves as an example of a complex market hub involving multiple stages from raw material to finished product distribution nationally and internationally.

4. THE ROLE OF MARKETS IN PEOPLE'S LIVES

Markets are crucial for economic life, facilitating transactions and access to goods and services individuals cannot produce themselves. They signal consumer preferences to producers, potentially benefiting society (e.g., demand

NODIA

storage), food processing units to convert excess tomatoes into products like puree or ketchup, improved market information, and efficient transport networks.

8. Have you heard about or visited a school carnival/ fair organized by your school or any other school? Discuss with your friends and teachers about the kind of activities organized by students there. How do they conduct selling and negotiation with the buyers?

Ans :

Students typically set up stalls for games, food, or handmade crafts. Selling involv1\es setting prices, attracting customers, and sometimes engaging in friendly negotiation, especially for crafts or games with prizes.

9. Choose any 5 products and check out the label with the certification signs discussed in the chapter. Did you find products that did not have a logo? Why do you think this is so?

Ans :

Students might find logos like FSSAI on food, ISI on appliances, AGMARK on spices, or BEE stars on electronics. Products without logos might be locally made unbranded items, handicrafts, or items where certification isn't mandatory or common (e.g., loose vegetables, some clothing).

10. You and your classmates have manufactured a soap bar. Design a label for its packaging. What in your opinion should be mentioned on the label for the consumer to know the product better?

Ans :

A label should include : Brand Name, Product Name (e.g., "Handmade Neem Soap"), Key Ingredients, Net Weight, Manufacturer's Name & Address, Manufacturing Date, Expiry Date/ Best Before, MRP (Maximum Retail Price), and potentially benefits (e.g., "Moisturizing," "Antibacterial") or certifications (if applicable).

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is a 'market' in its most basic sense?
(A) A place only for social gatherings
(B) A place where people buy and sell
(C) A government office for collecting many taxes
(D) A historical site with ancient old ruins

Ans :

(B) A place where people buy and sell
A market, in its fundamental sense, is any place, whether physical or online, where buyers and sellers come together to exchange goods and services, typically involving a transaction with an agreed-upon price.

2. The Hampi Bazaar, a prosperous market in the 16th century, was part of which South Indian empire?
(A) The Chola Empire
(B) The Pallava Empire
(C) The Vijayanagara Empire
(D) The Chalukya Empire

Ans :

(C) The Vijayanagara Empire
The Hampi Bazaar was a renowned and flourishing marketplace located within the Vijayanagara Empire in Karnataka. It served as a major center for trade during the 16th century and before.

3. According to the Portuguese traveller Domingos Paes, what made Hampi "the best-provided city in the world"?
(A) Its advanced military and strong fortifications
(B) The wide variety of products traded
(C) Its beautiful temples and religious sites
(D) The pleasant climate throughout the whole year

Ans :

(B) The wide variety of products traded
Domingos Paes described Hampi as exceptionally well-provided due to the immense variety and abundance of goods traded in its markets. This included grains, silk, animals, precious stones, and many other commodities.

4. What is 'price' in the context of a market transaction?
(A) The physical quality of the goods sold
(B) The location of the market or shop
(C) The amount at which buyer and seller agree
(D) The time of day the sale occurs

Ans :

(C) The amount at which buyer and seller agree
Price is the mutually agreed-upon amount of money that a buyer is willing to pay and a seller is willing to accept in exchange for a particular good or service in a market.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

18. The Ima Keithal market in Imphal, Manipur, is unique because about 3000 _____ own and run all the shops .
(A) men
(B) children
(C) women
(D) elders

Ans :

(C) women
Ima Keithal, meaning "Mother's Market," in Imphal is a remarkable market where all the shops and stalls are owned and operated exclusively by women, making it a unique socio-economic institution.

19. What are 'inputs for production' in an economic context?
(A) The final products sold to all consumers
(B) The profits earned by a manufacturing firm
(C) Materials or resources used in making goods
(D) The advertisements used to promote product

Ans :

(C) Materials or resources used in making goods
Inputs for production are the raw materials, components, labor, capital, and other resources that are used in the process of creating goods or providing services in an economic system.

20. The government setting a 'minimum price' for agricultural products like wheat ensures what for the farmers?
(A) They can sell unlimited quantities at high price
(B) They do not incur losses due to low price
(C) They are exempt from paying any income tax
(D) They receive free inputs for next crop

Ans :

(B) They do not incur losses due to low price
By setting a minimum support price (MSP) for certain agricultural products, the government aims to protect farmers from sharp falls in market prices and ensure they receive a baseline remuneration, preventing significant losses.

21. Why does the government set an 'upper limit' on the prices of essential goods like lifesaving drugs?
(A) To encourage pharmaceutical companies to make more
(B) To ensure these goods are affordable, accessible
(C) To promote the export of these drugs
(D) To increase tax revenue from their sale

Ans :

(B) To ensure these goods are affordable, accessible
The government imposes price ceilings (upper limits) on essential items like lifesaving drugs to prevent them from becoming exorbitantly expensive. This ensures that these critical goods remain affordable and accessible to the general public.

22. During a particular season, the supply of onions in the market drastically reduces due to crop failure. According to basic market principles, what is the most likely immediate impact on the price of onions?
(A) The price of onions will decrease significantly.
(B) The price of onions will remain unchanged.
(C) The price of onions will likely increase.
(D) The government will ban the sale of onions.

Ans :

(C) The price of onions will likely increase.
When the supply of a commodity like onions decreases while demand remains relatively stable or increases, the price tends to rise. This is a fundamental principle of supply and demand in a market economy.

NODIA

23. Which of these is NOT a primary role of the government in relation to markets ?
(A) Controlling prices to protect buyers or sellers
(B) Ensuring quality and safety standards for goods
(C) Directly owning and operating all retail shops
(D) Mitigating negative external effects of markets

Ans :

(C) Directly owning and operating all retail shops
While governments regulate markets, set standards, and provide public goods, directly owning and operating all retail shops is not a typical primary role in most market economies discussed. They may run some public distribution outlets.

24. The FSSAI logo on food packets in India indicates what?
(A) The product is manufactured by a foreign brand
(B) The food has been tested and is safe
(C) The product is organically grown and very pure
(D) The food item is eligible for export only

12. What role does an 'aggregator' (like a shopping app or website) play in online markets?
(A) They manufacture all the products they sell
(B) They provide loans to online buyers only
(C) They organize offers from multiple sellers
(D) They physically inspect every item before sale

Ans :

(C) They organize offers from multiple sellers
An aggregator in an online market is a platform (website or app) that brings together and organizes product or service offers from various sellers, presenting them to consumers in one convenient place for purchase.

13. Surat, Gujarat, is famously known as a major hub for which industry, besides being Asia's oldest textile market?
(A) Automobile manufacturing parts
(B) Diamond cutting and polishing
(C) Software development service
(D) Heavy machinery production

Ans :

(B) Diamond cutting and polishing
Apart from its extensive textile industry, Surat is a global center for the diamond industry, renowned for its large-scale diamond cutting and polishing activities, employing a vast number of artisans for this.

14. Which type of market is correctly paired with its primary characteristic?
(A) Domestic Market - Trade occurs across national borders
(B) Wholesale Market - Sells goods in small quantities to consumer
(C) Online Market - Buyers and sellers must meet physically
(D) Retail Market - Sells goods to final consumers

Ans :

(D) Retail Market - Sells goods to final consumers
A retail market consists of businesses (retailers) that sell goods and services directly to end consumers for their personal use. Domestic markets are within a country, wholesale is bulk, and online markets don't require physical meeting.

15. Assertion (A) : Markets facilitate transactions between producers and consumers.
Reason (R) : Markets help individuals access goods and services they cannot produce themselves.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Markets indeed facilitate the exchange between producers and consumers. This is crucial because individuals and businesses rely on markets to obtain goods and services that they do not or cannot produce themselves.

16. Which market term is INCORRECTLY defined?
(A) Export - Selling goods produced in one country to another.
(B) Import - Buying goods from other countries for own country.
(C) Wholesaler - Buys small quantities for direct consumption .
(D) Price - Amount agreed by buyer and seller for trade.

Ans :

(C) Wholesaler - Buys small quantities for direct consumption .
A wholesaler buys goods in large quantities (bulk) from producers or manufacturers, primarily for resale to retailers, not in small quantities for direct consumption. The other terms are correctly defined.

17. Consider the following about markets :
1. A physical market requires buyers and sellers to meet in person.
2. Online markets allow transactions from distant locations very easily.
3. The Hampi Bazaar was known for trading only locally made crafts.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Physical markets involve in-person interaction. Online markets facilitate remote transactions. The Hampi Bazaar was known for a wide variety of products, including goods from distant places, not just local crafts.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

5. What term is commonly used in Hindi for a market, especially a weekly or local one?
(A) Bazaar or Haat
(B) Mandi or Chowk
(C) Dukaan or Gali
(D) Kendra or Sadan

Ans :

(A) Bazaar or Haat
In Hindi, a market is often referred to as a 'bazaar'. A local or weekly market, particularly in rural or semi-urban areas, is commonly called a 'haat'.

6. How does an online market primarily differ from a physical market regarding buyer-seller interaction?
(A) Online markets have much lower prices
(B) Physical markets offer a wider variety goods
(C) Buyers and sellers need not meet in person
(D) Only physical markets use monetary payments

Ans :

(C) Buyers and sellers need not meet in person
In a physical market, buyers and sellers interact directly in person. In an online market, transactions occur remotely through websites or apps, so buyers and sellers do not need to meet physically.

7. If a seller sets the price of guavas too high (e.g., ₹80/kg when buyers expect much less), what is the likely immediate outcome in the market?
(A) All guavas will sell out very quickly
(B) Many buyers may not be willing to buy
(C) The seller will make a very large profit
(D) Other sellers will also raise their prices

Ans :

(B) Many buyers may not be willing to buy
If a seller prices a product significantly higher than what buyers perceive as reasonable or are willing to pay, many potential buyers will likely refrain from purchasing, leading to low sales for that seller.

8. In the chain of supply, _____ buy goods in large quantities from producers and sell them to retailers.
(A) consumers
(B) distributors
(C) wholesalers
(D) advertisers

Ans :

(C) wholesalers
Wholesalers are intermediaries who purchase goods in bulk directly from manufacturers or producers. They sell these goods in smaller quantities to retailers, who in turn sell to end consumers.

9. What are specialized warehouses designed to maintain specific low temperatures for preserving perishable goods like fruits and vegetables called?
(A) Godowns for all
(B) Silos types
(C) Cold storage
(D) Granaries type

Ans :

(C) Cold storage
Cold storage facilities are specialized warehouses equipped with refrigeration systems to maintain low temperatures. This controlled environment helps preserve perishable items like fruits, vegetables, and dairy products, extending their shelf life.

10. A garment store offers a 50% discount on all woolen sweaters at the end of the winter season. What is the most likely reason for this price reduction strategy used?
(A) The sweaters have become very low quality
(B) To clear out seasonal stock for new items
(C) Wool prices have fallen sharply in market
(D) The government has ordered price cuts

Ans :

(B) To clear out seasonal stock for new items
Retailers often offer significant discounts on seasonal items like woolen sweaters at the end of winter to clear out the remaining stock. This makes space for new season's merchandise and minimizes losses on unsold seasonal goods.

11. What is a 'retailer' in the market chain?
(A) Someone who produces goods in large factory
(B) One who buys goods in bulk from producer
(C) A shopkeeper selling goods to final consumer
(D) A person who transports goods between cities

Ans :

(C) A shopkeeper selling goods to final consumer
A retailer is a business or person that sells goods directly to the final consumers for their own use or consumption, rather than for resale. They typically buy from wholesalers or distributors.

NODIA

Ans :

(B) The food has been tested and is safe
FSSAI (Food Safety and Standards Authority of India) is the government agency responsible for setting food safety standards. Its logo on a food product signifies that the item meets these standards and is considered safe for consumption.

25. What are 'public goods'?
(A) Goods sold exclusively in government-owned shops
(B) Products that are available free of cost
(C) Services accessible to all members of society
(D) Items manufactured by public sector companies

Ans :

(C) Services accessible to all members of society
Public goods are services or commodities, like public parks, roads, or national defense, that are generally accessible to all members of society. Their use by one person does not typically diminish their availability for others.

26. How does the AGMARK certification differ from the ISI Mark in terms of the products they generally cover?
(A) AGMARK is for electronics; ISI for food items
(B) AGMARK is for agricultural; ISI for industrial
(C) AGMARK is for imports; ISI for exports only
(D) Both cover exactly the same product types

Ans :

(B) AGMARK is for agricultural; ISI for industrial
AGMARK is a certification mark for agricultural products in India, ensuring quality standards. The ISI Mark, issued by the Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS), is generally found on industrial products, ensuring their quality and safety.

27. Which product quality assessment method is correctly paired with its description?
(A) FSSAI Mark - Certifies energy efficiency of appliances
(B) ISI Mark - Ensures safety of agricultural produce
(C) BEE STAR Rating - Indicates energy efficiency level
(D) AGMARK - Standard for all construction materials

Ans :

(C) BEE STAR Rating - Indicates energy efficiency level
The BEE (Bureau of Energy Efficiency) STAR rating on electronic appliances indicates their energy efficiency. More stars mean the appliance consumes less energy, leading to savings for consumers and environmental benefits.

28. Assertion (A) : Governments intervene in markets by implementing regulations like quality standards and price controls.
Reason (R) : Such interventions are often necessary to protect consumers, ensure fair practices, and mitigate negative externalities.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Governments play a crucial role in regulating markets. Interventions like setting quality standards and price controls are often implemented to protect consumers from harm or exploitation, ensure fair competition, and address negative side effects of market activities.

29. Which market participant is INCORRECTLY matched with their primary role in the supply chain?
(A) Manufacturer - Produces the goods for the sale.
(B) Wholesaler - Sells small quantities to many consumers.
(C) Retailer - Sells to the final end consumer.
(D) Distributor - Bridges gap between wholesaler and retailer.

Ans :

(B) Wholesaler - Sells small quantities to many consumers.
Wholesalers buy goods in large bulk quantities from manufacturers and primarily sell them in smaller bulk quantities to retailers or other businesses, not directly in small quantities to final consumers.

30. Consider the following about markets :
1. Negotiation and bargaining are common in many markets.
2. Online markets eliminate the need for any physical goods.

NODIA

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

81. Match the following market-related terms with their definitions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Market	A.	Amount at which a buyer is willing to buy and a seller to sell
2.	Price	B.	Physical or online place where goods/services are bought and sold
3.	Trade	C.	Something a person desires but is not essential for survival
4.	Wants	D.	Buying, selling, or exchanging goods/services

Options :
(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(b) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(c) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(d) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
A market is a place for buying and selling. Price is the agreed amount for a transaction. Trade involves the exchange of goods/services. Wants are desired but non-essential items.

82. Match the types of markets with their descriptions:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Physical Market	A.	Goods/services bought/ sold within a country's borders
2.	Online Market	B.	Buyers meet sellers in person (e.g., local shops, malls)
3.	Domestic Market	C.	Trade occurs across national borders (exports/imports)
4.	International Market	D.	Transactions via apps/websites; goods delivered to doorstep

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
Physical markets involve in-person transactions. Online markets use digital platforms. Domestic markets operate within a country. International markets involve cross-border trade.

83. Match the participants in the market supply chain with their roles :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Manufacturer	A.	Buys in large quantities from producers, stores in godowns/mandis
2.	Wholesaler	B.	Sells goods in smaller quantities to final consumers
3.	Retailer	C.	Makes or produces goods for sale
4.	Aggregator	D.	Website/app combining offers from multiple sellers for consumers

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(b) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(a) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
A manufacturer produces goods. A wholesaler buys in bulk from manufacturers. A retailer sells smaller quantities to consumers. An aggregator is an online platform combining multiple sellers.

84. Match the government's role in markets with the specific actions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Controlling Prices	A.	Ensuring products meet required quality and safety standards
2.	Ensuring Quality Standards	B.	Setting maximum/ minimum prices for essential goods/services
3.	Mitigating External Effects	C.	Providing services like parks, roads, policing not offered by private sector
4.	Providing Public Goods	D.	Implementing regulations to control pollution from production

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Minimum wage laws are set by the government to ensure that employers pay their workers a baseline wage, protecting workers from exploitation and ensuring a minimum standard of living for them.

37. A pharmaceutical company is found to be selling a substandard drug that poses a health risk to consumers. Which government role is primarily concerned with preventing such a situation from occurring or continuing?
(A) Providing public goods like parks and roads
(B) Ensuring quality and safety standards
(C) Setting minimum prices for agricultural items
(D) Promoting exports to international market

Ans :

(B) Ensuring quality and safety standards
The government has a crucial role in setting and enforcing quality and safety standards for products, especially critical ones like medicines. This includes testing and regulations to protect consumer health and safety.

38. Which of these is NOT a typical feature or characteristic of a wholesale market?
(A) Goods are bought in very large quantities.
(B) It primarily sells directly to final consumers.
(C) Products are often stored in godowns.
(D) It serves as a link between producers, retailers.

Ans :

(B) It primarily sells directly to final consumers.
Wholesale markets deal in bulk quantities, serving as an intermediary between producers and retailers. They do not typically sell goods in small amounts directly to individual final consumers for their personal use.

39. According to Kautilya's Arthashastra, traders of ghee were instructed to give buyers a little extra (manasrava) to compensate for what?
(A) The cost of transporting the measuring can
(B) Ghee sticking to the measuring can
(C) The natural evaporation of ghee during trade
(D) Taxes levied by the king on ghee sale

Ans :

(B) Ghee sticking to the measuring can
Kautilya's Arthashastra includes a directive that sellers of clarified butter (ghee) should provide a small extra quantity (manasrava) to the buyer. This was to compensate for the amount of ghee that would inevitably stick to the measuring vessel.

40. What does 'demand' signify in economics?
(A) The total quantity of goods produced by a firm
(B) The government's requirement for public goods
(C) Quantity consumers are willing, able to buy
(D) The seller's desire to achieve high profits

Ans :

(C) Quantity consumers are willing, able to buy
In economics, demand refers to the quantity of a product or service that consumers are willing and able to purchase at various possible prices during a given period of time.

41. How does the role of a 'distributor' generally differ from that of a 'wholesaler' in a supply chain?
(A) Distributors buy from retailers; wholesalers from producers
(B) Distributors often bridge wholesalers and retailers
(C) Wholesalers sell online; distributors in physical
(D) Distributors manufacture; wholesalers only store goods

Ans :

(B) Distributors often bridge wholesalers and retailers
While wholesalers buy in bulk from producers and sell to retailers, distributors often act as intermediaries who help supply goods from manufacturers or wholesalers to a wider network of retailers, especially when direct reach is difficult.

NODIA

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

42. India was the world's largest importer of _____ oils like palm oil and sunflower oil in 2024.
(A) essential
(B) crude
(C) vegetable
(D) mineral

Ans :

(C) vegetable
India was the world's largest importer of vegetable oils, including palm oil, sunflower oil, and soybean oil, in 2024, sourcing them from countries like Malaysia, Indonesia, and Thailand.

43. The practice of sellers in South India giving a small quantity of haldi (turmeric) and kumkum (vermilion) free with purchases as a mark of auspiciousness primarily illustrates what aspect of markets?
(A) The strict enforcement of government price rules
(B) The purely economic nature of all transactions
(C) The non-economic, cultural significance too
(D) The buyers' demand for free additional items

Ans :

(C) The non-economic, cultural significance too
This tradition of giving a small, free amount of haldi and kumkum as a good wish highlights that market interactions can go beyond purely economic exchanges, incorporating cultural customs and social relationships between buyers and sellers.

44. A consumer is buying a new air conditioner and notices a BEE STAR label with 5 stars on the package. This label primarily helps the consumer assess which quality of the appliance before making the specific purchase?
(A) Its cooling capacity in large rooms only
(B) Its durability and expected lifespan
(C) Its energy efficiency and electricity use
(D) Its country of origin and manufacture

Ans :

(C) Its energy efficiency and electricity use
The BEE (Bureau of Energy Efficiency) STAR rating on appliances like air conditioners indicates their energy efficiency. A higher star rating (e.g., 5 stars) means the appliance consumes less electricity for its operation.

45. Which certification mark is INCORRECTLY paired with the general category of products it applies to?
(A) FSSAI Mark - Food products ensuring safety standard
(B) ISI Mark - Electrical appliances and industrial goods
(C) AGMARK - Agricultural products like cereals, spices
(D) BEE STAR Rating - Quality of textile fabrics

Ans :

(D) BEE STAR Rating - Quality of textile fabrics
The BEE STAR rating is for the energy efficiency of electronic appliances, not the quality of textile fabrics. FSSAI is for food, ISI for industrial goods, and AGMARK for agricultural products.

46. Assertion (A) : Online markets have grown in popularity as they allow transactions without buyers and sellers meeting physically.
Reason (R) : This convenience often leads to higher prices for goods compared to physical markets for all items.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(C) A is true, but R is false
Online markets are popular due to the convenience of remote transactions. However, prices in online markets are not higher; they can often be competitive or even lower due to reduced overheads for some sellers.

47. Consider the types of markets :
1. A 'domestic market' involves trade only within a single city.
2. An 'international market' involves trade across national borders.
3. 'Online markets' always require sellers to have physical stores.

Which of the above statements is/are correct about this market?
(A) 2 only
(B) 1 and 3
(C) 1 and 2
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 2 only
A domestic market is within a country's geographical boundaries. International markets involve cross-border trade. Online sellers do not necessarily need physical stores; many operate purely online for sales.

48. In the Hampi Bazaar, Portuguese traveller Fernao Nuniz noted the sale of precious stones like rubies, diamonds, and _____.
(A) emeralds
(B) sapphires
(C) pearls
(D) amethysts

Ans :

(C) pearls
Fernao Nuniz's account of the Hampi Bazaar mentioned a wide array of valuable goods,

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

including precious stones such as rubies, diamonds, and pearls, indicating the market's opulence and extensive trade networks.

49. What does 'supply' mean in an economic context, regarding goods or services?
(A) The total amount of money consumers have
(B) The quantity sellers are willing, able to sell
(C) The government's plan for distributing aid
(D) The desire of buyers for particular items

Ans :

(B) The quantity sellers are willing, able to sell
Supply in economics refers to the quantity of a product or service that producers or sellers are willing and able to offer for sale at various possible prices during a given period.

50. The Khari Baoli market in Old Delhi is primarily known for trading what kind of commodities?
(A) Electronic goods and mobile phone items
(B) Fresh fruits and all green vegetables
(C) Spices and dry fruits in great amounts
(D) Automobiles and their spare parts mainly

Ans :

(C) Spices and dry fruits in great amounts
Khari Baoli in Old Delhi is Asia's largest wholesale spice market. It is renowned for its vast array of spices, herbs, nuts, and dry fruits, attracting traders and buyers from various places.

51. The government's role in monitoring weights and measures of packaged products primarily aims to achieve what?
(A) To increase the overall weight of packages
(B) To ensure consumers get the correct quantity
(C) To standardize the color of all packaging
(D) To promote the use of heavier materials

Ans :

(B) To ensure consumers get the correct quantity
By monitoring weights and measures, the government aims to protect consumers from unfair trade practices like under-filling of packages. This ensures that consumers receive the net quantity of the product they pay for.

52. How does the function of a 'manufacturer' differ from that of a 'consumer' in a market?
(A) Manufacturers buy goods; consumers produce goods
(B) Manufacturers produce goods; consumers buy goods
(C) Both primarily sell goods in retail market
(D) Neither participates in any market transaction

Ans :

(B) Manufacturers produce goods; consumers buy goods
A manufacturer is a person or company that makes or produces goods for sale. A consumer is an individual who purchases and uses these goods or services to satisfy their needs or wants.

NODIA

53. Which market feature is correctly paired with its description?
(A) Price Negotiation - Seller always dictates the final price.
(B) Online Review - Feedback from government quality agency.
(C) Physical Market - Transactions occur only through barter.
(D) Wholesaler - Buys in bulk, sells to retailers usually.

Ans :

(D) Wholesaler - Buys in bulk, sells to retailers usually.
Wholesalers typically buy goods in large quantities from producers and then sell them in smaller (but still often bulk) quantities to retailers. Price negotiation involves both buyer and seller. Online reviews are by consumers.

54. A person needs food, water, clothing, and shelter to survive. In economic terms, these essential requirements are best classified as which of these specific things?
(A) Luxuries that enhance one's social status
(B) Wants that are desired but not vital
(C) Needs that are essential for basic survival
(D) Services provided only by the government

Ans :

(C) Needs that are essential for basic survival
In economics, 'needs' are items that are essential for human survival, such as food, water, clothing, and shelter. These are distinct from 'wants,' which are desires for non-essential goods and services.

55. Which of these is NOT typically a direct role of a wholesaler in the supply chain?
(A) Buying goods in large quantities from producer
(B) Storing goods in warehouses or the godowns
(C) Selling products in small units to consumers
(D) Supplying goods to various retail shops

Ans :

(C) Selling products in small units to consumers

(C) It signifies lower energy consumption, savings
(D) It comes with a much longer warranty

Ans :

(C) It signifies lower energy consumption, savings
A higher BEE STAR rating indicates greater energy efficiency. This means the appliance will consume less electricity during its operation, leading to lower electricity bills and long-term cost savings for the consumer.

69. How does an 'export' transaction differ fundamentally from an 'import' transaction in international trade?
(A) Export is selling out; import is buying in
(B) Export is buying in; import is selling out
(C) Both involve selling goods within one's
(D) Both involve only services, not any goods

Ans :

(A) Export is selling out; import is buying in
Exporting involves selling domestically produced goods or services to buyers in foreign countries. Importing involves purchasing goods or services from foreign countries and bringing them into one's own country for use.

70. Which term is correctly defined in the context of markets?
(A) Needs - Desires for luxury, non-essential items.
(B) Wants - Basic requirements for human survival.
(C) Price - Seller's cost of producing the good.
(D) Trade - Exchange of goods and services.

Ans :

(D) Trade - Exchange of goods and services.
Trade is the fundamental economic concept involving the buying, selling, or exchanging of goods and services. Needs are essentials for survival, wants are desires, and price is the agreed exchange value.

71. A family consistently buys groceries from a particular local shopkeeper for many years, even if other shops occasionally offer slightly lower prices. They value the shopkeeper's friendly service and the ability to buy on credit sometimes. This illustrates :
(A) The purely price-driven nature of all consumer
(B) The development of non-economic relationships
(C) The complete absence of competition in local
(D) The government's control over where people shop

Ans :

(B) The development of non-economic relationships
This scenario shows that market interactions can lead to long-term relationships based on trust, personal service, and convenience (like credit), which go beyond purely economic considerations of price alone.

72. Which of these is NOT a typical characteristic of the Hampi Bazaar as described by foreign travellers?
(A) Trade in a wide variety of goods
(B) Presence of skilled craftsmen working in street
(C) Sale of precious stones like diamonds, rubies
(D) A very small, sparsely supplied local market

Ans :

(D) A very small, sparsely supplied local market
Foreign travellers like Domingos Paes and Fernao Nuniz described the Hampi Bazaar as a vast, bustling, and exceptionally well-supplied market, trading in a wide array of goods including precious items, not a small or sparsely supplied one.

73. India's imports from West Asia predominantly include crude petroleum and what other key commodity?
(A) Software services
(B) Chemical products
(C) Fertilizers
(D) Vegetable oils

Ans :

(C) Fertilizers
India's imports from West Asia include crucial commodities such as crude petroleum and fertilizers, which are important for its energy and agricultural sectors respectively.

74. What does an 'aggregator' typically do in an online marketplace ?
(A) Manufactures a single brand of all products
(B) Provides delivery services for physical stores
(C) Combines offers from multiple sellers on one
(D) Sets fixed prices for all goods sold

Ans :

(C) Combines offers from multiple sellers on one
An aggregator, in the context of online markets, is a website or mobile application that organizes and combines offers for goods or services from multiple different sellers, presenting them to consumers in a unified platform.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) Domestic Market - Trade is limited to a single state.
(D) International Market - Trade occurs between different countries.

Ans :

(C) Domestic Market - Trade is limited to a single state.
A domestic market refers to trade occurring within the geographical boundaries of an entire country, not just limited to a single state within that country. The other market types are correctly described.

63. Assertion (A) : The price of goods in a market is determined solely by the seller's decision.
Reason (R) : Buyers' willingness to pay and the quantity they demand also significantly influence the final price.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true
Assertion (A) is false; prices are determined by the interaction of both sellers (supply) and buyers (demand). Reason (R) correctly states that buyers' willingness to pay and demand play a crucial role in price determination.

64. Consider the role of different entities in a market :
1. Producers use inputs to make goods or services.
2. Wholesalers typically sell directly to individual consumers.
3. Retailers buy in bulk and sell in smaller quantities.

Which of the above statements is/are correct for this system?
(A) 1 and 3 only
(B) 2 only
(C) 1 and 2 only
(D) 1, 2 and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 3 only
Producers create goods using inputs. Wholesalers sell to retailers, not typically directly to consumers. Retailers do buy from wholesalers (or distributors) and sell in smaller quantities to end consumers.

65. The famous Portuguese traveller who described Hampi as "the best-provided city in the world" due to its market's variety was _____.
(A) Fernao Nuniz
(B) Vasco da Gama
(C) Domingos Paes
(D) Marco Polo

Ans :

(C) Domingos Paes
Domingos Paes, a Portuguese traveller who visited the Vijayanagara Empire in the 16th century, was greatly impressed by the Hampi Bazaar and described the city as exceptionally well-supplied with a vast array of goods.

66. What is a 'manufacturer' in the context of a market economy?
(A) A person who only buys goods for use
(B) An individual or company that makes goods
(C) A government agency that regulates trade
(D) A transporter who moves goods between places

Ans :

(B) An individual or company that makes goods
A manufacturer is an individual, company, or entity that produces or makes goods, typically in factories or workshops, for the purpose of selling them in the market to wholesalers, retailers, or consumers.

67. The Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS) issues which certification mark, generally found on electrical appliances and construction materials, to ensure quality?
(A) FSSAI Mark
(B) AGMARK sign
(C) ISI Mark
(D) BEE STAR sign

Ans :

(C) ISI Mark
The ISI Mark is a certification mark for industrial products in India, issued by the Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS). It signifies that a product conforms to the relevant Indian Standard, ensuring quality and safety.

68. Why might a consumer prefer to buy an appliance with a higher BEE STAR rating, even if it's slightly more expensive initially?
(A) It has more advanced technological features
(B) It indicates the product is imported item

NODIA

Wholesalers primarily deal in bulk transactions with retailers or other businesses. They do not typically engage in selling goods in small, individual units directly to the final end consumers for personal use.

56. The famous Ima Keithal market, run entirely by women, is located in which Indian city?
(A) Kolkata in West
(B) Guwahati in East
(C) Imphal in Manipur
(D) Shillong in North

Ans :

(C) Imphal in Manipur
Ima Keithal, meaning "Mother's Market," is a unique and historic market located in Imphal, the capital of Manipur. It is distinguished by the fact that it is run exclusively by women vendors.

57. What does 'export' mean in international trade?
(A) Buying goods from another country for use
(B) Selling domestically produced goods to another
(C) Exchanging goods within the same country
(D) Bartering services for goods across borders

Ans :

(B) Selling domestically produced goods to another
Export refers to the act of selling goods or services that are produced in one's own country to buyers or consumers located in another country, contributing to international trade flows.

58. How does a 'godown' (warehouse) used by a grain wholesaler differ in purpose from a 'cold storage' facility?
(A) Godown is for retail; cold storage for wholesale
(B) Godown stores perishables; cold storage non-perishables
(C) Godown is general; cold storage is refrigerated
(D) Both serve the exact same storage functions

Ans :

(C) Godown is general; cold storage is refrigerated
A godown is a general term for a warehouse used for storing goods. A cold storage facility is a specialized type of warehouse equipped with refrigeration to store perishable items at low temperatures to prevent spoilage.

59. The interactions in markets often move beyond just buying and selling, and can lead to the development of long-lasting _____ between buyers and sellers.
(A) conflicts
(B) relationships
(C) competitions
(D) regulations

Ans :

(B) relationships
While markets are primarily economic spaces, the repeated interactions between buyers and sellers can often foster personal relationships, trust, and loyalty, extending beyond purely transactional exchanges over a period.

60. When the government sets standards for the quality of medicines, what is its primary aim?
(A) To increase the profits of drug companies
(B) To ensure consumer safety and drug efficacy
(C) To make all medicines available for free
(D) To limit the number of drugs produced

Ans :

(B) To ensure consumer safety and drug efficacy
By setting and enforcing quality and safety standards for medicines, the government aims to protect public health. This ensures that drugs are effective for their intended use and do not pose undue risks to consumers.

61. A factory producing chemicals releases pollutants into a nearby river, harming the environment and local communities. If the government imposes strict regulations on the factory to control this pollution, it is primarily addressing what aspect of markets?
(A) The need for more public goods provision
(B) The problem of too little competition
(C) The setting of minimum wages for workers
(D) The negative external effects of production

Ans :

(D) The negative external effects of production
Pollution from a factory is a negative externality – a cost imposed on third parties (environment, community) not directly involved in the production or consumption of the goods. Government regulation aims to mitigate such harmful external effects.

62. Which of these market types is INCORRECTLY described based on its scope or nature?
(A) Physical Market - Buyers and sellers meet in person.
(B) Online Market - Transactions occur via internet platforms.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

75. What is a key difference between a 'need' and a 'want' in economic terms?
(A) Needs are expensive; wants are cheap
(B) Needs are for survival; wants are desires
(C) Needs are desires; wants are for survival
(D) Needs are services; wants are only goods

Ans :

(B) Needs are for survival; wants are desires
In economics, 'needs' refer to things essential for survival (food, water, shelter, clothing). 'Wants' are things that people desire to have but are not strictly necessary for their basic survival.

76. The government sets _____ wages for work done by employees to ensure fair payments from employers.
(A) maximum
(B) variable
(C) minimum
(D) optional

Ans :

(C) minimum
Governments often establish minimum wage laws. These laws set a baseline for the lowest amount an employer can legally pay their workers, aiming to ensure fair compensation and prevent exploitation.

77. The existence of markets where people can buy goods they don't produce themselves helps promote what economic principle?
(A) Self-sufficiency of every single household
(B) Specialization and division of labor
(C) Elimination of all forms of monetary use
(D) Complete government control over all products

Ans :

(B) Specialization and division of labor
Markets allow individuals and businesses to specialize in producing certain goods or services they are good at, and then trade for other things they need. This promotes efficiency through specialization and division of labor.

78. A person buys a new mobile phone online using a shopping app and pays for it using UPI. The phone is then delivered to their doorstep. This entire process primarily involves which type of market interaction described here?
(A) A physical wholesale market transaction
(B) A traditional barter system exchange
(C) An online retail market transaction
(D) A domestic export market operation

Ans :

(C) An online retail market transaction
Purchasing a mobile phone via a shopping app, paying with UPI, and having it delivered is a typical online retail market transaction. The consumer buys from an online platform that aggregates or sells products directly.

79. Which aspect of a market is INCORRECTLY described?
(A) Buyer - A person or entity willing to purchase goods.
(B) Seller - Someone offering goods or services for sale.
(C) Price - The quality rating given by the government.
(D) Transaction - An act of buying or selling between parties.

Ans :

(C) Price - The quality rating given by the government.
Price is the amount of money agreed upon by the buyer and seller for an exchange. Quality ratings or certifications are separate assessments, often provided by government agencies or independent bodies (like FSSAI, ISI).

80. Assertion (A) : Markets can sometimes have negative external effects, such as pollution from factories.
Reason (R) : Governments may intervene in such cases by implementing regulations to mitigate these harmful effects.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false
(D) A is false, but R is true

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Market activities, particularly industrial production, can indeed have negative externalities like pollution. Governments often step in with regulations to control these harmful side effects and protect public health and the environment.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

3. The government plays no role in regulating any market.

Which of the above statements is/are correct about this?
(A) 1 only
(B) 1 and 2
(C) 2 and 3
(D) 1, 2, 3

Ans :

(A) 1 only
Negotiation is common in determining prices. Online markets still deal with physical goods that are delivered. Governments play a significant regulatory role in markets.

31. The interaction of _____ from buyers and supply by sellers primarily determines prices in a market.
(A) preferences
(B) demand
(C) income
(D) advertisements

Ans :

(B) demand
In a market economy, the price of a good or service is largely determined by the interplay of demand (the quantity buyers are willing to purchase at various prices) and supply (the quantity sellers are willing to offer).

32. What is 'trade' in its broadest economic sense?
(A) The manufacturing of goods in large scale
(B) The consumption of services by households
(C) The buying and selling or exchange of goods
(D) The storage of products in warehouses

Ans :

(C) The buying and selling or exchange of goods
Trade refers to the activity of buying, selling, or exchanging goods and services. This can occur between individuals, businesses, or countries, forming the basis of market economies.

33. The ancient Hampi Bazaar was located opposite which famous temple?
(A) Meenakshi Temple
(B) Virupaksha Temple
(C) Brihadeeswarar Temple
(D) Somnath Temple

Ans :

(B) Virupaksha Temple
The historic Hampi Bazaar, a significant commercial center of the Vijayanagara Empire, was strategically located opposite the main entrance of the revered Virupaksha Temple, a prominent landmark in Hampi.

34. When consumers increasingly demand energy-efficient refrigerators, what signal does this send to the producers in the market?
(A) To stop producing refrigerators altogether soon
(B) To focus on making refrigerators much larger
(C) To produce more refrigerators that use less
(D) To reduce the price of all old models

Ans :

(C) To produce more refrigerators that use less
Consumer demand acts as a powerful signal to producers. If there's a growing preference for energy-efficient refrigerators, manufacturers are incentivized to design and produce more such models to meet market needs and stay competitive.

35. How does a 'weekly market' or 'haat' typically differ from a large, multi-storey shopping mall?
(A) Haats are permanent; malls are temporary
(B) Haats have fixed prices; malls allow bargain
(C) Haats are often open-air; malls are enclosed
(D) Haats sell electronics; malls sell produce

Ans :

(C) Haats are often open-air; malls are enclosed
Weekly markets or haats are often open-air, temporary setups where vendors sell various goods, often local produce and essentials. Malls are large, enclosed, multi-storey buildings with permanent stores offering a wide range of branded goods.

NODIA

36. Which government action is correctly paired with its intended purpose in market regulation?
(A) Setting maximum prices - To increase producer profits greatly.
(B) Minimum wage laws - To ensure employers pay workers.
(C) AGMARK certification - To standardize electronic good.
(D) Price floors for drugs - To make medicines less expensive.

Ans :

(B) Minimum wage laws - To ensure employers pay workers.

Options :
(a) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D
(d) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
Controlling prices involves setting price limits. Ensuring quality means manufacturers meet standards. Mitigating external effects includes controlling pollution. Providing public goods covers services like parks and roads.

85. Match the certification marks with the types of products they generally apply to :

	Column A		Column B
1.	FSSAI	A.	Electrical appliances, construction materials, automotive tires
2.	ISI Mark	B.	Food products, ensuring safety and standards
3.	AGMARK	C.	Electronic items, indicating energy efficiency (less electricity use)
4.	BEE STAR Rating	D.	Agricultural products like vegetables, fruits, cereals, spices

Options :
(a) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(c) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(d) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(b) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
FSSAI mark is for food safety. ISI mark is for various manufactured goods ensuring quality. AGMARK certifies agricultural products. BEE STAR rating indicates energy efficiency of electronics.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

86. What is a place where people buy and sell goods called?

Ans :

Market (or bazaar/haat).

87. What term describes something a person requires to survive, like food or shelter?

Ans :

Need.

88. What term describes something a person desires but is not essential for survival?

Ans :

Want.

89. In which empire was the Hampi Bazaar a prosperous market?

Ans :

Vijayanagara Empire.

90. Name one Portuguese traveller who described the Hampi Bazaar.

Ans :

Domingos Paes/Fernao Nuniz (any one).

91. What is the amount at which a buyer is willing to buy and a seller is willing to sell called?

Ans :

Price.

92. What process do buyers and sellers often use to agree on a price?

Ans :

Negotiation (or bargaining).

Download Olympiad Books FREE PDF
visit. www.lympiad.com

93. What type of market involves buyers meeting sellers physically?

Ans :

Physical market.

94. Name one type of physical market.

Ans :

Weekly market/haat/local shops/mall (any one).

95. What type of market allows transactions via apps or websites without buyers and sellers meeting in person?

Ans :

Online market.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

154. A handicraft cooperative in a rural area makes unique bamboo products. They struggle to sell them locally as demand is low. An e-commerce platform (aggregator) offers to list their products online, handle payments, and arrange shipping for a commission fee, reaching customers nationwide.

(i) What type of market access does the e-commerce platform provide to the cooperative?

(ii) Identify one major benefit for the cooperative of using this online platform.

(iii) Evaluate one potential challenge the cooperative might face when selling through this online aggregator model.

Ans :

(i) It provides access to a much wider domestic market (potentially international too), connecting them with consumers far beyond their limited local reach.

(ii) A major benefit is significantly increased market exposure and potential customer base, leading to higher sales opportunities for their unique products.

(iii) Challenges could include : paying commission fees reducing their profit margin, difficulty competing with numerous other sellers online, managing packaging/shipping logistics, or dependence on the platform's policies and visibility algorithms.

155. A factory producing chemicals is located near a residential area. While it provides local employment, residents complain about polluted air and water discharge affecting their health and the local environment. The factory management argues they follow basic regulations.

(i) What kind of market failure or 'external effect' does this situation represent?

(ii) What role should the government play in this situation ?

(iii) Evaluate the conflict between economic activity (factory employment) and environmental/social well-being in this case.

Ans :

(i) This represents a negative externality, where the factory's production process imposes costs (pollution, health impacts) on third parties (residents, environment) not directly involved in the buying or selling of the chemicals.

(ii) The government's role is to intervene by understanding the negative effects, setting stricter environmental regulations for the factory (beyond basic ones if needed), monitoring compliance, and potentially imposing penalties to mitigate the pollution and protect public health/environment.

(iii) There is a clear conflict. The factory provides economic benefits (jobs, production), but its operations harm the environment and residents' health. Effective government regulation aims to find a balance, allowing economic activity while minimizing harmful external effects, ensuring sustainable development rather than prioritizing profit over well-being.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

112. Explain how prices are determined in a market through the interaction of buyers and sellers, using the guava example.

Ans :

Sellers offer goods at a price, buyers decide if it's acceptable. If prices are too high, few buy; if too low, many want to buy but sellers might lose money. Negotiation leads towards a price balancing supply and demand.

113. Why might vegetables be sold cheaper late at night in a weekly market?

Ans :

Sellers want to sell off perishable stock before packing up, as vegetables might spoil. Lowering prices late at night attracts last-minute buyers and minimizes losses from unsold goods.

114. Differentiate between a physical market and an online market.

Ans :

In a physical market, buyers and sellers meet face-to-face at a specific location (shop, stall). In an online market, transactions occur remotely via websites or apps, often without direct personal interaction.

115. What is the difference between a domestic market and an international market?

Ans :

A domestic market involves buying and selling goods/services within the geographical boundaries of one country. An international market involves trade (exports and imports) between different countries across borders.

116. Explain the role of a wholesaler in the supply chain.

Ans :

Wholesalers act as intermediaries, buying goods in bulk from manufacturers/producers, storing them (often in godowns or cold storage), and selling them in smaller lots to retailers.

117. What is the role of a retailer in the supply chain?

Ans :

Retailers buy goods from wholesalers or distributors and sell them in small quantities directly to the final consumers (like households) through shops, stores, or stalls.

118. How does the distribution channel work in online markets involving aggregators?

Ans :

Manufacturers send products to the aggregator's warehouse. Consumers order via the aggregator's app/website. The aggregator packs and delivers the product directly to the consumer.

119. Describe the flow of goods in the Surat textile market example.

Ans :

Raw cotton comes from farms via mandis. Factories process it (weaving, dyeing) into fabric/garments. Wholesalers buy finished products, distribute them to retailers across India and internationally for sale to consumers.

120. Besides facilitating economic transactions, what other roles can markets play in society, using the Ima Keithal example?

Ans :

Markets like Ima Keithal provide significant employment and income opportunities (especially for women in this case). They also act as social and cultural hubs where people from different communities interact, exchange ideas, and share traditions.

121. Give an example of a non-economic tradition observed in some markets.

Ans :

In South India, sellers of haldi and kumkum often give a small extra quantity free to buyers as a mark of auspiciousness and goodwill, moving beyond purely monetary exchange.

122. Explain one way the government intervenes in markets to control prices.

Ans :

The government can set maximum prices (price ceilings) on essential goods like medicines to protect consumers, or minimum prices (price floors/MSP) on agricultural products to protect farmers from losses.

123. Why does the government need to be careful when implementing price limits?

Ans :

If prices are set too low, producers may lack incentive to produce, leading to shortages. If prices

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Both provide valuable information beyond seller claims, empowering consumers to choose products more confidently and avoid substandard goods.

143. Analyse the economic and social significance of markets like Ima Keithal, run entirely by women.

Ans :

Economically, Ima Keithal provides crucial livelihood and financial independence for thousands of women vendors and their families. Socially, it represents a powerful space for women's collective organization, economic empowerment, preserving traditional crafts/attire, and serves as a significant cultural centre for the community in Imphal.

144. Considering the Surat example, analyse how geographical location, historical factors, and infrastructure contribute to the development of a major trading hub.

Ans :

Surat's west coast location facilitated port development and maritime trade historically. Proximity to cotton-growing regions provided raw materials. Development of transport infrastructure (highways, railways) connected it inland. The presence of skilled artisan communities with skills passed down generations created expertise (textiles, diamonds), making it a thriving hub.

145. How do markets reflect consumer preferences and potentially drive innovation, using the energy-efficient refrigerator example?

Ans :

When many consumers demand a certain feature (like energy efficiency), retailers communicate this demand back through the supply chain (wholesalers to producers). Producers, seeing a market opportunity or responding to demand signals, innovate and adapt their products (making energy-efficient models) to meet consumer preferences, benefiting society.

146. Analyse the concept of 'public goods'. Why are markets generally inefficient at providing them?

Ans :

Public goods (like clean air, national defense, public parks) are typically non-excludable (hard to prevent anyone from using them) and non-rivalrous (one person's use doesn't diminish availability for others). Private firms find it difficult to charge users for such goods, making them unprofitable to supply through the market mechanism alone.

147. Evaluate the effectiveness of Minimum Support Prices (MSP) for agricultural products as a government intervention. What are the intended benefits and potential drawbacks?

Ans :

Intended benefit : Protect farmers from price crashes due to bumper harvests or market manipulation, ensuring a minimum income. Potential drawbacks : Can lead to overproduction of supported crops, requires costly government procurement and storage, may distort market prices, and benefits might not always reach small/marginal farmers effectively.

148. Analyse the importance of trust and relationships in market interactions, even in a monetary economy.

Ans :

While money facilitates exchange, trust remains crucial. Long-term relationships with local vendors (tailor, grocer allowing monthly credit) build reliability and personalized service. Reputation (word-of-mouth) influences buying decisions. Even online, seller ratings build trust. These non-price factors significantly shape market interactions and consumer loyalty.

NODIA

149. How might international trade (imports/exports) impact a domestic market for a specific product (e.g., vegetable oils in India)?

Ans :

Imports (like large amounts of vegetable oil into India) increase the total supply available in the domestic market, which generally leads to lower prices for consumers. It can also create competition for domestic producers. Exports create demand for domestically produced goods in other countries, potentially raising domestic prices but benefiting producers.

150. Considering the evolution from barter to digital money, analyse the changing nature of 'trust' in economic transactions.

Ans :

Barter required direct trust between individuals. Commodity money needed trust in the commodity's value. Coinage required trust in

135. Discuss relationship between markets and prosperity, citing Adam Smith?

Ans :

Markets facilitate the exchange of goods/services people need but cannot produce themselves. This specialization and trade, according to Adam Smith (and implied throughout), leads to economic activity and prosperity.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

136. Analyse the statement : "Markets connect people, traditions, and ideas.".

Ans :

Markets are more than economic spaces. Hampi Bazaar showcased diverse goods and craftsmen. Ima Keithal acts as a cultural hub. Junbeel Mela maintains tribal relationships. Shared practices like giving free haldi-kumkum reflect tradition. These interactions within markets facilitate the exchange of not just goods, but also cultural practices and ideas.

137. Analyse how the forces of demand and supply interact to determine the 'just right' price in a competitive market, using the guava scenarios.

Ans :

If supply exceeds demand (seller has many guavas, few buyers at high price), the price tends to fall to attract buyers. If demand exceeds supply (many buyers eager at low price), the price tends to rise as sellers see opportunity. Through negotiation and observing sales, the market gravitates towards an equilibrium price balancing sellers' need for profit and buyers' willingness to pay.

138. Compare and contrast the roles and scale of operation of wholesalers and retailers in a typical supply chain.

Ans :

Wholesalers operate at a larger scale, buying in bulk directly from producers, storing large inventories, and selling large quantities primarily to other businesses (retailers). Retailers operate at a smaller scale, buying smaller lots from wholesalers/distributors and selling individual units directly to end consumers for personal use.

139. Evaluate the pros and cons of online markets compared to physical markets from a consumer's perspective.

Ans :

Pros of online : Convenience (shop anytime/anywhere), wider variety, easy price comparison, home delivery. Cons of online : Cannot physically inspect goods before buying, potential delivery delays/issues, security/privacy concerns, less social interaction. Physical markets offer immediate purchase, inspection, and social interaction but less convenience/variety.

140. Evaluate the pros and cons of online markets compared to physical markets from a seller's perspective.

Ans :

Pros of online : Access to a wider customer base (geographically), lower overheads (no physical store needed), easier inventory management. Cons of online : High competition, reliance on platform/aggregator, logistics/delivery costs and complexities, difficulty building personal customer relationships, challenges in showcasing product quality digitally.

141. Analyse the government's role in regulating markets. Why is intervention sometimes necessary, and what are the potential downsides of excessive regulation?

Ans :

Government intervenes to ensure fairness (price controls), protect consumers (quality/safety standards), mitigate negative externalities (pollution), ensure availability of public goods, and maintain economic stability. However, excessive regulation can stifle innovation, increase costs for businesses, reduce market efficiency, and potentially lead to shortages if price controls are poorly set.

142. "Consumer protection mechanisms like quality certifications (FSSAI, ISI) and online reviews empower buyers." Analyse how these tools help consumers make informed decisions.

Ans :

Certifications provide standardized assurance from authorities that a product meets minimum quality/safety levels, reducing risk for consumers. Online reviews offer peer experiences regarding product performance, quality, and seller reliability.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

NODIA

the issuing ruler/metal content. Paper money needs trust in the government/central bank (RBI). Digital money requires trust in complex technological systems, banks, platform providers, and cybersecurity measures to ensure transactions are secure and valid.

CASE BASED QUESTION

151. A farmer brings freshly harvested mangoes to a wholesale mandi. Buyer A offers ₹30/kg, wanting 100 kgs for retail shops. Buyer B offers ₹35/kg, needing only 20 kgs for a fruit juice stall. Buyer C, a large exporter, offers ₹28/kg but wants to buy the entire lot of 500 kgs immediately. Evaluate the farmer's options.

(i) Who are the different types of buyers in this wholesale market scenario?

(ii) What are the pros and cons for the farmer of selling to Buyer C (the exporter)?

(iii) What strategy might the farmer adopt to maximize income while minimizing risk?

Ans :

(i) Buyer A is likely a retailer or distributor supplying shops. Buyer B is a small-scale direct consumer/processor. Buyer C is a large-scale buyer, possibly for export or major distribution.

(ii) Pro : Sells the entire stock quickly, avoids storage/spoilage risk, immediate bulk payment. Con : Gets the lowest price per kg (₹28) compared to other offers.

(iii) The farmer might try negotiating a slightly higher price with Buyer C, or sell smaller quantities to Buyers A and B at higher prices first, offer the remaining bulk to Buyer C, balancing higher price potential with the risk of unsold stock.

152. You want to buy a new electric kettle. You check online reviews : Brand X has excellent reviews for durability but is expensive. Brand Y is cheaper but has mixed reviews about lifespan. You visit a local store; the retailer recommends Brand Z, which has an ISI mark and a 3-star BEE rating, priced moderately.

(i) What does the ISI mark on Brand Z indicate?

(ii) What does the 3-star BEE rating tell you about Brand Z's energy consumption?

(iii) Evaluate which kettle might be the best choice, considering price, quality signals (reviews, certifications), and energy efficiency.

Ans :

(i) The ISI mark indicates that Brand Z meets the minimum quality and safety standards set by the Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS).

(ii) It indicates moderate energy efficiency – it uses less electricity than lower-rated models but more than higher-rated (4 or 5-star) models.

(iii) Brand X offers high quality but at high cost. Brand Y is cheap but risky due to mixed reviews. Brand Z offers a balance : moderate price, assured safety/quality (ISI mark), and reasonable energy efficiency (3-star BEE). Brand Z appears a sensible choice balancing cost, quality, and running expense.

153. The government observes that due to a severe drought, the market price of lentils (dal), an essential food item, has tripled, causing hardship for poor families. They are considering interventions.

Option 1 : Set a maximum retail price (price ceiling) significantly below the current market price.

Option 2 : Release buffer stocks of lentils into the market.

(i) What is the intended benefit of Option 1 (price ceiling)?

(ii) What is a potential negative consequence of setting the price ceiling too low (Option 1)?

(iii) Evaluate Option 2 (releasing buffer stocks) as an alternative intervention.

Ans :

(i) The intended benefit is to make lentils affordable for consumers, especially poor families, by legally limiting how high the price can go.

(ii) If the price ceiling is below the production/procurement cost, sellers/producers might refuse to sell, leading to shortages, black markets, or reduced future production.

(iii) Releasing buffer stocks increases the supply of lentils in the market. Increased supply naturally tends to lower the market price without direct price fixing, making it affordable while avoiding the potential shortages associated with strict price ceilings. This is often a more market-friendly approach.

NODIA

96. What are materials or resources used in the production of goods called?

Ans :

Inputs for production.

97. What is a person or company that makes goods for sale called?

Ans :

Manufacturer (or producer).

98. What term describes a market where goods are traded within a country's geographical boundaries?

Ans :

Domestic market.

99. What term describes selling goods produced in one country to a buyer in another country?

Ans :

Export.

100. What term describes buying goods from other countries and bringing them into one's own country?

Ans :

Import.

101. Who typically buys goods in large quantities from producers and stores them in warehouses or mandis?

Ans :

Wholesaler.

102. What is a large warehouse used by wholesalers for storing goods called?

Ans :

Godown.

103. What specialized warehouses maintain low temperatures for perishable goods?

Ans :

Cold storage.

104. Who sells goods in smaller quantities directly to final consumers like households?

Ans :

Retailer.

105. What is the term for a website or app that combines offers from multiple sellers for consumers?

Ans :

Aggregator.

106. Which city in Gujarat is famously known as a textile hub and diamond industry centre?

Ans :

Surat.

107. What is the unique women-run market in Imphal, Manipur called in the Meitei language?

Ans :

Ima Keithal ('Mother's Market').

108. What economic concept refers to the quantity consumers are willing to buy at a particular price?

Ans :

Demand.

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

109. What economic concept refers to the quantity sellers are willing to sell at a particular price?

Ans :

Supply.

110. Name one certification mark mentioned that helps consumers assess product quality (e.g., FSSAI, ISI, AGMARK, BEE).

Ans :

FSSAI/ISI/AGMARK/BEE STAR rating (any one).

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

111. What are the three essential components required for a place or interaction to be considered a market?

Ans :

A market requires a buyer, a seller, and an agreement on a price for the exchange of goods or services to take place.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Part - 2

Based on Exploring Society : India and Beyond

NODIA

are set too high, consumers will be disadvantaged and unable to afford essential goods.

124. How does the government ensure the quality and safety of products like medicines?

Ans :

The government sets quality/safety standards, establishes approval procedures for manufacturing, and conducts sample testing to ensure medicines produced meet these standards and are safe for consumers.

125. What are 'external effects' of markets, and how might the government mitigate them? Use the pollution example.

Ans :

External effects are impacts beyond the direct transaction (like pollution from factories). The government mitigates negative effects by implementing regulations (e.g., pollution controls, banning harmful products like single-use plastics).

126. Why does the government provide 'public goods' like parks or policing?

Ans :

Private producers are unlikely to provide these goods as they cannot easily charge users or make a profit from them. Since these goods benefit society, the government provides them using public funds.

127. Explain the purpose of the FSSAI mark on food products.

Ans :

The FSSAI (Food Safety & Standards Authority of India) mark certifies that the food product meets the minimum quality and safety standards set by the government and is safe for consumption.

128. What does the ISI mark signify on products like electrical appliances?

Ans :

The ISI mark (issued by Bureau of Indian Standards - BIS) signifies that the product conforms to relevant Indian quality standards, ensuring safety and reliability for consumers.

129. What information does the BEE STAR rating provide to consumers?

Ans :

The BEE STAR rating on appliances indicates energy efficiency. More stars mean the appliance uses less energy/electricity, leading to lower running costs for consumers and less environmental impact.

130. Besides certification marks, how else do consumers assess product quality?

Ans :

Consumers rely on the product's or brand's reputation, often built through word-of-mouth recommendations from friends or relatives. Online reviews and feedback from other users are also increasingly used.

131. What function does negotiation serve in many market transactions?

Ans :

Negotiation allows buyers and sellers, who may have different initial price expectations, to discuss and bargain until they reach a mutually agreeable price at which the transaction can occur.

132. What makes the Hampi Bazaar historically significant?

Ans :

It was a major, prosperous trading centre in the powerful Vijayanagara Empire (16th cent.), known for the vast variety of goods traded (grains, silk, gems, animals), as described by foreign travellers like Paes and Nuniz.

133. What is the role of a distributor in the supply chain?

Ans :

Distributors often act as intermediaries between wholesalers and retailers, especially when distances or terrains make direct supply difficult. They help supply goods from manufacturers/ wholesalers to various retail outlets.

134. Briefly explain the supply chain for online shopping involving an aggregator.

Ans :

Manufacturers send goods to the aggregator's warehouse. Consumers order via the aggregator's platform (app/website). The aggregator processes the order, packs the item, and arranges delivery to the consumer's doorstep.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 1

THE STORY OF INDIAN FARMING

SUMMARY

1. THE LANDSCAPE OF INDIAN AGRICULTURE

Agriculture is one of the oldest and most fundamental human occupations. The term itself is derived from the Latin words agri (meaning field) and culture (meaning to cultivate). Broadly, it encompasses the preparation of soil, cultivation of plants, and the rearing of livestock, alongside forestry and horticulture. In some regions, farmers additionally practice pisciculture (fish rearing) or rear cocoons for silk thread. The Indian government classifies these activities collectively as 'agriculture and allied activities', which also includes beekeeping (apiculture) and fibre production like cotton and hemp. Economically, this sector is the backbone of the nation, contributing over 18 percent to India's gross domestic product (2022-2023) and providing a livelihood for approximately 46 percent of the working population. Furthermore, women play a highly significant role, comprising more than 75 percent of the agricultural workforce in rural areas and handling vital operations from sowing to harvesting and threshing.

2. ECHOES FROM THE PAST: HISTORICAL ROOTS

The roots of Indian farming stretch deep into prehistory. Archaeological evidence highlights the cultivation of barley and millets at Mehrgarh in the 7th millennium BCE, while rice grains found in the Ganga Plain are dated to the 7th or 8th millennium BCE. Later, wheat and barley became staple crops for the Harappans, with evidence of intercropping practices evident as early as 2800 BCE at sites like Kalibangan. Animal domestication, including cattle, sheep, and dogs, began around 3500 BCE. Ancient Indian texts, such as the Vedas, Arthashastra, and Amarakosha, contain a wealth of agricultural knowledge. Surapāla's Vrikshāyurveda, for instance, provides detailed recommendations for planting techniques and seed preparation, suggesting that seeds rubbed with cow dung and smeared with honey will successfully sprout.

NODIA

3. CLIMATE, SEASONS, AND CROPS

India's vast agricultural diversity is intrinsically tied to its climate, which was historically observed by the 7th-century Chinese pilgrim Xuanzang. The country is divided into 15 distinct agroclimatic zones, categorizing regions based on climate factors, soil types, terrain, and vegetation to help plan agricultural production. The monsoon system is the critical lifeline for this diversity. The southwest monsoon (June to September) is essential for northern and central India, while the northeast monsoon (October to December) brings crucial rain to the east and south, allowing coastal states like Tamil Nadu to grow rice year-round.
Farming is structured around three main cropping seasons, terms that have Arabic origins from the Mughal era:

1. Kharif: Monsoon crops (e.g., rice, maize, cotton) requiring hot weather and heavy rainfall.
2. Rabi: Winter crops (e.g., wheat, barley, mustard) that need cool conditions and less water.
3. Zaid: Summer crops (e.g., watermelon, cucumber) grown between the main seasons.

Historically, these were known respectively as kedāra (wet), haimana (winter), and graiṣhmika (summer) crops.

4. SOIL: THE FOUNDATION OF CULTIVATION

Soil is the essential upper layer of the Earth's crust that supports plant life, formed over millions of years through rock weathering and decaying organic matter. The dark organic matter, known as humus, retains moisture and provides rich nutrients. India categorizes its soils into six major types: alluvial (rich silt deposits brought by rivers), black (formed from volcanic rocks, ideal for cotton), red (rich in iron), laterite, desert

(sandy), and alpine (mountain) soil.

To maintain soil fertility, farmers employ diverse conservation techniques. Traditional methods include crop rotation, multiple cropping to reduce pest risks, contour ploughing along hill curves to prevent erosion, and the use of organic fertilizers like cow dung and panchagavya (a fermented mixture of five cow products). Modern approaches include terracing in hilly areas, afforestation, and precise fertilizer application.

5. WATER AND SEED MANAGEMENT

Agriculture is divided into rain-fed farming, which relies entirely on monsoons and requires drought-resistant adaptations, and irrigated farming, which uses artificial water supplies. India has a rich history of water structures, from traditional systems like phad (community canals in Maharashtra), bamboo drip irrigation in the northeast, and ancient anicuts like Kallanai, to modern systems. Modern drip and sprinkler irrigation deliver water efficiently directly to roots or over crops like artificial rain, which is vital given India's rapidly depleting groundwater reserves.

Seeds have historically been preserved and shared by communities. Ancient tools like the Indian seed drill combined soil preparation, planting, and furrow-closing into a single operation to save labor. Today, many farmers rely on scientifically developed high-yielding varieties (HYV) purchased from companies. However, because the resulting plants often yield seeds unsuitable for replanting, this creates a criticized cycle of dependency on corporations.

6. TRADITIONAL PRACTICES VS. CONTEMPORARY AGRICULTURE

Traditional agriculture views the plant and soil as a complete, interconnected ecosystem. Practices like Kulāgar (homestead farming in Goa) and Gokrishi (integrating cow manure and bullock labor) work in harmony with nature's cycles.

Conversely, contemporary agriculture transformed heavily during the Green Revolution of the 1960s and 1970s, spearheaded by figures like M.S. Swaminathan. The introduction of HYV seeds, chemical fertilizers, pesticides, and tractors made India self-sufficient in food grains. However, this intensive approach caused severe long-term environmental damage, including soil impoverishment, water contamination, and health crises. Consequently, there is a modern push toward sustainable pathways, blending modern innovation with traditional wisdom. Innovations include neem-based pesticides and a resurgence in organic farming, notably seen in Sikkim, the world's first 100 percent organic state. Alternatives like hydroponics also allow plants to grow in nutrient-rich water without soil in controlled environments.

7. GOVERNMENT SUPPORT AND ONGOING CHALLENGES

The government actively supports the agricultural sector by providing access to seeds, fertilizers, weather forecasts, and subsidized electricity for irrigation. Financial safety nets are offered through crop insurance schemes like the Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana.

Despite this, farmers face severe modern challenges. Generational land division has reduced the average landholding to approximately three-fourths of a hectare, making modern machinery difficult to afford or deploy. Climate change presents another massive threat, bringing unpredictable weather and extreme events that destroy crops. Critical water sources like the Ganga basin are under immense stress from melting glaciers, dams, and over-extraction. These compounded hardships often force farmers into severe debt traps; as a result, an estimated 2,300 farmers are compelled to abandon agriculture every day. Moving forward, building resilience through farm diversification—integrating livestock, poultry, and varied crops—and committing to sustainable practices remains essential for the survival and prosperity of Indian agriculture.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. (a) Create a list of the foods you typically eat.
(b) Identify the grains, pulses, oils, vegetables, and fruits in them.
(c) Now locate where you live on a physical map of India. (You may refer to thepolitical map of India at the end of the book if you wish.)
(d) Which of the food items do you think grow in and around where you live?
(e) What do you think are the reasons that they are cultivated in your region?
(f) Which of them comes from other places?
(g) Why do you think they are not grown in your area?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(a) List of foods I typically eat:
   i. For breakfast, I eat roti, dal, poha, idli, and eggs.
   ii. For lunch, I eat rice, dal, vegetables (such as potato, brinjal, beans), and curd.
   iii. For snacks, I eat fruits like banana and apple, along with chana and biscuits.
   iv. For dinner, I eat rice or roti with vegetables and pulses.

(b) Identification of food categories:
   i. Grains include rice, wheat (used for roti), poha (flattened rice), and idli (made from rice).
   ii. Pulses include arhar dal, moong dal, and chana.
   iii. Oils include mustard oil and refined oils such as sunflower or soybean oil.
   iv. Vegetables include potato, beans, tomato, brinjal, lady's finger, spinach, and cauliflower.
   v. Fruits include banana, apple, mango, and guava.

(c) Location on the map of India : I live in Rajasthan (India), which is located in the north-western part of the country.

(d) Food items grown in and around my area:
   i. In my region, crops such as wheat, bajra (pearl millet), maize, mustard, and pulses are commonly grown.
   ii. Vegetables like onion, potato, and green leafy vegetables are also cultivated.
   iii. Fruits like guava and some seasonal fruits grow here.

(e) Reasons for cultivation in my region : These crops are grown because the region has suitable soil (mostly sandy and loamy soil), moderate rainfall, and a climate suitable for crops like wheat and bajra. Irrigation facilities like canals and tube wells also support farming.

(f) Food items that come from other places : Some food items such as rice (in large quantity), apples, coconut, and certain oils (like sunflower oil) come from other states.

(g) Reasons why they are not grown locally : These crops are not grown locally because they require different climatic conditions. For example, apples need cold climates, rice needs more water, and coconut grows in coastal regions. Such conditions are not available in my area.

NODIA

2. Imagine that your state received less than normal monsoon rains for two consecutive years. Which items are likely to disappear from your meals, or are likely to become difficult to access?

Ans :

If rainfall is very low for two years, crop production decreases due to lack of water. As a result, many food items become scarce or expensive.
Rice production will decline because it requires large amounts of water. Wheat will also be affected due to reduced soil moisture. Pulses like arhar, moong, and urad will decrease as they depend on good rainfall. Green vegetables such as spinach, cabbage, and beans will become less available. Fruits like banana and papaya may also reduce. Sugarcane production will fall, making sugar costly.

3. Prepare a list of the crops that are cultivated in your state or union territory in a year and classify them into kharif, rabi, and zaid.

Ans :

1. Kharif (Monsoon - sown in June/July): Rice, maize, jowar, bajra, sugarcane, cotton, groundnut.
2. Rabi (Winter - sown in Oct/Nov): Wheat, barley, peas, mustard, gram.
3. Zaid (Summer - sown in Mar/Apr): Watermelon, cucumber, muskmelon, pumpkin.

4. (a) Try to name at least two states in each of the [agroclimatic] zones mentioned above.

(b) Which type of soil is predominantly found in

your state or union territory?

(c) Soils tell us stories about places — what might have happened over thousands of years during which the soils were being formed. Take a few samples of soil from your neighbourhood. Look carefully at them. (Examine the soil using a magnifying glass or microscope if you have access to either.) What do the samples consist of? What might be the origins of the soil? Are there signs of human activity that you notice? What might happen to the soil over time on account of this?

Ans :

(a) Two states that fall under the following agroclimatic zones are:
   i. Upper Gangetic Plain (Uttar Pradesh, Bihar),
   ii. Southern Plateau and Hills (Karnataka, Tamil Nadu)
   iii. Western Dry Region (Rajasthan, Gujarat).

(b) In Rajasthan, sandy soil is predominantly found. This soil is light, porous, and has low water retention capacity. It is suitable for crops like bajra, jowar, and pulses.

(c) The soil consists of sand, silt, clay, small stones, and organic matter such as dry leaves and roots. It is formed through weathering of rocks and deposition by wind or water. Decayed plants and animals form humus, improving fertility.
Human activities like use of chemicals, waste dumping, and deforestation may reduce soil fertility and cause erosion. Proper care like composting and tree plantation helps maintain soil quality.

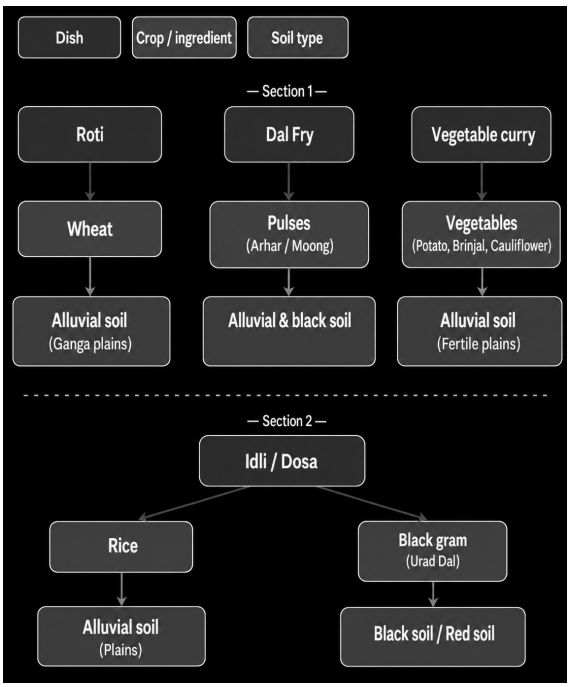
5. Take up a small group project. Identify the types of vegetables, fruits, and trees that grow in the different soil types.

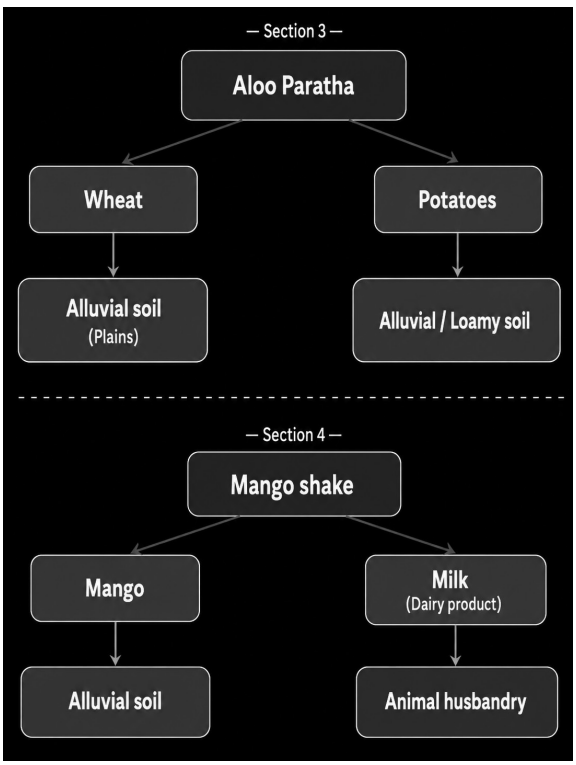
Ans :

Alluvial soil supports onions, brinjals, guava, and papaya. Black soil is suitable for cotton, chillies, and grapes. Red soil supports maize, groundnut, and pomegranate. Laterite soil grows cashew and rubber. Alpine soil supports apple and almonds. Sandy soil is suitable for carrots, cucumbers, and date palms.

6. Create a family food flowchart that connects your favourite dishes to the different crops they are prepared from and the corresponding soil types in which they are cultivated.

Ans :





7. Identify modern agricultural solutions inspired by traditional practices (for example., neem-based practices).

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

1. Organic Farming: The modern resurgence of organic farming is inspired by ancient methods that avoided chemicals, relying instead on compost, animal manure, and seed cakes.
2. Biofertilisers: Modern research has validated traditional mixtures like panchagavya (a mix of cow dung, urine, milk, curd, and ghee) as highly effective biofertilisers.
3. Seed Coating: Modern agricultural bodies (like ICAR) promote beejamrit (a cow dung and urine paste) to coat seeds before planting, echoing instructions found in the ancient Arthashastra.

8. Listen to the special programmes for farmers on the radio or watch a programme on television for a few days. Write down carefully the information that is shared through these mediums. Make a short report on the categories of information you gathered as well as questions that came to your mind during this activity.

Ans :

1. Categories of Information: Weather forecasts (monsoon timing), market prices (Mandi rates) for crops, advice on pest control using specific organic sprays, and information on government schemes like the Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana.
2. Questions raised: How do farmers in remote villages access this digital information if they lack electricity or smartphones? How affordable are the new seed varieties being advertised?.

DON'T MISS OUT

1. The Arthashastra contains sections on agriculture, including the preparation of land and seeds, as well as payment to farmers and other relevant topics. "A good rainy season is one when one-third of the annual rainfall occurs at the beginning (Shravana — July-August) and at the end of the season (Kartika — October-November), and two-thirds in the middle (Praushthapada — August-September and Ashvayuja — September-October)." Why do you think this statement was made? (Hint: Did it have anything to do with the crop cycle?)

Ans :

The statement in the Arthashastra highlights that the proper distribution of rainfall throughout the season was essential for successful farming. Crops require water at different stages of growth, so rainfall must occur at the right time and in the right amount.
Rain at the beginning of the season helps to loosen and prepare the soil for sowing seeds. Heavier rainfall during the middle of the season supports the active growth of crops, as they need more water at this stage. Finally, rainfall towards the end of the season helps the crops to mature properly and get ready for harvesting.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Why do farmers in Kerala grow rice while farmers in Punjab grow mostly wheat? What would happen if they swapped?

Ans :

Kerala's tropical climate and heavy rains suit water-intensive rice. Punjab's temperate winters and alluvial soil favor wheat (a rabi crop). Swapping would cause massive crop failure because the seeds lack their specific soil and climatic requirements.

2. Match the following:

	Column I		**Column II**
(a)	Kharif crops	(i)	Crops during the winter
(b)	Rabi crops	(ii)	Crops grown during the monsoon
(c)	Alluvial soil	(iii)	Thin, rough, and rocky soil found in mountainous regions
(d)	Terrace farming	(iv)	Crops grown in summer
(e)	Alpine soil	(v)	Soil rich in nutrients deposited by rivers
(f)	Zaid crops	(vi)	Method of farming on hillsides

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

4. In rural areas of India, women represent what percentage of the workforce in the agriculture sector?
(A) Less than 20 percent
(B) Exactly 50 percent
(C) More than 75 percent
(D) Almost 100 percent

Ans :

(C) More than 75 percent
Contrary to common visualization, more than 75 percent of the people working in the agriculture sector in rural India are women.

5. Why is the agricultural landscape of India considered highly diverse?
(A) Because it relies on a centralized monoculture system dictated by international trade agreements.
(B) Because it is strictly limited by state-enforced legislation regarding crop rotation and exports.
(C) Because it is shaped by regional variations in soil types, climatic zones, terrain, and water access.
(D) Because it depends on the uniform application of imported high-yield technology across all states.

Ans :

(C) Because it is shaped by regional variations in soil types, climatic zones, terrain, and water access.
India's diverse agriculture stems from various interdependent regional factors, including specific soils, varied climates, different terrains, and water availability.

6. Archaeological investigations have shown early evidence of rice cultivation in the Ganga Plain dating back to which period?
(A) 1st millennium CE
(B) 3rd millennium BCE
(C) 7th or 8th millennium BCE
(D) 10th millennium BCE

Ans :

(C) 7th or 8th millennium BCE
Investigations indicate the presence of rice grains in the Ganga Plain as early as the 7th or 8th millennium BCE.

7. Consider the following statements about ancient crops in the Indian subcontinent:
1. Barley and millets were cultivated at Mehrgarh around the 7th millennium BCE.
2. Barley and wheat were the staple crops of the Harappans.
3. The Harappans had no knowledge of cultivating vegetables.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Barley and millets were grown at Mehrgarh, and barley/wheat were Harappan staples. Harappans did cultivate several vegetables, making statement 3 incorrect.

8. What does the term 'intercropping' mean in agricultural practice?
(A) The method of planting deep-root seeds into the lower bedrock layer to access groundwater.
(B) The practice of growing two or more different crops simultaneously within the same field.
(C) The system of allowing a field to remain fallow and rest without any crops for a full season.
(D) The organized exchange of surplus harvested grain between different regional village units.

Ans :

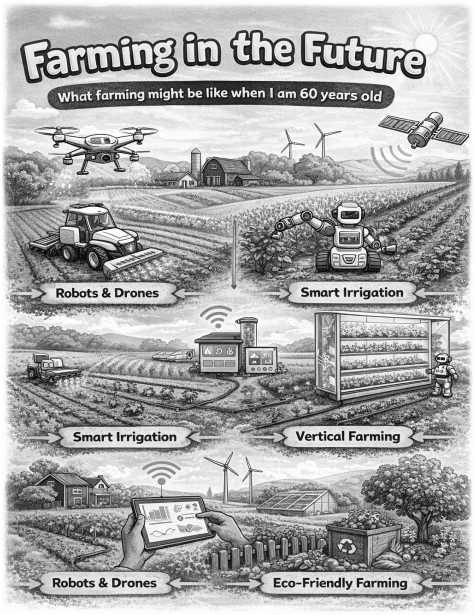
(B) The practice of growing two or more different crops simultaneously within the same field.
Intercropping is the practice of simultaneously growing two or more different crops in the same area, a technique evident even in ancient Harappan sites.

9. Which ancient Indian text provides recommendations on seed preparation, including smearing seeds with honey and false black pepper?
(A) Amarakosha
(B) Sangam literature
(C) Kautilya's Arthashastra
(D) Surapāla's Vrikshāyurveda

Ans :

(D) Surapāla's Vrikshāyurveda
Surapāla's Vrikshāyurveda specifically outlines agricultural techniques, including rubbing seeds with cow dung and smearing them with honey and false black pepper to ensure sprouting.

NODIA



Farmers will use mobile apps and computers to monitor crops, soil conditions, and weather forecasts. This will help them take better decisions and increase production.
Overall, farming in the future will be more efficient, scientific, and eco-friendly, making life easier for farmers and ensuring enough food for everyone.

9. Form small groups and discuss the issues affecting the Ganga basin. Prepare a presentation proposing your solutions and their rationale (your reasons). Share and discuss in class.

Ans :

The Ganga is drying due to melting glaciers, over-irrigation, and dams. Solutions include strictly enforcing efficient drip irrigation, promoting drought-resistant crops, and restricting industrial groundwater pumping to ensure the basin remains a sustainable food source for millions.

10. Looking at the crops listed in the section 'Echoes from the Past', which ones do you find in use in your home? What conclusion can you draw from your observations?

Ans :

We still regularly consume rice, wheat, mustard, sesame, and green gram. The conclusion is that despite thousands of years passing, the staple diet established by ancient civilizations remains fundamentally unchanged and central to Indian food culture today.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. According to data from -, approximately what percentage of India's working population is engaged in agriculture and allied activities for their livelihood?
(A) 25 percent
(B) 46 percent
(C) 65 percent
(D) 75 percent

Ans :

(B) 46 percent
The text states that approximately 46 percent of India's working population relies on agriculture and allied activities for their daily livelihood as of 2022-2023.

2. Which of the following correctly describes the origins and meaning of the word 'agriculture'?
(A) It is derived from Greek, where 'agros' means land and 'biose' means life.
(B) It comes from Latin, where 'agri' means field and 'culture' means cultivation.
(C) It originates from Arabic, where 'al-rizq' means food and 'ghala' means harvest.
(D) It comes from Sanskrit, where 'agira' means sun and 'krti' means action.

Ans :

(B) It comes from Latin, where 'agri' means field and 'culture' means cultivation.
The term 'agriculture' has Latin roots, specifically combining 'agri', which translates to field, and 'culture', which means to cultivate.

3. The Government of India classifies several economic activities under 'agriculture and allied activities'. Which of the following is NOT typically considered an allied activity?
(A) Raising livestock (animal husbandry)
(B) Rearing of silkworms
(C) Manufacturing of chemical fertilizers
(D) Beekeeping (apiculture)

Ans :

(C) Manufacturing of chemical fertilizers
Allied activities include livestock, apiculture, fisheries, silkworm rearing, and fibre production. Manufacturing fertilizers is an industrial activity, not an allied agricultural one.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

16. Which of the following best defines 'Zaid' crops?
(A) Specialized crops grown exclusively in high-altitude regions during periods of heavy winter snowfall.
(B) Short-term summer crops like watermelon and cucumber grown between the main cropping seasons.
(C) Perennial plantation crops like rubber and tea that take multiple years to fully mature for harvest.
(D) Commercial industrial crops like indigo and madder grown purely for the extraction of organic dyes.

Ans :

(B) Short-term summer crops like watermelon and cucumber grown between the main cropping seasons.
Zaid refers to the summer cropping season that falls between rabi and kharif, commonly featuring fruits and vegetables like watermelon, cucumber, and pumpkin.

17. Which Indian state became the world's first per cent organic state by banning chemical fertilizers and pesticides in ?
(A) Kerala
(B) Punjab
(C) Maharashtra
(D) Sikkim

Ans :

(D) Sikkim
Sikkim earned the distinction of being the world's first 100 percent organic state by officially banning chemical inputs in 2014 and shifting entirely to natural farming practices.

18. **Assertion (A):** Kharif crops are highly vulnerable to weather unpredictability.
Reason (R): Kharif crops are heavily dependent on the timely arrival and appropriate volume of monsoon rains.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Kharif crops are monsoon crops; thus, their success relies entirely on timely rains. Unpredictable or excessive rainfall can easily destroy the harvest, causing farmer distress.

19. Before the terms Kharif, Rabi, and Zaid became popular, what ancient term was used for winter crops?
(A) Kedāra
(B) Graiṣhmika
(C) Haimana
(D) Humus

Ans :

(C) Haimana
Historically, before the Arabic terms gained prominence, winter crops were referred to as 'haimana', while wet crops were 'kedāra' and summer crops were 'graiṣhmika'.

20. What is 'humus' in the context of soil formation?
(A) The solid bedrock layer found deep underground.
(B) The fine sand blown in from desert regions.
(C) The chemical fertilizers added by modern machines.
(D) The dark organic matter formed by decomposing plant and animal life.

Ans :

(D) The dark organic matter formed by decomposing plant and animal life.
Humus is nutrient-rich dark organic matter in the soil, created by the decomposition of plants and animals, which aids significantly in moisture retention.

21. Why is soil considered the foundation of cultivation?
(A) It is the only element that determines a country's GDP.
(B) It acts as a natural barrier against all agricultural pests.
(C) It is the upper crust layer that provides necessary nutrients, water, and support for plants.
(D) It is a man-made substance required for hydroponic farming.

Ans :

(C) It is the upper crust layer that provides necessary nutrients, water, and support for plants.
Soil, forming the Earth's upper layer, is an essential resource because it physically supports roots and supplies crucial water and minerals to growing crops.

NODIA

10. What is the purpose of 'grafting', a technique described in the ancient Brihatsamhitā?
(A) To combine desirable traits like disease resistance by joining the tissues of one plant with another.
(B) To monitor and measure the precise percentage of moisture retention within the various soil layers.
(C) To utilize manual mechanical force to separate the edible grain kernels from the protective outer stalks.
(D) To construct artificial stepped terraces on steep mountain slopes to prevent erosion and manage runoff.

Ans :

(A) To combine desirable traits like disease resistance by joining the tissues of one plant with another.
Grafting joins one plant with another to grow as a single plant, allowing farmers to combine desirable traits like disease resistance or fruit sweetness.

11. How many agroclimatic zones is India divided into by the government and agencies?
(A) 7
(B) 10
(C) 15
(D) 25

Ans :

(C) 15
To identify and plan agricultural production, India is officially divided into 15 distinct agroclimatic zones based on climate, soil, terrain, and vegetation.

12. How does the southwest monsoon differ from the northeast monsoon regarding agriculture?
(A) The southwest monsoon brings winter rain; the northeast monsoon brings summer rain.
(B) The southwest monsoon occurs from October to December; the northeast monsoon from June to September.
(C) The southwest monsoon is crucial for northern/central kharif crops; the northeast monsoon waters the east/south.
(D) The southwest monsoon only affects the Himalayan region; the northeast monsoon affects the Thar desert.

Ans :

(C) The southwest monsoon is crucial for northern/central kharif crops; the northeast monsoon waters the east/south.
The southwest monsoon (June-September) is vital for kharif crops in northern/central areas, while the northeast monsoon (October-December) brings crucial rainfall to eastern and southern India.

13. What are the three main cropping seasons in Indian agriculture?
(A) Spring, Summer, Autumn
(B) Kharif, Rabi, Zaid
(C) Alpine, Temperate, Arid
(D) Kedāra, Haimana, Graiṣhmika

Ans :

(B) Kharif, Rabi, Zaid
Indian agriculture is primarily divided into three cropping seasons: kharif, rabi, and zaid, terms of Arabic origin widely used since Mughal times.

14. Why do states like Tamil Nadu and West Bengal manage to grow rice throughout the entire year?
(A) They have naturally genetically modified seeds that require zero water.
(B) They experience freezing temperatures that preserve crops perfectly.
(C) They receive rain from both southwest and northeast monsoons, plus irrigation.
(D) They exclusively use hydroponic systems for all their farming.

Ans :

(C) They receive rain from both southwest and northeast monsoons, plus irrigation.
These coastal states benefit from both the southwest and northeast monsoons, ensuring year-round water availability, which is further supported by irrigation systems.

15. If a farmer is planting wheat and mustard which require cooler temperatures and less water, which cropping season is the farmer preparing for?
(A) Kharif
(B) Zaid
(C) Monsoon
(D) Rabi

Ans :

(D) Rabi
Wheat and mustard are rabi crops; they are winter crops that require cool temperatures and less water to grow properly.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

	Column I		Column II
(a)	Kharif crops	(ii)	Crops grown during the monsoon
(b)	Rabi crops	(i)	Crops during the winter
(c)	Alluvial soil	(v)	Soil rich in nutrients deposited by rivers
(d)	Terrace farming	(vi)	Method of farming on hillsides
(e)	Alpine soil	(iii)	Thin, rough, and rocky soil found in mountainous regions
(f)	Zaid crops	(iv)	Crops grown in summer

3. Why do certain crops thrive in specific regions?

Ans :

Crop success depends entirely on local agroclimatic conditions. Specific plants require exact combinations of temperature, rainfall (monsoon availability), soil type (like black soil for cotton), and terrain to germinate, grow, and yield properly.

4. How has modern technology helped farmers?

Ans :

Modern technology provides High-Yielding Variety (HYV) seeds, efficient machinery (tractors, drones), and advanced irrigation (drip, sprinklers). Digital tools also give farmers access to weather forecasts, market prices, and government support systems to improve productivity and income.

5. Why is sustainable agriculture important? Write a short note on this.

Ans :

Sustainable agriculture is vital because it prevents soil degradation, conserves depleting groundwater, and stops chemical pollution. By combining modern innovations with eco-friendly traditional practices, it ensures long-term food security without harming human health or the environment.

6. Name some challenges that farmers face today. What might be their impact for people?

Ans :

Farmers face small landholdings, unpredictable climate change, pest attacks, and debt traps. These lead to reduced agricultural output, causing food shortages and price inflation for the general public, while threatening the livelihood of rural families.

7. Have a debate in class on the topic "Traditional irrigation methods are better than modern ones."

Ans :

Debate: "Traditional irrigation methods are better than modern ones"
For the Motion : Traditional irrigation methods are considered better because they are simple, affordable, and suitable for small-scale farmers. Systems such as canals, tanks, and wells rely on locally available resources and do not need costly equipment. They also help in maintaining groundwater levels and promote sustainable agricultural practices that have been followed for generations.
Against the Motion : Modern irrigation methods are more advanced and efficient in using water. Techniques like drip and sprinkler irrigation supply water directly to the roots of plants, minimizing wastage and improving crop production. They are especially useful in water-scarce regions. Although they involve higher initial costs, these methods increase productivity and meet the demands of modern agriculture.

8. Write a short essay describing what farming might be like when you are 60 years old. You could also draw / paint a picture to illustrate what you envision.

Ans :

When I am 60 years old, farming will be very advanced and technology-driven. Farmers will use machines like drones and robots to sow seeds, water crops, and even harvest them. Smart irrigation systems will give water to plants only when needed, saving a lot of water.
There will be less dependence on weather because farmers will use greenhouses and vertical farming to grow crops in controlled environments. Scientists may develop improved seeds that grow faster and resist diseases. Organic farming will also become more popular to protect the environment and human health.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

22. How many major soil types are recognized in India's agricultural classification today?
(A) Four
(B) Six
(C) Twelve
(D) Fifteen

Ans :

(B) Six
Modern classifications identify six major soil types in India: alluvial, black, red, laterite, desert (sandy), and mountain/alpine soil.

23. Which combination of soil type and its characteristic is correctly matched?
(A) Black soil — Formed by freezing and melting ice, very rocky.
(B) Alluvial soil — Silt deposits brought by rivers, highly fertile.
(C) Red soil — Formed entirely from decomposed forest leaves.
(D) Laterite soil — Highly fertile, retains maximum moisture during summers.

Ans :

(B) Alluvial soil — Silt deposits brought by rivers, highly fertile.
Alluvial soil is composed of fine silt deposits carried by rivers from mountains and is extremely rich in nutrients, making it highly fertile. Black soil is from volcanic rocks, red is from weathered lava/rocks with iron, and laterite washes away easily and is not fertile.

24. Why does Red soil appear reddish in colour?
(A) It is artificially dyed by farmers to absorb more heat.
(B) It contains high amounts of crushed laterite bricks.
(C) It contains iron, which reacts with air and water.
(D) It is composed mainly of red volcanic ash.

Ans :

(C) It contains iron, which reacts with air and water.
Red soil forms from the weathering of lava or old rocks and gets its colour because it contains the chemical iron, which becomes reddish when reacting with air and water.

25. What does the agricultural term 'weathering' refer to?
(A) Predicting the rainfall for the upcoming kharif season.
(B) Protecting crops from sudden hailstorms using green nets.
(C) The process by which rocks break down into soil particles over time.
(D) The method of drying seeds in the sun before planting them.

Ans :

(C) The process by which rocks break down into soil particles over time.
Weathering is the geological process through which solid rocks and minerals are gradually broken down into fine soil particles via physical, chemical, or biological means.

26. In traditional agriculture, why is crop rotation considered an effective soil conservation technique?
(A) It ensures the soil remains completely dry to prevent weed growth.
(B) It prevents the soil from losing specific nutrients by growing different crops in different seasons.
(C) It helps the farmer avoid paying taxes on a single cash crop.
(D) It replaces the need for monsoon rainfall by utilizing deep root systems.

Ans :

(B) It prevents the soil from losing specific nutrients by growing different crops in different seasons.
Crop rotation is an ingenious traditional method where varying crops are planted sequentially in the same field, preventing the exhaustion of specific soil nutrients.

27. Which farming method involves ploughing along the natural curves of a hill slope to prevent rainwater from washing away the soil?
(A) Intercropping
(B) Hydroponics
(C) Contour ploughing
(D) Threshing

Ans :

(C) Contour ploughing
Contour ploughing is a traditional soil conservation practice that involves ploughing along a hill's natural curves to create barriers against soil erosion caused by rainwater runoff.

28. What are the five ingredients that make up the traditional biofertiliser known as panchagavya?
(A) Cow dung, honey, false black pepper, milk, and water.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

40. **Assertion (A):** The Green Revolution in the s helped India achieve self-sufficiency in food grain production.
Reason (R): The movement introduced high-yielding varieties of seeds, chemical fertilizers, and mechanized equipment.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Green Revolution directly led to massive increases in wheat and rice production, achieving national food self-sufficiency, primarily by deploying modern HYV seeds, chemicals, and machinery.

41. Who is widely recognized as the architect of the Green Revolution in India?
(A) Karikāla
(B) Surapāla
(C) M.S. Swaminathan
(D) Varāhamihira

Ans :

(C) M.S. Swaminathan
M.S. Swaminathan, a recipient of the Bharat Ratna, is famously recognized as the chief architect of India's Green Revolution.

42. Which of the following is NOT listed as a negative long-term effect of the Green Revolution's methods?
(A) Impoverishment of the soil
(B) Contamination of water by pesticides
(C) The rapid freezing of Himalayan glaciers
(D) Depletion of groundwater reserves

Ans :

(C) The rapid freezing of Himalayan glaciers
The text cites soil impoverishment, groundwater depletion, pesticide contamination, and health issues as long-term harms. Melting (not freezing) glaciers is a separate climate change issue.

43. What is the primary characteristic of hydroponics?
(A) Growing crops deep underwater in coastal oceans.
(B) Growing plants in nutrient-rich water solutions without soil.
(C) Cultivating crops exclusively inside dark underground caves.
(D) Relying entirely on rain-fed terracing on high mountains.

Ans :

(B) Growing plants in nutrient-rich water solutions without soil.
Hydroponics is an innovative modern method where plants are grown in controlled environments using a nutrient-rich water solution that directly feeds the roots, entirely bypassing the need for soil.

44. Which of the following is recognized by the FAO as a globally significant agricultural heritage system in India?
(A) The hydroponic greenhouses of Delhi
(B) The mechanized wheat farms of Punjab
(C) The farming of saffron in Kashmir
(D) The apple orchards of Himachal Pradesh

Ans :

(C) The farming of saffron in Kashmir
The Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) recognizes Kashmiri saffron farming, Odishan forest-integrated agriculture, and Kerala's below-sea-level farming as globally significant heritage systems.

45. Why do farmers plant banana trees on the bunds (borders) of paddy fields?
(A) Because banana stalks secrete specialized organic chemicals that act as a natural repellent against paddy pests.
(B) Because they serve as effective windbreakers, stabilize the bund soil, and provide a secondary source of income.
(C) Because the rice crop requires the consistent dense shade provided by large banana leaves to prevent overheating.
(D) Because the aggressive root systems of banana trees help drain excess stagnant water to prevent paddy root rot.

Ans :

(B) Because they serve as effective windbreakers, stabilize the bund soil, and provide a secondary source of income.
Bananas on bunds provide structural support to field borders, preventing erosion. They also act as windbreaks for delicate rice plants and maximize land utility by producing an extra harvest.

NODIA

34. Which modern irrigation technique involves delivering water slowly and directly to the plant's roots through tubes?
(A) Flood irrigation
(B) Sprinkler irrigation
(C) Drip irrigation
(D) Trench irrigation

Ans :

(C) Drip irrigation
Drip irrigation, or trickle irrigation, utilizes a network of tubes and emitters to deliver water slowly and directly onto the roots, maximizing water efficiency and minimizing waste.

35. Why is the adoption of modern irrigation methods like drip and sprinkler systems becoming increasingly necessary in India?
(A) Because traditional water sources like monsoons have completely stopped.
(B) Because they are the only systems legally allowed by the government today.
(C) Because groundwater reserves are fast decreasing and water must be used efficiently.
(D) Because crops grown with modern seeds reject naturally fallen rainwater.

Ans :

(C) Because groundwater reserves are fast decreasing and water must be used efficiently.
As India faces rapidly decreasing groundwater reserves, modern methods like drip and sprinkler systems are vital because they drastically reduce water wastage and improve efficiency.

36. According to the Indian Council for Agricultural Research (ICAR), what is beejamrit used for?
(A) It is a liquid sprayed on fully grown crops to deter locusts.
(B) It is a paste made of cow dung and urine used to coat seeds before planting.
(C) It is a fermented drink consumed by farmers during the harvest festival.
(D) It is an ancient tool used to measure soil moisture content.

Ans :

(B) It is a paste made of cow dung and urine used to coat seeds before planting.
Developed by ICAR, beejamrit is a specific paste combining cow dung, urine, and other materials used to coat seeds before planting to protect them and accelerate germination.

NODIA

37. Why has the increasing purchase of high-yielding seeds from modern companies drawn criticism?
(A) Because they result in specialized crops that completely lack the essential micronutrients required for human health.
(B) Because the produce from these specific varieties is legally prohibited from being traded within local village markets.
(C) Because the resulting plants often produce non-viable seeds, forcing a seasonal financial dependency on seed corporations.
(D) Because these varieties are genetically optimized for sandy soil types, rendering them ineffective in most tropical climates.

Ans :

(C) Because the resulting plants often produce non-viable seeds, forcing a seasonal financial dependency on seed corporations.
Hybrid seeds often lack "seed sovereignty." Because they don't breed true or are non-viable for replanting, farmers must repurchase them annually, creating a costly cycle of corporate dependency.

38. What was an ingenious invention of ancient Indian farmers that combined soil preparation, seed planting, and furrow closing into one operation?
(A) The bamboo drip pipe
(B) The tractor harvester
(C) The Indian seed drill
(D) The contour plough

Ans :

(C) The Indian seed drill
The traditional Indian seed drill was a highly efficient ancient tool that saved immense labour by simultaneously preparing the soil, planting the seed, and closing the furrow.

39. Which holistic traditional method uses cows to provide organic manure and bullocks to plough the fields?
(A) Gokrishi
(B) Hydroponics
(C) Phad systems
(D) Zaid agriculture

Ans :

(A) Gokrishi
Gokrishi is a holistic traditional farming approach that closely integrates livestock; cows supply manure for fertilization while bullocks provide the physical labor to plough fields.

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
Phad is a traditional community irrigation system. Bamboo drip irrigation channels water through bamboo pipes. Drip irrigation delivers water to roots directly, while sprinklers distribute water like rainfall.

64. Match the following farming practices to their purposes:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Crop Rotation	A.	Reduces soil erosion
2.	Multiple Cropping	B.	Prevents nutrient depletion
3.	Contour Ploughing	C.	Growing several crops together
4.	Organic Fertilisers	D.	Restore soil nutrients

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Crop rotation helps preserve nutrients. Multiple cropping lowers farming risks. Contour ploughing prevents soil erosion on slopes, and organic fertilisers replenish soil nutrients naturally.

65. Match the following agricultural developments to their descriptions:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Green Revolution	A.	Natural farming approach
2.	HYV Seeds	B.	Increased food production
3.	Organic Farming	C.	High-yielding crop varieties
4.	Sikkim	D.	First 100% organic state

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The Green Revolution improved food production through modern agriculture. HYV seeds increased yields. Organic farming promotes natural methods, and Sikkim became the world's first fully organic state.

66. Match the Following (Agriculture Components)

	Column A		Column B
(a)	Apiculture	(i)	Fish rearing
(b)	Pisciculture	(ii)	Beekeeping
(c)	Sericulture	(iii)	Silk production
(d)	Horticulture	(iv)	Growing fruits & vegetables

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii, d–iv
(B) a–i, b–ii, c–iv, d–iii
(C) a–iii, b–iv, c–i, d–ii
(D) a–ii, b–iii, c–i, d–iv

Ans :

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii, d–iv
Apiculture refers to beekeeping, pisciculture means fish farming, sericulture is silk production, and horticulture includes fruits and vegetables. These are important allied agricultural activities supporting farmers' livelihoods.

67. Match the Following (Cropping Seasons)

	Column A		Column B
(a)	Kharif	(i)	Winter crops
(b)	Rabi	(ii)	Monsoon crops
(c)	Zaid	(iii)	Summer crops

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii
(B) a–i, b–ii, c–iii
(C) a–iii, b–ii, c–i
(D) a–ii, b–iii, c–i

Ans :

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii
Kharif crops grow during monsoon, rabi crops grow in winter, and zaid crops are cultivated in summer. This seasonal pattern ensures continuous agricultural production across different climatic conditions in India.

68. Match the Following (Soil Types)

	Column A		Column B
(a)	Alluvial soil	(i)	Volcanic origin
(b)	Black soil	(ii)	River deposits
(c)	Red soil	(iii)	Iron content

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

46. What is the average landholding size for an Indian farmer today?
(A) Over 10 hectares
(B) Exactly 5 hectares
(C) Approximately three-fourths of a hectare
(D) Less than one-tenth of a hectare

Ans :

(C) Approximately three-fourths of a hectare
Due to generational land division, the average landholding for a farmer has decreased to approximately three-fourths of a hectare (roughly the size of a football field).

47. Ramesh owns a very small farm. He finds renting modern machinery like large tractors too expensive and impractical for his field's size. His harvest yields barely cover family expenses. To survive financially and build resilience, what traditional approach should Ramesh logically adopt based on historical practices?
(A) Take a massive loan to buy an industrial tractor.
(B) Abandon farming completely and move to a city.
(C) Cultivate only one expensive cash crop and hope for the best.
(D) Diversify by integrating poultry, beekeeping, and growing fruit trees.

Ans :

(D) Diversify by integrating poultry, beekeeping, and growing fruit trees.
Traditionally, farmers with small holdings combat low crop income by diversifying their revenue sources—incorporating livestock rearing, poultry, apiculture, and planting timber/fruit trees to build financial and ecological resilience.

48. Which government scheme specifically provides affordable crop insurance to farmers?
(A) Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana
(B) National Hydroponics Initiative
(C) Green Revolution Extension Act
(D) Saffron Valley Heritage Project

Ans :

(A) Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana
To mitigate financial risks caused by crop failure, the government offers the Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana, which provides affordable crop insurance to vulnerable farmers.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

49. **Assertion (A):** The Ganga river basin is increasingly unable to replenish itself, threatening regional agriculture.
Reason (R): Rapidly melting Himalayan glaciers, massive groundwater pumping, and hundreds of dams are interfering with its natural flow.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Ganga is under severe stress and losing flow explicitly due to the combined pressures of rapid glacier melt, excessive agricultural/industrial groundwater extraction, and dam obstructions.

NODIA

50. What is 'seed cake' used for in organic farming?
(A) A sugary treat fed to livestock to increase milk production.
(B) The residue left after oil extraction, used as a natural soil fertiliser.
(C) A compacted block of seeds stored underground for decades.
(D) A chemical compound used to rapidly dry out wet soil.

Ans :

(B) The residue left after oil extraction, used as a natural soil fertiliser.
In organic farming, farmers avoid chemicals by using natural alternatives like compost, animal manure, and seed cake, which is the nutrient-rich residue remaining after extracting oil from seeds.

51. Consider the following statements regarding the challenges faced by modern Indian farmers:
1. Small landholdings make the use of large machinery difficult and expensive.
2. Unpredictable weather patterns due to climate change increase the risk of crop destruction.
3. The government completely bans farmers from marketing their produce digitally.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) Cow dung, urine, milk, curd, and ghee.
(C) Silt, sand, humus, cow dung, and dry leaves.
(D) Neem extract, cow urine, crushed seeds, ghee, and jaggery.

Ans :

(B) Cow dung, urine, milk, curd, and ghee.
Panchagavya is a fermented traditional mixture made exclusively from five cow products: dung, urine, milk, curd, and ghee, which recent studies confirm acts as an effective biofertiliser.

29. How does the modern technique of terracing differ from contour ploughing in hilly areas?
(A) Terracing cuts flat steps into the hill, while contour ploughing follows the natural curves.
(B) Terracing uses chemical fertilizers, while contour ploughing is strictly organic.
(C) Terracing is used exclusively for zaid crops, while contour ploughing is for rabi crops.
(D) Terracing speeds up water runoff to prevent root rot, unlike contour ploughing.

Ans :

(A) Terracing cuts flat steps into the hill, while contour ploughing follows the natural curves.
While both prevent erosion on slopes, terracing involves physically cutting flat, step-like platforms into the hillside, whereas contour ploughing works with the existing natural curves.

30. Which of the following is NOT an advantage of multiple cropping?
(A) It ensures at least one crop will survive if others fail.
(B) It provides periodic harvests from the same field over time.
(C) It reduces the overall risk of widespread pest infestations.
(D) It completely eliminates the need for any water or irrigation.

Ans :

(D) It completely eliminates the need for any water or irrigation.
Multiple cropping ensures harvest security, reduces pest risks, and offers periodic yields. However, it does not eliminate the fundamental need for water to sustain plant growth.

31. What does the term 'afforestation' refer to in the context of soil conservation?
(A) The deliberate removal of forests to create flat agricultural land.
(B) Planting trees to help stabilize the ground and prevent soil erosion.
(C) The process of turning farm waste into compost for future planting.
(D) The heavy application of chemical pesticides to clear a forested area.

Ans :

(B) Planting trees to help stabilize the ground and prevent soil erosion.
Afforestation simply means planting trees; their deep roots help anchor the soil firmly in place, making it a highly effective modern and traditional method to prevent erosion.

32. What is Kallanai, built by Karikāla about , years ago?
(A) An ancient text documenting all known seed varieties.
(B) The first recorded hydroponic greenhouse in South India.
(C) A grand anicut or massive water-diverting structure across the Kaveri River.
(D) A community-based phad irrigation system in Maharashtra.

Ans :

(C) A grand anicut or massive water-diverting structure across the Kaveri River.
Kallanai is a grand anicut constructed roughly 1,800 years ago to divert water from the Kaveri River, effectively irrigating thousands of hectares of surrounding agricultural land.

33. Consider the following statements regarding traditional irrigation systems:
1. Phad systems are community-based networks found largely in Maharashtra.
2. Bamboo drip irrigation is widely practiced in northeastern India.
3. Traditional systems rely heavily on expensive, modern motorized water pumps.

Which statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Phad systems operate in Maharashtra, and bamboo drip irrigation channels spring water in the northeast. Traditional systems historically rely on gravity and manual ingenuity, not modern motors.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Kharif
(D) Haimana

Ans :

(C) Kharif
Kharif crops are monsoon crops sown during periods of hot weather and heavy rainfall. They include staples like rice, maize, jowar, and bajra.

59. What is "Panchagavya," which is used as a biofertilizer in traditional farming?
(A) A mixture of five different types of seeds
(B) A fermented mixture of five cow products
(C) A combination of five different soil types
(D) A technique using five types of irrigation

Ans :

(B) A fermented mixture of five cow products
Panchagavya consists of cow dung, urine, milk, curd, and ghee. It acts as a natural fertilizer that enhances crop productivity and increases disease resistance.

60. Which state became the world's first to be 100 per cent organic by banning chemical fertilizers and pesticides?
(A) Punjab
(B) Kerala
(C) Sikkim
(D) Uttarakhand

Ans :

(C) Sikkim
Sikkim achieved this milestone in 2014 by banning all chemical inputs. The state shifted entirely to natural farming practices to ensure sustainable agricultural production.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

61. Match the following agricultural seasons to their descriptions:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Kharif	A.	Summer crops
2.	Rabi	B.	Monsoon crops
3.	Zaid	C.	Winter crops
4.	Southwest Monsoon	D.	Main rainfall period from June–September

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Kharif crops are grown during the monsoon season, Rabi crops during winter, and Zaid crops during summer. The southwest monsoon supplies rainfall mainly from June to September and supports Indian agriculture.

62. Match the following soil types to their characteristics:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Alluvial Soil	A.	Formed by weathering of volcanic rocks
2.	Black Soil	B.	Rich river deposits
3.	Red Soil	C.	Iron-rich reddish soil
4.	Alpine Soil	D.	Thin rocky soil formed by freezing

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Alluvial soil is formed from river deposits and is fertile. Black soil develops from volcanic rocks and retains moisture. Red soil contains iron compounds, and alpine soil forms under freezing and thawing conditions.

NODIA

63. Match the following irrigation methods to their features:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Phad System	A.	Artificial rainfall
2.	Bamboo Drip Irrigation	B.	Community canal irrigation
3.	Drip Irrigation	C.	Uses bamboo pipes
4.	Sprinkler Irrigation	D.	Water reaches roots directly

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(B) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(D) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

(A) 1 and 2 only
Small landholdings hinder mechanization , and climate change increases crop risks. Statement 3 is false; the government actually promotes digital technology to help farmers access markets.

52. According to some estimates mentioned in the text, how many farmers are compelled to abandon agriculture every day due to hardships like debt traps?
(A) 100
(B) 500
(C) 1,200
(D) 2,300

Ans :

(D) 2,300
Due to immense pressures such as crop failures, climate change, and unpayable loans (debt traps), some estimates suggest as many as 2,300 farmers abandon agriculture daily.

53. When comparing natural pesticides to chemical pesticides introduced during the Green Revolution, what is a key advantage of using neem-based products?
(A) Neem-based pesticides are completely invisible to the naked eye.
(B) Neem-based pesticides permanently alter the plant's DNA.
(C) Neem-based pesticides are natural and much less harmful to the environment.
(D) Neem-based pesticides evaporate water faster, curing root rot.

Ans :

(C) Neem-based pesticides are natural and much less harmful to the environment.
Sustainable farming favors natural solutions like neem-based pesticides because, unlike synthetic Green Revolution chemicals, they do not pollute water sources or severely disrupt local ecosystems.

54. In modern agriculture, what technology is sometimes utilized in greenhouses to assess soil moisture efficiently?
(A) Satellite lasers
(B) Drones
(C) Hand-cranked seed drills
(D) Heavy mechanical tractors

Ans :

(B) Drones
Modern agricultural techniques employ advanced technology, such as using hovering drones equipped with sensors to rapidly and accurately assess soil moisture levels inside controlled greenhouses.

55. What exactly does ' hectare' equal in square metres?
(A) 1,000 square metres
(B) 5,000 square metres
(C) 10,000 square metres
(D) 40,470 square metres

Ans :

(C) 10,000 square metres
A hectare is a standard metric unit of land measurement representing exactly 10,000 square metres, which is larger than the older traditional unit of an acre (4,047 sq metres).
Here are 5 Multiple Choice Questions based on the provided text about Indian farming, along with explanations for each answer.

56. According to the text, what percentage of India's working population is engaged in agriculture and allied activities (2022-2023)?
(A) 18 per cent
(B) 46 per cent
(C) 75 per cent
(D) 85 per cent

Ans :

(B) 46 per cent
While agriculture contributes about 18% to the country's total GDP, approximately 46% of India's workforce relies on agriculture and allied activities for their livelihood.

57. Which ancient Indian practice involves growing two or more different crops simultaneously in the same field?
(A) Threshing
(B) Grafting
(C) Intercropping
(D) Hydroponics

Ans :

(C) Intercropping
Intercropping is the simultaneous cultivation of multiple crops in one field. Evidence of this practice, such as growing sugarcane with pumpkin, dates back to Harappan times.

58. Which cropping season is characterized by hot weather and heavy rainfall, typically involving crops like rice and maize?
(A) Rabi
(B) Zaid

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(d)	Laterite soil	(iv)	Leached by rain

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii, d–iv
(B) a–i, b–ii, c–iv, d–iii
(C) a–iii, b–iv, c–i, d–ii
(D) a–ii, b–iii, c–i, d–iv

Ans :

Alluvial soil is formed by river deposits, black soil from volcanic rocks, red soil contains iron, and laterite soil forms due to heavy rainfall washing away nutrients from the surface.

69. Match the Following (Irrigation Methods)

	Column A		**Column B**
(a)	Drip irrigation	(i)	Sprays water like rain
(b)	Sprinkler irrigation	(ii)	Direct to roots
(c)	Rain-fed farming	(iii)	Depends on rainfall

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii
(B) a–i, b–ii, c–iii
(C) a–iii, b–ii, c–i
(D) a–ii, b–iii, c–i

Ans :

Drip irrigation supplies water directly to plant roots, sprinkler irrigation sprays water like rain, and rain-fed farming depends entirely on rainfall, making it sensitive to drought and monsoon variability.

70. Match the Following (Traditional Practices)

	Column A		**Column B**
(a)	Crop rotation	(i)	Prevent soil erosion
(b)	Contour ploughing	(ii)	Maintain soil fertility
(c)	Organic manure	(iii)	Add nutrients

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii
(B) a–i, b–ii, c–iii
(C) a–iii, b–ii, c–i
(D) a–ii, b–iii, c–i

Ans :

(A) a–ii, b–i, c–iii
Crop rotation helps maintain soil nutrients, contour ploughing reduces erosion on slopes, and organic manure adds natural nutrients to soil, improving fertility and supporting sustainable agricultural practices over time.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

71. What Latin word meaning "field" forms the root of "agriculture"?

Ans :

Agri.

72. What percentage of India's working population is engaged in agriculture?

Ans :

Approximately 46 percent.

73. What percentage of agriculture workers in rural India are women?

Ans :

More than 75 percent.

74. At which Harappan site was evidence of intercropping found?

Ans :

Kalibangan.

75. Which ancient text provides recommendations on seed preparation and soil cultivation?

Ans :

Vrikshayurveda.

NODIA

76. How many agroclimatic zones is India divided into?

Ans :

Fifteen zones.

77. Which monsoon brings rain to India from June to September?

Ans :

The southwest monsoon.

78. What are the three main cropping seasons in India?

Ans :

Kharif, rabi, and zaid.

79. In which season are kharif crops primarily grown?

Ans :

Monsoon season.

80. What is the dark organic matter in soil called?

Ans :

Humus.

81. Which ancient text categorises agricultural land into twelve types?

Ans :

Amarakosha.

82. What type of soil is also known as cotton soil?

Ans :

Black soil.

83. Which soil is formed by the weathering of rock by rain?

Ans :

Laterite soil.

84. What traditional method involves growing different crops in different seasons?

Ans :

Crop rotation.

85. What is the fermented mixture of five cow products called?

Ans :

Panchagavya.

86. In which state are traditional 'Phad' irrigation systems found?

Ans :

Maharashtra.

87. Which modern irrigation technique slowly delivers water directly to roots?

Ans :

Drip irrigation.

88. What paste developed by ICAR protects seeds and reduces germination time?

Ans :

Beejamrit.

89. In what decade did the Green Revolution significantly impact India?

Ans :

The 1960s.

90. Which state became the world's first fully organic state?

Ans :

Sikkim.

91. What method grows plants in nutrient-rich water without soil?

Ans :

Hydroponics.

92. What government scheme provides affordable crop insurance to farmers?

Ans :

Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana.

93. What is the average agricultural landholding size in India?

Ans :

Three-fourths of a hectare.

94. How many square metres make up one hectare?

Ans :

10,000 square metres.

95. Which international organization recognized three agricultural heritage systems in India?

Ans :

FAO.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

96. What does agriculture broadly encompass according to the text?

Ans :

Agriculture broadly encompasses farming, animal husbandry, forestry, and horticulture, which are crucial for nurturing and sustaining the human population constantly.

97. How does the Indian government classify agricultural economic activities?

Ans :

The government classifies these activities as

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

agriculture and allied activities, including livestock rearing, beekeeping, fisheries, silkworm rearing, and fibre production.

98. What agricultural evidence was found at the ancient Mehrgarh site?

Ans :

At the ancient Mehrgarh site, archaeological investigations revealed evidence of the systematic cultivation of barley and millets dating to the seventh millennium BCE.

99. Describe the climate of the Thar Desert and the Himalayas.

Ans :

According to India's climate classification, the vast Thar Desert experiences an arid climate, while the high Himalayas feature a freezing alpine climate zone.

100. How does the southwest monsoon specifically aid Indian farmers?

Ans :

The southwest monsoon brings vital rainfall from June to September, which is absolutely crucial for successfully growing seasonal kharif crops across northern India.

101. What is the origin of the terms kharif, rabi, and zaid?

Ans :

The terms kharif, rabi, and zaid share an Arabic origin and have been commonly used by Indian farmers since the historical Mughal times.

102. What is humus and why is it important for soil?

Ans :

Humus is dark organic matter formed by decomposing plant material. It is vital because it provides rich nutrients and heavily retains soil moisture.

103. Briefly describe how red soil is naturally formed.

Ans :

Red soil forms through the slow weathering of cooling lava or ancient rocks, appearing reddish because it uniquely contains a chemical called iron.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

104. Why is black soil particularly good for cultivating crops?

Ans :

Formed by weathering volcanic rocks, black soil is highly fertile and effectively holds a lot of moisture, making it ideal for growing cotton.

105. What is the traditional practice of multiple cropping?

Ans :

Multiple cropping involves growing multiple distinct crops in the same field simultaneously, significantly reducing pest risks while ensuring at least one successful harvest.

106. How does contour ploughing help preserve soil on hills?

Ans :

Contour ploughing involves carefully ploughing along the natural curves of a hill slope, which effectively helps avoid devastating soil erosion caused by rainwater.

107. What is the traditional Phad irrigation system?

Ans :

Phad systems are indigenous community-based irrigation methods found in Maharashtra, utilizing small, constructed canals to efficiently divert river water directly to agricultural fields.

108. How does sprinkler irrigation deliver water to crops?

Ans :

Sprinkler irrigation systems forcefully spray water high into the air, allowing it to fall gently over the planted crops like a natural, artificial rain.

109. How did ancient Indian seed drills improve farming efficiency?

Ans :

Ancient Indian seed drills ingeniously combined soil preparation, seed planting, and closing the furrow into one operation, significantly reducing the manual labour required.

110. What are the main characteristics of contemporary agriculture?

Ans :

Contemporary agriculture is heavily characterised

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(c) (i) Rivers: Ganga–Brahmaputra region
(ii) Trade routes: India–Southeast Asia sea routes
(iii) Cultural zones: Buddhist and Hindu heritage regions

(d) The flags of neighbouring countries display their identity through colours and symbols. These often represent history, culture, and beliefs. Symbols like stars, moons, or wheels reflect traditions, while colours commonly stand for peace, strength, and prosperity.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What defines a 'maritime neighbour' in the context of India's geography?
(A) A nation that shares a direct, fenced land boundary and terrestrial security protocols with India.
(B) A nation connected to India via a shared sea or ocean, despite lacking a contiguous land border.
(C) A nation that focuses its economic output exclusively on the export of marine and seafood products.
(D) A landlocked nation that possesses a legal treaty to utilize India's deep-water ports for global trade.

Ans :

(B) A nation that focuses its economic output exclusively on the export of marine and seafood products.
A maritime neighbour is defined as a country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean, acting as a vital link for trade even without a direct land border.

2. Why does India's peninsular shape give it a strategic advantage in the Indian Ocean?
(A) It provides a physical barrier that isolates the mainland from complex global trade disputes.
(B) It acts as a meteorological shield that prevents seasonal cyclones from reaching northern states.
(C) It provides a central vantage point for controlling sea routes linking Southeast Asia, West Asia, and Africa.
(D) It functions as a natural geological bridge that connects the landmasses of India and Australia.

Ans :

(C) It provides a central vantage point for controlling sea routes linking Southeast Asia, West Asia, and Africa.
India's peninsular shape extends deep into the Indian Ocean, granting access to vital sea routes and making it a key link between Southeast Asia, West Asia, and Africa.

3. Which of India's northeastern states does NOT share a border with Myanmar?
(A) Arunachal Pradesh
(B) Nagaland
(C) Manipur
(D) Sikkim

Ans :

(D) Sikkim
India's northeastern states that share borders with Myanmar are Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur, and Mizoram. Sikkim does not border Myanmar.

4. Which Indian states and union territories share a border with China?
(A) The western corridor consisting of Gujarat, Rajasthan, and the plains of Punjab.
(B) The eastern corridor comprising West Bengal, Assam, and the hills of Meghalaya.
(C) The northern belt including Arunachal Pradesh, Sikkim, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh, and Ladakh.
(D) The northeastern frontier composed primarily of Manipur, Mizoram, and the state of Nagaland.

Ans :

(C) The northern belt including Arunachal Pradesh,

122. Explain how ancient Indian texts provide valuable insights into early agricultural practices.

Ans :

Ancient Indian texts incredibly detail highly advanced historical agricultural practices. Works like Kautilya's Arthashastra and Surapala's Vrikshayurveda explicitly provide profound recommendations regarding optimal seed preparation, careful soil cultivation, and precise planting techniques. Furthermore, the Brihatsamhita accurately describes sophisticated plant grafting methods that farmers still utilize effectively in modern agriculture today.

123. Discuss the importance of agroclimatic zones in Indian farming.

Ans :

India is officially divided into fifteen distinct agroclimatic zones that masterfully combine local climate factors, specific soil types, and regional vegetation. This scientific categorization deeply helps the government and agricultural agencies systematically identify unique regional needs and strategically plan highly appropriate actions to vastly improve national crop production outputs continuously.

124. Describe the fundamental process of soil formation over time.

Ans :

Soil formation is an incredibly slow, complex natural process taking centuries or several millennia to complete. It primarily occurs through the continuous, gradual physical and chemical weathering of solid bedrock. Eventually, these tiny mineral rock fragments naturally combine with decaying organic plant and animal matter to form nutrient-rich topsoil layers.

125. Analyze the significance of the traditional practice of crop rotation.

Ans :

Crop rotation is an incredibly brilliant, traditional agricultural practice where farmers systematically cultivate entirely different types of crops within the exact same field across alternating seasons. This highly strategic method effectively prevents the fertile soil from permanently losing its vital specific nutrients, consistently ensuring sustainable, long-term ecological balance and agricultural productivity.

126. Evaluate the benefits of utilizing modern drip irrigation techniques.

Ans :

Modern drip irrigation is a highly efficient technique that slowly delivers water directly to the plant's roots through an extensive network of specialized tubes and emitters. This incredibly targeted delivery mechanism strictly ensures minimal water wastage, providing an absolutely essential modern solution for Indian regions currently facing severely decreasing groundwater reserves.

127. Discuss the impact of the Green Revolution on India's food security.

Ans :

The historic Green Revolution during the 1960s and 1970s profoundly transformed Indian agriculture by boldly introducing high-yielding seed varieties, potent chemical fertilizers, and modern mechanized equipment. This massive technological shift spectacularly increased national food grain production, particularly wheat and rice, miraculously enabling India to achieve complete food self-sufficiency very quickly.

128. What are the severe ecological consequences associated with the Green Revolution?

Ans :

While highly productive initially, the Green Revolution ultimately caused severe ecological devastation. The intense, widespread usage of toxic chemical fertilizers and pesticides dangerously contaminated vital groundwater sources. Furthermore, these harsh modern methods consistently degraded long-term soil fertility and aggressively disrupted fragile local ecosystems by actively harming crucial pollinating insects like bees.

129. Analyze the core principles and benefits of organic farming.

Ans :

Organic farming represents a powerful resurgence of sustainable agriculture that strictly avoids utilizing harmful chemical fertilizers and toxic synthetic pesticides entirely. Instead, it exclusively relies on incredibly safe, natural fertilizers like nutrient-rich compost, traditional seed cake, and animal manure to successfully nourish the soil and simultaneously protect local fragile environments.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 2

INDIA AND HER NEIGHBOURS

NODIA

SUMMARY

1. FRAMING THE NEIGHBOURHOOD

When defining a 'neighbour', one traditionally visualises a country that shares a direct land boundary. India has a vast land boundary stretching over 15,100 km, connecting it to Pakistan, Afghanistan, China (the Tibet region), Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh, and Myanmar. However, India has historically been a prominent maritime nation with a coastline of approximately 11,100 km. Her peninsular shape extends deeply into the Indian Ocean, making island nations like Sri Lanka and the Maldives her immediate maritime neighbours. Looking at a wider geographic scale, countries connected via shared sea routes—such as Iran, Oman, Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore, and Indonesia—also form a crucial part of India's extended maritime neighbourhood.

2. INDIA AND HER LAND-BASED NEIGHBOURS

1. China : Separated by the majestic Himalayas, India and China share a long, strategic border spanning states like Arunachal Pradesh and the Union Territory of Ladakh. Their historical relationship is deeply rooted in the exchange of Buddhist teachings, facilitated by ancient monks like Faxian, Xuanzang, and Bodhidharma. Today, the two nations share a massive trade relationship, though the balance heavily favours China. Despite periods of border tension, continuous efforts are made to resolve disputes through diplomatic dialogue.
2. Pakistan and Afghanistan : Pakistan shares a profoundly complex relationship with India, stemming from the tragic 1947 Partition. This shared history has been marked by several wars and tensions over terrorism, yet cultural bridges remain, such as the Kartarpur Corridor, which allows Indian pilgrims visa-free access to the resting place of Guru Nanak Dev in Pakistan. Afghanistan, a landlocked nation, historically connected to India via the ancient Uttarāpatha trade route. Despite geopolitical complexities, India continues to support Afghanistan's infrastructure, such as the Zaranj-Delaram highway and the Afghan Parliament building.
3. Bangladesh: Born in 1971, Bangladesh shares India's longest land border, as well as a common language (Bangla) with West Bengal. The two nations share crucial transboundary river systems and jointly manage the Sundarban National Park, the world's largest mangrove forest, which is currently threatened by climate-change-induced sea-level rises.
4. Nepal and Bhutan: Nestled in the Himalayas, Nepal shares a unique "open border" policy with India, allowing citizens to move freely for work, education, and pilgrimage. Deep cultural ties are visible in shared festivals and sacred sites like Kathmandu's Pashupatinātha temple. Bhutan, the 'Land of the Thunder Dragon', collaborates extensively with India on hydroelectric power generation. Rooted in Vajrayāna Buddhism introduced by Guru Padmasambhava, Bhutan's spiritual connection with India remains incredibly strong.
5. Myanmar: Serving as India's gateway to Southeast Asia, Myanmar shares both land and maritime borders with India. Initiatives like the India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway aim to boost modern overland connectivity and regional trade.

3. INDIA'S MARITIME NEIGHBOURS AND SOUTHEAST ASIA

1. Sri Lanka and the Maldives: Sri Lanka is separated from India by the narrow Palk Strait. The two nations share deep roots in Buddhism (introduced by Emperor Ashoka's children) and Hinduism, despite challenges during Sri Lanka's civil war which caused

137. During a school geography trip, a group of curious seventh-grade students closely examines the dark, fertile fields in central Maharashtra. Their teacher vividly explains that this specific soil was naturally formed over millions of years through the slow, continuous weathering of ancient volcanic rocks. She notes that this soil holds immense moisture, making it incredibly perfect for cultivating cotton crops.

(a) What is the scientific process called where rocks break down into soil particles?

(b) Identify the specific type of soil the students are observing in Maharashtra.

(c) Why is this specific soil considered highly beneficial for growing crops like cotton?

Ans :

(a) Weathering.

(b) Black soil.

(c) Because it is exceptionally fertile and holds a massive amount of moisture efficiently.

138. Sunita runs a medium-sized farm in a hilly region. To protect her sloped land from severe rainwater erosion, she meticulously cuts flat steps into the hillside. Additionally, instead of purchasing expensive, highly toxic synthetic chemicals, she actively utilizes a fermented natural mixture of cow dung and urine to nourish her crops and dramatically increase their natural resistance to dangerous diseases.

(a) What specific modern farming technique is Sunita employing on her sloped land?

(b) Identify the specific fermented organic mixture Sunita uses as a natural biofertilizer.

(c) How do Sunita's organic methods contrast with the Green Revolution's approach?

Ans :

(a) Terracing (or terrace farming).

(b) Panchagavya.

(c) The Green Revolution aggressively relied on toxic chemical fertilizers, whereas Sunita utilizes sustainable, natural organic biofertilizers to maintain long-term soil health and protect local ecosystems.

139. In a remote, parched village in Gujarat, an old artificial lake constructed centuries ago by a queen remains the community's primary water source. As groundwater reserves critically decrease, local farmers struggle to maintain their yields. To survive, they recently abandoned traditional, wasteful flooding methods and adopted a highly precise, targeted network of tiny tubes to deliver water directly to roots.

(a) Name the artificial lake located at Viramgam, Gujarat, constructed by Queen Minaldevi.

(b) What highly precise modern irrigation technique have these desperate farmers recently adopted?

(c) Why is this modern irrigation method critical for regions with decreasing groundwater?

Ans :

(a) Munsar Lake.

(b) Drip irrigation (or trickle irrigation).

(c) It ensures water is used with maximum efficiency, strictly delivering moisture only to the plant roots, thereby minimizing overall water waste and actively preserving scarce groundwater reserves.

140. Rajesh owns a very small, shrinking plot of land roughly the size of a standard football field. Recently, totally unpredictable weather and violent, untimely torrential rains completely destroyed his primary seasonal harvest. Drowning in debt and unable to afford massive tractors, Rajesh felt hopeless until he successfully enrolled in an affordable government insurance program specifically designed to protect vulnerable farmers.

(a) What is the approximate size of an average agricultural landholding in India today?

(b) How did extreme climate change directly impact Rajesh's agricultural livelihood?

(c) Which specific government scheme likely provided Rajesh with crucial financial relief?

Ans :

(a) Approximately three-fourths of a hectare.

(b) Highly unpredictable weather and heavy, untimely rains completely destroyed his vulnerable seasonal crop harvest.

(c) The Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana, which provides affordable crop insurance to vulnerable farmers.

www.nodia.in

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

by utilising modern farming methods, implementing advanced machinery, integrating new technology, and adopting highly efficient, innovative farming techniques.

111. Name three key inputs introduced by the Green Revolution.

Ans :

The Green Revolution effectively introduced high-yielding varieties of seeds, significantly increased artificial irrigation, and promoted widespread usage of potent chemical fertilisers and pesticides.

112. What was the primary benefit of the Green Revolution?

Ans :

The revolution led to a massive increase in food grain production, specifically wheat and rice, helping India successfully achieve vital national food self-sufficiency.

113. What are two harmful effects of the Green Revolution?

Ans :

Two harmful effects include the severe long-term impoverishment of fertile soil and the dangerous contamination of vital water sources by toxic chemical pesticides.

114. How did Sikkim transition to sustainable agriculture?

Ans :

Sikkim transitioned by completely banning chemical fertilisers and toxic pesticides in 2014, becoming the absolute first fully organic state globally by using natural practices.

115. What unique agricultural system is practiced in Kerala?

Ans :

Kerala famously utilizes integrated below-sea-level agricultural methods, a globally significant heritage system that successfully combines unique saline paddy farming, fishing, and livestock rearing.

116. How does hydroponics bypass the need for soil?

Ans :

Hydroponics bypasses soil entirely by growing healthy plants directly in nutrient-rich water solutions, efficiently delivering all essential sustaining minerals straight to the roots.

117. How does the government ensure farmers get fair prices?

Ans :

The government deliberately purchases important staple crops directly from local farmers to guarantee they face no difficulty marketing produce and receive absolutely fair prices.

118. What challenge do Indian farmers face regarding land size?

Ans :

Indian farmers constantly face the massive challenge of steadily decreasing landholdings, which currently average only three-fourths of a hectare, limiting their total earning potential.

119. How does climate change uniquely threaten Indian agriculture?

Ans :

Climate change severely threatens agriculture by causing highly unpredictable weather patterns and extreme droughts, significantly raising the tragic risk of total crop destruction everywhere.

120. Why are the Himalayan glaciers melting at unprecedented rates?

Ans :

The crucial Himalayan glaciers are currently melting at unprecedented, alarming rates primarily due to the severe, escalating global impacts caused by intense global warming.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

121. Analyze the role of women in the Indian agricultural sector.

Ans :

Women play an absolutely indispensable role in India's agricultural sector. In rural areas, women amazingly constitute over 75 percent of the total farming workforce. They tirelessly execute the majority of essential daily agricultural operations, performing critical physical tasks ranging entirely from initial seed sowing to final crop harvesting and threshing.

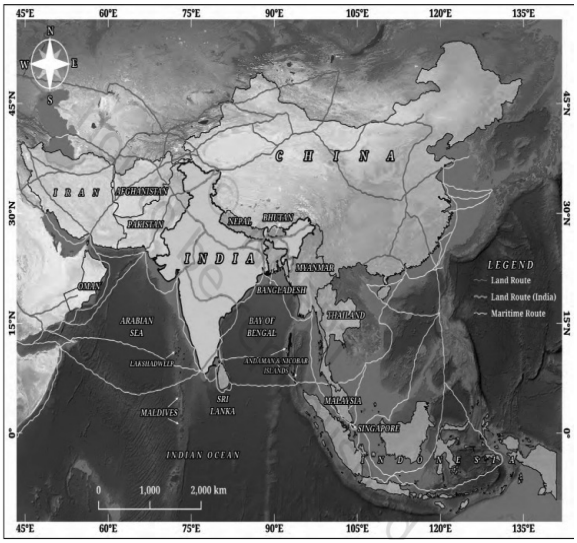
NODIA

many Tamil minorities to migrate to South India. The Maldives, an archipelago of over 1,100 islets, shares linguistic and cultural traits with South India; its language, Dhivehi, borrows heavily from Sanskrit, Tamil, and Malayalam. India acts as a primary first responder to the Maldives during crises, such as the 2004 tsunami and the 2014 water crisis.

2. Thailand, Malaysia, and Singapore: India's cultural impact on Thailand is visible in place names like Ayutthayā (derived from Ayodhyā) and the integration of the Rāmāyaṇa into Thai culture. Malaysia's historical links date back to the Srivijaya Kingdom, and today, a significant portion of its population descends from South Indian rubber plantation workers. Singapore, the 'Lion City', maintains Tamil as an official language and boasts a vibrant 'Little India', highlighting its deep demographic and economic ties with India.
3. Indonesia and Oman: Indonesia is a vast archipelago of over 17,000 islands. Ancient ties with India are memorialized in monumental structures like the Borobudur Stūpa. Following the devastating 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami, India and Indonesia collaborated to establish crucial early warning systems to protect the region. Looking westward, Oman is India's closest defence partner in the Gulf, with a relationship dating back 5,000 years to the Harappan copper trade. Today, they conduct joint military exercises and ensure maritime security.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. Identify the three large water bodies that surround India in the map on the facing page.



Ans :

The three large water bodies that surround the Indian peninsula are the Arabian Sea to the west, the Bay of Bengal to the east , and the Indian Ocean to the south.

2. The scene in figure depicts the well-known Hindu myth of samudra manthana or the churning of the ocean. The devas (gods, on the right here) and the asuras (demons, on the left) decided to join forces to churn the cosmic ocean in search of amrita or the nectar of immortality, with the serpent Vāsuki as the churning rope and Vishnu (above) presiding over the operation — he will eventually deceive the asuras to make sure that the amrita goes to the devas alone. Note also the airport's official name of 'Suvarnabhumi Airport' — does it remind you of something?

Ans :

Yes, the name 'Suvarnabhumi' directly links to ancient Indian history. As early as the 3rd century BCE, Indian traders sailed to regions in Southeast Asia (like present-day Thailand, Java, and

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

130. Describe the globally significant agricultural heritage system utilized in Kerala.

Ans :

The Food and Agriculture Organization officially recognizes Kerala's remarkable below-sea-level agricultural method as a globally significant heritage system. This incredibly unique, deeply integrated farming approach brilliantly combines highly specialized saline paddy cultivation with thriving local fisheries and active livestock rearing, perfectly demonstrating profound environmental harmony and brilliant indigenous agricultural engineering.

131. How does the government financially support struggling Indian farmers?

Ans :

The Indian government actively supports struggling farmers by strategically providing heavily subsidized electricity for irrigation to substantially reduce daily input costs. Furthermore, specialized state systems assist farmers in affordably accessing quality seeds and fertilizers, while initiatives like the Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana reliably provide crucial, affordable financial crop insurance.

132. Analyze the economic challenges caused by decreasing agricultural landholdings.

Ans :

Indian farmers face severe economic challenges due to rapidly decreasing landholding sizes, which currently average merely three-fourths of a hectare. These remarkably small plots severely limit overall crop income and make utilizing expensive, large-scale modern farming machinery like massive tractors completely impractical, keeping impoverished rural families trapped in severe financial hardship.

133. How do traditional farmers diversify their income to build resilience?

Ans :

To build crucial economic resilience, traditional farming families strategically diversify their vital income sources far beyond simply cultivating standard seasonal crops. They actively rear domestic animals like cows, goats, and poultry, enthusiastically practice supplementary trades like apiculture or fishing, and intelligently grow fruit-bearing timber trees directly on their field bunds.

134. Evaluate the profound threats posed by climate change to Indian agriculture.

Ans :

Climate change poses an absolutely devastating threat to Indian agriculture by generating severely unpredictable weather patterns and wildly fluctuating monsoons. Increasingly frequent extreme climatic events, including catastrophic droughts and unexpectedly heavy torrential rainfall, dramatically elevate the terrifying risk of total crop destruction, leading to massive, unrecoverable financial losses for farmers.

NODIA

135. Discuss the specific environmental stressors currently threatening the Ganga river basin.

Ans :

The historically fertile Ganga basin currently faces critical, unprecedented environmental stressors. Intense global warming is disastrously melting its vital source Himalayan glaciers. Concurrently, massive quantities of essential water are aggressively diverted for extensive agricultural irrigation, while hundreds of newly constructed dams severely interfere with the great river's delicate natural flow.

CASE BASED QUESTION

136. Ramesh is an experienced farmer living in the vibrant state of Punjab. He strictly follows the traditional rhythm of the Indian cropping seasons. As the heavy monsoon rains arrive in June, he immediately begins sowing his fields with pearl millet and rice. Once the cool winter months approach, he carefully harvests these crops and prepares the soil for planting wheat.

(a) What broad term describes the monsoon cropping season Ramesh uses for rice?
(b) During which specific months does the southwest monsoon bring vital rain?
(c) Which specific cropping season involves growing winter crops like wheat?

Ans :

(a) The kharif season.
(b) From June to September.
(c) The rabi season.

4. The chapter says, "Being neighbours is not just about geography." Explain this statement with an example.

Ans :

Being neighbours involves more than just sharing borders; it includes cultural, historical, and economic ties. For example, India and China share connections through Buddhism, scholarly exchanges, and ancient trade via the Silk Route. Despite political tensions, both countries continue efforts to maintain relations through dialogue, trade, and conflict resolution mechanisms.

5. What are the different ways in which India has helped smaller countries in her neighbourhood? Explain with examples.

Ans :

India has supported neighbouring countries in various ways. It restored the Ananda Temple in Myanmar and gifted a Buddha statue. In Afghanistan, India has contributed to education, healthcare, and infrastructure projects like the Parliament building and Zaranj-Delaram Highway. In Maldives, India provided timely assistance during the 2004 tsunami, the 2014 water crisis, and the COVID-19 pandemic, strengthening bilateral relations.

6. How do shared challenges become opportunities for cooperation? Were there examples in this chapter to illustrate this?

Ans :

Challenges force nations to collaborate. After the tragic 2004 tsunami, India, Indonesia, and Sri Lanka partnered to build a network of sensors and communication links, establishing the Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre to protect the region.

7. If borders were drawn only by culture and connections, how would the map look different?

Ans :

A culture-based map would erase rigid political lines, connecting India seamlessly with Nepal through Hinduism, with Southeast Asia through Buddhism and the Rāmāyaṇa, and with West Asia through shared ancient trade and linguistic roots.

8. On blank maps:
(a) Label India's neighbours.
(b) Draw arrows showing cultural flows (e.g., food,festivals, languages) between India and her neighbours.
(c) Imagine and redraw new "borders of friendship" that connect neighbours through rivers, trade routes, or cultural zones.
(d) Collect pictures of the flags of the countries listed in this chapter and write your observations.

Ans :

(a) India's neighbours include Pakistan and Afghanistan in the north-west; China (Tibet), Nepal, and Bhutan in the north; Bangladesh and Myanmar in the east. Sri Lanka lies to the south across the sea, while Maldives is situated to the south-west in the Arabian Sea.

(b) Cultural exchange between India and neighbouring countries is seen in shared food, festivals, and languages. Foods like biryani, rice dishes, curries, and momos are common. Festivals such as Diwali, Eid, Buddha Purnima, and Holi are celebrated across borders. Languages like Hindi, Bengali, Tamil, and Punjabi also connect people culturally.
i. Buddhism: India → Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand
ii. Language & migration: India → Singapore, Malaysia
iii. Trade: India ↔ Middle East and Southeast Asia

NODIA

Malaya) in search of valuable resources. Because of the wealth found there, ancient Indians referred to these lands as Suvarnabhūmi (meaning the "golden land") or Suvarṇadvīpa ("golden island"). Naming the airport Suvarnabhumi honours this ancient cultural and trade connection.

3. Seeing that Tamil is one of Singapore's official languages, what does this suggest to you about the relationship between south India and Singapore?

Ans :

It suggests deep, historical, and demographic ties between South India and Singapore. A significant portion of Singapore's residents of Indian origin (who make up about 9% of the overall population) trace their ancestry back to South India. This shared language reflects a long history of migration, cultural exchange, and continuous commercial links that remain vibrant today.

DON'T MISS OUT

1. Who is a maritime neighbour?

Ans :

A maritime neighbour is a country connected to another via a shared sea or ocean, even if they do not share a direct land boundary. The ocean serves as a vital bridge that facilitates centuries of trade, cultural exchange, and historical ties. For India, examples include Sri Lanka, the Maldives, Indonesia, and Oman.

2. Can the Kartarpur Corridor be a model for the possible progress of peace and dialogue?

Ans :

Yes, the Kartarpur Corridor can be viewed as a modest yet significant step toward improving relations between India and Pakistan. It allows Indian Sikh pilgrims to visit a sacred site in Pakistan without needing a visa, demonstrating how shared religious and cultural ties can rise above political differences. Although major disputes still remain, this initiative shows that cooperation based on mutual respect can help build trust and encourage further dialogue.

3. What is an 'open border'?

Ans :

An open border policy allows citizens from two respective countries to travel across the boundary without needing a passport or visa. The India-Nepal open border is a prime example, allowing families to stay connected and facilitating easy movement for education, trade, employment, and religious visits, acting as a symbol of deep mutual trust.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Explain who a maritime neighbour is with two examples with respect to India.

Ans :

A maritime neighbour is a country connected through a shared sea or ocean without sharing a land boundary. For India, examples include Sri Lanka and Thailand. Sri Lanka lies southeast of India, separated by the Palk Strait, only about 32 km away. Thailand is located east of India across the Bay of Bengal and Andaman Sea and is linked through maritime boundaries and connectivity routes like the Trilateral Highway.

2. How has Buddhism created links with India's neighbours? Give examples to explain your answer.

Ans :

Buddhism established strong cultural and spiritual ties between India and neighbouring regions by spreading its teachings, traditions, and art. It travelled from India to Nepal, Sri Lanka, Bhutan, Myanmar, Tibet, China, and Southeast Asia. For instance, Lumbini in Nepal connects both countries, while Sri Lanka adopted Buddhism during Ashoka's time. Bhutan, Tibet, and Myanmar also developed links through monasteries, scholars, trade, and pilgrimages, strengthening cultural bonds.

3. What does 'open border' policy mean? How does the India-Nepal 'open border' policy affect the lives of people living along the border?

Ans :

An 'open border' allows people to travel between countries without a visa or passport. For India and Nepal, this allows border communities to freely access cross-border education, healthcare, employment, and maintain family connections.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Sikkim, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh, and Ladakh.
India's border with China stretches across Arunachal Pradesh, Sikkim, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh, and the Union Territory of Ladakh.

5. Which of the following Indian states/union territories does NOT share a border with Pakistan?
(A) Gujarat
(B) Punjab
(C) Rajasthan
(D) Himachal Pradesh

Ans :

(D) Himachal Pradesh
The border between India and Pakistan stretches across Gujarat, Rajasthan, Punjab, Jammu and Kashmir, and Ladakh. It does not touch Himachal Pradesh.

6. How does the balance of trade currently stand between India and China?
(A) It is maintained at a perfectly equal equilibrium with no significant deficit for either nation.
(B) It is heavily skewed in India's favour due to the massive export of raw materials and services.
(C) It is significantly in China's favour, with their exports to India being worth eight times more.
(D) It is currently non-existent as both countries have suspended all bilateral trade due to disputes.

Ans :

(C) It is significantly in China's favour, with their exports to India being worth eight times more
The trade balance is heavily in China's favour, as her exports to India are worth approximately eight times more than India's exports to China.

7. What is the primary purpose of the Kartarpur Corridor?
(A) To facilitate large-scale joint military training exercises between the Indian and Pakistani armies.
(B) To serve as a high-capacity industrial cargo route for the transport of heavy iron ore and coal.
(C) To allow Indian pilgrims visa-free access to visit the sacred Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan.
(D) To connect the complex river systems of the Indus basin for shared regional agricultural use.

Ans :

(C) To allow Indian pilgrims visa-free access to visit the sacred Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan.
The Kartarpur Corridor is a visa-free border crossing designed to allow Indian pilgrims to visit the Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan using only a permit.

8. Why is the open border policy significant for the daily lives of people living near the India-Nepal border?
(A) It strictly regulates and monitors the trade of all essential agricultural goods and services.
(B) It enforces a mandatory military checkpoint system for every individual crossing the boundary.
(C) It allows border communities to move freely for essential education, healthcare, and employment.
(D) It requires all citizens within the border zone to adopt a single unified currency for trade.

Ans :

(C) It allows border communities to move freely for essential education, healthcare, and employment.
The open border allows citizens to cross freely without passports, integrating communities by providing access to essential services like healthcare and education.

9. According to the text, how does Vajrayāna Buddhism differ from Theravāda Buddhism?
(A) Vajrayāna represents the oldest orthodox form, while Theravāda emerged as a medieval reform movement.
(B) Vajrayāna is practiced exclusively in Sri Lanka, while Theravāda is the primary faith of the Tibetan plateau.
(C) Vajrayāna emphasizes esoteric teachings and mandalas, while Theravāda follows the Buddha's original path.
(D) Vajrayāna rejects the traditional concept of the Buddha in favor of modern philosophical interpretations.

Ans :

(C) Vajrayāna emphasizes esoteric teachings and mandalas, while Theravāda follows the Buddha's original path.
Theravāda is the 'School of the Elders' (closest to

NODIA

original teachings), while Vajrayāna emphasizes special techniques, mantras, and mandalas.

10. In what year did Bangladesh emerge as an independent nation following a war?
(A) 1947
(B) 1965
(C) 1971
(D) 1999

Ans :

(C) 1971
Bangladesh (formerly East Pakistan) was born as a newborn neighbour in 1971 as the outcome of a war between India and Pakistan.

11. Why has direct land access between India and Afghanistan been complicated since 1947?
(A) Due to the rapid environmental expansion of the Thar desert across the northern trade routes.
(B) Because Afghanistan implemented a total isolationist policy, closing its borders to all foreign trade.
(C) Due to the geopolitical creation of Pakistan, which now occupies the land between the two nations.
(D) Because the historic Uttarāpatha route was rendered unusable by permanent regional flooding.

Ans :

(C) Due to the geopolitical creation of Pakistan, which now occupies the land between the two nations.
Afghanistan once shared a direct border with India, but the creation of Pakistan in 1947 placed a third country geographically between them.

12. Why did the Thai kingdom adopt names like 'Ayutthayā'?
(A) It was a colonial requirement imposed by British authorities to standardize regional geography.
(B) It was a modern linguistic translation of the phrase 'Golden Land' into the formal Thai dialect.
(C) It reflected the cultural influence of the Indian epic Rāmāyaṇa and the sacred city of Ayodhyā.
(D) It was named in honor of a famous Chinese Buddhist monk who visited the region in antiquity.

Ans :

(C) It reflected the cultural influence of the Indian epic Rāmāyaṇa and the sacred city of Ayodhyā.
The Ayutthayā Kingdom was named after the Indian city of Ayodhyā, reflecting the profound cultural impact of the Rāmāyaṇa on Thailand.

13. What does the name 'Singapore' or 'Singapuram' translate to?
(A) Golden Island
(B) Lion City
(C) City of Gates
(D) Thunder Dragon

Ans :

(B) Lion City
The name Singapore derives from 'Singapuram', which translates to 'lion city', the name of an ancient kingdom near present-day Malaysia.

14. Why is the architectural design of the Borobudur Stūpa highly significant in a cultural context?
(A) It was constructed using unique white marble specifically imported from the Indian subcontinent.
(B) It serves a dual purpose as both a religious monument and a functional hydroelectric reservoir.
(C) Its geometric structure functions as a three-dimensional mandala, representing the entire cosmos.
(D) It was architecturally designed to serve as a perfect replica of the Taj Mahal in Northern India.

Ans :

(C) Its geometric structure functions as a three-dimensional mandala, representing the entire cosmos.
The Borobudur Stūpa is unique because its pyramidal, geometric design replicates a mandala, a symbol representing the cosmos in Hindu and Buddhist traditions.

15. What is the approximate length of India's total land boundary?
(A) 5,500 km
(B) 11,100 km
(C) 15,100 km
(D) 20,000 km

Ans :

(C) 15,100 km
India's total land boundary stretches over 15,100 km, passing through diverse landscapes including deserts, forests, and mountains.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

16. A student analyzes a map and notices an Indian highway extending through Manipur, crossing an international border into Myanmar, and reaching Bangkok. Which project is this?
(A) The Silk Route Express, connecting the ancient markets of Central Asia with the Indian coast.
(B) The Zaranj-Delaram Highway, designed to provide landlocked regions access to the Arabian Sea.
(C) The India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway, intended to boost regional overland connectivity.
(D) The SAARC Economic Corridor, linking the capitals of all South Asian Association member states.

Ans :

(C) The India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway, intended to boost regional overland connectivity.
The India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway is a modern project stretching from Manipur through Myanmar to Thailand to boost trade.

17. The Dväravatī culture of Thailand derives its name from a Sanskrit word referencing which Indian city?
(A) Varanasi
(B) Ayodhyā
(C) Dvārakā
(D) Pāṭaliputra

Ans :

(C) Dvārakā
The Dväravatī culture derived its name from a Sanskrit word meaning 'that which has gates', directly referencing Dvārakā, the city of Krishna described in the Mahābhārata.

18. How did the 2004 tsunami impact regional diplomacy in South and Southeast Asia?
(A) It led to the permanent closure of maritime boundaries to prevent future environmental disasters.
(B) It highlighted the need for cooperation, leading to a joint network of sensors and warning systems.
(C) It resulted in a total cessation of all maritime trade between India and the Republic of Maldives.
(D) It caused the immediate political disbandment of the SAARC regional cooperation organization.

Ans :

(B) It highlighted the need for cooperation, leading to a joint network of sensors and warning systems.
The disaster highlighted the need for safety, leading India, Indonesia, Sri Lanka, and Thailand to establish a cooperative network of sensors.

19. Which ancient Iranian text shares parallels with India's Rigveda?
(A) The Rāmāyaṇa
(B) The Avesta
(C) The Purāṇas
(D) The Tripitaka

Ans :

(B) The Avesta
The Avesta, which is the ancient sacred text of Zoroastrianism, shares notable parallels with India's Rigveda.

20. What does the term 'ingot' refer to in the context of ancient trade?
(A) A specialized shallow-draft vessel used for the transport of goods along inland river systems.
(B) A standardized block of metal cast into a shape convenient for bulk transport and future smithing.
(C) A formal legal contract written on clay tablets between two merchant guilds or trading houses.
(D) A high-precision measuring weight crafted from polished stone to verify the value of gold coins.

Ans :

(B) A standardized block of metal cast into a shape convenient for bulk transport and future smithing.
An ingot is a lump or block of metal cast into a convenient shape for easy transportation and later reworking by smiths.

21. Which neighbouring country serves as India's direct land gateway to Southeast Asia?
(A) Bangladesh
(B) Bhutan
(C) Myanmar
(D) Sri Lanka

Ans :

(C) Myanmar
Myanmar shares land borders with India's northeastern states, serving geographically and strategically as India's gateway to Southeast Asia.

NODIA

Ans :

(D) An extensive group of islands.
An archipelago is geographically defined as an extensive group of islands; for example, Indonesia is an archipelago consisting of over 17,000 islands.

50. The ancient Indonesian Muara Jambi temple complex historically collaborated with which ancient Indian university?
(A) Takṣhaśhilā
(B) Nālandā
(C) Udayagiri
(D) Vikramashila

Ans :

(B) Nālandā
The bond between India and Indonesia was strengthened by ancient collaborations between India's Nālandā university and the Indonesian Muara Jambi temple complex.

51. If an earthquake occurs on the ocean floor near Sumatra, which facility in India is responsible for alerting neighboring nations?
(A) The Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO)
(B) The SAARC Meteorological Department
(C) The Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre in Hyderabad
(D) The National Highway Authority of India

Ans :

(C) The Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre in Hyderabad
Established after the 2004 disaster, the Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre in Hyderabad utilizes sensors to alert India and neighboring countries to prevent loss of life.

52. Consider the following statements regarding India and Oman:
1. They share maritime boundaries.
2. Harappan traders likely imported copper ingots from Oman.
3. Oman hosts a large population of Indian origin, including a historic Hindu temple.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(D) 1, 2, and 3
Oman shares a maritime boundary with India, was a source of copper for Harappan traders, and hosts a significant Indian community with a Shiva temple built in the early 20th century.

53. Which strategic port in Iran is India helping to develop to gain better access to Afghanistan and Central Asia?
(A) Port of Salalah
(B) Gwadar Port
(C) Chabahar Port
(D) Port of Colombo

Ans :

(C) Chabahar Port
India is actively helping to develop Iran's Chabahar Port, which provides India with crucial strategic access to Afghanistan and Central Asia, bypassing Pakistan.

54. What material were the Harappan traders believed to have brought back from Oman in the 3rd millennium BCE?
(A) Silk
(B) Copper ingots
(C) Iron ore
(D) Gold coins

Ans :

(B) Copper ingots
Because Oman is rich in copper, it is believed that ancient Harappan traders brought back copper ingots to the coppersmiths of the Indus-Sarasvatī cities.

55. Which of the following countries is NOT a member of SAARC?
(A) Bhutan
(B) Myanmar
(C) Maldives
(D) Afghanistan

Ans :

(B) Myanmar
The members of SAARC are Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, the Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan, and Sri Lanka. Myanmar is not listed as a member.

56. If an Indian tourist wishes to visit the Katas Raj temple complex, which country must they travel to?
(A) Nepal
(B) Afghanistan
(C) Pakistan
(D) Bangladesh

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(B) Regionalism
(C) Land border crossing
(D) Geopolitical isolation

Ans :

(B) Regionalism
Providing timely humanitarian aid and disaster relief in the region is an aspect of regionalism, which helps create peace, stability, and shared progress among neighbours.

29. How did Buddhism primarily reach China from India around the 1st century CE?
(A) Through massive military conquests.
(B) Via trade and pilgrimage routes.
(C) Through European colonial merchants.
(D) By maritime expansion of the Chola empire.

Ans :

(B) Via trade and pilgrimage routes.
Buddhism, originating in India, reached China around the 1st century CE primarily through established ancient trade and pilgrimage routes.

30. Which temple in Quanzhou, China, features pillars depicting stories from the Rāmāyaṇa and Purāṇas?
(A) Pashupatinātha temple
(B) Kaiyuan temple
(C) Ananda temple
(D) Shwedagon Pagoda

Ans :

(B) Kaiyuan temple
In the 13th century, Hindu merchants built temples in Quanzhou; the Kaiyuan temple specifically features pillars with carvings of Viṣhṇu, Śhiva, and stories from the Rāmāyaṇa.

31. Consider the following statements about the Sundarban National Park:
1. It is jointly managed by India and Bangladesh.
2. It is the world's largest mangrove forest.
3. It serves as a natural barrier to cyclones.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(D) 1, 2, and 3
The Sundarban is the world's largest mangrove forest, coordinated by India and Bangladesh, and provides climate resilience by acting as a barrier to cyclones.

32. If an environmentalist is studying the threat of rising sea levels in South Asia, which shared ecological zone between India and Bangladesh would be a primary focus?
(A) The Thar Desert
(B) The Himalayas
(C) The Sundarban National Park
(D) The Palk Strait

Ans :

(C) The Sundarban National Park
The Sundarban National Park, a shared coastal mangrove forest, is highly vulnerable to global warming, with experts predicting rising sea levels will severely impact it.

33. What document shaped the modern diplomatic relations and open border policy between India and Nepal?
(A) The Land Border Crossing Agreement of 2018
(B) The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship
(C) The SAARC Charter of 1985
(D) The Indus Water Treaty

Ans :

(B) The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship
Diplomatic relations between India and Nepal are largely shaped by the 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship, which provides for open borders and free movement.

34. Which Hindu pilgrimage destination in Kathmandu draws thousands of Indian visitors every year?
(A) Hinglaj Mata Mandir
(B) Pashupatinātha temple
(C) Kaiyuan temple
(D) Ananda temple

Ans :

(B) Pashupatinātha temple
The Pashupatinātha temple in Kathmandu is a major Hindu pilgrimage destination that regularly draws thousands of Indian visitors.

35. What is the local name for Bhutan, meaning 'Land of the Thunder Dragon'?
(A) Suvarnabhūmi
(B) Drukyul
(C) Dväravatī
(D) Kapisha

Ans :

NODIA

22. What does the term 'jaywalking' refer to, an act which is heavily fined in Singapore?
(A) The act of disposing of litter or household waste in designated public parks or green zones.
(B) The operation of a motorized vehicle significantly above the posted legal speed limit.
(C) The act of pedestrians crossing a roadway outside of designated areas or against traffic signals.
(D) The unauthorized sale of commercial goods on public streets without a valid government permit.

Ans :

(C) The act of pedestrians crossing a roadway outside of designated areas or against traffic signals.
Jaywalking is defined as pedestrians walking or crossing roads without following established traffic rules, an offence heavily fined in Singapore.

23. Which ancient trade route historically linked the Ganga plains to Central Asia via Afghanistan?
(A) The Spice Route
(B) The Dakshiṇāpatha
(C) The Uttarāpatha
(D) The Trilateral Highway

Ans :

(C) The Uttarāpatha
The historic Uttarāpatha trade route stretched from the Ganga plains through major cities like Pāṭaliputra to Central Asia via Afghanistan.

24. Why does the Indian epic Mahābhārata refer to Persians as 'Pārasīka'?
(A) It was a linguistic mistranslation of a term originally used to describe nomadic spice traders.
(B) It reflects the ancient and continuous cultural contact between India and the Iranian plateau.
(C) It was a specific geographic designation for the guardians of the high-altitude mountain passes.
(D) It was a derogatory term strictly reserved for the soldiers of the Greek Macedonian invaders.

Ans :

(B) It reflects the ancient and continuous cultural contact between India and the Iranian plateau.
The mention of 'Pārasīka' in texts like the Mahābhārata highlights the ancient, continuous cultural and literary exchanges between India and Iran.

25. When was the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) formed?
(A) 1950
(B) 1971
(C) 1985
(D) 2004

Ans :

(C) 1985
Many nations in India's neighbourhood came together in 1985 to form SAARC to promote mutual interests, sociocultural, and economic progress.

26. Comparing the geography of Bhutan and the Maldives, which of the following is true?
(A) Both nations are classified as low-lying island territories located within the Indian Ocean.
(B) Both nations share a direct and contiguous land border with the People's Republic of China.
(C) Bhutan is a landlocked Himalayan kingdom, while the Maldives is a maritime archipelago.
(D) Bhutan is a primarily Hindu nation, while the Maldives is a strictly Buddhist island chain.

Ans :

(C) Bhutan is a landlocked Himalayan kingdom, while the Maldives is a maritime archipelago.
Bhutan is a landlocked nation nestled in the Himalayas, whereas the Maldives consists of over 1,100 islets located in the Indian Ocean.

27. Which two nations are considered India's immediate maritime neighbours across the waters?
(A) Iran and Oman
(B) Myanmar and Bangladesh
(C) Sri Lanka and the Maldives
(D) Thailand and Singapore

Ans :

(C) Sri Lanka and the Maldives
Because India is a maritime nation surrounded by the sea on three sides, Sri Lanka and the Maldives are her immediate neighbours across the waters.

28. If an Indian medical team is sent to quickly provide disaster relief to a nearby island nation after a cyclone, this action is an example of what concept?
(A) Cultural appropriation

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(A) 1 and 2 only
Sri Lanka is separated by the Palk Strait, and Buddhism was introduced by Mahendra and Sanghamitra. However, statement 3 is false, as Sri Lanka experienced a severe civil war from the mid-1980s to 2010.

43. What is the official language of the Maldives?
(A) Sinhala
(B) Dhivehi
(C) Malay
(D) Tamil

Ans :

(B) Dhivehi
The official language of the Maldives is Dhivehi (also called Maldivian), which borrows heavily from South Indian languages.

44. A massive ocean earthquake triggers a tsunami. Island nations like the Maldives face immediate devastation. Because of shared geography and a history of swift disaster response, which neighboring nation is highly likely to send the first ships carrying freshwater, medical supplies, and rescue teams to Malé?
(A) China
(B) Afghanistan
(C) India
(D) Singapore

Ans :

(C) India
India has a proven history of being the region's trusted first responder. Its swift assistance to the Maldives during the 2004 tsunami and 2014 Malé water crisis highlights its critical role in maritime disaster relief.

45. By the end of the century, how much is the sea level expected to rise, threatening the Maldives?
(A) 0.5 metres
(B) 1 metre
(C) 3 metres
(D) 5 metres

Ans :

(B) 1 metre
As a highly vulnerable island nation, the Maldives faces the threat of a sea-level rise which could reach 1 metre by the end of the century.

46. The modern India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway aims to improve what type of connectivity?
(A) Deep-sea submarine cables
(B) Air travel corridors
(C) Overland connectivity
(D) High-speed passenger rail

Ans :

(C) Overland connectivity
The Trilateral Highway stretching from Manipur through Myanmar to Thailand is a modern effort to improve overland connectivity and enhance regional trade.

47. In the 19th and 20th centuries, a large number of Indian workers migrated to Malaysia to work on what type of plantations?
(A) Tea plantations
(B) Coffee plantations
(C) Rubber plantations
(D) Cotton plantations

Ans :

(C) Rubber plantations
During the 19th and 20th centuries, numerous Indian workers, primarily from south India, migrated to Malaysia specifically to work as labour on rubber plantations.

48. **Assertion (A):** Singapore's official signages frequently feature the Tamil language.
Reason (R): Approximately 9 percent of Singaporean residents are of Indian origin, reflecting deep historical and cultural migration ties.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The presence of Tamil as an official language is a direct result of the significant population of Indian origin (about 9 percent) and the deep historical migration from South India to the region.

49. What is an 'archipelago'?
(A) A single, massive, unbroken landmass.
(B) A deep underwater trench.
(C) A narrow strait of water separating two countries.
(D) An extensive group of islands.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(B) Drukyul
Bhutan is called 'Drukyul', which translates to 'Land of the Thunder Dragon', by its inhabitants.

36. **Assertion (A):** Rivers originating in Bhutan are significant for bilateral cooperation with India.
Reason (R): These rivers serve as the foundation for major hydroelectric power generation that supplies renewable energy to India.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Rivers flowing from Bhutan into India are crucial because they power major hydroelectric plants, driving Bhutan's economic growth while supplying renewable energy to India.

37. Which Indian Buddhist master introduced the Vajrayāna school of Buddhism to Bhutan in the 8th century CE?
(A) Bodhidharma
(B) Faxian
(C) Guru Padmasambhava
(D) Xuanzang

Ans :

(C) Guru Padmasambhava
Guru Padmasambhava (also known as Guru Rinpoche) introduced the Vajrayāna school of Buddhism to Bhutan in the 8th century CE.

38. What unique metric does Bhutan use to holistically measure its nation's progress, focusing on sustainability and culture?
(A) Gross Domestic Product
(B) Gross National Happiness Index
(C) Human Development Index
(D) Regional Security Index

Ans :

(B) Gross National Happiness Index
Bhutan developed the Gross National Happiness Index to measure national progress holistically, incorporating ideas of sustainability, good governance, and culture.

39. Where did India gift a 16-foot replica of the Sarnath statue of the Buddha?
(A) Kaiyuan temple, China
(B) Shwedagon Pagoda, Myanmar
(C) Borobudur Stūpa, Indonesia
(D) Pashupatinātha temple, Nepal

Ans :

(B) Shwedagon Pagoda, Myanmar
India gifted a 16-foot replica of the Sarnath statue of the Buddha to the Shwedagon Pagoda in Yangon, Myanmar.

40. If an archaeologist is studying the spread of Mahāyāna Buddhism from India to Afghanistan, which destroyed monument would they primarily research?
(A) The Borobudur Stūpa
(B) The Ananda temple
(C) The Buddhas of Bamiyan
(D) The Kaiyuan temple

Ans :

(C) The Buddhas of Bamiyan
The gigantic Buddhas of Bamiyan, carved into Afghan cliffs, were powerful symbols of Mahāyāna Buddhism's reach from India before they were tragically destroyed in 2001.

NODIA

41. What does the ancient term 'Suvarnabhūmi' translate to?
(A) The Diamond Vehicle
(B) The Golden Land
(C) The Lion City
(D) The Land of the Thunder Dragon

Ans :

(B) The Golden Land
Ancient Indian traders visiting Southeast Asian regions like Java and Sumatra referred to them as 'Suvarnabhūmi', which translates to the 'golden land'.

42. Consider the following statements regarding Sri Lanka:
1. It is separated from India by the Palk Strait.
2. Buddhism was introduced there by Emperor Ashoka's children.
3. The country never experienced any civil conflict.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

Ans :

(C) Pakistan
The Katas Raj temple complex, linked to the Mahābhārata and containing a sacred pond, is located in Pakistan's Punjab region.

57. Which Indian island is located only about 130 km away from the Maldives?
(A) Sriharikota
(B) Majuli
(C) Minicoy
(D) Havelock

Ans :

(C) Minicoy
The Maldives is located only about 130 km from Minicoy, an island that is part of the Indian Union Territory of Lakshadweep.

58. What is the national symbol found on the Indonesian currency, the rupiah?
(A) The Thunder Dragon
(B) The Sarnath Lion
(C) Garuda
(D) The Bengal Tiger

Ans :

(C) Garuda
The Indonesian currency, the rupiah, carries the national symbol of Garuda, which is known in Hindu tradition as the vahana (vehicle) of Vishnu.

59. **Assertion (A):** Thailand's culture shows significant Indian influence despite having no shared land border.
Reason (R): Indian monks, scholars, and texts played a central role in shaping Thailand's religious foundations via ancient maritime trade routes.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Thailand's deep Indian cultural roots (like Ayutthayā and Theravāda Buddhism) were established because Indian traders and monks sailed there across maritime routes starting in the 3rd century BCE.

60. Which nation is considered India's closest defence partner in the Gulf region?
(A) Iran
(B) Saudi Arabia
(C) Oman
(D) Maldives

Ans :

(C) Oman
Oman holds the position of being India's closest defence partner in the Gulf, being the first in the region to hold joint military exercises with all three of India's armed forces.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

61. Match the following neighbouring countries to their descriptions:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	China	A.	Open border with India
2.	Nepal	B.	India's largest neighbour
3.	Bhutan	C.	Land of the Thunder Dragon
4.	Myanmar	D.	India's gateway to Southeast Asia

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
China is India's largest neighbouring country. Nepal shares an open border with India. Bhutan is popularly known as the "Land of the Thunder Dragon", and Myanmar acts as India's gateway to Southeast Asia through regional connectivity.

62. Match the following countries to their unique features:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Sri Lanka	A.	Over 1,100 islands
2.	Maldives	B.	Separated by Palk Strait

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

3.	Thailand	C.	Ayutthaya linked with Ayodhya
4.	Singapore	D.	Tamil is an official language

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Sri Lanka lies across the Palk Strait from India. Maldives consists of more than 1,100 islands. Thailand's Ayutthaya derives its name from Ayodhya, while Tamil remains one of Singapore's official languages.

63. Match the following organisations or agreements to their purpose:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	SAARC	A.	Promotes regional cooperation
2.	Kartarpur Corridor	B.	Visa-free pilgrimage route
3.	International Solar Alliance	C.	Solar energy cooperation
4.	Land Border Crossing Agreement	D.	Improved India–Myanmar movement

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
SAARC promotes cooperation among South Asian countries. Kartarpur Corridor enables easier pilgrimage access. The International Solar Alliance supports solar energy initiatives, and the India–Myanmar agreement improved border connectivity.

64. Match the following places with their significance:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Sundarban		Largest mangrove forest
2.	Pashupatinath Temple		Major Hindu pilgrimage site
3.	Bagan	C.	Ancient temple restoration
4.	Borobudur Stupa	D.	Largest Buddhist monument

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
Sundarban is the world's largest mangrove forest. Pashupatinath Temple in Nepal is an important pilgrimage centre. India helped restore temples in Bagan, and Borobudur in Indonesia is the world's largest Buddhist monument.

NODIA

65. Match the following historical-cultural connections:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Bodhidharma	A.	Spread Buddhism to China
2.	Guru Padmasambhava	B.	Introduced Vajrayana in Bhutan
3.	Mahendra & Sanghamitra	C.	Took Buddhism to Sri Lanka
4.	Uttarapatha	D.	Ancient trade route

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(D) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
Bodhidharma helped carry Buddhist teachings to China. Guru Padmasambhava introduced Vajrayana Buddhism to Bhutan. Mahendra and Sanghamitra introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka, while Uttarapatha served as an ancient trade route.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

VERY SHORT QUESTION

66. What defines a traditional neighbour?

Ans :

A country that shares a land boundary with another country.

67. What is the total length of India's land boundary?

Ans :

Over 15,100 km.

68. Name two immediate maritime neighbours of India.

Ans :

Sri Lanka and the Maldives.

69. Which religion forms a powerful cultural link between India and China?

Ans :

Buddhism.

70. In which century did Buddhism reach China from India?

Ans :

Around the 1st century CE.

71. What is India's chief export to China in 2024-2025?

Ans :

Iron ore, chemicals, and cotton yarn.

72. On what basis was Pakistan founded?

Ans :

Pakistan was founded on a religious basis.

73. In which year did the Kargil War take place?

Ans :

1999.

74. What is the Kartarpur Corridor?

Ans :

A visa-free border crossing between India and Pakistan.

75. In which year was Bangladesh born?

Ans :

1971.

76. Which UNESCO World Heritage Site is shared by India and Bangladesh?

Ans :

Sundarban National Park.

77. Which famous temple in Kathmandu is a major Hindu pilgrimage destination?

Ans :

Pashupatinatha temple.

78. What does 'Drukyul' mean?

Ans :

'Land of the Thunder Dragon'.

79. Who introduced the Vajrayana school of Buddhism to Bhutan?

Ans :

Guru Padmasambhava (Guru Rinpoche).

80. What was the earlier name for Myanmar?

Ans :

Burma.

81. Which ancient trade route linked the Ganga plains to Central Asia via Afghanistan?

Ans :

Uttarapatha trade route.

82. What does the term 'Suvarnabhumi' mean?

Ans :

The 'golden land'.

83. What does SAARC stand for?

Ans :

South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation.

84. What is the name of the narrow stretch of sea dividing India and Sri Lanka?

Ans :

Palk Strait.

85. Which ancient language shares vocabulary with Dhivehi, the official language of the Maldives?

Ans :

Sanskrit, Prakrit, Tamil, Malayalam, and Hindi.

86. What was the ancient name of Singapore?

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Singapuram.

87. Which religion travelled to Indonesia from the shores of India?

Ans :

Islam.

88. What is the world's largest Buddhist monument located in Indonesia?

Ans :

Borobudur Stupa.

89. Which ancient text of Zoroastrianism has parallels with India's Rigveda?

Ans :

The Avesta.

90. In which country is the Chabahar Port located?

Ans :

Iran.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

91. What is the difference between a traditional neighbour and a maritime neighbour?

Ans :

A traditional neighbour shares a direct land boundary, whereas a maritime neighbour is connected by a shared sea or ocean without a land border.

92. Why is the Indian Ocean significant for global trade?

Ans :

It transports half the world's container ships, one-third of bulk cargo, and two-thirds of the world's oil, connecting nations home to 2.7 billion people.

93. How does India's geographical location in the Indian Ocean benefit her?

Ans :

Her peninsular shape provides access to crucial sea routes, making her a vital link between Southeast Asia, West Asia, and Africa for trade and cooperation.

94. What is the trade balance situation between India and China?

Ans :

The trade balance heavily favours China, as her exports to India are worth approximately eight times more than India's exports to China.

95. Why is the border between India and Pakistan considered complex?

Ans :

It represents a shared heritage but also a tragically divided history, marked by multiple wars, frequent terrorist attacks, and ongoing military tensions since Partition.

96. What is the significance of the Kartarpur Corridor?

Ans :

It allows visa-free access for Indian pilgrims to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan, the final resting place of Sikhism's founder, Guru Nanak Dev.

97. What environmental threat faces the Sundarbans?

Ans :

Due to global warming and climate change, the Sundarbans face rising sea levels and increasingly intense cyclones, threatening homes and livelihoods.

98. How does the open border policy benefit India and Nepal?

Ans :

It allows citizens to cross freely without visas, facilitating access to education, healthcare, and employment, thereby reinforcing the social and economic integration of border communities.

99. What is a major area of economic cooperation between India and Bhutan?

Ans :

Hydroelectric power generation is significant, as major power plants in Bhutan contribute to its economic growth while supplying renewable energy to India.

100. What are the three main schools of Buddhism discussed in the chapter?

Ans :

The three main schools are Theravada (School

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

of the Elders), Mahayana (Great Vehicle), and Vajrayana (Diamond Vehicle or Tantric Buddhism).

101. How did the Land Border Crossing Agreement of 2018 affect India and Myanmar?

Ans :

It eased cross-border movement for local residents, boosted trade, enhanced connectivity, and deepened people-to-people ties, particularly between India's northeast and Myanmar.

102. How are India and Afghanistan historically connected?

Ans :

They were linked by the ancient Uttarapatha trade route, which fostered centuries of exchange in goods, religion (Buddhism and Hinduism), art, and philosophy.

103. What is the primary purpose of SAARC?

Ans :

SAARC aims to promote mutual interests, socio-cultural and economic progress, and share resources for development in science, education, and health among South Asian nations.

104. How did the civil war in Sri Lanka impact India?

Ans :

The conflict between the Sinhalese majority and the Tamil minority caused many Tamil families to flee Sri Lanka and seek refuge in south India, especially Tamil Nadu.

105. In what ways did India assist the Maldives during crises?

Ans :

India provided quick disaster relief during the 2004 tsunami, the 2014 water crisis in Male, and the COVID-19 pandemic, reinforcing her role as a trusted first responder.

106. Why are the Maldives highly vulnerable to climate change?

Ans :

As an island nation, rising sea levels could reach 1 metre by the end of the century, potentially submerging many of its islands.

107. How did Indian culture influence the names of Thai kingdoms?

Ans :

The Dvaravati culture referenced Krishna's city Dvaraka, and the Ayutthaya Kingdom was named after Ayodhya, illustrating profound Indian civilizational impact.

108. What is the significance of the India-Myanmar-Thailand Trilateral Highway?

Ans :

This modern highway improves overland connectivity, enhances regional trade, and supports greater cooperation, reviving age-old connections between the three nations.

109. How did Indian culture influence the Malay Peninsula historically?

Ans :

Early Hindu and Buddhist influences led to names like 'Srivijaya Kingdom' and the adoption of a script based on Brahmi, impacts still visible in Malaysian art and literature.

110. What is notable about the modern Indian presence in Singapore?

Ans :

About 9 percent of Singapore's residents are of Indian origin, and Singapore is a large foreign investor in India, with vibrant contacts in trade, tourism, and education.

111. How are India and Indonesia cooperating in modern times?

Ans :

They work closely in regional groups to promote peace, trade, and sustainable development, with strong strategic cooperation in maritime security, defence, and disaster relief.

112. Why was the Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre established?

Ans :

Following the devastating 2004 tsunami, it was established to provide early alerts to India and neighbouring countries, potentially saving lives during ocean floor earthquakes.

113. How were India and Iran connected historically?

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

5. THE DECCAN AND THE DEEP SOUTH

South of the Vindhyas, several dynasties vied for supremacy:

1. The Chalukyas: Ruling from Vātāpi (Badami), Pulakeśhin II expanded the empire significantly. The dynasty is famed for its magnificent cave temples and the Aihole inscription composed by Ravikīrti. An eastern branch later ruled from Vengi.
2. The Pallavas: Centred at Kanchipuram, rulers like Mahendravarman I and Narasimhavarman I patronised incredible rock-cut and monolithic temple architecture at Mamallapuram. They engaged in extensive maritime trade with Southeast Asia and Rome.
3. Pāndyas, Cheras, and Cholas: In the deep south, the Pāndyas ruled from Madurai, fostering a rich cultural centre. The Cheras maintained independence along the Kerala coast. By the 9th century, the Cholas re-emerged under Vijayālaya and Aditya I, establishing a vast empire from Tanjāvūr known for its efficient administration, powerful navy, and fertile Kaveri delta agriculture.

6. POLITY, ADMINISTRATION, AND SOCIETY

With the decentralisation of power, kings increasingly relied on sāmantas (vassals) to manage local administration and lead armies. A robust land grant system brought uncultivated land into agricultural use, boosting crop diversity and agro-based industries. While society remained largely agrarian, trade flourished through merchant guilds, connecting local economies to international maritime networks spanning from the Middle East to China.

Society grew more complex with the multiplication of jātis (castes based on occupation or region), though the system remained somewhat flexible, absorbing local tribes and foreign migrants. Women's roles varied, with some working in agriculture and courts, and queens like Tribhuvana Mahadevi I of the Bhauma-Karas ascending the throne and ruling effectively.

7. CULTURAL AND SCIENTIFIC FLOURISHING

Religious pluralism was the norm, with rulers patronising Hinduism, Buddhism, and Jainism. This era witnessed the massive pan-Indian spread of the Bhakti movement, originating in the South with the poetry of the Ālvārs (devotees of Vishnu) and Nāyanārs (devotees of Shiva).

In science, India achieved unparalleled heights. The mathematician Brahmagupta formulated the rules for zero, negative numbers, and early algebra. Other luminaries like Bhāskara I, Virahānka, and Mahāvīra refined astronomical calculations and mathematics, knowledge that was later transmitted to the Arab world and eventually Europe.

8. FOREIGN INVASIONS AND ASSIMILATION

The subcontinent faced external threats, notably from the Hūṇas in the 6th century, who were defeated by the Aulikaras and subsequently assimilated into Indian society. In the 8th century, Arab forces under Muhammad bin Qasim conquered Sindh. However, fierce resistance from indigenous rulers, including the Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Kashmiri kings, confined Arab political dominion to the northwest. Despite military conflicts, this interaction spurred significant cultural and scientific exchanges, most notably the transmission of the Indian numeral system to the globe.

LET'S EXPLORE

NODIA

Do you recall where the capital of the earlier Maurya and Gupta empires was located? How do you think this shift may have shaped the sub-continent's politics in the years to come?

Ans :

The capital of the earlier Maurya and Gupta empires was Pataliputra (modern-day Patna). The shift of the capital to Kannauj (Kānyakubja) by Harshavardhana moved the political center of gravity further west and north into the fertile Ganga-Yamuna Doab region. This shift established Kannauj as the new ultimate symbol of imperial sovereignty in North India, which directly sparked the intense "Tripartite Struggle" centuries later as the Palas, Gurjara-Pratihāras, and Rashtrakūtas fought fiercely to control it.

2. If you know the Devanagari script, with the help of your teacher try to identify some of the letters in Harsha's signature.

122. Evaluate India's role as a "first responder" in the Indian Ocean region.

Ans :

India leverages its strategic maritime position to provide crucial, timely humanitarian aid and disaster relief to its neighbors. This was notably demonstrated through rapid assistance to the Maldives during the 2004 tsunami, the 2014 water crisis, and the COVID-19 pandemic, solidifying India's reputation as a reliable and responsive regional partner.

123. Discuss the impact of the 2004 tsunami on regional cooperation in the Indian Ocean.

Ans :

The devastating 2004 tsunami, which killed over 200,000 people regionally, exposed the urgent need for comprehensive early warning systems. In response, India collaborated with Indonesia, Sri Lanka, and Thailand to establish a vital network of sensors and satellites, including the Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre, to alert nations and potentially save lives during future oceanic earthquakes.

124. How do shared cultural narratives, such as the Ramayana, influence Southeast Asian societies?

Ans :

Shared cultural narratives like the Ramayana profoundly influence Southeast Asian societies by integrating Indian mythology into local arts, literature, and royal ceremonies. For instance, Thai monarchs are named after Rama, and massive sculptures depicting Hindu myths, like the churning of the ocean, are prominently featured in public spaces like the Bangkok airport, demonstrating deep civilizational impact.

125. Analyse the historical and contemporary ties between India and Iran.

Ans :

India and Iran share ancient ties dating to the Bronze Age, connected by land and sea routes that facilitated the exchange of goods, language, and culture. Contemporary relations focus on robust economic and strategic cooperation, notably India's investment in Iran's Chabahar Port, which secures vital Indian access to Central Asian markets despite ongoing international geopolitical challenges.

CASE BASED QUESTION

126. An Indian trader travels to a neighbouring island nation famous for its beaches. While there, he notices that the local language, Dhivehi, sounds somewhat familiar, containing words similar to Sanskrit and Hindi. He also enjoys a local coconut curry that strongly reminds him of the food from South India.

(a) Which island nation is the trader visiting?
(b) Why does the local language contain words similar to Indian languages?
(c) How does this case demonstrate the impact of maritime neighbours?

Ans :

(a) The trader is visiting the Maldives.
(b) Dhivehi is a blend shaped by centuries of maritime contact, borrowing words from Sanskrit, Prakrit, Tamil, Malayalam, and modern Hindi.
(c) It shows that maritime proximity facilitates deep, enduring cultural exchanges, influencing essential aspects of life like language, cuisine, and daily traditions across borders.

NODIA

127. A student in Kathmandu wakes up, crosses the border into Bihar without needing to show a passport, and attends her college classes. After school, she buys essential medicines in the Indian market to take back home to her family, a daily routine for many in her town.

(a) Which two countries are involved in this scenario?
(b) What diplomatic agreement allows this student to cross the border freely?
(c) Evaluate the socio-economic benefits of this specific border policy.

Ans :

(a) India and Nepal.
(b) The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship, which provides for open borders.
(c) The open border reinforces social integration and economic development by allowing vital, unhindered access to education, healthcare, employment, and essential trade between bordering communities.

128. A diplomat is overseeing a major project in a landlocked Himalayan kingdom. The project involves a large river that flows down into India. The diplomat's goal is to ensure the completion of

making it easier for rulers to control nearby regions and expand their influence in different directions.

(d) Kannauj was also a major cultural and commercial centre. It was prosperous and attracted scholars, traders, and religious groups, increasing its importance and prestige among rulers.

5. Form groups in your class to discuss the following questions,then compare the groups' answers.

(a) What qualities does Kalhaṇa think a historian should have?

(b) What do these lines reveal about his method of gathering information? In what ways does it resemble or differ from the way history is currently written?

(c) Kalhaṇa also writes, "That noble-minded poet is alone worthy of praise whose words, like that of a judge, remain free from love or hatred in relating the facts of the past." What does he mean by 'free from love or hatred'? How would meeting this condition make a historian more reliable?

Ans :

(a) Kalhana believed that a historian must be honest and impartial, relying on trustworthy sources instead of imagination or flattery. He critically studied earlier texts, inscriptions, temple records, and land grants to verify facts, correct errors, and present events in a proper sequence. He also believed that history should convey moral lessons, showing that just rulers succeed, while unjust rulers and their families ultimately face downfall.

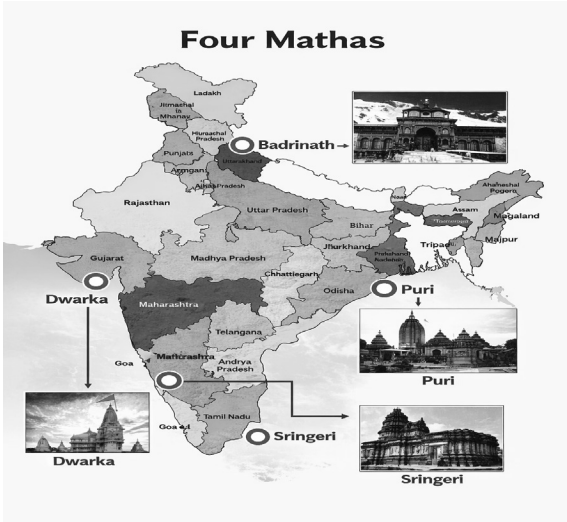
(b) These lines indicate that Kalhana collected information from earlier texts, inscriptions, temple records, royal grants, and accounts of kings, and then compared them to identify and correct errors. His approach is similar to modern historical methods, as historians today also depend on reliable sources, evidence, and cross-verification. However, his method differs in that he sometimes included moral judgments and narratives to convey lessons, whereas modern historians focus more on factual accuracy, critical analysis, and minimizing personal bias.

(c) Kalhana's idea that a historian should be "free from love or hatred" means that they must remain impartial while writing history. They should neither favor nor oppose any ruler, dynasty, or event, and must keep personal emotions, bias, and loyalty out of their work. By maintaining such neutrality, historians can present facts accurately and honestly, without exaggerating achievements or concealing faults. This approach enhances the credibility of their work, as readers can trust that it is based on evidence rather than personal opinions.

6. Śhankarāchārya taught that brahman is the ultimate reality or the pure consciousness, and that the world aswe perceive it is māyā or illusion. He established four maṭhas (monasteries and centres of learning) at Badrinath, Puri, Dwarka, and Sringeri. Mark the location of these cities on a map; why do you think he chose four different corners of India rather than more central locations?

Ans :

Adi Shankaracharya strategically placed his mathas at the four geographical extremes of the subcontinent: Badrinath (North), Puri (East), Dwarka (West), and Sringeri (South) . He likely chose these corners to symbolically and spiritually unite the entire Indian subcontinent under the Advaita Vedanta philosophy, making his teachings accessible across diverse regional landscapes and effectively creating a pan-Indian religious network.



7. Note this panel's (Fig.) highly dynamic three-dimensional composition, expressing Durga's confident assault on the demon.

(a) Can you identify some of Durga's many weapons? And her vāhana?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 3

EMPIRES AND KINGDOM : 6TH TO 10TH CENTURIES

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION TO A TRANSFORMATIVE ERA

The period spanning from the 6th to the 10th century CE in the Indian subcontinent—often referred to as the "post-classical" or "early medieval" era—marks a significant transition. Following the decline of the mighty Gupta Empire, the subcontinent did not plunge into a dark age of historical void. Instead, it blossomed into a highly dynamic and vibrant landscape characterised by the rise of powerful regional kingdoms. While no single empire maintained lasting absolute supremacy over the entire landmass, these decentralised kingdoms fostered incredible advancements in art, architecture, literature, science, and philosophy.

2. HARSHAVARDHANA AND THE PUSHYABHŪTIS

In northern India, the Pushyabhūti (or Vardhana) dynasty rose to prominence under the remarkable ruler Harshavardhana, who ascended the throne in 606 CE. Shifting his capital from Sthāneshvara to Kannauj, Harsha expanded his empire across large parts of northern and eastern India. He was a noted poet, dramatist, and a patron of scholars like Bāṇabhaṭṭa, who authored the famous biography Harshacharita and the classical novel Kādambarī. During his reign, the Chinese pilgrim Xuanzang visited India (630–644 CE), leaving behind a meticulous travelogue detailing the region's prosperity, Harsha's grand assemblies at Prayāga, and his deep respect for various religious sects. Despite his northern successes, Harsha's southward expansion was decisively halted at the Narmada River by the Chalukya king Pulakeśhin II.

3. THE TRIPARTITE STRUGGLE FOR KANNAUJ

Following Harsha's death in 647 CE, Kannauj became the ultimate prize for three emerging imperial powers in a prolonged conflict known as the 'Tripartite Struggle'.

1. The Pālas: Emerging in eastern India around 750 CE under Gopala, the Pāla dynasty was further expanded by Dharmapāla. They were great patrons of Mahāyāna Buddhism, founding massive monastic universities like Vikramaśhilā and Somapura, which attracted international scholars. The Pālas also maintained robust maritime trade with Southeast Asia.
2. The Gurjara-Pratīhāras: Dominating western and central India, this dynasty successfully repulsed early Arab invasions. Their most celebrated ruler, King Bhoja (also known as Mihira or Ādi Varāha), built a vast empire stretching from Punjab to Kannauj.
3. The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas: Originating in the Deccan after overthrowing the Chalukyas, the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas ruled from Mānyakheṭa. King Krishna I commissioned the magnificent monolithic Kailashanātha temple at Ellora. Another notable ruler, Amoghavarsha I, was a patron of Jainism and literature, ruling over a prosperous and tolerant kingdom that was highly praised by Arab historians like Al-Masūdī.

4. DEVELOPMENTS IN KASHMIR

In the far north, the Himalayan kingdom of Kashmir emerged as a major political and cultural hub. The 12th-century historian Kalhaṇa documented its history in his epic Sanskrit poem, Rājataranginī. Notable rulers included the powerful Lalitāditya Muktāpīda of the Karkoṭa dynasty and the strategic, albeit ruthless, 10th-century Queen Didda. Kashmir became a vibrant centre for Sanskrit learning, Buddhist scholarship, and a unique philosophical school known as Kashmir Shaivism, spearheaded by scholars like Abhinavagupta.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

They were connected by land routes that became part of the Silk Route and sea routes, facilitating the exchange of goods, ideas, language, and culture since the Bronze Age.

114. What is the significance of the Chabahar Port for India?

Ans :

India's development of Iran's Chabahar Port provides India with better, strategic access to Afghanistan and Central Asia for trade and transport.

115. What evidence suggests early trade between the Harappan civilization and Oman?

Ans :

It is believed that Harappan traders brought back copper ingots from Oman to the coppersmiths of the Indus-Sarasvati cities, demonstrating trade links dating back over 5,000 years.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

116. Analyse the role of Buddhism in connecting India with her neighbours.

Ans :

Buddhism, originating in India, served as a profound cultural and spiritual bridge to numerous Asian nations. It travelled to China via trade routes, prompting monks like Xuanzang to visit India for learning. In Bhutan, Guru Padmasambhava introduced Vajrayana Buddhism, deeply shaping its religious identity. Similarly, Emperor Ashoka's children introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka, establishing an enduring shared heritage.

117. Evaluate the complexity of the India-Pakistan relationship.

Ans :

The India-Pakistan relationship is highly complex, rooted in a shared pre-1947 history but marred by the traumatic Partition. While frequent wars, military conflicts, and terrorist attacks create ongoing tension, shared cultural elements like language, cuisine, and initiatives like the Kartarpur Corridor demonstrate persistent, underlying connections and intermittent attempts at peace.

118. Discuss the geographical and economic interdependence between India and Bangladesh.

Ans :

India and Bangladesh share a massive land border and vital transboundary river systems originating from the Ganga and Brahmaputra, which are crucial for agriculture and livelihoods in both nations. Furthermore, they share a maritime environment and jointly coordinate the protection of the Sundarban National Park, highlighting their deep environmental and economic interdependence.

119. How does the 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship shape India-Nepal relations?

Ans :

The 1950 Treaty forms the bedrock of India-Nepal diplomatic relations, providing for open borders that allow free movement of people and goods without visas. This policy deeply integrates border communities, facilitating access to education, employment, and healthcare, while establishing India as Nepal's largest trading partner for essential goods.

120. Analyse the significance of maritime routes in spreading Indian culture to Southeast Asia.

Ans :

Ancient Indian traders sailed maritime routes to Southeast Asia seeking resources, bringing along religious and cultural ideas that deeply influenced the region. This resulted in shared architectural styles, such as the Angkor Wat temple , the adoption of Indian scripts in Malaysia , and the integration of Hindu epics like the Ramayana into Thai culture and royal traditions.

121. Examine the historical and modern relationship between India and Afghanistan.

Ans :

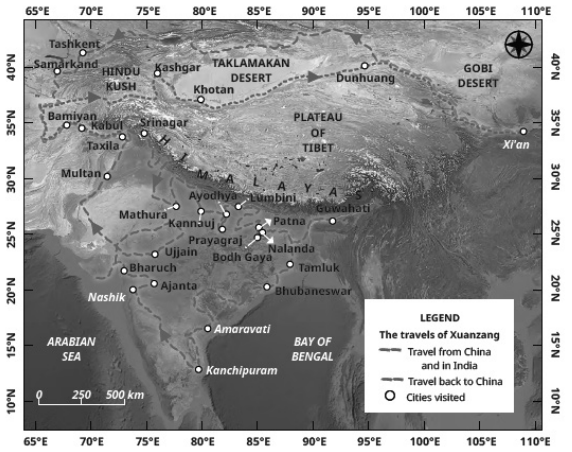
Historically, the Uttarapatha trade route linked India and Afghanistan, fostering centuries of cultural exchange and establishing Afghanistan as a thriving center of Buddhism before the 7th century CE. Today, despite geopolitical challenges, India supports Afghanistan through significant infrastructure projects, like the Parliament building and highways, reflecting enduring friendship and strategic interests.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

Some of the Devanagari letters we can identify in Haraha's signature are:
ह, म, र, ज, स, श्री, त।

3. Looking at the map, can you identify a few mountain passes or desert areas that Xuanzang had to cross while travelling between China and India? Can you also identify a few important Buddhist centres of learning that Xuanzang visited in India? Do you know something of their significance?

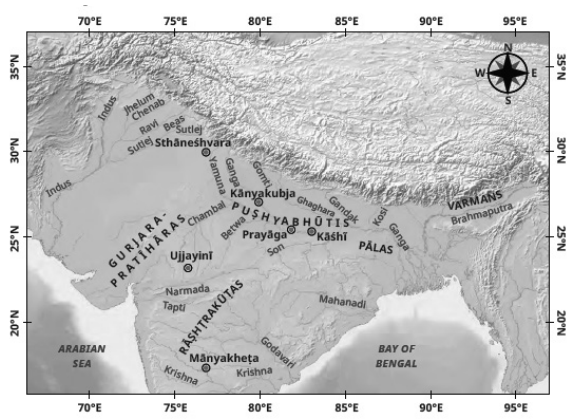


Ans :

From the map, it can be understood that Xuanzang had to cross several difficult deserts and mountain regions while travelling from China to India.

1. Among the desert regions, the Gobi Desert in northern China and Mongolia was a vast cold desert with extreme weather conditions such as freezing nights, hot days, and sandstorms. The Taklamakan Desert in Central Asia was extremely dangerous and is often called the "Desert of No Return." Xuanzang crossed it while travelling along the Silk Route through oasis towns like Khotan.
2. In terms of mountain regions, the Tibetan Plateau, known as the "Roof of the World," had high altitude and thin air, making travel very tiring. The Himalayas, the highest mountain range in the world, were very difficult to cross due to snow, extreme cold, landslides, and narrow passes. The Hindu Kush Mountains near Afghanistan were rugged and steep, with important passes connecting Central Asia to India.
3. Xuanzang, a famous Chinese Buddhist monk of the 7th century CE, visited many important Buddhist centres of learning in India and described them in his book Great Tang Records on the Western Regions.
4. Some important centres he visited and their significance are as follows:
   i. Nalanda was a world-famous Buddhist university known for higher learning and scholarship.
   ii. Lumbini was the birthplace of Gautama Buddha and an important pilgrimage site.
   iii. Ajanta was known for its Buddhist cave monasteries and beautiful paintings.
   iv. Bodh Gaya was the place where Buddha attained enlightenment and is considered the spiritual centre of Buddhism.
   v. Taxila was an early centre of education offering multiple subjects and is regarded as a precursor to later universities.

4. Why was Kannauj so attractive to those powerful dynasties? Observe its location on the map (Fig. 3.3) and discuss in class.



Ans :

Kannauj attracted powerful dynasties in early medieval India because of its strategic geographical importance.

(a) It was located in the fertile Ganga–Yamuna Doab, a region known for rich agricultural production. Control over Kannauj ensured access to abundant food resources, a large population, and high revenue.

(b) Kannauj was situated near the River Ganga, an important route for transport and trade. This allowed easy movement of goods, people, and armies, strengthening both economic and military power.

(c) It occupied a central position in North India,

NODIA

a massive power plant that will generate electricity for the host country to use and export to India.
(a) Which country is the diplomat working in?
(b) What type of power plant is being constructed?
(c) Why is this project a strong example of bilateral cooperation?

Ans :

(a) Bhutan, the 'Land of the Thunder Dragon'.
(b) A hydroelectric power plant.
(c) It demonstrates mutual benefit; the project drives Bhutan's economic growth while simultaneously supplying vital renewable energy to India, utilizing shared geographic resources sustainably.

129. A historian is studying ancient connections across the Arabian Sea. She examines a large, solid block of metal discovered in the ruins of an Indus Valley city. Chemical analysis traces the origin of this metal back to a specific region on the southeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula.
(a) What type of metal block is the historian studying?
(b) Which modern-day nation did this metal originate from?
(c) What does this artifact reveal about ancient maritime trade?

Ans :

(a) She is studying a copper ingot.
(b) It originated from Oman.
(c) It proves that sophisticated, long-distance maritime trade and economic interaction existed between the Harappan civilization and the Gulf region over 5,000 years ago.

130. Following a catastrophic natural disaster that swept across the ocean, a group of nations convenes a summit. They realize that their individual warning systems are inadequate. They decide to pool their resources to build a shared network of advanced sensors and communication links to protect their coastal populations in the future.
(a) What specific natural disaster prompted this international cooperation?
(b) Which Indian facility was established as a result of this cooperation?
(c) How does this initiative reflect the concept of regionalism?

Ans :

(a) The massive 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami triggered by a powerful earthquake.
(b) The Indian Tsunami Early Warning Centre in Hyderabad.
(c) It shows nations moving beyond simple borders to collaboratively address shared vulnerabilities, creating shared infrastructure to ensure the peace, stability, and safety of the entire region.

www.nodia.in

Download all NCERT Based Worksheet FREE PDF
visit. **www.momworksheet.com**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(b) What are the main differences between her attendants and the demon's attendants?
(c) What does the demon's slanted posture and general attitude indicate?

Ans :

(a) In this panel, Goddess Durga is depicted holding multiple weapons in her hands, symbolising her immense power and divine strength. These include a trident (trishul), sword, bow and arrow, mace, and spear, which were bestowed upon her by different gods to aid in the defeat of the buffalo demon Mahishasura. Alongside her is her vahana, the lion, which represents courage, strength, and fearlessness.
(b) Durga's attendants appear confident, calm, and well-organised, standing ready to support her. In contrast, the demon's attendants look frightened, confused, and weak, showing signs of panic and defeat. This contrast highlights Durga's strength and the disorder on the demon's side.
(c) The demon's slanted posture shows weakness, imbalance, and defeat. His falling back suggests loss of control and inability to resist Durga's attack. It symbolizes fear, confusion, and the downfall of evil before divine power.

8. What details do you observe in these coins (Fig.)?

Ans :

Both coins display the ruler's profile on one side, while the other side features symbols or decorative designs such as a wheel. The coin of Toramana also includes his name "Tora" inscribed in Brahmi script.

9. Why do the coins of Toramāṇa and Skandagupta appear so similar?

Ans :

The coins appear similar because the Huna rulers adopted the Gupta style of coinage. They imitated the design, shape, and symbols to display power and legitimacy. Through this, Toramana aimed to present himself as a rightful Indian ruler like the Guptas.

10. What conclusions can you draw?

Ans :

These coins indicate that coin design was used to express authority. Foreign rulers like the Hunas adopted Indian symbols to gain acceptance and present themselves as legitimate rulers rather than outsiders.

11. The Chachnama records that when King Dahar was killed, his widowed queen put up a brave resistance, and when the situation became hopeless, she immolated herself along with other ladies. Another queen ordered her treasure to be distributed among the brave soldiers and inspired them to stand against the invaders.
(a) What does this suggest about the way the indigenous people responded to invasions?
(b) Why do you think the queen chose to give away her treasure?
(c) What does this reveal about the role of women in warfare?

Ans :

(a) It shows that the local people resisted strongly, fighting bravely and continuing to defend their land even after their king's death.
(b) She distributed her treasure to motivate and reward the soldiers, encouraging them to keep fighting. It also helped provide the resources needed to resist the invaders.
(c) It shows that women were active and courageous, not weak. They took leadership roles, inspired soldiers, and made sacrifices for their kingdom during times of war.

THINK ABOUT IT

1. Does the above ceremony remind you of a similar event discussed in Part 1 of this textbook?

NODIA

29. Which dynasty overthrew the Chalukyas in the Deccan to establish their own dominant empire?
(A) The Pālas
(B) The Cholas
(C) The Rāṣhṭrakūtas
(D) The Cheras

Ans :

(C) The Rāṣhṭrakūtas
In the mid-8th century, Dantidurga overthrew the Chalukyas, establishing the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa empire which dominated the Deccan and parts of India for two centuries.

30. Which Rāṣhṭrakūṭa king commissioned the carving of the magnificent Kailashanātha temple at Ellora?
(A) Amoghavarsha I
(B) Krishna I
(C) Pulakeśhin II
(D) Dantidurga

Ans :

(B) Krishna I
The massive Kailashanātha temple at Ellora, carved entirely out of a single hillside, was commissioned by the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler Krishna I.

31. Who was the 12th-century author of the Rājataranginī, an epic poem detailing the history of Kashmir?
(A) Bāṇabhaṭṭa
(B) Abhinavagupta
(C) Kalhaṇa
(D) Ravikīrti

Ans :

(C) Kalhaṇa
The Kashmiri scholar and poet Kalhaṇa composed the Rājataranginī (River of Kings) in the 12th century, serving as a critical historical source for the region.

32. **Assertion (A):** Queen Didda of Kashmir consolidated her power using extremely ruthless methods.
Reason (R): According to Kalhaṇa, she eliminated her rivals, including her own grandsons, to maintain control.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Queen Didda is noted for her strong strategic alliances but also her ruthlessness, directly eliminating threats to her throne, including family members, to consolidate power.

33. What does the term 'monolithic' mean in the context of ancient Indian architecture?
(A) Built using thousands of small bricks.
(B) Carved entirely out of a single stone or rock.
(C) Designed by a single architect.
(D) Dedicated to the worship of only one deity.

Ans :

(B) Carved entirely out of a single stone or rock.
Monolithic architecture refers to structures, like the rock-cut temples at Mamallapuram or the Bahubali statue, that are carved out of a single ('mono') solid rock ('lithic').

34. Which philosophical school produced great scholars like Abhinavagupta in northern India?
(A) Advaita Vedanta
(B) Theravada Buddhism
(C) Kashmir Shaivism
(D) Jain Digambara

Ans :

(C) Kashmir Shaivism
The region of Kashmir was home to Kashmir Shaivism, a profound philosophical school that produced renowned scholars and aestheticians like Abhinavagupta.

35. Which Chalukya capital is famous for its complex of magnificent Hindu and Jain cave temples?
(A) Vātāpi (Badami)
(B) Kānchī
(C) Madurai
(D) Ujjayinī

Ans :

(A) Vātāpi (Badami)
The Chalukya capital under Pulakeśhin II was Vātāpi (modern-day Badami), which remains renowned for its exquisite complex of rock-cut Hindu and Jain cave temples.

36. Who composed the lengthy Sanskrit inscription at the Meguti temple in Aihole praising Pulakeśhin II?
(A) Dandin
(B) Ravikīrti

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

NCERT EXERCISE

1. If you lived in Kannauj during the struggle between the Pālas, the Pratīhāras and the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas, how would it change your daily life and your estimate of the rulers? Write a letter on this to your friend living in Kanchipuram.

Ans :

Dear Friend,
I hope you are well in Kanchipuram. Life here in Kannauj has become very difficult due to the constant struggle between the Pālas, the Pratīhāras, and the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas. Wars occur frequently, and we often live in fear of sudden attacks. Trade and travel have been disturbed, and prices of essential goods have increased. Farmers and merchants are the worst affected, as their work is often interrupted.
Because of this, my opinion of the rulers has changed. Instead of bringing peace and stability, they seem more focused on gaining power. Although they are strong and ambitious, their continuous conflicts cause suffering to common people like us.
I wish for a time when a ruler will bring peace and ensure the safety and prosperity of all. I hope life in your city is much calmer.
Yours lovingly,
[Your Name]

2. Emperors and kings during this period controlled only core regions and governed other regions through subordinate vassals. What would be the advantages and the challenges of such a system?

Ans :

1. Advantages of this system : The emperor did not need to manage every region directly. Local rulers, being familiar with local customs and conditions, could administer the areas more effectively. It also made expansion easier, as responsibilities were shared among subordinate rulers.
2. Challenges of this system : Subordinate rulers could grow too powerful and rebel against the emperor. At times, they failed to follow orders or pay taxes properly. Communication with distant regions was slow, leading to delays and conflicts.

3. In what ways were the invasions of the Hūṇas and the Arabs different in their aims, methods, and impact on the Indian subcontinent? Prepare a write-up, discuss and present it in the class.

Ans :

Difference between the Invasions of the Hūṇas and the Arabs
The invasions of the Hūṇas and the Arabs differed in their aims, methods, and impact on the Indian subcontinent.

1. Aims : The Hūṇas mainly aimed at plundering wealth and establishing political control. Their invasions were driven by conquest and expansion. In contrast, the Arabs aimed not only at expansion but also at spreading Islam along with establishing trade and political influence.
2. Methods : The Hūṇas used violent and destructive methods. They attacked cities, destroyed settlements, and caused large-scale damage. On the other hand, the Arabs combined military action with trade and diplomacy. After conquering Sindh, they established administration and maintained order.
3. Impact : The Hūṇas caused significant destruction and instability, weakening existing kingdoms like the Guptas. Their impact was mostly negative and short-lived. In contrast, the Arab invasion had a more lasting impact. It led to cultural exchange, growth of trade, and the introduction of new ideas, religions, and administrative practices in India.

4. Imagine you are a common citizen watching the Prayāga assembly. How would you react to Harṣha giving away most of his wealth?

Ans :

If I were a common citizen watching the Prayāga assembly, I would feel amazed and deeply impressed by Harṣha's generosity. Seeing a king give away most of his wealth to the poor, scholars, and religious groups would make me respect him as a kind and just ruler. It would also create a sense of trust and admiration among people, as such actions show care for society and the welfare of all.

5. Forming groups, let each group choose one Ālvār and one Nāyanār and prepare a biography poster or booklet. Include their life stories and a sample poem or two (in translation).

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ālvār: Āṇḍāl (Vaishnavite Saint)
Āṇḍāl was the only female Ālvār saint and a devoted follower of Lord Vishnu. She was born in Tamil Nadu and adopted by the saint Periyāḻvār. From a young age, she showed deep devotion and composed beautiful devotional poems. Her most famous works are Tiruppāvai and Nācciyār Tirumoḻi, which express love and surrender to Vishnu. She is remembered for her pure devotion and is worshipped as a divine figure.
Sample Poem (Translation):
"O Lord, we come to you with pure hearts,
Grant us your grace and eternal joy."
Nāyanār: Appar (Shaivite Saint)
Appar, also known as Tirunāvukkarasar, was a great devotee of Lord Shiva. He was born in Tamil Nadu and initially followed Jainism, but later returned to Shaivism. He travelled widely, singing hymns in praise of Shiva and spreading devotion among people. His compositions are part of the Tevaram. He emphasized humility, service, and devotion.
Sample Poem (Translation):
"O Shiva, you are my refuge and strength,
Guide me on the path of truth and devotion."

6. You will notice that our maps show only ancient names for the kingdoms' capitals and main cities. Using a pencil, mark the modern names next to their original names. Refer the current map of India and try to locate those cities on it.

Ans :

The modern names of the cities shown on the map can be identified by comparing them with a present-day map of India and surrounding regions.

Ancient Names → Modern Names

1. Kānyakubja → Kannauj (Uttar Pradesh)
2. Prayāga → Prayagraj (Uttar Pradesh)
3. Kāśī → Varanasi (Uttar Pradesh)
4. Pāṭaliputra → Patna (Bihar)
5. Mathurā → Mathura (Uttar Pradesh)
6. Ayodhyā → Ayodhya (Uttar Pradesh)
7. Nālandā → Nalanda (Bihar)
8. Bodh Gayā → Bodh Gaya (Bihar)
9. Lumbinī → Lumbini (Nepal)
10. Takṣaśilā → Taxila (Pakistan)
11. Śrīnagara → Srinagar (Jammu & Kashmir)
12. Kābul → Kabul (Afghanistan)
13. Bāmiyān → Bamiyan (Afghanistan)
14. Khotan → Hotan (China, Xinjiang)
15. Samarkand → Samarkand (Uzbekistan)
16. Dunhuang → Dunhuang (China)
17. Xi'an → Xi'an (China)
18. Ujjayinī → Ujjain (Madhya Pradesh)
19. Bharukaccha → Bharuch (Gujarat)
20. Kāñchī → Kanchipuram (Tamil Nadu)
21. Amarāvatī → Amaravati (Andhra Pradesh)
22. Nāśikya → Nashik (Maharashtra)

This comparison helps us understand the historical locations in terms of modern geography.

7. Match the ruler or the dynasty with the city.

	Column I		Column II
(a)	Rāṣhṭrakūṭas	(i)	Kānchī
(b)	Gurjara-Pratīhāras	(ii)	Tanjāvūr
(c)	Cholas	(iii)	Mānyakheṭa
(d)	Harṣhavardhana	(iv)	Ujjayinī
(e)	Pallavas	(v)	Kānyakubja

Ans :

	Column I		Column II
(a)	Rāṣhṭrakūṭas	(iii)	Mānyakheṭa
(b)	Gurjara-Pratīhāras	(iv)	Ujjayinī
(c)	Cholas	(ii)	Tanjāvūr
(d)	Harṣhavardhana	(v)	Kānyakubja
(e)	Pallavas	(i)	Kānchī

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. How do historians utilize the classical Sanskrit plays authored by Harsha?
(A) As precise, date-by-date political chronologies of the Vardhana dynasty's military expansions.
(B) To extract significant details regarding the cultural practices, governance, and social hierarchy.
(C) To create exact geographic maps of the ancient maritime trade routes between India and China.
(D) As formal religious liturgical texts specifically designed for modern Vedic temple rituals.

Ans :

(B) To extract significant details regarding the cultural practices, governance, and social hierarchy.
Though fictional, historians analyze Harsha's plays to extract valuable insights into the governance, social diversity, foods, and clothing of that era.

NODIA

2. What was the primary purpose of the assembly Harsha held every five years at Prayāga?
(A) To conduct the public execution of captured rebel leaders and secure his political authority.
(B) To hold democratic elections for the next administrative ruler of the subordinate territories.
(C) To distribute immense royal wealth and donations among Buddhists, Brahmins, and the poor.
(D) To sign formal permanent peace treaties with the Arab commanders from the western frontiers.

Ans :

(C) To distribute immense royal wealth and donations among Buddhists, Brahmins, and the poor.
Harsha held grand assemblies at Prayāga every five years specifically to perform sacred rites and generously distribute his wealth among religious figures and the poor.

3. What does the term 'Tripartite Struggle' refer to in the context of early medieval India?
(A) A three-way civil war involving the succession rights within the Southern Chola royal family.
(B) The continuous conflict between the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras, and Rāṣhṭrakūtas over Kannauj.
(C) The long-term maritime trade dispute between India, Tang China, and the Roman Empire.
(D) The intense philosophical debate regarding the theological superiority of Hinduism and Jainism.

Ans :

(B) The continuous conflict between the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras, and Rāṣhṭrakūtas over Kannauj.
The Tripartite Struggle describes the long conflict during the 8th and 9th centuries between three major powers fighting for control over the strategic city of Kannauj.

4. At Vikramaśhilā university, what was the specific role of the dvārapandita?
(A) A royal military guard responsible for protecting the university's gold and silver treasury.
(B) A traveling merchant who managed the international trade of university-produced manuscripts.
(C) A 'scholar gatekeeper' who rigorously tested the knowledge of students before granting admission.
(D) An expert architect who oversaw the structural design and construction of the monastery domes.

Ans :

(C) A 'scholar gatekeeper' who rigorously tested the knowledge of students before granting admission.
Admission to Vikramaśhilā was managed by a dvārapandita (scholar gatekeeper) who tested the intellectual capabilities of students before allowing them entry.

5. How did the Pāla Empire primarily achieve its economic prosperity?
(A) By conducting frequent military raids to plunder the wealth of the central Rashtrakuta cities.
(B) By implementing a policy of heavy taxation exclusively on the regional Buddhist monasteries.
(C) Through internal land-based markets and brisk maritime commerce with the Southeast Asian kingdoms.
(D) By becoming the first dynasty in the subcontinent to mint standardized gold coins for mass use.

Ans :

(C) Through internal land-based markets and brisk maritime commerce with the Southeast Asian kingdoms.
The Pālas accumulated wealth through internal markets and active engagement in long-distance maritime trade with Southeast Asia through eastern seaports.

6. Why is Amoghavarsha I often referred to as a 'Jain king'?
(A) He issued a royal mandate requiring all citizens of his empire to convert immediately to Jainism.
(B) He exclusively financed Jain monuments while ordering the systematic destruction of Hindu temples.
(C) He was personally drawn to Jainism, though he maintained a policy of patronizing Hindu temples.
(D) He served as a high-ranking Jain monk for several decades before inheriting the imperial throne.

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

Yes, this ceremony is similar to the Ashvamedha Yajna, as both were grand royal rituals associated with religion, power, and prestige.

2. Al-Masūdī, a 10th-century Arab historian and traveller from Baghdad, gave high praise to a Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler: "His troops and elephants are innumerable. … There is none among the rulers of Sindh and Hind who in his territory respects the Muslims [as he does]. In his kingdom, Islam is honoured and protected. And, for them, mosques and congregational mosques, which are always full, have been built for offering prayers five times."

Ans :

This passage shows that the Rashtrakutas were powerful and militarily strong, with large armies and many elephants. They were also wealthy and well-organised. The ruler was tolerant towards different religions, especially Islam, as mosques were built and protected, allowing Muslims to practice freely. This reflects religious harmony and good governance in their kingdom.

3. How does a professional group transform into a jati?

Ans :

A professional group becomes a jati when people of the same occupation form a distinct community. Over time, they follow common customs, marry within the group, pass their profession to future generations, and develop their own social rules, thus becoming a jati.

4. Sulaiman, a 9th-century Arab merchant and traveller, makes this comment on a Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler: "This king maintains numerous forces, and no other Indian prince has so fine a cavalry. He is unfriendly to the Arabs … there is no greater foe of the Muhammadan faith than he. ... He has riches, and his camels and horses are numerous. … There is no country in India safer from robbers." Why do you think the author calls the ruler a 'foe to the Muslim faith'?

Ans :

The ruler is called a "foe to the Muslim faith" because he strongly opposed the Arabs and prevented their expansion in India. His powerful army and strong cavalry made it difficult for them to defeat him, so the traveller viewed him as an enemy of their faith.

NODIA

5. The table lists common everyday words, highlighting their similar pronunciation across the three languages. By comparing these sounds, you can identify words that are closely related or share common roots in all three languages. With the help of your teacher, use this observation to complete the table.

Sanskrit	Arabic	English
	sandal	sandalwood
tāmbūla	tanbūl	
karpūra		camphor
pippalī	filfil	

Ans :

Sanskrit	Arabic	English
sandal	sandal	sandalwood
tāmbūla	tanbūl	betel leaf
karpūra	kāfūr / kapūr	camphor
pippalī	filfil	long-pepper

DON'T MISS OUT

1. During this period, inscriptions began using both Sanskrit and regional languages simultaneously. In land grants, the ruler and his dynastic history were often praised in Sanskrit, while the operative details of the grant were recorded in the local language. Why do you think such inscriptions were written in two languages?

Ans :

Inscriptions were written in both Sanskrit and the local language because they served different purposes.

(a) For prestige and cultural importance: Sanskrit was the language of scholars, religion, and royal courts. Its use made the king appear learned and prestigious. It was mainly used to praise the ruler and his lineage in a formal and grand manner.

(b) For practical understanding: The details of land grants—such as boundaries, taxes, recipients, and duties—were written in the local language. This ensured that officials, villagers, and others involved could clearly understand and follow the instructions.

the divine that transcended social caste and gender barriers.
(C) It was a movement restricted to the Sanskrit language and the elite intellectual circles of royal courts.
(D) It focused primarily on the ritualistic worship of nature spirits and the souls of ancestral warriors.

Ans :

(B) It emphasized a direct, personal devotion to the divine that transcended social caste and gender barriers.
The Bhakti tradition revolutionized society by emphasizing accessible, personal devotion to a deity, famously transcending rigid gender and social boundaries.

12. By the 7th century, what had happened to the descendants of the Hūṇa invaders in India?
(A) They were completely defeated and forcibly expelled from the subcontinent back to Central Asia.
(B) They assimilated into Indian society by adopting administrative roles, Sanskrit, and royal traditions.
(C) They established a permanent and politically separate Islamic caliphate within the region of Sindh.
(D) They became the exclusive ruling elite of the Pāla empire located in the Bengal delta region.

Ans :

(B) They assimilated into Indian society by adopting administrative roles, Sanskrit, and royal traditions.
The Hūṇas fully integrated into Indian society, serving as soldiers, using Sanskrit, adopting royal titles, and participating in temple councils.

13. What does the term 'Mlechchha' originally refer to in ancient Indian literature?
(A) The high-ranking official responsible for the auditing of the royal agricultural treasury.
(B) A specialized class of heavily armored naval vessels used for protecting the spice trade.
(C) People perceived as speaking unclearly or not following Vedic culture, later meaning foreigners.
(D) A secret and highly advanced Tantric meditation technique used for attaining mental clarity.

Ans :

(C) People perceived as speaking unclearly or not following Vedic culture, later meaning foreigners.
The term 'Mlechchha' originally denoted non-Vedic individuals perceived as speaking unclearly, but later became a common designation for foreigners.

14. Why was the Arab conquest of Sindh considered to have a limited political impact in India?
(A) Because the Arab rulers were immediately integrated and elected as the primary kings of Kannauj.
(B) Because the Arab military commanders issued a religious decree refusing to cross the Indus River.
(C) Because strong resistance from Indian rulers limited their dominion to small states in Sindh and Punjab.
(D) Because the Arab governors voluntarily ceded all conquered territories to local Jain monasteries.

Ans :

(C) Because strong resistance from Indian rulers limited their dominion to small states in Sindh and Punjab.
The massive wave of Arab conquests was stalled by fierce resistance from Indian rulers, confining them to minor states in the northwest.

15. Which mathematical innovation, adapted by Arabs, is an 9th-century scholar likely translating?
(A) The exact geometric and engineering proportions used in the construction of the Kailashanatha temple.
(B) The formalized rules of arithmetic operations involving zero, negative numbers, and fractions.
(C) The intricate architectural blueprints and layout designs for the Vikramashila university complex.
(D) The celestial and astronomical measurements used exclusively for the calculation of royal horoscopes.

Ans :

(B) The formalized rules of arithmetic operations involving zero, negative numbers, and fractions.
Indian mathematicians like Brahmagupta formalized rules for zero and algebra. These were translated into Arabic, forming the globally used Hindu-Arabic numeral system.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

16. What is the primary significance of the 13th-century Persian text Chachnāma?
(A) It provides the detailed architectural and structural plans for the Shore Temple at Mamallapuram.
(B) It is a Persian rendering of an older Arabic account regarding the Arab conquest of Sindh.
(C) It serves as the primary autobiographical record written by the Emperor Harshavardhana himself.
(D) It outlines the complete maritime and international trade laws established by the Pandya dynasty.

Ans :

(B) It is a Persian rendering of an older Arabic account regarding the Arab conquest of Sindh.
The Chachnāma is a vital historical text that translates an older Arabic account, providing crucial details regarding the 8th-century Arab conquest of Sindh.

17. What role did the Purāṇas play in the religious landscape of early medieval India?
(A) They provided the legal justification for the systematic destruction of all local Buddhist monasteries.
(B) They served as the first formal textbooks containing complex mathematical and algebraic equations.
(C) They helped integrate local deities and myths into broader traditions like those of Shiva and Vishnu.
(D) They were used as the primary financial records for the collection of taxes by the Chola administration.

Ans :

(C) They helped integrate local deities and myths into broader traditions like those of Shiva and Vishnu.
The Purāṇas were crucial in standardizing Hinduism by weaving local deities and regional myths into the overarching worship traditions of Shiva and Vishnu.

18. Which project would a 9th-century merchant guild most likely sponsor to boost their prestige?
(A) The mass production of gold coins featuring the guild's specific emblem for regional circulation.
(B) The construction of a functional irrigation tank or pond to improve local agricultural productivity.
(C) The recruitment of foreign mercenaries to launch an unprovoked attack on the neighboring Cheras.
(D) The literal translation of the Persian Avesta into a new form of classical Tamil poetry.

Ans :

(B) The construction of a functional irrigation tank or pond to improve local agricultural productivity.
During the Pallava era, wealthy individuals and guilds sponsored irrigation works, such as tanks and ponds, to enhance agriculture and elevate their social status.

19. Which of the following terms is often used by historians to describe the six centuries between 600 CE and 1200 CE in Indian history?
(A) The Vedic Age
(B) The Early Medieval period
(C) The Colonial Era
(D) The Age of Empires

Ans :

(B) The Early Medieval period
Historians often refer to the centuries following the Gupta era as the "post-classical" or "early medieval" period, characterized by regional kingdoms rather than single empires.

20. In which year did Harshavardhana ascend the throne at Kannauj?
(A) 550 CE
(B) 606 CE
(C) 647 CE
(D) 712 CE

Ans :

(B) 606 CE
Harshavardhana, a remarkable ruler of the Pushyabhuti dynasty, officially ascended the throne at his capital in Kannauj in the year 606 CE.

21. What was the earlier capital of the Pushyabhūti dynasty before it shifted to Kannauj?
(A) Pāṭaliputra
(B) Vātāpi
(C) Sthāneshvara
(D) Tanjāvūr

Ans :

(C) Sthāneshvara
Before moving to Kannauj, the earlier capital of the Pushyabhūti (or Vardhana) dynasty was

NODIA

Sthāneshvara, which is present-day Thanesar in Haryana.

22. Who authored the biography Harshacharita and the classical novel Kādambarī?
(A) Kalhaṇa
(B) Ravikīrti
(C) Bāṇabhaṭṭa
(D) Abhinavagupta

Ans :

(C) Bāṇabhaṭṭa
Bāṇabhaṭṭa, a scholar patronized by King Harsha, authored both the biographical Harshacharita and the celebrated classical Sanskrit novel Kādambarī.

23. Which famous Chinese pilgrim visited India between 630 and 644 CE during Harsha's reign?
(A) Faxian
(B) Xuanzang
(C) Sulaiman
(D) Al-Masūdī

Ans :

(B) Xuanzang
Xuanzang traveled across the Indian subcontinent between 630 and 644 CE, collecting Buddhist manuscripts and recording detailed observations of Harsha's kingdom.

24. Which Chalukya king successfully halted Harshavardhana's southward expansion at the Narmada River?
(A) Pulakeśhin I
(B) Krishna I
(C) Pulakeśhin II
(D) Aditya I

Ans :

(C) Pulakeśhin II
Harsha's ambitious attempt to extend his empire southward beyond the Narmada River was decisively held in check by Pulakeśhin II of the Chalukya dynasty.

25. According to inscriptions, who was chosen by the people in 750 CE to restore stability in the Bengal region?
(A) Dharmapāla
(B) Gopala
(C) King Bhoja
(D) Dantidurga

Ans :

(B) Gopala
After a period of severe disorder following Harsha's death, the people of Bengal reportedly chose Gopala in 750 CE, who became the first king of the Pāla dynasty.

26. Which major monastic university was founded by the Pāla ruler Dharmapāla on the banks of the Ganga?
(A) Takṣhaśhilā
(B) Vikramaśhilā
(C) Sringeri
(D) Kanchipuram

Ans :

(B) Vikramaśhilā
Dharmapāla founded the great monastic university of Vikramaśhilā in the late 8th century, which became a prominent center for Mahāyāna Buddhism and diverse learning.

27. Who founded the Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty in the mid-8th century CE?
(A) King Bhoja
(B) Nāgabhaṭa I
(C) Dantidurga
(D) Mahendravarman I

Ans :

(B) Nāgabhaṭa I
The Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty, known for defending against Arab invasions, was founded in the mid-8th century by the ruler Nāgabhaṭa I.

28. Consider the following statements regarding the Gurjara-Pratīhāra King Bhoja:
1. He built a vast empire controlling most of north India.
2. He was a known devotee of Vishnu and was called Ādi Varāha.
3. He ultimately relocated his capital to Madurai.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
King Bhoja built a massive northern empire and used titles like Ādi Varāha. However, statement 3 is false; the capital was never Madurai, which was the Pāndya capital.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) He was personally drawn to Jainism, though he maintained a policy of patronizing Hindu temples.
Amoghavarsha I was deeply influenced by Jainism, but he maintained religious tolerance by continuing to patronize Hindu temples as well.

7. Why were ancient Roman, Persian, and Chinese coins found during excavations at Mamallapuram?
(A) Because retreating foreign armies buried their accumulated treasure there during medieval invasions.
(B) Because the Pallava dynasty engaged in extensive international maritime trade through this port.
(C) Because Mamallapuram served as the historic headquarters for the first international banking guild.
(D) Because foreign pilgrims were required to use their native currency exclusively as temple offerings.

Ans :

(B) Because the Pallava dynasty engaged in extensive international maritime trade through this port.
The discovery of foreign coins at Mamallapuram proves it was a bustling economic hub where the Pallavas conducted brisk international trade with distant empires.

8. How did the political structure of the 'samanta' system function in early medieval India?
(A) Samantas were democratically elected administrative officials who governed large metropolitan cities.
(B) Samantas were specialized foreign mercenaries hired by the king to defend the Himalayan borders.
(C) Samantas were subordinate vassals who managed local regions and provided military support to the king.
(D) Samantas were exclusively religious priests who held moral authority but possessed no political power.

Ans :

(C) Samantas were subordinate vassals who managed local regions and provided military support to the king.
Kings ruled core regions but relied on samantas (vassals) to govern outer territories, collect revenues, and supply military forces.

9. If a local chief grants a tract of uncultivated forest to Brahmanas, what is the most likely intended outcome?
(A) To create a secluded and private wildlife hunting reserve for the exclusive use of the royal family.
(B) To convert wasteland into productive agricultural fields and expand the kingdom's overall tax base.
(C) To establish a fortified military outpost to defend the frontier against potential Arab invasions.
(D) To allow for the intensive mining of the forest land for the extraction of industrial copper ingots.

NODIA

Ans :

(B) To convert wasteland into productive agricultural fields and expand the kingdom's overall tax base.
Land grants were used strategically to encourage communities to clear uncultivated land, thereby expanding agriculture and the kingdom's tax base.

10. What does the title 'Paramabhattārikā Mahārājādhirāja Tribhuvana Mahādevī' translate to?
(A) The supreme military commander of the naval fleet responsible for the eastern maritime borders.
(B) The high priestess of the celestial mountains responsible for performing the royal solar rituals.
(C) The supreme sovereign empress and great queen who holds dominion over the three worlds.
(D) The chief accountant and master scribe responsible for the documentation of the royal court.

Ans :

(C) The supreme sovereign empress and great queen who holds dominion over the three worlds.
This grand title assumed by a Bhauma-Kara queen signified her immense authority as the 'supreme sovereign empress, great queen of the three worlds'.

11. What was a defining characteristic of the Bhakti movement as it crystallized from the 6th century onward?
(A) It mandated strict adherence to complex Vedic sacrifices that could only be performed by elite priests.
(B) It emphasized a direct, personal devotion to

(C) Kalhaṇa
(D) Bāṇabhaṭṭa

Ans :

(B) Ravikīrti
The court poet Ravikīrti composed the highly poetical Sanskrit inscription at Aihole, which famously recorded Pulakeśhin II's military victories, including the defeat of Harsha.

37. Which of the following was NOT an achievement or action associated with the Pallava king Narasimhavarman I?
(A) He was known by the title 'Mamalla' (wrestler).
(B) He defeated Pulakeśhin II and captured Badami.
(C) He sent a naval expedition to Sri Lanka to help a prince.
(D) He permanently relocated the Pallava capital to the Kaveri delta.

Ans :

(D) He permanently relocated the Pallava capital to the Kaveri delta.
Narasimhavarman I defeated Pulakeshin II and sent naval expeditions, but the Pallava capital remained at Kanchipuram. The Kaveri delta was the heartland of the Cholas.

38. Which south Indian kingdom ruled from Madurai and patronised the translation of the Mahābhārata into Tamil?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Cheras
(C) The Pāndyas
(D) The Chalukyas

Ans :

(C) The Pāndyas
The Pāndyas, whose cultural and political capital was Madurai, were great patrons of literature and commissioned a (now lost) Tamil translation of the Mahābhārata.

39. Who laid the foundation for the reborn, powerful Chola empire in the 9th century?
(A) Aditya I
(B) Vijayālaya
(C) Mahendravarman I
(D) Dantidurga

Ans :

(B) Vijayālaya
After being eclipsed for centuries, the Chola dynasty was reborn and laid strong foundations in the 9th century under the leadership of Vijayālaya at Tanjāvūr.

40. In south India, the village assemblies known as the sabhā selected their members through an elaborate process. Which Chola inscriptions famously detail this process?
(A) The Aihole inscriptions
(B) The Uttaramerur inscriptions
(C) The Gwalior inscriptions
(D) The Banskhera copper plates

Ans :

(B) The Uttaramerur inscriptions
The 10th-century Chola inscriptions found at Uttaramerur provide incredibly detailed accounts of the democratic selection process for members of the local village assemblies (sabhā).

41. Which social group, historically known as scribes or clerks, evolved into a distinct jāti during this period?
(A) The Ālvārs
(B) The Kāyasthas
(C) The Nāyanārs
(D) The Aulikaras

Ans :

(B) The Kāyasthas
Initially a diverse professional group of scribes and clerks, the Kāyasthas gradually married within their own ranks and fused into a distinct jāti by the 10th century.

42. Consider the following statements regarding the role of women in the early medieval period:
1. Texts show women participating in agriculture, crafts, and court entertainment.
2. Inscriptions record women making offerings to temples and building water structures.
3. No woman was ever allowed to ascend a royal throne during this period.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Women were active in the economy and religious patronage. Statement 3 is false; queens like Tribhuvana Mahadevi I successfully ascended the throne and ruled effectively.

NODIA

personal devotion or bhakti over traditional Vedic sacrifices and rituals.

103. What was the Bhakti Movement that started in south India?

Ans :

It was a widespread devotion-based tradition led by Alvars and Nayanars, promoting a direct, personal relationship with God across all social barriers.

104. What were Brahmagupta's major mathematical achievements?

Ans :

Brahmagupta remarkably introduced arithmetic rules for zero and negative numbers, pioneering new techniques that established him as a founder of modern algebra.

105. How did the Hunas assimilate into Indian society?

Ans :

After military defeats, Hunas assimilated by serving as soldiers, adopting Sanskrit, and utilizing Gupta-style royal titles and religious symbols on their coins.

106. Why did Muhammad bin Qasim attack Sindh?

Ans :

Sent by the governor of Iraq, bin Qasim attacked Sindh to wage a religious war, conquer territory, and violently defeat King Dahar.

107. How did Indian rulers respond to the Arab invasions?

Ans :

Indian rulers like Nagabhata I and Lalitaditya fiercely resisted, sometimes forming strong alliances to successfully crush and repel the invading Arab armies.

108. What shift occurred in Arab religious policy in Sindh?

Ans :

In Sindh, Arabs eventually allowed Hindus and Buddhists to rebuild temples and freely continue their worship, changing their initial policy of destruction.

109. How did Indian scientific knowledge reach Europe?

Ans :

Arab scholars diligently translated Indian texts on mathematics and astronomy, adopting the revolutionary decimal system which they subsequently transmitted to medieval Europe.

110. Describe the achievements of Queen Didda of Kashmir.

Ans :

Queen Didda strategically consolidated absolute power, ruthlessly eliminated her political rivals, founded new towns, and actively restored numerous temples during her reign.

111. Why were inscriptions from the Chola period bilingual?

Ans :

Inscriptions used Sanskrit to highly praise the ruler's history, while practical operative details regarding land grants were clearly recorded in local languages.

112. How did the Cholas build their empire's prosperity?

Ans :

The Cholas ensured deep prosperity through an efficient administration, a powerful navy, and advanced irrigation techniques that boosted the Kaveri delta's agriculture.

113. What was the historical significance of the Aulikara dynasty?

Ans :

The Aulikara kings of Dashapura inflicted successive, decisive military defeats upon fiercely invading Huna leaders, effectively ending their power in ancient India.

114. Why is the period from 600 CE to 1200 CE significant?

Ans :

It marks a dynamic transition featuring regional kingdoms, vibrant cultural growth, extensive trade, and absolute resilience against intense foreign military invasions.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

50. Consider the following statements regarding the Chola empire in the 9th to 13th centuries:
1. They possessed a highly powerful navy.
2. They patronized both Tamil and Sanskrit literature.
3. They deliberately destroyed the agricultural productivity of the Kaveri delta.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Cholas built a massive empire with a powerful navy and patronized bilingual literature. Statement 3 is false; their immense prosperity actually relied upon the highly fertile, well-irrigated Kaveri delta.

51. Which Pallava king was known by the title 'Mamalla' and captured the Chalukya capital of Badami?
(A) Aditya I
(B) Mahendravarman I
(C) Narasimhavarman I
(D) Vijayālaya

Ans :

(C) Narasimhavarman I
Narasimhavarman I, a powerful Pallava ruler known as 'Mamalla' (wrestler/warrior), successfully defeated Pulakeshin II and captured the Chalukya capital of Badami.

52. Which ruler's copper-plate inscriptions uniquely refer to the presence of Christian, Muslim, and Jewish traders?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Gurjara-Pratihāras
(C) The Cheras
(D) The Pālas

Ans :

(C) The Cheras
The Cheras, ruling the vibrant coastal region of Kerala, have copper-plate inscriptions that significantly document the presence of diverse international merchants, including Christian, Muslim, and Jewish traders.

53. **Assertion (A):** The Arab conquerors in Sindh eventually allowed Hindus and Buddhists to rebuild temples and continue their worship.
Reason (R): They realized that completely replacing local institutions was impossible due to fierce resistance, forcing them to use native populations for political stability.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Arabs, unlike in other conquered regions, were forced to compromise in Sindh due to unyielding indigenous resistance, ultimately allowing religious freedom to maintain political control.

54. Which monumental 10th-century statue in Karnataka depicts a revered Jain figure in deep meditation?
(A) The Nataraja bronze
(B) The Bahubali at Shravanabelagola
(C) The Durga relief at Mamallapuram
(D) The Crowned Buddha of Bihar

Ans :

(B) The Bahubali at Shravanabelagola
The massive monolithic statue of Bahubali at Shravanabelagola, Karnataka, is a masterpiece of 10th-century Jain sculpture, depicting him meditating for 12 continuous years.

55. Consider the following statements about the development of science in India between the 6th and 10th centuries:
1. Bhaskara I did pioneering work in trigonometry.
2. Virahānka established a sequence now known globally as the Fibonacci sequence.
3. Indian astronomical calculations were completely abandoned by Arab scholars.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Bhaskara I pioneered trigonometry, and Virahānka established the early Fibonacci sequence.

NODIA

it significantly fostered crucial scientific and mathematical exchanges with the Middle East.

123. How does the development of jatis indicate a complex social structure in this era?

Ans :

The rapid multiplication of jatis illustrates a highly complex, evolving society driven by diverse occupational and regional changes. New professional groups, like the scribal Kayasthas, gradually transformed into distinct, endogamous castes. While this rigidified certain social boundaries, it also allowed flexible integration of foreign migrants and indigenous tribal populations economically.

124. Analyse the significance of Kalhana's Rajatarangini as a historical text.

Ans :

Kalhana's epic Rajatarangini is historically exceptional because it meticulously utilizes ancient inscriptions, royal grants, and prior chronicles to reconstruct Kashmir's dynastic lineage objectively. Beyond recording mere facts, Kalhana specifically aimed to extract profound moral lessons, explicitly judging whether past rulers ethically upheld order or disastrously harassed their innocent subjects.

125. Discuss the importance of Vikramashila as a centre of learning under the Palas.

Ans :

Founded by Dharmapala, Vikramashila thrived for centuries as an elite, massive university featuring six specialized colleges. It attracted thousands of international students to rigorously study advanced grammar, logic, and philosophy. Its scholars significantly shaped Vajrayana Buddhism in Tibet through dedicated translations, cementing India's profound legacy in global knowledge traditions.

126. How did the Rashtrakutas balance military expansion with cultural patronage?

Ans :

The Rashtrakutas aggressively conquered vast territories across India, repeatedly challenging powerful northern kingdoms. Despite constant warfare, they generously funded monumental architectural marvels, notably commissioning Ellora's magnificent rock-cut Kailashanatha temple. They fostered a rich intellectual environment by enthusiastically supporting diverse Hindu, Buddhist, and Jain scholars writing in Sanskrit and regional languages.

127. Evaluate the strategic importance of the Chalukya capital, Vatapi.

Ans :

Vatapi, the fortified Chalukya capital, served as a crucial military and cultural stronghold in the Deccan. Under Pulakeshin II, it became an impenetrable base that successfully halted Harsha's southern expansion. Furthermore, the city fostered an incredible artistic renaissance, showcasing magnificently carved Hindu and Jain cave temples reflecting immense prosperity.

128. Analyse the role of women in governance during the 6th to 10th centuries.

Ans :

While patriarchal structures generally favored male heirs, prominent women often wielded immense political authority. Empress Tribhuvana Mahadevi I of Odisha brilliantly exemplified female leadership by ruthlessly suppressing local rebellions, exhibiting exceptional administrative prowess, and independently issuing royal land grants while proudly carrying the majestic title of supreme sovereign empress.

129. How did scientific knowledge from India influence the Arab world and Europe?

Ans :

Indian mathematical and astronomical genius, notably championed by Brahmagupta, profoundly influenced global science. Arab scholars in Baghdad actively translated these classical Sanskrit treatises, eagerly adopting India's revolutionary decimal system and the concept of zero. These concepts were subsequently transmitted into medieval Europe, establishing the vital foundations of modern global mathematics.

CASE BASED QUESTION

130. In the bustling coastal city of Kanchipuram, a powerful merchant guild meets to discuss a new maritime expedition. They plan to export fine silk and spices to distant Southeast Asian ports. The

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(A) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
Kanyakubja (Kannauj) became associated with northern powers, Vatapi served as the Chalukya capital, Manyakheta was the Rashtrakuta capital, and Kanchi became the cultural centre of the Pallavas.

62. Match the following personalities and their contributions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Banabhatta	A.	Travel account of India
2.	Xuanzang	B.	Harshacharita
3.	Kalhana	C.	Rajatarangini
4.	Ravikirti	D.	Chalukya inscription

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Banabhatta wrote Harshacharita. Xuanzang recorded valuable observations during his travels. Kalhana authored Rajatarangini, and Ravikirti composed inscriptions praising Pulakeshin II.

63. Match the following places and their significance :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Vikramashila	A.	Rock-cut temple
2.	Ellora	B.	Centre of learning
3.	Mamallapuram	C.	Port and temple town
4.	Tanjavur	D.	Chola capital

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Vikramashila was a major university. Ellora became famous for rock-cut architecture. Mamallapuram developed as a trading and temple centre, while Tanjavur emerged as the Chola capital.

64. Match the following developments and their descriptions :

NODIA

	Column A		Column B
1.	Tripartite Struggle	A.	Control over Kannauj
2.	Bhakti Tradition	B.	Religious movement
3.	Land Grants	C.	Expansion of cultivation
4.	Merchant Guilds	D.	Trade associations

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
The Tripartite Struggle involved competition for Kannauj. Bhakti promoted devotional practices. Land grants expanded agriculture, and merchant guilds supported trade and economic growth.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

65. Who was the famous ruler of the Pushyabhuti dynasty who ascended the throne in 606 CE?

Ans :

Harshavardhana.

66. What was the capital of Harshavardhana's empire?

Ans :

Kannauj.

67. Name the Chinese pilgrim who visited India during Harsha's reign.

Ans :

Xuanzang.

68. Which three dynasties fought in the Tripartite Struggle for Kannauj?

Ans :

Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas, and Rashtrakutas.

69. Who founded the Pala dynasty in 750 CE?

Ans :

Gopala.

43. Which group of south Indian saint-poets were specifically devoted to the worship of Vishnu?
(A) The Nāyanārs
(B) The Kāyasthas
(C) The Ālvārs
(D) The Sāmantas

Ans :

(C) The Ālvārs
The 12 Ālvārs were highly influential south Indian saint-poets whose devotional literature and practices were dedicated entirely to the worship of Vishnu.

44. Who authored the Brahmasphutasiddhānta, introducing rules for zero and negative numbers?
(A) Aryabhata
(B) Brahmagupta
(C) Bhāskara I
(D) Mahāvīra

Ans :

(B) Brahmagupta
The brilliant mathematician Brahmagupta wrote the Brahmasphutasiddhānta, pioneering the arithmetic rules for zero, negative numbers, and early algebra.

45. Which Jain mathematician lived at the court of the Rashtrakuta king Amoghavarsha and wrote a text purely on mathematics?
(A) Virahānka
(B) Bhāskara I
(C) Mahāvīra
(D) Bāṇabhaṭṭa

Ans :

(C) Mahāvīra
The 9th-century Jain scholar Mahāvīra, patronized by Amoghavarsha I, authored the first significant Indian text devoted entirely to mathematics, independent of astronomy.

46. **Assertion (A):** The Hūṇa power in India was effectively ended in the early 6th century.
Reason (R): They were decisively defeated by the Aulikara dynasty rulers, such as Yashodharma, at Mandsaur.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
The Hūṇas launched deep invasions but were ultimately defeated and pushed back by strong resistance, primarily from the Aulikara dynasty kings like Yashodharma.

47. In what year did India's western coast witness its first naval raids by Muslim Arabs on Thānā and Bhārukachchha?
(A) 632 CE
(B) 637 CE
(C) 712 CE
(D) 1000 CE

Ans :

(B) 637 CE
The very first Arab naval raids on India's western coast (Thānā, Bharuch) occurred in 637 CE, although they failed to secure any lasting territorial control.

48. Who commanded the Arab forces that successfully conquered Sindh and defeated King Dahar in 712 CE?
(A) Muhammad bin Qasim
(B) Al-Balādhurī
(C) Sulaiman
(D) Bakhtiyar Khilji

Ans :

(A) Muhammad bin Qasim
Muhammad bin Qasim, the young nephew and son-in-law of the Iraqi governor, successfully led Arab forces to conquer Sindh, defeating King Dahar in battle.

49. Which Arab geographer observed that after three centuries, the Arab dominion in India was limited to just two petty states?
(A) Al-Masūdī
(B) Al-Balādhurī
(C) Al-Istakhri
(D) Sulaiman

Ans :

(C) Al-Istakhri
The 10th-century Arab geographer al-Istakhri specifically observed that after centuries of unremitting effort, the Arab dominion was firmly limited to only two petty states in Sindh and Punjab.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

90. Why did Xuanzang travel to India in the 7th century?

Ans :

Xuanzang travelled to visit sacred Buddhist sites, learn from Indian teachers, and collect over six hundred Sanskrit manuscripts for translation.

91. What was the Tripartite Struggle?

Ans :

It was a long, indecisive conflict over Kannauj involving the Pala, Gurjara-Pratihara, and Rashtrakuta dynasties during the eighth and ninth centuries.

92. How was admission managed at the Vikramashila university?

Ans :

Admission was highly selective, managed by a scholar gatekeeper called dvarapandita, who strictly tested incoming students before allowing them entry.

93. How did the Rashtrakutas originally gain independent power in the Deccan?

Ans :

The Rashtrakutas were initially subordinate samantas who eventually grew powerful enough to overthrow their Chalukya overlords in the mid-eighth century.

94. Why is Kalhana's Rajatarangini considered a unique historical text?

Ans :

Kalhana used inscriptions and earlier works to write a connected account of Kashmir's kings, aiming to extract moral lessons from history.

95. How did Pulakeshin II halt Harshavardhana's empire expansion?

Ans :

Pulakeshin II, the powerful Chalukya ruler, successfully checked Harsha's southern ambitions, preventing him from extending his empire beyond the Narmada River.

96. What architectural contributions did the Pallavas make at Mamallapuram?

Ans :

The Pallavas carved elaborate rock-cut caves and distinctive monolithic temples from single stones, often depicting deities and scenes from the Mahabharata.

97. What role did samantas play in the administration of large kingdoms?

Ans :

Samantas were indispensable subordinate rulers who loyally led armies, managed local administration, and collected tributes for the emperors who controlled them.

98. How did the land grant system impact agriculture during this period?

Ans :

Land grants often brought uncultivated land under active farming, significantly expanding agriculture, crop diversity, and ultimately fostering the growth of cash crops.

99. Who were the Kayasthas and how did they form a distinct jati?

Ans :

Initially a professional group of scribes, Kayasthas eventually married within their specific community, officially transforming into a distinct occupational jati over time.

100. What role did women play according to Banabhatta's Harshacharita?

Ans :

Banabhatta depicted women actively participating in agriculture, crafts, and serving in royal courts as musicians, storytellers, attendants, and capable entertainers.

101. Who was Tribhuvana Mahadevi I?

Ans :

She was a powerful Bhauma-Kara empress in Odisha who successfully suppressed rebellions, displayed strong administrative skills, and actively patronised religious institutions.

102. How did the Puranas influence religious practices during this period?

Ans :

The Puranas integrated regional myths into broader pan-Indian cults, deeply emphasising

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

70. Which famous Buddhist monastery was founded by Dharmapala?

Ans :

Vikramashila.

71. Which Gurjara-Pratihara king was also known as Adi Varaha?

Ans :

King Bhoja.

72. Who founded the independent Rashtrakuta dynasty in the mid-8th century?

Ans :

Dantidurga.

73. Which Rashtrakuta king got the Kailashanatha temple carved at Ellora?

Ans :

Krishna I.

74. Who authored the Sanskrit epic poem Rajatarangini?

Ans :

Kalhana.

75. Which Chalukya ruler defeated Harshavardhana?

Ans :

Pulakeshin II.

76. What was the capital of the Pallava dynasty?

Ans :

Kanchi.

77. Which Pallava king was known as 'Mamalla' or wrestler?

Ans :

Narasimhavarman I.

78. What was the capital of the Pandya kingdom?

Ans :

Madurai.

79. Who laid the foundation for the reborn Chola kingdom in the 9th century?

Ans :

Vijayalaya.

80. What term was used for subordinate rulers or vassals who managed local administration?

Ans :

Samantas.

81. Which new occupational jati of scribes and clerks emerged during this period?

Ans :

Kayasthas.

82. Name the powerful queen of the Bhauma-Kara dynasty in Odisha.

Ans :

Tribhuvana Mahadevi I.

83. What is the monolithic Jain statue located at Shravanabelagola called?

Ans :

Bahubali.

84. Who were the Alvars?

Ans :

Devotees of Vishnu.

85. Who introduced the rules of arithmetic operations with zero and negative numbers?

Ans :

Brahmagupta.

86. Which nomadic people originating from Central Asia invaded India in the 6th century?

Ans :

The Hunas.

87. Which Arab commander led the conquest of Sindh?

Ans :

Muhammad bin Qasim.

88. Which Indian numeral system was adopted by the Arabs and transmitted to Europe?

Ans :

Hindu-Arabic numerals.

89. Who wrote the famous biography Harshacharita?

Ans :

Banabhatta.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

115. Analyse the significance of the Tripartite Struggle in north Indian politics.

Ans :

The Tripartite Struggle was a prolonged, centuries-long conflict involving the Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas, and Rashtrakutas fighting vigorously to control Kannauj. This strategic city symbolized immense power across the fertile Gangetic plains. However, this continuous, exhausting warfare yielded no lasting victor, ultimately fragmenting northern India and weakening these vast, powerful regional empires.

116. How did the Pallava dynasty contribute to cultural and economic growth in south India?

Ans :

The Pallavas transformed their capital Kanchi into a thriving economic hub trading in spices and silk. They constructed magnificent monolithic rock-cut temples at Mamallapuram and heavily patronised both Sanskrit and Tamil literature. Their prosperous seaports maintained extensive international maritime connections with Southeast Asia, China, and the distant Roman Empire.

117. Discuss the evolution of the Bhakti tradition between the 6th and 10th centuries.

Ans :

The Bhakti Movement emerged powerfully in south India, championed by Vishnu-worshipping Alvars and Shiva-devoted Nayanars. These passionate saints composed deeply devotional regional poetry, directly emphasizing a loving, personal relationship with God. This inclusive religious movement bypassed traditional Vedic rituals, successfully uniting diverse social layers and actively breaking rigid social barriers.

118. Evaluate the impact of land grants on the social and economic structure during this period.

Ans :

The widespread land grant system created a powerful new class of wealthy landholders while expanding agricultural cultivation immensely. Kings generously donated territories to religious institutions and royal vassals. This system boosted rural economies and cash crops through improved irrigation, but it often allowed powerful intermediaries to heavily exploit local peasants.

119. Analyse the role of regional merchant guilds in the economic life of post-Gupta India.

Ans :

Merchant guilds became highly influential organizations uniting skilled artisans, local traders, and wealthy moneylenders. They efficiently managed prosperous regional markets and aggressively drove extensive maritime commerce connecting India to Southeast Asia and the Middle East. Furthermore, these wealthy associations generously supported prominent religious institutions and vital local charitable activities.

120. How did Harsha's administration and cultural patronage reflect the ideals of ancient Indian kingship?

Ans :

Harshavardhana exemplified ideal kingship through his energetic governance, vast military campaigns, and profound religious tolerance. He generously patronised brilliant scholars like Banabhatta and regularly held massive assemblies at Prayaga to distribute his accumulated wealth to the poor, thereby continuously fostering a vibrant, culturally rich, and highly inclusive Indian society.

121. Examine the assimilation process of foreign groups like the Hunas into Indian society.

Ans :

Initially arriving as fierce nomadic invaders, the Hunas were decisively defeated militarily. Following their defeat, they rapidly assimilated into mainstream Indian society by serving as local administrators and soldiers. They fully adopted regional languages like Sanskrit and actively embraced traditional Hindu religious symbols and royal titles on their minted coins.

122. Assess the long-term impact of Arab invasions on the Indian subcontinent's political landscape.

Ans :

Arab naval raids and Muhammad bin Qasim's violent conquest of Sindh caused severe initial disruptions. However, fierce resistance by Indian rulers like Nagabhata I strictly limited Arab territorial control. Ultimately, the Arab presence remained politically confined to Sindh, though

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Statement 3 is false; Arab scholars eagerly translated and adopted Indian astronomical and mathematical texts.

56. Which powerful Kashmiri king defeated an Arab chief three times according to the Rājataraṅginī?
(A) Gopala
(B) Lalitāditya Muktāpīda
(C) Dantidurga
(D) Pulakeshin II

Ans :

(B) Lalitāditya Muktāpīda
King Lalitāditya Muktāpīda of the Karkoṭa dynasty in Kashmir was a formidable military leader who successfully defeated invading Arab chiefs on three separate occasions.

57. The Arabic word mawsim is the root of an English word that highlights ancient trade connections across the Arabian Sea. What is the English word?
(A) Monsoon
(B) Merchant
(C) Monastery
(D) Matha

Ans :

(A) Monsoon
The English word 'monsoon' is directly borrowed from the Arabic word mawsim (meaning 'season'), reflecting the ancient, seasonal wind-driven maritime trade between India and Arabia.

58. Which 6th-century female saint was a prominent member of the Nāyanārs?
(A) Tribhuvana Mahadevi
(B) Andāl
(C) Didda
(D) Kāraikāl Ammaiyār

Ans :

(D) Kāraikāl Ammaiyār
Kāraikāl Ammaiyār, who likely lived in the 6th century CE, was a highly revered female saint-poet belonging to the Shiva-worshipping Nāyanārs of south India.

59. What specific aspect of Shiva does the famous early Chola bronze sculpture of Naṭarāja symbolize?
(A) The serene meditation of an ascetic in the Himalayas.
(B) The divine archer striking down the demon king.
(C) The cosmic dance of creation and destruction of the universe.
(D) The protector of trade ships crossing the Bay of Bengal.

Ans :

(C) The cosmic dance of creation and destruction of the universe.
The iconic Naṭarāja ('Lord of dance') bronze sculpture from the Chola period powerfully symbolizes Shiva performing the eternal cosmic dance of the universe's creation and destruction.

NODIA

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

60. Match the following rulers and their kingdoms :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Harshavardhana	A.	Bengal
2.	Dharmapala	B.	Kannauj
3.	Dantidurga	C.	Rashtrakuta dynasty
4.	Narasimhavarman I	D.	Pallava dynasty

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Harshavardhana ruled from Kannauj. Dharmapala expanded the Pala Empire in Bengal. Dantidurga founded the independent Rashtrakuta rule, while Narasimhavarman I was a powerful Pallava ruler who defeated Pulakeshin II.

61. Match the following dynasties and their capitals:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Palas	A.	Manyakheta
2.	Chalukyas	B.	Vatapi
3.	Rashtrakutas	C.	Kanchi
4.	Pallavas	D.	Kanyakubja

(A) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(B) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(C) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

guild members include wealthy ship-owners, local artisans, and moneylenders. They agree to donate a portion of their massive international profits to construct a large new local temple.

(a) Which dynasty ruled Kanchipuram during this thriving trade era?
(b) How did the merchant guilds contribute to the social life of the city?
(c) Evaluate the importance of such maritime expeditions for the Indian economy during this period.

Ans :

(a) The Pallava dynasty ruled Kanchipuram.
(b) They supported religious and charitable activities, such as using their profits to construct new temples.
(c) Maritime expeditions integrated local economies with international markets, stimulating urban growth, fostering cross-cultural exchanges, and boosting national prosperity.

131. A young scholar from Tibet arrives at the grand gates of a massive university situated on the banks of the Ganga. He seeks admission to study advanced Buddhist philosophy and grammar. However, before he can enter the monastery, he is stopped by a strict scholar gatekeeper who rigorously tests his knowledge to determine if he is worthy of entry.

(a) Identify the famous university described in this scenario.
(b) Which dynasty founded and patronised this great centre of learning?
(c) What was the specific title of the 'scholar gatekeeper' who tested the students?
(d) How did this university influence regions beyond India?

Ans :

(a) The university is Vikramaśhilā.
(b) The Pala dynasty (specifically Dharmapala) patronised it.
(c) The scholar gatekeeper was called the dvarapandita.
(d) Scholars from Vikramashila travelled to Tibet, translated Sanskrit texts, and played a major role in shaping Tibetan (Vajrayana) Buddhism.

132. The fertile plains surrounding the city of Kannauj are constantly ravaged by marching armies. For decades, generals from three distinct empires—one from the east, one from the west, and one from the Deccan—have repeatedly clashed here. Despite winning massive battles and seizing temporary control, none of these kings can maintain lasting supremacy over this highly strategic, wealthy region.

(a) Name the three empires involved in this Tripartite Struggle.
(b) Why was Kannauj such a highly contested territory?
(c) Evaluate the long-term consequences of this continuous warfare on the participating empires.

Ans :

(a) The Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas, and Rashtrakutas.
(b) Kannauj was centrally located in the fertile Gangetic plains, symbolizing supreme political and economic power in northern India.
(c) The relentless conflicts exhausted the military and financial resources of all three empires, leading to their eventual decline without a clear victor.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(a) The Khyber Pass is a rugged, mountainous route with steep slopes, deep ravines, and narrow valleys in the Hindu Kush. Its difficult terrain restricts movement to narrow paths, but it has long been a key gateway connecting Central Asia with the Indian subcontinent.

(b) For an army moving toward the Indus plains, the Khyber Pass provided a direct entry into the subcontinent, but it also carried serious risks. Its narrow paths slowed movement and made troops vulnerable to attacks. The Hindu Shahis effectively used this advantage, controlling the pass and resisting invasions. The rugged terrain thus favored defenders, enabling ambushes and strong resistance.

(c) For traders traveling through the Khyber Pass, its main advantage was serving as a key trade route. For over 2,500 years, it connected the Indian Subcontinent with Central Asia, promoting trade and cultural exchange.
However, the mountainous terrain made journeys slow and difficult. Traders also faced constant risks of attacks and looting, especially during periods of political unrest and invasions by powers like the Ghaznavids.

2. In later centuries, the Somanātha temple was rebuilt and destroyed again several times; the existing temple was built in 1950 and inaugurated the next year by the then President of India, Rajendra Prasad. Why do you think it was decided to fund the construction entirely from public donations?

Ans :

The decision to rebuild the Somnath temple using only public donations was intentional, turning it into a national, people-driven effort.
Since the temple had been destroyed multiple times—most notably by Mahmud of Ghazni in 1026 CE—this approach highlighted that its importance went beyond state support, symbolising cultural and spiritual strength.
It also allowed citizens to take part in its restoration, creating a sense of shared ownership and reinforcing the idea that Indian culture is enduring and resilient.

3. In the painting Fig., can you make out who is the king and who is the guru? What does the king's posture and general attitude express?

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

Ans :

The figure on the left, shown in a position of respect, represents the Guru (spiritual teacher), while the figure on the right is the king, Rajendra Chola I.
The king's posture reflects humility and deep reverence. With hands in anjali mudra (a gesture of respect), a slightly bowed head, and eyes focused on the Guru, he appears attentive and devoted, receiving guidance from the seated teacher.

4. Writing some 60 years after Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaign through Bihar, the historian Minhaj al-Siraj Jūzjānī, recorded in his Tabakāt-i-Nāsirī how Bakhtiyar's forces captured a 'fortress' and "acquired great booty." He adds, "The greater number of the inhabitants of that place were Brahmans, and all those Brahmans had their heads shaven; and they were all slain. There were a great number of books there. … It was found that the whole of that fortress and city was a college, and in [their] tongue, they call a college bihār."
Remembering the meaning of vihāra and noting that Nālandā was known in ancient inscriptions as 'Nālandā Mahāvihāra', can you find two more clues in the above passage to identify the 'fortress' near the Nālandā university? (Hint: Who do you think these 'Brahmans' actually were?)

Ans :

The passage notes that most inhabitants were "Brahmans" with shaven heads. Since Nālanda was

patronising Telugu literature. Further south, the Hoysalas of Karnataka, ruling from Belur and Halebidu, broke away from Chalukya overlordship. They are renowned for their uniquely intricate, star-shaped temple architecture.

3. The Cholas: The Chola empire reached its zenith in the 11th century. Rājarāja Chola I and his son Rājendra Chola I expanded the empire across southern India, Sri Lanka, and the Maldives. The Cholas were true masters of the seas. Rājendra I famously launched a highly successful naval expedition across the Bay of Bengal to defeat the Śhrīvijaya Empire, ensuring Chola dominance over lucrative maritime trade routes to China.

5. THE GHŪRID INVASIONS AND THE END OF AN ERA

In the late 12th century, a new Turkic power, the Ghūrids, arose from the mountains west of Ghazni. Led by Muhammad Ghūrī, they began a systematic conquest of northern India. Unlike Mahmūd, Ghūrī sought permanent territorial annexation. His early advance was checked in 1178 by the Chaulukyas of Gujarat (led by Queen Nāīkīdevī or King Mūlarāja II).

Ghūrī then faced the powerful Chāhamāna (Chauhān) empire, ruled by Prithvīrāja III from Ajmer. Prithvīrāja successfully defeated Ghūrī at the First Battle of Tarain in 1191. However, Ghūrī returned the following year with a larger, better-prepared force, defeating and executing Prithvīrāja at the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192. This decisive battle opened the gates to Delhi and the Gangetic plains.

Ghūrī left his trusted general, Qutb-ud-din Aibak, to consolidate the conquests, laying the groundwork for the Delhi Sultanate. Simultaneously, another commander, Bakhtiyar Khilji, pushed aggressively into Bihar and Bengal. Around 1200 CE, Khilji's forces ruthlessly destroyed the great Buddhist university-monasteries of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā, burning their vast libraries and slaughtering the monks. This catastrophic event precipitated the severe decline of Buddhism in its Indian homeland. Khilji's subsequent attempt to invade Tibet via Assam (Kāmarūpa) ended in a disastrous defeat.

6. GOVERNANCE, ECONOMY, AND CULTURAL RESILIENCE

Despite the political upheavals, the fundamental agrarian economy of India remained robust, supported by extensive irrigation projects initiated by native rulers. Internal and external trade continued to flourish, managed by powerful merchant guilds. The era witnessed the construction of architectural marvels, from the Chola temples of Thanjavur to the Chandella temples of Khajuraho.

Philosophically, the era was deeply enriched by thinker-saints. Rāmānujāchārya developed the vishishṭādvaita vedānta school, emphasizing personal devotion (bhakti). In Karnataka, the minister-turned-reformer Basaveshvara founded the Lingayat movement, fiercely rejecting caste distinctions and promoting spiritual equality for all, men and women alike, establishing the anubhava mandapa as a forum for open spiritual discourse.

Furthermore, India's cultural and religious influence continued to radiate outward, profoundly shaping Southeast Asia. The majestic Angkor Wat temple in Cambodia, initially dedicated to Vishnu, stands as a monumental testament to the enduring reach and grandeur of Indian aesthetic and spiritual traditions during this transitional epoch.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. Observe the sketch of the Khyber Pass (Fig.)

(a) What kind of terrain does it depict?
(b) What advantages would it offer to an army trying to reach the Indus plains? But also, what dangers?
(c) Thinking of the caravans of traders that passed through the Khyber Pass for many centuries, let's ask the same questions about the advantages as well as dangers.

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 4

TURNING TIDES : 11TH AND 12TH CENTURIES

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION TO A TRANSITIONAL ERA

The 11th and 12th centuries mark a profound transitional phase in the history of the Indian subcontinent. As observed in the preceding era, the subcontinent was a patchwork of dynamic regional kingdoms rather than a single, unified empire. While the previous centuries saw Arab incursions largely contained in the northwest, the 11th and 12th centuries witnessed significantly deeper and more destructive invasions by Turkic powers. However, this period is not solely defined by war and destruction. It was concurrently an era of immense resilience, where native dynasties flourished, constructed breathtaking monuments, conducted massive naval expeditions, and projected Indian cultural and economic influence deep into Southeast Asia.

2. THE GHAZNAVID INVASIONS AND THE FALL OF THE HINDU SHĀHIS

The turn of the 11th century brought the forces of the Ghaznavids, a Turkic power based in Ghazni (present-day Afghanistan). Initially, the powerful Hindu Shāhi dynasty, controlling the crucial Khyber Pass, fiercely resisted these incursions with the aid of a coalition of north Indian rulers. However, in the first decade of the 11th century, Mahmūd of Ghazni decisively defeated the Shāhi kings Jayapāla and Ānandapāla. This victory granted Mahmūd unfettered access to the fertile Indus plains.

Mahmūd conducted 17 devastating campaigns deep into India. His highly mobile cavalry and mounted archers proved decisive against native resistance. Unlike later invaders, Mahmūd did not seek permanent territorial conquest in India; his primary motives were the extraction of vast wealth and the spread of his version of Islam. He targeted fabulously wealthy temple cities, notably destroying the magnificent temples of Mathura in 1018 and the Somanātha temple in Gujarat around 1026. His campaigns resulted in massive plunder, the slaughter of civilians, and the capture of thousands to be sold in Central Asian slave markets.

3. AL-BĪRŪNĪ AND THE SCIENTIFIC LEGACY

Accompanying Mahmūd on his campaigns was the brilliant Persian polymath Abū Rayhān al-Bīrūnī. While critical of the destruction wrought by Mahmūd—which he noted caused Indian sciences to flee to safer regions like Kashmir and Varanasi—al-Bīrūnī immersed himself in Indian knowledge. He learned Sanskrit and compiled an encyclopaedic survey of Indian religion, philosophy, and science, heavily drawing from Indian mathematicians like Āryabhaṭa and Brahmagupta. He also translated Patanjali's Yogasūtras into Arabic.

Despite the disruptions in the north, Indian science continued to thrive elsewhere. In the 12th century, Bhāskarāchārya (Bhāskara II) emerged as one of India's greatest mathematicians and astronomers. He authored brilliant Sanskrit texts like Līlāvatī (which used poetic riddles to teach mathematics), Bījagaṇita (algebra), and Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi (astronomy).

4. EASTERN AND SOUTHERN DYNASTIES

While the northwest faced invasions, the rest of the subcontinent remained highly active.

1. Eastern India: Following the Pālas, the Sena dynasty emerged in Bengal, patronising Hindu literature, including Jayadeva's Gītagovindam. Further south in Kalinga (Odisha), the Eastern Gangas became a formidable power, initiating the construction of the famous Jagannatha temple at Puri and the Sun temple at Konark.
2. The Deccan: The Western Chalukyas of Kalyāṇi engaged in fierce wars with the Cholas over the Vengi region. As the Chalukyas faded, the Kākatīyas rose in present-day Telangana, building the impressive Warangal fort and

NODIA

a major Buddhist monastery where monks shaved their heads, these were likely Buddhist scholars, not Brahmans. The foreign writer probably used the term loosely for religious scholars.
Another clue is the mention of a large number of books, matching Nālanda's famous library. Together, these details indicate that the "fortress" was actually Nalanda Mahavihara.

5. In Kalyānī, Basavanna established an anubhava mandapa (literally, 'pavilion of experience'), where men and women from every social, economic, religious or linguistic background, including saints and philosophers, could assemble to discuss all aspects of life, including moral values and religion.
(a) Why, in your opinion, did Basava want people from all backgrounds to come together and exchange ideas?
(b) If something like an anubhava mandapa existed today, what important topics do you think people ought to discuss there?
(c) What lessons can we draw from the anubhava mandapa spirit to create a just and civil society today?

Ans :

(a) Basava established the Anubhava Mandapa to promote social and spiritual reform by challenging caste divisions and ritual practices. By bringing together people of all backgrounds, he emphasized the equal spiritual worth of every individual and questioned existing hierarchies.
The mandapa acted as an inclusive space for sharing ideas, encouraging personal devotion (bhakti) and ethical living, while promoting equality within the Lingayat movement.
(b) If a forum like the Anubhava Mandapa—open, inclusive, and non-hierarchical—existed today, discussions would likely address major social, ethical, and global challenges.
It offers important lessons for building a just society by promoting inclusive dialogue, equality, and collective participation.
(c) The most important lesson is radical inclusion. By bringing together people from all backgrounds, including those marginalized by caste and gender, Basava showed that real progress is possible only when every voice is heard and valued equally, regardless of status or identity.
By making the mandapa a space for open ethical discussion, he emphasized that collective wisdom is stronger than top-down authority. Today, this means creating inclusive public platforms where policies and social values are shaped through open dialogue, with the experiences of the vulnerable guiding decisions rather than those of privileged elites.

THINK ABOUT IT

1. We will meet later in this chapter the Persian scholar al-Bīrūnī, who accompanied Mahmūd in some of his campaigns. He wrote in his memoirs on India, "The Hindu Shāhiya dynasty is now extinct, and of the whole house there is no longer the slightest remnant in existence. We must say that, in all their grandeur, they never slackened in the ardent desire of doing that which is good and right, that they were men of noble sentiment and noble bearing."
What conclusions can we draw from this remark by someone in Mahmūd's entourage?

Ans :

Al-Biruni's remark suggests that although Mahmud's forces defeated the Hindu Shahiya dynasty, the Persians who accompanied him still recognised the rulers' strong moral and ethical values. The Shahiyas were viewed as just, principled, and honourable leaders who maintained high standards of conduct. This indicates that even in defeat, their noble character was acknowledged, showing that military victory did not prevent admiration for their virtues.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Why is the period under consideration in this chapter regarded as a major transition in Indian history? Give two examples each of change and continuity from this period.

Ans :

It is a transition because it marks the end of purely indigenous regional struggles and the beginning of foreign Turkic rule in north India.
1. Changes : The destructive invasions by Mahmūd of Ghazni and Muhammad Ghūrī, and the subsequent establishment of Islamic

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Prithvīrāja, allowing the Turkic conquest of Delhi and the Ganga plains.
In the Second Battle of Tarain, Muhammad Ghūrī returned with a larger army, defeated Prithvīrāja III, and established permanent Turkic rule in Delhi.

10. A 13th-century monk seeking to study at Nālandā Mahāvihāra is most likely to find what?
(A) A thriving and prosperous university heavily subsidized by the treasury of the new Delhi Sultanate.
(B) A fully functional and secure institution operating under the protection of the Sena dynasty kings.
(C) A half-ruined, charred site with a few remaining scholars teaching and studying in secrecy.
(D) A newly constructed religious mosque operating under the academic guidance of the scholar Al-Biruni.

Ans :

(C) A half-ruined, charred site with a few remaining scholars teaching and studying in secrecy.
Following Bakhtiyar Khilji's attack, visitors like the monk Dharmasvāmin found the site ruined and burned, with only isolated teachers like Rāhula Śhrībhadra remaining.

11. How did Muhammad Ghūrī's administrative system differ from the traditional Indian samanta system?
(A) It relied on a decentralized network of democratic village assemblies for local governance.
(B) It utilized a centralized iqta system of temporary land assignments for revenue and military service.
(C) It abolished all traditional forms of agricultural taxation and mandatory royal military service.
(D) It replaced all land-based grants with direct, standardized monthly payments in gold coins.

Ans :

(B) It utilized a centralized iqta system of temporary land assignments for revenue and military service.
Unlike the decentralized samanta (vassal) system, Ghūrī's system utilized iqtas—temporary land assignments given to officers strictly for military service and revenue collection.

12. How did the philosophy of vishishṭādvaita vedānta differ from Ādi Śhankarāchārya's advaita vedānta?
(A) Rāmānuja taught that the material world and its objects are merely a complex psychological illusion.
(B) Rāmānuja completely rejected the existence of any supreme divine being or cosmic creator.
(C) Rāmānuja viewed the world and souls as real, emphasizing personal devotion as the path to liberation.
(D) Rāmānuja believed that spiritual salvation could only be attained through active, violent warfare.

Ans :

(C) Rāmānuja viewed the world and souls as real, emphasizing personal devotion as the path to liberation.
Challenging Shankara's view of the world as illusion, Rāmānuja's vishishṭādvaita posited that the physical world and individual souls are real, emphasizing bhakti (devotion).

13. What was the primary function of the anubhava mandapa established by Basaveshvara?
(A) A highly exclusive military academy used for training the elite nobility in advanced combat.
(B) A central royal treasury facility used to store the plundered gold and jewels of the kingdom.
(C) A 'pavilion of experience' where people of all backgrounds gathered for spiritual and social discussion.
(D) A massive industrial shipyard used for the construction of the imperial Chola naval fleet.

Ans :

(C) A 'pavilion of experience' where people of all backgrounds gathered for spiritual and social discussion.
Basaveshvara established the anubhava mandapa as an inclusive, democratic forum where men and women from every background could openly discuss spirituality and society.

14. Which tactical advantage was the primary reason for Mahmūd's rapid victories over Indian armies?
(A) The utilization of heavy plate iron armor for all frontline infantry and support units.
(B) The early deployment of primitive gunpowder-based cannons during field engagements.
(C) The reliance on highly mobile cavalry and mounted archers who attacked with lightning speed.

NODIA

4,630 kilometres).
The expedition likely began from important Chola ports such as Nagapattinam on the Coromandel Coast (in present-day Tamil Nadu). From there, the fleet would have sailed across the Bay of Bengal for several weeks, passing near the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. It then moved through the strategically important and often challenging waters of the Strait of Malacca, possibly halting at ports like Kedah on the Malay Peninsula or Barus on Sumatra's western coast for supplies, before launching attacks on the Srivijaya capital and other major ports.

5. Match these two pairs:

	Column A		**Column B**
(a)	Eastern Gangas	(i)	Belur
(b)	Chandellas	(ii)	Brihadīśhvara temple
(c)	Paramāras	(iii)	Konark Sun temple
(d)	Hoysalas	(iv)	Kandāriyā Mahādeva temple
(e)	Cholas	(v)	Bhojeshwar temple

Ans :

	Column A		**Column B**
(a)	Eastern Gangas	(iii)	Konark Sun temple
(b)	Chandellas	(iv)	Kandāriyā Mahādeva temple
(c)	Paramāras	(v)	Bhojeshwar temple
(d)	Hoysalas	(i)	Belur
(e)	Cholas	(ii)	Brihadīśhvara temple

6. Working in groups, compare the dynasties in this chapter and in the preceding one; create a table to list the dynasties present in both, those that disappear from the preceding period, and those that appear in this chapter's period.

Ans :

During the 11th and 12th centuries, the political landscape of India witnessed continuity, decline, and the emergence of new powers. The dynasties can be grouped as follows:

Category	**Dynasties**
Dynasties present in both periods	Pratiharas, Rashtrakutas
Dynasties that disappeared from the preceding period	Pratiharas, Rashtrakutas
Dynasties that appear or rise to prominence in this chapter	Ghaznavids, Ghurids, Chahamanas, Kakatiyas, Hoysalas, Senas

7. Using the chapter and any additional reading, prepare a short note explaining (1) why centres of learning like Nālandā were important; (2) how their destruction may have affected education and culture in India.

Ans :

1. Nalanda was among the most important centres of education in ancient India. It functioned like a large university where thousands of students and teachers lived and studied together. Learners came from countries such as China, Tibet, and Korea to study subjects like medicine, mathematics, astronomy, literature, and particularly Buddhism. Nalanda reflected India's rich tradition of knowledge and became world-famous for its vast libraries and advanced teaching system.
2. In the 12th century, Nalanda was destroyed, and its extensive libraries and buildings were set on fire. This led to the loss of countless valuable books and knowledge accumulated over centuries. The destruction also contributed to the decline of Buddhism in India and disrupted the system of higher education. Consequently, India's status as a major centre of global learning diminished, and the spread of knowledge to other regions slowed down.

NODIA

8. Why do you think Mahmūd of Ghazni carry out repeated raids from Afghanistan into India, while Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial expansion into India and long-term control? Write a short note on how their motives shaped the outcomes of their campaigns.

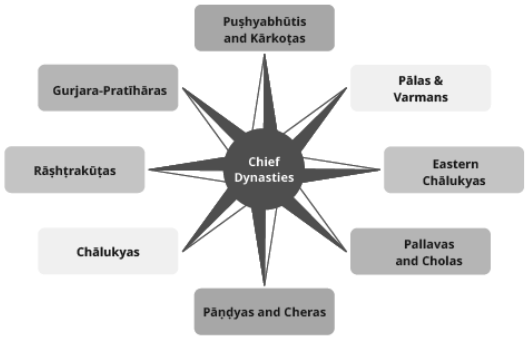
Ans :

Mahmud of Ghazni's repeated invasions were mainly driven by the desire for plunder. He aimed to seize the immense wealth of temples, such

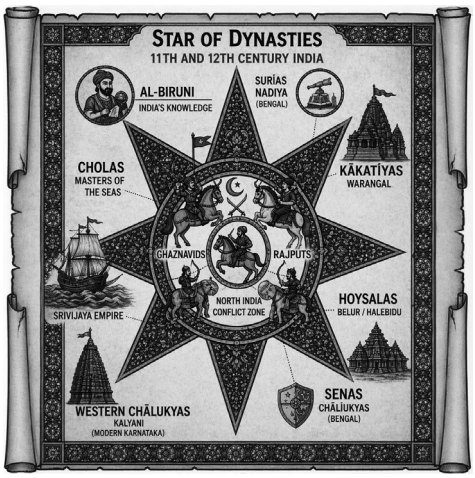
political power (the Ghūrids) aiming for territorial control.

2. Continuities : The persistence of an agrarian-based economy heavily reliant on irrigation, and the continued flourishing of temple architecture and the Bhakti movement in the south (e.g., the Cholas and Hoysalas).

2. Observe in the previous chapter and draw a similar 'star of dynasties' gathering all or most of the dynasties that appear in this chapter.

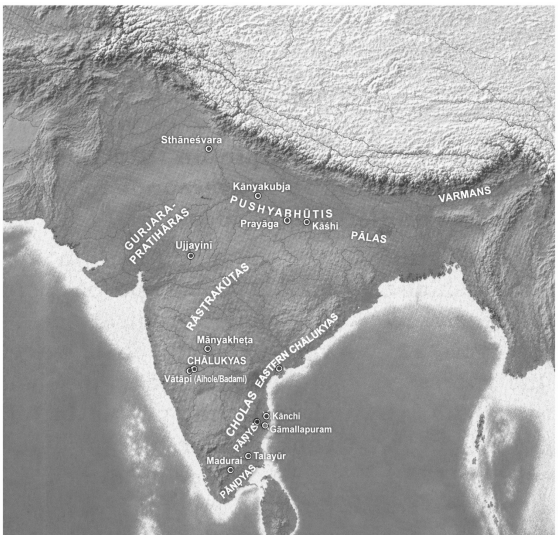


Ans :



Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

3. Taking a map of the Subcontinent, draw a geographical tour that covers all or most dynasties in this chapter (you may draw inspiration from some of the 'travels' the chapter's narration follows).



Ans :

Use a map of the Indian subcontinent and label the following regions:

1. Northwest (Entry Point): Indicate the Ghaznavid capital at Ghazna and trace the invasion route through the Hindu Shahi territory via the Khyber Pass into the Indus plains.
2. North India (Contested Zone): Highlight the areas controlled by the Chahamanas (around Ajmer/Delhi) and the Paramaras (around Dhara in Malwa). Also show the Ghurid expansion after the Battle of Tarain.
3. East India: Mark the kingdoms of the Senas in Bengal and the Eastern Gangas along the Odisha coast.
4. The Deccan: Show the regions ruled by the Kakatiyas (Warangal) and the emerging Hoysalas (Belur/Halebidu) in Karnataka.
5. Far South: Emphasize the Chola Empire (centred at Thanjavur and Gangaikondacholapuram), including their strong coastal presence and maritime influence extending towards Southeast Asia (Srivijaya).

4. With the help of a map of India and Southeast Asia, can you calculate the approximate distance that Rajendra I's fleet of ships had to navigate to reach their objective?

Ans :

The distance covered by the fleet of Rajendra Chola I to reach the Srivijaya Empire (based at Palembang in Sumatra) was enormous for that time, extending over 2,500 nautical miles (about

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Chronicles highlight that Mahmūd was motivated both by the desire to extract massive wealth (plunder) and a religious zeal to destroy non-Islamic temples and spread his faith.

5. According to al-Bīrūnī, what was a direct consequence of Mahmūd's campaigns on Indian intellectual life?
(A) Indian scientific inquiry completely ceased to exist in every region of the subcontinent simultaneously.
(B) Indian scholars and philosophers immediately converted to Islam in order to protect their libraries.
(C) Indian sciences and scholars migrated from the devastated regions to safer areas like Kashmir and Varanasi.
(D) Indian scientists organized a massive standing army to launch a counter-invasion and retake Ghazni.

Ans :

(C) Indian sciences and scholars migrated from the devastated regions to safer areas like Kashmir and Varanasi.
Al-Bīrūnī noted that because Mahmūd ruined the prosperity of the conquered regions, Indian sciences and scholars fled to safer, unconquered places like Kashmir and Varanasi.

6. What is the most visible and lasting legacy of the Hoysala dynasty today?
(A) Their complex naval fleet blueprints and early maritime engineering documents.
(B) Their formal translation of the Quran into the classical Kannada literary dialect.
(C) Their unique style of intricately carved star-shaped temples with ornate stone sculptures.
(D) Their pioneering role in the mathematical invention of the modern decimal system.

Ans :

(C) Their unique style of intricately carved star-shaped temples with ornate stone sculptures.
The Hoysalas are best remembered for their highly unique temple architecture, featuring intricately carved stone pillars and star-shaped ground plans.

7. What was the primary geopolitical reason for Rajendra Chola I's naval expedition against the Śhrīvijaya Empire?
(A) To initiate a program of forced religious conversion of the Śhrīvijaya population to Shaivism.
(B) Because the Śhrīvijaya monarch had committed an act of war by stealing the sacred Chola crown.
(C) To secure and dominate the lucrative maritime trade routes to China passing through the Strait of Malacca.
(D) To establish a permanent new administrative Chola capital on the distant island of Sumatra.

Ans :

(C) To secure and dominate the lucrative maritime trade routes to China passing through the Strait of Malacca.
The conflict arose from economic competition; the Cholas launched a naval expedition to defeat Śhrīvijaya and secure vital maritime trade routes to China.

8. In 1178, who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the foot of Mount Abu, temporarily halting his expansion?
(A) The Chāhamāna king Prithvīrāja III during the first major border engagement.
(B) The Hindu Shahi ruler Jayapāla, who defended the high mountain passes of the northwest.
(C) The Chaulukya forces led by King Mūlarāja II (aided by his mother Queen Nāīkīdevī).
(D) The Chandella monarch who utilized the fortified defenses of the Kalinjar fortress.

Ans :

(C) The Chaulukya forces led by King Mūlarāja II (aided by his mother Queen Nāīkīdevī).
Muhammad Ghūrī's attempt to invade Gujarat was successfully repelled in 1178 at Mount Abu by the Chaulukya forces, led by King Mūlarāja II and Queen Nāīkīdevī.

9. What was the critical outcome of the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192?
(A) Prithvīrāja III successfully annihilated the Ghūrid army and secured the northern frontier.
(B) Muhammad Ghūrī was decisively defeated and forced to retreat to Afghanistan permanently.
(C) Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Prithvīrāja, allowing the Turkic conquest of Delhi and the Ganga plains.
(D) The Chaulukya kingdom intervened as a neutral mediator to force a lasting peace treaty.

Ans :

NODIA

as Somnath, to fund his army and develop his capital at Ghazni. Since he had no intention of establishing lasting control beyond Punjab, his campaigns resulted in a series of destructive raids that weakened existing Indian kingdoms.
In contrast, Muhammad Ghuri was focused on territorial expansion and long-term rule. After his decisive victory in the Second Battle of Tarain, he appointed his general Qutb-ud-din Aibak to secure and administer the conquered regions, including Delhi and the Gangetic plains. Therefore, Ghuri's objective led to the establishment of a stable political authority, laying the foundation of the Delhi Sultanate.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Why are the 11th and 12th centuries considered a period of major transition in Indian history?
(A) It marked the initial phase of British colonial administration and the establishment of the East India Company.
(B) It saw the final geopolitical unification of the entire Indian subcontinent under a single indigenous Hindu sovereign.
(C) It witnessed deep Turkic invasions that transformed regional power dynamics and introduced Islamic political rule.
(D) It was a stagnant period during which all international maritime trade and cultural exchange completely ceased.

Ans :

(C) It witnessed deep Turkic invasions that transformed regional power dynamics and introduced Islamic political rule.
This period is transitional because it shifted from indigenous regional kingdoms to facing deep Turkic invasions (Ghaznavids and Ghūrids) that eventually established lasting foreign political rule in the north.

2. What does the Arabic title 'Sultan' fundamentally mean?
(A) A high-ranking religious priest responsible for the interpretation of sacred law and scripture.
(B) A professional merchant or trader who manages international caravans across the Silk Road.
(C) A term signifying authority or power, typically referring to an independent sovereign ruler.
(D) A landless peasant or agricultural laborer who works on large feudal estates in the rural provinces.

Ans :

(C) A term signifying authority or power, typically referring to an independent sovereign ruler.
The term 'sultan' is of Arabic origin meaning 'authority' or 'power', and in the Muslim world, it came to refer exclusively to a sovereign ruler or king.

3. What military tactic made Mahmūd of Ghazni's army highly successful against Indian kingdoms?
(A) The exclusive and strategic use of massive war elephants as the primary frontline offensive force.
(B) The innovative deployment of heavy European-style cannons and gunpowder-based siege artillery.
(C) The use of high-speed maneuvers and daring cavalry attacks featuring expert mounted archers.
(D) The reliance on heavy infantry units trained to fight in static, slow-moving phalanx formations.

Ans :

(C) The use of high-speed maneuvers and daring cavalry attacks featuring expert mounted archers. Despite facing resistance, Mahmūd's forces were ultimately decisive due to their high mobility, utilizing rapid marches and daring cavalry attacks featuring mounted archers.

4. A historian notes that Mahmūd sought to make the "light of Islam visible." What dual motivation does this highlight?
(A) The humanitarian desire for peaceful regional trade and the scientific expansion of agriculture.
(B) The strategic pursuit of immense material plunder combined with an intense religious zeal.
(C) The socio-political need to establish democratic village assemblies and modern primary schools.
(D) The long-term imperial ambition to permanently relocate his capital city to the fertile Ganga plains.

Ans :

(B) The strategic pursuit of immense material plunder combined with an intense religious zeal.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(D) The superior tactical knowledge of the Indian monsoon cycles and seasonal flooding patterns.

Ans :

(C) The reliance on highly mobile cavalry and mounted archers who attacked with lightning speed.
The primary advantage of Central Asian armies was their reliance on highly mobile cavalry and mounted archers, allowing them to outmaneuver slower, elephant-heavy Indian armies.

15. Why do historians believe that Muhammad Ghūrī adopted the Goddess Lakshmi motif on his coins?
(A) He had privately abandoned his faith and secretly converted to the local Hindu traditions.
(B) He intended to use the image as a deliberate political insult to the conquered local population.
(C) He adopted a familiar numismatic tradition to legitimize his new rule and facilitate regional trade.
(D) The local coin-minting artisans in Ghazni were unable to read or write the Arabic script.

Ans :

(C) He adopted a familiar numismatic tradition to legitimize his new rule and facilitate regional trade.
Ghūrī likely adopted the Lakshmi motif because it was a standard, universally recognized symbol on Indian coins, helping to economically legitimize his new rule.

16. What does the term 'Turkic' refer to in historical contexts?
(A) A modern political designation referring only to the current citizens of the Republic of Turkey.
(B) A broad group of peoples and cultures historically stretching from Central Asia to Siberia.
(C) The specific indigenous tribal populations that originated on the southern Deccan plateau.
(D) The community of Arab spice merchants who navigated the maritime routes of the Indian Ocean.

Ans :

(B) A broad group of peoples and cultures historically stretching from Central Asia to Siberia.
'Turkic' is an ethnolinguistic term referring to various peoples and languages historically originating and stretching across Central Asia, all the way to Turkey and Siberia.

17. What do the short Kannada poems known as vachanas primarily convey?
(A) A series of highly complex algebraic and geometric formulas for temple construction.
(B) The official maritime trade regulations and navigation laws of the medieval Hoysala navy.
(C) The spiritual teachings, ethical vision, and intense personal devotion of Basaveshvara.
(D) The specific military tactics and defensive formations used to defeat the Ghūrid invasions.

Ans :

(C) The spiritual teachings, ethical vision, and intense personal devotion of Basaveshvara.
Authored by Basaveshvara, the vachanas are short Kannada poems that convey his spiritual teachings, ethical vision, and intense personal devotion (bhakti).

NODIA

18. Why should the 11th and 12th centuries not be seen merely as a "historical void"?
(A) Because the foreign invaders immediately dismantled their monarchies to adopt modern democracy.
(B) Because no indigenous Indian kingdom ever suffered a single military defeat during this era.
(C) Because it saw a dynamic integration of groups, architectural advances, and philosophical growth.
(D) Because the arrival of the British Empire during this time immediately stabilized the local economy.

Ans :

(C) Because it saw a dynamic integration of groups, architectural advances, and philosophical growth.
Despite the political turbulence, the era was highly creative and resilient, witnessing growth in regional literature, temple construction, the Bhakti movement, and trade.

19. Which powerful dynasty controlled the strategic Khyber Pass and resisted early Turkic invasions?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Hindu Shāhis
(C) The Paramāras
(D) The Senas

Ans :

(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
Mahmud of Ghazni carried out repeated campaigns into India. Rajendra Chola I became famous for naval success overseas. Bhoja was known for architecture and scholarship, while Muhammad Ghuri expanded rule through territorial conquest.

62. Match the following dynasties and their capitals :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Sena Dynasty	A.	Ajayameru
2.	Kakatiyas	B.	Nadiya
3.	Chahamanas	C.	Orugallu
4.	Paramaras	D.	Dhara

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The Sena rulers governed from Nadiya in Bengal. Kakatiyas ruled from Orugallu. Chahamanas established Ajayameru as their capital, while Paramaras developed Dhara into a major centre.

63. Match the following scholars and their works :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Al-Biruni	A.	Lilavati
2.	Bhaskaracharya	B.	Study of Indian knowledge
3.	Jayadeva	C.	Gitagovindam
4.	Someshvara III	D.	Manasollasa

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Al-Biruni documented India's knowledge traditions. Bhaskaracharya authored Lilavati. Jayadeva composed Gitagovindam, and Someshvara III produced Manasollasa covering many aspects of royal life.

64. Match the following places and their significance :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Somnath	A.	Famous Buddhist university
2.	Nalanda	B.	Shiva temple and seaport
3.	Belur	C.	Hoysala architecture
4.	Warangal	D.	Kakatiya capital

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Somnath was known for its temple and trade. Nalanda became a world-famous centre of learning. Belur reflects Hoysala architecture, while Warangal was the Kakatiya capital.

65. Match the following developments and their descriptions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Chola Navy	A.	Village self-governance
2.	Kakatiya Administration	B.	Maritime expansion
3.	Lingayat Movement	C.	Equality and devotion
4.	Delhi Sultanate	D.	Founded by Qutb-ud-din Aibak

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
The Cholas expanded influence through naval power. Kakatiyas strengthened local administration. Basava's Lingayat movement stressed equality and devotion, and Qutb-ud-din Aibak later founded the Delhi Sultanate.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

66. Which mountain pass did the Hindu Shāhis control to resist invasions?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) Ravikīrti
(D) Dandin

Ans :

(A) Jayadeva
The Sena rulers promoted Hindu literature and patronized the poet Jayadeva, who wrote the Gītagovindam, a famous text detailing the story of Krishna and Rādhā.

28. Which dynasty initiated the construction of the grand Sun temple at Konark in the mid-13th century?
(A) The Western Chalukyas
(B) The Eastern Gangas
(C) The Kākatīyas
(D) The Hoysalas

Ans :

(B) The Eastern Gangas
The Eastern Gangas, who became a highly stable power in Kalinga (Odisha), initiated the construction of the Jagannatha temple at Puri and later the grand Sun temple at Konark.

29. Consider the following statements about the Kākatīyas:
1. They ruled from their capital at Orugallu (Warangal).
2. They patronized Telugu literature and built the Thousand Pillar temple.
3. They were ultimately defeated and absorbed by the Chola empire.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The Kākatīyas ruled from Warangal and built the Thousand Pillar temple. Statement 3 is false; they actually grew stronger as the Chalukyas faded, and were not absorbed by the Cholas.

30. What does the old Kannada phrase "Poy, Sāla" mean, which legend says gave the Hoysala dynasty its name?
(A) "Build, Sāla"
(B) "Strike, Sāla"
(C) "Flee, Sāla"
(D) "Pray, Sāla"

Ans :

(B) "Strike, Sāla"
According to legend, a Jain ascetic commanded the founder Sāla to "Strike, Sāla" ("Poy, Sāla") to kill a tiger, which supposedly gave the Hoysala dynasty its name.

31. Which two cities served as the capitals for the Hoysala dynasty?
(A) Kanchipuram and Madurai
(B) Velāpura (Belur) and Dvārasamudra (Halebidu)
(C) Tanjāvūr and Gangaikondacholapuram
(D) Orugallu and Vengi

Ans :

(B) Velāpura (Belur) and Dvārasamudra (Halebidu)
The Hoysalas, originating in southern Karnataka, established their capitals at Velāpura (present-day Belur) and Dvārasamudra (present-day Halebidu).

32. Which Chola king is famous for conquering parts of Sri Lanka and the Maldives around the year 1000 CE?
(A) Vijayālaya
(B) Aditya I
(C) Rājarāja Chola I
(D) Rajendra Chola I

Ans :

(C) Rājarāja Chola I
Rājarāja Chola I, who ruled from 985 CE, aggressively expanded the Chola empire, notably conquering the "islands of the sea" (the Maldives) and northern Sri Lanka.

33. Who built the magnificent Brihadīśhvara temple at Thanjavur?
(A) Rajendra Chola I
(B) Rājarāja Chola I
(C) Vishnuvardhana
(D) Bhoja Paramāra

Ans :

(B) Rājarāja Chola I
The masterpiece of architecture and engineering known as the Brihadīśhvara (or Rājarājeśhvaram) temple at Thanjavur was built by the great king Rājarāja Chola I.

34. What does the Chola title 'Gangaikoṇdachola' translate to?
(A) The Chola who mastered the ocean.
(B) The Chola who seized (or brought) the Ganga.

NODIA

86. Which Ghurid general eventually founded the Delhi Sultanate?

Ans :

The general was Qutb-ud-din Aibak.

87. Which ancient university did Bakhtiyār Khilji brutally destroy?

Ans :

He destroyed the Nālandā university.

88. Which Indian ruler successfully resisted Sālār Masūd in Bahraich?

Ans :

The local ruler Suheldev.

89. What was Delhi known as during the rule of the Chāhamānas?

Ans :

It was known as Dhillikā.

90. Who translated Patanjali's Yogasūtras into Arabic?

Ans :

The Persian scholar al-Bīrūnī.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

91. Why was the Khyber Pass significant for ancient Indian kingdoms?

Ans :

It was a crucial mountain route utilized heavily by invading armies, Buddhist scholars, and wealthy trade caravans entering India.

92. Why did Mahmūd of Ghazni plunder large Indian temples?

Ans :

He attacked major temples to loot their immense accumulated wealth and violently spread his religious beliefs to non-Muslim regions.

93. How did al-Bīrūnī contribute to the exchange of cultural knowledge?

Ans :

He learned Sanskrit, studied Indian texts, and wrote encyclopaedic surveys comparing ancient Indian scientific achievements with Greek traditions.

94. What were the major literary contributions of mathematician Bhāskarāchārya?

Ans :

He wrote advanced Sanskrit treatises like Līlāvatī, Bījagaṇita, and Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi, combining complex mathematical problems with highly enjoyable poetic riddles.

95. How did the Sena dynasty influence the culture of eastern India?

Ans :

They actively promoted Hindu thought and literature across Bengal, generously patronising renowned poets like Jayadeva who authored the Gitagovindam.

96. What architectural achievements are the Eastern Gangas known for today?

Ans :

By the twelfth century, they successfully initiated the massive construction of the Jagannatha temple and the grand Konark Sun temple.

97. How did the Hoysala dynasty originate according to local legends?

Ans :

Legend claims founder Sāla courageously struck a tiger following an ascetic's command, earning divine kingship and the dynasty's unique name.

98. What distinguished Hoysala temple architecture from other regional building styles?

Ans :

Their highly unique architecture featured intricately carved stone pillars, elaborate sculptures, and decorative panels, prominently visible at Belur and Halebidu.

99. What major overseas conquests did the Chola ruler Rājarāja accomplish?

Ans :

Rājarāja Chola successfully conquered various islands of the sea, including the Maldives, and significantly expanded into northern Sri Lanka.

100. Why did Rājendra Chola I launch a naval expedition against Śhrīvijaya?

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
(C) Mahmūd of Ghazni
(D) Bakhtiyar Khilji

Ans :

(D) Bakhtiyar Khilji
Pushing into eastern India, the Ghūrid commander Bakhtiyar Khilji ruthlessly destroyed the great Buddhist monasteries and universities of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā around 1200 CE.

42. The 12th-century encyclopaedia Mānasollāsa, covering topics from cooking to governance, was authored by which ruler?
(A) Bhoja Paramāra
(B) Someshvara III (Chalukya)
(C) Rājarāja Chola I
(D) Prithvīrāja III

Ans :

(B) Someshvara III (Chalukya)
The Western Chalukya ruler Someshvara III authored the Mānasollāsa in the 12th century, a comprehensive encyclopaedic guide to royal life and governance.

43. Which dynasty is famous for constructing the Kandāriyā Mahādeva and Lakshmaṇa temples at Khajuraho?
(A) The Chandellas
(B) The Paramāras
(C) The Kākatīyas
(D) The Senas

Ans :

(A) The Chandellas
The Chandella dynasty constructed dozens of architectural marvels, including the famous Kandāriyā Mahādeva and Lakshmaṇa temples at Khajuraho during the 11th and 12th centuries.

44. Who was the royal minister at Kalyāṇi that left his position to found the Lingayat movement?
(A) Jayadeva
(B) Basaveshvara
(C) Rāmānujāchārya
(D) Abhinavagupta

Ans :

(B) Basaveshvara
Basaveshvara (Basavaṇṇa) was a minister who abandoned his royal position to become a social reformer, founding the Lingayat movement in Karnataka.

45. The monumental Angkor Wat temple in Cambodia was originally dedicated to which Hindu deity?
(A) Shiva
(B) Brahma
(C) Vishnu
(D) Durga

Ans :

(C) Vishnu
Built in the 12th century by the Khmer king Sūryavarman II, the massive Angkor Wat temple was originally constructed as a dedication to the Hindu god Vishnu.

46. Consider the following statements regarding the Angkor Wat temple:
1. It is the largest religious monument in the world.
2. Its five towers symbolize Mount Meru from Hindu mythology.
3. It was completely destroyed by Arab invaders in the 13th century.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Angkor Wat is the world's largest religious monument, and its towers symbolize Mount Meru. Statement 3 is false; it was not destroyed but was gradually converted into a Buddhist temple.

47. According to the text, which local ruler successfully resisted and defeated Sālār Masūd (Mahmūd's nephew) at Bahraich?
(A) Prithvīrāja III
(B) Ānandapāla
(C) Suheldev
(D) Jayapāla

Ans :

(C) Suheldev
Oral history and 17th-century chronicles record that the local ruler Suheldev successfully resisted an attack by Sālār Masūd at Bahraich, resulting in the latter's death.

48. In what year did Bakhtiyar Khilji suffer a severe defeat while attempting an expedition into Tibet via Kāmarūpa?
(A) 1026
(B) 1192

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(B) The Hindu Shāhis
The Hindu Shāhi dynasty controlled the crucial Khyber Pass in present-day Afghanistan and northern Pakistan, fiercely resisting early invasions with the help of other Indian rulers.

20. Who was the ruler of the Ghaznavids that ultimately defeated the Hindu Shāhis in the early 11th century?
(A) Muhammad Ghūrī
(B) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
(C) Mahmūd of Ghazni
(D) Bakhtiyar Khilji

Ans :

(C) Mahmūd of Ghazni
In the first decade of the 11th century, Mahmūd of Ghazni defeated the Hindu Shāhi kings Jayapāla and Ānandapāla, gaining access to the Indus plains.

21. How many major campaigns did Mahmūd of Ghazni conduct into India?
(A) 5
(B) 12
(C) 17
(D) 25

Ans :

(C) 17
Mahmūd conducted 17 highly destructive military campaigns into India, returning to Ghazni with huge amounts of plunder after each raid.

22. In 1026, which famous temple in Gujarat did Mahmūd of Ghazni attack, plunder, and destroy?
(A) Kandāriyā Mahādeva
(B) Somanātha
(C) Jagannatha
(D) Brihadīśhvara

Ans :

(B) Somanātha
During a major campaign into Gujarat in 1026, Mahmūd attacked the bustling seaport of Somnath, eventually destroying the famous Somanātha Shiva temple and looting its massive treasures.

23. Which famous Persian scholar accompanied Mahmūd to India and wrote an encyclopaedic survey of Indian sciences and culture?
(A) Sulaiman
(B) Al-Masūdī
(C) Al-Balādhurī
(D) Al-Bīrūnī

Ans :

(D) Al-Bīrūnī
Abū Rayhān al-Bīrūnī accompanied Mahmūd around 1017, learned Sanskrit, and compiled a massive, objective encyclopaedic survey of Indian religion, philosophy, and sciences.

24. Al-Bīrūnī translated which classic Indian text on advanced concepts into Arabic?
(A) The Mahābhārata
(B) The Rājataranginī
(C) Patanjali's Yogasūtras
(D) The Gītagovindam

Ans :

(C) Patanjali's Yogasūtras
Demonstrating his deep engagement with Indian philosophy, al-Bīrūnī translated Patanjali's Yogasūtras—a classic text on advanced yoga techniques—into Arabic.

25. Who authored the famous mathematical texts Līlāvatī and Bījagaṇita in the 12th century?
(A) Āryabhaṭa
(B) Brahmagupta
(C) Bhāskarāchārya
(D) Mahāvīra

Ans :

(C) Bhāskarāchārya
Bhāskara II, better known as Bhāskarāchārya, was a 12th-century genius who authored pioneering mathematical and astronomical texts including Līlāvatī and Bījagaṇita.

26. Which dynasty emerged in Bengal after the decline of the Pālas, establishing their capital at Nādīya?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Senas
(C) The Paramāras
(D) The Chandellas

Ans :

(B) The Senas
Following the decline of the Pālas, the Sena dynasty emerged as the dominant power in Bengal, ruling from their capital at Nādīya.

27. Which famous poet, author of the Gītagovindam, was patronized by the Sena dynasty?
(A) Jayadeva
(B) Bāṇabhaṭṭa

NODIA

(C) A Buddhist monastery or college
(D) A marketplace

Ans :

(C) A Buddhist monastery or college
In ancient Indian terminology, a vihāra specifically refers to a Buddhist monastery, which often functioned as a college or center of learning (e.g., Nālandā Mahāvihāra).

56. Which dynasty built a fort with impressive stone toraṇas (gateways) at Warangal?
(A) The Cholas
(B) The Kākatīyas
(C) The Senas
(D) The Pallavas

Ans :

(B) The Kākatīyas
The Kākatīyas, ruling from their capital at Orugallu (Warangal), constructed a massive fort renowned for its highly impressive stone toraṇas or gateways.

57. Consider the following statements regarding the economic life of India in the 11th and 12th centuries:
1. The economy was ultimately based on agriculture.
2. Indian ports entirely ceased trading with the Middle East and Africa.
3. Cash crops like cotton, spices, and saffron thrived.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 1 and 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) 1 and 3 only
The economy was agrarian and cash crops thrived. Statement 2 is false; there was brisk and continuous maritime shipping and trade with the Middle East, Africa, and China.

58. In which modern-day country is the ancient Śhrīvijaya Empire located?
(A) Sri Lanka
(B) Cambodia
(C) Parts of Malaysia and Indonesia
(D) Myanmar

Ans :

(C) Parts of Malaysia and Indonesia
The Śhrīvijaya Empire, which controlled the crucial Strait of Malacca, was a maritime power located across the Bay of Bengal in parts of present-day Malaysia and Indonesia.

59. What famous title did Amoghavarsha I of the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa dynasty adopt?
(A) Ādi Varāha
(B) Nripatunga
(C) Gangaikoṇdachola
(D) Mamalla

Ans :

(B) Nripatunga
In the 9th century, the great Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler Amoghavarsha I assumed the title 'Nripatunga', which translates to the 'peak of kings'.

60. Which region did the Chāhamānas (Chauhāns) primarily rule before capturing Delhi?
(A) Bengal
(B) Rajasthan
(C) Kerala
(D) Kashmir

Ans :

(B) Rajasthan
The Chāhamānas were a powerful Rajput dynasty that initially arose in Rajasthan before extending their conquests to include Delhi, Haryana, and Punjab in the 12th century.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

61. Match the following rulers and their achievements:

	Column A		Column B
1.	Mahmud of Ghazni	A.	Naval expedition to Southeast Asia
2.	Rajendra Chola I	B.	Built Bhojeshwar Temple
3.	Bhoja Paramara	C.	Conducted repeated campaigns into India
4.	Muhammad Ghuri	D.	Captured Delhi after defeating Prithviraj

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(C) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) The ultimate destroyer of demons.
(D) The supreme lord of the southern mountains.

Ans :

(B) The Chola who seized (or brought) the Ganga.
Rajendra Chola I assumed the title 'Gangaikoṇdachola', which means "the Chola who seized (or brought) the Ganga," to commemorate his victorious military campaigns in northern India.

35. **Assertion (A):** The military expedition by Rajendra Chola I against Śhrīvijaya meant that relations between India and Southeast Asia were strictly hostile and conflictual.
Reason (R): Śhrīvijaya rulers had previously funded the construction of a Buddhist monastery at Nālandā.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true.
The assertion is false; relations were generally peaceful and deeply cultural. The reason is true; a Śhrīvijaya ruler peacefully requested and funded a monastery at Nālandā, proving the overall cooperative relationship.

36. Which dynasty emerged as an independent power in Malwa with their capital at Dhārā in the 10th century?
(A) The Chaulukyas
(B) The Paramāras
(C) The Chāhamānas
(D) The Chandellas

Ans :

(B) The Paramāras
Originally vassals, the Paramāras emerged as a formidable independent power in the Malwa region (Madhya Pradesh) during the second half of the 10th century, ruling from Dhārā.

37. Who was the famous 11th-century scholar-king of the Paramāra dynasty credited with founding Bhojpur?
(A) King Bhoja (Gurjara-Pratihara)
(B) King Mūlarāja II
(C) King Bhoja Paramāra
(D) King Suheldev

Ans :

(C) King Bhoja Paramāra
King Bhoja Paramāra, distinct from the earlier Pratihara king of the same name, ruled from 1010 CE, founded Bhojpur, and built a massive irrigation lake near Bhopal.

38. Which of the following was NOT a subject covered in the Samarāngaṇa Sūtradhāra, authored by Bhoja Paramāra?
(A) Architecture and town planning
(B) Temple construction and sculpture
(C) Mechanical devices
(D) Naval warfare tactics in the Indian Ocean

Ans :

(D) Naval warfare tactics in the Indian Ocean
Bhoja's encyclopaedic Samarāngaṇa Sūtradhāra covered architecture, planning, sculpture, and mechanical devices. It did not cover naval warfare, which was more characteristic of the Cholas.

39. What was the capital city of the Chāhamāna (Chauhān) empire under Prithvīrāja III?
(A) Dhillikā (Delhi)
(B) Ajayameru (Ajmer)
(C) Kannauj
(D) Aṇahilavāda

Ans :

(B) Ajayameru (Ajmer)
While they conquered Delhi, the central capital of the Chāhamāna empire during the reign of Prithvīrāja III was Ajayameru, which is present-day Ajmer.

40. Who was the trusted general left behind by Muhammad Ghūrī to consolidate his gains in India, eventually founding the Delhi Sultanate?
(A) Bakhtiyar Khilji
(B) Sālār Masūd
(C) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
(D) Al-Utbi

Ans :

(C) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
After returning to Ghazni, Muhammad Ghūrī left his trusted military commander, Qutb-ud-din Aibak, to consolidate the conquests, who later established the Delhi Sultanate.

41. Which military commander under the Ghūrids is responsible for the destruction of the Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā universities?
(A) Muhammad bin Qasim

Ans :

They controlled the Khyber Pass.

67. Who defeated the Hindu Shāhi ruler Jayapāla in the eleventh century?

Ans :

Mahmūd of Ghazni defeated him.

68. What title meaning 'authority' or 'power' did Mahmūd assume?

Ans :

He assumed the title 'sultan'.

69. Which famous temple in Saurashtra did Mahmūd of Ghazni destroy?

Ans :

He destroyed the Somanātha temple.

70. Which Persian scholar accompanied Mahmūd of Ghazni to India?

Ans :

The scholar was al-Bīrūnī.

71. Name the mathematical text written by Bhāskarāchārya that uses lively riddles.

Ans :

The text is called Līlāvatī.

72. Which Sena dynasty capital was captured by Bakhtiyār Khilji?

Ans :

The capital was Nādīya.

73. Which dynasty built the Sun temple at Konark?

Ans :

The Eastern Gangas built it.

74. What was the capital city of the Kākatīya dynasty?

Ans :

Their capital was Orugallu (Warangal).

75. Which dynasty is famous for temples at Belur and Halebidu?

Ans :

The Hoysala dynasty is famous.

76. Which Chola king built the Brihadīśhvara temple at Thanjavur?

Ans :

Rājarāja Chola built this temple.

77. Which Southeast Asian empire did Rājendra Chola I defeat?

Ans :

He defeated the Śhrīvijaya Empire.

78. Who authored the encyclopaedia Mānasollāsa in the twelfth century?

Ans :

The Chalukya ruler Someshvara III.

79. Which philosophical school did Rāmānujāchārya develop?

Ans :

He developed the vishishṭādvaita vedānta school.

80. Who founded the Lingayat movement in Karnataka?

Ans :

Basaveshvara founded the Lingayat movement.

81. What is the largest religious monument in the world located in Cambodia?

Ans :

The Angkor Wat temple.

82. Which Paramāra king constructed a vast lake near Bhopal?

Ans :

King Bhoja constructed the lake.

83. What text on architecture and mechanical devices did Bhoja write?

Ans :

He wrote the Samarāngaṇa Sūtradhāra.

84. At which battle was Prithvīrāja III defeated in 1192?

Ans :

The Second Battle of Tarain.

85. Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the foot of Mount Abu?

Ans :

The Chaulukya king Mūlarāja II.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) 1205
(D) 1250

Ans :

(C) 1205
In 1205, Bakhtiyar Khilji attempted a disastrous expedition into Tibet but was fiercely confronted in Kāmarūpa (Assam), where local forces destroyed his supplies and inflicted severe losses.

49. **Assertion (A):** The destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā had little effect on the religious landscape of India.
Reason (R): Buddhism had already completely vanished from India centuries before Bakhtiyar Khilji arrived.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

(D) Both A and R are false.
Both statements are completely false. The destruction of these massive monastic universities directly precipitated the severe decline of Buddhism in India, which was still thriving in the east until that point.

50. Which ancient Indian text was translated into Arabic by al-Bīrūnī?
(A) The Purāṇas
(B) The Rāmāyaṇa
(C) Patanjali's Yogasūtras
(D) The Upanishads

Ans :

(C) Patanjali's Yogasūtras
Al-Bīrūnī, showing immense respect for Indian philosophy, specifically translated Patanjali's Yogasūtras into Arabic.

51. A 12th-century king wishes to construct an artificial lake to manage water for his new capital city. He consults a comprehensive Sanskrit treatise covering architecture, mechanical devices, and water management. Which famous text, authored by a scholar-king from Malwa, is he most likely referencing?
(A) Mānasollāsa
(B) Samarāṅgaṇa Sūtradhāra
(C) Līlāvatī
(D) Gītagovindam

Ans :

(B) Samarāṅgaṇa Sūtradhāra
The Samarāṅgaṇa Sūtradhāra is an extensive treatise authored by the Paramāra scholar-king Bhoja. It provides detailed instructions on architecture, town planning, temple construction, and mechanical devices, making it the perfect reference for such public works.

52. What name did the Chāhamāna (Chauhān) inscriptions use to refer to the city of Delhi?
(A) Dhārā
(B) Dhillikā
(C) Orugallu
(D) Aṇahilavāda

Ans :

(B) Dhillikā
The Chāhamāna inscriptions referred to their flourishing city as 'Dhillikā', a name which was later shortened to 'Dhilli' and eventually evolved into 'Delhi'.

53. Which Sri Lankan king successfully drove the Cholas out after a half-century of occupation?
(A) Sūryavarman II
(B) Vijayabāhu I
(C) Jayapāla
(D) Ānandapāla

Ans :

(B) Vijayabāhu I
After the Cholas conquered and occupied northern Sri Lanka for about half a century, the Sri Lankan king Vijayabāhu I successfully led military campaigns to drive them out.

54. Which Hindu deity is featured on a gold coin issued by Muhammad Ghūrī?
(A) Shiva
(B) Durga
(C) Lakshmi
(D) Ganesha

Ans :

(C) Lakshmi
Interestingly, Muhammad Ghūrī issued a gold coin depicting the Goddess Lakshmi, adapting a traditional numismatic motif that had been widely used in India since the time of the Kushanas.

55. What does the term vihāra mean in the context of ancient Indian institutions?
(A) A royal palace
(B) A military fortress

NODIA

Ans :

He launched this punitive expedition because the Śhrīvijaya king restricted vital maritime trade routes connecting the Chola empire with China.

101. Why did Rājendra Chola I adopt the title 'Gangaikoṇdachola'?

Ans :

He proudly adopted this title to celebrate his victorious northern military campaigns and honor the profound sacredness of the river Ganga.

102. What contributed to the ultimate decline of the powerful Chola empire?

Ans :

Frequent, extensive military conflicts with neighbouring kingdoms like the Pandyas and Western Chalukyas severely drained their treasury, causing gradual decline.

103. How did Paramāra king Bhoja improve regional water management in Malwa?

Ans :

He ingeniously constructed a vast artificial lake near Bhopal by efficiently harnessing multiple river waters to support essential agricultural irrigation.

104. What was the primary focus of the text Samarāngaṇa Sūtradhāra?

Ans :

Authored by Bhoja, it is a detailed treatise exploring architecture, comprehensive town planning, temple construction, and innovative mechanical devices.

105. How did Muhammad Ghūrī's invasion goals differ from Mahmūd of Ghazni's?

Ans :

Unlike Mahmūd who merely plundered, Muhammad Ghūrī sought permanent territorial conquest, leaving trusted military commanders to consolidate his Indian gains.

106. What was the result of the Second Battle of Tarain?

Ans :

In this fierce battle, Muhammad Ghūrī successfully defeated and executed Prithvīrāja III, ultimately leading to the capture of Delhi.

107. How did Bakhtiyār Khilji's eastern campaigns affect the Buddhist religion?

Ans :

His brutal destruction of massive learning centres like Nālandā and slaughter of monks precipitated a severe decline of Indian Buddhism.

108. Why did Bakhtiyār Khilji's attempted invasion of Tibet ultimately fail miserably?

Ans :

Local forces in Kāmarūpa actively destroyed essential food and fodder, starving his invading army and forcing a devastatingly weakened retreat.

109. How did medieval Indian rulers maintain their large, powerful military armies?

Ans :

They relied on highly efficient administration to collect steady tributes from vassals and mandatory taxes from prosperous local agricultural traders.

110. What role did agriculture play in the eleventh and twelfth centuries?

Ans :

Agriculture remained the absolute mainstay of the economy, producing diverse crops like rice, spices, and cotton to support bustling trade.

111. Who was Basaveshvara and what important movement did he decisively found?

Ans :

He was a prominent royal minister turned social reformer who firmly founded the egalitarian Lingayat movement in twelfth-century Karnataka.

112. What fundamental beliefs characterized the Lingayat movement established by Basaveshvara?

Ans :

The movement strictly rejected rigid caste distinctions and empty ritualism, instead promoting personal divine devotion, dedicated work, and spiritual equality.

113. How did Rāmānujāchārya's philosophy challenge the existing Advaita Vedanta school?

Ans :

He introduced vishishṭādvaita vedānta, arguing that the world is real and emphasizing deep

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

and brilliant intellectual advancements in mathematics and philosophy continued unabated, powerfully proving the enduring, indestructible vitality of native Indian culture.

CASE BASED QUESTION

131. An ancient scholar travels across unfamiliar lands with a conquering army. Instead of focusing on warfare, he meticulously learns the local language, reads profound native texts, and translates complex indigenous philosophy into his mother tongue. He writes encyclopaedic surveys comparing this new culture's mathematics and astronomy with established Greek traditions, preserving knowledge despite the surrounding military destruction.

(a) Which historical scholar matches the description in this scenario?
(b) Which ancient Indian language did this scholar have to learn?
(c) How does this scholar's approach contrast with the actions of the army he accompanied?

Ans :

(a) The Persian scholar Abū Rayhān al-Bīrūnī matches this description.
(b) He had to thoroughly learn the Sanskrit language.
(c) While Mahmūd's army focused on violent destruction and plunder, al-Bīrūnī focused on respectfully studying, preserving, and translating the region's advanced scientific and philosophical knowledge.

132. A powerful southern king commands a vast maritime empire. Frustrated that a neighbouring overseas kingdom is controlling narrow sea straits and hindering his lucrative trade missions to a distant eastern empire, he dispatches a massive, heavily armed naval fleet. They successfully capture the rival capital but do not occupy the territory permanently, treating it purely as a punitive expedition.

(a) Which Chola king launched this specific naval expedition?
(b) Which overseas empire was targeted because they controlled the trade straits?
(c) Why was maintaining this specific trade route so economically important?

Ans :

(a) Rājendra Chola I launched this naval expedition.
(b) The Śhrīvijaya Empire was targeted.
(c) Maintaining the route through the Strait of Malacca was vital because the Cholas had a highly lucrative and thriving maritime trade relationship with China.

133. A brilliant mathematician decides that writing dry, complex formulas is not enough. To make learning accessible and engaging for students, he pens a treatise using lively, poetic riddles to teach basic mathematics. He tells stories of elephants walking into caves and peacocks on pillars, ensuring his advanced concepts are eagerly studied and translated for centuries across different empires.

(a) Identify the famous Indian mathematician described in this scenario.
(b) Name the specific mathematical text that famously utilizes these lively riddles.
(c) Why was his method of combining poetry with mathematics effective?

Ans :

(a) The mathematician is Bhāskarāchārya (Bhāskara II).
(b) The text is titled Līlāvatī.
(c) It made highly complex logical proofs and mathematical demonstrations enjoyable and accessible, transforming his treatises into universally favoured textbooks for countless generations of students.

134. A royal minister becomes disillusioned with rigid social hierarchies and empty religious rituals. He leaves his high political position to found a new movement. He builds a special pavilion where people of all genders and economic backgrounds can sit together as equals, openly discussing morality and spirituality, effectively breaking down the severe social barriers of twelfth-century society.

(a) Who is the social reformer described in this passage?
(b) What is the name of the inclusive pavilion he established for these discussions?
(c) What specific movement did he found, and what did it reject?

Ans :

(a) The social reformer is Basaveshvara (Basavaṇṇa).
(b) He established the anubhava mandapa (pavilion of experience).

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

distant capital. Conversely, Muhammad Ghūrī intentionally sought permanent territorial conquest across the Gangetic plains, strategically leaving trusted military commanders behind to firmly consolidate his expanding Indian empire.

123. Evaluate the devastating consequences of Bakhtiyār Khilji's campaigns in eastern India.

Ans :

Bakhtiyār Khilji's violent eastern campaigns completely shattered the Sena dynasty's control over Bengal. More destructively, he ruthlessly targeted massive Buddhist educational institutions like Nālandā, violently slaughtering resident monks and burning irreplaceable libraries, a cultural catastrophe that directly precipitated the tragic decline of Buddhism within the Indian subcontinent.

124. Discuss the significance of the Lingayat movement founded by Basaveshvara.

Ans :

Basaveshvara's revolutionary Lingayat movement fundamentally challenged the deeply entrenched social hierarchy by strictly rejecting rigid caste distinctions and empty ritualism. By establishing the inclusive anubhava mandapa, he boldly promoted absolute spiritual equality, ensuring personal devotion and dedicated societal work overshadowed assigned social ranks for both men and women.

125. How did the construction of Angkor Wat illustrate the spread of Indian culture?

Ans :

Constructed in Cambodia by Khmer king Sūryavarman II, Angkor Wat perfectly illustrates India's profound international influence. Originally dedicated to Vishṇu and featuring massive bas-reliefs of Hindu epics, its towering architecture beautifully mirrors south Indian temple designs, showcasing how Indian religious and aesthetic traditions actively shaped Southeast Asian civilizations.

126. Analyse the economic foundation that supported the kingdoms of the 11th and 12th centuries.

Ans :

Despite frequent warfare, powerful kingdoms thrived economically by heavily relying on robust agricultural production, cultivating valuable crops like rice, spices, and cotton. Rulers actively developed vital irrigation networks to mitigate erratic seasonal rains, ensuring stable harvests that supplied the essential tax revenues needed to sustain massive military armies.

127. Examine Rāmānujāchārya's philosophical departure from Ādi Śhankarāchārya's teachings.

Ans :

Rāmānujāchārya boldly challenged the dominant advaita vedānta school by establishing vishishṭādvaita vedānta. He firmly argued that the physical world and individual souls are genuinely real entities, not mere illusions, and strongly emphasized personal bhakti, or complete surrender to the divine, as the ultimate, accessible path to spiritual liberation.

128. How did the Chāhamāna dynasty resist foreign invasions in northern India?

Ans :

The powerful Chāhamāna (Chauhān) dynasty fiercely defended their expansive northern territories from multiple foreign incursions. Notably, Prithvīrāja III successfully repelled Muhammad Ghūrī at the First Battle of Tarain in 1191, temporarily halting Ghurid expansion before ultimately falling to a larger invading force during their second fierce encounter.

129. Discuss the cultural developments under the Kakatiya dynasty.

Ans :

Ruling from Warangal, the Kakatiyas actively fostered remarkable cultural growth by generously patronising regional Telugu literature alongside traditional Sanskrit works. Furthermore, their architectural brilliance is distinctly showcased in impressive structures like the Warangal fort's stone gateways and the magnificently constructed Thousand Pillar temple situated in nearby Hanamkonda.

130. Evaluate the claim that the 11th and 12th centuries were a period of resilience for India.

Ans :

Despite suffering severe destruction and violent plunder from Turkic invaders in the north, Indian civilization demonstrated extraordinary resilience. Internal trade flourished, monumental temple architecture expanded across the south,

NODIA

CHAPTER 5

INDIA, A HOME TO MANY

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION TO MIGRATION AND REFUGE IN INDIA

India's history is not merely a tale of native kingdoms and conquerors; it is also a profound story of migration, sanctuary, and integration. While many Indians migrate internally within the subcontinent, India has historically served as a safe haven and a new home for numerous communities from across the globe. Driven from their homelands by religious persecution, political instability, or the search for better opportunities, these groups arrived on Indian shores, enriching the nation's cultural diversity. This phenomenon is deeply rooted in the ancient Indian ethos summarized by the Sanskrit phrase vasudhaiva kutumbakam—"the whole world is family". This chapter explores the journeys and integration of several such representative communities.

2. THE STORY OF INDIAN JEWS

Jewish communities sought sanctuary in India in multiple waves to escape severe persecution in their native lands. One of the earliest groups, the Bene Israel, reportedly arrived around 175 BCE from the ancient Kingdom of Israel. Legend states their ship was wrecked near the Konkan coast (south of Mumbai). Though they lost their holy books, they retained their core monotheistic prayer and eventually grew to become the largest Jewish community in India, numbering over 25,000 shortly after independence.

Later waves of Jews arrived between the 12th and 19th centuries, settling near Cochin (Kochi) in Kerala. The local ruler, the Raja of Kochi, generously granted them land free of cost "as long as the world, sun, and moon endure," allowing them to build a synagogue and freely practice their faith while integrating into Indian society. Swami Vivekananda famously highlighted this proud history of sheltering persecuted Israelites during his 1893 speech at the World Parliament of Religions.

3. THE SYRIAC CHRISTIANS

From the 4th century CE onward, Christian groups in West Asia who utilized the ancient Syriac language faced immense difficulties. They were persecuted by the Roman Empire, which viewed some of their beliefs as heretical, and by the Persian Empire, which suspected them of secretly aiding the Romans. Seeking safety, these Syriac (or Syrian) Christians traveled eastward along established trade routes to the Malabar coast of India (present-day Kerala). Here, they found the freedom to live, worship, and integrate securely into the local society, eventually diversifying into several distinct sects.

4. THE PARSIS (ZOROASTRIANS)

Following the Arab Muslim conquest of the Sassanid Empire in Persia during the 7th century CE, Zoroastrians faced severe religious persecution, including forced conversions, religious taxes (jizya), and the destruction of their sacred fire temples. To preserve their faith, groups of Parsis fled across the Arabian Sea, arriving on the western coast of India (Gujarat) between the 8th and 10th centuries.

According to a famous legend, when the Parsis sought refuge from Raja Jadi Rāṇā of Sanjan, the king showed them a jug full to the brim with milk, implying his kingdom was already full. A wise Parsi leader responded by dissolving a spoonful of sugar into the milk without spilling a drop, symbolizing that the Parsis would seamlessly sweeten and enrich the kingdom without displacing its people. Pleased, the king granted them sanctuary. Today, India is home to the world's largest population of Zoroastrians, who maintain their ancient sacred fires (such as the one in Udvada) while contributing immensely to Indian society.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(c) He founded the egalitarian Lingayat movement, which strictly rejected oppressive caste distinctions and ritualism, focusing instead on equal spiritual potential and personal devotion.

135. An invading general marches into eastern territories seeking wealth. His forces attack a massive complex, believing it to be a heavily fortified military fortress due to its high walls. After slaughtering the shaven-headed inhabitants and setting fire to massive multi-storey buildings filled with thousands of books, they realize they have just destroyed one of the world's greatest universities.

(a) Which invading general led this destructive eastern campaign?

(b) Identify the famous university (mahāvihāra) that was mistakenly attacked as a fortress.

(c) What was the long-term cultural consequence of this specific destruction?

Ans :

(a) The general was Bakhtiyār Khilji.

(b) The famous university was Nālandā.

(c) The brutal slaughter of scholars and the burning of invaluable manuscript libraries directly precipitated the tragic decline and near disappearance of Buddhism in India.

NODIA

www.nodia.in

Download NEET JEE Foundation Books FREE PDF
visit. **www.neetjee.in**
Download All Previous Papers FREE PDFS

Kochi. The Maharaja of Travancore presented the gold crown for the Torah in 1805 as a profound gesture of respect, protection, and peaceful coexistence. It demonstrates the deep integration and royal patronage the Jewish community received in India, reflecting the core Indian value of providing a safe haven and honoring diverse faiths without prejudice.

2. Observe the picture Fig. What clues do you get about the integration of the Jewish community into Indian society over time?

Ans :

The late 19th-century photograph of the Jewish family in Mumbai shows them wearing attire that heavily mirrors traditional Indian clothing (such as sarees or draped garments for the women). This visual evidence suggests that while they maintained their distinct faith and religious identity, they completely assimilated into the local Indian culture, adopting regional customs, dress, and lifestyles over the centuries.

3. Observe the pictures below (Fig.). What are the clues you get about the integration of the Syriac Christian community into Indian society?

Ans :

The pictures of the Syriac Christian wedding display a beautiful blend of Christian rituals with traditional Indian customs. The bride is wearing a traditional Indian silk saree and gold jewelry, and the ceremony involves tying a mangalsutra (a traditional Indian wedding necklace), which are distinctly Indian cultural practices. This highlights how Syriac Christians, who arrived on the Malabar coast centuries ago to escape persecution, have seamlessly woven Indian cultural elements into their religious ceremonies.

4. This painting of a Parsi bride getting ready for her wedding (Fig 5.7) shows many aspects of Indian culture. Do any of them seem familiar to you? Based on what you see, can you draw any conclusions about the integration of Parsi culture in India?

Ans :

The painting by Raja Ravi Varma showcases the Parsi bride and her attendants wearing sarees draped in a specific regional style, adorned with traditional Indian jewelry like bangles and necklaces. They are also holding a tray with items that look like traditional Indian ceremonial offerings. This visual confirms that the Parsis integrated seamlessly into the Indian cultural fabric, adopting the local dress and customs of Gujarat and India while retaining their unique religious identity.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

5. ARAB MERCHANTS AND THE AFRICAN SIDDIS

Beginning in the 7th century, Arab merchants arrived on India's western coast as peaceful traders, not conquerors. Trading in spices and other goods, they settled in regions like Kerala, Gujarat, and Karnataka, marrying locally and forming new communities. In Kerala, they formed the Mappila Muslim community and helped build the Cheraman Juma Masjid, India's oldest mosque.

The Siddi community, conversely, arrived under different circumstances. Of African origin, they were brought to India as enslaved people by Arab, Portuguese, and British traders between the 7th and 19th centuries. While some achieved military prominence under Muslim rulers in the 18th century, today the Siddis are primarily a scheduled tribe residing in Gujarat, Karnataka, Maharashtra, and Bengal. Their unique culture blends African drumming and dance with adopted Indian regional languages and faiths (Hinduism, Islam, Christianity). Notable figures like Padma Shri awardee Hirabai Lobi have worked tirelessly for the community's economic and educational upliftment.

6. ARMENIANS, BAHA'IS, AND POLISH REFUGEES

Armenian merchants, dealing in spices and fine muslins, established early settlements on the Malabar coast in the 8th century. During the 16th-century Mughal era, Emperor Akbar granted them permission to build churches in Agra. They played significant roles in commerce and administration, establishing lasting hubs in Surat, Kolkata, and Chennai, where landmarks like the Armenian College and St. Mary's Armenian Church still stand.

In the late 19th century, followers of the newly founded Baha'i faith fled religious persecution in Iran and found safety in India. Today, India hosts a vibrant Baha'i community, symbolized by the iconic Lotus Temple in New Delhi, promoting universal unity and religious harmony.

India's compassion extended beyond religious groups to victims of war. During World War II, Digvijaysinhji Ranjitsinhji Jadeja, the Maharaja of Nawanagar (Jamnagar), heroically rescued and sheltered around a thousand Polish orphan children fleeing the European conflict between 1942 and 1946. His life-saving actions are memorialized today at the Good Maharaja Square in Warsaw, Poland.

7. TIBETAN REFUGEES AND THE CORE VALUES OF INDIA

In 1959, following the Chinese annexation of Tibet and a subsequent uprising, the 14th Dalai Lama was forced to flee Lhasa and seek asylum in India. The Indian government granted him refuge, established the Central Tibetan Administration in Dharamshala, and rehabilitated thousands of Tibetan refugees. By building settlements and monasteries (especially in Karnataka), India enabled Tibetans to preserve their unique culture, spiritual practices, and traditional medicine system (Sowa Rigpa), which has since been integrated into India's AYUSH program.

NODIA

LET'S EXPLORE

1. Look at the two pictures below (Fig.). Is the place shown in both the photographs the same? Why is the Maharaja of Travancore (the name of the kingdom in and around Kochi at that time) giving such an expensive gift to the Jewish synagogue for the Torah (religious book of the Jews)?

Ans :

Yes, the place shown in both photographs is the same—the interior of the historic synagogue in

personal devotion (bhakti) for ultimate spiritual liberation.

114. What does the massive Angkor Wat temple demonstrate about cultural exchange?

Ans :

It powerfully demonstrates how India's religious traditions and distinct temple architecture profoundly influenced and shaped historical Southeast Asian cultural landscapes.

115. What was the 'anubhava mandapa' established by Basaveshvara in Kalyāṇi?

Ans :

It was an inclusive pavilion where individuals from diverse social and economic backgrounds gathered freely to discuss religion and morality.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

116. Analyse the impact of the Ghaznavid invasions on northern India's intellectual landscape.

Ans :

Mahmūd of Ghazni's destructive military campaigns severely disrupted northern India's prosperity. As famously noted by al-Bīrūnī, this intense violence caused advanced Indian sciences and prominent scholars to flee far away from conquered regions, migrating toward safer sanctuaries like Kashmir and Varanasi to preserve vital knowledge.

117. Evaluate the strategic importance of the Khyber Pass during the eleventh century.

Ans :

For millennia, the Khyber Pass functioned as an essential trade and cultural corridor connecting the Subcontinent to Central Asia. Strategically, it served as a critical defensive chokepoint; the Hindu Shāhis' control over this mountainous terrain allowed them to successfully resist early foreign incursions before ultimately falling to Ghaznavid forces.

118. Examine the scholarly contributions of al-Bīrūnī regarding Indian culture and sciences.

Ans :

Accompanying Mahmūd's army, the Persian scholar al-Bīrūnī extensively studied Sanskrit to converse with local scholars. He produced a brilliant encyclopaedic survey detailing Indian religion, philosophy, and geography. Furthermore, he systematically compiled advanced Indian mathematics and successfully translated Patanjali's complex Yogasūtras into Arabic, bridging diverse intellectual traditions.

119. Discuss the architectural and literary legacy of the Hoysala dynasty in Karnataka.

Ans :

The Hoysalas left a visually stunning architectural legacy characterized by incredibly intricate stone pillars and elaborate sculptures, prominently displayed at UNESCO-recognized temples in Belur and Halebidu. Furthermore, their prosperous rule actively encouraged significant cultural and literary developments within the regional Kannada language, enriching southern India's heritage.

120. How did the Chola dynasty under Rājendra I project military and economic power abroad?

Ans :

Rājendra I forcefully projected Chola dominance by conquering northern Sri Lanka and successfully launching a massive punitive naval expedition against the Śhrīvijaya Empire. This daring overseas campaign, fully supported by influential Indian merchant guilds, strategically eliminated foreign interference and secured immensely lucrative maritime trade routes with China.

121. Analyse the multifaceted achievements of the Paramāra king Bhoja.

Ans :

King Bhoja was an extraordinary scholar-king who fiercely expanded his empire while initiating massive public works, including a vast irrigation lake near Bhopal. As a prolific author, he wrote foundational treatises on architecture, medicine, and governance, transforming his capital, Dhārā, into a flourishing, renowned centre of learning.

122. Contrast the invasion strategies of Mahmūd of Ghazni and Muhammad Ghūrī.

Ans :

Mahmūd of Ghazni focused exclusively on rapid raids to aggressively plunder immense temple wealth and quickly retreat to enrich his

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

5. What clues do you get about African and Indian cultural integration from the pictures here and above? Identify and name a few features that are distinctly Indian.

Ans :

The pictures of the Siddi community show individuals of African descent wearing distinctly Indian clothing, such as the sarees worn by the women and the traditional draped outfits of the dancers. Additionally, the women wear Indian jewelry like nose rings (nath) and bangles. This shows that while the Siddis retain African traditions—like their distinctive dance and drumming—they have fully integrated into Indian society by adopting local languages, dress, and regional religions (Hinduism, Islam, or Christianity).

6. Are there communities in your neighbourhood whose ancestors might have come to India centuries ago and made it their home? Have a class discussion on what their experience may have been.

Ans :

Yes, in my neighbourhood, there are communities whose ancestors migrated to India centuries ago and eventually made it their home. Over time, they adopted local languages and customs while preserving their own traditions. Their experiences have largely been marked by acceptance, peaceful coexistence, and a strong sense of belonging within Indian society.

7. Identify similar values in any story or local tradition etc. known to you. You could ask your guardians or relatives too. Collect these stories and create a class manuscript. You could include illustrations.

Ans :

One story that highlights similar values of kindness and acceptance is that of Sudama and Krishna. In this tale, Krishna warmly welcomes his childhood friend Sudama with deep affection and respect, despite his poverty. He treats him with great honour, emphasizing that true friendship, compassion, and equality matter more than wealth. This beautifully reflects the idea of "Atithi Devo Bhava," meaning a guest is treated like God.

Another example from local tradition is the practice of Langar in Sikhism. In a Gurudwara, people from all backgrounds—rich or poor, regardless of religion or community—sit together and share the same meal. This tradition represents equality, generosity, kindness, and the spirit of caring for everyone.

NODIA

THINK ABOUT IT

1. Imagine this scenario — A stranger knocks at your door at midnight. It is raining heavily outside, and the stranger seeks shelter for the night claiming that his car broke down while he was driving in the vicinity. Your family goes into a huddle to discuss the pros and cons of letting a stranger into the house at night. Form two groups to discuss the arguments for and against in this scenario.

Now extend this scenario to a country like India — when refugees seek shelter in India, will similar arguments apply?

Ans :

If a stranger knocks on our door at midnight during heavy rain, our family might hesitate before letting him in. On one hand, helping someone in need reflects kindness and humanity, but on the other hand, concerns about safety and

trust cannot be ignored.
Similarly, when refugees seek shelter in India, the same dilemma arises. Welcoming them shows compassion, cultural values, and the spirit of Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam—the idea that the world is one family. However, issues like security, availability of resources, and social adjustment also need careful consideration. Therefore, both at the family and national level, offering shelter requires a balance between empathy and caution.

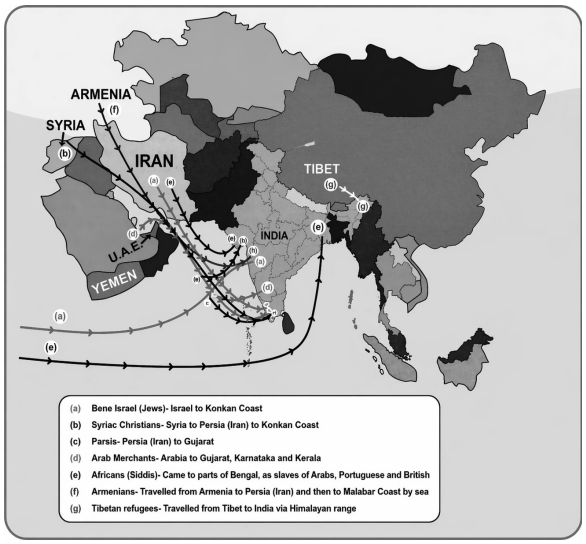
2. What do you think dissolving the sugar in the milk without spilling it meant?

Ans :

"Dissolving sugar in milk without spilling it" symbolizes gently blending something sweet and valuable into life or society in a careful and harmonious way, without causing loss or disruption.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. On the outline of a world map, try to trace the routes that the communities mentioned in this chapter may have used to reach India. What types of physical geographies did they have to negotiate?



Ans :

Different communities reached India through both land and sea routes. Groups such as the Jews, Parsis, Arabs, Armenians, and Baha'is mainly travelled across the Arabian Sea. The Syriac Christians arrived via a combination of West Asian land and sea routes, while the Tibetans crossed the challenging Himalayan mountains, facing extreme cold and high altitudes.
These communities had to navigate varied physical landscapes, including deserts, vast seas, rugged mountains, and long maritime routes, depending on their place of origin.

2. What are the key values intrinsic to Indian culture that enable it to welcome people of different backgrounds?

Ans :

The key intrinsic values are vasudhaiva kutumbakam ("the whole world is a family"), atithi devo bhava ("a guest is like God"), sarve bhavantu sukhinah ("may all creatures be happy"), and a deep-seated philosophical tradition of non-violence (ahimsa), compassion (karuna), and the peaceful acceptance of diverse faiths.

3. Homi Bhabha, Sam Maneckshaw, Ratan Tata, Fali Nariman, Nani Palkivala, and Cornelia Sorabji are a few names of Parsis who excelled in their respective fields. Find out more about people from other communities that made India their home and their contributions.

Ans :

Some notable individuals from different communities who made India their home and contributed significantly are:

1. Mother Teresa (of Albanian origin) – Dedicated her life to serving the poor and needy in India.
2. Dalai Lama (from Tibet) – Spread the message of peace, compassion, and non-violence across the world.
3. Annie Besant (British) – Played an important role as a freedom fighter and worked for education in India.
4. Sister Nivedita (from Ireland) – A disciple of Swami Vivekananda, she devoted herself to women's education and social reform in India.

4. Take up a class project. Divide the class into groups. Each group takes up a small project to study a little more about the communities that we have been listed here. Share what you have gathered with your classmates through one of these ways - drama, posters, song, painting, etc.

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

One group can focus on the Parsi community and explore their migration from Persia to India, along with their peaceful settlement in Gujarat. They can also study the community's contributions to industry, education, and social service. The findings can be presented in class through a poster, chart, or role-play.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. According to the chapter, what specifically characterizes the type of migrants being explored?
(A) Indigenous agricultural laborers migrating from rural agrarian villages to massive industrial urban centers for factory employment.
(B) Communities of people who fled systematic persecution in other nations, sought refuge in India, and settled permanently.
(C) Groups of nomadic pastoralists who move internally across the arid regions of the Deccan plateau for seasonal grazing.
(D) Wealthy European administrative officials establishing temporary commercial and military trading posts along the coastline.

Ans :

(B) Communities of people who fled systematic persecution in other nations, sought refuge in India, and settled permanently.
The chapter specifically explores a type of migrant: communities of people who fled persecution in other countries, traveled to India from across the world, and made it their permanent home.

2. What is a 'synagogue'?
(A) A sacred fire temple utilized exclusively by the Parsi community for performing ancient Zoroastrian rituals.
(B) An ancient Buddhist monastic university designed specifically for the preservation of Sanskrit manuscripts.
(C) A dedicated place of worship for the Jewish community where religious services, prayers, and ceremonies are conducted.
(D) A public community pavilion used by medieval social reformers for open discussions on ethics and spirituality.

Ans :

(C) A dedicated place of worship for the Jewish community where religious services, prayers, and ceremonies are conducted.
A synagogue is defined as a dedicated place of worship for the Jewish community where religious services, prayers, and special ceremonies like weddings are conducted.

3. Who is the founder of the Baha'i faith?
(A) Zarathushtra
(B) Baha'u'llah
(C) Abdul Hai
(D) Adi Shankaracharya

Ans :

(B) Baha'u'llah
The Baha'i religion, which emphasizes the fundamental unity of all people and harmony between religions, was founded in the mid-1800s by a leader named Baha'u'llah.

4. Why were early Syriac Christians persecuted by the Roman Empire in West Asia?
(A) Because they repeatedly refused to pay the mandatory maritime trade taxes required by the imperial treasury.
(B) Because they were suspected of providing secret military intelligence and support for the expanding Arab invasions.
(C) Because their specific theological beliefs regarding the nature of Christ differed from the doctrines of the official Church.
(D) Because they were accused of organizing a violent and highly coordinated plot to assassinate the sitting Roman Emperor.

Ans :

(C) Because their specific theological beliefs regarding the nature of Christ differed from the doctrines of the official Church.
Under the Roman Empire, certain Syriac Christian groups were treated as heretics and persecuted because their specific beliefs regarding Christ differed from the doctrines of the official Church.

5. In the legend of the Parsis' arrival, the local king showed them a jug full of milk. What did this symbolize?
(A) That his kingdom possessed an immense abundance of agricultural wealth, cattle, and dairy prosperity.
(B) That he intended to establish a formal trade agreement exchanging local dairy products for fine Persian silk.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) That his kingdom was already fully populated and could not politically or economically accommodate any more refugees.
(D) That milk was considered the most sacred, ritualistic, and culturally significant drink of his local regional religion.

Ans :

(C) That his kingdom was already fully populated and could not politically or economically accommodate any more refugees.
Because they did not share a common language, the king used a jug filled to the brim with milk as a visual metaphor to indicate that his kingdom was already full and could not accept refugees.

6. In which Indian state did the Polish orphans finally find a safe place to stay during World War II?
(A) Tamil Nadu
(B) Bengal
(C) Gujarat (specifically Jamnagar)
(D) Kashmir

Ans :

(C) Gujarat (specifically Jamnagar)
The orphaned Polish children were rescued and brought to Jamnagar, located in the present-day state of Gujarat, where the compassionate Maharaja Digvijaysinhji provided them with a safe haven.

7. How does the concept of 'Asuras' differ between ancient Indian Vedic texts and the Avesta (the sacred text of the Parsis)?
(A) In India, they are considered divine celestial gods, whereas in the Avesta, they represent ordinary mortal humans.
(B) In India, they are viewed as harmful demonic powers, whereas in the Avesta, Ahurā is the supreme beneficial god.
(C) In India, they refer to specialized agricultural tools, whereas in the Avesta, they refer to forged iron weapons.
(D) There is no conceptual difference, as both traditions view them strictly as identical manifestations of cosmic evil.

Ans :

(B) In India, they are viewed as harmful demonic powers, whereas in the Avesta, Ahurā is the supreme beneficial god.
While they share linguistic roots, in post-Vedic India, asuras are viewed as harmful demons, whereas in the Avesta, Ahurā is the name of the supreme, chief beneficial god.

8. How do the religious practices of the Siddi community demonstrate cultural integration in India?
(A) They completely abandoned all spiritual beliefs in favor of a strictly secular, non-religious community lifestyle.
(B) They continue to exclusively practice a form of ancient polytheism that originated during the Egyptian Old Kingdom.
(C) They integrated their traditional African religious practices with the locally adopted faiths of Hinduism, Islam, or Christianity.
(D) They adopted a strict and exclusive adherence to the principles of ancient Jainism, focusing entirely on non-violence.

Ans :

(C) They integrated their traditional African religious practices with the locally adopted faiths of Hinduism, Islam, or Christianity.
Demonstrating deep cultural fusion, the Siddis have integrated their original African religious practices and traditions with the major Indian faiths they adopted, namely Hinduism, Islam, and Christianity.

9. What does the Sanskrit phrase sarve bhavantu sukhinah translate to?
(A) May the king live forever.
(B) May all creatures be happy.
(C) The whole world is family.
(D) A guest is like God.

Ans :

(B) May all creatures be happy.
The core teaching sarve bhavantu sukhinah, found in ancient Indian philosophical texts, translates directly to the benevolent wish: "may all creatures be happy".

10. For what specific reason was Hirabai Lobi awarded the Padma Shri in 2023?
(A) For her extensive scholarly work in translating the ancient Persian Avesta into modern literary Hindi.
(B) For her dedicated social work empowering Siddi women through financial access, organic farming, and education.
(C) For her innovative architectural contributions to the structural design and engineering of the Baha'i Lotus Temple.

NODIA

(D) For her groundbreaking archaeological research in discovering the lost maritime trade routes of Armenian merchants.

Ans :

(B) For her dedicated social work empowering Siddi women through financial access, organic farming, and education.
Hirabai Lobi, a member of the Siddi community, was awarded the Padma Shri in 2023 for her dedicated social work, empowering Siddi women through financial access, education, and livelihood training.

11. Which institution in Dharamshala actively practices and propagates the traditional Tibetan medicine system to treat chronic diseases?
(A) The Armenian College
(B) The Anubhava Mandapa
(C) Men-Tsee-Khang
(D) The Vikramaśhilā Mahāvihāra

Ans :

(C) Men-Tsee-Khang
The Men-Tsee-Khang institute, located in Dharamshala, is the primary centre established by the Tibetan refugee community to practice, teach, and propagate the Sowa Rigpa medical system.

12. Why were the followers of the Baha'i faith initially persecuted in 19th-century Persia?
(A) Because they refused to participate in the highly lucrative maritime trade operations of the Persian Gulf.
(B) Because the ruling religious leadership branded their inclusive teachings of unity and religious harmony as heretical.
(C) Because they were accused of attempting to militarily overthrow the ruling remnants of the Sassanid Empire.
(D) Because they practiced a highly secretive form of worship that was exclusively focused on the element of fire.

Ans :

(B) Because the ruling religious leadership branded their inclusive teachings of unity and religious harmony as heretical.
The Baha'i faith taught unity and harmony among all religions. The ruling religious leaders in Iran viewed these new, inclusive beliefs as heretical and persecuted them.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

13. Identify the following personalities based on the given descriptions:
(A) The philosopher-king who founded the influential and socially reformist Lingayat movement in the 12th century.
(B) The compassionate Maharaja of Nawanagar who provided safe refuge and care to Polish orphan children during WWII.
(C) The master architect responsible for the iconic structural design of the Baha'i Lotus Temple located in New Delhi.
(D) A renowned 12th-century Indian astronomer who mapped the constellations of the southern hemisphere sky.

Ans :

(B) The compassionate Maharaja of Nawanagar who provided safe refuge and care to Polish orphan children during WWII.
Digvijaysinhji Ranjitsinhji Jadeja was the compassionate Maharaja of Nawanagar who provided safe refuge, food, and care to around a thousand Polish orphan children during the Second World War.

14. According to the translation table, what is the Arabic word for the Sanskrit pippalī (pepper)?
(A) Tanbul
(B) Kāfur
(C) Sandal
(D) Filfil

Ans :

(D) Filfil
Reflecting ancient trade interactions and linguistic borrowing, the Arabic word for pepper is filfil, derived directly from the Sanskrit pippalī.

15. A European tourist in Warsaw discovers a monument dedicated to an Indian King. What specific action did this Maharaja take to earn a memorial there?
(A) He provided massive emergency shipments of Indian spices and textiles to freezing, starving Polish frontline soldiers.
(B) He provided sanctuary, food, and medical care in Gujarat to over a thousand Polish children orphaned by World War II.
(C) He successfully commanded the allied Indian military divisions that participated in the liberation of Warsaw from the Nazis.
(D) He personally financed the architectural construction of the first traditional, large-scale Hindu temple in the city of Warsaw.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Swami Vivekananda delivered these famous, proud words during his iconic speech at the World Parliament of Religions in Chicago in 1893.

37. Why is the Siddi community officially designated as a 'scheduled tribe' by the Indian government today?
(A) Because they have been officially identified as the wealthiest and most historically influential merchant guild operating within the modern Indian economy.
(B) Because their overall economic condition remains poor, requiring targeted governmental affirmative action to provide access to education and livelihood.
(C) Because they are historically recognized as the direct, indigenous descendants of the original inhabitants of the ancient Harappan river civilization.
(D) Because they maintain an exclusive, federally protected monopoly over the nation's most strategic maritime trade and regional naval shipping routes.

Ans :

(B) Because their overall economic condition remains poor, requiring targeted governmental affirmative action to provide access to education and livelihood.
Despite their rich cultural heritage, the Siddis are designated as a scheduled tribe because their general economic condition remains poor, necessitating government affirmative action for education and economic upliftment.

38. What core Indian civilizational value translates to "the whole world is family"?
(A) Atithi devo bhava
(B) Sarve bhavantu sukhinah
(C) Vasudhaiva kutumbakam
(D) Ahimsa paramo dharma

Ans :

(C) Vasudhaiva kutumbakam
The Sanskrit phrase vasudhaiva kutumbakam, found in ancient texts like the Hitopadesha, translates to "the whole world is family," reflecting India's culture of acceptance and inclusion.

39. To which specific region in India did the Syriac Christians migrate to escape persecution in the Persian Empire?
(A) The Malwa Plateau
(B) The Coromandel Coast
(C) The Malabar coast (present-day Kerala)
(D) The Kashmir Valley

Ans :

(C) The Malabar coast (present-day Kerala)
Fleeing persecution from both the Roman and Persian empires, Syriac Christians traveled eastward along trade routes to find safe refuge on the Malabar coast in present-day Kerala.

40. The Parsis came to India to escape religious persecution following the 7th-century Islamic conquest of which mighty empire?
(A) The Roman Empire
(B) The Sassanid Empire (in Persia)
(C) The Śhrīvijaya Empire
(D) The Ottoman Empire

Ans :

(B) The Sassanid Empire (in Persia)
The Parsis (Zoroastrians) fled from Persia to India to escape severe religious persecution after the mighty Sassanid Empire was conquered by Arab Muslim forces in the 7th century CE.

41. Who is the founder of Zoroastrianism, and what is the name of their one God?
(A) Founded by Baha'u'llah; God is Allah.
(B) Founded by Zarathushtra; God is Ahurā Mazdā.
(C) Founded by the Buddha; God is Brahma.
(D) Founded by Mahavira; God is Shiva.

Ans :

(B) Founded by Zarathushtra; God is Ahurā Mazdā.
Zoroastrianism, one of the world's oldest religions, was founded in Central Asia by the prophet Zarathushtra and is based entirely on the worship of one God, named Ahurā Mazdā.

42. Which community, formed by early Arab settlers marrying local women in Kerala, helped build India's oldest mosque?
(A) The Siddi community
(B) The Mappila Muslim community
(C) The Bene Israel community
(D) The Bhauma-Kara community

Ans :

(B) The Mappila Muslim community
Early Arab merchants who settled in Kerala and married local women became part of the Mappila Muslim community, who are credited with helping build the Cheraman Juma Masjid.

NODIA

places like Karnataka, allowing Tibetans to build traditional monasteries. This crucial support enabled them to preserve, promote, and freely practice their unique language, culture, and Buddhist spirituality.

21. What was the name of the prominent lady doctor serving in the Mughal royal palace who belonged to the Armenian community?
(A) Hirabai Lobi
(B) Lady Juliana
(C) Queen Didda
(D) Kāraikāl Ammaiyār

Ans :

(B) Lady Juliana
Reflecting the high status and integration of the Armenian community during the Mughal era, Lady Juliana served as a respected doctor within the royal palace.

22. According to the chapter, how are Indian expatriate communities generally perceived globally today?
(A) As hostile, expansionist cultural forces seeking to slowly achieve territorial or political conquest in their host nations.
(B) As isolated social units that consistently refuse to participate in or contribute to local western economic systems.
(C) As peaceful, law-abiding, and progressive minorities that integrate well and significantly boost their host nations' economies.
(D) As nomadic and transient tribal groups that move frequently across international borders without ever permanently settling.

Ans :

(C) As peaceful, law-abiding, and progressive minorities that integrate well and significantly boost their host nations' economies.
Carrying their ancient civilizational values abroad, Indian expatriate communities are globally perceived as peaceful, progressive, and highly integrative minorities that significantly boost their host nations' economies.

23. Which language shares significant grammatical features and word roots with the ancient sacred text of the Parsis (the Avesta)?
(A) Tamil
(B) Mandarin
(C) Syriac
(D) Vedic Sanskrit

Ans :

(D) Vedic Sanskrit
Highlighting deep, ancient linguistic ties, Old Avestan (the language of the Parsis' sacred Avesta) shares numerous word roots and grammatical structures with Vedic Sanskrit.

24. Why were Armenian merchants highly valued by Mughal emperors like Akbar?
(A) Because they commanded superior, heavily armed naval warships capable of defending the empire from the British East India Company.
(B) Because they were the lead master architects who developed the original structural blueprints for the Taj Mahal monument.
(C) Because they were skilled in global commerce and reliably served in important administrative, military, and royal household roles.
(D) Because they possessed a highly secretive royal treaty that provided the Mughal treasury with an unlimited supply of foreign gold.

Ans :

(C) Because they were skilled in global commerce and reliably served in important administrative, military, and royal household roles.
Armenian merchants were highly valued and gained royal patronage because they were skilled traders who also reliably served in important administrative, military, and household roles (like Chief Justice and royal doctors).

25. A tourist visits Udvada in south Gujarat and observes a continuous flame burning inside a temple that non-members cannot enter. Which migrant community built and maintains this sacred space?
(A) The Baha'i faith
(B) The Parsis (Zoroastrians)
(C) The Syriac Christians
(D) The Armenian merchants

Ans :

(B) The Parsis (Zoroastrians)
The Parsis, who give immense importance to fire worship, maintain their ancient sacred fire in a fire temple located in Udvada, near where they first arrived in India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

26. What does the abbreviation AYUSH stand for in the context of the Indian government's healthcare programs?
(A) The national Association of Youth Under Special Healthcare and emergency rural medical services.
(B) A governmental framework supporting Ayurveda, Yoga and Naturopathy, Unani, Siddha, Sowa Rigpa, and Homoeopathy.
(C) The All-India Union for Surgical Hospitals and the strict federal regulation of modern medical technology.
(D) A specialized and well-funded federal program for Advanced Yoga and Universal Spiritual Healing for elderly citizens.

Ans :

(B) A governmental framework supporting Ayurveda, Yoga and Naturopathy, Unani, Siddha, Sowa Rigpa, and Homoeopathy.
AYUSH is a government program supporting traditional medical systems, standing for Ayurveda, Yoga and Naturopathy, Unani, Siddha, Sowa Rigpa, and Homoeopathy.

27. What was the name of the Indian king in Sanjan (Gujarat) who granted sanctuary to the fleeing Parsi community?
(A) Raja Jadi Rāṇā
(B) King Suheldev
(C) King Mularāja II
(D) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji

Ans :

(A) Raja Jadi Rāṇā
According to Parsi legend, the fleeing Zoroastrians approached Raja Jadi Rāṇā, the king of Sanjan in coastal Gujarat, seeking a safe place to stay.

28. How did the Indian government's approach to Tibetan refugees demonstrate the principle of vasudhaiva kutumbakam?
(A) By legally requiring the refugees to serve in the national military in exchange for monthly food rations and temporary shelter.
(B) By granting them asylum, providing education, and building settlements to help them safely preserve their culture and dignity.
(C) By requiring all incoming refugees to live exclusively on the highly remote and uninhabited islands of the Andaman archipelago.
(D) By immediately deporting the refugee population back to their country of origin to avoid any escalating regional political conflict.

Ans :

(B) By granting them asylum, providing education, and building settlements to help them safely preserve their culture and dignity.
By actively rehabilitating the refugees, providing education, and creating safe spaces (monasteries/ settlements) for them to preserve their unique heritage, India practically demonstrated that "the whole world is family".

NODIA

29. Armenian Street and the St. Mary's Armenian Church are lasting cultural landmarks in which major Indian city?
(A) Mumbai
(B) Delhi
(C) Chennai
(D) Kochi

Ans :

(C) Chennai
Armenian merchants became highly influential in the commerce of Madras (present-day Chennai). Armenian Street and the 18th-century St. Mary's Armenian Church stand as lasting symbols of their legacy there.

30. In the context of the chapter, what does the term 'persecution' refer to?
(A) The voluntary and highly organized process of legally migrating to a foreign country to seek higher-paying industrial employment.
(B) Systematic hostility, harassment, or violent mistreatment of an individual or group driven by differing religious, ethnic, or political beliefs.
(C) The peaceful, collaborative, and highly structured exchange of complex scientific and mathematical knowledge between two distinct cultures.
(D) A formal royal decree issued by a monarch that legally grants a specific religious community the exclusive right to collect agricultural taxes.

Ans :

(B) Systematic hostility, harassment, or violent mistreatment of an individual or group driven by differing religious, ethnic, or political beliefs.
Persecution is defined as the systematic hostility, harassment, or violent mistreatment of an individual or group, most often driven by differing religious, ethnic, social, or political beliefs.

31. Which Indian ruler granted land free of cost to Jewish settlers "as long as the world, sun, and moon endure"?
(A) The Maharaja of Nawanagar
(B) Emperor Akbar
(C) The Raja of Kochi
(D) Raja Jadi Rāṇā

Ans :

(C) The Raja of Kochi
The Raja of Kochi (Cochin) generously granted land free of cost to Jewish settlers arriving between the 12th and 19th centuries, allowing them to build a synagogue.

32. What fundamental Indian civilizational value, besides vasudhaiva kutumbakam, does the Dalai Lama actively seek to revive globally?
(A) The strict social enforcement and philosophical justification of the traditional Varna-Jati hierarchy across all modern nations.
(B) The historical necessity and strategic importance of the Tripartite Struggle for control over major regional economic centers.
(C) The deliberate revival and global promotion of the ancient Indian core values of karuṇā (compassion) and ahimsa (nonviolence).
(D) The rapid expansion and aggressive deployment of national naval military power to firmly control international maritime sea lanes.

Ans :

(C) The deliberate revival and global promotion of the ancient Indian core values of karuṇā (compassion) and ahimsa (nonviolence).
One of the 14th Dalai Lama's 'Four Commitments' is the deliberate revival and global promotion of India's ancient civilizational heritage, specifically focusing on the universal values of karuṇā (compassion) and ahimsa (nonviolence).

33. From where did the Siddi community originally originate before being brought to India?
(A) Central Asia
(B) Persia
(C) Africa
(D) Armenia

Ans :

(C) Africa
The Siddis are uniquely of African origin; they were enslaved in Africa and brought to India by Arab, Portuguese, and British traders starting in the 7th century.

34. What was the jizya?
(A) A formal royal land grant issued by ancient Indian kings to newly arrived refugees to allow them to build their first places of worship.
(B) A discriminatory and highly specific religious tax imposed on non-Muslim populations, such as the Zoroastrians, following the Islamic conquest of Persia.
(C) A traditional, highly rhythmic dance and musical performance specific to the descendants of the Siddi community living in coastal Gujarat.
(D) The official, highly guarded diplomatic language utilized extensively by Armenian merchants during their lucrative trade negotiations with the Mughals.

Ans :

(B) A discriminatory and highly specific religious tax imposed on non-Muslim populations, such as the Zoroastrians, following the Islamic conquest of Persia.
Following the Islamic conquest of the Sassanid Empire, the new rulers imposed the jizya, which was a discriminatory religious tax levied specifically on non-Muslim populations, forcing many Zoroastrians to flee.

35. During the 16th century, which Mughal emperor gave Armenian merchants permission to build a church and practice Christianity in Agra?
(A) Babur
(B) Aurangzeb
(C) Shah Jahan
(D) Akbar

Ans :

(D) Akbar
In the 16th century, the Mughal emperor Akbar granted patronage to Armenians from Persia, explicitly giving them permission to build a church and follow their Christian practices in Agra.

36. Who proudly stated in 1893, "I am proud to belong to a nation which has sheltered the persecuted and the refugees of all religions and all nations of the Earth"?
(A) Mahatma Gandhi
(B) Swami Vivekananda
(C) The 14th Dalai Lama
(D) Digvijaysinhji Ranjitsinhji

Ans :

(B) Swami Vivekananda

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(B) He provided sanctuary, food, and medical care in Gujarat to over a thousand Polish children orphaned by World War II.
The Maharaja of Nawanagar is honored at the Good Maharaja Square in Warsaw for his incredible humanitarian effort in rescuing, sheltering, and caring for approximately a thousand Polish orphans fleeing the horrors of World War II.

16. Why did many Buddhist monks flee from eastern India to Tibet during the 12th and 13th centuries?
(A) To escape the extreme climatic conditions and devastating summer heatwaves of the northern Gangetic plains.
(B) Because Turko-Afghan military invasions were violently destroying massive Buddhist centers of learning like Nalanda.
(C) Because the southern Chola empire implemented a strict legal ban on the public practice of the Buddhist faith.
(D) To serve as lead architectural consultants in the massive construction project of the Angkor Wat temple complex.

Ans :

(B) Because Turko-Afghan military invasions were violently destroying massive Buddhist centers of learning like Nalanda.
During the 12th and 13th centuries, Turko-Afghan forces violently destroyed massive Buddhist centres of learning like Nalanda, forcing monks to flee to Tibet with precious Sanskrit manuscripts.

17. The Baha'i faith, which emerged in the mid-1800s, originated in which modern-day country?
(A) Israel
(B) Poland
(C) Armenia
(D) Iran

Ans :

(D) Iran
The Baha'i religion, led by Baha'u'llah, originated in the mid-1800s in Persia, which corresponds to the modern-day country of Iran.

18. What is Sowa Rigpa?
(A) An ancient and highly complex fire ritual performed exclusively during the coronation of Persian monarchs.
(B) A traditional Tibetan system of medicine, also known as the 'Art of Healing', which blends regional ancient principles.
(C) The specialized and heavily guarded official dialect spoken exclusively by the elders of the Siddi community.
(D) A discriminatory religious tax imposed on non-Muslim populations by the ancient and expanding Sassanid Empire.

Ans :

(B) A traditional Tibetan system of medicine, also known as the 'Art of Healing', which blends regional ancient principles.
Sowa Rigpa, codified in the 8th century, is the traditional Tibetan system of medicine (the 'Art of Healing') that blends ancient principles of Ayurveda with inputs from China, Persia, and Greece.

19. From where did the Bene Israel Jewish community purportedly originate before arriving in India around 175 BCE?
(A) The Sassanid Empire
(B) The Kingdom of Israel
(C) The Roman Empire
(D) The Kingdom of Armenia

Ans :

(B) The Kingdom of Israel
According to scholars, the Bene Israel Jewish community traveled from the ancient Kingdom of Israel around 175 BCE, eventually surviving a shipwreck to settle on India's Konkan coast.

20. How did the establishment of Tibetan settlements in states like Karnataka assist the refugee community?
(A) It provided a geographic means to isolate the community entirely from the economic influence of the modern world.
(B) It enabled them to build traditional monasteries, creating a safe space to preserve their unique language, culture, and spirituality.
(C) It legally mandated that the community abandon traditional Sowa Rigpa in favor of modern western pharmaceutical medicine.
(D) It provided the necessary naval infrastructure and coastal access for the community to engage in maritime trade with the Maldives.

Ans :

(B) It enabled them to build traditional monasteries, creating a safe space to preserve their unique language, culture, and spirituality.
The Indian government facilitated settlements in

NODIA

43. The iconic Lotus Temple in New Delhi is the primary place of worship for which community in India?
(A) The Parsis
(B) The Baha'is
(C) The Syriac Christians
(D) The Bene Israel Jews

Ans :

(B) The Baha'is
The Lotus Temple in New Delhi is the most famous house of worship for the Baha'i community in India, reflecting their message of welcoming all religions.

44. In what century did Tibet first become a major centre of Buddhism after its king embraced the Buddha's teachings?
(A) 3rd century BCE
(B) 1st century CE
(C) 7th century CE
(D) 12th century CE

Ans :

(C) 7th century CE
Tibet, often called the 'Land of Snows', began its transformation into a major centre of Buddhism in the 7th century CE when its king officially embraced the Buddha's teachings.

45. From the 15th century onward, who became the spiritual heads and eventually the rulers of Tibet?
(A) The Rajas of Kochi
(B) The Gurjara-Pratihāras
(C) The Dalai Lamas
(D) The Baha'u'llahs

Ans :

(C) The Dalai Lamas
From the 15th century onward, the Dalai Lamas, each believed to be the reincarnation of their predecessor, assumed greater roles, eventually becoming both the spiritual heads and rulers of Tibet.

46. In 1959, the 14th Dalai Lama fled Tibet and took refuge in India following an uprising in which city?
(A) Kabul
(B) Thanjavur
(C) Lhasa
(D) Ghazni

Ans :

(C) Lhasa
Following a popular uprising against Chinese presence in Lhasa (the religious and administrative capital of Tibet), the 14th Dalai Lama was forced to flee and seek asylum in India in 1959.

47. Where in India does the Central Tibetan Administration currently function as a government-in-exile?
(A) Jamnagar (Gujarat)
(B) Dharamshala (Himachal Pradesh)
(C) Bylakuppe (Karnataka)
(D) Kochi (Kerala)

Ans :

(B) Kochi (Kerala)
Granted asylum by the Indian government, the 14th Dalai Lama lives in Dharamshala (Himachal Pradesh), which serves as the headquarters for the Central Tibetan Administration functioning as a government-in-exile.

48. Consider the following statements regarding the Dalai Lama's 'Four Commitments':
1. The promotion of human values like compassion and forgiveness.
2. The mandatory conversion of all Indians to Tibetan Buddhism.
3. The revival of India's civilisational heritage, particularly values like karuṇā and ahimsa.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 1 and 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) 1 and 3 only
The Dalai Lama's commitments focus on human values, religious harmony, preserving Tibetan culture, and reviving ancient Indian values like compassion and non-violence. He absolutely does not promote mandatory religious conversion.

49. What does the ancient Indian value atithi devo bhava mean?
(A) The whole world is family.
(B) A guest is like God.
(C) May all creatures be happy.
(D) Non-violence is the supreme duty.

Ans :

(B) A guest is like God
The core civilizational teaching atithi devo bhava translates directly to "a guest is like God," underscoring India's profound cultural emphasis on supreme hospitality and welcoming strangers.

NODIA

50. Which Buddhist text beautifully expresses the sentiment: "Even as a mother protects with her life her only child, so with a boundless heart should one cherish all living beings"?
(A) The Jatakas
(B) The Tripitaka
(C) The Karaṇīya Metta Sutta
(D) The Yogasutras

Ans :

(C) The Karaṇīya Metta Sutta
This beautiful expression of boundless compassion and loving-kindness is found in the Buddhist text known as the Karaṇīya Metta Sutta.

51. According to scholars, the Bene Israel Jewish community arrived in India after fleeing their ancient kingdom around what year?
(A) 175 BCE
(B) 632 CE
(C) 1205 CE
(D) 1939 CE

Ans :

(A) 175 BCE
Historical scholarship suggests that the Bene Israel community fled the ancient Kingdom of Israel and arrived on the Indian coast around the year 175 BCE.

52. What was the specific term used to refer to the religious taxes imposed on Zoroastrians in Persia after the Islamic conquest?
(A) Vihāra
(B) Jizya
(C) Sabhā
(D) Toraṇa

Ans :

(B) Jizya
After the Arab conquest of Persia, Zoroastrians faced severe persecution, including the imposition of jizya, which was a specific religious tax levied on non-Muslim subjects.

53. Which famous ancient university is noted for its connections with the Indonesian Muara Jambi temple complex?
(A) Vikramaśhilā
(B) Nālandā
(C) Takshaśhilā
(D) Kanchipuram

Ans :

(B) Nālandā
(From previous chapter knowledge contextualized here) Nālandā Mahāvihāra was a massive international centre of learning that had recorded collaborations and donations from Southeast Asian empires like Śhrīvijaya.

54. A community in coastal Gujarat is known for performing a vibrant, rhythmic dance accompanied by heavy drumming. The dancers' physical features and musical styles point to roots on a completely different continent, despite the community speaking fluent Gujarati and practicing local Indian religions. Which specific community is this describing?
(A) The Parsis
(B) The Armenians
(C) The Siddis
(D) The Bene Israel

Ans :

(C) The Siddis
The Siddi community, brought to India as enslaved people from Africa, has a distinct culture that beautifully fuses African drumming and dance traditions with adopted Indian regional languages (like Gujarati) and local religions.

55. Between 1942 and 1946, the Maharaja of Nawanagar worked with which international organization to rescue orphaned children?
(A) The United Nations
(B) The Red Cross
(C) The World Health Organization
(D) SAARC

Ans :

(B) The Red Cross
Touched by the tragedy of World War II, Maharaja Digvijaysinhji mobilized the Red Cross and other organizations to help rescue, transport, and care for the Polish orphans.

56. **Assertion (A):** The Arab merchants who arrived on the Malabar coast in the 7th century were fierce conquerors who destroyed local temples.
Reason (R): They were part of Muhammad bin Qasim's invading army.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(D) Both A and R are false.
Both statements are completely false. The early Arab merchants who arrived on the west coast came as peaceful traders who married locally and integrated, not as military conquerors like those who later invaded Sindh.

57. The Armenian College and Mother Mary Church, established in the 18th century, are enduring cultural landmarks in which Indian city?
(A) Surat
(B) Agra
(C) Kolkata
(D) Delhi

Ans :

(C) Kolkata
Kolkata became a major hub for Armenian merchants and settlers. The 18th-century Armenian College and Mother Mary Church established there continue to be active today.

58. A historian finds an ancient copper plate in Kerala. It documents a local Raja granting vast tracts of land to a group of foreigners who lost their holy books in a shipwreck. The grant allows them to freely build a place of worship. Which community's history is the historian most likely uncovering?
(A) The Baha'is
(B) The Jewish community (Bene Israel / Cochin Jews)
(C) The Armenian merchants
(D) The Tibetan monks

Ans :

(B) The Jewish community (Bene Israel / Cochin Jews)
The narrative of surviving a shipwreck (Bene Israel) combined with the historical fact of the Raja of Kochi generously granting land to Jewish settlers to build a synagogue perfectly aligns with the history of Indian Jews.

59. Consider the following statements regarding the integration of the Parsi community in India:
1. They completely abandoned Zoroastrianism and converted to Hinduism.
2. They adopted elements of Indian dress, as seen in Raja Ravi Varma's paintings.
3. They maintained their sacred fire temples, such as the one in Udvada.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
The Parsis successfully integrated by adopting local Indian customs and dress (Statement 2), but they fiercely preserved their unique faith and sacred fire temples (Statement 3). They did not convert to Hinduism (Statement 1 is false).

NODIA

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

60. Match the following communities with their origin regions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Bene Israel	A.	Tibet
2.	Parsis	B.	Ancient Israel
3.	Syriac Christians	C.	Persia (Iran)
4.	Tibetan Refugees	D.	West Asia

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(B) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(D) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
The Bene Israel came from ancient Israel, Parsis migrated from Persia, Syriac Christians arrived from West Asia, and Tibetan refugees entered India after political developments in Tibet. These groups found shelter and opportunities in India.

61. Match the following communities with their place of settlement in India :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Bene Israel	A.	Konkan Coast
2.	Parsis	B.	Gujarat
3.	Syriac Christians	C.	Malabar Coast
4.	Tibetans	D.	Dharamshala

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(C) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(D) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C

Ans :

CHAPTER 6

THE STATE, THE GOVERNMENT, AND YOU

SUMMARY

1. UNDERSTANDING THE STATE VERSUS THE GOVERNMENT

In everyday language, the terms "state" and "government" are often used interchangeably. However, in political science, they represent distinct, albeit closely related, concepts. A 'state' (or nation) is a permanent political organization that possesses the authority to govern a defined territory and its population. A state is fundamentally defined by four essential features:

1. People (Population): A state must have a permanent population of citizens who identify with the territory and live together, forming a shared culture and society.
2. Land (Territory): It requires a geographically defined area with clear, agreed-upon boundaries separating it from neighboring states.
3. Government: Because people live together, a system is needed to create and implement laws.
4. Sovereignty: This is the absolute power of the state to make laws and govern its internal affairs without any external interference or outside control.

The 'government', conversely, is merely the system or the specific group of people (leaders, ministers, officials) that actively runs the country on behalf of the state. Governments are temporary and change frequently through elections, whereas the state remains permanent. To illustrate, if the state is a school, the government acts as the principal and teachers; the staff may change, but the institution itself endures.

2. THE PILLARS OF GOVERNMENT

Governance requires a structured system. The government performs its duties through three main branches or pillars:

1. The Legislature: This is the lawmaking body. In a democracy, it represents the people and creates the rules that govern society, ensuring that governance is based on defined laws rather than arbitrary personal wishes.
2. The Executive: This branch is responsible for carrying out laws and formulating policies. It is further divided into two distinct parts:
3. The Political Executive: Comprising elected leaders (like the Prime Minister and Chief Ministers), they make major decisions, set national goals, and hold power for a fixed term (usually five years) dependent on the people's trust.
4. The Permanent Executive: Also known as bureaucrats or civil servants (like the IAS or IPS), these non-elected officials are selected through rigorous examinations. They remain in their positions regardless of political changes, providing expert advice, implementing policies at the grassroots level, and delivering essential public services. A historic example of bureaucratic reform is C.B. Muthamma, the first woman to join the Indian Foreign Service in 1949, who successfully fought against discriminatory gender bias in the services.
5. The Judiciary: Acting as the "watchdog," the judiciary ensures that laws are followed and interpreted correctly. Crucially, in a democracy like India, the judiciary is strictly independent of the executive and legislature. It protects citizens' fundamental rights and acts as a referee through 'judicial review' to ensure that even the government obeys the Constitution.

3. DEMOCRACY AND REPUBLIC: UNDERSTANDING THE DIFFERENCE

India's Constitution proudly declares the nation a "Democratic Republic". While often confused, these terms highlight different aspects of governance. 'Democracy' means "rule by the

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

The Raja of Kochi.

69. What is the primary place of worship for the Jewish community called?

Ans :

A synagogue.

70. In which year did Swami Vivekananda deliver his famous speech in Chicago?

Ans :

In 1893.

71. Which ancient language did the early Christian immigrants to Kerala use?

Ans :

The ancient Syriac language.

72. Where did the Syriac Christians eventually settle in India?

Ans :

The Malabar coast.

73. What is the name of the supreme God in Zoroastrianism?

Ans :

Ahurā Mazdā.

74. From which modern-day country did the Parsis originally flee?

Ans :

Modern-day Iran (Persia).

75. Who was the king of Sanjan who welcomed the Parsis?

Ans :

Raja Jadi Rāṇā.

76. Where is the ancient Parsi sacred fire currently burning in Gujarat?

Ans :

In Udvada.

77. What is the ancient sacred text of the Parsis called?

Ans :

The Avesta.

78. Name India's oldest mosque built with the help of Arab merchants.

Ans :

Cheraman Juma Masjid.

79. What is the geographic origin of the Siddi community?

Ans :

African origin.

80. Which Siddi woman won the Padma Shri in 2023 for community service?

Ans :

Hirabai Lobi.

81. During whose reign did Armenians establish a settlement in Agra?

Ans :

Mughal emperor Akbar.

82. Which city features the 18th-century Armenian College and Mother Mary Church?

Ans :

Kolkata.

83. Who founded the Baha'i faith in the mid-1800s?

Ans :

Baha'u'llah.

84. Which Indian city houses the famous Baha'i Lotus Temple?

Ans :

New Delhi.

85. Which Indian Maharaja rescued Polish orphans during World War II?

Ans :

Maharaja Digvijaysinhji Ranjitsinhji Jadeja.

86. In which European city is the Good Maharaja Square located?

Ans :

Warsaw, Poland.

87. When did the 14th Dalai Lama take refuge in India?

Ans :

In 1959.

88. Where does the Central Tibetan Administration currently function in India?

NODIA

114. Why is Swami Vivekananda's 1893 Chicago speech historically significant?

Ans :

In Chicago, Vivekananda eloquently declared his immense pride in India's glorious history of continuously sheltering persecuted religious minorities and helpless refugees globally.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

115. Analyse the historical factors that made India a sanctuary for persecuted Jewish communities.

Ans :

Facing severe religious persecution across the globe, multiple waves of Jewish groups, including the Bene Israel and Cochin Jews, historically sought permanent refuge in India. Indian rulers graciously granted them free land and religious freedom, allowing these vulnerable communities to build sacred synagogues and peacefully integrate into society.

116. Evaluate the impact of Swami Vivekananda's 1893 Chicago speech on India's global image.

Ans :

In his historic Chicago speech, Swami Vivekananda proudly highlighted India's enduring legacy of providing safe shelter to globally persecuted groups like Israelites and Zoroastrians. His powerful words successfully established India's international reputation as a profoundly compassionate, tolerant nation that deeply respects universal human rights and diverse religious freedom.

117. Examine the cultural assimilation of the Parsis in India following their escape from Persia.

Ans :

Fleeing harsh Islamic persecution in Persia, the Parsis arrived in Gujarat seeking absolute safety. As brilliantly demonstrated by the famous sugar and milk legend, they successfully integrated into the local economy without displacing residents. Today, they beautifully combine ancient Zoroastrian fire-worship traditions with adopted regional Indian cultural practices.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

118. Discuss the linguistic and spiritual ties between ancient Iranian Zoroastrianism and Indian Vedic traditions.

Ans :

Ancient Zoroastrianism and Vedic traditions share incredibly deep spiritual roots, notably their mutual belief in a supreme cosmic order and the immense importance of sacred fire rituals. Furthermore, Old Avestan and Vedic Sanskrit display profound linguistic similarities, sharing identical grammatical features and word roots like 'soma' and 'haoma'.

119. Analyse the peaceful integration of Arab merchants into southern Indian society.

Ans :

Unlike violent foreign conquerors, Arab merchants arrived peacefully on India's western coast from the seventh century to conduct spice trade. They respectfully married local Indian women, successfully formed the vibrant Mappila Muslim community in Kerala, and collaboratively helped construct the historically significant Cheraman Juma Masjid, enriching regional culture.

120. Evaluate the unique cultural fusion represented by the Siddi community in modern India.

Ans :

Brought to India tragically as enslaved people, the Siddi community of African descent represents a remarkable cultural fusion. They beautifully preserve their distinct African-style drumming and dance while completely integrating into Indian society by adopting local regional languages and diverse religious faiths, despite facing ongoing severe economic hardships.

121. Discuss the role of Armenians in the Mughal Empire and their lasting legacy in India.

Ans :

Fleeing Persian conflict, highly skilled Armenian merchants received generous patronage from Emperor Akbar. They rapidly attained prominent, influential positions in the royal administration and military. Eventually settling in major cities like Kolkata and Chennai, they built lasting schools and historic churches, firmly establishing a prosperous, enduring cultural legacy.

122. How does the Baha'i community exemplify India's tradition of religious tolerance?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

household, the military, and the administration, including working as respected chief justices.

102. Why was the Baha'i faith persecuted in Persia?

Ans :

The ruling religious leadership in Iran harshly branded Baha'i followers as dangerous heretics because their unifying beliefs vastly differed from established orthodox traditions.

103. Why do modern Baha'is revere India?

Ans :

India offered immediate safety to fleeing Iranian Baha'is, allowing the peaceful religion to quickly grow locally by welcoming people of all diverse backgrounds.

104. How did Maharaja Digvijaysinhji help Polish refugees during World War II?

Ans :

Moved by their suffering, the kind Maharaja bravely rescued around a thousand orphaned Polish children, providing them with safe shelter and proper food.

105. Why did the Polish government build a monument in Warsaw?

Ans :

Poland constructed the beautiful Good Maharaja Square monument to officially honor and eternally thank Maharaja Digvijaysinhji for saving innocent Polish orphans during wartime.

106. Why did Buddhist monks migrate to Tibet in the 12th century?

Ans :

Following devastating Turko-Afghan military invasions that violently destroyed Nalanda, many Indian monks fled to Tibet, carrying precious ancient Sanskrit manuscripts for extreme safety.

107. What event forced the 14th Dalai Lama to flee Tibet?

Ans :

In 1959, following a massive popular uprising in Lhasa against oppressive Chinese occupation, the Dalai Lama fled across the Himalayas for absolute safety.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

108. How did the Indian government assist Tibetan refugees?

Ans :

The Indian government generously provided safe asylum, rehabilitated refugees, offered child education, and facilitated dedicated settlements so they could preserve their traditional culture.

109. What are the 'Four Commitments' of the Dalai Lama?

Ans :

He actively promotes universal human compassion, encourages worldwide religious harmony, preserves vulnerable Tibetan culture, and attempts to meaningfully revive India's ancient civilizational heritage.

110. What does 'atithi devo bhava' signify in Indian culture?

Ans :

This deeply rooted cultural teaching proudly signifies that a guest should always be treated with the utmost respect and immense reverence like God.

111. How has India's diverse geography influenced historical migrations?

Ans :

India's vast geography, including accessible coastlines and protective mountains, continually attracted foreign merchants and persecuted refugees seeking a safe, culturally tolerant economic haven.

NODIA

112. How do Indian expatriates reflect Indian values abroad?

Ans :

Indian expatriates globally reflect their native values by remaining incredibly peaceful, highly progressive, law-abiding citizens who seamlessly integrate while vastly boosting local economies.

113. What is Sowa Rigpa?

Ans :

Sowa Rigpa is an ancient traditional Tibetan medical system blending Ayurveda with foreign practices, currently utilized in India to effectively treat chronic diseases.

(A) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D
Different communities settled across India. Bene Israel lived along the Konkan coast, Parsis settled in Gujarat, Syriac Christians established themselves on the Malabar coast, and Tibetan refugees built settlements around Dharamshala.

62. Match the following personalities with their contributions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Swami Vivekananda	A.	Helped Polish children
2.	Raja Jadi Rana	B.	Chicago speech
3.	Digvijaysinhji Jadeja	C.	Welcomed Parsis
4.	Hirabai Lobi	D.	Worked for Siddi women

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B
(D) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Swami Vivekananda highlighted India's tradition of sheltering refugees. Raja Jadi Rana welcomed the Parsis. Digvijaysinhji rescued Polish children during World War II, and Hirabai Lobi worked for the upliftment of the Siddi community.

63. Match the following places with their significance:

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Kochi Synagogue	A.	Tibetan administration
2.	Udvada	B.	Jewish place of worship
3.	Dharamshala	C.	Parsi sacred fire
4.	Cheraman Juma Masjid	D.	India's oldest mosque

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Kochi is known for its historic synagogue. Udvada preserves the sacred Parsi fire. Dharamshala became the centre of Tibetan administration in exile, and Cheraman Juma Masjid is among India's oldest mosques.

64. Match the following Indian values with their meanings :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam	A.	May all beings be happy
2.	Atithi Devo Bhava	B.	Whole world is one family
3.	Sarve Bhavantu Sukhinah	C.	Guest is like God
4.	Karuna	D.	Compassion

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Indian culture emphasises inclusion and compassion. Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam means the whole world is one family, Atithi Devo Bhava values guests, Sarve Bhavantu Sukhinah wishes happiness for all, and Karuna means compassion.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

65. What does the ancient phrase 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam' mean?

Ans :

The whole world is family.

66. Which ancient kingdom did the Bene Israel originate from?

Ans :

The ancient Kingdom of Israel.

67. Where did the Bene Israel community traditionally settle in India?

Ans :

The Konkan coast.

68. Who granted land free of cost to the Jews in Kerala?

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

Branded as dangerous heretics and severely persecuted in Iran during the mid-1800s, Baha'i followers sought immediate safety in India. India's inherent religious tolerance provided a secure environment where their peaceful message of universal unity flourished, eventually leading to the construction of the famous, welcoming Lotus Temple in Delhi.

123. Analyse the humanitarian efforts of Maharaja Digvijaysinhji during the Second World War.

Ans :

During the devastating Second World War, Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar demonstrated extraordinary humanitarian compassion by rescuing nearly a thousand tragically orphaned Polish children. He safely transported them to Gujarat, generously providing secure shelter, nourishment, and education until the war concluded, earning eternal gratitude and a memorial in Poland.

124. Examine the circumstances that led to the Tibetan government-in-exile forming in India.

Ans :

Following Communist China's brutal annexation of Tibet and the violently suppressed 1959 Lhasa uprising, the 14th Dalai Lama was forced to flee across the dangerous Himalayas. The Indian government graciously granted him immediate asylum in Dharamshala, allowing the Central Tibetan Administration to operate safely as a government-in-exile.

125. How has India supported the preservation of Tibetan culture and heritage?

Ans :

India actively facilitated the successful rehabilitation of thousands of Tibetan refugees by establishing dedicated educational institutions and regional settlements. By allowing the extensive construction of traditional monasteries, particularly in Karnataka, India created a highly secure space for Tibetans to peacefully practice Buddhism and proudly preserve their unique heritage.

126. Discuss the significance of 'Sowa Rigpa' within India's traditional medicine framework.

Ans :

Brought by Tibetan refugees, Sowa Rigpa is an ancient, sophisticated medical system that brilliantly blends classical Ayurveda with diverse Asian healing practices. The Indian government officially recognized its immense medical value by integrating it into the national AYUSH program, utilizing it to effectively treat chronic diseases in Himalayan regions.

127. Evaluate the relevance of 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam' in India's historical treatment of refugees.

Ans :

The profound ancient philosophy 'vasudhaiva kutumbakam' (the world is one family) fundamentally shaped India's inherently compassionate ethos. This deeply ingrained cultural value consistently guided Indian rulers and common citizens to warmly welcome, fiercely protect, and peacefully assimilate globally persecuted minorities, from ancient Jews to modern-day Tibetan refugees.

128. How does the Karaṇīya Metta Sutta reflect the core values discussed in the chapter?

Ans :

The Karaṇīya Metta Sutta beautifully emphasizes radiating boundless loving-kindness and deep compassion toward all living beings, perfectly mirroring a mother's fierce protection of her child. This perfectly aligns with India's foundational values of absolute inclusivity, unconditional acceptance, and providing secure sanctuary to severely persecuted global migrant communities.

129. Analyse how Indian expatriates maintain their cultural values abroad.

Ans :

Today, Indian expatriates actively carry their ancestral values of peaceful coexistence and nonviolence abroad. In foreign nations, they are consistently perceived as highly progressive, law-abiding minorities who deeply respect local laws. They successfully assimilate into diverse societies while significantly contributing to global economies, perfectly mirroring India's inclusive ethos.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

CASE BASED QUESTION

130. Fleeing severe religious persecution in Persia, a group of Zoroastrians arrived on the coast of Gujarat. The local ruler, Raja Jadi Rāṇā, showed them a jug completely full of milk, signalling his kingdom had no space. A wise refugee simply dissolved a spoonful of sugar into the milk, demonstrating they would blend in perfectly without causing any social overflow.

(a) From which modern-day country did these refugees originally flee?
(b) What did the full jug of milk symbolize?
(c) How did the sugar act as an effective diplomatic tool?

Ans :

(a) They fled from modern-day Iran (Persia).
(b) The full jug symbolized that the local kingdom was already fully populated and could not accommodate new people.
(c) The sugar demonstrated that the refugees would peacefully assimilate and positively enrich the society without displacing the native population.

131. During the horrific devastation of the Second World War, thousands of Polish families were violently torn apart, leaving countless children orphaned. Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar actively mobilised the Red Cross to launch a massive rescue operation. He provided absolute safety, adequate food, and loving care for approximately a thousand vulnerable Polish children within his peaceful Gujarat state.

(a) What historical event caused the Polish children to become orphans?
(b) Which Indian state currently houses the region of Nawanagar (Jamnagar)?
(c) Why was a monument built for the Maharaja in Warsaw?

Ans :

(a) The devastating invasion of Poland during the Second World War caused the tragedy.
(b) The region is located in the modern state of Gujarat.
(c) The monument was constructed to eternally honor and thank him for his extraordinary humanitarian compassion in saving Polish lives.

132. In 1959, following a massive, violently suppressed popular uprising against the aggressive Chinese occupation in Lhasa, the 14th Dalai Lama was urgently advised to escape across the Himalayas. The Indian government warmly welcomed him, granting immediate asylum. Today, Dharamshala hosts the Central Tibetan Administration, allowing refugees to freely practice Buddhism and proudly preserve their ancient cultural heritage.

(a) In which year did the 14th Dalai Lama take refuge in India?
(b) Why did the Dalai Lama flee Lhasa?
(c) How does the establishment of monasteries in India help Tibetan refugees?

Ans :

(a) He took refuge in the year 1959.
(b) He fled due to a massive popular uprising against the aggressive Chinese military occupation of Tibet.
(c) The monasteries provide a highly secure, peaceful environment for refugees to safely practice their religion and preserve their cultural identity.

133. Originally from Africa, the Siddis were tragically brought to India as enslaved people by foreign traders centuries ago. Over time, they settled primarily in Gujarat and Karnataka. Today, they represent a unique cultural fusion, enthusiastically combining traditional African drumming with regional Indian languages and diverse adopted religions. Recently, Siddi activist Hirabai Lobi received the prestigious Padma Shri.

(a) Who originally brought the Siddis to India?
(b) In which two Indian states are prominent Siddi settlements found today?
(c) Why was Hirabai Lobi awarded the Padma Shri?

Ans :

(a) They were brought by Arab, Portuguese, and British foreign traders.
(b) They are primarily found in Gujarat and Karnataka.
(c) She was awarded for her selfless community service, uplifting Siddi women by teaching organic farming and providing livelihood options.

134. Facing severe hostility in the ancient Persian Empire because they were wrongly suspected of aiding Roman enemies, early Syriac Christian groups desperately sought a safe haven. They

NODIA

bravely travelled eastward along ancient spice trade routes and eventually arrived on the Malabar coast in present-day Kerala, where they could finally live securely and worship with absolute freedom.

(a) Which ancient language did these early Christian groups use for worship?
(b) Why were they persecuted by the Persian Empire?
(c) What geographic feature facilitated their migration to India?

Ans :

(a) They used the ancient Syriac language.
(b) Persian authorities harshly persecuted them due to false suspicions that they were secretly helping the rival Roman Empire.
(c) They successfully utilized ancient, established international maritime trade routes to safely navigate their escape to India's western coast.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

Dharamshala, Himachal Pradesh.

89. What is the traditional Tibetan system of medicine called?

Ans :

Sowa Rigpa.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

90. Why did Jewish communities historically migrate to India?

Ans :

Jews migrated to India in several waves to safely escape severe religious persecution, finding a secure sanctuary to practice their faith freely.

91. How did the Bene Israel arrive in India?

Ans :

Fleeing the ancient Kingdom of Israel, their ship was tragically caught in a severe storm and shipwrecked near India's western Konkan coast.

92. How did the Raja of Kochi support early Jewish settlers?

Ans :

The Raja generously granted them land completely free of cost forever, allowing the community to build a synagogue and practice their faith.

93. Why were Syriac Christians persecuted in the Persian Empire?

Ans :

In the Persian Empire, Syriac Christians faced harsh persecution because rulers wrongly suspected them of secretly assisting the Romans, who were Persia's enemies.

94. Why did Parsis leave their homeland of Persia?

Ans :

The Parsis bravely fled Persia to escape extreme religious persecution, forced conversions, and the tragic destruction of their sacred fire temples by conquerors.

95. Explain the significance of the sugar and milk legend.

Ans :

By gently dissolving sugar into a full milk jug, the Parsi wise man promised they would sweeten Indian society without displacing the local people.

96. State one key similarity between Zoroastrianism and Vedic philosophy.

Ans :

Both ancient traditions strongly believe in a supreme cosmic order holding the entire universe together and give immense spiritual importance to fire worship.

97. How did Arab merchants historically arrive in India?

Ans :

Arab merchants arrived peacefully on the western coast from the seventh century onward, trading valuable spices, marrying local women, and forming new communities.

98. How did the Siddi community historically end up in India?

Ans :

The Siddis, of African origin, were tragically brought to India as enslaved people by foreign Arab, Portuguese, and British traders over several centuries.

99. Describe the cultural identity of the Siddi community today.

Ans :

Their unique cultural identity brilliantly fuses traditional African drumming and dance styles with adopted regional Indian languages and diverse local religious practices effectively.

100. Why did Armenians settle in India during the Mughal era?

Ans :

Fleeing Persia, highly skilled Armenian merchants received generous patronage from Mughal emperors like Akbar, who allowed them to build churches and practice Christianity.

101. What roles did Armenians play in the Mughal empire?

Ans :

Armenians quickly gained prominence, serving critically important roles within the royal

NODIA

people," signifying that citizens hold the power to choose their government through free and fair elections.

A 'Republic', however, specifically means that the head of state is an elected official (directly or indirectly) rather than a hereditary monarch. Furthermore, in a republic, the power of the rulers is strictly limited by a constitution. For example, both India and the UK are democracies where people elect representatives. However, the UK is not a republic because its head of state is a monarch, whereas India is a republic because its head of state (the President) is elected. The republican framework protects citizens against the "dominance of the majority," ensuring that elected leaders cannot pass laws that violate the fundamental rights of minorities or individuals.

4. TIERS OF GOVERNMENT AND DECENTRALISATION

Due to its massive size and diversity, governance in India is highly decentralised across three distinct tiers:

1. Central (Union) Government: Handles matters affecting the entire nation, such as defence, currency, and foreign affairs.
2. State Governments: Manage the specific needs of each state, including police, agriculture, and local health.
3. Local Governments: Comprising panchayats (villages) and municipalities (towns/cities), this third tier was formalized by constitutional amendments in the early 1990s.

Decentralisation—spreading power out rather than concentrating it—is vital. It strengthens democracy by allowing citizens greater direct involvement in daily decisions. Local leaders possess better knowledge of local needs and traditions. Consequently, local issues (like water supply or street repairs) can be resolved faster, and leaders can be held more directly accountable by the people they serve. This aligns with Mahatma Gandhi's vision of grām swarāj, advocating for self-sufficient and independent village republics.

5. THE GOVERNMENT AND THE CITIZEN

The government plays a triple role: protector (law and order), provider (education and infrastructure), and regulator (economic and social justice). However, problems like corruption, poor infrastructure, and inequality persist. Citizens are not powerless; they possess several tools to engage with and correct the government:

1. Grievance Redressal: Citizens can use government portals (like CPGRAMS) to file complaints regarding public services.
2. Right to Information (RTI): This powerful law allows citizens to demand transparency and accountability by legally requesting information on government expenditures and actions.
3. Media and Civil Society: Citizens can utilize print, electronic, and social media to highlight issues directly to officials. Furthermore, joining Civil Society Organisations (NGOs) allows citizens to mobilize public opinion, as seen in the successful 1970s campaign that stopped a destructive dam project and created the Silent Valley National Park in Kerala.
4. Voting: Ultimately, participating in the electoral process ensures that responsive and capable leaders are chosen to govern.

Through this intricate balance of a constitutional framework, decentralised tiers of power, independent judiciary, and active citizen participation, India strives to maintain a just and functioning democratic republic.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. Make lists of different government departments you are familiar with, or whose names you may have seen on boards around your home or on your way to school. What functions do you think they perform?

Ans :

1. Rural Areas and Their Functions
   - i. Panchayat Office : Responsible for local governance and overall development of the village.
   - ii. Rural Health Centre (PHC/ CHC):Provides basic healthcare services and conducts vaccination programs.
   - iii. Irrigation and Agriculture Department : Supports farmers by supplying seeds, fertilizers, and irrigation facilities.
   - iv. Rural PWD (Public Works Department): Constructs and maintains village roads, bridges, and government buildings.
   - v. Rural Education Department / Government Schools : Operates village schools, appoints teachers, and provides

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

operations, and is the specific entity that citizens directly interact with in real life.

9. How many levels (or tiers) of government currently exist in India?
(A) One
(B) Two
(C) Three
(D) Five

Ans :

(C) Three
Governance in India is decentralized across three specific tiers: the Central (Union) government, State governments, and Local governments (panchayats and municipalities).

10. Which group constitutes the 'political executive' in India?
(A) Career bureaucrats and civil servants who are selected through highly competitive national UPSC examinations.
(B) Appointed Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts who are responsible for interpreting constitutional law.
(C) Elected leaders like the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and their cabinet ministers who make major policy decisions.
(D) Independent non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and civil society groups advocating for social justice.

Ans :

(C) Elected leaders like the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and their cabinet ministers who make major policy decisions.
The political executive consists of leaders who are directly elected by the people to make big decisions, including the prime minister, chief ministers, and their respective ministers.

11. What does the Greek word kratos mean in the derivation of the word 'democracy'?
(A) People
(B) Rule
(C) King
(D) Freedom

Ans :

(B) Rule
In the derivation of the word 'democracy', demos translates to "people," and kratos translates directly to "rule," combining to mean "rule by the people".

12. How does the permanent executive differ from the political executive?
(A) The permanent executive is responsible for making laws, while the political executive is solely responsible for interpreting them.
(B) The permanent executive is democratically elected every five years, while the political executive serves continuously until retirement.
(C) The permanent executive consists of non-elected civil servants who stay long-term, while the political executive consists of elected leaders who change.
(D) The permanent executive operates exclusively at the local village level, while the political executive functions only at the national level.

Ans :

(C) The permanent executive consists of non-elected civil servants who stay long-term, while the political executive consists of elected leaders who change.
The permanent executive (bureaucrats) are not elected and are not replaced after elections; they work continuously in the background. The political executive consists of politicians who must win elections.

NODIA

13. What is the primary function of bureaucrats (the permanent executive) regarding government policies?
(A) To independently write, debate, and pass new constitutional amendments without requiring legislative approval.
(B) To exercise sovereign power by formally declaring wars against foreign nations and negotiating international peace treaties.
(C) To offer expert advice, implement policies passed by elected politicians, and deliver essential public services directly to citizens.
(D) To possess the ultimate constitutional authority over the democratic election and appointment of the President of India.

Ans :

(C) To offer expert advice, implement policies passed by elected politicians, and deliver essential public services directly to citizens.
Bureaucrats work to keep the government running by offering expert advice, implementing the laws/schemes created by the political executive, and directly managing public services.

14. Which civil service did C.B. Muthamma join, becoming the first Indian woman to do so?

3. What might be the reasons that decisions regarding local concerns should be taken locally to the extent possible?

Ans :

Decisions about local issues should be made at the local level because people living in the area have a better understanding of their needs and problems. They are more aware of challenges such as water shortages, damaged roads, or sanitation issues, and can suggest practical solutions based on available resources.

Local governments can respond more quickly since they are closer to the people, avoiding delays that may occur when waiting for higher authorities. Moreover, involving local people in decision-making strengthens democracy by encouraging active participation and ensuring that decisions reflect the needs of the community.

4. It has been more than 75 years since India became a republic. During this time, we have had many governments at the national, state and local levels. Many policies and programs have been designed and implemented. We have come a long way by increasing literacy of our people, improving roads, trains, and airports, and strengthening communication systems such as the telephone and the internet. But we still have a long way to go in addressing India's challenges. Have a class discussion on the following:

(a) List five major achievements of our country in improving the lives of ordinary people in your village, town or city. Which level of government made this possible and how?

(b) List five problems that ordinary people face frequently. At which level of government should these be addressed and how?

Ans :

(a) Five major achievements of our country in improving the lives of ordinary people in villages, towns or cities are:

1. Better roads and transport : Local and state governments developed and maintained road networks, making travel easier and more efficient for daily life.
2. Clean drinking water: Municipal authorities established water supply systems and pipelines to ensure safe drinking water for people.
3. Electricity for all: Central and state governments expanded electricity networks to provide power access to households across the country.
4. Improved healthcare: Healthcare services were strengthened through government hospitals and health centres supported by various state and central schemes.
5. Schools and scholarships: Governments set up schools and introduced scholarship programs to make education accessible and affordable for all.

(b) Five Problems that ordinary people face frequently and the way they can be addressed are:

1. Drinking Water Problem
   Level of Government: Local Government (Municipality)
   How: Ensure proper water supply by maintaining pipelines, fixing leakages, promoting rainwater harvesting, and installing water ATMs in public areas.
2. Garbage Issue
   Level of Government: Local Government (Municipality)
   How: Improve waste management by increasing sanitation staff, enhancing collection systems, spreading public awareness, and enforcing strict anti-littering rules.
3. Traffic Jams
   Level of Government: Local Government and State Traffic Police
   How: Reduce congestion by improving traffic signals, expanding public transport, constructing flyovers, deploying traffic personnel, and promoting road safety awareness.
4. Women's Safety
   Level of Government: State Government (Police Department)
   How: Enhance safety through increased patrolling, installation of CCTV cameras, establishment of helplines, and ensuring quick response in emergencies.
5. High Pollution Levels (Air & Noise Pollution)
   Level of Government: State and Central Government
   How: Control pollution by enforcing environmental laws, monitoring industries and vehicles, improving air quality systems, and increasing plantation drives.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) A chaotic society without law and order where the powerful (big fish) brutally prey upon and exploit the weak (small fish).
As described by Kautilya, 'Matsya nyāya' illustrates a chaotic state of society lacking government and law, where the powerful ("big fish") swallow the smaller, weaker ones.

20. Which famous Indian leader strongly advocated for decentralized, self-sufficient village governments known as grām swarāj?
(A) Jawaharlal Nehru
(B) B.R. Ambedkar
(C) Mahatma Gandhi
(D) C.B. Muthamma

Ans :

(C) Mahatma Gandhi
Mahatma Gandhi was a passionate advocate for decentralization, heavily promoting the concept of grām swarāj, envisioning villages as complete, self-sufficient republics.

21. In a democratic republic, how is the potential "dominance of the majority" controlled?
(A) By formally empowering the national military to veto any laws passed by the democratically elected civilian legislature.
(B) By ensuring the rule of law and a Constitution that limits government power and protects the fundamental rights of minorities.
(C) By completely abolishing the legislative branch to prevent the creation of laws that might favor one specific demographic group.
(D) By constitutionally requiring absolute 100% unanimous agreement from all citizens on every single piece of legislation.

Ans :

(B) By ensuring the rule of law and a Constitution that limits government power and protects the fundamental rights of minorities.
A republic protects against majority dominance by establishing a Constitution and the rule of law, which set strict limits on rulers, ensuring they cannot pass laws that hurt the basic rights of smaller groups.

22. Why must the police strictly respect the rights guaranteed under the Constitution?
(A) Because they are held personally and financially liable for massive civil fines if they fail to uphold constitutional guidelines.
(B) To prevent them from using their power unchecked, which would threaten the liberty and justice of the citizens they must protect.
(C) Because the national Constitution explicitly forbids law enforcement officers from carrying lethal weapons under any circumstances.
(D) Because local law enforcement officers are elected directly by neighborhood residents and can be immediately recalled from office.

NODIA

Ans :

(B) To prevent them from using their power unchecked, which would threaten the liberty and justice of the citizens they must protect.
While they have the power to use force, the police must operate within constitutional limits to prevent unchecked abuse of power, ensuring they protect rather than threaten citizen rights.

23. Which social media platform's official handle (@RailwaySeva) is shown in the text as a way for citizens to directly engage with the Indian Railways?
(A) Facebook
(B) Instagram
(C) X (formerly Twitter)
(D) LinkedIn

Ans :

(C) X (formerly Twitter)
The text highlights the official @RailwaySeva account on the platform X (formerly Twitter) as a direct, modern method for citizens to share concerns and engage with railway officials.

24. Who was Chonira Belliappa Muthamma?
(A) She was the ancient classical author responsible for writing the Arthashastra, a foundational text on statecraft and economy.
(B) She was a historic trailblazer who became the first woman to clear the exams and join the Indian Foreign Service in 1949.
(C) She was a famous, highly influential warrior queen of the Chaulukya dynasty who successfully repelled foreign military invasions.
(D) She was a pioneering political leader who was democratically elected as the first female President of the Republic of India.

Ans :

(B) She was a historic trailblazer who became the first woman to clear the exams and join the Indian Foreign Service in 1949.
Born in Karnataka, C.B. Muthamma became a

rural local governance.
If villagers feel that their complaint is not being addressed at the village level, they can take the matter to higher authorities such as the Block or Zila Parishad, or even the state government.
If the issue still remains unresolved, they can further approach the Member of Parliament (MP) of their area or the relevant ministry of the central government.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. "Every democracy is a republic." Is this statement true or false? Explain.

Ans :

False. A democracy means the people elect their representatives. However, a republic specifically means the head of state is also elected (like India's President). Countries like the UK, Canada, and Sweden are democracies (people vote), but they are not republics because their head of state is a hereditary monarch (a king or queen).

2. Give two reasons why decentralisation is important in India.

Ans :

1. Better Knowledge and Accountability: Local leaders understand the specific needs of their area much better than distant central officials, and because they are closer to the people, it is easier for citizens to question them and hold them accountable.
2. More Democratic Participation: Decentralisation creates local governments (panchayats/municipalities), giving ordinary citizens a direct chance to actively discuss and solve daily issues like water supply and roads.

3. Imagine you are part of your school's student council.
(a) In this context, do you think it would be better if only the council president makes all the decisions or if power is to be shared among all members?
(b) Should the student council have the power to make rules about the food you eat, or the language you speak?
(c) What can go wrong if the student council is the most powerful body in your school and no one questions its decisions?

Ans :

(a) Power should be shared. If only the president makes decisions, it becomes a dictatorship rather than a democracy. Sharing power ensures diverse perspectives are heard, preventing the president from making arbitrary or unfair decisions that harm the student body.
(b) No, the student council should not decide what food students eat or which language they use. These are personal choices and must be respected. Such matters should be left to individuals, as food habits are shaped by culture and social diversity. In a democracy like India, people have the freedom to make their own choices, and respecting these freedoms is essential. Linguistic diversity is also a key feature of the country, and everyone should be free to speak the language they are most comfortable with.
(c) A school reflects a mini-democracy and diversity, where students from different castes, religions, and regions come together. If the student council becomes too powerful and is not questioned, it may create unfair rules that benefit only a few and ignore others. Therefore, power should be shared, and decisions must be checked to ensure fairness and equality for all students.

4. Think about these real-life situations in relation to India's democracy:
(a) Should the Parliament be the most powerful institution in the country? Why or why not?
(b) Should the Parliament have the power to make any law it wants, even if it affects your rights?
(c) What could go wrong if lawmaking has no limits? Can it lead to unfair or unjust laws?
(d) Who is more powerful in India, the Parliament or the Supreme Court? Give your reasons.

Ans :

(a) Parliament should not be the most powerful institution because in a democracy like India, power is shared among the legislature, executive, and judiciary. This system of checks and balances prevents misuse of power and protects citizens' rights.
(b) No, Parliament should not have unlimited power to make any law. All laws must

NODIA

LET'S REMEMBER

1. We learned about democratic, monarchic, theocratic, dictatorial, and oligarchic forms of government, and how they function differently. Can you recount some of the differences?

Ans :

There are various forms of government across the world. Each system differs in the way leaders are selected, how decisions are taken, and the level of freedom given to citizens.

Forms of Government

1. Democratic Government : In a democracy, people choose their leaders through free and fair elections. Citizens have rights, can participate in governance, and the government is accountable to them. Example: India (also United States, Germany).
2. Monarchic Government : In this system, a king or queen is the head of state. The position is usually hereditary and passed down within a royal family. Example: Saudi Arabia.
3. Theocratic Government : Here, political power lies with religious leaders, and laws are based on religious beliefs and scriptures. Example: Iran (Islamic theocracy).
4. Dictatorial Government : In a dictatorship, all power is held by a single ruler. People have little or no freedom, and opposition is not allowed. Example: North Korea.
5. Oligarchic Government L In an oligarchy, a small group of powerful or wealthy individuals controls the country, often making decisions in their own interest. Example: Russia is often considered to have oligarchic features.

2. (a) Do you remember this image from Grade 6, Chapter 10? It represents the three tiers of Government in India.

(b) Why do we have these levels of Government in India?

(c) Can't we have just one level to do fulfil all the functions? Let us explore this further.

Ans :

(a) Yes, I recall the image. India has three tiers of government: the Central Government, the State Governments, and the Local Governments.

(b) India follows a multi-level system of governance so that power is distributed, administration becomes efficient, and the needs of people at both local and national levels are properly addressed. If all power were concentrated at one level, it could lead to misuse and even authoritarian rule. Local issues such as water supply, sanitation, and roads are better managed by state and local authorities rather than only by the central government. Moreover, India's vast size and diversity in terms of regions, languages, and communities make it impossible for a single authority to handle everything effectively. Power-sharing also strengthens democracy by ensuring cooperation among different levels and preventing any one authority from becoming too dominant.

(c) No, a single level of government cannot manage all functions. The country is geographically large, with a population of over 140 crore people and countless towns and villages. One central authority alone cannot fully understand or address the diverse needs of every region. Dividing power among different levels makes governance more efficient and reinforces democratic principles.

THINK ABOUT IT

1. (a) If a streetlamp in your neighbourhood is broken, who would you contact to fix it?

(b) If a village road needs to be repaired, would the local people reach out to the Central Government?

Ans :

(a) If a streetlight in our area is broken, we should approach the local authorities or the elected representative of the Municipality or Municipal Corporation, such as the ward councillor. In urban areas, services like street lighting, drainage, waste management, and park upkeep are managed by Urban Local Bodies, while in rural areas, these responsibilities are handled by the Gram Panchayat.

(b) If a village road requires repair, villagers should contact the Mukhiya or Pradhan, or other representatives of the Gram Panchayat, Block, or Zila Parishad, depending on which authority is responsible for that road. Village roads are managed by the Panchayati Raj Institutions (PRIs), which form the system of

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(B) Because a state requires a group of people who identify with the territory, live together, and develop a shared culture.
(C) Because temporary visitors cannot be legally bound to follow fundamental constitutional duties.
(D) Because only a permanent demographic is legally permitted to purchase and cultivate agricultural land.

Ans :

(B) Because a state requires a group of people who identify with the territory, live together, and develop a shared culture.
If people just visit and leave, they have no shared identification with the place. A state requires a permanent population that lives together, identifies with the territory, and develops its own culture and society.

5. What is the primary difference between the 'state' and the 'government'?
(A) The state functions exclusively to make the laws, while the government is the separate entity designated only to enforce them.
(B) The government represents the permanent geographical territory, while the state consists merely of temporarily elected officials.
(C) The state is the permanent entity (like a school), while the government is the temporary system or group running it (like teachers).
(D) There is absolutely no conceptual difference; the two terms are entirely identical and interchangeable in political science.

Ans :

(C) The state is the permanent entity (like a school), while the government is the temporary system or group running it (like teachers).
The state remains permanent, whereas the government is just one part of the state that can change frequently after elections, acting as the temporary system that runs the country.

6. What is the primary role of the legislature in a democracy?
(A) To directly command the national police force and oversee the daily maintenance of domestic law and order.
(B) To implement and execute complex national policies and manage the day-to-day administration of the state.
(C) To represent the democratic will of the people and create laws and rules that apply uniformly to everyone.
(D) To interpret the precise meaning of constitutional laws when their wording is ambiguous or highly complex.

NODIA

Ans :

(C) To represent the democratic will of the people and create laws and rules that apply uniformly to everyone.
The legislature is the lawmaking body that represents the democratic will of the people, creating the laws and rules that govern the country.

7. Which level of government is explicitly responsible for managing concurrent subjects like education and marriage?
(A) Local Panchayats
(B) Municipal Corporations
(C) The Central (Union) Government (along with states)
(D) The Supreme Court

Ans :

(C) The Central (Union) Government (along with states)
The Central (Union) Government looks after national matters, which explicitly includes concurrent subjects (areas where both center and state can legislate) such as education and marriage.

8. Why do people in everyday life often use the words 'state' and 'government' interchangeably?
(A) Because the Constitution has legally mandated that these two terms mean the exact same thing in all official documents.
(B) Because the government is the visible face of the state in action, running the daily administration that citizens interact with.
(C) Because the permanent state apparatus can be completely dismantled and voted out of power every five years by the electorate.
(D) Because neither entity possesses any actual sovereign power to enforce international laws or draft constitutional amendments.

Ans :

(B) Because the government is the visible face of the state in action, running the daily administration that citizens interact with.
People mix the terms up because the government acts on behalf of the state, manages its daily

textbooks.

2. Urban Areas and Their Functions
   i. Municipal Corporation / Municipality / Nagar Palika : Handles city services such as garbage collection, street lighting, water supply, and drainage.
   ii. Urban Health Department / Hospitals : Provides healthcare services through city hospitals and vaccination programs.
   iii. Electricity Department : Ensures electricity supply and repairs electrical faults and power lines.
   iv. Urban PWD / Development Authority : Builds and maintains city infrastructure like roads, flyovers, and government buildings.
   v. Urban Education Department / Government Schools : Manages city schools, recruits teachers, and conducts examinations.
   vi. Police Department : Maintains law and order and manages traffic in urban areas.

2. Collect editorials from a few newspapers. Read them in small groups. Identify the topics on which they have opinions. How many are about government policies?

Ans :

1. "Deservedly dead: On the defeat of the Constitution (131st Amendment) Bill, 2026" (The Hindu)
   i. Topic: The recent failure of a controversial constitutional amendment bill in Parliament, which attempted to link the delimitation exercise (redrawing of electoral constituencies) with the women's reservation quota.
   ii. Is it about a government policy? Yes. It directly critiques the central government's legislative strategy, parliamentary process, and policy regarding electoral representation.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

2. "A shade of dark: On the Transgender Persons (Protection of Rights) Amendment Bill, 2026" (The Hindu)
   i. Topic: The rushed parliamentary passage of the new Transgender Persons Amendment Bill and the ensuing protests from the LGBTQIA+ community regarding how gender identity is legally defined, protected, and regulated.
   ii. Is it about a government policy? Yes. It heavily analyzes a specific legislative act and public rights policy formulated by the government.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(A) Indian Administrative Service (IAS)
(B) Indian Police Service (IPS)
(C) Indian Foreign Service (IFS)
(D) Indian Revenue Service (IRS)

Ans :

(C) Indian Foreign Service (IFS)
C.B. Muthamma made history by becoming the very first woman to clear the exams and join the prestigious Indian Foreign Service (IFS) in 1949.

15. What is the core idea of a democracy?
(A) Rule by a single hereditary monarch who holds absolute authority over all legislative and executive state decisions.
(B) Rule by a small group of wealthy, elite individuals who control the nation's primary economic and industrial resources.
(C) Rule by the people, who possess the ultimate power to choose their government through free and fair elections.
(D) Rule by the highest-ranking military generals who enforce societal order through strict martial law and discipline.

Ans :

(C) Rule by the people, who possess the ultimate power to choose their government through free and fair elections.
The core idea of democracy (demos = people, kratos = rule) is "rule by the people," ensuring that citizens possess the ultimate power to elect their government freely and fairly.

16. The Dongria Kondh tribe in Odisha successfully utilized legal protections to stop what activity in their sacred hills?
(A) The construction of a massive hydroelectric dam.
(B) The establishment of a new state capital.
(C) Commercial mining operations by private companies.
(D) The building of an international airport.

Ans :

(C) Commercial mining operations by private companies.
Protected by laws requiring local consent, the Dongria Kondh tribe successfully opposed and prevented private companies from conducting destructive mining operations in their sacred hills.

17. Why is the United Kingdom considered a democracy but NOT a republic?
(A) Because they do not possess a formal legislative parliament capable of drafting laws or representing the public will.
(B) Because their ordinary citizens are legally disenfranchised and strictly prohibited from voting in national elections.
(C) Because they operate under an unwritten constitution that explicitly bans the holding of democratic public elections.
(D) Because while the people elect their representatives to parliament, their head of state is a hereditary monarch rather than elected.

Ans :

(D) Because they operate under an unwritten constitution that explicitly bans the holding of democratic public elections.
The UK is a democracy because its people elect representatives to parliament, but it is not a republic because its head of state is an inherited position (a king or queen), not an elected one.

NODIA

18. Which portal allows Indian citizens to centrally lodge complaints and grievances regarding public services online?
(A) The RTI Portal
(B) The Supreme Court E-Filing System
(C) The Public Grievances Portal (CPGRAMS)
(D) The SAARC Networking Site

Ans :

(C) The Public Grievances Portal (CPGRAMS)
The government has established the Centralized Public Grievance Redress and Monitoring System (CPGRAMS) portal, allowing citizens to lodge complaints online and receive timely responses from the relevant departments.

19. What concept does the ancient Indian term 'Matsya nyāya' illustrate?
(A) A highly efficient and centralized agricultural irrigation system developed during the ancient Mauryan imperial period.
(B) The peaceful, philosophical coexistence and mutual respect of different religious traditions within a unified state.
(C) A chaotic society without law and order where the powerful (big fish) brutally prey upon and exploit the weak (small fish).
(D) A highly structured democratic election process utilized strictly within ancient, self-governing village assemblies.

Ans :

follow the Constitution and cannot violate fundamental rights such as freedom, equality, and justice.

(c) If lawmaking has no limits, it can lead to unfair and unjust laws. The majority could misuse power, ignore minority rights, and create biased or harmful rules, weakening democracy.

(d) Neither Parliament nor the Supreme Court is absolutely more powerful. Parliament makes laws, but the Supreme Court can review them and strike down those that violate the Constitution. This balance ensures that no institution becomes too powerful.

5. Ask your parents / guardians how they engaged with the government over the past year. Make a list and classify the items based on the level of government they had to work with.

Ans :

1. Local Government: Complaining about garbage collection, paying property tax, or fixing a broken streetlamp.
2. State Government: Visiting a state-run hospital, dealing with the police, or applying for land registration.
3. Central Government: Filing income tax returns, using the railways, or getting a passport (foreign affairs).
   Challenges Faced : They faced delays in getting work done, long waiting times in offices, and sometimes lack of clear information. Online systems were helpful but occasionally difficult to use. In some cases, follow-ups were needed multiple times to resolve issues.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What is a 'state' in political science terminology?

(A) A temporary group of elected officials assigned to pass laws for a specific period.

(B) A permanent political organization that has the authority to govern a defined territory and its population.

(C) A specialized administrative department responsible for managing international foreign affairs.

(D) A non-governmental organization dedicated exclusively to environmental and social protection.

Ans :

(B) A permanent political organization that has the authority to govern a defined territory and its population.
A state (or nation) is fundamentally defined as the sovereign authority to govern a clearly defined territory and the population residing within it.

2. What does 'sovereignty' mean in the context of a state?

(A) The fundamental right of citizens to actively participate and vote in local municipal elections.

(B) The authorized power of the national police force to forcefully maintain domestic law and order.

(C) The full power of the state to make laws and take decisions without any outside control or interference.

(D) The constitutional ability of the judicial branch to independently review and strike down unconstitutional laws.

Ans :

(C) The full power of the state to make laws and take decisions without any outside control or interference.
Sovereignty is an essential feature meaning the state has complete control over its internal matters, possessing the full power to make and implement laws without any external state interfering.

3. In the analogy provided by the text, if the state is considered the "school," what do the "principal and teachers" represent?

(A) The Constitution

(B) The Judiciary

(C) The Government

(D) The Citizens

Ans :

(C) The Government
To clarify the difference between the permanent state and the temporary administration, the text uses an analogy: the state is the enduring "school," while the government is the temporary staff (the "principal and teachers") who run it.

4. Why does the definition of a state require a "permanent population" rather than just tourists?

(A) Because transient populations and tourists do not contribute consistently to the national tax revenue.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

trailblazer as the first woman to clear the public services exam and join the Indian Foreign Service in 1949.

25. Who famously refused the suggestion to become the king of America in 1782, showing a deep commitment to a republican form of government?
(A) Socrates
(B) George Washington
(C) Kautilya
(D) Mahatma Gandhi

Ans :

(B) George Washington
General George Washington firmly refused an officer's suggestion to become king, demonstrating his profound commitment to a constitutional republic long before becoming the first US President.

26. What specifically makes a country a 'Republic'?
(A) A highly militarized nation-state that maintains a massive standing army to aggressively defend its vast territorial borders.
(B) A state where the highest office (head of state) is an elected official rather than a hereditary monarch like a king or queen.
(C) A local governance system that mandates the holding of democratic, multi-party elections for municipal mayors and councils.
(D) A complex federal structure that is strictly divided into exactly three distinct and autonomous tiers of regional government.

Ans :

(B) A state where the highest office (head of state) is an elected official rather than a hereditary monarch like a king or queen.
A republic is defined as a form of government where the highest office (the head of state) is elected by the people, and power is not inherited by a monarch.

27. If an educated woman in the 1950s joined the Indian civil services, what discriminatory practice might she have faced?
(A) Being legally forbidden from learning or utilizing foreign diplomatic languages while serving in international embassies.
(B) Being forced to sign an unjust, discriminatory undertaking stating she would have to resign her post if she got married.
(C) Being structurally forced by the federal government to pay significantly higher income tax rates than her male officer counterparts.
(D) Being explicitly banned by the foreign ministry from traveling outside the borders of her home state for official government business.

Ans :

(B) Being forced to sign an unjust, discriminatory undertaking stating she would have to resign her post if she got married.
Muthamma highlighted the severe gender bias of the time, revealing that female officers were forced to sign an unjust undertaking requiring them to resign if they chose to marry.

28. Which of the following is exclusively a responsibility of the Central (Union) Government?
(A) Local drainage and parks
(B) State police forces
(C) Agricultural land management
(D) National defence and foreign affairs

Ans :

(D) National defence and foreign affairs
The Central Government looks after major issues affecting the entire country, such as national defence, foreign affairs, and currency.

29. What does the term 'decentralisation' mean in a political context?
(A) The absolute and unchecked concentration of all executive and legislative power in the hands of a single authoritarian dictator.
(B) The strategic geographic relocation of the national capital city to the exact physical center of the sovereign state's territory.
(C) The process of spreading out political power and decision-making across multiple local levels rather than concentrating it centrally.
(D) The radical anarchist process of completely dismantling and removing all formal government institutions and legal frameworks.

Ans :

(C) The process of spreading out political power and decision-making across multiple local levels rather than concentrating it centrally.
Decentralisation means that political power and decision-making authorities are spread out (e.g., from central to local levels) rather than being hoarded by a single central group.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(C) The advanced technological ability of the federal government to legally monitor and record citizens' private phone calls and emails.
(D) The absolute and unbreachable constitutional separation of powers between the executive branch and the legislative branch.

Ans :

(B) The open, unhindered access provided to citizens regarding how the government makes policies, takes actions, and spends public funds.
Transparency in governance refers to ensuring that citizens have open, unhindered access to information regarding how the government makes policies and spends public money.

40. Why does the Indian Constitution establish "checks and balances" among the three organs of government?
(A) To logically ensure that one specific organ can easily dominate the other two, allowing for laws to be passed with maximum speed.
(B) To create a system that guarantees the central federal government maintains complete and absolute control over all state-level governments.
(C) To ensure that no single organ of the government becomes overwhelmingly powerful and subsequently abuses its constitutional authority.
(D) To strictly separate and independently manage the financial budgets and logistical supply chains of the domestic police and the military.

Ans :

(C) To ensure that no single organ of the government becomes overwhelmingly powerful and subsequently abuses its constitutional authority.
The Constitution establishes checks and balances so that the legislature, executive, and judiciary can monitor each other, ensuring that no single branch becomes overly powerful and threatens democratic rights.

41. What is a 'Policy' in the context of government action?
(A) A legally binding, final judicial judgment passed down by the Supreme Court intended to resolve a complex constitutional dispute.
(B) A carefully developed set of ideas or actions that a government formally decides upon to address a specific issue or achieve a goal.
(C) The highly secure physical building or complex where the elected members of the state legislature meet to debate current events.
(D) The fundamental, inviolable constitutional right granted to all citizens guaranteeing absolute free speech and expression.

Ans :

(B) A carefully developed set of ideas or actions that a government formally decides upon to address a specific issue or achieve a goal.
A policy is defined as a specific set of ideas, plans, or actions that an institution or government decides to implement to achieve a particular goal or address an issue.

42. Comparing the roles of the President and the Prime Minister in India's political executive, which of the following is true?
(A) The President actively leads the daily national administration, while the Prime Minister occupies a strictly symbolic and ceremonial role.
(B) The President is a permanent, non-elected civil bureaucrat, while the Prime Minister is a temporarily elected partisan politician.
(C) Both belong to the political executive, but the President's role is mostly formal/symbolic, while the PM makes major operational decisions.
(D) The President holds the exclusive power to draft new laws, while the Prime Minister's sole duty is to interpret those laws in federal court.

Ans :

(C) Both belong to the political executive, but the President's role is mostly formal/symbolic, while the PM makes major operational decisions.
Both are part of the elected political executive. However, the text notes that the President (and Governors) mostly have formal or symbolic roles, whereas the Prime Minister actively leads in making big decisions and setting national goals.

43. In the education system, what is the role of institutions like the NCPCR and SCPCR?
(A) To manage the logistical requirements and secure the necessary funding to physically build new school classrooms across the nation.
(B) To independently author, print, and broadly distribute new educational textbooks for primary and secondary students nationwide.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

receive critical information about government actions, policies, and public expenditures
The RTI Act is a powerful democratic tool that empowers citizens to legally request and obtain information regarding government actions, fund allocations, and public infrastructure projects, ensuring transparency.

35. In 1970, what major infrastructure project did the Kerala Government propose that threatened biodiversity?
(A) A highly volatile nuclear power generation plant proposed to be built directly on the ecologically sensitive coastal wetlands.
(B) A massive hydroelectric dam project in the Silent Valley that threatened to submerge and destroy untouched evergreen forests.
(C) A massive four-lane industrial commercial highway designed to cut straight through the protected wildlife reserves of the Western Ghats.
(D) A sprawling new deep-water commercial seaport constructed in Kochi that required the destruction of ancient mangrove forests.

Ans :

(B) A massive hydroelectric dam project in the Silent Valley that threatened to submerge and destroy untouched evergreen forests.
The Kerala government planned to build a massive hydroelectric project (a dam) in the Silent Valley, which would have destructively submerged vast tracts of biodiverse evergreen forest.

36. Which state government mechanism is legally permitted to use force to ensure citizens live in a safe and secure environment?
(A) The Judiciary
(B) Civil Society Organizations
(C) The Police
(D) The Legislature

Ans :

(C) The Police
The police, working as agents of the state government, are the specific entity legally authorized to use force to maintain law and order and ensure community safety.

37. How did Civil Society Organizations (NGOs) achieve victory in the Silent Valley movement?
(A) By legally purchasing the entire forest tract from the regional state government using massive donations from foreign charities.
(B) By utilizing aggressive armed force and violent physical barricades to permanently block the state construction crews from entering.
(C) By mobilizing immense public opinion, partnering with scientists and locals to successfully pressure the Central Government to intervene.
(D) By officially appealing to the reigning King of England to utilize residual colonial treaties to forcefully intervene and halt the project.

Ans :

(C) By mobilizing immense public opinion, partnering with scientists and locals to successfully pressure the Central Government to intervene.
NGOs successfully formed a massive coalition of scientists, writers, and locals to mobilize public opinion, applying enough democratic pressure to force the Central Government to cancel the dam and declare it a National Park.

38. In the context of governance, what does 'Accountability' mean?
(A) The legally mandated and absolute secrecy regarding all high-level government financial records and international trade negotiations.
(B) The fundamental obligation of those in power to take responsibility for their official actions and answer directly to the public.
(C) The highly complex, specialized mathematical process used by central banks for calculating the nation's overall Gross Domestic Product.
(D) The unchecked legal right of state police forces to make immediate arrests and detain suspects without securing a judicial warrant.

Ans :

(B) The fundamental obligation of those in power to take responsibility for their official actions and answer directly to the public.
Accountability means that individuals holding power are responsible for their decisions and actions, and are strictly obligated to answer for them to the public and stakeholders.

39. What does 'Transparency' refer to in a democracy?
(A) The literal architectural requirement ensuring that all new national public administrative buildings are constructed with clear glass walls.
(B) The open, unhindered access provided to citizens regarding how the government makes policies, takes actions, and spends public funds.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

30. What does "judicial review" refer to?
(A) The localized democratic process wherein ordinary citizens cast direct votes to appoint new judges to the Supreme Court.
(B) The judiciary acting as a constitutional referee to evaluate whether the laws or actions of the government are fair and valid.
(C) The preliminary investigative phase where the police review criminal evidence before officially presenting a case to trial.
(D) The formal executive procedure where the Prime Minister reviews and grades the overall performance of the Supreme Court.

Ans :

(B) The judiciary acting as a constitutional referee to evaluate whether the laws or actions of the government are fair and valid.
Judicial review is the essential power of the judiciary to safeguard the Constitution, acting as a referee to evaluate and ensure that the government's actions and laws do not violate constitutional principles or people's rights.

31. Which government department is responsible for ensuring that schools have separate toilets and improved teacher training?
(A) The Legislative Branch, which is directly responsible for physically constructing local infrastructure and hiring school maintenance staff.
(B) The Judicial Branch, which oversees the daily logistical operations and sanitary conditions of all regional public education facilities.
(C) The Permanent Executive (Bureaucrats like District Education Officers) who execute the policies and manage public services on the ground.
(D) The National Council for the Protection of Child Rights (NCPCR), which funds the physical construction of school infrastructure.

Ans :

(C) The Permanent Executive (Bureaucrats like District Education Officers) who execute the policies and manage public services on the ground.
While the legislature makes the laws, the actual grassroots implementation—such as ensuring schools physically build toilets and run training—is the specific responsibility of the permanent executive (officers and bureaucrats).

32. Why is decentralization considered "more democratic"?
(A) It completely eliminates the complex logistical need for holding expensive national elections by appointing local community leaders.
(B) It gives ordinary citizens a direct opportunity to be actively involved in the daily, local decisions that immediately affect their lives.
(C) It ensures that only the wealthiest, most highly educated citizens possess the legal authority to draft and pass municipal laws.
(D) It strictly requires every single citizen to vote directly on highly complex matters of international trade and foreign diplomatic policy.

Ans :

(B) It gives ordinary citizens a direct opportunity to be actively involved in the daily, local decisions that immediately affect their lives.
Decentralization is highly democratic because it creates local governments, empowering everyday people to actively discuss and solve the immediate issues (like water or schools) that affect their daily lives.

33. Which of the following is NOT one of the four essential parts of a state?
(A) Land (territory)
(B) A single national language
(C) People (population)
(D) Sovereignty

Ans :

(B) A single national language
The four essential components of a state are People, Land, Government, and Sovereignty. A single national language is not a requirement.

34. What does the Right to Information (RTI) Act empower Indian citizens to do?
(A) It legally authorizes them to monitor and view the private, personal text messages and phone records of elected politicians.
(B) It legally empowers them to ask for and receive critical information about government actions, policies, and public expenditures.
(C) It legally forces all major news media outlets to unconditionally publish any political article or opinion piece a citizen writes.
(D) It constitutionally grants citizens the right to bypass the formal court system and personally arrest corrupt government officials.

Ans :

(B) It legally empowers them to ask for and

NODIA

(C) To act within the judiciary's broader domain to protect the fundamental rights of children and take legal action if those rights are denied.
(D) To draft and successfully pass new, sweeping constitutional amendments regarding standardized school hours and national curriculums.

Ans :

(C) To act within the judiciary's broader domain to protect the fundamental rights of children and take legal action if those rights are denied.
Operating alongside the courts to guard the law, organizations like the NCPCR (National Council for the Protection of Child Rights) serve to protect children's rights and take direct action if those rights are violated or denied.

44. Which organ of the government is responsible for ensuring that laws are followed and for resolving disputes?
(A) The Legislature
(B) The Permanent Executive
(C) The Judiciary
(D) The Political Executive

Ans :

(C) The Judiciary
The judiciary is the branch of government that settles disputes, protects rights, checks the fairness of laws, and makes sure that everyone properly follows the law.

45. Why must the government in India, despite being a democracy, be subjected to limitations by a Constitution?
(A) Because the departing British colonial administration strictly demanded these limitations as a formal condition before leaving in 1947.
(B) Because unchecked power, even in a democracy, could allow elected majorities to pass tyrannical laws that violate basic human rights.
(C) Because a functional democracy can only operate effectively if a hereditary king retains the ultimate veto power over legislative decisions.
(D) Because the foundational Constitution rigidly requires that expensive national democratic elections be held every single calendar year.

Ans :

(B) Because unchecked power, even in a democracy, could allow elected majorities to pass tyrannical laws that violate basic human rights.
Even in a democracy, the Constitution must strictly limit government power to prevent elected leaders from becoming tyrannical and passing unjust laws that violate citizens' fundamental rights (the dominance of the majority).

46. According to C.B. Muthamma, what is the "single most important factor that makes democracy possible" in India?
(A) The massive, highly disciplined size of the Indian military apparatus which ensures total domestic compliance with federal election results.
(B) India's deep-rooted cultural tradition of religious tolerance and the "unbounded freedom of thought and belief" among its diverse people.
(C) The widespread and legally mandated use of the English language in parliament, which unifies politicians from diverse linguistic regions.
(D) The strict, uncompromising separation of local municipal taxes from federal state taxes, ensuring complete economic decentralization.

Ans :

(B) India's deep-rooted cultural tradition of religious tolerance and the "unbounded freedom of thought and belief" among its diverse people.
Muthamma observed that India's deep-rooted cultural tradition of religious tolerance and the "unbounded freedom of thought and belief" is the foundational factor that allows democratic governance to succeed in the country.

47. How does the text define 'Civil Society'?
(A) The highly trained, secretive special operations forces of the Indian military responsible for handling domestic hostage crises.
(B) The collective term for thousands of independent citizen groups and NGOs working proactively on issues like education, health, and environment.
(C) A clandestine, highly influential group of wealthy corporate business owners who secretly manipulate and control national elections.
(D) The specific, specialized branch of the federal judiciary that exclusively handles domestic disputes and civilian divorce cases.

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

social justice).
(C) Because it taxes citizens three times a year.
(D) Because it only operates in three specific states.

Ans :

(B) Because it functions simultaneously as a protector (law/defense), a provider (welfare/infrastructure), and a regulator (economic/social justice).
The government serves a complex, triple function in society: it protects citizens via the police/military, provides essential services like schools and roads, and regulates the economy to ensure social fairness.

59. Which article or specific legal right was violated in the case of C.B. Muthamma, prompting the Supreme Court to intervene?
(A) Her right to own agricultural land.
(B) Her fundamental rights regarding gender equality, due to gender-biased service rules.
(C) Her right to vote in local elections.
(D) Her right to establish a new political party.

Ans :

(B) Her fundamental rights regarding gender equality, due to gender-biased service rules.
The Supreme Court, led by Justice V.R. Krishna Iyer, intervened because the Ministry's rules (forcing women to resign upon marriage) constituted blatant gender discrimination, violating fundamental constitutional rights to equality.

60. A student is upset that their local municipal park is filled with garbage. They want to force the government to take action but do not know how. Based on the chapter's advice for citizen engagement, what is the most effective immediate action they can take using modern tools?
(A) File a lawsuit directly in the Supreme Court.
(B) Take pictures, post them on social media (like X or Facebook), and publicly tag the local municipal officials to demand a cleanup.
(C) Stop paying their national income tax.
(D) Run for the office of Prime Minister.

Ans :

(B) Take pictures, post them on social media (like X or Facebook), and publicly tag the local municipal officials to demand a cleanup.
The text explicitly suggests that utilizing social media platforms (like X/Twitter) to publicly share concerns and directly tag corresponding government officials is a highly effective, modern method to demand accountability and provoke immediate action.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

61. Match the following parts of a State with their meanings :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	People	A.	Full authority to make laws
2.	Land	B.	Citizens living in a country
3.	Government	C.	Fixed territory
4.	Sovereignty	D.	System to run the country

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
A state consists of four essential parts—people, land, government, and sovereignty. People are citizens, land refers to territory, government administers the state, and sovereignty gives independent authority to make and implement laws.

62. Match the following organs of government with their functions :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Legislature	A.	Settles disputes and protects rights
2.	Executive	B.	Makes laws
3.	Judiciary	C.	Implements laws
4.	Police	D.	Maintains law and order

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-C, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C

Ans :

NODIA

the roadwork, using that transparency to hold officials accountable.

53. The MGNREGS (Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Scheme) is a large-scale welfare program. Which part of the government is primarily responsible for rolling out and managing it at the grassroots level?
(A) The Supreme Court Judges
(B) The Members of Parliament
(C) The Bureaucracy (Permanent Executive)
(D) The President of India

Ans :

(C) The Bureaucracy (Permanent Executive)
Large-scale welfare schemes like MGNREGS and vaccination drives are managed, rolled out, and implemented on the ground by the permanent executive (bureaucracy).

54. In the education system flowchart, which body is explicitly listed as responsible for approving school budgets and making laws like the Right to Education Act?
(A) The District Education Officer
(B) The Parliament and State Legislatures
(C) The National Council for the Protection of Child Rights (NCPCR)
(D) The Supreme Court

Ans :

(B) The Parliament and State Legislatures
The chart clearly indicates that the Legislative branch (Parliament for the country and State Legislatures for each state) is responsible for making laws (like the RTE Act) and approving budgets.

55. A state government passes a new law declaring that members of a specific minority religion are no longer allowed to build places of worship. This law clearly violates the constitutional right to religious freedom. Which specific pillar of the government is empowered to strike this law down to protect the minority group?
(A) The Bureaucracy
(B) The Central Executive
(C) The State Legislature
(D) The Judiciary

Ans :

(D) The Judiciary
The judiciary is the independent branch empowered with "judicial review." It acts as a referee to evaluate laws; if it finds that the legislature passed a law violating constitutional rights (like religious freedom), the judiciary will strike it down to protect the citizens.

56. Consider the following statements about the role of the Media in a democracy:
1. It keeps citizens informed about government actions.
2. It provides a platform for public discussion and debate.
3. It has the legal authority to pass constitutional amendments.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The media plays a critical role in informing citizens and fostering debate (Statements 1 and 2). However, only the legislature has the legal authority to pass or amend laws/the constitution; the media has no such legal power (Statement 3 is false).

57. What was the primary argument raised by the minority group of residents in the RWA example regarding the ban on deliveries after 9 pm?
(A) It would hurt the profits of local restaurants.
(B) It would prevent them from receiving late-night guests.
(C) It would severely affect the sick and the elderly who might urgently need medicine or food.
(D) It would increase the cost of electricity in the complex.

Ans :

(C) It would severely affect the sick and the elderly who might urgently need medicine or food.
The minority correctly argued against the unfair majority vote by pointing out that a blanket ban on night deliveries would dangerously affect vulnerable populations like the sick and elderly who rely on urgent deliveries.

58. Why is the government described as acting in a "triple role"?
(A) Because it has three presidents.
(B) Because it functions simultaneously as a protector (law/defense), a provider (welfare/infrastructure), and a regulator (economic/

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

The full power to make laws without outside control.

70. Which organ of the government is responsible for making laws?

Ans :

The legislature.

71. What is the core idea of a democracy?

Ans :

Rule by the people.

72. Who acts as the head of state in a republic?

Ans :

An elected representative.

73. What is the highest office in the United Kingdom?

Ans :

A monarch.

74. Which document guarantees fundamental rights to all Indian citizens?

Ans :

The Constitution.

75. What does 'Matsya nyāya' mean according to Kautilya?

Ans :

Big fish swallow the smaller ones.

76. Who implements the policies and laws made by the legislature?

Ans :

The executive.

77. Name the two parts of the executive in India.

Ans :

Political executive and permanent executive.

78. Who form the political executive?

Ans :

Elected leaders.

79. What are non-elected government officers called?

Ans :

Bureaucrats or civil servants.

80. Who was the first woman to join the Indian Foreign Service?

Ans :

Chonira Belliappa Muthamma.

81. What does RTI stand for?

Ans :

Right to Information.

82. Name the national portal used for lodging public grievances.

Ans :

CPGRAMS or Public Grievances Portal.

83. In which state is the Silent Valley National Park located?

Ans :

Kerala.

84. Which organ of government is called the 'Watchdog'?

Ans :

The Judiciary.

85. Name the three tiers of government in India.

Ans :

Central, state, and local governments.

86. When was the Constitution amended to create the panchayati raj system?

Ans :

In the early 1990s.

87. What does 'decentralisation' mean?

Ans :

Power and decision-making are spread out.

88. What did Mahatma Gandhi call his idea of self-sufficient village governments?

Ans :

Grām swarāj.

89. Which level of government looks after national defence?

Ans :

Central government.

90. Who protects the rule of law in a democracy?

Ans :

NODIA

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The legislature creates laws, the executive carries them out, and the judiciary ensures justice and constitutional protection. Police help maintain law and order and support implementation of legal decisions.

63. Match the following concepts with their descriptions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Democracy	A.	Head of state is elected
2.	Republic	B.	Rule by the people
3.	Constitution	C.	Limits government power
4.	Majority Rule	D.	Decisions based on public choice

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A
(C) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Democracy means rule by the people through elections. A republic has an elected head of state. The Constitution limits power and protects rights, while majority rule reflects decisions taken by elected representatives.

64. Match the following types of executive with their characteristics :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Political Executive	A.	Selected through examinations
2.	Permanent Executive	B.	Elected leaders
3.	Bureaucrats	C.	Civil servants
4.	UPSC	D.	Conducts recruitment exams

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Political executives include elected leaders. Permanent executives are government officers selected through examinations. Bureaucrats implement policies and manage administration, while UPSC recruits officers into public services.

65. Match the following levels of government with their responsibilities :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Central Government	A.	Village and city services
2.	State Government	B.	Defence and foreign affairs
3.	Local Government	C.	Health and agriculture
4.	Decentralisation	D.	Distribution of decision-making

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(C) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A
(D) 1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
The central government handles national matters like defence. State governments manage regional concerns such as health and agriculture. Local governments solve local issues, and decentralisation distributes decision-making across different levels.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

66. What are the three main functions of a government?

Ans :

Making laws, carrying out policies, and ensuring laws are followed.

67. Name the four important parts of a state.

Ans :

People, land, government, and sovereignty.

68. Which term refers to a fixed area or territory with clear boundaries?

Ans :

Land.

69. What does sovereignty mean for a state?

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) The collective term for thousands of independent citizen groups and NGOs working proactively on issues like education, health, and environment.
Civil society refers collectively to the thousands of non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and active citizen groups that work independently of the government to address critical social issues like the environment and health.

48. What specific action did the Central Government take in 1983 regarding the Silent Valley?
(A) Ignoring the environmental protests, they formally approved the immediate construction of a massive, highly profitable nuclear power facility.
(B) Yielding to public pressure, they intervened, completely canceled the destructive dam project, and declared the area a protected National Park.
(C) Bypassing local authorities, they controversially sold the entire valley to a foreign logging company to generate rapid national revenue.
(D) Citing strict national security concerns, they forcibly and permanently relocated all indigenous local tribes out of the valley region.

Ans :

(B) Yielding to public pressure, they intervened, completely canceled the destructive dam project, and declared the area a protected National Park.
Yielding to massive public pressure mobilized by NGOs, the Central Government intervened in 1983, completely cancelled the dam project, and ensured lasting protection by declaring the Silent Valley a National Park.

49. Which of the following is an example of a bureaucratic service in India?
(A) The Supreme Court of India
(B) The Indian Administrative Service (IAS)
(C) The State Vidhan Sabha
(D) The Parliament of India

Ans :

(B) The Indian Administrative Service (IAS)
The Indian Administrative Service (IAS) is explicitly listed in the text as one of the most well-known bureaucracies, forming part of the permanent executive.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

50. In the early 1990s, the Indian Constitution was amended to officially create which "third tier" of democracy?
(A) The Supreme Court
(B) The Election Commission
(C) The panchayati raj system and municipalities
(D) The Indian Administrative Service

Ans :

(C) The panchayati raj system and municipalities
The Constitution was significantly amended in the early 1990s to officially establish panchayats (for villages) and municipalities (for towns/cities) as the third tier of India's democracy.

51. A factory begins dumping toxic waste into a river that supplies drinking water to several villages. The local villagers are suffering from illnesses. If the factory owners refuse to stop and the local administration ignores the complaints, which independent organ of the state can the citizens approach to forcefully halt the dumping and protect their fundamental right to life?
(A) The Legislature
(B) The Permanent Executive
(C) The Judiciary
(D) The Central Military Command

Ans :

(C) The Judiciary
The judiciary is the independent branch that protects citizens' constitutional rights. If fundamental rights (like the right to a safe environment/life) are violated by private entities or ignored by the government, citizens can go to court to demand justice and halt the illegal actions.

52. Citizens in Bagepalli were frustrated by unprofessional roadwork that caused traffic accidents. What specific legal tool did a local citizen use to obtain the financial details of the project and force officials to fix the road?
(A) A formal declaration of war against the municipality.
(B) Filing a Right to Information (RTI) request.
(C) Appealing directly to the United Nations.
(D) Using the matsya nyāya protocol.

Ans :

(B) Filing a Right to Information (RTI) request.
A local citizen in Bagepalli successfully utilized the Right to Information (RTI) Act to force the government to release financial details regarding

NODIA

The judiciary.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

91. Explain the difference between a state and a government.

Ans :

A state is a permanent political organization of a defined territory, whereas the government is the temporary system that runs it.

92. Why is a permanent population necessary for a state?

Ans :

A permanent population develops a shared culture and identity with the territory, creating a society necessary for a state to exist and function.

93. What does sovereignty mean in the context of a state?

Ans :

Sovereignty means a state possesses complete control over its internal matters, making and implementing laws without any interference from external powers.

94. How does the police force contribute to a state?

Ans :

The police maintain law and order, protect communities from crime, promote social safety, and ensure citizens live in a secure, violence-free environment.

95. Define the role of the legislature in a democracy.

Ans :

The legislature represents the people and creates well-defined laws that apply to everyone, ensuring governance relies on rules rather than arbitrary decisions.

96. How is a republic different from a monarchy?

Ans :

In a republic, the head of state is elected by the people, whereas in a monarchy, a king or queen inherits the power.

97. Why is India called a democratic republic?

Ans :

India is democratic because people elect their government, and it is a republic because its head of state is elected, not hereditary.

98. What is meant by the "dominance of the majority"?

Ans :

It is a situation where the interests of the majority are pursued exclusively, actively hurting and neglecting the fundamental rights of minority groups.

99. How does the Constitution protect citizens from unchecked power?

Ans :

The Constitution sets strict limits on government powers, ensuring elected leaders cannot pass laws violating basic human rights like freedom of speech.

100. What is the role of the permanent executive?

Ans :

Bureaucrats and civil servants form the permanent executive, providing expert advice, implementing policies, and maintaining smooth daily public administration regardless of political changes.

101. How does the political executive differ from the permanent executive?

Ans :

The political executive consists of elected leaders serving fixed terms, while the permanent executive involves selected bureaucrats who work until their retirement.

102. Who was C.B. Muthamma and what was her major contribution?

Ans :

She was the first woman in the Indian Foreign Service and successfully fought legally against gender-biased employment rules in the Indian public service.

103. List the three main roles played by the Government of India.

Ans :

The government actively plays the vital triple role of a protector, a provider of public welfare, and a regulator of economic activities.

NODIA

104. How does the Right to Information (RTI) Act empower citizens?

Ans :

The RTI Act allows citizens to officially request information about government actions and public spending, thereby ensuring transparency and holding officials accountable.

105. What role do civil society organizations play in a democracy?

Ans :

Civil society organizations and NGOs unite citizens to raise awareness, tackle social issues, and actively push the government to address important public concerns.

106. Briefly explain the outcome of the Silent Valley Movement.

Ans :

Public mobilization successfully forced the central government to cancel a destructive hydroelectric project, eventually declaring the pristine Silent Valley a protected National Park.

107. How does the judiciary protect the rule of law?

Ans :

The independent judiciary ensures everyone follows the law, settles disputes peacefully, checks unfair government actions, and actively protects citizens' fundamental constitutional rights.

108. Why did India adopt a decentralized federal system?

Ans :

Due to its vast population and immense diversity, India needed decentralization to effectively address regional needs through national, state, and local governments.

109. What was the purpose of creating the third tier of government?

Ans :

Panchayats and municipalities were created to strengthen grassroots democracy, allowing local citizens to participate directly in solving their immediate community problems efficiently.

110. Explain Mahatma Gandhi's concept of Gram Swaraj.

Ans :

Gandhi envisioned self-sufficient village governments functioning as independent republics for their vital needs, while remaining cooperatively interdependent with neighbours for other absolute necessities.

111. Give two examples of matters handled by the Central Government.

Ans :

The central government primarily manages matters of national importance affecting the whole country, such as national defence strategies and international foreign affairs.

112. Which tier of government is responsible for managing local streetlamps?

Ans :

Local governments, like village panchayats and city municipalities, are directly responsible for managing neighborhood amenities, including streetlamps, drainage, and local public parks.

113. How does decentralization improve governmental accountability?

Ans :

Decentralization brings local leaders physically closer to the people, making it significantly easier for citizens to ask questions and demand immediate answers.

114. Why is the media important for citizen engagement?

Ans :

Print, electronic, and social media provide powerful platforms for citizens to publicly share concerns, discuss policies, and demand prompt action from government officials.

115. How do ordinary citizens legally protect tribal lands?

Ans :

Tribal lands are legally protected; private companies cannot buy or lease them without explicit permission from the local tribal community and due process.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

116. Analyse the difference between a State and a Government using an appropriate analogy.

Ans :

A state represents the permanent political entity, while the government is the temporary administrative system managing it. For example, consider the state as a school and the government as its principal and teachers. Teachers change over time, but the school itself remains a constant, geographically defined institution.

117. Why is sovereignty considered an essential feature of a state?

Ans :

Sovereignty is crucial because it gives a state absolute, independent authority to govern its territory and population. It ensures the state can make and enforce internal laws based on its unique needs, without experiencing any unwanted political interference or forced directives from external nations or foreign bodies.

118. Evaluate the relationship between the legislature and the executive in a democracy.

Ans :

The legislature, composed of elected representatives, holds the primary responsibility of creating laws and shaping public policy. The executive branch then takes these established laws and implements them across the nation. This clear separation ensures that governance relies on structured, democratic rules rather than arbitrary individual decisions.

119. Discuss how a republic prevents the "dominance of the majority."

Ans :

In a republic, the Constitution limits the government's power, ensuring the rule of law supersedes the sheer wishes of a majority. This constitutional framework protects minority groups from unfair treatment, preventing powerful elected leaders from passing arbitrary laws that violate fundamental human rights and basic civic freedoms.

120. Examine the significance of C.B. Muthamma's legal struggle for gender equality.

Ans :

Ans: C.B. Muthamma, the first woman in the Indian Foreign Service, bravely challenged institutional gender discrimination. When unjustly denied promotion, she approached the Supreme Court, which struck down biased employment rules. Her victory remains a defining, historic milestone in achieving gender equality within the Indian public administrative service.

121. How does the Right to Information (RTI) Act empower Indian citizens?

Ans :

The RTI Act is a powerful democratic tool enabling citizens to officially demand transparency regarding public expenditure and policy execution. By requesting detailed records, citizens can expose professional negligence or corruption, forcing government officials to remain accountable and promptly rectify issues, as seen in the Bagepalli roadwork case.

122. Analyse the role of civil society organisations in a functioning democracy.

Ans :

Civil society organizations and NGOs unite citizens to actively advocate for crucial public causes like environmental protection and education. They mobilize public opinion, generate widespread awareness, and effectively pressure the government to alter destructive policies, perfectly demonstrated by the successful citizen-led campaign to save Kerala's Silent Valley.

123. Why is an independent judiciary vital for the survival of a democracy?

Ans :

An independent judiciary acts as a neutral watchdog, completely free from political control. It vigorously defends the Constitution, protects fundamental citizen rights, and ensures that the government obeys the law. Without this vital referee, unchecked political power could easily erode democratic fairness and violate basic human liberties.

124. Discuss the rationale behind decentralising power to local governments in India.

Ans :

India's vast geographical size and massive population make centralized governance highly

NODIA

2. Parts that are COMPLETELY INVISIBLE:
   i. Fibre optic cables buried deep under fields and roads
   ii. Satellites floating in space, cannot be seen with naked eye
   iii. Data centres and giant servers located in distant cities, hidden from common people
   iv. Wireless signals travelling through air invisibly
   v. Microwave transmissions completely invisible to human eye

5. In the 1990s, mobile calls in India cost up to ₹17 per minute, with charges even for incoming calls. Today, India has some of the world's cheapest mobile and internet rates. How do you think this became possible?

Ans :

1. Better Communication Infrastructure:
   i. More mobile towers were built across the country
   ii. Fibre optic cables were laid under fields and roads
   iii. Satellites and data centres were established
   iv. Better infrastructure meant more people could be served at lower costs
2. Technological Advancements:
   i. Communication evolved from slow systems to fast digital ones
   ii. From 2G to 3G to 4G and now 5G networks
   iii. Better technology meant cheaper and faster services
   iv. Cloud communication and AI driven services made things more efficient
3. More Competition:
   i. Many telecom companies entered the market
   ii. Competition forced companies to lower their prices
   iii. More options meant better and cheaper services for people
4. Government Support:
   i. Government promoted digital connectivity across India
   ii. Schemes to connect even remote villages with internet
   iii. E-governance initiatives pushed digital expansion
   iv. More users meant costs could be distributed widely
5. Results of Cheaper Rates:
   i. As the chapter mentions, by 2025:
   ii. 1,160 million wireless telephone subscribers in India
   iii. Nearly 900 million internet connections
   iv. India became one of the most connected nations in the world

6. Ask your family or people in the neighbourhood how they sent long-distance messages before mobile phones were introduced. What has been their experience of using the first telephone or mobile phone?

Ans :

1. Old Methods:
   i. Wrote letters by post which took weeks to reach
   ii. Sent urgent messages through telegrams
   iii. Booked trunk calls at telephone exchanges and waited for hours
   iv. Used postcards for short cheap messages
   v. Passed messages through travelling people
2. Problems with Old Methods:
   i. Letters took days or weeks to reach
   ii. Telegrams were very expensive
   iii. No guarantee of safe delivery
   iv. During emergencies communication was extremely difficult
3. Experience of First Telephone and Mobile:
   i. People were amazed to hear distant voices instantly
   ii. Had to go to PCO booths as few had home phones
   iii. Calls cost up to ₹17 per minute in 1990s
   iv. First mobile phones were very large and expensive
   v. Only rich people could afford them initially
   vi. Slowly they became cheaper and smarter

7. Do you see other types of infrastructure around you like schools, colleges, training centres, hospitals, health centres, police stations, fire stations, courts, parks, libraries, community centres and so on? This is known as social infrastructure. How do you think it supports the wellbeing and development of communities and society?

Ans :

Social infrastructure includes schools, colleges, hospitals, police stations, parks, libraries, and community centres. It forms the essential base for

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

constitutional limits are necessary.

132. In Bagepalli, officials constructed double roads and streetlights unprofessionally, causing severe traffic issues and accidents. Frustrated, a local citizen filed an official application to get financial details about the project. Armed with this data, residents confronted the officials, forcing them to fix the dangerous roadwork immediately.
(a) Which legal act did the citizen use to obtain project details?
(b) How did obtaining this information help the residents? (Applying)
(c) Which two democratic principles does this scenario highlight?

Ans :

(a) The citizen used the Right to Information (RTI) Act.
(b) The information allowed them to hold officials accountable and demand proper completion of the public infrastructure.
(c) It highlights the principles of transparency and accountability in governance.

133. The Kerala Government planned a massive hydroelectric dam in the Silent Valley, threatening to submerge untouched evergreen forests. Various non-government organizations, scientists, and local villagers strongly protested. Their relentless campaign eventually forced the Central Government to cancel the destructive project and declare the area a National Park.
(a) Who initiated the protest against the hydroelectric project?
(b) What is the collective term for citizen groups and NGOs working on such public issues?
(c) Why was the intervention of these groups crucial in a democracy?

Ans :

(a) Non-government organizations, scientists, and local villagers initiated the protest.
(b) They are collectively termed as civil society.
(c) They successfully mobilized public opinion to prevent environmental destruction, showing how citizens can force governments to act responsibly.

134. A village faced a major issue with broken streetlamps and blocked drainage systems, leading to safety hazards at night. Instead of writing to the Prime Minister or the State Chief Minister, the villagers approached their local Gram Panchayat leaders, who quickly allocated funds and resolved the issues.
(a) Which tier of government resolved the villagers' problem?
(b) Why was it better to approach local leaders instead of the Central Government? (Applying)
(c) What term describes this distribution of power to local levels?

Ans :

(a) The local government (Gram Panchayat) resolved the problem.
(b) Local leaders have better knowledge of the area's specific needs and can resolve community issues much faster.
(c) This concept is known as decentralization.

135. A large private mining corporation wanted to extract minerals from the sacred hills belonging to the Dongria Kondh tribe in Odisha. Despite the company's massive wealth and influence, they were legally stopped from buying or leasing the land because the indigenous community strongly opposed the destruction.
(a) Why was the private company stopped from mining the hills? (Applying)
(b) Which organ of the state ensures that such protective laws are enforced fairly?
(c) What does this event demonstrate about the power of the state versus private wealth?

Ans :

(a) The law protected the tribal land, requiring the community's permission, which they refused to give.
(b) The judiciary acts as the watchdog to ensure such protective laws are followed.
(c) It demonstrates that the rule of law and constitutional rights are superior to the financial power of private corporations.

www.nodia.in

NODIA NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

People should report problems such as broken streetlights, damaged roads, or water leakage to the authorities. It is also important to respect public transport and follow rules in buses, trains, and metros. Taking part in cleanliness drives and awareness campaigns further helps in maintaining public facilities.

3. Can you think of ways in which infrastructure can become more sustainable around you? For example, what changes would you make to your school to make it more eco-friendly?

Ans :

Making infrastructure sustainable means designing it to use less energy and cause minimal harm to the environment.
Changes to make a school eco-friendly:

1. Solar Power: Install solar panels on the school's roof to generate clean, renewable electricity for fans and lights.
2 Rainwater Harvesting: Build a rainwater harvesting system to collect monsoon rain, which can be used to water the school gardens and flush toilets.
3. Waste Management: Set up a compost pit on the school grounds to turn organic waste from the canteen and dry leaves into natural fertilizer.
4. Energy Efficiency: Replace all old bulbs with energy-efficient LED lights and design classrooms with large windows to maximize natural sunlight and cross-ventilation.

4. Write down a list of five problems you have observed and their possible solutions on a sheet and discuss in class.

Ans :

In daily life, several infrastructure-related problems can be observed along with their solutions:

1. Potholes on roads make travel unsafe and uncomfortable. This can be solved by regular maintenance, timely reporting, and using better construction materials.
2. Poor waste management and littering create unhygienic conditions. Installing more dustbins, spreading awareness, ensuring regular waste collection, and promoting recycling can help solve this issue.
3. Broken streetlights or poor lighting make areas unsafe at night. This can be improved by repairing lights on time and installing solar-powered lights where needed.
4. Water supply issues and leaking pipes cause inconvenience and wastage. Regular inspection, quick repair of leaks, and rainwater harvesting can address this problem.
5. Traffic congestion and lack of pedestrian facilities make commuting difficult. Building better roads, creating pedestrian and cycling lanes, and improving public transport can reduce this issue.

THINK ABOUT IT

1. What might happen to Satish's efforts if any part of the infrastructure is missing?

Ans :

Satish is a tomato farmer from Maharashtra whose success depends on multiple infrastructure systems working together like "pieces of a puzzle." If any part is missing, his efforts could be seriously harmed.

1. If irrigation infrastructure (canals/electric pumps) fails:
   i. His crops would not get enough water
   ii. Tomatoes would not grow well or would wither
   iii. His entire harvest could be lost before it even begins
2. If roads/highways are missing:
   i. Trucks cannot carry his tomatoes to the city markets
   ii. Produce would rot before reaching buyers
   iii. He would lose his income despite a good harvest
3. If cold storage is unavailable:
   i. Tomatoes would spoil quickly, especially in summer heat
   ii. He cannot preserve unsold stock for later
   iii. Massive financial losses would follow
4. If internet/communication infrastructure is absent:
   i. He cannot check market prices and may sell at a loss
   ii. He cannot find the best quality seeds, fertilizers, or farming inputs
   iii. He would remain uninformed and exploited by middlemen

2. What happens when a new highway is built near a village? How does it impact the lives of the

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

third-highest domestic air traffic in the world, managing 159 airports as of 2025. Modern airports, such as Bengaluru's Kempegowda International Airport, integrate aesthetic "garden city" concepts with state-of-the-art facilities. Meanwhile, India's 11,100 km coastline supports 12 major and 217 minor ports. Shipping remains the most economical mode for transporting heavy cargo like coal and cement over long international distances.

2. COMMUNICATIONS INFRASTRUCTURE

The evolution of communication in India is a journey from the ancient use of pigeons and horse runners to today's lightning-fast 5G networks and cloud computing. The chapter highlights the often-invisible network of underground fibre-optic cables, mobile towers, and space satellites that allow a simple voice note to instantly cross the country.

India has a proud history of communication innovation. In 1895, the pioneering Indian scientist Jagadish Chandra Bose successfully demonstrated wireless transmission using microwaves in Calcutta, inventing an early semiconductor detector years before Guglielmo Marconi patented a similar device. Today, communication infrastructure has democratized access to information. With nearly 900 million internet connections and some of the world's cheapest data rates, digital infrastructure empowers students with online learning, supports massive e-commerce networks, and enables e-governance initiatives like DigiLocker, drastically improving the ease of living.

3. SOCIAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND SUSTAINABLE FUTURE

While physical infrastructure comprises roads and cables, "social infrastructure" refers to facilities that support community wellbeing, such as schools, hospitals, parks, and police stations. Both must be designed with inclusivity and sustainability in mind. Modern infrastructure must accommodate the elderly and disabled (e.g., wheelchair-accessible buses) and protect biodiversity (e.g., alarm systems to prevent trains from hitting elephants, or solar-powered buildings to reduce emissions).

4. ANCIENT WISDOM AND COLLECTIVE RESPONSIBILITY

The concept of well-planned infrastructure is deeply rooted in Indian history. Kautilya's Arthashastra detailed strict regulations for road construction, specifying that royal highways should be 16 meters wide, while forest roads should be 8 meters. It also prescribed severe penalties for damaging public utilities like water reservoirs or public parks.

Today, while the government builds and maintains these vast networks, preserving them is a collective civic responsibility. Vandalism, littering, and damaging public property reduce the quality of life and place a financial burden on all citizens. A developed India, as envisioned by Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam, requires not only the physical construction of world-class roads, power, and water systems across urban and rural areas but also the responsible, sustainable stewardship of these assets by its people.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. Have you or your family members ever taken a train or a metro? What sort of economic activities did you see around the stations? Share the experience with your classmates.

Ans :

Yes, taking a train or metro is a very common and convenient way to travel. Around railway and metro stations, a bustling hub of economic activities can always be observed. Inside and just outside the stations, there are food vending stalls (like IRCTC food tracks), bookstores, tea stalls, and newspaper vendors. Just outside the exits, one can typically find transport services like auto-rickshaw stands, taxi ranks, and cycle-rickshaws. Additionally, there are often luggage porters (coolies) offering their services, and nearby streets are usually lined with small retail shops, hotels, and lodges catering to the immediate needs of travellers.

2. Create a 'Community Responsibility Pact' on the board or as a poster. Come up with ideas on how individuals can develop a sense of responsibility towards public infrastructure.

Ans :

Individuals can develop a sense of responsibility towards public infrastructure by using public spaces like parks, benches, and toilets carefully without damaging them. They should avoid littering and always throw waste in proper bins.

NODIA

inefficient. Decentralizing power to local panchayats and municipalities ensures that unique community problems are addressed swiftly by local leaders who understand regional traditions, thereby fostering deeper democratic participation and greater administrative accountability at the grassroots level.

125. How do the three levels of government collaborate in the education sector?

Ans :

In education, the central and state legislatures pass vital laws like the Right to Education. The political executive formulates schemes like Samagra Shiksha, while the permanent executive implements these at the block level. Simultaneously, the judiciary and child rights councils diligently monitor and protect students' educational rights.

126. Evaluate the concept of 'Matsya Nyāya' as described in Kautilya's Arthashastra.

Ans :

Kautilya used 'Matsya Nyāya' to describe a chaotic, lawless society where the strong ruthlessly exploit the weak, much like large fish eating smaller ones. To prevent this, he emphasized the critical need for a structured government and the king's duty to maintain strict law, order, and justice.

127. How does the government fulfil its role as a 'provider' for its citizens?

Ans :

As a provider, the government utilizes public funds to construct essential infrastructure like highways, bridges, and hospitals. It actively manages widespread welfare programs, ensures food safety, and delivers free education, aiming to vastly improve the overall socio-economic conditions and daily ease of living for all its citizens.

128. Compare the roles of the political and permanent executives.

Ans :

The political executive includes elected ministers who set national goals, make major policy decisions, and serve temporary terms. In contrast, the permanent executive comprises selected career bureaucrats who provide expert administrative advice, execute policies consistently, and maintain daily governance regardless of which political party currently holds power.

129. Why is George Washington's refusal to become king significant to republican ideals?

Ans :

Washington's firm refusal to become America's king highlighted his profound commitment to republicanism. He believed true power belonged to the people under a written constitution, rejecting hereditary monarchy. This monumental decision ensured the United States developed as a democratic republic governed by laws, not unchecked individual authority.

130. Analyse how the police function as an agent of the state.

Ans :

The police act as the state's primary enforcement agent, legally authorized to use force to maintain internal order. Operating under the state government, they actively prevent crime, promote road safety, and assist courts, ensuring citizens live securely while strictly respecting the fundamental rights guaranteed by the Constitution.

CASE BASED QUESTION

131. An apartment's Resident Welfare Association voted to ban all deliveries after 9 PM. Though a majority supported it, the rule prevented an elderly woman from receiving urgent midnight medication, causing her health to collapse. The RWA quickly amended the rule to exempt medical and food deliveries.

(a) Which concept allowed the initial ban to be passed? (Applying)
(b) Why was the initial rule considered unfair in a republican framework?
(c) How does this scenario relate to the "dominance of the majority"?

Ans :

(a) The rule was passed using the democratic concept of a majority vote.
(b) It was unfair because it ignored the basic needs and rights of a vulnerable minority, which a republic seeks to protect.
(c) It shows how a majority can impose rules that harm a smaller group, highlighting why

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

people living nearby?

Ans :

When a new highway is built near a village, it brings many positive changes to the lives of people living nearby:

1. Better Connectivity:
   i. The village gets connected to nearby towns and cities
   ii. People can travel faster and more easily
   iii. Remote areas that were once isolated become accessible
2. Benefits for Farmers (like Satish):
   i. Trucks can now carry crops and vegetables to city markets quickly
   ii. Produce reaches markets before it spoils
   iii. Farmers get better prices for their goods
   iv. They can access better quality seeds and farming inputs
3. Better Access to Essential Services:
   i. Ambulances can reach hospitals faster, saving lives
   ii. Children can reach schools more easily
   iii. People can access medicines and healthcare even during emergencies like floods
4. Economic Growth:
   i. New markets and businesses develop near the highway
   ii. New settlements and towns emerge
   iii. More employment opportunities are created for local people
   iv. Trade and commerce increase in the region
5. During Emergencies and Disasters:
   i. Relief materials can reach the village quickly during floods or earthquakes
   ii. Defence forces can access difficult terrain more easily
   iii. Emergency services become faster and more efficient
6. Support for Tourism:
   i. Better roads attract more tourists to nearby places
   ii. Local people benefit economically from tourism

3. Imagine if there were no internet or phone services. How would this affect people's ability to work or learn?

Ans :

If there were no internet or phone services:

1. Impact on Education:
   i. Students could not access online classes, digital libraries or educational videos
   ii. Children in remote areas would be most affected
   iii. Learning would become very limited
2. Impact on Farmers:
   i. Farmers like Satish could not check market prices
   ii. They could not find information about best farming inputs
   iii. They would be cheated by middlemen easily
3. Impact on Business:
   i. E-commerce would completely shut down
   ii. Online payments would become impossible
   iii. Small businesses depending on digital platforms would collapse
4. Impact on Government Services:
   i. E-governance would stop working
   ii. Citizens could not apply for documents online
   iii. Services like DigiLocker would not function
5. Impact on Emergencies:
   i. Quick SMS alerts during floods or earthquakes would not be possible
   ii. Rescue operations would become slower
   iii. Many lives could be lost due to delayed communication
6. Impact on Daily Life:
   i. People could not stay in touch with distant family and friends
   ii. As the chapter shows through Rani's example, even a simple voice note across India would become impossible

4. Which parts of this process do you think are easiest to see in real life, and which are completely invisible?

Ans :

1. Parts that are EASIEST to SEE in real life:
   i. Mobile phones and tablets we can see and hold them
   ii. Mobile towers visible standing tall in cities and villages
   iii. Electric poles and wires easily seen along roads
   iv. Telephone lines visible overhead in many areas
   v. Radio and TV sets seen in homes everywhere

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 7

INFRASTRUCTURE ENGINE OF INDIA'S DEVELOPMENT

NODIA

SUMMARY

1. THE ESSENCE OF INFRASTRUCTURE IN DAILY LIFE

Imagine waking up to a world devoid of roads, electricity, internet, or running water. Accessing schools, markets, or hospitals would become nearly impossible. This highlights the indispensable role of physical infrastructure—a vast, interconnected network of tangible structures built to keep cities and villages functioning smoothly. Physical infrastructure acts as the fundamental engine of a nation's development. It encompasses transportation systems (roads, railways, bridges, airports), utilities (water pipelines, electricity grids), communication networks (telecom towers, internet cables), and energy infrastructure (solar parks, windmills).

The chapter beautifully illustrates this through the story of Rishabh traveling from Delhi to Maharashtra. His journey seamlessly combines multiple modes of infrastructure: a car on a wide bridge, a swift metro ride to bypass traffic, a long-distance train, a bus over flyovers, and finally an autorickshaw. During his journey, he meets Satish, a farmer whose success depends entirely on this very infrastructure. Satish relies on electric pumps and canals to grow his juicy tomatoes, smooth roads to transport them, cold storage facilities to keep them fresh, and internet connectivity to track the best market prices. Without physical infrastructure, modern economic life and agricultural success would simply collapse.

1.1 The Lifelines of the Nation: Transportation Networks

Transportation is the primary artery of economic mobility, ensuring that raw materials reach factories and finished goods reach consumers. India's transportation infrastructure has witnessed phenomenal growth and diversification over the decades.

1.2 Roadways and Bridges

India boasts the second-largest road network globally, trailing only the United States. This vast system ranges from local village roads to massive, high-speed expressways. Key networks include National Highway 44 (NH44), which is the longest in India at 4,112 km, connecting Srinagar to Kanyakumari, and the Golden Quadrilateral, which links the major metropolises of Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata. Where traditional roads cannot be built, engineering marvels take over. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge in Assam, spanning 9.15 km across the Lohit River, is India's second-longest bridge, drastically cutting travel time and aiding emergency medical access during floods. Conversely, Meghalaya showcases natural infrastructure with its "living root bridges" (like jingkieng jri), meticulously crafted over decades by the Khāsi and Jaintia tribes using the roots of the Indian rubber tree, reflecting deep indigenous ecological wisdom.

1.3 Railways and Metros

Introduced by the British in 1853 primarily to exploit Indian raw materials like cotton and tea, the Indian railway system has evolved into the fourth-largest globally. It is the nation's lifeline, transporting over 20 million passengers daily. It is incredibly cost-effective and energy-efficient, with cargo trains using 75–90 percent less energy than road transport. Furthermore, the railways are shifting from polluting coal and diesel to 100 percent electrification by 2025. It also stands as the country's largest employer, providing direct jobs to over 1.21 million people. To ease urban congestion, metro train systems now operate in 23 cities, covering over 1,000 km, utilizing clean energy like solar power to provide fast, reliable daily commutes.

1.4 Airways and Waterways

For speed and traversing difficult terrains, air transport is unmatched. India now possesses the

the growth and wellbeing of any community and society.

It supports society in the following ways:

1. Wellbeing: Hospitals and health centres make medical care easily available to people, ensuring that communities stay healthy and fit.
2. Education and Development: Schools, colleges, and training centres provide opportunities to learn and develop new skills, helping individuals become capable and productive members of society.
3. Safety and Justice: Police stations and courts help maintain peace and order in society, creating a safe and fair environment where everyone can live without fear.
4. Community Life and Recreation: Parks, libraries, and community centres offer spaces where people can relax, enjoy cultural activities, and interact with each other, helping build stronger and more united communities.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. Which form of physical infrastructure has been built in your area in the last decade? How do you think it has benefitted you or your family members? If you could build something for the community, what would it be?

Ans :

In the last decade, several forms of physical infrastructure have been built in our area such as wider roads, flyovers, metro stations and better internet connectivity. These have benefitted us by reducing travel time, improving communication and making daily life easier.

If I could build something for the community, I would build a well-equipped community library with free internet access so that students from all backgrounds can learn and grow.

2. How does infrastructure like ports, highways, and airports create jobs in different parts of the country? Can you think of indirect ways people benefit from it?

Ans :

Ports, highways and airports create jobs in the following ways:

1. Direct Jobs: Engineers, pilots, port workers, truck drivers and airport staff are directly employed
2. Indirect Jobs: Hotels, restaurants, shops and taxi services near airports and highways provide employment to many people
3. Agricultural Benefits: Highways help farmers transport their goods to markets quickly
4. Tourism: Better infrastructure attracts tourists, creating jobs in hospitality and travel industry
5. Trade and Business: Ports boost import and export, creating thousands of jobs in related industries

3. Why is it important to think about the environment when building new infrastructure like roads or airports? Can infrastructure development and environmental protection go hand in hand? If yes, how?

Ans :

It is important to think about the environment because:

1. Construction of roads and airports destroys forests and wildlife habitats
2. It increases pollution and carbon emissions
3. It can disturb biodiversity and natural ecosystems

Yes, infrastructure development and environmental protection can go hand in hand:

1. Using solar panels on buildings and stations to generate clean energy
2. Building green airports like Kempegowda International Airport in Bengaluru with plants and bamboo structures
3. Using alarm systems when animals cross railway tracks
4. Using environment friendly materials in construction
5. Building electric vehicle charging stations to reduce pollution

4. How can better infrastructure (like roads, airports, communication systems) help during natural disasters like floods or earthquakes?

Ans :

1. Roads and Highways allow rescue teams and ambulances to reach affected areas quickly
2. Airports help deliver food, medicines and relief materials to disaster hit regions
3. Communication Systems send quick SMS alerts and emergency warnings to millions of

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) 12
To handle its massive volume of maritime cargo, India currently operates 12 major ports, along with 217 minor ports across its long coastline.

36. In the context of ports and shipping, what does 'TEU' measure?
(A) The precise, electronically measured maximum top speed of a commercial cargo vessel calculated in nautical knots.
(B) Twenty-foot Equivalent Units, which serves as the standard global metric for measuring the volume capacity of container ships.
(C) The total, officially registered number of unionized manual labor employees actively working at a major coastal dockyard.
(D) The strictly measured nautical depth of the coastal water at a specific minor port to determine safe docking clearances.

Ans :

(B) Twenty-foot Equivalent Units, which serves as the standard global metric for measuring the volume capacity of container ships.
TEU stands for Twenty-foot Equivalent Units, which is the standard global metric used to precisely measure the volume capacity of container ships and overall port activity.

37. How do digital networks contribute to national security?
(A) By completely replacing all frontline human police officers and border guards with highly advanced, autonomous combat robots.
(B) By ensuring that national defense forces have rapid, secure communication and immediate access to tactical information across all terrains.
(C) By implementing a strict federal protocol that automatically shuts down the public internet completely during periods of peacetime.
(D) By constantly printing and physically distributing massive amounts of highly detailed paper maps to all regional military bases.

Ans :

(B) By ensuring that national defense forces have rapid, secure communication and immediate access to tactical information across all terrains.
Reliable physical and digital infrastructure heavily strengthens national security by providing defense forces with seamless communication and the ability to access difficult terrains rapidly during emergencies.

38. Approximately how many internet connections are active in India as of 2025?
(A) 100 million
(B) 500 million
(C) Nearly 900 million
(D) 1,500 million

Ans :

(C) Nearly 900 million
Driven by some of the world's cheapest data rates, India has rapidly expanded its digital infrastructure, boasting nearly 900 million internet connections as of 2025.

39. A coastal city frequently suffers from devastating summer floods that wash away its mud roads. The local government decides to invest heavily in new infrastructure. To ensure long-term "ease of living" and disaster resilience, what specific type of upgrade should the city prioritize?
(A) Investing heavily in building an extensive underground metro rail network that remains highly susceptible to subterranean flooding.
(B) Prioritizing the construction of elevated, highly flood-proof concrete highways and structurally reinforced, sturdy suspension bridges.
(C) Expanding the local community library's physical book collection to provide citizens with more indoor reading material during storms.
(D) Purchasing and training a massive fleet of traditional horse-drawn couriers to maintain physical communication during heavy rains.

Ans :

(B) Prioritizing the construction of elevated, highly flood-proof concrete highways and structurally reinforced, sturdy suspension bridges.
To mitigate the specific threat of seasonal floods, the city must invest in resilient physical infrastructure, such as elevated highways and bridges, ensuring that critical transport and emergency routes remain functional year-round.

40. Why did Jagadish Chandra Bose's pioneering inventions in wireless technology fail to gain widespread international recognition initially?
(A) Because his experimental devices suffered from severe mechanical flaws and never actually worked during international public demonstrations.

NODIA

transport
viii. Art galleries showcasing local culture and heritage

1. Today's modern infrastructure requires consistent technological innovations. For instance, electric vehicles are increasingly being used by people as a cheaper alternative to polluting fuel like diesel or petrol. Find out about other innovations in infrastructure that can improve ease of living or mobility for communities.

Ans :

Innovations in Infrastructure:
1. Electric Vehicles as cheaper and cleaner alternatives to petrol and diesel
2. Solar powered roads that generate electricity while being used
3. Hyperloop technology for ultra fast transportation
4. Smart traffic signals using AI to reduce congestion
5. Green buildings using solar panels and rainwater harvesting
6. 5G networks for faster and better communication
7. Drone technology for delivering medicines to remote areas
8. Maglev trains that float on magnetic fields for super fast travel
9. Smart water meters to prevent water wastage
10. Satellite internet to connect remote villages with high speed internet

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following best defines "physical infrastructure"?
(A) A comprehensive network of cultural festivals and social gatherings regularly celebrated by rural agrarian communities.
(B) A vast network of tangible structures like roads, pipelines, and internet cables built to keep cities functioning.
(C) A formal compilation of political laws and administrative regulations passed by the state legislative assembly.
(D) A curated collection of historical monuments and heritage sites protected by the national archaeological department.

Ans :

(B) A vast network of tangible structures like roads, pipelines, and internet cables built to keep cities functioning.
Physical infrastructure refers to the foundational, tangible networks—such as transport, utilities, and communications—that are essential for a society and economy to operate smoothly.

2. According to Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam, what is a key characteristic of a developed India?
(A) Urban and rural areas maintaining completely distinct and separated economic resources and governance structures.
(B) Rural areas completely abandoning traditional agriculture in favor of large-scale, automated industrial manufacturing.
(C) Urban and rural areas sharing the exact same high-quality infrastructure, such as roads, reliable power, and clean water.
(D) The total elimination of all physical transportation networks in favor of completely localized and isolated economies.

Ans :

(C) Urban and rural areas sharing the exact same high-quality infrastructure, such as roads, reliable power, and clean water.
Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam stated that a developed India will be one where urban and rural areas share the same high-quality infrastructure, including roads, power, water, and communication.

3. Where does the Indian Railway system rank globally in terms of size?
(A) First
(B) Second
(C) Third
(D) Fourth

Ans :

(D) Fourth
Having expanded significantly since 1853, the Indian Railways is today the fourth-largest railway system in the entire world.

4. What is the "Golden Quadrilateral" in the context of Indian infrastructure?
(A) A highly famous four-sided historical monument and architectural heritage site located in the centre of New Delhi.
(B) An important and massive national highway network physically connecting the major metropolises of Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Modern digital communication relies on an invisible but massive infrastructure network consisting of mobile towers, underground fibre-optic cables, space satellites, and giant servers.

14. According to Kautilya's Arthashastra, what was the prescribed width for royal highways?
(A) 2.5 metres
(B) 8 meters
(C) 16 metres
(D) 30 metres

Ans :

(C) 16 metres
The ancient text Arthashastra provided highly detailed infrastructure regulations, stating that major roads like royal highways and roads to port towns should be 16 meters wide.

15. What does the term 'E-governance' mean?
(A) A completely autonomous governmental system run entirely by advanced artificial intelligence without any human oversight.
(B) The strategic use of modern communication technologies and the internet by the government to efficiently deliver services to citizens.
(C) A strict federal policy mandating the complete banning of all personal electronic devices within official government office buildings.
(D) A specialized national tax aggressively imposed on the purchasing, importing, and manufacturing of foreign electronic goods.

Ans :

(B) The strategic use of modern communication technologies and the internet by the government to efficiently deliver services to citizens.
E-governance refers to the modern use of communication technologies and the internet by the government to efficiently deliver essential services to its citizens, like the DigiLocker app.

16. What is a 'patent'?
(A) A highly specialized, traditional engineering method utilized exclusively for building the living root bridges in northeastern India.
(B) A formal legal right granted by the government allowing an inventor the exclusive authority to make, sell, or use an invention for a set period.
(C) A specific, heavy-duty classification of maritime cargo ship purposefully designed to transport highly volatile industrial coal.
(D) A strict federal tariff or financial tax applied exclusively to the mass importation of foreign-grown agricultural food products.

Ans :

(B) A formal legal right granted by the government allowing an inventor the exclusive authority to make, sell, or use an invention for a set period.
A patent is a legal right granted by a government that gives an inventor the exclusive authority to make, use, or sell their invention for a set number of years.

NODIA

17. **Assertion (A):** Taking care of public infrastructure is a collective responsibility of all citizens.
Reason (R): Damage to public infrastructure like scribbling on monuments or breaking streetlights reduces the ease of living and becomes a financial burden for every citizen.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
Citizens must collectively protect infrastructure because acts of vandalism or negligence directly degrade the community's quality of life and waste taxpayer money on repairs.

18. How many airports does India have as of 2025?
(A) 50
(B) 100
(C) 159
(D) 250

Ans :

(C) 159
As physical infrastructure expands to meet growing domestic and international travel needs, India boasts a total of 159 airports as of the year 2025.

19. How does modern infrastructure design incorporate environmental sustainability?
(A) By exclusively utilizing traditional, high-emission coal power plants for all continuous heavy industrial operations.
(B) By utilizing eco-friendly building materials and installing solar panels to generate clean electricity and drastically reduce emissions.

transport.

9. What major environmental milestone is the Indian Railways aiming to achieve by 2025?
(A) To structurally replace all existing steel railway tracks with newly engineered, highly durable recycled plastic materials.
(B) To successfully transition 100 percent of its nationwide train network to run entirely on clean electricity.
(C) To permanently shut down all heavy cargo trains in an effort to drastically reduce urban noise and air pollution.
(D) To completely revert the entire railway fleet to run on traditional steam locomotives utilizing domestic coal reserves.

Ans :

(B) To successfully transition 100 percent of its nationwide train network to run entirely on clean electricity.
To significantly reduce pollution, India has set a massive goal to have 100 percent of its trains running on electricity by the year 2025.

10. When did All India Radio (AIR) start broadcasting in India?
(A) 1876
(B) 1930
(C) 1950
(D) 1994

Ans :

(B) 1930
According to the timeline of communications development, All India Radio (AIR) officially began its broadcasting services in the year 1930.

11. Which of the following is NOT listed as a benefit of Metro train systems in Indian cities?
(A) They offer exceptionally fast, highly reliable, and safe daily travel for massive urban commuter populations.
(B) They significantly help reduce extreme road traffic congestion by taking thousands of private cars off the daily commute.
(C) They are heavily utilized to transport bulk industrial cargo like raw coal and wet cement across vast national distances.
(D) They effectively lower localized air pollution by exclusively utilizing cleaner operational fuels like high-voltage electricity.

Ans :

(C) They are heavily utilized to transport bulk industrial cargo like raw coal and wet cement across vast national distances.
Metros are designed for fast, clean, and reliable urban passenger commutes. Heavy cargo like coal and cement is transported by long-distance national railways and shipping.

12. Why is shipping considered the best mode of transport for goods like coal, cars, and cement?
(A) It is currently recognized as the absolute fastest mode of physical transport available for international trade logistics.
(B) It represents the only modern transportation method that operates entirely on fully renewable solar and wind energy.
(C) It remains a significantly cheaper and highly efficient mode of transport for carrying exceptionally heavy goods over long distances.
(D) Modern cargo ships possess the unique mechanical capability to travel inland directly to remote, landlocked rural agricultural villages.

Ans :

(C) It remains a significantly cheaper and highly efficient mode of transport for carrying exceptionally heavy goods over long distances
For incredibly heavy, bulky cargo like coal, cars, and cement, shipping across oceans remains the most cost-effective and efficient mode of transport over long distances.

13. When a voice note is sent from Madhya Pradesh to Tamil Nadu, what invisible infrastructure components are primarily utilized?
(A) An extensive network of underground postal delivery trains coordinated by thousands of physical human couriers.
(B) A massive logistical chain relying exclusively on giant international cargo ships navigating national maritime highways.
(C) A highly complex network comprising underground fibre cables, mobile communication towers, space satellites, and distant data servers.
(D) A strictly localized series of direct point-to-point analog soundwave amplifiers installed across regional state borders.

Ans :

(C) A highly complex network comprising underground fibre cables, mobile communication towers, space satellites, and distant data servers.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(C) Localized community centres, public educational libraries, and neighborhood healthcare clinics.
While roads, internet lines, and solar parks are examples of physical infrastructure, community centers and libraries are distinctly categorized as "social infrastructure."

25. According to the global container port data (2024), which city boasts the busiest port in the world by TEU volume?
(A) Singapore
(B) Los Angeles, USA
(C) Shanghai, China
(D) Mumbai, India

Ans :

(C) Shanghai, China
Based on the chart measuring global trade volume in TEU, Shanghai, China, ranks as the busiest container port in the world (51.51 TEU).

26. What does the term "E-commerce" refer to?
(A) The daily administrative task of communicating official government business via secure electronic emails.
(B) The commercial process of buying and selling retail products and professional services conducted entirely on digital online platforms.
(C) The highly classified governmental process of permanently storing sensitive national security documents in a secure digital vault.
(D) The experimental industrial engineering process of generating continuous electrical power using the kinetic motion of ocean waves.

Ans :

(B) The commercial process of buying and selling retail products and professional services conducted entirely on digital online platforms.
E-commerce strictly refers to the commercial process of buying and selling products or services digitally over the internet or on online platforms.

27. Which sector is highlighted as the largest employer in India, providing jobs to about 1.21 million people in 2024?
(A) The IT Sector
(B) The Aviation Industry
(C) Indian Railways
(D) The Telecom Industry

Ans :

(C) Indian Railways
Indian Railways is the largest employer in the country, with approximately 1.21 million direct employees as of 2024, alongside creating numerous indirect jobs.

28. Why are alarm systems installed near certain railway tracks in forested areas?
(A) To act as an automated loud acoustic signal designed to abruptly wake up sleeping passengers just before their final destination stop.
(B) To actively broadcast a warning to local rural villagers that a commuter train is approaching so they can safely prepare to board.
(C) To serve as an environmental safety feature to prevent large wildlife, such as elephants, from being fatally struck while crossing the tracks.
(D) To automatically transmit a mechanical signal instructing the train's internal engine to immediately switch from electric to diesel fuel.

Ans :

(C) To serve as an environmental safety feature to prevent large wildlife, such as elephants, from being fatally struck while crossing the tracks.
Modern, sustainable infrastructure design incorporates safety features like specific alarm systems in forested areas to warn animals (like elephants) and drivers, effectively preventing wildlife casualties on railway tracks.

NODIA

29. Where is the massive Bhakra Nangal Dam located?
(A) Kerala
(B) Tamil Nadu
(C) Andhra Pradesh
(D) Himachal Pradesh

Ans :

(D) Himachal Pradesh
As shown in the chapter's visual examples of crucial physical infrastructure, the massive Bhakra Nangal Dam is located in the northern state of Himachal Pradesh.

30. According to Kautilya's Arthashastra, how did the width of a chariot road compare to a royal highway?
(A) A standard chariot road was mandated to be significantly wider and structurally more robust than a primary royal highway.
(B) Both transportation routes were strictly mandated by royal decree to measure

(C) By aggressively removing all natural trees and vegetation to physically make national highways significantly wider and faster.
(D) By passing strict federal legislation completely banning the civilian use of all personal electric vehicles across the country.

Ans :

(B) By utilizing eco-friendly building materials and installing solar panels to generate clean electricity and drastically reduce emissions.
Sustainable infrastructure minimizes harm to biodiversity and reduces pollution by utilizing environment-friendly materials and renewable energy sources, like solar panels on airport buildings.

20. Where does India currently rank globally in terms of its road network size?
(A) First
(B) Second
(C) Third
(D) Fourth

Ans :

(B) Second
As of 2024, India has the second-largest road network in the world, trailing only behind the United States of America.

21. According to the Arthashastra, what action would result in a severe penalty?
(A) Engaging in the unauthorized planting of fruit-bearing trees along the borders of the primary royal highway system.
(B) Taking the independent initiative to physically excavate and build a new, unapproved drinking well for a local village.
(C) Willfully breaking the structural dam of a public water reservoir or deliberately breaking hedges to trespass into public parks.
(D) Operating a standard wooden horse-drawn chariot on a specialized secondary road that is exactly 2.5 meters wide.

Ans :

(C) Willfully breaking the structural dam of a public water reservoir or deliberately breaking hedges to trespass into public parks.
To protect crucial public infrastructure, Kautilya's Arthashastra recommended severe penalties and fines for individuals who damaged waterworks, like reservoir dams, or broke hedges to trespass into public parks.

22. According to the timeline, when was the first fax machine invented by Alexander Bain?
(A) 1605
(B) 1780
(C) 1843
(D) 1927

Ans :

(C) 1843
Alexander Bain invented the very first fax machine in the year 1843, which paved the foundational way for sending images across long distances.

23. What is the primary function of a "coherer" in early communication technology, as invented by J.C. Bose?
(A) It functions as a highly advanced solar panel cell designed to directly generate raw electricity from concentrated sunlight.
(B) It serves as a crucial component in early wireless communication systems, specifically designed to receive and decode transmitted signals.
(C) It acts as the primary pressurized combustion chamber used to power the heavy engine of a traditional steam locomotive.
(D) It operates as a complex mechanical printing press mechanism used to produce physical copies of the early Bengal Gazette.

Ans :

(B) It serves as a crucial component in early wireless communication systems, specifically designed to receive and decode transmitted signals.
In 1895, J.C. Bose invented an advanced type of coherer, which was a crucial component in early wireless communication systems designed to receive and decode transmitted microwave signals.

24. Physical infrastructure includes all of the following EXCEPT:
(A) Massive coastal windmills and expansive, high-capacity solar energy parks.
(B) Extensive underground internet fibre-optics and national telephone transmission lines.
(C) Localized community centres, public educational libraries, and neighborhood healthcare clinics.
(D) Elevated concrete highways, long-span suspension bridges, and urban transit railways.

Ans :

NODIA

people
4. Railways can transport large amounts of relief materials efficiently
5. Bridges and tunnels provide access to remote areas even during floods

5. Have you ever noticed people misusing public spaces, like scribbling on walls, breaking streetlights, or damaging benches? What are its consequences? Write your observations and suggest solutions to prevent it.

Ans :

Misuse of Public Spaces:
1. Observations:
   i. People scribble on walls and monuments
   ii. Streetlights and benches are broken deliberately
   iii. Roads are littered with garbage
   iv. Public parks are damaged and misused
2. Consequences:
   i. Reduces ease of living for everyone
   ii. Becomes a financial burden on every citizen
   iii. Makes public spaces ugly and unusable
   iv. Damages the image of the community
3. Solutions:
   i. Install CCTV cameras in public spaces
   ii. Impose strict fines for damaging public property
   iii. Create awareness campaigns in schools and communities
   iv. Encourage people to form Community Responsibility Pacts

6. Prepare 'scenario posters' for the following situations:
(a) A new factory is planned in an area. What form of infrastructure is required for its smooth operation?
(b) Self-cleaning roads, underground highways, and high-speed bullet trains could be part of a futuristic city! Imagine the kind of infrastructure that would be required in the future that could help ease the lives of the people and communities in your city, town or village for various day-to-day functions.
(c) Think about upgrades to the infrastructure near you, considering the terrain of your area, such as coastal, mountainous, plains, etc., and the type of natural calamities your region is prone to.
(d) If you could design a new railway or metro station, what would it look like and what features would you add to make it more fun and comfortable for the passengers?

Ans :

(a) Infrastructure for a New Factory:
   i. Roads and highways for transporting raw materials and finished goods
   ii. Power supply for running machinery
   iii. Water pipelines for industrial use
   iv. Communication networks for business operations
   v. Railway connections for bulk transportation
   vi. Ports or airports for import and export of goods

(b) Futuristic City Infrastructure
   i. Self cleaning roads that remove garbage automatically
   ii. Underground highways to reduce surface traffic
   iii. High speed bullet trains for fast intercity travel
   iv. Solar powered buildings for clean energy
   v. Smart traffic management systems using AI
   vi. Hyperloop transport systems for ultra fast travel
   vii. Drone delivery systems for goods and medicines

(c) Infrastructure Upgrades for Plains Region like Rajasthan:
   i. Better water pipelines and canals to deal with drought
   ii. Strong roads that can withstand extreme heat
   iii. Solar power plants to use abundant sunlight
   iv. Flood resistant infrastructure for monsoon season
   v. Better communication networks for remote desert areas

(d) Dream Railway or Metro Station:
   i. Solar powered station with green spaces and plants
   ii. Separate comfortable waiting areas for elderly and disabled
   iii. Digital information screens showing real time train updates
   iv. Clean and hygienic food courts with local food options
   v. Children play areas to make waiting fun
   vi. Free WiFi for all passengers
   vii. Bicycle parking to encourage eco friendly

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

exactly 8 meters in width for structural standardization.
(C) A standard chariot road (2.5 meters) was designed to be significantly narrower than a primary royal highway (16 meters).
(D) The historical text focused exclusively on taxation and did not specify any exact physical widths for chariot roads or highways.

Ans :

(C) A standard chariot road (2.5 meters) was designed to be significantly narrower than a primary royal highway (16 meters).
Kautilya prescribed specific widths based on traffic volume: royal highways were to be massive at 16 meters, whereas smaller chariot roads were designed to be 2.5 meters wide.

31. **Assertion (A):** The British introduction of railways in India was solely an act of philanthropy to help Indian farmers travel.
Reason (R): Railways allowed the British to exploit resources like cotton and move troops quickly for tighter control.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(D) A is false, but R is true.
The assertion is false; the British did not introduce railways out of philanthropy. The reason is true; they built the network strategically to transport raw materials for export and quickly move troops to maintain colonial control.

32. Which is the longest national highway in India, running from Srinagar to Kanyakumari?
(A) NH7
(B) NH44
(C) NH10
(D) NH1

Ans :

(B) NH44
NH44 is India's longest national highway, stretching 4,112 km from Srinagar in the north to Kanyakumari in the south.

33. What major historical communication event occurred in India in 1780?
(A) The very first long-distance electronic telegraph signal was successfully transmitted across the Indian subcontinent.
(B) A major milestone in media occurred when India's very first printed newspaper, the Bengal Gazette, was officially published.
(C) The pioneering scientist J.C. Bose publicly demonstrated the successful transmission of invisible wireless microwave signals.
(D) The first functional, commercially available telephone exchange system was successfully installed and activated in Mumbai.

Ans :

(B) A major milestone in media occurred when India's very first printed newspaper, the Bengal Gazette, was officially published.
A major milestone in Indian communications occurred in 1780 with the publication of the Bengal Gazette, which was India's very first printed newspaper.

NODIA

34. To improve the "ease of living" for elderly and disabled individuals, how should modern public buses be designed?
(A) By constructing them with steep, highly narrow staircases in order to maximize internal passenger seating space.
(B) By exclusively designing the vehicle interiors to be standing-room only, completely removing all passenger seats.
(C) By incorporating accessible ramps or low-floor entry points to comfortably accommodate wheelchairs and ensure smooth mobility.
(D) By completely removing all internal structural handrails and support bars in an effort to reduce the vehicle's total weight.

Ans :

(C) By incorporating accessible ramps or low-floor entry points to comfortably accommodate wheelchairs and ensure smooth mobility.
Inclusive social infrastructure demands that public transport be designed with elderly and disabled-friendly features, such as ramps for wheelchairs, to ensure safe and smooth mobility for all citizens.

35. How many major ports does India currently have?
(A) 5
(B) 12
(C) 50
(D) 217

Ans :

(C) A newly proposed network of four major international airports strategically located across the southern states of India.
(D) A cutting-edge, high-speed bullet train route designed to drastically reduce travel time between eastern and western coastal cities.

Ans :

(B) An important and massive national highway network physically connecting the major metropolises of Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata.
The Golden Quadrilateral is a massive and highly important national highway network that connects four of India's major metropolitan cities: Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata.

5. If a farmer in Assam needs to quickly transport perishable fruits across the Lohit River during the monsoon floods, which specific infrastructure marvel would he rely on?
(A) The Atal Tunnel, which provides an all-weather underground route through the Pir Panjal range in the Himalayas.
(B) The Golden Quadrilateral, which serves as the primary multi-lane highway system connecting India's four largest metropolises.
(C) The Dhola Sadiya Bridge, which spans the Lohit River and provides crucial, year-round access between Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
(D) The Chenab Rail Bridge, which stands as the highest railway arch structure spanning a deep river gorge in Jammu and Kashmir.

Ans :

(C) The Dhola Sadiya Bridge, which spans the Lohit River and provides crucial, year-round access between Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
The Dhola Sadiya Bridge (9.15 km) connects Assam and Arunachal Pradesh across the Lohit River, providing crucial year-round access, especially during floods when ferries fail.

6. In which year did the British first introduce railways in India?
(A) 1853
(B) 1895
(C) 1947
(D) 1901

Ans :

(A) 1853
The British introduced the railway system in India in 1853, primarily to efficiently transport raw materials like cotton and tea to ports for export to Britain.

7. How do Meghalaya's "living root bridges" demonstrate sustainable indigenous knowledge?
(A) They are constructed using imported, heavy-duty galvanized steel cables that are specifically designed to never rust in humid climates.
(B) They are crafted by guiding the living roots of the Indian rubber tree, growing stronger over decades without harming the environment.
(C) They are temporary, seasonal bridges built with locally harvested cut bamboo that intentionally wash away and are rebuilt every monsoon.
(D) They are modern, synthetic plastic bridges completely 3D-printed and installed by the local state government engineering department.

Ans :

(B) They are crafted by guiding the living roots of the Indian rubber tree, growing stronger over decades without harming the environment.
Crafted by the Khāsi and Jaintia tribes, these living structures are nurtured using the roots of the Ficus elastica tree, demonstrating a sustainable, nature-based engineering approach.

8. How does the energy efficiency of cargo trains compare to road transport?
(A) Cargo trains typically consume approximately 50% more fossil fuel energy than standard commercial transport trucks.
(B) Cargo trains are highly efficient, using 75 to 90 percent less energy than equivalent heavy road transport vehicles.
(C) Both modes of transportation consume exactly the same amount of fuel energy when carrying an equal weight of commercial cargo.
(D) Cargo trains rely entirely on renewable solar power arrays, whereas transport trucks remain completely dependent on imported coal.

Ans :

(B) Cargo trains are highly efficient, using 75 to 90 percent less energy than equivalent heavy road transport vehicles.
Rail transport is highly energy-efficient; cargo trains that move coal, grains, and textiles use 75 to 90 percent less energy than equivalent road

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) Because he rarely bothered to legally patent his inventions, ultimately allowing others like Marconi to patent similar devices and claim credit.
(C) Because the British colonial government implemented a strict ban preventing Indian citizens from formally studying advanced physics.
(D) Because he entirely abandoned his promising career in applied physics in order to dedicate his life to studying ancient Sanskrit literature.

Ans :

(B) Because he rarely bothered to legally patent his inventions, ultimately allowing others like Marconi to patent similar devices and claim credit.
Despite his groundbreaking work, Bose's inventions lacked international recognition primarily because he rarely patented them. Consequently, Guglielmo Marconi patented a similar device years later and won the Nobel Prize.

41. The Vande Bharat trains, introduced in 2019, are powered by which fuel source?
(A) Coal/Steam
(B) Diesel
(C) Electricity
(D) Hydrogen fuel cells

Ans :

(C) Electricity
As part of the push towards cleaner transport, the modern, high-speed Vande Bharat trains, introduced in 2019, run entirely on electricity.

42. What does the term "Mandi" refer to in the context of Indian agriculture and economy?
(A) A highly specialized type of ancient wooden sailing ship originally used for navigating the treacherous coastal waters of the Arabian Sea.
(B) A massive, federally funded underground water pipeline designed to aggressively transport fresh water to drought-stricken regions.
(C) A centralized, local agricultural market hub where regional farmers officially bring, display, and sell their harvested crops to buyers.
(D) A cutting-edge, high-speed digital internet server farm utilized exclusively by the government to safely store agricultural data.

Ans :

(C) A centralized, local agricultural market hub where regional farmers officially bring, display, and sell their harvested crops to buyers.
In the context of the agricultural economy, a "mandi" refers to the local agricultural market hub where farmers bring and sell their harvested crops to buyers.

NODIA

43. In 1844, Samuel Morse invented a method for long-distance messaging using dots and dashes. What was this invention called?
(A) The Telephone
(B) The Television
(C) The Electric Telegraph
(D) The Personal Computer

Ans :

(C) The Electric Telegraph
In 1844, Samuel Morse revolutionized communication by transmitting the first electric signal through the telegraph, utilizing a system of dots and dashes for long-distance messaging.

44. How do modern transport systems directly benefit farmers like Satish?
(A) By legally forcing all regional farmers to exclusively grow and harvest only one highly subsidized type of commercial cash crop.
(B) By intentionally increasing the total time it takes to travel, allowing unripe green crops to naturally ripen while sitting on the transport truck.
(C) By providing fast, smooth roads and mobile cold storage, ensuring highly perishable crops reach city markets before spoiling.
(D) By completely replacing all traditional manual agricultural labor and animal husbandry with fully autonomous, robotic harvesting tractors.

Ans :

(C) By providing fast, smooth roads and mobile cold storage, ensuring highly perishable crops reach city markets before spoiling.
Infrastructure like good roads and cold storage is critical for farmers, as it vastly reduces transport time and prevents perishable goods (like tomatoes) from spoiling before they can be sold for profit.

45. Which of the following was a major port on India's eastern coast during the colonial era (1882 map)?
(A) Karachi
(B) Calcutta
(C) Bombay
(D) Lahore

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The bridge successfully connects Assam and Arunachal Pradesh across the Lohit River. Statement 3 is false; it is a physical road bridge that replaced the need for unreliable ferries, it is not a solar ferry itself.

58. In what decade did personal computers begin to significantly impact the communication timeline?
(A) 1950s
(B) 1970s
(C) 1990s
(D) 2010s

Ans :

(B) 1970s
According to the timeline of communications development, the advent and integration of personal computers into society began to take shape in the 1970s.

59. Consider the following statements about India's shipping infrastructure:
1. Shipping is highly expensive and only used for lightweight luxury goods.
2. India currently operates 12 major ports and over 200 minor ports.
3. The volume of cargo handled by Indian ports has increased by 50 percent in the past decade.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) 2 and 3 only
India has 12 major and 217 minor ports, and cargo volume has grown by 50%. Statement 1 is false; shipping is actually the cheapest mode for heavy, bulky goods like coal and cars.

60. What significant global network emerged in 1994, forever altering long-distance communication and commerce?
(A) The Golden Quadrilateral
(B) The first electric telegraph
(C) The Internet and the World Wide Web
(D) The Indian Railway System

Ans :

(C) The Internet and the World Wide Web
According to the communications timeline, 1994 marked the advent of the Internet and the World Wide Web, which revolutionized global connectivity, education, and e-commerce.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

61. Match the following forms of infrastructure with their examples :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Transportation Infrastructure	A.	Telecom towers and internet
2.	Utilities	B.	Roads and railways
3.	Communication Infrastructure	C.	Electricity and water pipelines
4.	Energy Infrastructure	D.	Solar parks and windmills

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-A, 3-C, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Physical infrastructure includes transport systems, utilities, communication networks, and energy facilities. Roads and railways help movement, utilities provide essential services, communication enables connectivity, and energy infrastructure supports power generation.

62. Match the following transport systems with their characteristics :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	National Highways	A.	Fast city travel
2.	Metro Trains	B.	Connect states
3.	Air Transport	C.	Fastest transport mode
4.	Shipping	D.	Carries heavy goods cheaply

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

51. Consider the following statements about Jagadish Chandra Bose:
1. He demonstrated wireless transmission through a wall in 1895.
2. He invented an early type of semiconductor called a galena crystal detector.
3. He won the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1909 for his wireless inventions.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
Bose pioneered wireless transmission and invented the galena crystal detector. However, statement 3 is false; Guglielmo Marconi, not Bose, won the 1909 Nobel Prize after patenting a similar device.

52. Which of the following is an example of "social infrastructure"?
(A) An underground oil pipeline
(B) A high-speed metro train
(C) A public hospital or a school
(D) A massive shipping port

Ans :

(C) A public hospital or a school
While roads and ports are physical infrastructure, "social infrastructure" refers to institutions that directly support the community's social wellbeing and development, such as hospitals, schools, and libraries.

53. A rural village constantly suffers from severe power cuts and lacks a nearby hospital. The local youth must travel 20 kilometers daily on broken dirt paths to reach a college. According to Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam's vision, what essential element is this region lacking to become part of a "developed India"?
(A) Adequate physical and social infrastructure.
(B) A massive international shipping port.
(C) A centralized, underground metro system.
(D) A large-scale military base.

Ans :

(A) Adequate physical and social infrastructure.
Dr. Kalam envisioned a developed India where rural and urban areas possess the exact same high-quality physical (roads, power) and social (schools, hospitals) infrastructure, which this village is currently lacking.

54. Which of the following modes of transport is best suited for delivering emergency vaccines to remote, mountainous terrains during an earthquake?
(A) Cargo trains
(B) Domestic shipping
(C) Air transport
(D) Electric metro trains

Ans :

(C) Air transport
Air transport is the fastest method and can easily access difficult terrains like high mountains or disaster-struck zones, making it ideal for delivering emergency aid and perishable vaccines.

55. Which technological advancement in the 2010s revolutionized communication with high-speed internet and AI-driven services?
(A) The invention of the fax machine.
(B) The first printed newspaper.
(C) The advent of 5G and cloud communication.
(D) The launch of the first television broadcast.

Ans :

(C) The advent of 5G and cloud communication.
The 2010s to present era is characterized by monumental shifts in communication infrastructure, notably the rollout of high-speed 5G networks, cloud communication, and AI-driven voice services.

NODIA

56. Which airport in Kerala is highlighted for incorporating a massive solar power project into its infrastructure?
(A) Trivandrum International Airport
(B) Calicut International Airport
(C) Cochin International Airport
(D) Kannur International Airport

Ans :

(C) Cochin International Airport
Showcasing sustainable energy infrastructure, the Cochin International Airport in Kerala is famous for operating a massive, dedicated solar power project on its premises.

57. Consider the following statements about the Dhola Sadiya Bridge:
1. It connects the states of Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
2. It spans across the Lohit River.
3. It relies exclusively on solar power to move passenger ferries.

68. Which is the longest national highway in India?

Ans :

NH44.

69. What major highway network connects Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata?

Ans :

The Golden Quadrilateral.

70. Which state is home to the Dhola Sadiya Bridge?

Ans :

Assam.

71. Across which river is the Dhola Sadiya Bridge built?

Ans :

The Lohit River.

72. Which state is famous for its natural living root bridges?

Ans :

Meghalaya.

73. Which tree's roots are used to make living root bridges?

Ans :

The Indian rubber tree.

74. In which year did the British introduce railways in India?

Ans :

1853.

75. What is the global rank of the Indian railway network?

Ans :

Fourth-largest.

76. By which year is Indian Railways aiming for 100 percent electrification?

Ans :

2025.

77. How many Indian cities operate metro train systems?

Ans :

23 cities.

78. What is the fastest mode of transportation?

Ans :

Air transport.

79. Which Indian airport is designed around the 'garden city' concept?

Ans :

Kempegowda International Airport.

80. How many airports does India have in 2025?

Ans :

159 airports.

81. What is the approximate length of India's coastline?

Ans :

11,100 km.

82. How many major sea ports does India have?

Ans :

12 major ports.

83. What is a cheaper transportation mode for heavy goods like coal?

Ans :

Shipping.

84. Who invented the first telephone?

Ans :

Alexander Graham Bell.

85. Which Indian scientist pioneered wireless transmission using microwaves?

Ans :

Jagadish Chandra Bose.

86. What government application allows citizens to store documents digitally?

Ans :

DigiLocker.

87. What term describes buying and selling products over the internet?

Ans :

E-commerce.

88. What term describes delivering government services using communication technologies?

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
National highways connect cities across states. Metro systems provide rapid urban travel. Air transport is the fastest means for passengers and goods, while shipping remains economical for transporting heavy cargo over long distances.

63. Match the following infrastructure projects with their locations :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Chenab Rail Bridge	A.	Maharashtra
2.	Atal Setu	B.	Kerala
3.	Cochin International Airport Solar Project	C.	Jammu & Kashmir
4.	Muppandal Wind Farm	D.	Tamil Nadu

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C
(D) 1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
The Chenab Rail Bridge is in Jammu & Kashmir. Atal Setu is located in Maharashtra. The solar project is at Cochin International Airport in Kerala, and Muppandal Wind Farm is in Tamil Nadu.

64. Match the following communication developments with their contributors :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Telegraph	A.	Alexander Graham Bell
2.	Telephone	B.	Samuel Morse
3.	Wireless Transmission	C.	J.C. Bose
4.	Fax Machine	D.	Alexander Bain

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Samuel Morse developed the telegraph system, Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone, J.C. Bose pioneered wireless transmission, and Alexander Bain developed the early fax machine concept.

65. Match the following infrastructure benefits with their outcomes :

	Column A		**Column B**
1.	Roads and Railways	A.	Quick information exchange
2.	Communication Systems	B.	Economic growth
3.	Ports and Airports	C.	Movement of people and goods
4.	Sustainable Infrastructure	D.	Reduced environmental impact

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
(B) 1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C
(C) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A
(D) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D
Transport infrastructure enables movement, communication improves connectivity, ports and airports support trade and economic growth, and sustainable infrastructure reduces pollution and environmental damage.

VERY SHORT QUESTION

66. What network of tangible structures keeps our cities functioning?

Ans :

Physical infrastructure.

67. Which country has the world's second-largest road network as of 2024?

Ans :

India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans :

(B) Calcutta
According to the 1882 colonial railway map, Calcutta (now Kolkata) was a massive and vital port city and railway hub on India's eastern coast.

46. In which Indian state is the Muppandal Wind Farm located?
(A) The heavily forested, mountainous, and ecologically diverse southwestern coastal state of Kerala.
(B) The highly industrialized, historically significant, and rapidly developing western coastal state of Gujarat.
(C) The southernmost Indian state of Tamil Nadu, which features optimal coastal wind corridors for renewable energy generation.
(D) The agriculturally rich and economically expanding southeastern coastal state of Andhra Pradesh.

Ans :

(C) The southernmost Indian state of Tamil Nadu, which features optimal coastal wind corridors for renewable energy generation.
As highlighted in the visual examples of India's energy infrastructure, the massive Muppandal Wind Farm is located in the southern state of Tamil Nadu.

47. A city planner wants to build a new subway system but faces opposition from environmentalists worried about air pollution from the trains' exhaust. How can the planner resolve this conflict using modern infrastructure technology?
(A) By compromising and utilizing highly outdated, coal-fired steam engines that produce thick black smoke instead of modern transit technology.
(B) By ensuring the metro trains run entirely on clean electricity, which can be sustainably sourced from renewable green solar power installations.
(C) By reverting to rudimentary construction techniques and building the entire physical train framework entirely out of locally sourced timber.
(D) By entirely removing the motorized engines and requiring the daily commuting passengers to physically push the trains along the tracks.

Ans :

(B) By ensuring the metro trains run entirely on clean electricity, which can be sustainably sourced from renewable green solar power installations.
Modern metro systems effectively resolve environmental concerns because they do not emit exhaust; they run on clean electricity, and networks like the Delhi Metro even utilize renewable solar power to further lower pollution.

48. Which major Indian airport was uniquely designed based on the concept of a 'garden city'?
(A) Indira Gandhi International Airport, Delhi
(B) Kempegowda International Airport, Bengaluru
(C) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj International Airport, Mumbai
(D) Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose International Airport, Kolkata

Ans :

(B) Kempegowda International Airport, Bengaluru
The Kempegowda International Airport in Bengaluru, Karnataka, is famous for being designed around the 'garden city' concept, featuring vibrant green spaces and bamboo structures.

49. What is the approximate length of India's coastline, which highly supports trade through shipping?
(A) 5,000 km
(B) 7,500 km
(C) 11,100 km
(D) 15,000 km

Ans :

(C) 11,100 km
India has a massive coastline of approximately 11,100 km, providing crucial connectivity to West Asia, Africa, and Europe for extensive maritime trade.

50. Who was the Indian scientist that pioneered wireless transmission using microwaves in 1895?
(A) C.V. Raman
(B) APJ Abdul Kalam
(C) Jagadish Chandra Bose
(D) Srinivasa Ramanujan

Ans :

(C) Jagadish Chandra Bose
Jagadish Chandra Bose was a pioneering Indian scientist who successfully demonstrated wireless transmission using microwaves in 1895, years before Marconi's famous patent.

NODIA

Ans :

E-governance.

89. What type of infrastructure includes schools, hospitals, and parks?

Ans :

Social infrastructure.

90. Which ancient text detailed strict regulations for road construction in India?

Ans :

Kautilya's Arthashastra.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

91. What does physical infrastructure essentially consist of?

Ans :

Physical infrastructure refers to tangible structures like transport systems, water pipelines, and communication networks essential for cities and villages to function smoothly.

92. Give two examples of energy infrastructure mentioned in the chapter.

Ans :

Energy infrastructure includes tangible structures built to generate and distribute power, such as windmills, solar parks, and extensive oil and gas pipelines.

93. Why was the Dhola Sadiya bridge constructed?

Ans :

The bridge was built across the Lohit river to replace flood-prone ferries, ensuring year-round travel and significantly reducing commute time for locals.

94. What exactly is the Golden Quadrilateral?

Ans :

The Golden Quadrilateral is a massive national highway network connecting four major Indian metropolitan cities: Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata, ensuring smooth travel.

95. How are Meghalaya's living root bridges carefully constructed?

Ans :

Indigenous tribes guide the flexible roots of the Indian rubber tree across streams using bamboo, allowing them to grow into natural, sturdy bridges.

96. Why did the British originally introduce railways in India?

Ans :

The British introduced railways to quickly transport raw materials like cotton to ports for export and to rapidly move troops across Indian territories.

97. How does electrifying the railway network help the environment?

Ans :

Electrifying the railway network reduces harmful pollution significantly compared to coal and diesel, creating a cleaner environment while saving massive energy costs.

98. Mention two significant benefits of modern metro trains.

Ans :

Metro trains offer fast, reliable travel that significantly reduces road traffic congestion while lowering urban pollution by utilizing cleaner fuels like electricity.

99. What specific situations is air transport best suited for?

Ans :

Air transport is best suited for quickly connecting distant places, transporting perishable goods, and delivering urgent aid to difficult terrains during natural disasters.

100. Name multiple items safely transported by commercial cargo flights.

Ans :

Cargo flights efficiently transport high-value or perishable goods globally, such as life-saving vaccines, industrial chemicals, electronics, and fresh seafood across vast distances.

101. Why is shipping often a highly preferred mode of transportation?

Ans :

Shipping is a highly cost-effective transportation

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

mode specifically suited for moving heavy, bulky goods over vast international distances across the world's oceans.

102. Name three specific heavy goods routinely transported by massive ships.

Ans :

Heavy commercial goods like massive quantities of coal, industrial cement, and newly manufactured automobiles are efficiently transported across countries using large cargo ships.

103. What specific elements form the foundation of communication infrastructure?

Ans :

The communication infrastructure comprises an extensive network of underground fibre cables, wireless mobile towers, satellites in space, and massive data storage centres.

104. How does modern communication infrastructure dramatically improve rural education?

Ans :

It allows students, even in remote villages, to easily access digital libraries, watch educational videos, and participate in interactive online classes instantly.

105. Explain the concept of e-governance with a practical modern example.

Ans :

E-governance uses digital technology to deliver government services, like citizens utilizing the DigiLocker application to safely store and access their driving licenses online.

106. Provide a clear explanation of the term e-commerce.

Ans :

E-commerce refers to the modern practice of buying and selling various products or services digitally using online platforms and internet-connected devices globally.

107. What was Jagadish Chandra Bose's major contribution to communication science?

Ans :

Indian scientist J.C. Bose pioneered early wireless transmission using microwaves, successfully demonstrating that signals could pass through solid walls in 1895.

108. Why didn't J.C. Bose receive immediate international recognition for his inventions?

Ans :

Despite his groundbreaking inventions, J.C. Bose rarely patented his devices, which unfortunately prevented his incredible scientific work from gaining widespread international recognition initially.

109. Define what a legal patent actually means for an inventor.

Ans :

A patent is a legal right granted by the government allowing only the inventor to exclusively make, sell, or use their invention.

110. What is social infrastructure and what does it include?

Ans :

Social infrastructure refers to public facilities supporting community well-being, including modern schools, healthcare hospitals, public libraries, fire stations, and local community centres.

111. How can we actively make physical infrastructure highly sustainable today?

Ans :

Infrastructure becomes sustainable by utilizing eco-friendly materials, minimizing biodiversity harm, and incorporating renewable energy sources like solar panels to power building operations.

NODIA

112. What happens when public property is irresponsibly vandalized or damaged?

Ans :

Damaging public property, like scribbling on monuments or breaking streetlights, ruins the ease of living and becomes an unfair financial burden on taxpayers.

113. How did Kautilya's Arthashastra meticulously classify ancient road widths?

Ans :

Kautilya's Arthashastra detailed that royal highways were sixteen metres wide, while forest roads were eight metres, and chariot paths measured two-and-a-half metres.

114. What strict penalties did Kautilya strongly suggest for property damage?

Ans :

Kautilya suggested strict penalties for anyone damaging essential waterworks, breaking reservoir dams, or obstructing community paths leading to public forests and water sources.

115. How do Indian Railways consistently create numerous indirect employment opportunities?

Ans :

The vast Indian railway network creates numerous indirect job opportunities for local citizens, including station catering, small vending stalls, and essential taxi services.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

116. Analyze how infrastructure acts as the engine of India's development.

Ans :

Physical infrastructure, encompassing vast transport systems, utilities, and communication networks, acts as the nation's critical backbone. It seamlessly connects manufacturers to distant markets, significantly boosts international trade, supports vibrant tourism, and strengthens national security, ultimately driving comprehensive economic prosperity and uplifting community living standards across India.

117. Explain the significance of the Dhola Sadiya bridge for the local population.

Ans :

The Dhola Sadiya bridge across the Lohit river completely transformed local transportation by replacing unreliable ferries. It drastically cut travel time by four hours, allowing farmers to quickly sell perishable goods and providing citizens with crucial, year-round access to emergency healthcare, even during severe monsoon floods.

118. How do living root bridges reflect a deep connection between humans and nature?

Ans :

Meghalaya's living root bridges brilliantly showcase profound indigenous knowledge. Crafted by Khasi and Jaintia tribes using rubber tree roots, these natural pathways grow stronger over decades. They act as sustainable, resilient structures crossing streams without harming ecosystems, uniquely connecting generations while perfectly harmonizing human needs with environmental preservation.

119. Discuss the dual impact of the railway network introduced by the British in India.

Ans :

The British introduced railways in 1853 primarily to ruthlessly exploit Indian resources, transporting raw materials like cotton for export. However, this massive infrastructure unintentionally spurred domestic trade, created sprawling new markets, unified distant settlements, and ultimately established a vital transportation lifeline for millions of Indian citizens.

120. Analyze the environmental and economic benefits of Indian Railways aiming for 100% electrification.

Ans :

Indian Railways' ambitious target to achieve complete electrification by 2025 offers tremendous benefits. Replacing heavily polluting coal and diesel engines with electric power drastically cuts harmful emissions. This monumental shift fosters a sustainable environment while significantly reducing energy operational costs, setting a global benchmark for green transportation.

121. Evaluate how metro train systems are transforming urban commutes in India.

Ans :

Metro trains have fundamentally revolutionized daily urban commutes across twenty-three Indian cities. By operating swiftly on elevated and underground tracks, they successfully bypass extreme road congestion. Furthermore, metros provide highly reliable, affordable transit while actively reducing urban air pollution by utilizing clean electricity and innovative solar power.

122. Why is the aviation sector crucial for both daily commerce and emergency management?

Ans :

The aviation sector provides the fastest global connectivity, essential for transporting high-value and perishable goods like vaccines and seafood. Crucially, during catastrophic natural

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

disasters, airplanes and helicopters can swiftly access difficult, isolated terrains—such as high mountains and flooded plains—to rapidly deliver life-saving humanitarian aid and rescue personnel.

123. Assess the economic importance of India's extensive coastline and major ports.

Ans :

India's expansive 11,100-kilometre coastline heavily supports its booming international trade. Relying on twelve major and numerous minor ports, shipping serves as the most cost-effective method for transporting incredibly heavy cargo like industrial coal, cement, and automobiles across oceans, fundamentally driving the nation's global economic integration.

124. Trace the invisible journey of a digital message sent from a remote village to a city.

Ans :

Sending a simple digital message involves a complex, invisible network. A mobile tower captures the signal, sending it zooming through buried underground fibre cables. The data is instantly beamed to orbiting space satellites and processed by massive, distant servers before magically appearing on the receiver's smartphone screen.

125. How has the evolution of communication infrastructure promoted ease of living in India?

Ans :

Advanced communication infrastructure has fundamentally transformed daily Indian life. It enables remote students to access digital libraries, empowers businesses to expand via e-commerce, and drastically improves emergency disaster responses. Furthermore, e-governance platforms like DigiLocker allow citizens to safely and instantly access vital documents, ensuring unparalleled convenience.

126. Analyze Jagadish Chandra Bose's legacy in the field of wireless communication.

Ans :

Jagadish Chandra Bose was a brilliant pioneering scientist who successfully demonstrated wireless microwave transmission in 1895. Although his groundbreaking inventions, like the galena crystal detector, preceded global discoveries, he rarely patented them. Consequently, despite profound scientific contributions, he initially lacked the widespread international recognition he rightfully deserved.

NODIA

127. Differentiate between physical and social infrastructure and explain their interdependence.

Ans :

Physical infrastructure includes tangible networks like roads and power grids that support economic activities. In contrast, social infrastructure comprises vital community facilities like schools and hospitals promoting human well-being. Both are deeply interdependent; excellent roads are necessary to access hospitals, while healthy citizens utilize transportation networks effectively.

128. Discuss the collective responsibility of citizens towards maintaining public infrastructure.

Ans :

Maintaining public infrastructure is an essential collective responsibility. Vandalizing monuments, littering roads, or breaking streetlights drastically reduces the community's overall ease of living. Citizens must act responsibly by protecting shared assets, immediately reporting damages, and collaborating with local authorities to ensure a clean, safe, and functional environment.

129. How can modern infrastructure be designed to be more inclusive and environmentally sustainable?

Ans :

Modern infrastructure can be highly inclusive and sustainable by deliberately integrating eco-friendly materials and renewable energy, like solar-powered stations, to minimize pollution. Additionally, constructing pedestrian-friendly pathways, wheelchair ramps, and accessible transit systems ensures that vulnerable populations, including the elderly and disabled, can navigate urban spaces safely and independently.

130. What can modern urban planners learn from Kautilya's Arthashastra regarding infrastructure management?

Ans :

Modern urban planners can learn significantly from Kautilya's Arthashastra, which emphasized meticulous infrastructure management. It prescribed specific widths for different road types, ensuring organized traffic flow. Crucially, it established strict legal penalties for vandalizing

public parks and waterworks, highlighting the timeless necessity of enforcing civic responsibility and systemic maintenance.

CASE BASED QUESTION

131. Satish, a farmer in Maharashtra, grows juicy tomatoes. Earlier, much of his produce rotted before reaching the city market due to bad roads. Now, a newly built state highway connects his village directly to the city. He also uses a mobile phone to check market prices and books cold storage trucks to keep his harvest fresh during transport.
(a) What physical infrastructure helped Satish transport his goods?
(b) How did communication infrastructure benefit his farming business?
(c) Why does he need cold storage trucks?

Ans :

(a) The newly built state highway network helped him transport his goods efficiently.
(b) He used his mobile phone to track current market prices quickly.
(c) Cold storage trucks prevent his perishable tomatoes from rotting during transportation.

132. The city of Delhi faces severe traffic jams and high air pollution levels from thousands of daily commuting cars. To solve this, the government expanded the underground metro train system. Now, millions of citizens leave their cars at home and travel via the metro, which runs entirely on electricity, with several stations powered by rooftop solar panels.
(a) Identify the infrastructure implemented to solve the city's traffic problem.
(b) How does the metro directly reduce air pollution in the city?
(c) What makes this metro system environmentally sustainable?

Ans :

(a) The expansion of the underground metro train system.
(b) It runs completely on electricity instead of polluting fuels like diesel.
(c) It utilizes clean, renewable energy from rooftop solar panels to power operations.

133. During a severe earthquake in a mountainous region, all local roads and bridges were completely destroyed, cutting off the towns from the rest of the country. Many people were injured and urgently needed medical supplies. The government immediately dispatched special cargo airplanes and helicopters carrying life-saving vaccines, food packets, and a team of medical rescue personnel.
(a) Why couldn't road transport be used for the rescue mission?
(b) Which form of transportation was utilized for the emergency?
(c) Why is this mode of transport ideal for such disasters?

Ans :

(a) The severe earthquake completely destroyed all local roads and connecting bridges.
(b) Air transport, specifically cargo airplanes and helicopters, was utilized.
(c) It can quickly reach difficult, isolated mountainous terrains that are otherwise inaccessible.

134. Rani wants to apply for a government scholarship for her higher education. Instead of traveling long distances to the district office and waiting in multiple physical queues with paper documents, she uses her smartphone. She opens the DigiLocker application, accesses her digital Aadhaar card, and successfully submits her entire scholarship application online within just a few minutes.
(a) What digital system is Rani utilizing to apply for the scholarship?
(b) Name the specific application she used to access her documents.
(c) How did this communication infrastructure improve Rani's ease of living?

Ans :

(a) She is utilizing e-governance systems through her smartphone.
(b) She used the DigiLocker application.
(c) It saved her time and effort by eliminating long travel and physical queues.

135. The municipal corporation built a beautiful new community park with a small water fountain, benches, and bright streetlights. However, within a month, some miscreants scribbled on the newly painted walls and broke the fountain pipes. The local residents, remembering ancient principles, complained to the authorities, demanding strict fines and penalties for those damaging the shared

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) was originally established in the year 1935, performing early central banking functions before being transferred to the Indian government post-independence.

7. In banking terminology, what does "interest" mean?
(A) A strictly fixed administrative fee routinely charged by the bank whenever a customer utilizes an out-of-network ATM.
(B) The specific percentage amount charged to a borrower for a loan, or the financial gain provided to a depositor for lending money.
(C) The primary, legally binding physical document used by financial auditors to carefully track massive daily cash withdrawals and deposits.
(D) A highly secure, unique numeric code generated by the central bank to authenticate all international debit card transactions.

Ans :

(B) The specific percentage amount charged to a borrower for a loan, or the financial gain provided to a depositor for lending money.
Interest is the specific amount charged to a borrower for a loan or the financial gain provided to a depositor for lending their money to the bank.

8. How do commercial banks primarily generate their operational income?
(A) By utilizing their independent authority to print and circulate their own branded physical paper currency notes.
(B) By acting as federal agents and collecting direct income taxes from local retail businesses on behalf of the central government.
(C) By capturing the margin between the lower interest they pay on customer deposits and the higher interest they charge on loans.
(D) By regularly selling off their own physical bank branch buildings and treating the transactions as high-yield real estate investments.

Ans :

(C) By acting as federal agents and collecting direct income taxes from local retail businesses on behalf of the central government.
Banks act as financial middlemen; they earn their income by capturing the difference between the lower interest they pay out on deposits and the higher interest they charge on loans.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

9. How do direct bank transfers for wages and scholarships benefit the recipients?
(A) They legally obligate the recipient to immediately invest a portion of their newly received funds into the national stock market.
(B) They heavily reduce reliance on corrupt middlemen and ensure the secure, timely, and complete disbursement of intended funds.
(C) They automatically and instantly convert all deposited domestic rupees into highly stable foreign currency reserves.
(D) They technologically restrict the recipient from utilizing modern digital payment applications like the Unified Payments Interface.

Ans :

(B) They heavily reduce reliance on corrupt middlemen and ensure the secure, timely, and complete disbursement of intended funds.
Widespread banking access allows for direct transfers of wages and scholarships, bypassing corrupt or slow middlemen and ensuring funds reach the recipient quickly and safely.

10. What does the "benchmark interest rate" set by the RBI determine?
(A) The exact, standardized national tax rate automatically placed on all highly regulated imported electronic goods.
(B) The critical, foundational base interest rate utilized by the central bank for lending monetary funds directly to commercial banks.
(C) The daily fluctuating baseline price of all corporate equity shares publicly listed on the Bombay Stock Exchange.
(D) The absolute maximum daily cash withdrawal limit strictly imposed on all standard consumer ATM debit cards.

Ans :

(B) The critical, foundational base interest rate utilized by the central bank for lending monetary funds directly to commercial banks.
The benchmark interest rate is the crucial base interest rate fixed by the central bank (RBI) specifically for lending money directly to commercial banks.

11. Why are statues of a yaksha and yakshi placed at the entrance of the RBI office in Delhi?
(A) To visually honor and permanently represent the vital contributions of the rural agricultural farmers of the Indian subcontinent.

NODIA

CHAPTER 8

BANKS AND THE MAGIC OF FINANCE

NODIA

SUMMARY

1. INTRODUCTION TO FINANCIAL INFRASTRUCTURE

In modern society, physical infrastructure like roads and telecommunications keeps the country moving, but this physical network relies entirely on a different kind of system to function: financial infrastructure. Financial infrastructure is a complex network of banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other specialized institutions. It facilitates the smooth flow of monetary transactions between individuals, businesses, and the government, allowing entrepreneurs to transform ideas into reality and ensuring that the vast physical infrastructure can be funded and maintained.

2. THE ROLE OF BANKS AND TYPES OF ACCOUNTS

Banks are foundational financial institutions that collect money from people in the form of deposits and lend money to borrowers as loans. They make monetary transactions secure and easy for a wide range of people, from farmers to large businesses. To utilize these services, individuals must open a bank account. Banks primarily offer three types of accounts:

1. Savings Account: Designed for individuals to save regularly and earn interest. While it allows money to be added or withdrawn, there are usually limits on the number of monthly withdrawals.
2. Current Account: Tailored for businesses and traders who frequently make and receive payments. It does not earn interest, but it generally imposes no limits on the number of transactions.
3. Fixed Deposit Account: A one-time deposit locked in for a specified period, such as 3 or 5 years. Because the money is kept untouched, the bank returns the original amount plus a significantly higher interest rate than a savings account.

3. THE MAGIC OF COMPOUNDING

When individuals deposit money, banks keep it safe and lend it out, rewarding the depositor with extra money called 'interest'. Over time, saving money leads to exponential growth due to a mathematical concept known as compounding—earning interest on the previous interest. For example, a deposit of ₹1000 at a 6% annual interest rate grows to ₹1060 in the first year . In the second year, interest is calculated on ₹1060, not just the original ₹1000, accelerating the growth. The power of exponential growth is vividly illustrated by a legend from Ambalappuzha, Kerala. A king offered a sage any reward for winning a chess game. The sage asked for one grain of rice on the first square, doubling on each subsequent square. By the 32nd square, the total had swelled to over 210 crore grains, demonstrating how small amounts can grow into massive sums over time. To track these growing finances and transactions, banks provide account holders with a passbook, which logs all debits (withdrawals) and credits (deposits).

4. LOANS AND FINANCIAL INCLUSION

Banks function as middlemen. They pay a lower interest rate to depositors and charge a higher interest rate to borrowers. This difference constitutes the bank's income. For instance, a bank might pay 2% interest to a depositor but charge 5% to someone taking a loan to buy machinery or fund education, keeping the difference as profit .

Historically, a massive portion of India's population lacked access to this system. Before 2014, only 15 crore Indians had bank accounts. The Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana, launched in 2014, revolutionized banking by allowing citizens to open accounts without minimum balance requirements or fees. Since then, over 50 crore accounts have been opened, primarily by women, enabling direct, middleman-free transfers of wages and scholarships.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Ans :

This is a fieldwork activity — here is a sample report you can adapt

Question	**Person 1 (Family Member)**	**Person 2 (Neighbour)**
How do they save?	Bank savings account	Post office scheme
Payment method used	UPI (GPay)	ATM + UPI
UPI better than cash?	Yes — faster, no change issues	Yes — easy to track
Experienced fraud?	Received fake call asking OTP	No, but received suspicious link
What they learned	Never share OTP with anyone	Don't click unknown links

Surprising Insight: Many older family members initially feared UPI but now find it more convenient than carrying cash, especially for small daily payments.

10. Create a Financial Safety Poster.

(a) Design a poster with dos and don'ts of digital banking safety (for example, not sharing OTPs, reporting frauds).

(b) Include emergency numbers or websites like https:// cybercrime.gov.in or 1930 helpline.

(c) Hang the posters in school corridors or the library.

Ans :

11. Cheques are often used to pay utility bills. Ask your parents to allow you to fill out the cheques for a few monthly payments.

Ans :

While filling sample cheques under the guidance of a parent, I carefully wrote the date, mentioned the name of the payee (person or company), and entered the amount in both words and figures. I then signed the cheque in the designated space. This activity helped me understand the importance of filling cheques accurately to avoid errors and ensure smooth payment.

12. Suppose you have to withdraw ₹ 10,000 from your bank account, how would you fill out the cash withdrawal slip at your bank? Let us try below!

Ans :

To fill a cash withdrawal slip, I would enter my name, account number, date, and the amount to be withdrawn, i.e., ₹10,000. I would also write the amount in words, sign the slip, and attach it to my passbook before submitting it to the bank cashier. The cashier would then verify the details and hand over the cash to me.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What does "financial infrastructure" primarily consist of?

(A) A massive network of tangible physical structures like concrete bridges, roads, and national highways.

(B) A specialized network comprising banking institutions, secure payment systems, and regulated stock markets.

(C) A rural agricultural support system consisting primarily of heavy farming tools and regional cold storage facilities.

(D) A modern communication network composed entirely of telecommunication towers and

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

2. Can Navdeep and Rima lend to each other directly without the bank? What could happen in that case? Discuss.

Ans :

Technically yes, but it comes with serious problems:

1. There is no guarantee of repayment — Rima may not pay back on time or at all.
2. There is no legal protection or formal agreement.
3. Navdeep may need his money back urgently, but Rima might not be ready to return it.
4. There is no interest system managed fairly.
5. Trust issues could damage their personal relationship.

The bank acts as a reliable middleman — it takes Navdeep's deposit safely and lends it to Rima formally, protecting both parties.

3. How does one track so many transactions of deposits and withdrawals?

Ans :

The bank provides a passbook — a diary-like document that records every financial transaction made in the account. It contains details like the date, particulars (reason for transaction), cheque number, debit amount, credit amount, and the end balance. It can be updated regularly at the bank. Today, this can also be tracked digitally through internet banking and UPI apps on smartphones.

4. Look at the passbook in Fig. Observe all the particulars under the expenses (debit) and income (credit). Why is keeping records of financial transactions important? Discuss in the class.

DATE	PARTICULARS	CHEQUE NO	DEBIT	CREDIT	END BALANCE
13.01.25	TRF/company salary account			10500.00	15000.00
17.01.25	TRF/1252/payment of rent	10523	6000.00		9000.00
28.01.25	UPI/DR/Regal cinema		1500.00		7500.00
29.01.25	UPI/DR/Coffee house		400.00		7100.00
03.02.25	Cash deposit self			500.00	7600.00
15.02.25	SMS Charges		12.00		7588.00
31.03.25	Interest credit			1327.00	8915.00

Ans :

Looking at the passbook in Fig., we can see entries like salary credit, rent payment, UPI payments, cash deposits, SMS charges, and interest credit. Keeping such records is important because:

1. It helps you track your spending and income clearly.
2. You can identify unnecessary expenses and cut them.
3. It helps in planning savings for future goals.
4. It provides proof of transactions in case of disputes.
5. It helps the government track taxes and prevent illegal money flow.
6. It builds financial discipline and awareness.

5. Why do companies issue shares, and why do people buy them? Are there any benefits of owning shares?

Ans :

Why companies issue shares:

1. Companies need large amounts of money to expand operations, launch products, or buy machinery.
2. Instead of taking a loan, they sell shares to the public to raise funds without the burden of repayment with interest.

Why people buy shares:

1. When a company performs well, its share price rises, and the investor earns profit.
2. Shareholders may also receive a portion of the company's profits as dividends.
3. It is a way to grow savings beyond what a bank deposit offers.

Benefits of owning shares:

1. You become a part-owner of the company.
2. Potential for high returns if the company grows.
3. Shares can be sold anytime on the stock exchange for liquidity.

However, it also carries risk — if share prices fall, investors can lose money too.

NCERT EXERCISE

1. What is financial infrastructure? How does it complement physical infrastructure?

Ans :

Financial infrastructure is a network of banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other financial institutions that help people, businesses, and the government facilitate financial transactions and manage money.

It complements physical infrastructure in the following ways:

NODIA

public property.

(a) What category of infrastructure does the community park belong to?

(b) How does vandalism impact the local community?

(c) Which ancient Indian text historically recommended strict fines for damaging public parks?

Ans :

(a) It belongs to the category of social infrastructure.

(b) It reduces the ease of living and becomes a financial burden on citizens.

(c) Kautilya's Arthashastra recommended these strict fines.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

5. What could be the reason for the higher interest rate earned on fixed deposits as compared to a savings account?

Ans :

The reasons are:

1. In a fixed deposit, money is locked in for a fixed period (3, 5 years etc.) — the depositor cannot withdraw it before maturity.
2. This gives the bank guaranteed access to that money for a longer time, allowing it to lend it more confidently.
3. Since the depositor is sacrificing liquidity (easy access to money), the bank rewards them with higher interest.
4. In a savings account, the depositor can withdraw anytime, so the bank cannot rely on that money for long-term lending, hence it pays lower interest.

In simple terms — the longer and more firmly you commit your money, the more the bank rewards you.

6. Sahil received ₹10,000 as a prize in a poster-making competition. His father promises to pay him 12 per cent interest per year if he does not spend the amount. After 3 years, how much money would Sahil have?

Ans :

Principal = ₹10,000
Rate of interest = 12% per year
Time = 3 years
Year 1:
Interest = 12% of ₹10,000 = ₹1,200
Amount = ₹10,000 + ₹1,200 = ₹11,200
Year 2:
Interest = 12% of ₹11,200 = ₹1,344
Amount = ₹11,200 + ₹1,344 = ₹12,544
Year 3:
Interest = 12% of ₹12,544 = ₹1,505.28
Amount = ₹12,544 + ₹1,505.28 = ₹14,049.28
After 3 years, Sahil would have ₹14,049.28

7. How does the stock market help mobilise the savings of individuals? In what ways do companies benefit by issuing shares to people?

Ans :

For Individuals:

1. Instead of keeping savings idle, people can buy shares of growing companies.
2. When share prices rise, their investment increases in value.
3. They may also earn dividends (share of company profits).
4. Thus savings are put to productive use in the economy.

For Companies:

1. They can raise large amounts of money from thousands of investors by issuing shares.
2. Unlike loans, they do not need to repay this money.
3. Funds can be used for expansion, new products, machinery, and research.
4. It also increases the company's public credibility and visibility.

8. How can we balance the convenience of digital payments with the risk of cyber fraud?

Ans :

We can maintain this balance by:

1. Being Careful:
   i. Never share OTP, PIN, or passwords with anyone.
   ii. Avoid clicking on unknown links received via messages.
   iii. Do not store sensitive banking information on devices.
2. Staying Informed:
   i. Learn to identify fake calls and phishing messages.
   ii. Regularly check bank statements for suspicious transactions.
3. Using Safe Practices:
   i. Use trusted apps only (BHIM, official bank apps).
   ii. Enable two-factor authentication wherever possible.
   iii. Report fraud immediately on helpline 1930 or cybercrime.gov.in.

The key is enjoying the speed and ease of UPI while staying alert and educated about scams.

9. Ask your family members or neighbours about—

(a) How they save money?
(b) Whether they use UPI, ATM or cheques, the kinds of transactions they perform through UPI; do they find UPI better than using cash or not, and why.
(c) If they or their acquaintance have experienced digital fraud, for instance, through a fake call or message asking for bank details. What did they do when they realised it was a scam, and what did they learn from that experience?

Summarise your findings in a table or short report. Share one surprising insight with your class.

NODIA

1. Physical infrastructure like roads, railways, and factories requires huge funds to build and maintain — financial infrastructure provides those funds through loans and investments.
2. Workers who build physical infrastructure receive salaries through bank accounts.
3. Businesses that use physical infrastructure (transport, telecom) make and receive payments through payment systems.
4. Without financial infrastructure, physical infrastructure cannot be funded, built, or operated smoothly.

So both work hand-in-hand — physical infrastructure supports economic activity, while financial infrastructure funds and enables those activities.

2. How does having a bank account help people? Should everyone be required to have a bank account?

Ans :

Having a bank account helps people in many ways:

1. Safe storage of money instead of keeping risky cash at home.
2. Earning interest on savings, helping money grow over time.
3. Access to loans for education, business, farming, or emergencies.
4. Receiving salaries, scholarships, and government benefits directly.
5. Making and receiving payments easily through UPI, cheque, or debit card.
6. Tracking transactions through passbook or mobile app

Yes, ideally everyone should have one because:

1. It reduces dependence on cash and middlemen.
2. It brings people into the formal financial system.
3. Government schemes like Jan Dhan Yojana have already opened over 50 crore accounts proving its importance.

However, challenges like literacy, internet access, and distance from banks must be addressed to make it truly universal.

3. What could be the possible advantages and disadvantages of compound interest for savers and borrowers?

Ans :

For Savers:

Advantages	**Disadvantages**
Money grows faster over time	Requires patience — benefits seen only long term
Interest earned on previous interest too	Inflation may reduce real value of gains
Encourages regular saving habits	Penalty if withdrawn early (fixed deposits)

For Borrowers:

Advantages	**Disadvantages**
Can access funds for business/education	Debt grows rapidly if not repaid on time
Helps in making big purchases immediately	Total repayment amount becomes much larger
Enables entrepreneurship and growth	Can trap low-income borrowers in debt cycle

4. How does financial infrastructure enable the flow of money between households and businesses? Can you think of how the government can facilitate this flow?

Ans :

1. Households deposit savings in banks → banks lend this money to businesses as loans.
2. Businesses use loans to produce goods/ services → they pay salaries to workers (households).
3. Households spend money on goods and services from businesses → businesses earn revenue.
4. Payment systems like UPI and cheques make these transactions fast and seamless.
5. Stock markets allow households to invest in businesses by buying shares.

Government can facilitate this flow by:

1. Launching schemes like Jan Dhan Yojana to bring everyone into banking.
2. Building digital payment infrastructure (UPI, BHIM).
3. Setting up institutions like NABARD to fund rural and agricultural businesses.
4. Keeping interest rates balanced through RBI policies.
5. Providing direct benefit transfers (DBT) into bank accounts.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

underground internet cables.

Ans :

(B) A specialized network comprising banking institutions, secure payment systems, and regulated stock markets.
Financial infrastructure is the specialized network comprising banks, stock markets, and payment systems that help people, businesses, and governments manage money and facilitate financial transactions.

2. Why is financial infrastructure essential for the physical infrastructure of a country?
(A) It establishes the strict architectural building codes and engineering designs required for all modern bridges.
(B) It acts as the primary manufacturing sector that directly produces raw building materials like cement and steel.
(C) It provides the critical monetary network and massive capital funding necessary to develop and maintain vast physical structures.
(D) It serves as a regulatory mechanism that strictly limits the volume of physical commercial transportation allowed between cities.

Ans :

(C) It provides the critical monetary network and massive capital funding necessary to develop and maintain vast physical structures.
Without the monetary transactions facilitated by the financial infrastructure, the massive funding required to develop and maintain physical infrastructure (like roads and railways) would be impossible.

3. Before the year 2014, approximately how many Indians had access to bank accounts?
(A) 5 crore
(B) 15 crore
(C) 50 crore
(D) 100 crore

Ans :

(B) 15 crore
The text notes that prior to the 2014 banking revolution, financial access was extremely limited, with only about 15 crore Indians holding bank accounts.

4. How is a "bank" defined in economic terms?
(A) A strictly administrative government office that is solely responsible for printing and distributing physical paper currency.
(B) A core financial institution designed to collect monetary deposits from individuals and lend that money to borrowers as loans.
(C) A specialized online digital application used exclusively by licensed stockbrokers for trading corporate equity shares.
(D) A publicly funded social infrastructure facility that provides free healthcare and emergency services to rural communities.

Ans :

(B) A core financial institution designed to collect monetary deposits from individuals and lend that money to borrowers as loans.
A bank is a core financial institution specifically designed to collect money from people in the form of deposits and lend that money out to borrowers as loans.

5. What is the main difference between a Savings account and a Fixed Deposit account?
(A) Savings accounts are utilized exclusively by large corporate businesses, whereas fixed deposits are restricted to government institutions.
(B) Savings accounts generally earn absolutely no interest, whereas fixed deposits earn a highly volatile and unpredictable daily interest.
(C) Savings accounts allow regular additions and flexible withdrawals, whereas fixed deposits are one-time deposits locked for a set period.
(D) Savings accounts require a massive initial capital deposit to open, whereas fixed deposits require an absolute zero minimum balance.

Ans :

(C) Savings accounts allow regular additions and flexible withdrawals, whereas fixed deposits are one-time deposits locked for a set period.
A savings account is for regular use with permitted withdrawals, whereas a fixed deposit is a one-time deposit locked in for years, offering a higher interest rate in return.

6. In what year was the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) originally established?
(A) 1875
(B) 1935
(C) 1949
(D) 2016

Ans :

(B) 1935

NODIA

5. THE RBI AND OTHER FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Beyond commercial banks, the Indian post office offers accessible financial services like National Savings Certificates (NSC), Kisan Vikas Patra, and Sukanya Samriddhi accounts. Specialized institutions also exist; IFCI funds textiles and power, while NABARD supports agriculture and rural infrastructure .

Overseeing this entire network is the Reserve Bank of India (RBI), the nation's central bank. Established in 1935 and transferred to the government post-independence in 1949, the RBI acts as the banker to banks, prints currency, sets benchmark interest rates, and provides loans to the government . Interestingly, ancient Indian temples mirrored modern banking functions; 13th-century copper plate inscriptions from Kodumbalur, Tamil Nadu, reveal that temples lent money to artisans and merchants for infrastructure building.

6. PAYMENT SYSTEMS AND THE DIGITAL REVOLUTION

Payment systems are mechanisms that clear and settle financial transactions. While traditional methods like cheques require physical processing, modern technology has digitized finance. Debit cards allow 24/7 cash withdrawals from ATMs using a Personal Identification Number (PIN) or direct payments via Point of Sale (POS) machines. Internet banking allows users to transfer funds via computers.

The most revolutionary advancement is the Unified Payments Interface (UPI), launched by the National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI) in 2016. By replacing cumbersome physical cheques with instant QR code or phone number scans, UPI drastically reduced India's reliance on untraceable cash . Its contactless, user-friendly nature made it vital during the COVID-19 pandemic. Today, UPI is a global standard adopted by countries like Nepal, France, the UAE, and Sri Lanka.

7. THE STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SAFETY

For large-scale business expansion, companies raise capital by issuing shares—units of ownership in the company. Buying shares turns individuals into part-owners, allowing them to gain wealth if the company succeeds. This trading occurs at stock exchanges. The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE), established in 1875, is one of the world's oldest. Share prices fluctuate constantly, driven by company performance, tax rules, political instability, or sudden economic shocks like natural disasters and wars.

With the rise of digital finance comes the threat of cyber fraud. Fraudsters often use fake calls or malicious links to steal One-Time Passwords (OTPs) and drain bank accounts. To protect themselves, citizens must never share PINs, passwords, or personal details with strangers, and they should report any cybercrimes to the national helpline 1930 or the Cybercrime Reporting Portal immediately.

LET'S EXPLORE

1. This picture is from a bank. What do you think the people are doing? Ask your family members if they have visited a bank and learn more about the activities there.

Ans :

In a typical bank setting, people are engaging in various financial transactions. Customers are likely depositing their savings, withdrawing cash, updating their passbooks, or consulting with bank officials to open new accounts or apply for loans (credit) for their businesses or personal needs.
Class Activity : Discussing this with family members will reveal that banks are essential for keeping money safe, earning interest, and facilitating large payments (like paying school fees or buying a vehicle) through cheques or digital transfers.

THINK ABOUT IT

1. Why does Navdeep think that saving at the bank is better than keeping cash at home?

Ans :

Navdeep saves ₹3000 every month from his salary. Keeping such a large amount in a cupboard at home is risky because it could be stolen, lost, or damaged. A bank keeps his money safe and also pays him interest on his savings, meaning his money actually grows over time through compounding. So the bank offers both security and growth, which a cupboard cannot.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(B) Because they represent the mythological guards of Kubera's treasures, drawing a creative parallel to the RBI's role as the guardian of national wealth.
(C) To serve as a historical tribute honoring the original financial founders and primary architects of the Bombay Stock Exchange.
(D) Because they historically symbolize the ancient Indian mathematical discovery and widespread implementation of the number zero.

Ans :

(B) Because they represent the mythological guards of Kubera's treasures, drawing a creative parallel to the RBI's role as the guardian of national wealth.
In Hindu mythology, yakshas guard the vast treasures of Kubera (God of Wealth); placing their statues at the RBI creatively symbolizes the bank's supreme role in guarding and issuing national wealth.

12. Which financial institution is specifically tasked with supporting rural development by funding agriculture and village infrastructure?
(A) The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE), which manages the public trading of agricultural corporate equities.
(B) The Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI), dedicated to funding massive metropolitan factories.
(C) The National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI), responsible for clearing retail digital transactions.
(D) The National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD), which channels funds specifically to grassroots rural projects.

Ans :

(D) The Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI), dedicated to funding massive metropolitan factories.
NABARD is a specialized financial institution dedicated entirely to supporting rural development by providing essential funds for farming, village industries, and rural infrastructure.

13. What is a 'payment system'?
(A) A highly secure, industrial physical machine strictly utilized by the central government to print authentic paper currency notes.
(B) A specialized mechanism that securely facilitates the clearing, settlement, and transfer of financial funds between transacting parties.
(C) A centralized governmental department heavily tasked with collecting daily commercial income taxes from all major retail corporations.
(D) An advanced mathematical algorithmic method utilized by federal actuaries for calculating compound interest over a five-year period.

Ans :

(B) A specialized mechanism that securely facilitates the clearing, settlement, and transfer of financial funds between transacting parties.
A payment system is defined as a specialized mechanism that securely enables the clearing, settlement, and transfer of financial funds between transacting parties.

14. How do POS (Point of Sale) machines streamline retail shopping?
(A) They contain built-in physical printers that instantly generate authorized paper cheques for the customer to sign at checkout.
(B) They allow customers to quickly swipe or insert a debit card and input a PIN to instantly transfer money directly to the store's account.
(C) They possess real-time digital algorithms that constantly evaluate and adjust the stock market prices of the retail items being purchased.
(D) They function as decentralized mini-banks, allowing customers to easily take out a multi-year cash loan directly from the store cashier.

Ans :

(B) They allow customers to quickly swipe or insert a debit card and input a PIN to instantly transfer money directly to the store's account.
POS machines revolutionize retail by allowing a customer to simply swipe or insert a debit card, input a PIN, and instantly electronically deduct the purchase amount from their bank account.

15. When Anand deposits ₹200 at a 2% interest rate, and the bank lends it to Shreya at a 5% interest rate, how much total income does the bank earn from this transaction?
(A) ₹2
(B) ₹4
(C) ₹6
(D) ₹10

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(C) 1930
To combat the rise of cybercrime, the government established the specific national helpline 1930 (and the Cybercrime Reporting Portal) for citizens to immediately report financial fraud.

35. If a new cybersecurity law requires all digital payment systems to verify user identity before transferring funds, which component of the UPI system currently fulfills this role?
(A) The highly specialized physical printing mechanism utilized by merchants to accurately generate the merchant's displayable QR code.
(B) The centralized NPCI network actively decrypting the transaction request and verifying the secret 4-to-6 digit numeric UPI PIN entered by the user.
(C) The intricate optical scanning of the highly secure, serialized barcode printed exclusively on the physical back of the user's banking passbook.
(D) The legally binding requirement for the user to provide a formal physical signature on the back panel of their digital smartphone device.

Ans :

(B) The centralized NPCI network actively decrypting the transaction request and verifying the secret 4-to-6 digit numeric UPI PIN entered by the user.
To guarantee security, the centralized NPCI system decrypts the transaction request and actively verifies the user's secret numeric UPI PIN before authorizing the transfer of funds.

36. Why is the spread of UPI considered a significant global achievement for India?
(A) Because its deployment legally and definitively proves that the Indian federal government currently holds the largest physical gold reserves in the world.
(B) Because it showcases an indigenous, fast, and highly secure digital infrastructure system so efficient that it is now being rapidly adopted by foreign nations.
(C) Because it represents the absolute first technological system in human history to successfully and flawlessly print durable plastic currency notes.
(D) Because its widespread implementation entirely eradicated and successfully replaced the traditional need for operating massive national stock markets.

Ans :

(B) Because it showcases an indigenous, fast, and highly secure digital infrastructure system so efficient that it is now being rapidly adopted by foreign nations.
UPI is celebrated as "India's gift to the world" because it is a highly efficient, user-friendly digital payments innovation that has successfully expanded beyond India, being adopted by nations like Nepal, UAE, and France.

37. When did the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) officially become transferred to the Government of India to function as the central bank of the independent nation?
(A) 1875
(B) 1935
(C) 1949
(D) 2016

Ans :

(C) 1949
While established earlier, the RBI was officially transferred to the Government of India post-independence in the year 1949 to function fully as the nation's central bank.

38. According to the 13th-century copper plate inscription from Kodumbalur, Tamil Nadu, what institutions in ancient India acted similarly to modern banks by lending money?
(A) Imperial royal palaces
(B) Large foreign trading ships
(C) Ancient temples
(D) Village granaries

Ans :

(C) Ancient temples
Historical inscriptions, such as the copper plates from Kodumbalur, reveal that ancient Indian temples functioned similarly to banks by actively lending money to artisans and local governments with interest agreements.

39. What is the primary function of the National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD)?
(A) To strictly monitor and highly regulate the enforcement of massive international maritime trade tariffs applied at coastal ports.
(B) To strategically fund localized banks that provide direct financial loans specifically for grassroots farming, village industries, and rural infrastructure.

overall capital stock.
When individuals buy a "share," they are purchasing a defined unit of ownership in a company, making them part-owners relative to the amount of stock they hold.

21. Which demographic group is highlighted as having opened the majority of the 50 crore accounts under the Jan Dhan Yojana?
(A) Wealthy urban merchants
(B) Foreign tourists
(C) Women
(D) Corporate CEOs

Ans :

(C) Women
The text specifically notes that of the massive 50 crore new accounts opened under the inclusive Jan Dhan Yojana, they were "mainly by women," significantly boosting female financial empowerment.

22. Why would a small restaurant owner issue shares to their friends?
(A) To legally restructure the enterprise as a non-profit organization, thereby completely avoiding all national corporate income taxes.
(B) To rapidly liquidate all current tangible company assets in order to instantly pay off a massive, high-interest commercial bank loan.
(C) To raise essential capital funds needed to expand operations, in exchange for giving the friends part-ownership and a cut of future profits.
(D) To artificially inflate the restaurant's public valuation in order to gain exclusive access to the Unified Payments Interface network.

Ans :

(C) To raise essential capital funds needed to expand operations, in exchange for giving the friends part-ownership and a cut of future profits.
Issuing shares is a fundamental method for businesses to raise necessary operational funds. Investors provide the money in exchange for becoming part-owners who will share in the company's success.

23. What is an 'economic shock'?
(A) A sudden, massive external event like a natural disaster, global pandemic, or war that drastically disrupts a country's entire economy.
(B) A severe physical electrical hazard occasionally found in poorly maintained, outdated automated teller machines (ATMs).
(C) The highly regular and completely predictable quarterly payout of compound interest by a stable commercial banking institution.
(D) A localized, deliberate government-ordered shutdown of all regional digital payment systems during standard business hours.

Ans :

(A) A sudden, massive external event like a natural disaster, global pandemic, or war that drastically disrupts a country's entire economy.
An economic shock refers to sudden, highly disruptive external events—such as pandemics, earthquakes, or wars—that unexpectedly and severely alter how an entire economy earns and spends money.

24. What specific condition causes a "stock market crash"?
(A) When a single, albeit highly prominent, international technology corporation reports an unexpected minor quarterly revenue loss.
(B) When the listed prices of shares belonging to a massive number of diverse companies fall sharply and simultaneously across the board.
(C) When the central banking authority officially announces a routine fractional lowering of the national benchmark interest rate.
(D) When a brand-new, highly anticipated digital payment smartphone application is officially launched to the general public.

Ans :

(B) When the listed prices of shares belonging to a massive number of diverse companies fall sharply and simultaneously across the board.
A stock market crash occurs not due to isolated drops, but specifically when the share prices of a massive number of companies fall sharply and simultaneously across the board.

25. How do modern financial fraudsters attempt to steal money from digital payment users?
(A) By utilizing advanced industrial drilling equipment to physically break into the highly secured vaults of the Reserve Bank of India.
(B) By physically stealing the user's printed banking passbook and presenting it in person to a local neighborhood bank teller.
(C) By tricking users through sophisticated fake calls or messages into downloading harmful apps or revealing sensitive details like OTPs

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

and PINs.

(D) By meticulously forging handwritten ink signatures on traditional paper cheques and depositing them in unmonitored drop boxes.

Ans :

(C) By tricking users through sophisticated fake calls or messages into downloading harmful apps or revealing sensitive details like OTPs and PINs. Cyber fraudsters operate by deceiving victims via fake calls or links, tricking them into revealing critical security codes (like OTPs) to digitally drain their bank accounts remotely.

26. What does 'UPI' stand for?

(A) Universal Password Interface

(B) Unified Payments Interface

(C) Unlimited Portfolio Investment

(D) Union Public Infrastructure

Ans :

(B) Unified Payments Interface

BHIM and many other modern digital payment applications in India are based on the incredibly popular payment system known as the Unified Payments Interface (UPI).

27. A student earns a merit scholarship. Which financial infrastructure advancement ensures she receives the full amount without paying a middleman?

(A) The rapid, highly secure printing of newly serialized currency notes explicitly authorized by the central Reserve Bank.

(B) The instantaneous direct disbursement of digital funds straight into her zero-balance Jan Dhan savings bank account.

(C) The formal issuance of newly minted, high-yield corporate equity shares publicly listed on the Bombay Stock Exchange.

(D) The traditional, heavily guarded delivery of a physical cash envelope facilitated entirely by the local municipal post office.

Ans :

(B) The instantaneous direct disbursement of digital funds straight into her zero-balance Jan Dhan savings bank account.

The massive expansion of bank accounts (like Jan Dhan) allows the government to utilize direct benefit transfers, ensuring scholarships reach students instantly and fully, bypassing any corrupt middlemen.

28. Why was the traditional method of transferring funds via physical cheque considered a barrier to financial inclusion?

(A) Because the use of paper cheques was strictly deemed a criminal offense in all predominantly rural and agricultural districts.

(B) Because filling out cheques and visiting drop boxes was highly cumbersome and time-consuming, pushing people to rely on untraceable cash.

(C) Because major commercial banks routinely charged an exorbitant 50% flat processing tax on every single paper cheque written.

(D) Because physical cheques were legally required to be written exclusively in the English language, alienating non-speakers.

Ans :

(B) Because filling out cheques and visiting drop boxes was highly cumbersome and time-consuming, pushing people to rely on untraceable cash.

The cumbersome, time-consuming physical process of writing and depositing cheques discouraged mass adoption of banking, forcing millions to rely on informal, untraceable cash economies until digital methods arrived.

29. In banking terms, what defines a 'tax'?

(A) The highly variable, speculative financial profit earned exclusively by active day traders selling shares on the national stock exchange.

(B) A compulsory financial contribution legally levied by the government on the income, profits, goods, or services of individuals and businesses.

(C) The strictly standardized penalty fee automatically charged by a commercial bank whenever a customer uses a competitor's ATM.

(D) The completely optional, voluntary charitable donation made by citizens to a local community's religious infrastructure building fund.

Ans :

(B) A compulsory financial contribution legally levied by the government on the income, profits, goods, or services of individuals and businesses.

A tax is legally defined as a mandatory financial contribution levied by the government on the income, profits, goods, or services of individuals and businesses to fund public operations.

NODIA

30. How do stock exchanges differ from retail markets?
(A) Retail markets are specialized in selling encrypted digital data, whereas stock exchanges strictly sell heavy physical industrial goods.
(B) Stock exchanges are highly restricted zones that are entirely owned, operated, and heavily guarded by the national military apparatus.
(C) Retail markets sell physical commodities like food and books, while stock exchanges are specialized marketplaces strictly for trading financial securities.
(D) Stock exchanges are heavily regulated seasonal events that are only legally permitted to operate and open for trading once every five years.

Ans :

(C) Retail markets sell physical commodities like food and books, while stock exchanges are specialized marketplaces strictly for trading financial securities.
The text compares a stock exchange to a giant bookstore, but instead of physical retail commodities, it is a highly specialized financial marketplace specifically for trading units of company ownership (shares).

31. Which country was the first to adopt India's UPI as a payment platform across its borders in 2022?
(A) France
(B) Sri Lanka
(C) Nepal
(D) United Arab Emirates

Ans :

(C) Nepal
Demonstrating the global appeal of India's digital payments revolution, Nepal became the very first foreign country to officially adopt the UPI payment platform in the year 2022.

32. What does the term "Investment" mean in a financial context?
(A) The routine administrative process of borrowing short-term, high-interest monetary funds strictly to purchase daily perishable groceries.
(B) The strategic act of allocating capital resources into specific assets with the calculated expectation that their value will significantly increase over time.
(C) The compulsory monthly process of automatically paying essential domestic utility bills using a linked digital checking account.
(D) The standard mechanical procedure of utilizing a plastic debit card to withdraw physical paper cash from a neighborhood ATM terminal.

Ans :

(B) The strategic act of allocating capital resources into specific assets with the calculated expectation that their value will significantly increase over time.
In economics, an investment is formally defined as the strategic act of allocating resources (like money) into assets (like shares) with the specific expectation that their value will increase over time.

33. Which of the following is an example of an "economic shock"?
(A) A stable commercial bank executing its standard procedure of paying out routine quarterly interest on a customer's savings account.
(B) A devastating natural disaster, such as a massive earthquake, that suddenly and severely disrupts a nation's entire macroeconomic structure.
(C) An ordinary retail customer completing a standard transaction by withdrawing exactly ₹500 from a fully operational local ATM.
(D) A financially responsible individual completing the paperwork required to successfully open a brand-new, high-yield fixed deposit account.

Ans :

(B) A devastating natural disaster, such as a massive earthquake, that suddenly and severely disrupts a nation's entire macroeconomic structure.
Economic shocks are unpredictable, large-scale external events—such as devastating natural disasters, global pandemics, or wars—that cause massive, sudden disruptions to how a nation earns and spends money.

34. If an Indian citizen falls victim to digital financial fraud, which national helpline number should they call to report it?
(A) 100
(B) 108
(C) 1930
(D) 1014

Ans :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

temples regularly lent money with interest to artisans, merchants, and local governments.

59. Consider the following statements regarding the role of the Reserve Bank of India (RBI):
1. It prints and distributes Indian currency.
2. It sets the benchmark interest rates for commercial banks.
3. It directly opens Jan Dhan savings accounts for individual farmers.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 2 and 3 only
(C) 1 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(A) 1 and 2 only
The RBI is the central bank responsible for issuing currency and setting benchmark rates. However, Statement 3 is false; the RBI acts as a banker to banks and the government, while individual citizens open accounts at commercial banks.

MATCHING TYPE QUESTIONS

60. Match the following banking terms with their meanings :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Deposit	A.	Amount charged for borrowing money
2.	Interest	B.	Money kept in a bank account
3.	Loan	C.	Amount borrowed from a bank
4.	Compounding	D.	Interest earned on previous interest

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
Banks accept deposits and provide loans. Interest is paid on savings and charged on borrowing. Compounding means earning interest not only on the original amount but also on previously earned interest, helping money grow faster over time.

NODIA

61. Match the following types of bank accounts with their characteristics :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Savings Account	A.	Fixed period with higher interest
2.	Current Account	B.	Regular savings with interest
3.	Fixed Deposit Account	C.	Used mainly by businesses
4.	Passbook	D.	Records transactions

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D
Savings accounts encourage regular saving and provide interest. Current accounts support frequent business transactions. Fixed deposits lock money for a specific period and offer higher returns, while passbooks maintain transaction records.

62. Match the following institutions with their functions :

	Column A		Column B
1.	RBI	A.	Supports rural development
2.	NABARD	B.	Supervises Indian banking
3.	Post Office	C.	Provides savings schemes
4.	NPCI	D.	Operates digital payment systems

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A
(C) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
RBI acts as India's central bank and regulates banking. NABARD supports agriculture and rural development. Post offices provide financial services and savings schemes, while NPCI enables digital payment systems like UPI.

(C) To oversee the highly secure artistic design and massive nationwide physical printing of official national postage stamps.
(D) To act as the primary federal regulatory body strictly overseeing the continuous buying and selling of complex corporate equity shares.

Ans :

(B) To strategically fund localized banks that provide direct financial loans specifically for grassroots farming, village industries, and rural infrastructure.
NABARD is a specialized central institution tasked with supporting grassroots rural development by channeling funds to banks that lend directly to agriculture, village industries, and rural infrastructure projects.

40. Navdeep has surplus money from his salary. He decides to place it in a bank rather than his cupboard. What specific action is he taking?
(A) Making an investment in the stock market.
(B) Taking out a personal loan.
(C) Making a bank deposit.
(D) Initiating a digital UPI transaction.

Ans :

(C) Making a bank deposit.
When Navdeep takes his saved cash and places it into the bank for safety and growth, he is making a financial deposit into a bank account.

41. Which type of bank account is primarily designed for businesses and traders who make frequent payments?
(A) Savings account
(B) Fixed deposit account
(C) Current account
(D) Sukanya Samriddhi account

Ans :

(C) Current account
A current account is specifically tailored for businesses and traders who frequently make and receive payments, generally offering no limits on transactions but paying no interest.

42. How does the concept of "compounding" accelerate the growth of a savings account?
(A) By allowing the depositor to buy company shares tax-free.
(B) By paying interest not only on the original deposit but also on the interest accumulated in previous years.
(C) By strictly limiting the number of times a person can withdraw money.
(D) By automatically converting physical cash into digital UPI funds.

Ans :

(B) By paying interest not only on the original deposit but also on the interest accumulated in previous years.
Compounding is powerful because it calculates interest on the growing total balance (original amount plus previously earned interest), causing the money to grow exponentially over time.

43. In a digital UPI transaction, what visual tool does a buyer frequently scan with their smartphone camera to initiate payment to a vendor?
(A) A physical paper cheque
(B) A bank passbook
(C) A QR code
(D) A POS machine slot

Ans :

(C) A QR code
The UPI system is designed for quick, contactless transfers, frequently utilizing a scannable, square-shaped QR (Quick Response) code displayed by the vendor to instantly route the payment.

44. A king confidently agrees to give a sage one grain of rice on the first square of a chessboard, doubling the amount on every subsequent square. By the 32nd square, the king owes over 210 crore grains. What powerful mathematical and financial concept does this ancient story illustrate?
(A) The mechanism of e-commerce.
(B) The exponential growth caused by compounding.
(C) The functionality of the stock exchange.
(D) The rapid depreciation of agricultural crops.

Ans :

(B) The exponential growth caused by compounding.
The famous story of the Ambalappuzha king and the sage vividly demonstrates how compounding works, proving that doubling small amounts leads to massive, exponential growth over time.

45. What does the term "debit" signify in a bank account passbook?
(A) Receiving money into the account.
(B) Taking money out of the account.
(C) The interest rate applied to a loan.
(D) A penalty for losing a cheque book.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans :

(C) ₹6
The bank collects ₹10 (5%) from Shreya, pays ₹4 (2%) to Anand, and keeps the difference, which means the bank earns an income of ₹6.

16. Kumar wants to buy vegetables from Piyush. He opens an app, scans a square barcode on Piyush's cart, enters a code, and the money instantly appears in Piyush's account. What specific payment mechanism was utilized?
(A) A highly secure, browser-based Internet Web Banking portal that processes standard electronic fund transfers.
(B) The Unified Payments Interface (UPI), which facilitates instant digital transfers via a quick scan of a standardized QR code.
(C) A localized Point of Sale (POS) Machine swipe that actively verifies the magnetic strip on a traditional plastic debit card.
(D) An automated digital cheque clearing transfer that requires a minimum 24-hour verification hold by the central banking authority.

Ans :

(B) The Unified Payments Interface (UPI), which facilitates instant digital transfers via a quick scan of a standardized QR code.
The scenario perfectly describes a modern UPI transaction, where funds are transferred instantly and securely from the buyer's mobile app directly to the seller's bank account by quickly scanning a QR code.

17. Why did the use of UPI become particularly essential and popular during the COVID-19 pandemic?
(A) Because all physical commercial bank branches were permanently shut down and legally liquidated by the federal government.
(B) Because it allowed for safe, contactless digital payments, which heavily mitigated infection risks and helped maintain social distancing.
(C) Because it became the only legally sanctioned method for ordinary citizens to purchase shares in international pharmaceutical companies.
(D) Because the central banking authority temporarily banned the widespread civilian use of all physical plastic credit and debit cards.

Ans :

(B) Because it allowed for safe, contactless digital payments, which heavily mitigated infection risks and helped maintain social distancing.
During the pandemic, handling physical cash posed an infection risk; UPI gained massive popularity because it allowed users to conduct essential transactions entirely contact-free, maintaining social distancing.

18. What is the diary-like document provided by a bank to keep a record of all receipt and payment transactions called?
(A) A stock certificate
(B) A passbook
(C) A withdrawal slip
(D) A cheque book

Ans :

(B) A passbook
A passbook is a critical document provided by the bank that acts like a financial diary, meticulously keeping an updated record of all debit and credit transactions.

19. Which of the following is a savings scheme offered by Indian post offices?
(A) The Unified Payments Interface
(B) Current Account Facility
(C) Kisan Vikas Patra
(D) E-commerce Enterprise Account

Ans :

(C) Kisan Vikas Patra
Indian post offices provide vital financial services, especially in remote areas, offering specific savings schemes like National Savings Certificates and Kisan Vikas Patra.

20. In the context of the stock market, what exactly is a "share"?
(A) A guaranteed, recurring monthly interest payment dispersed directly by the central bank to its most loyal depositors.
(B) A specific, highly punitive financial tax automatically levied on struggling commercial businesses by the federal government.
(C) A defined unit of legal ownership in a company, representing a specific fractional portion of its overall capital stock.
(D) A physically tangible digital payment scanner installed specifically at high-volume metropolitan retail checkout counters.

Ans :

(C) A defined unit of legal ownership in a company, representing a specific fractional portion of its

NODIA

1. When a company performs poorly, its share price typically drops.
2. The Bombay Stock Exchange still manually processes all share transactions using paper tickets.
3. Sudden government policy changes can cause share prices to fluctuate.

Which of the statements are correct?
(A) 1 and 2 only
(B) 1 and 3 only
(C) 2 and 3 only
(D) 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

(B) 1 and 3 only
Company performance and policy changes dictate share prices. However, Statement 2 is false; modern stock exchanges have replaced historical paper tickets with rapid digital computer transactions.

54. What does 'OTP' stand for in digital security?
(A) Online Transaction Protocol
(B) One-Time Password
(C) Official Transfer Permit
(D) Overseas Tracking Pin

Ans :

(B) One-Time Password
In modern digital transactions, an OTP stands for a 'One-Time Password', which is a unique, temporary security code sent to authorize and verify a specific user action.

55. According to the "BEWARE" safety guidelines for digital payments, which of the following actions is NOT recommended?
(A) Avoiding clicking on unknown links received through messages.
(B) Storing sensitive account passwords and debit card PINs on your mobile device.
(C) Refusing to share personal information like phone numbers or home addresses with strangers.
(D) Calling the 1930 helpline if you suspect fraudulent activity.

Ans :

(B) Storing sensitive account passwords and debit card PINs on your mobile device.
The safety guidelines explicitly warn users against storing highly sensitive information like account passwords or PINs on digital devices, as they can be easily stolen if the device is compromised.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

56. **Assertion (A):** The Jan Dhan Yojana primarily benefited high-income business owners in major metropolitan cities.
Reason (R): The scheme required a massive minimum balance that only wealthy individuals could afford to maintain.
(A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(C) A is true, but R is false.
(D) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

(D) Both A and R are false.
Both statements are completely false. The Jan Dhan Yojana was specifically targeted at low-income earners, allowing them to open essential bank accounts without requiring any minimum balance or fees.

57. Which entity is specifically funded by the Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI)?
(A) Rural agriculture and irrigation projects.
(B) Businesses in large sectors like power and textiles.
(C) The development of new digital payment apps.
(D) International diplomatic missions.

NODIA

Ans :

(B) Businesses in large sectors like power and textiles.
The text specifically identifies the Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI) as a financial institution dedicated to funding major industrial businesses in areas like power and textiles.

58. A group of Indian artisans in the 13th century needs a loan to build better tools, but modern banks do not exist yet. Based on historical inscriptions found in Tamil Nadu, which local institution is most likely to act as a financial center to lend them the required funds?
(A) The local royal armory
(B) An ancient Hindu temple
(C) A maritime shipping guild
(D) The village granary

Ans :

(B) An ancient Hindu temple
Ancient Indian temples functioned much like modern banks. Inscriptions, such as the copper plates from Kodumbalur, reveal that these

Ans :

(B) Taking money out of the account.
In banking terminology, a debit specifically refers to taking or withdrawing money out of an account, effectively reducing the available balance.

46. What does the term "credit" signify in a bank account passbook?
(A) Withdrawing cash from an ATM.
(B) Taking out a new business loan.
(C) Receiving money into an account.
(D) Paying the monthly maintenance fee.

Ans :

(C) Receiving money into an account.
A credit indicates that money has been received into or added to an account, effectively increasing the overall account balance.

47. Which major government scheme, launched in 2014, aimed to provide every Indian with a bank account without requiring a minimum balance?
(A) Sukanya Samriddhi Yojana
(B) Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana
(C) Kisan Vikas Patra
(D) National Health Mission

Ans :

(B) Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana
Launched in 2014, the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana revolutionized Indian finance by providing massive, fee-free banking access, resulting in over 50 crore new accounts.

48. Which entity serves as the 'banker to banks' and supervises the entire Indian banking system?
(A) Ministry of Finance
(B) Reserve Bank of India (RBI)
(C) State Bank of India
(D) National Payments Corporation of India

Ans :

(B) Reserve Bank of India (RBI)
The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) functions as India's central bank; it strictly supervises commercial banks, sets benchmark interest rates, and acts as the primary banker to banks.

49. Which paper instrument explicitly allows you to pay someone directly from your bank account by signing your name?
(A) A debit card
(B) A stock certificate
(C) A passbook
(D) A cheque

Ans :

(D) A cheque
A cheque is a traditional paper instrument that directs a bank to transfer a specified amount of money from the issuer's account to the receiver's account upon physical presentation.

50. What does the acronym 'PIN' stand for in banking security?
(A) Permanent Investment Note
(B) Personal Identification Number
(C) Public Interest Network
(D) Payment Interface Node

Ans :

(B) Personal Identification Number
In banking and digital security, PIN specifically stands for Personal Identification Number, which is a numeric code used to securely authorize ATM and card transactions.

51. Which organization was responsible for launching the Unified Payments Interface (UPI) in 2016?
(A) The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE)
(B) The National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI)
(C) The Reserve Bank of India (RBI)
(D) The Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI)

Ans :

(B) The National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI)
To reduce reliance on slow physical transactions and cash, the National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI) officially launched the fast and secure UPI system in 2016.

52. Established in 1875, which is one of the oldest stock exchanges in the world?
(A) The National Stock Exchange of India (NSE)
(B) The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE)
(C) The Kolkata Securities Exchange
(D) The Reserve Bank of India Exchange

Ans :

(B) The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE)
The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE) was officially established in 1875, making it a historic financial institution and one of the oldest stock exchanges globally.

53. Consider the following statements regarding the stock market:

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

63. Match the following payment methods with their uses :

	Column A		Column B
1.	ATM	A.	Paper-based payment
2.	Cheque	B.	Withdraw cash anytime
3.	Debit Card	C.	Store and retail payments
4.	UPI	D.	Instant digital transfer

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(C) 1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A
(D) 1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
ATMs allow cash withdrawal at any time. Cheques transfer money through banks. Debit cards enable electronic payments, and UPI allows quick and secure digital money transfers using phones and QR codes.

64. Match the following stock market terms with their meanings :

	Column A		Column B
1.	Share	A.	Place where shares are traded
2.	Stock Exchange	B.	Ownership in a company
3.	Investment	C.	Putting money to gain value
4.	Stock Market Boom	D.	Rise in share prices

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
(B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(C) 1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C
(D) 1-A, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C

Ans :

(A) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C, 4-D
A share represents ownership in a company. A stock exchange is where shares are bought and sold. Investment means putting resources into assets for growth, while a stock market boom occurs when share prices rise.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

VERY SHORT QUESTION

65. What is the network of banks, payment systems, and financial institutions called?

Ans :

It is called financial infrastructure.

66. What do we call the money placed into a bank account?

Ans :

It is called a deposit.

67. Which bank account type is primarily used by businesses for frequent transactions?

Ans :

The current account.

68. What is the process of earning interest on previous interest called?

Ans :

It is known as compounding.

69. What is the term for taking money out of a bank account?

Ans :

It is called a debit.

70. What document does a bank provide to keep a record of all transactions?

Ans :

A passbook.

71. In which year was the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana launched?

Ans :

It was launched in 2014.

NODIA

72. Name one savings scheme offered by Indian post offices.

Ans :

Sukanya Samriddhi accounts.

73. Which institution supervises the Indian banking system?

Ans :

The Reserve Bank of India.

74. What does NABARD stand for?

106. How has the Unified Payments Interface (UPI) simplified money transfers?

Ans :

UPI enables instant, digital money transfers using just a QR code or phone number, reducing the heavy reliance on cash and physical bank visits.

107. Why did UPI become particularly popular during the COVID-19 pandemic?

Ans :

UPI gained massive popularity because it supported fast, cashless transactions, which perfectly aligned with the crucial need to maintain social distancing and prevent infections.

108. Explain the concept of buying a share in a company.

Ans :

Buying a share means purchasing a unit of ownership; it makes you a part-owner, and your ownership increases as you acquire more shares.

109. Why do companies decide to issue shares to the public?

Ans :

Companies issue shares to raise necessary funds for their operations, expansions, and developing new products, by collecting small investments from numerous individual shareholders.

110. What historical change occurred in how stock exchanges trade shares?

Ans :

Originally, share transactions at stock exchanges were conducted manually using paper tickets, but they are now entirely replaced by digital transactions using advanced computers.

111. Mention two reasons why a company's share price might drop.

Ans :

Share prices can drop if fewer people want them due to internal problems like bad products, workers' strikes, or significant financial losses.

112. How can external economic shocks affect the national stock market?

Ans :

Sudden events like natural disasters, wars, or political instability alter how people spend and save, causing widespread share price fluctuations and market crashes.

113. What common tricks do fraudsters use to steal bank details?

Ans :

Fraudsters use fake calls or messages to trick victims into downloading harmful applications, sharing sensitive OTPs, or revealing personal banking passwords and details.

114. What immediate steps should you take if facing cyber fraud?

Ans :

You should immediately avoid sharing any further personal details and report the incident using the national helpline 1930 or the Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

115. Analyse the broader impact of a robust financial infrastructure on a nation's economy.

Ans :

Financial infrastructure, encompassing banks and stock markets, ensures the smooth flow of money between people and businesses. By actively promoting savings, secure investments, and accessible credit, it significantly boosts overall economic activity, funding vital physical infrastructure and ultimately contributing to the nation's progress and prosperity.

116. Contrast the utilities of savings, current, and fixed deposit accounts for different users.

Ans :

Individuals use savings accounts to safely store money and earn modest interest, while retaining withdrawal access. Businesses prefer current accounts for limitless transactions without earning interest. Meanwhile, investors use fixed deposits to lock funds for set periods to gain significantly higher interest yields.

117. Illustrate how the magic of compounding can exponentially increase savings over a long period.

Ans :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

frequent payments without limits on transactions, although these accounts generally do not earn any interest.

93. How does compounding help your money grow faster?

Ans :

Compounding increases wealth exponentially because you earn interest not only on your original deposit but also on the interest earned in previous years.

94. Why is a bank passbook important for account holders?

Ans :

A passbook acts as a diary, keeping a clear and updated record of all money deposited, withdrawn, and transferred in a bank account.

95. How do banks make a profit from deposits and loans?

Ans :

Banks pay lower interest rates to depositors and charge higher interest rates to borrowers, keeping the difference as their source of income.

96. Why do banks not lend out all deposited money?

Ans :

Banks must keep reserve money to ensure they can meet the daily withdrawal requests of depositors and maintain overall financial stability and safety.

97. What was the main goal of the Jan Dhan Yojana?

Ans :

It aimed to give every Indian access to a bank account, notably without requiring any minimum balance or extra fees, promoting financial inclusion.

98. How do post offices act as financial institutions in India?

Ans :

Post offices offer accessible savings schemes, such as National Savings Certificates and Kisan Vikas Patra, utilizing their vast network even in remote areas.

99. What role does NABARD play in India's financial system?

Ans :

NABARD supports rural development by funding banks that provide essential loans for farming, village industries, and rural infrastructure like roads and irrigation.

100. Why is the Reserve Bank of India called the central bank?

Ans :

The RBI supervises the entire Indian banking system, maintains policies, acts as a banker to other banks, and issues national currency.

NODIA

101. How did temples function financially in ancient India?

Ans :

Temples lent money to local artisans, merchants, and the government for building infrastructure, recording these loan agreements carefully on inscribed copper plates.

102. How do Automated Teller Machines (ATMs) benefit bank customers?

Ans :

ATMs act as mini-banks available at all times in public places, allowing customers to securely withdraw cash using their debit cards and PINs.

103. Describe the process of paying someone using a cheque.

Ans :

You write the receiver's name, amount, and your signature; the receiver deposits it, and money is transferred directly between your respective bank accounts.

104. How are Point of Sale (POS) machines used in retail?

Ans :

Customers insert or swipe their debit cards in POS machines and enter their PIN to instantly transfer money to the store owner's account.

105. What advantages does internet banking offer to a user?

Ans :

Internet banking allows users to check balances, review transaction history, and transfer funds online through a bank's website using computers or smartphones.

126. How do cybercriminals exploit digital payment systems, and how can individuals protect themselves?

Ans :

Fraudsters use deceptive fake calls and text messages to manipulate users into sharing sensitive OTPs, PINs, or downloading malicious applications. Once accessed, they rapidly drain bank accounts. Individuals must never share personal banking details with strangers, avoid clicking unknown links, and immediately report scams to helpline 1930.

127. Analyse the historical precedent of banking seen in ancient Indian temple practices.

Ans :

In ancient India, prominent temples essentially functioned as early financial institutions. They lent substantial money to local artisans, merchants, and the government to fund infrastructure development, meticulously recording these binding, interest-bearing loan contracts on durable copper plates, establishing an early precedent for structured community credit and financial record-keeping.

128. Evaluate the role of debit cards in bridging the gap between physical and digital banking.

Ans :

Debit cards offer immense versatility, bridging physical and digital finance. Users can physically insert them into \$24\times7\$ ATMs to securely withdraw cash using a personal PIN. Simultaneously, they function electronically in retail environments, allowing instant, cashless payments by seamlessly swiping on POS machines at local grocery and clothing stores.

129. How does internet banking provide a comprehensive alternative to visiting a physical bank branch?

Ans :

Internet banking revolutionizes financial management by allowing users to independently check balances, monitor detailed transaction histories, and securely transfer funds online. Utilizing bank websites or mobile applications on personal devices, customers bypass time-consuming physical bank visits, managing their accounts instantly from anywhere, enhancing overall convenience and financial control.

CASE BASED QUESTION

130. Rahul received ₹5000 on his 12th birthday. His father suggested he deposit it in a fixed deposit account offering an 8% annual interest rate. Rahul plans to leave the money untouched until he turns 18. He wonders why his father insisted on leaving it for a long period instead of withdrawing the interest earned every year to buy toys.

(a) Which financial concept is Rahul's father trying to teach him?
(b) How does compounding work in this scenario?
(c) What would happen if Rahul withdrew the interest every year? (Evaluating)

Ans :

(a) His father is teaching him the concept of compounding, where money grows exponentially over time.
(b) By leaving the money untouched, Rahul earns interest not just on the original ₹5000, but also on the interest that accumulates each year.
(c) If he withdraws the interest, his money will not grow exponentially, as he would only earn interest on his original ₹5000 deposit instead of earning interest on previous interest.

131. Anjali runs a small clothing store. In the past, she accepted payments mostly in cash or via cheques, which required her to visit the bank weekly to deposit them. Recently, she placed a QR code at her billing counter. Now, most customers scan the code using mobile apps to pay instantly, saving her significant time and effort.

(a) Which payment system is Anjali using through the QR code?
(b) Why was accepting cheques inconvenient for Anjali?
(c) State one advantage of UPI for her customers. (Evaluating)

Ans :

(a) She is using the Unified Payments Interface (UPI) system.
(b) Transferring money through cheques required physically visiting the bank to deposit them, which was very time-consuming.
(c) Customers can make easier and quicker digital money transfers instantly using just their phones, without needing to carry cash or physical cards.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Compounding increases wealth exponentially because you earn interest not just on the original deposit, but also on accumulated interest. Like the chessboard rice grains doubling endlessly , even small savings grow into massive sums over years, showcasing compounding as a powerful, transformative financial growth concept.

118. Examine how banks function as middlemen between depositors and borrowers to generate income.

Ans :

Banks securely hold individuals' deposits, paying them a low interest rate. Simultaneously, they lend these accumulated funds to borrowers for business or personal needs, charging a significantly higher interest rate. The difference between these two interest rates serves as the bank's primary source of income.

119. Evaluate the impact of the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana on rural and low-income populations.

Ans :

Launched in 2014, this initiative successfully brought over 50 crore citizens into the banking system without requiring minimum balances. It empowered farmers and workers by facilitating direct wage transfers and scholarships, crucially eliminating middlemen and ensuring the secure, timely disbursement of funds to marginalized and rural communities.

120. Assess the importance of non-bank financial institutions like post offices and NABARD in India.

Ans :

Non-bank institutions bridge crucial financial gaps. Post offices offer secure savings schemes utilizing their extensive rural network. Concurrently, NABARD focuses on rural development, providing vital funding to local banks that issue targeted loans for farming, village industries, and agricultural infrastructure, fostering balanced regional economic growth across India.

121. Why is the Reserve Bank of India critical to maintaining the country's economic stability?

Ans :

The RBI is India's central bank, strictly supervising the entire banking system and managing monetary policies. It prints national currency, fixes benchmark lending rates, maintains other banks' accounts, and provides emergency loans to the government, acting as the ultimate guardian and regulator of the nation's wealth.

122. Compare the traditional cheque-based payment system with modern digital methods like UPI.

Ans :

Traditional cheques require filling physical forms and visiting banks, which is highly time-consuming and often encourages undocumented cash usage. Conversely, UPI enables instant, secure electronic transfers using mobile applications and QR codes, completely removing physical barriers and making monetary transactions incredibly accessible, transparent, and effortlessly quick.

NODIA

123. Analyse how the global expansion of India's UPI system benefits international transactions.

Ans :

India's UPI, an efficient and secure digital payment system, is expanding globally to nations like Nepal, France, and the UAE. This international adoption simplifies cross-border transactions, completely transforming digital finance worldwide by providing an instant, user-friendly, and highly accessible financial framework that demonstrates India's technological leadership.

124. Explain the primary function of a stock exchange in the modern economy.

Ans :

A stock exchange acts as a highly regulated digital marketplace where individuals buy and sell company shares, transitioning from old paper tickets to advanced computer systems. It enables businesses to raise crucial funds for operations, while giving ordinary individuals a vital platform to actively invest their savings.

125. Discuss the various internal and external factors that can cause share prices to fluctuate.

Ans :

Share prices continually fluctuate due to multiple factors. Internally, poor product performance, workers' strikes, or financial losses can lower value. Externally, sudden economic shocks such as wars, devastating natural disasters, political instability, or sudden changes in government tax rules can severely disrupt markets and cause massive price drops.

Ans :

National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development.

75. In what year did the RBI start functioning as the banker to banks after Independence?

Ans :

In 1949.

76. In ancient India, which places sometimes acted like banks by lending money?

Ans :

Temples.

77. What were the ancient loan contracts between temples and merchants etched on?

Ans :

Copper plates.

78. What is the full form of ATM?

Ans :

Automated Teller Machine.

79. What is the full form of PIN used for debit cards?

Ans :

Personal Identification Number.

80. What paper instrument allows you to pay someone directly from your bank account?

Ans :

A cheque.

81. What does POS stand for in the context of card payments?

Ans :

Point of Sale.

82. Which organisation launched the Unified Payments Interface (UPI)?

Ans :

National Payments Corporation of India.

83. In which year was UPI launched in India?

Ans :

It was launched in 2016.

84. Which was the first country to adopt India's UPI as a payment platform?

Ans :

Nepal.

85. What is a unit of ownership in a company called?

Ans :

A share.

86. In which year was the Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE) established?

Ans :

It was established in 1875.

87. What term describes a widespread fall in the share prices of many companies?

Ans :

A stock market crash.

88. What is the national helpline number to report cyber fraud?

Ans :

The helpline is 1930.

89. What does OTP stand for?

Ans :

One-Time Password.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

90. Explain what financial infrastructure means.

Ans :

Financial infrastructure includes banks, payment systems, and stock markets that help people, businesses, and governments manage money and facilitate financial transactions.

91. How do fixed deposit accounts differ from savings accounts?

Ans :

Fixed deposits are kept for a set period and usually offer higher interest rates than savings accounts, which allow regular withdrawals.

92. What purpose does a current account serve for businesses?

Ans :

Current accounts help businesses make and receive

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

132. Mahesh, a farmer, needs ₹50,000 to buy new irrigation equipment. He approaches the local bank for a loan. The bank agrees to lend him the money at a 7% interest rate. Meanwhile, the bank holds deposits from several villagers, paying them a 3% interest rate on their savings accounts. Mahesh successfully repays the loan after two years.

(a) Why did Mahesh borrow money from the bank?

(b) How does the bank generate its income in this scenario?

(c) What happens when Mahesh repays the loan?

Ans :

(a) Mahesh borrowed money as a loan to fund his agricultural activities, specifically to purchase new irrigation equipment.

(b) The bank earns income from the difference in interest rates; it pays a lower rate (3%) to depositors and charges a higher rate (7%) to Mahesh.

(c) Mahesh must repay the original loan amount of ₹50,000 along with the accumulated interest charged by the bank over the two years.

133. Sunita receives a phone call from someone claiming to be a bank official. The caller says her debit card will be blocked unless she immediately shares the six-digit code sent to her mobile phone. Panicking, Sunita is about to read the code out loud when her son stops her, takes the phone, and disconnects the suspicious call.

(a) What is the six-digit code the caller was asking for?

(b) Why did her son disconnect the call? (Evaluating)

(c) What should Sunita do next to ensure safety?

Ans :

(a) The code is an OTP (One-Time Password) used for verifying identity or authorizing transactions.

(b) He realized it was a fraud attempt. One should never share personal information or OTPs with strangers, as fraudsters use them to gain access and drain bank accounts.

(c) She should report the fraudulent call using the national helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

134. Rajesh invested his savings by purchasing shares in a well-known automobile company, hoping their value would increase. A few months later, the company faced a major workers' strike, halting production. Furthermore, the government announced new, higher tax rules for automobile sales. Panic ensued in the market, and Rajesh noticed the value of his investment dropping rapidly.

(a) What does Rajesh buying shares indicate about his relationship with the company?

(b) Identify the internal factor that caused the share price to drop.

(c) Identify the external factor contributing to the drop in share value.

Ans :

(a) By buying shares, Rajesh became a part-owner of the automobile company, holding a unit of ownership in its capital stock.

(b) The internal factor was the company's operational problem involving a major workers' strike that halted production.

(c) The external factor was the government's sudden policy change regarding new, higher tax rules for automobile sales.

www.nodia.in

NO NEED TO PURCHASE NCERT QUESTION BANK
visit. www.qbgpt.in
Download All Subject All Class QB FREE PDF

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube